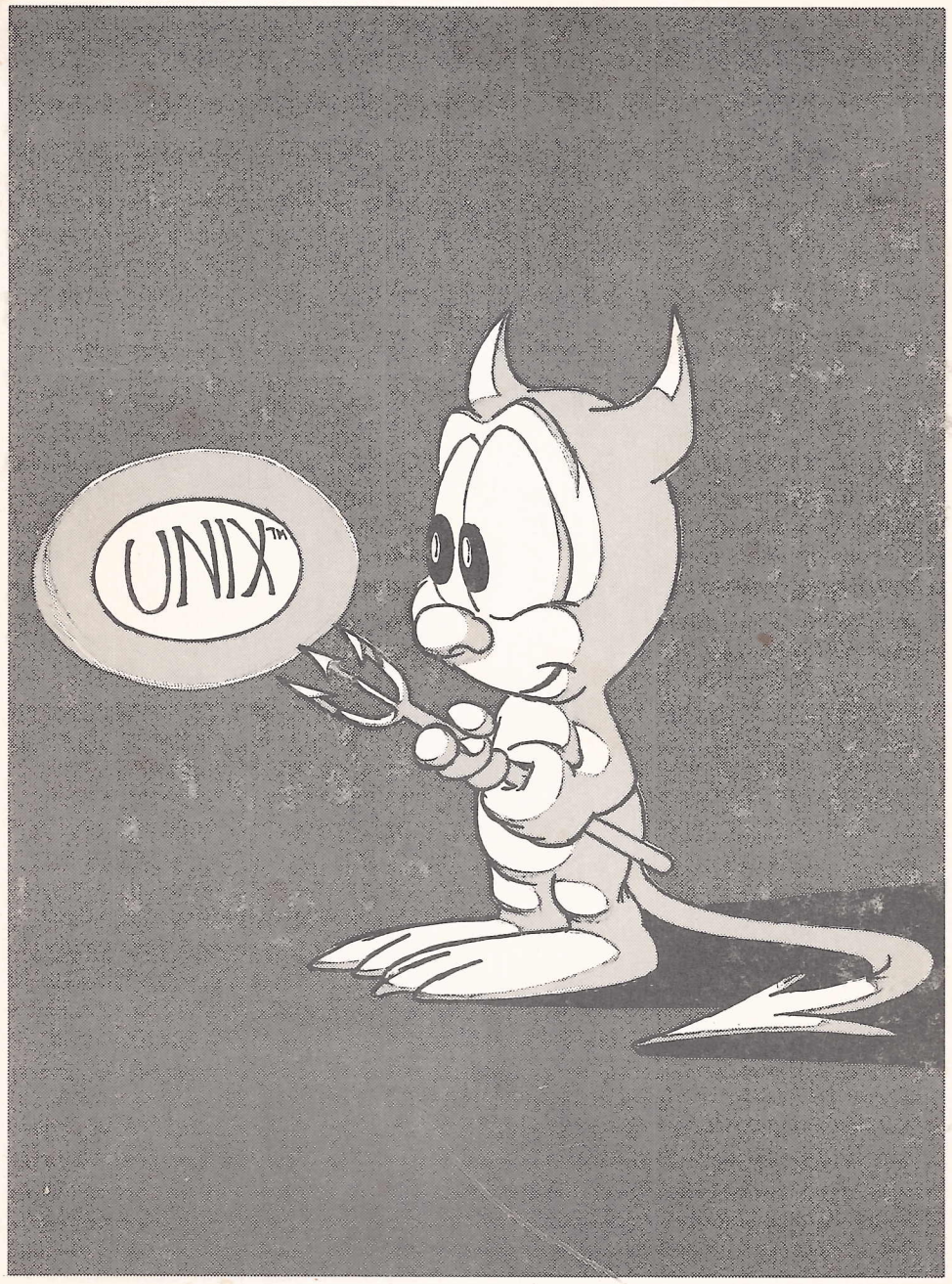
Unix User's Manual
Supplementary Documents



Printed by the USENIX Association as a service to the UNIX Community. This material is copyrighted by The Regents of the University of California and/or Bell Telephone Laboratories, and is reprinted by permission. Permission for the publication or other use of these materials may be granted only by the Licensors and copyright holders.

Cover design by John Lassetter, Lucasfilm, Ltd.

4.2 BSD edition:

First Printing	July 1984
Second Printing	December 1984
Third Printing	September 1985
Fourth Printing	March 1986

4.3 BSD edition:

First Printing	November 1986
Second Printing	June 1987
Third Printing	June 1988

UNIX Documents

URM	User Reference Manual
	man section 1 (commands)
	man section 6 (games)
	man section 7 (miscellaneous)
USD	User Supplementary Documents
USD:1	Unix for Beginners
USD:2	Learn – Computer–Aided Instruction
USD:3	Introduction to the UNIX Shell
USD:4	Introduction to the C shell
USD:5	DC – Interactive Desk Calculator
USD:6	BC – Arbitrary Precision Desk-Calculator
USD:7	Mail Reference Manual
USD:8	MH Message Handling System
USD:9	How to Read the Network News
USD:10	How to Use USENET Effectively
USD:11	Notesfile Reference Manual
USD:12	Tutorial Introduction to ''ed''
USD:13	Advanced Editing on Unix
USD:14	Edit: A Tutorial
USD:15	Introduction to Display Editing with Vi
USD:16	Ex Reference Manual (Version 3.7)
USD:17	Jove Manual for UNIX Users
USD:18	SED – A Non-interactive Text Editor
USD:19	AWK – Pattern Scanning/Processing Language
USD:20	Using the –ms Macros with Troff and Nroff
USD:21	Revised Version of –ms
USD:22	Writing Papers with *nroff* using –me
USD:23	–me Reference Manual
USD:24	NROFF/TROFF User´s Manual
USD:25	TROFF Tutorial
USD:26	Typesetting Mathematics (eqn)
USD:27	Typesetting Mathematics – User´s Guide
USD:28	Tbl – A Program to Format Tables
USD:29	Refer – A Bibliography System
USD:30	Some Applications of Inverted Indexes ...
USD:31	BIB – Bibliography Formatting Program
USD:32	Writing Tools – STYLE and DICTION
USD:33	A Guide to the Dungeons of Doom
USD:34	Star Trek
PRM	Programmer Reference Manual
	man sections 2 (system calls)
	man sections 3 (library routines)
	man sections 4 (devices, special files)
	man sections 5 (file formats)
PS1	Programmer Supplementary Docs, part 1
PS1:1	C Language – Reference Manual
PS1:2	Fortran 77
PS1:3	f77 I/O Library
PS1:4	Berkeley Pascal User´s Manual
PS1:5	Vax Assembler Reference Manual
PS1:6	Berkeley Software Architecture Manual (4.3 Edition)
PS1:7	Introductory 4.3BSD Interprocess Communication
PS1:8	Advanced 4.3BSD Interprocess Communication
PS1:9	Lint, A C Program Checker
PS1:10	ADB Tutorial
PS1:11	Debugging with dbx
PS1:12	Make
PS1:13	Revision Control System (RCS)
PS1:14	Source Code Control System (SCCS)
PS1:15	YACC: Yet Another Compiler-Compiler
PS1:16	LEX – A Lexical Analyzer Generator
PS1:17	M4 Macro Processor
PS1:18	curses library
PS2	Programmer Supplementary Documents, part 2
PS2:1	The Unix Time–Sharing System
PS2:2	UNIX 32/V – Summary
PS2:3	Unix Programming – Second Edition
PS2:4	Unix Implementation
PS2:5	The Unix I/O System
PS2:6	Programming Language EFL
PS2:7	Berkeley FP User´s Manual
PS2:8	Ratfor – Preprocessor for Rational FORTRAN
PS2:9	The FRANZ LISP Manual
PS2:10	Ingres (Version 8) Reference Manual
SMM	System Manager's Manual
	man section 8 (system administration)
SMM:1	Installing and Operating 4.3BSD
SMM:2	Building 4.3BSD Systems with *Config*
SMM:3	Using ADB to Debug the Kernel
SMM:4	Disc Quotas
SMM:5	Fsck – File System Check Program
SMM:6	Line Printer Spooler Manual
SMM:7	Sendmail Installation and Operation
SMM:8	Timed Installation and Operation
SMM:9	UUCP Implementation Description
SMM:10	USENET Version B Installation
SMM:11	Name Server Operations Guide
SMM:12	Bug Fixes and Changes in 4.3BSD
SMM:13	Changes to the Kernel in 4.3BSD
SMM:14	A Fast File System for UNIX
SMM:15	4.3BSD Networking Implementation Notes
SMM:16	Sendmail – An Internetwork Mail Router
SMM:17	On the Security of UNIX
SMM:18	Password Security – A Case History
SMM:19	A Tour Through the Portable C Compiler
SMM:20	Writing NROFF Terminal Descriptions
SMM:21	A Dial–Up Network of UNIX Systems
SMM:22	Berkeley Time Synchronization Protocol

UNIX User's Supplementary Documents (USD)

4.3 Berkeley Software Distribution
Virtual VAX-11 Version

April, 1986

Computer Systems Research Group
Computer Science Division
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California
Berkeley, California 94720

Copyright 1979, 1980, 1983, 1986 Regents of the University of California. Permission to copy these documents or any portion thereof as necessary for licensed use of the software is granted to licensees of this software, provided this copyright notice and statement of permission are included.

Documents USD:1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 12, 13, 18, 19, 20, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, and 32 are copyright 1979, AT&T Bell Laboratories, Incorporated. Holders of UNIX™/32V, System III, or System V software licenses are permitted to copy these documents, or any portion of them, as necessary for licensed use of the software, provided this copyright notice and statement of permission are included.

Documents USD:8, 9, 10, 11, 17, and 31 are part of the user contributed software.

This manual reflects system enhancements made at Berkeley and sponsored in part by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DoD), Arpa Order No. 4871 monitored by the Naval Electronics Systems Command under contract No. N00039-84-C-0089. The views and conclusions contained in these documents are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing official policies, either expressed or implied, of the Defense Research Projects Agency or of the US Government.

UNIX User's Supplementary Documents (USD)

4.3 Berkeley Software Distribution, Virtual VAX-11 Version

February, 1986

This volume contains documents which supplement the manual pages in *The Unix User's Reference Manual* for the Virtual VAX-11 version of the system as distributed by U.C. Berkeley, and Volumes 2a and 2b as provided by Bell Laboratories.

Getting Started

Unix for Beginners – Second Edition USD:1

An introduction to the most basic uses of the system.

Learn – Computer-Aided Instruction on UNIX (Second Edition) USD:2

Describes a computer-aided instruction program that walks new users through the basics of files, the editor, and document prepararation software.

Basic Utilities

An Introduction to the UNIX Shell USD:3

Steve Bourne's introduction to the capabilities of *sh,* a command interpreter especially popular for writing shell scripts.

An Introduction to the C shell USD:4

This introduction to *csh,* (a command interpreter popular for interactive work) describes many commonly used UNIX commands, assumes little prior knowledge of UNIX, and has a glossary useful for beginners.

DC – An Interactive Desk Calculator USD:5

A super HP calculator, if you do not need floating point.

BC – An Arbitrary Precision Desk-Calculator Language USD:6

A front end for DC that provides infix notation, control flow, and built-in functions.

Communicating with the World

Mail Reference Manual USD:7

Complete details on one of the programs for sending and reading your mail.

The Rand MH Message Handling System USD:8

This system for managing your computer mail uses lots of small programs, instead of one large one.

How to Read the Network News USD:9

Describes how news works (generally) and some alternatives for reading it, *readnews* and *vnews*.

How to Use USENET Effectively USD:10

Describes the customs, protocols, and etiquette of network news, plus answers to the questions most frequently asked by newcomers to the network.

Notesfile Reference Manual USD:11

This feature-packed system for maintaining computer-aided discussion groups is also useful for reading netnews.

Text Editing

A Tutorial Introduction to the Unix Text Editor USD:12

An easy way to get started with the line editor, *ed.*

Advanced Editing on Unix USD:13

The next step.

Edit: A Tutorial USD:14

An introduction to *edit*, a line-oriented editor which is a version of *ex*, assuming no previous knowledge of UNIX or text editing.

An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi USD:15

The document to learn to use the *vi* screen editor.

Ex Reference Manual (Version 3.7) USD:16

The final reference for the *ex* editor, which underlies both *edit* and *vi*.

Jove Manual for UNIX Users USD:17

Jove is a small, self-documenting, customizable display editor, based on EMACS. A plausible alternative to *vi*.

SED – A Non-interactive Text Editor USD:18

Describes a one-pass variant of *ed* useful as a filter for processing large files.

AWK – A Pattern Scanning and Processing Language (Second Edition) USD:19

A program for data selection and transformation.

Document Preparation

Typing Documents on UNIX: Using the –ms Macros with Troff and Nroff USD:20

Describes and gives examples of the basic use of the typesetting tools and "-ms", a frequently used package of formatting requests that make it easier to lay out most documents.

A Revised Version of –ms USD:21

A brief description of the Berkeley revisions made to the –ms formatting macros for nroff and troff.

Writing Papers with *nroff* using –me USD:22

Another popular macro package for *nroff*.

–me Reference Manual USD:23

The final word on –me.

NROFF/TROFF User's Manual USD:24

Extremely detailed information about these document formatting programs.

A TROFF Tutorial USD:25

An introduction to the most basic uses of *troff* for those who really want to know such things, or want to write their own macros.

A System for Typesetting Mathematics USD:26

Describes *eqn*, an easy-to-learn language for high-quality mathematical typesetting.

Typesetting Mathematics – User's Guide (Second Edition) USD:27

More details about how to use *eqn*.

Tbl – A Program to Format Tables USD:28

A program for easily typesetting tabular material.

Refer – A Bibliography System USD:29

An introduction to one set of tools used to maintain bibliographic databases. The major program, *refer*, is used to automatically retrieve and format the references based on document citations.

Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the UNIX System USD:30

Mike Lesk's paper describes the *refer* programs in a somewhat larger context.

BIB – A Program for Formatting Bibliographies USD:31

This is an alternative to *refer* for expanding citations in documents.

Writing Tools – The STYLE and DICTION Programs USD:32

These are programs which can help you understand and improve your writing style.

Amusements

A Guide to the Dungeons of Doom USD:33

An introduction to the popular game of *rogue*, a fantasy game which is one of the biggest known users of VAX cycles.

Star Trek USD:34

You are the Captain of the Starship Enterprise. Wipe out the Klingons and save the Federation.

UNIX For Beginners — Second Edition

Brian W. Kernighan

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

(Updated for 4.3BSD by Mark Seiden)

ABSTRACT

This paper is meant to help new users get started on the UNIX† operating system. It includes:

- basics needed for day-to-day use of the system — typing commands, correcting typing mistakes, logging in and out, mail, inter-terminal communication, the file system, printing files, redirecting I/O, pipes, and the shell.
- document preparation — a brief discussion of the major formatting programs and macro packages, hints on preparing documents, and capsule descriptions of some supporting software.
- UNIX programming — using the editor, programming the shell, programming in C, other languages and tools.
- An annotated UNIX bibliography.

INTRODUCTION

From the user's point of view, the UNIX operating system is easy to learn and use, and presents few of the usual impediments to getting the job done. It is hard, however, for the beginner to know where to start, and how to make the best use of the facilities available. The purpose of this introduction is to help new users get used to the main ideas of the UNIX system and start making effective use of it quickly.

You should have a couple of other documents with you for easy reference as you read this one. The most important is *The UNIX Programmer's Manual*; it's often easier to tell you to read about something in the manual than to repeat its contents here. The other useful document is *A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX Text Editor*, which will tell you how to use the editor to get text — programs, data, documents — into the computer.

A word of warning: the UNIX system has become quite popular, and there are several major variants in widespread use. Of course details also change with time. So although the basic structure of UNIX and how to use it is common to all versions, there will certainly be a few things which are different on your system from what is described here. We have tried to minimize the problem, but be aware of it. In cases of doubt, this paper describes Version 7 UNIX.

This paper has five sections:

1. Getting Started: How to log in, how to type, what to do about mistakes in typing, how to log out. Some of this is dependent on which system you log into (phone numbers, for example) and what terminal you use, so this section must necessarily be supplemented by local information.
2. Day-to-day Use: Things you need every day to use the system effectively: generally useful commands; the file system.
3. Document Preparation: Preparing manuscripts is one of the most common uses for UNIX systems. This section contains advice, but not extensive instructions on any of the formatting

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

tools.

4. Writing Programs: UNIX is an excellent system for developing programs. This section talks about some of the tools, but again is not a tutorial in any of the programming languages provided by the system.
5. A UNIX Reading List. An annotated bibliography of documents that new users should be aware of.

I. GETTING STARTED

Logging In

You must have a UNIX login name, which you can get from whoever administers your system. You also need to know the phone number, unless your system uses permanently connected terminals. The UNIX system is capable of dealing with a wide variety of terminals: Terminet 300's; Execuport, TI and similar portables; video (CRT) terminals like the HP2640, etc.; high-priced graphics terminals like the Tektronix 4014; plotting terminals like those from GSI and DASI; and even the venerable Teletype in its various forms. But note: UNIX is strongly oriented towards devices with *lower case.* If your terminal produces only upper case (e.g., model 33 Teletype, some video and portable terminals), life will be so difficult that you should look for another terminal.

Be sure to set the switches appropriately on your device. Switches that might need to be adjusted include the speed, upper/lower case mode, full duplex, even parity, and any others that local wisdom advises. Establish a connection using whatever magic is needed for your terminal; this may involve dialing a telephone call or merely flipping a switch. In either case, UNIX should type "**login:**" at you. If it types garbage, you may be at the wrong speed; check the switches. If that fails, push the "break" or "interrupt" key a few times, slowly. If that fails to produce a login message, consult a guru.

When you get a **login:** message, type your login name *in lower case.* Follow it by a RETURN; the system will not do anything until you type a RETURN. If a password is required, you will be asked for it, and (if possible) printing will be turned off while you type it. Don't forget RETURN.

The culmination of your login efforts is a "prompt character," a single character that indicates that the system is ready to accept commands from you. The prompt character is usually a dollar sign $ or a percent sign %. (You may also get a message of the day just before the prompt character, or a notification that you have mail.)

Typing Commands

Once you've seen the prompt character, you can type commands, which are requests that the system do something. Try typing

date

followed by RETURN. You should get back something like

Mon Jan 16 14:17:10 EST 1978

Don't forget the RETURN after the command, or nothing will happen. If you think you're being ignored, type a RETURN; something should happen. RETURN won't be mentioned again, but don't forget it — it has to be there at the end of each line.

Another command you might try is **who**, which tells you everyone who is currently logged in:

who

gives something like

mb	**tty01**	**Jan 16**	**09:11**
ski	**tty05**	**Jan 16**	**09:33**
gam	**tty11**	**Jan 16**	**13:07**

The time is when the user logged in; "ttyxx" is the system's idea of what terminal the user is on.

If you make a mistake typing the command name, and refer to a non-existent command, you will be told. For example, if you type

whom

you will be told

whom: not found

Of course, if you inadvertently type the name of some other command, it will run, with more or less mysterious results.

Strange Terminal Behavior

Sometimes you can get into a state where your terminal acts strangely. For example, each letter may be typed twice, or the RETURN may not cause a line feed or a return to the left margin. You can often fix this by logging out and logging back in.†
Or you can read the description of the command **stty** in section 1 of the manual. To get intelligent treatment of tab characters (which are much used in UNIX) if your terminal doesn't have tabs, type the

† In Berkeley Unix, the command "reset<control-j>" will often reset a terminal apparently in a strange state because a fullscreen editor crashed.

command

stty -tabs

and the system will convert each tab into the right number of blanks for you. If your terminal does have computer-settable tabs, the command **tabs** will set the stops correctly for you.

Mistakes in Typing

If you make a typing mistake, and see it before RETURN has been typed, there are two ways to recover. The sharp-character # erases the last character typed; in fact successive uses of # erase characters back to the beginning of the line (but not beyond). So if you type badly, you can correct as you go:

dd#atte##e

is the same as **date**.‡

The at-sign @ erases all of the characters typed so far on the current input line, so if the line is irretrievably fouled up, type an @ and start the line over.

What if you must enter a sharp or at-sign as part of the text? If you precede either # or @ by a backslash \, it loses its erase meaning. So to enter a sharp or at-sign in something, type \# or \@. The system will always echo a newline at you after your at-sign, even if preceded by a backslash. Don't worry — the at-sign has been recorded.

To erase a backslash, you have to type two sharps or two at-signs, as in \##. The backslash is used extensively in UNIX to indicate that the following character is in some way special.

Read-ahead

UNIX has full read-ahead, which means that you can type as fast as you want, whenever you want, even when some command is typing at you. If you type during output, your input characters will appear intermixed with the output characters, but they will be stored away and interpreted in the correct order. So you can type several commands one after another without waiting for the first to finish or even begin.

Stopping a Program

You can stop most programs by typing the character "DEL" (perhaps called "delete" or "rubout" on your terminal). The "interrupt" or "break" key found on most terminals can also be used.† In a few programs, like the text editor, DEL stops whatever the program is doing but leaves you in that program. Hanging up the phone will stop most programs.‡

Logging Out

The easiest way to log out is to hang up the phone. You can also type

login

and let someone else use the terminal you were on.* It is usually not sufficient just to turn off the terminal. Most UNIX systems do not use a time-out mechanism, so you'll be there forever unless you hang up.

Mail

When you log in, you may sometimes get the message

You have mail.

UNIX provides a postal system so you can communicate with other users of the system. To read your mail, type the command

mail

Your mail will be printed, one message at a time, most recent message first.‡ After each message, **mail** waits for you to say what to do with it. The two basic responses are **d**, which deletes the message, and RETURN, which does not (so it will still be there the next time you read your mailbox). Other responses are described in the manual. (Earlier versions of **mail** do not process one message at a time, but are otherwise similar.)

How do you send mail to someone else? Suppose it is to go to "joe" (assuming "joe" is someone's login name). The easiest way is this:

mail joe
now type in the text of the letter
on as many lines as you like ...
After the last line of the letter
type the character "control–d",
that is, hold down "control" and type
a letter "d".

And that's it. The "control-d" sequence, often called "EOF" for end-of-file, is used throughout the system to mark the end of input from a terminal, so you might as well get used to it.

For practice, send mail to yourself. (This isn't as strange as it might sound — mail to oneself is a handy reminder mechanism.)

---

‡ Many installations set the erase character for display terminals to the delete or backspace key. "stty all" tells you what it actually is.

† In Berkeley Unix, "control-c" is the usual way to stop programs. "stty all" tells you the value of your "intr" key.

‡ If you use the c shell, programs running in the background continue running even if you hang up.

* "control-d" and "logout" are other alternatives.

‡ The Berkeley mail program lists the headers of some number of unread pieces of mail in the order of their receipt.

There are other ways to send mail — you can send a previously prepared letter, and you can mail to a number of people all at once. For more details see **mail**(1). (The notation **mail**(1) means the command **mail** in section 1 of the *UNIX Programmer's Manual.*)

Writing to other users†

At some point, out of the blue will come a message like

Message from joe tty07...

accompanied by a startling beep. It means that Joe wants to talk to you, but unless you take explicit action you won't be able to talk back. To respond, type the command

write joe

This establishes a two-way communication path. Now whatever Joe types on his terminal will appear on yours and vice versa. The path is slow, rather like talking to the moon. (If you are in the middle of something, you have to get to a state where you can type a command. Normally, whatever program you are running has to terminate or be terminated. If you're editing, you can escape temporarily from the editor — read the editor tutorial.)

A protocol is needed to keep what you type from getting garbled up with what Joe types. Typically it's like this:

> Joe types **write smith** and waits.
> Smith types **write joe** and waits.
> Joe now types his message (as many lines as he likes). When he's ready for a reply, he signals it by typing **(o)**, which stands for "over".
> Now Smith types a reply, also terminated by **(o)**.
> This cycle repeats until someone gets tired; he then signals his intent to quit with **(oo)**, for "over and out".
> To terminate the conversation, each side must type a "control-d" character alone on a line. ("Delete" also works.) When the other person types his "control-d", you will get the message **EOF** on your terminal.

If you write to someone who isn't logged in, or who doesn't want to be disturbed, you'll be told. If the target is logged in but doesn't answer after a decent interval, simply type "control-d".

† Although "write" works on Berkeley UNIX, there is a much nicer way of communicating using display-terminals — "talk" splits the screen into two sections, and both of you can type simultaneously (see talk(1)).

On-line Manual

The *UNIX Programmer's Manual* is typically kept on-line. If you get stuck on something, and can't find an expert to assist you, you can print on your terminal some manual section that might help. This is also useful for getting the most up-to-date information on a command. To print a manual section, type "man command-name". Thus to read up on the **who** command, type

man who

and, of course,

man man

tells all about the **man** command.

Computer Aided Instruction

Your UNIX system may have available a program called **learn**, which provides computer aided instruction on the file system and basic commands, the editor, document preparation, and even C programming. Try typing the command

learn

If **learn** exists on your system, it will tell you what to do from there.

II. DAY-TO-DAY USE

Creating Files — The Editor

If you have to type a paper or a letter or a program, how do you get the information stored in the machine? Most of these tasks are done with the UNIX "text editor" **ed**. Since **ed** is thoroughly documented in **ed**(1) and explained in *A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX Text Editor,* we won't spend any time here describing how to use it. All we want it for right now is to make some *files.* (A file is just a collection of information stored in the machine, a simplistic but adequate definition.)

To create a file called **junk** with some text in it, do the following:

```
ed junk      (invokes the text editor)
a            (command to "ed", to add text)
now type in
whatever text you want ...
.            (signals the end of adding text)
```

The "." that signals the end of adding text must be at the beginning of a line by itself. Don't forget it, for until it is typed, no other **ed** commands will be recognized — everything you type will be treated as text to be added.

At this point you can do various editing operations on the text you typed in, such as correcting spelling mistakes, rearranging paragraphs and the like. Finally, you must write the information you

have typed into a file with the editor command w:

```
w
```

ed will respond with the number of characters it wrote into the file **junk**.

Until the w command, nothing is stored permanently, so if you hang up and go home the information is lost.† But after w the information is there permanently; you can re-access it any time by typing

```
ed junk
```

Type a **q** command to quit the editor. (If you try to quit without writing, **ed** will print a **?** to remind you. A second **q** gets you out regardless.)

Now create a second file called **temp** in the same manner. You should now have two files, **junk** and **temp**.

What files are out there?

The **ls** (for "list") command lists the names (not contents) of any of the files that UNIX knows about. If you type

```
ls
```

the response will be

```
junk
temp
```

which are indeed the two files just created. The names are sorted into alphabetical order automatically, but other variations are possible. For example, the command

```
ls -t
```

causes the files to be listed in the order in which they were last changed, most recent first. The **-l** option gives a "long" listing:

```
ls -l
```

will produce something like

```
-rw-rw-rw-  1 bwk   41 Jul 22 2:56 junk
-rw-rw-rw-  1 bwk   78 Jul 22 2:57 temp
```

The date and time are of the last change to the file. The 41 and 78 are the number of characters (which should agree with the numbers you got from **ed**). **bwk** is the owner of the file, that is, the person who created it. The **-rw-rw-rw-** tells who has permission to read and write the file, in this case everyone.

Options can be combined: **ls -lt** gives the same thing as **ls -l**, but sorted into time order. You can also name the files you're interested in, and **ls** will list the information about them only. More details can be found in **ls**(1).

The use of optional arguments that begin with a minus sign, like **-t** and **-lt**, is a common convention for UNIX programs. In general, if a program accepts such optional arguments, they precede any filename arguments. It is also vital that you separate the various arguments with spaces: **ls-l** is not the same as **ls -l**.

Printing Files

Now that you've got a file of text, how do you print it so people can look at it? There are a host of programs that do that, probably more than are needed.

One simple thing is to use the editor, since printing is often done just before making changes anyway. You can say

```
ed junk
1,$p
```

ed will reply with the count of the characters in **junk** and then print all the lines in the file. After you learn how to use the editor, you can be selective about the parts you print.

There are times when it's not feasible to use the editor for printing. For example, there is a limit on how big a file **ed** can handle (several thousand lines). Secondly, it will only print one file at a time, and sometimes you want to print several, one after another. So here are a couple of alternatives.

First is **cat**, the simplest of all the printing programs. **cat** simply prints on the terminal the contents of all the files named in a list. Thus

```
cat junk
```

prints one file, and

```
cat junk temp
```

prints two. The files are simply concatenated (hence the name "**cat**") onto the terminal.

pr produces formatted printouts of files. As with **cat**, **pr** prints all the files named in a list. The difference is that it produces headings with date, time, page number and file name at the top of each page, and extra lines to skip over the fold in the paper. Thus,

```
pr junk temp
```

will print **junk** neatly, then skip to the top of a new page and print **temp** neatly.

pr can also produce multi-column output:

```
pr -3 junk
```

prints **junk** in 3-column format. You can use any reasonable number in place of "3" and **pr** will do its best. **pr** has other capabilities as well; see **pr**(1).

† This is not strictly true — if you hang up while editing, the data you were working on is saved in a file called **ed.hup**, which you can continue with at your next session.

It should be noted that **pr** is *not* a formatting program in the sense of shuffling lines around and justifying margins. The true formatters are **nroff** and **troff**, which we will get to in the section on document preparation.

There are also programs that print files on a high-speed printer. Look in your manual under **opr** and **lpr**. Which to use depends on what equipment is attached to your machine.

Shuffling Files About

Now that you have some files in the file system and some experience in printing them, you can try bigger things. For example, you can move a file from one place to another (which amounts to giving it a new name), like this:

```
mv junk precious
```

This means that what used to be "junk" is now "precious". If you do an **ls** command now, you will get

```
precious
temp
```

Beware that if you move a file to another one that already exists, the already existing contents are lost forever.

If you want to make a *copy* of a file (that is, to have two versions of something), you can use the **cp** command:

```
cp precious temp1
```

makes a duplicate copy of **precious** in **temp1**.

Finally, when you get tired of creating and moving files, there is a command to remove files from the file system, called **rm**.

```
rm temp temp1
```

will remove both of the files named.

You will get a warning message if one of the named files wasn't there, but otherwise **rm**, like most UNIX commands, does its work silently. There is no prompting or chatter, and error messages are occasionally curt. This terseness is sometimes disconcerting to newcomers, but experienced users find it desirable.

What's in a Filename

So far we have used filenames without ever saying what's a legal name, so it's time for a couple of rules. First, filenames are limited to 14 characters, which is enough to be descriptive.† Second, although you can use almost any character in a filename, common sense says you should stick to ones that are visible, and that you should probably avoid characters that might be used with other meanings. We have already seen, for example, that in the **ls** command, **ls -t** means to list in time order. So if you had a file whose name was **-t**, you would have a tough time listing it by name. Besides the minus sign, there are other characters which have special meaning. To avoid pitfalls, you would do well to use only letters, numbers and the period until you're familiar with the situation.

On to some more positive suggestions. Suppose you're typing a large document like a book. Logically this divides into many small pieces, like chapters and perhaps sections. Physically it must be divided too, for **ed** will not handle really big files. Thus you should type the document as a number of files. You might have a separate file for each chapter, called

```
chap1
chap2
etc...
```

Or, if each chapter were broken into several files, you might have

```
chap1.1
chap1.2
chap1.3
...
chap2.1
chap2.2
...
```

You can now tell at a glance where a particular file fits into the whole.

There are advantages to a systematic naming convention which are not obvious to the novice UNIX user. What if you wanted to print the whole book? You could say

```
pr chap1.1 chap1.2 chap1.3 .....
```

but you would get tired pretty fast, and would probably even make mistakes. Fortunately, there is a shortcut. You can say

```
pr chap*
```

The * means "anything at all," so this translates into "print all files whose names begin with **chap**", listed in alphabetical order.

This shorthand notation is not a property of the **pr** command, by the way. It is system-wide, a service of the program that interprets commands (the "shell," **sh**(1)). Using that fact, you can see how to list the names of the files in the book:

```
ls chap*
```

produces

† In 4.2 BSD the limit was extended to 255 characters.

```
chap1.1
chap1.2
chap1.3
...
```

The * is not limited to the last position in a filename — it can be anywhere and can occur several times. Thus

```
rm *junk* *temp*
```

removes all files that contain **junk** or **temp** as any part of their name. As a special case, * by itself matches every filename, so

```
pr *
```

prints all your files (alphabetical order), and

```
rm *
```

removes *all files.* (You had better be *very* sure that's what you wanted to say!)

The * is not the only pattern-matching feature available. Suppose you want to print only chapters 1 through 4 and 9. Then you can say

```
pr chap[12349]*
```

The **[...]** means to match any of the characters inside the brackets. A range of consecutive letters or digits can be abbreviated, so you can also do this with

```
pr chap[1-49]*
```

Letters can also be used within brackets: **[a-z]** matches any character in the range a through z.

The ? pattern matches any single character, so

```
ls ?
```

lists all files which have single-character names, and

```
ls -l chap?.1
```

lists information about the first file of each chapter (**chap1.1**, **chap2.1**, etc.).

Of these niceties, * is certainly the most useful, and you should get used to it. The others are frills, but worth knowing.

If you should ever have to turn off the special meaning of *, ?, etc., enclose the entire argument in single quotes, as in

```
ls '?'
```

We'll see some more examples of this shortly.

What's in a Filename, Continued

When you first made that file called **junk**, how did the system know that there wasn't another **junk** somewhere else, especially since the person in the next office is also reading this tutorial? The answer is that generally each user has a private *directory*, which contains only the files that belong to him. When you log in, you are "in" your directory. Unless you take special action, when you create a new file, it is made in the directory that you are currently in; this is most often your own directory, and thus the file is unrelated to any other file of the same name that might exist in someone else's directory.

The set of all files is organized into a (usually big) tree, with your files located several branches into the tree. It is possible for you to "walk" around this tree, and to find any file in the system, by starting at the root of the tree and walking along the proper set of branches. Conversely, you can start where you are and walk toward the root.

Let's try the latter first. The basic tools is the command **pwd** ("print working directory"), which prints the name of the directory you are currently in.

Although the details will vary according to the system you are on, if you give the command **pwd**, it will print something like

```
/usr/your-name
```

This says that you are currently in the directory **your-name**, which is in turn in the directory **/usr**, which is in turn in the root directory called by convention just /. (Even if it's not called **/usr** on your system, you will get something analogous. Make the corresponding mental adjustment and read on.)

If you now type

```
ls /usr/your-name
```

you should get exactly the same list of file names as you get from a plain **ls**: with no arguments, **ls** lists the contents of the current directory; given the name of a directory, it lists the contents of that directory.

Next, try

```
ls /usr
```

This should print a long series of names, among which is your own login name **your-name**. On many systems, **usr** is a directory that contains the directories of all the normal users of the system, like you.

The next step is to try

```
ls /
```

You should get a response something like this (although again the details may be different):

```
bin
dev
etc
lib
tmp
usr
```

This is a collection of the basic directories of files that the system knows about; we are at the root of the tree.

Now try

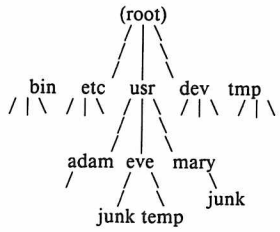
cat /usr/your-name/junk

(if **junk** is still around in your directory). The name

/usr/your-name/junk

is called the **pathname** of the file that you normally think of as "junk". "Pathname" has an obvious meaning: it represents the full name of the path you have to follow from the root through the tree of directories to get to a particular file. It is a universal rule in the UNIX system that anywhere you can use an ordinary filename, you can use a pathname.

Here is a picture which may make this clearer:



Notice that Mary's **junk** is unrelated to Eve's.

This isn't too exciting if all the files of interest are in your own directory, but if you work with someone else or on several projects concurrently, it becomes handy indeed. For example, your friends can print your book by saying

pr /usr/your-name/chap*

Similarly, you can find out what files your neighbor has by saying

ls /usr/neighbor-name

or make your own copy of one of his files by

cp /usr/your-neighbor/his-file yourfile

If your neighbor doesn't want you poking around in his files, or vice versa, privacy can be arranged. Each file and directory has read-write-execute permissions for the owner, a group, and everyone else, which can be set to control access. See **ls**(1) and **chmod**(1) for details. As a matter of observed fact, most users most of the time find openness of more benefit than privacy.

As a final experiment with pathnames, try

ls /bin /usr/bin

Do some of the names look familiar? When you run a program, by typing its name after the prompt character, the system simply looks for a file of that name. It normally looks first in your directory (where it typically doesn't find it), then in **/bin** and finally in **/usr/bin**. There is nothing magic about commands like **cat** or **ls**, except that they have been collected into a couple of places to be easy to find and administer.

What if you work regularly with someone else on common information in his directory? You could just log in as your friend each time you want to, but you can also say "I want to work on his files instead of my own". This is done by changing the directory that you are currently in:

cd /usr/your-friend

(On some systems, **cd** is spelled **chdir.**) Now when you use a filename in something like **cat** or **pr**, it refers to the file in your friend's directory. Changing directories doesn't affect any permissions associated with a file — if you couldn't access a file from your own directory, changing to another directory won't alter that fact. Of course, if you forget what directory you're in, type

pwd

to find out.

It is usually convenient to arrange your own files so that all the files related to one thing are in a directory separate from other projects. For example, when you write your book, you might want to keep all the text in a directory called **book**. So make one with

mkdir book

then go to it with

cd book

then start typing chapters. The book is now found in (presumably)

/usr/your-name/book

To remove the directory **book**, type

rm book/*
rmdir book

The first command removes all files from the directory; the second removes the empty directory.

You can go up one level in the tree of files by saying

cd ..

".." is the name of the parent of whatever directory you are currently in. For completeness, "." is an alternate name for the directory you are in.

Using Files instead of the Terminal

Most of the commands we have seen so far produce output on the terminal; some, like the editor, also take their input from the terminal. It is universal in UNIX systems that the terminal can be replaced by a file for either or both of input and out-

put. As one example,

```
ls
```

makes a list of files on your terminal. But if you say

```
ls >filelist
```

a list of your files will be placed in the file **filelist** (which will be created if it doesn't already exist, or overwritten if it does). The symbol > means "put the output on the following file, rather than on the terminal." Nothing is produced on the terminal. As another example, you could combine several files into one by capturing the output of **cat** in a file:

```
cat f1 f2 f3 >temp
```

The symbol >> operates very much like > does, except that it means "add to the end of." That is,

```
cat f1 f2 f3 >>temp
```

means to concatenate **f1**, **f2** and **f3** to the end of whatever is already in **temp**, instead of overwriting the existing contents. As with >, if **temp** doesn't exist, it will be created for you.

In a similar way, the symbol < means to take the input for a program from the following file, instead of from the terminal. Thus, you could make up a script of commonly used editing commands and put them into a file called **script**. Then you can run the script on a file by saying

```
ed file <script
```

As another example, you can use **ed** to prepare a letter in file **let**, then send it to several people with

```
mail adam eve mary joe <let
```

Pipes

One of the novel contributions of the UNIX system is the idea of a *pipe*. A pipe is simply a way to connect the output of one program to the input of another program, so the two run as a sequence of processes — a pipeline.

For example,

```
pr f g h
```

will print the files **f**, **g**, and **h**, beginning each on a new page. Suppose you want them run together instead. You could say

```
cat f g h >temp
pr <temp
rm temp
```

but this is more work than necessary. Clearly what we want is to take the output of **cat** and connect it to the input of **pr**. So let us use a pipe:

```
cat f g h | pr
```

The vertical bar | means to take the output from **cat**, which would normally have gone to the terminal, and put it into **pr** to be neatly formatted.

There are many other examples of pipes. For example,

```
ls | pr -3
```

prints a list of your files in three columns. The program **wc** counts the number of lines, words and characters in its input, and as we saw earlier, **who** prints a list of currently-logged on people, one per line. Thus

```
who | wc
```

tells how many people are logged on. And of course

```
ls | wc
```

counts your files.

Any program that reads from the terminal can read from a pipe instead; any program that writes on the terminal can drive a pipe. You can have as many elements in a pipeline as you wish.

Many UNIX programs are written so that they will take their input from one or more files if file arguments are given; if no arguments are given they will read from the terminal, and thus can be used in pipelines. **pr** is one example:

```
pr -3 a b c
```

prints files **a**, **b** and **c** in order in three columns. But in

```
cat a b c | pr -3
```

pr prints the information coming down the pipeline, still in three columns.

The Shell

We have already mentioned once or twice the mysterious "shell," which is in fact **sh**(1).† The shell is the program that interprets what you type as commands and arguments. It also looks after translating *, etc., into lists of filenames, and <, >, and | into changes of input and output streams.

The shell has other capabilities too. For example, you can run two programs with one command line by separating the commands with a semicolon; the shell recognizes the semicolon and breaks the line into two commands. Thus

```
date; who
```

does both commands before returning with a prompt character.

† On Berkeley Unix systems, the usual shell for interactive use is the c shell, **csh(1)**.

You can also have more than one program running *simultaneously* if you wish. For example, if you are doing something time-consuming, like the editor script of an earlier section, and you don't want to wait around for the results before starting something else, you can say

ed file <script &

The ampersand at the end of a command line says "start this command running, then take further commands from the terminal immediately," that is, don't wait for it to complete. Thus the script will begin, but you can do something else at the same time. Of course, to keep the output from interfering with what you're doing on the terminal, it would be better to say

ed file <script >script.out &

which saves the output lines in a file called **script.out**.

When you initiate a command with **&**, the system replies with a number called the process number, which identifies the command in case you later want to stop it. If you do, you can say

kill process-number

If you forget the process number, the command **ps** will tell you about everything you have running. (If you are desperate, **kill 0** will kill all your processes.) And if you're curious about other people, **ps a** will tell you about *all* programs that are currently running.

You can say

(command-1; command-2; command-3) &

to start three commands in the background, or you can start a background pipeline with

command-1 | command-2 &

Just as you can tell the editor or some similar program to take its input from a file instead of from the terminal, you can tell the shell to read a file to get commands. (Why not? The shell, after all, is just a program, albeit a clever one.) For instance, suppose you want to set tabs on your terminal, and find out the date and who's on the system every time you log in. Then you can put the three necessary commands (**tabs**, **date**, **who**) into a file, let's call it **startup**, and then run it with

sh startup

This says to run the shell with the file **startup** as input. The effect is as if you had typed the contents of **startup** on the terminal.

If this is to be a regular thing, you can eliminate the need to type **sh**: simply type, once only, the command

chmod +x startup

and thereafter you need only say

startup

to run the sequence of commands. The **chmod**(1) command marks the file executable; the shell recognizes this and runs it as a sequence of commands.

If you want **startup** to run automatically every time you log in, create a file in your login directory called **.profile**, and place in it the line **startup**. When the shell first gains control when you log in, it looks for the **.profile** file and does whatever commands it finds in it.† We'll get back to the shell in the section on programming.

III. DOCUMENT PREPARATION

UNIX systems are used extensively for document preparation. There are two major formatting programs, that is, programs that produce a text with justified right margins, automatic page numbering and titling, automatic hyphenation, and the like. **nroff** is designed to produce output on terminals and line-printers. **troff** (pronounced "tee-roff") instead drives a phototypesetter, which produces very high quality output on photographic paper. This paper was formatted with **troff**.

Formatting Packages

The basic idea of **nroff** and **troff** is that the text to be formatted contains within it "formatting commands" that indicate in detail how the formatted text is to look. For example, there might be commands that specify how long lines are, whether to use single or double spacing, and what running titles to use on each page.

Because **nroff** and **troff** are relatively hard to learn to use effectively, several "packages" of canned formatting requests are available to let you specify paragraphs, running titles, footnotes, multi-column output, and so on, with little effort and without having to learn **nroff** and **troff**. These packages take a modest effort to learn, but the rewards for using them are so great that it is time well spent.

In this section, we will provide a hasty look at the "manuscript" package known as **-ms**. Formatting requests typically consist of a period and two upper-case letters, such as **.TL**, which is used to introduce a title, or **.PP** to begin a new paragraph.

A document is typed so it looks something like this:

† The c shell instead reads a file called **.login**

```
.TL
title of document
.AU
author name
.SH
section heading
.PP
paragraph ...
.PP
another paragraph ...
.SH
another section heading
.PP
etc.
```

The lines that begin with a period are the formatting requests. For example, **.PP** calls for starting a new paragraph. The precise meaning of **.PP** depends on what output device is being used (typesetter or terminal, for instance), and on what publication the document will appear in. For example, **-ms** normally assumes that a paragraph is preceded by a space (one line in **nroff**, ½ line in **troff**), and the first word is indented. These rules can be changed if you like, but they are changed by changing the interpretation of **.PP**, not by re-typing the document.

To actually produce a document in standard format using **-ms**, use the command

```
troff -ms files ...
```

for the typesetter, and

```
nroff -ms files ...
```

for a terminal. The **-ms** argument tells **troff** and **nroff** to use the manuscript package of formatting requests.

There are several similar packages; check with a local expert to determine which ones are in common use on your machine.

Supporting Tools

In addition to the basic formatters, there is a host of supporting programs that help with document preparation. The list in the next few paragraphs is far from complete, so browse through the manual and check with people around you for other possibilities.

eqn and **neqn** let you integrate mathematics into the text of a document, in an easy-to-learn language that closely resembles the way you would speak it aloud. For example, the **eqn** input

```
sum from i=0 to n x sub i ~=~ pi over 2
```

produces the output

$$\sum_{i=0}^{n} x_i = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

The program **tbl** provides an analogous service for preparing tabular material; it does all the computations necessary to align complicated columns with elements of varying widths.

refer prepares bibliographic citations from a data base, in whatever style is defined by the formatting package. It looks after all the details of numbering references in sequence, filling in page and volume numbers, getting the author's initials and the journal name right, and so on.

spell and **typo** detect possible spelling mistakes in a document.† **spell** works by comparing the words in your document to a dictionary, printing those that are not in the dictionary. It knows enough about English spelling to detect plurals and the like, so it does a very good job. **typo** looks for words which are "unusual", and prints those. Spelling mistakes tend to be more unusual, and thus show up early when the most unusual words are printed first.

grep looks through a set of files for lines that contain a particular text pattern (rather like the editor's context search does, but on a bunch of files). For example,

```
grep 'ing$' chap*
```

will find all lines that end with the letters **ing** in the files **chap***. (It is almost always a good practice to put single quotes around the pattern you're searching for, in case it contains characters like * or $ that have a special meaning to the shell.) **grep** is often useful for finding out in which of a set of files the misspelled words detected by **spell** are actually located.

diff prints a list of the differences between two files, so you can compare two versions of something automatically (which certainly beats proofreading by hand).

wc counts the words, lines and characters in a set of files. **tr** translates characters into other characters; for example it will convert upper to lower case and vice versa. This translates upper into lower:

```
tr A-Z a-z <input >output
```

sort sorts files in a variety of ways; **cref** makes cross-references; **ptx** makes a permuted index (keyword-in-context listing). **sed** provides many of the editing facilities of **ed**, but can apply them to arbitrarily long inputs. **awk** provides the ability to do both pattern matching and numeric computations, and to conveniently process fields within lines. These programs are for more advanced users, and they are not limited to document preparation. Put them on your list of things to learn about.

† "typo" is not provided with Berkeley Unix.

Most of these programs are either independently documented (like **eqn** and **tbl**), or are sufficiently simple that the description in the *UNIX Programmer's Manual* is adequate explanation.

Hints for Preparing Documents

Most documents go through several versions (always more than you expected) before they are finally finished. Accordingly, you should do whatever possible to make the job of changing them easy.

First, when you do the purely mechanical operations of typing, type so that subsequent editing will be easy. Start each sentence on a new line. Make lines short, and break lines at natural places, such as after commas and semicolons, rather than randomly. Since most people change documents by rewriting phrases and adding, deleting and rearranging sentences, these precautions simplify any editing you have to do later.

Keep the individual files of a document down to modest size, perhaps ten to fifteen thousand characters. Larger files edit more slowly, and of course if you make a dumb mistake it's better to have clobbered a small file than a big one. Split into files at natural boundaries in the document, for the same reasons that you start each sentence on a new line.

The second aspect of making change easy is to not commit yourself to formatting details too early. One of the advantages of formatting packages like **-ms** is that they permit you to delay decisions to the last possible moment. Indeed, until a document is printed, it is not even decided whether it will be typeset or put on a line printer.

As a rule of thumb, for all but the most trivial jobs, you should type a document in terms of a set of requests like **.PP**, and then define them appropriately, either by using one of the canned packages (the better way) or by defining your own **nroff** and **troff** commands. As long as you have entered the text in some systematic way, it can always be cleaned up and re-formatted by a judicious combination of editing commands and request definitions.

IV. PROGRAMMING

There will be no attempt made to teach any of the programming languages available but a few words of advice are in order. One of the reasons why the UNIX system is a productive programming environment is that there is already a rich set of tools available, and facilities like pipes, I/O redirection, and the capabilities of the shell often make it possible to do a job by pasting together programs that already exist instead of writing from scratch.

The Shell

The pipe mechanism lets you fabricate quite complicated operations out of spare parts that already exist. For example, the first draft of the **spell** program was (roughly)

```
cat ...     collect the files
| tr ...    put each word on a new line
| tr ...    delete punctuation, etc.
| sort      into dictionary order
| uniq      discard duplicates
| comm      print words in text
              but not in dictionary
```

More pieces have been added subsequently, but this goes a long way for such a small effort.

The editor can be made to do things that would normally require special programs on other systems. For example, to list the first and last lines of each of a set of files, such as a book, you could laboriously type

```
ed
e chap1.1
1p
$p
e chap1.2
1p
$p
etc.
```

But you can do the job much more easily. One way is to type

```
ls chap* >temp
```

to get the list of filenames into a file. Then edit this file to make the necessary series of editing commands (using the global commands of **ed**), and write it into **script**. Now the command

```
ed <script
```

will produce the same output as the laborious hand typing. Alternately (and more easily), you can use the fact that the shell will perform loops, repeating a set of commands over and over again for a set of arguments:

```
for i in chap*
do
    ed $i <script
done
```

This sets the shell variable **i** to each file name in turn, then does the command. You can type this command at the terminal, or put it in a file for later execution.

Programming the Shell

An option often overlooked by newcomers is that the shell is itself a programming language, with variables, control flow (**if-else**, **while**, **for**, **case**), sub-

routines, and interrupt handling. Since there are many building-block programs, you can sometimes avoid writing a new program merely by piecing together some of the building blocks with shell command files.

We will not go into any details here; examples and rules can be found in *An Introduction to the UNIX Shell*, by S. R. Bourne.

Programming in C

If you are undertaking anything substantial, C is the only reasonable choice of programming language: everything in the UNIX system is tuned to it. The system itself is written in C, as are most of the programs that run on it. It is also a easy language to use once you get started. C is introduced and fully described in *The C Programming Language* by B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie (Prentice-Hall, 1978). Several sections of the manual describe the system interfaces, that is, how you do I/O and similar functions. Read *UNIX Programming* for more complicated things.

Most input and output in C is best handled with the standard I/O library, which provides a set of I/O functions that exist in compatible form on most machines that have C compilers. In general, it's wisest to confine the system interactions in a program to the facilities provided by this library.

C programs that don't depend too much on special features of UNIX (such as pipes) can be moved to other computers that have C compilers. The list of such machines grows daily; in addition to the original PDP-11, it currently includes at least Honeywell 6000, IBM 370 and PC families, Interdata 8/32, Data General Nova and Eclipse, HP 2100, Harris /7, Motorola 68000 family (including machines like Sun Microsystems and Apple Macintosh), VAX 11 family, SEL 86, and Zilog Z80. Calls to the standard I/O library will work on all of these machines.

There are a number of supporting programs that go with C. **lint** checks C programs for potential portability problems, and detects errors such as mismatched argument types and uninitialized variables.

For larger programs (anything whose source is on more than one file) **make** allows you to specify the dependencies among the source files and the processing steps needed to make a new version; it then checks the times that the pieces were last changed and does the minimal amount of recompiling to create a consistent updated version.

The debugger **adb** is useful for digging through the dead bodies of C programs, but is rather hard to learn to use effectively. The most effective debugging tool is still careful thought, coupled with judiciously placed print statements.†

† The "dbx" debugger, supplied starting with 4.2BSD, has extensive facilities for high-level debugging of C programs and is much easier to use than "adb".

The C compiler provides a limited instrumentation service, so you can find out where programs spend their time and what parts are worth optimizing. Compile the routines with the **-p** option; after the test run, use **prof** to print an execution profile. The command **time** will give you the gross run-time statistics of a program, but they are not super accurate or reproducible.

Other Languages

If you *have* to use Fortran, there are two possibilities. You might consider Ratfor, which gives you the decent control structures and free-form input that characterize C, yet lets you write code that is still portable to other environments. Bear in mind that UNIX Fortran tends to produce large and relatively slow-running programs. Furthermore, supporting software like **adb**, **prof**, etc., are all virtually useless with Fortran programs. There may also be a Fortran 77 compiler on your system. If so, this is a viable alternative to Ratfor, and has the non-trivial advantage that it is compatible with C and related programs. (The Ratfor processor and C tools can be used with Fortran 77 too.)

If your application requires you to translate a language into a set of actions or another language, you are in effect building a compiler, though probably a small one. In that case, you should be using the **yacc** compiler-compiler, which helps you develop a compiler quickly. The **lex** lexical analyzer generator does the same job for the simpler languages that can be expressed as regular expressions. It can be used by itself, or as a front end to recognize inputs for a yacc-based program. Both **yacc** and **lex** require some sophistication to use, but the initial effort of learning them can be repaid many times over in programs that are easy to change later on.

Most UNIX systems also make available other languages, such as Algol 68, APL, Basic, Lisp, Pascal, and Snobol. Whether these are useful depends largely on the local environment: if someone cares about the language and has worked on it, it may be in good shape. If not, the odds are strong that it will be more trouble than it's worth.

V. UNIX READING LIST

General:

K. L. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, *The UNIX Programmer's Manual,* Bell Laboratories, 1978 (PS2:3)‡ Lists commands, system routines and interfaces, file formats, and some of the maintenance procedures. You can't live without this, although you will probably only need to read section 1.

D. M. Ritchie and K. L. Thompson, "The UNIX Time-sharing System," CACM, July 1974. (PS2:1)‡ An overview of the system, for people interested in operating systems. Worth reading by anyone who programs. Contains a remarkable number of one-sentence observations on how to do things right.

The Bell System Technical Journal (BSTJ) Special Issue on UNIX, July/August, 1978, contains many papers describing recent developments, and some retrospective material.

The 2nd International Conference on Software Engineering (October, 1976) contains several papers describing the use of the Programmer's Workbench (PWB) version of UNIX.

Document Preparation:

B. W. Kernighan, "A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX Text Editor" (USD:12) and "Advanced Editing on UNIX," (USD:13) Bell Laboratories, 1978.† Beginners need the introduction; the advanced material will help you get the most out of the editor.

M. E. Lesk, "Typing Documents on UNIX," Bell Laboratories, 1978. (USD:20)† Describes the **-ms** macro package, which isolates the novice from the vagaries of **nroff** and **troff**, and takes care of most formatting situations. If this specific package isn't available on your system, something similar probably is. The most likely alternative is the PWB/UNIX macro package **-mm**; see your local guru if you use PWB/UNIX.*

B. W. Kernighan and L. L. Cherry, "A System for Typesetting Mathematics," Bell Laboratories Computing Science Tech. Rep. 17. (USD:26)†

M. E. Lesk, "Tbl — A Program to Format Tables," Bell Laboratories CSTR 49, 1976. (USD:28)†

J. F. Ossanna, Jr., "NROFF/TROFF User's Manual," Bell Laboratories CSTR 54, 1976. (USD:24)† **troff** is the basic formatter used by **-ms**, **eqn** and **tbl**. The reference manual is indispensable if you are going to write or maintain these or similar programs. But start with:

B. W. Kernighan, "A TROFF Tutorial," Bell Laboratories, 1976. (USD:25)† An attempt to unravel the intricacies of **troff**.

Programming:

B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, Prentice-Hall, 1978. Contains a tutorial introduction, complete discussions of all language features, and the reference manual.

B. W. Kernighan and R. Pike, *The Unix Programming Environment*, Prentice-Hall, 1984. Contains many examples of C programs which use the system interfaces, and explanations of "why".

B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie, "UNIX Programming," Bell Laboratories, 1978. (PS2:3)‡ Describes how to interface with the system from C programs: I/O calls, signals, processes.

S. R. Bourne, "An Introduction to the UNIX Shell," Bell Laboratories, 1978. (USD:3)† An introduction and reference manual for the Version 7 shell. Mandatory reading if you intend to make effective use of the programming power of this shell.

S. C. Johnson, "Yacc — Yet Another Compiler-Compiler," Bell Laboratories CSTR 32, 1978. (PS1:15)‡

M. E. Lesk, "Lex — A Lexical Analyzer Generator," Bell Laboratories CSTR 39, 1975. (PS1:16)‡

S. C. Johnson, "Lint, a C Program Checker," Bell Laboratories CSTR 65, 1977. (PS1:9)‡

S. I. Feldman, "MAKE — A Program for Maintaining Computer Programs," Bell Laboratories CSTR 57, 1977. (PS1:12)‡

J. F. Maranzano and S. R. Bourne, "A Tutorial Introduction to ADB," Bell Laboratories CSTR 62, 1977. (PS1:10)‡ An introduction to a powerful but complex debugging tool.

S. I. Feldman and P. J. Weinberger, "A Portable Fortran 77 Compiler," Bell Laboratories, 1978. (PS1:2)‡ A full Fortran 77 for UNIX systems.

---

† These documents (previously in Volume 2 of the Bell Labs Unix distribution) are provided among the "User Supplementary" Documents for 4.3BSD, available from the Usenix Association.

‡ These are among the "Programmer Supplementary" Documents for 4.3BSD. PS1 is Volume 1, PS2 is Volume 2.

*The macro package -me is additionally available on Berkeley Unix Systems. -mm is typically not available.

LEARN — Computer-Aided Instruction on UNIX (Second Edition)

Brian W. Kernighan

Michael E. Lesk

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

This paper describes the second version of the *learn* program for interpreting CAI scripts on the UNIX† operating system, and a set of scripts that provide a computerized introduction to the system.

Six current scripts cover basic commands and file handling, the editor, additional file handling commands, the *eqn* program for mathematical typing, the "–ms" package of formatting macros, and an introduction to the C programming language. These scripts now include a total of about 530 lessons.

Many users from a wide variety of backgrounds have used *learn* to acquire basic UNIX skills. Most usage involves the first two scripts, an introduction to UNIX files and commands, and the UNIX editor.

The second version of *learn* is about four times faster than the previous one in CPU utilization, and much faster in perceived time because of better overlap of computing and printing. It also requires less file space than the first version. Many of the lessons have been revised; new material has been added to reflect changes and enhancements in UNIX itself. Script-writing is also easier because of revisions to the script language.

1. Introduction.

Learn is a driver for CAI scripts. It is intended to permit the easy composition of lessons and lesson fragments to teach people computer skills. Since it is teaching the same system on which it is implemented, it makes direct use of UNIX facilities to create a controlled UNIX environment. The system includes two main parts: (1) a driver that interprets the lesson scripts; and (2) the lesson scripts themselves. At present there are seven scripts:

- basic file handling commands
- the UNIX text editors *ed* and *vi*
- advanced file handling
- the *eqn* language for typing mathematics
- the "ms" macro package for document formatting
- the C programming language

The purported advantages of CAI scripts for training in computer skills include the following:

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

(a) students are forced to perform the exercises that are in fact the basis of training in any case;

(b) students receive immediate feedback and confirmation of progress;

(c) students may progress at their own rate;

(d) no schedule requirements are imposed; students may study at any time convenient for them;

(e) the lessons may be improved individually and the improvements are immediately available to new users;

(f) since the student has access to a computer for the CAI script there is a place to do exercises;

(g) the use of high technology will improve student motivation and the interest of their management.

Opposed to this, of course, is the absence of anyone to whom the student may direct questions. If CAI is used without a "counselor" or other assistance, it should properly be compared to a textbook, lecture series, or taped course, rather than to a seminar. CAI has been used for many years in a variety of educational areas.[1,2,3] The use of a computer to teach computer use itself, however, offers unique advantages. The skills developed to get through the script are exactly those needed to use the computer; there is no waste effort.

The scripts written so far are based on some familiar assumptions about education; these assumptions are outlined in the next section. The remaining sections describe the operation of the script driver and the particular scripts now available. The driver puts few restrictions on the script writer, but the current scripts are of a rather rigid and stereotyped form in accordance with the theory in the next section and practical limitations.

2. Educational Assumptions and Design.

First, the way to teach people how to do something is to have them do it. Scripts should not contain long pieces of explanation; they should instead frequently ask the student to do some task. So teaching is always by example: the typical script fragment shows a small example of some technique and then asks the user to either repeat that example or produce a variation on it. All are intended to be easy enough that most students will get most questions right, reinforcing the desired behavior.

Most lessons fall into one of three types. The simplest presents a lesson and asks for a yes or no answer to a question. The student is given a chance to experiment before replying. The script checks for the correct reply. Problems of this form are sparingly used.

The second type asks for a word or number as an answer. For example a lesson on files might say

How many files are there in the current directory? Type "answer N", where N is the number of files.

The student is expected to respond (perhaps after experimenting) with

answer 17

or whatever. Surprisingly often, however, the idea of a substitutable argument (i.e., replacing *N* by 17) is difficult for non-programmer students, so the first few such lessons need real care.

The third type of lesson is open-ended — a task is set for the student, appropriate parts of the input or output are monitored, and the student types *ready* when the task is done. Figure 1 shows a sample dialog that illustrates the last of these, using two lessons about the *cat* (concatenate, i.e., print) command taken from early in the script that teaches file handling. Most *learn* lessons are of this form.

After each correct response the computer congratulates the student and indicates the lesson number that has just been completed, permitting the student to restart the script after that lesson. If

Figure 1: Sample dialog from basic files script

(Student responses in italics; '$' is the prompt)

```
A file can be printed on your terminal
by using the "cat" command.  Just say
"cat file" where "file" is the file name.
For example, there is a file named
"food" in this directory.  List it
by saying "cat food"; then type "ready".
$ cat food
  this is the file
  named food.
$ ready

Good.  Lesson 3.3a (1)

Of course, you can print any file with "cat".
In particular, it is common to first use
"ls" to find the name of a file and then "cat"
to print it.  Note the difference between
"ls", which tells you the name of the file,
and "cat", which tells you the contents.
One file in the current directory is named for
a President.  Print the file, then type "ready".
$ cat President
cat: can't open President
$ ready

Sorry, that's not right.  Do you want to try again? yes
Try the problem again.
$ ls
.ocopy
X1
roosevelt
$ cat roosevelt
  this file is named roosevelt
  and contains three lines of
  text.
$ ready

Good.  Lesson 3.3b (0)

The "cat" command can also print several files
at once.  In fact, it is named "cat" as an abbreviation
for "concatenate"....
```

the answer is wrong, the student is offered a chance to repeat the lesson. The "speed" rating of the student (explained in section 5) is given after the lesson number when the lesson is completed successfully; it is printed only for the aid of script authors checking out possible errors in the lessons.

It is assumed that there is no foolproof way to determine if the student truly "understands" what he or she is doing; accordingly, the current *learn* scripts only measure performance, not comprehension. If the student can perform a given task, that is deemed to be "learning."[4]

The main point of using the computer is that what the student does is checked for correctness immediately. Unlike many CAI scripts, however, these scripts provide few facilities for dealing with wrong answers. In practice, if most of the answers are not right the script is a failure; the universal solution to student error is to provide a new, easier script. Anticipating possible wrong answers is an endless job, and it is really easier as well as better to provide a simpler script.

Along with this goes the assumption that anything can be taught to anybody if it can be broken into sufficiently small pieces. Anything not absorbed in a single chunk is just subdivided.

To avoid boring the faster students, however, an effort is made in the files and editor scripts to provide three tracks of different difficulty. The fastest sequence of lessons is aimed at roughly the bulk and speed of a typical tutorial manual and should be adequate for review and for well-prepared students. The next track is intended for most users and is roughly twice as long. Typically, for example, the fast track might present an idea and ask for a variation on the example shown; the normal track will first ask the student to repeat the example that was shown before attempting a variation. The third and slowest track, which is often three or four times the length of the fast track, is intended to be adequate for anyone. (The lessons of Figure 1 are from the third track.) The multiple tracks also mean that a student repeating a course is unlikely to hit the same series of lessons; this makes it profitable for a shaky user to back up and try again, and many students have done so.

The tracks are not completely distinct, however. Depending on the number of correct answers the student has given for the last few lessons, the program may switch tracks. The driver is actually capable of following an arbitrary directed graph of lesson sequences, as discussed in section 5. Some more structured arrangement, however, is used in all current scripts to aid the script writer in organizing the material into lessons. It is sufficiently difficult to write lessons that the three-track theory is not followed very closely except in the files and editor scripts. Accordingly, in some cases, the fast track is produced merely by skipping lessons from the slower track. In others, there is essentially only one track.

The main reason for using the *learn* program rather than simply writing the same material as a workbook is not the selection of tracks, but actual hands-on experience. Learning by doing is much more effective than pencil and paper exercises.

Learn also provides a mechanical check on performance. The first version in fact would not let the student proceed unless it received correct answers to the questions it set and it would not tell a student the right answer. This somewhat Draconian approach has been moderated in version 2. Lessons are sometimes badly worded or even just plain wrong; in such cases, the student has no recourse. But if a student is simply unable to complete one lesson, that should not prevent access to the rest. Accordingly, the current version of *learn* allows the student to skip a lesson that he cannot pass; a "no" answer to the "Do you want to try again?" question in Figure 1 will pass to the next lesson. It is still true that *learn* will not tell the student the right answer.

Of course, there are valid objections to the assumptions above. In particular, some students may object to not understanding what they are doing; and the procedure of smashing everything into small pieces may provoke the retort "you can't cross a ditch in two jumps." Since writing CAI scripts is considerably more tedious than ordinary manuals, however, it is safe to assume that there will always be alternatives to the scripts as a way of learning. In fact, for a reference manual of 3 or 4 pages it would not be surprising to have a tutorial manual of 20 pages and a (multi-track) script of 100 pages. Thus the reference manual will exist long before the scripts.

3. Scripts.

As mentioned above, the present scripts try at most to follow a three-track theory. Thus little of the potential complexity of the possible directed graph is employed, since care must be taken in lesson construction to see that every necessary fact is presented in every possible path through the units. In addition, it is desirable that every unit have alternate successors to deal with student errors.

In most existing courses, the first few lessons are devoted to checking prerequisites. For example, before the student is allowed to proceed through the editor script the script verifies that the student understands files and is able to type. It is felt that the sooner lack of student preparation is

detected, the easier it will be on the student. Anyone proceeding through the scripts should be getting mostly correct answers; otherwise, the system will be unsatisfactory both because the wrong habits are being learned and because the scripts make little effort to deal with wrong answers. Unprepared students should not be encouraged to continue with scripts.

There are some preliminary items which the student must know before any scripts can be tried. In particular, the student must know how to connect to a UNIX system, set the terminal properly, log in, and execute simple commands (e.g., *learn* itself). In addition, the character erase and line kill conventions (# and @) should be known. It is hard to see how this much could be taught by computer-aided instruction, since a student who does not know these basic skills will not be able to run the learning program. A brief description on paper is provided (see Appendix A), although assistance will be needed for the first few minutes. This assistance, however, need not be highly skilled.

The first script in the current set deals with files. It assumes the basic knowledge above and teaches the student about the *ls*, *cat*, *mv*, *rm*, *cp* and *diff* commands. It also deals with the abbreviation characters *, ?, and [ ] in file names. It does not cover pipes or I/O redirection, nor does it present the many options on the *ls* command.

This script contains 31 lessons in the fast track; two are intended as prerequisite checks, seven are review exercises. There are a total of 75 lessons in all three tracks, and the instructional passages typed at the student to begin each lesson total 4,476 words. The average lesson thus begins with a 60-word message. In general, the fast track lessons have somewhat longer introductions, and the slow tracks somewhat shorter ones. The longest message is 144 words and the shortest 14.

The second script trains students in the use of the UNIX context editor *ed*, a sophisticated editor using regular expressions for searching.[5] All editor features except encryption, mark names and ';' in addressing are covered. The fast track contains 2 prerequisite checks, 93 lessons, and a review lesson. It is supplemented by 146 additional lessons in other tracks.

A comparison of sizes may be of interest. The *ed* description in the reference manual is 2,572 words long. The *ed* tutorial[6] is 6,138 words long. The fast track through the *ed* script is 7,407 words of explanatory messages, and the total *ed* script, 242 lessons, has 15,615 words. The average *ed* lesson is thus also about 60 words; the largest is 171 words and the smallest 10. The original *ed* script represents about three man-weeks of effort.

The advanced file handling script deals with *ls* options, I/O diversion, pipes, and supporting programs like *pr*, *wc*, *tail*, *spell* and *grep*. (The basic file handling script is a prerequisite.) It is not as refined as the first two scripts; this is reflected at least partly in the fact that it provides much less of a full three-track sequence than they do. On the other hand, since it is perceived as "advanced," it is hoped that the student will have somewhat more sophistication and be better able to cope with it at a reasonably high level of performance.

A fourth script covers the *eqn* language for typing mathematics. This script must be run on a terminal capable of printing mathematics, for instance the DASI 300 and similar Diablo-based terminals, or the nearly extinct Model 37 teletype. Again, this script is relatively short of tracks: of 76 lessons, only 17 are in the second track and 2 in the third track. Most of these provide additional practice for students who are having trouble in the first track.

The *-ms* script for formatting macros is a short one-track only script. The macro package it describes is no longer the standard, so this script will undoubtedly be superseded in the future. Furthermore, the linear style of a single learn script is somewhat inappropriate for the macros, since the macro package is composed of many independent features, and few users need all of them. It would be better to have a selection of short lesson sequences dealing with the features independently.

The script on C is in a state of transition. It was originally designed to follow a tutorial on C, but that document has since become obsolete. The current script has been partially converted to follow the order of presentation in *The C Programming Language,*[7] but this job is not complete. The C script was never intended to teach C; rather it is supposed to be a series of exercises for which the computer provides checking and (upon success) a suggested solution.

This combination of scripts covers much of the material which any UNIX user will need to know to make effective use of the system. With enlargement of the advanced files course to include more on the command interpreter, there will be a relatively complete introduction to UNIX available via *learn*. Although we make no pretense that *learn* will replace other instructional materials, it should provide a useful supplement to existing tutorials and reference manuals.

4. Experience with Students.

Learn has been installed on many different UNIX systems. Most of the usage is on the first two scripts, so these are more thoroughly debugged and polished. As a (random) sample of user experience, the *learn* program has been used at Bell Labs at Indian Hill for 10,500 lessons in a four month period. About 3600 of these are in the files script, 4100 in the editor, and 1400 in advanced files. The passing rate is about 80%, that is, about 4 lessons are passed for every one failed. There have been 86 distinct users of the files script, and 58 of the editor. On our system at Murray Hill, there have been nearly 2000 lessons over two weeks that include Christmas and New Year. Users have ranged in age from six up.

It is difficult to characterize typical sessions with the scripts; many instances exist of someone doing one or two lessons and then logging out, as do instances of someone pausing in a script for twenty minutes or more. In the earlier version of *learn*, the average session in the files course took 32 minutes and covered 23 lessons. The distribution is quite broad and skewed, however; the longest session was 130 minutes and there were five sessions shorter than five minutes. The average lesson took about 80 seconds. These numbers are roughly typical for non-programmers; a UNIX expert can do the scripts at approximately 30 seconds per lesson, most of which is the system printing.

At present working through a section of the middle of the files script took about 1.4 seconds of processor time per lesson, and a system expert typing quickly took 15 seconds of real time per lesson. A novice would probably take at least a minute. Thus a UNIX system could support ten students working simultaneously with some spare capacity.

5. The Script Interpreter.

The *learn* program itself merely interprets scripts. It provides facilities for the script writer to capture student responses and their effects, and simplifies the job of passing control to and recovering control from the student. This section describes the operation and usage of the driver program, and indicates what is required to produce a new script. Readers only interested in the existing scripts may skip this section.

The file structure used by *learn* is shown in Figure 2. There is one parent directory (named *lib*) containing the script data. Within this directory are subdirectories, one for each subject in which a course is available, one for logging (named *log*), and one in which user sub-directories are created (named *play*). The subject directory contains master copies of all lessons, plus any supporting material for that subject. In a given subdirectory, each lesson is a single text file. Lessons are usually named systematically; the file that contains lesson *n* is called *Ln*.

When *learn* is executed, it makes a private directory for the user to work in, within the *learn* portion of the file system. A fresh copy of all the files used in each lesson (mostly data for the student to operate upon) is made each time a student starts a lesson, so the script writer may assume that everything is reinitialized each time a lesson is entered. The student directory is deleted after each session; any permanent records must be kept elsewhere.

The script writer must provide certain basic items in each lesson:

(1) the text of the lesson;

(2) the set-up commands to be executed before the user gets control;

(3) the data, if any, which the user is supposed to edit, transform, or otherwise process;

(4) the evaluating commands to be executed after the user has finished the lesson, to decide whether the answer is right; and

Figure 2: Directory structure for *learn*

```
lib
    play
                student1
                        files for student1...
                student2
                        files for student2...
    files
                L0.1a   lessons for files course
                L0.1b
                ...
    editor
                ...
    (other courses)
    log
```

(5) a list of possible successor lessons.

Learn tries to minimize the work of bookkeeping and installation, so that most of the effort involved in script production is in planning lessons, writing tutorial paragraphs, and coding tests of student performance.

The basic sequence of events is as follows. First, *learn* creates the working directory. Then, for each lesson, *learn* reads the script for the lesson and processes it a line at a time. The lines in the script are: (1) commands to the script interpreter to print something, to create a files, to test something, etc.; (2) text to be printed or put in a file; (3) other lines, which are sent to the shell to be executed. One line in each lesson turns control over to the user; the user can run any UNIX commands. The user mode terminates when the user types *yes*, *no*, *ready*, or *answer*. At this point, the user's work is tested; if the lesson is passed, a new lesson is selected, and if not the old one is repeated.

Let us illustrate this with the script for the second lesson of Figure 1; this is shown in Figure 3.

Lines which begin with # are commands to the *learn* script interpreter. For example,

#print

causes printing of any text that follows, up to the next line that begins with a sharp.

#print file

prints the contents of *file*; it is the same as *cat file* but has less overhead. Both forms of *#print* have the added property that if a lesson is failed, the *#print* will not be executed the second time through; this avoids annoying the student by repeating the preamble to a lesson.

#create filename

creates a file of the specified name, and copies any subsequent text up to a # to the file. This is used for creating and initializing working files and reference data for the lessons.

#user

gives control to the student; each line he or she types is passed to the shell for execution. The *#user* mode is terminated when the student types one of *yes*, *no*, *ready* or *answer*. At that time, the driver resumes interpretation of the script.

#copyin
#uncopyin

Figure 3: Sample Lesson

```
#print
Of course, you can print any file with "cat".
In particular, it is common to first use
"ls" to find the name of a file and then "cat"
to print it.  Note the difference between
"ls", which tells you the name of the files,
and "cat", which tells you the contents.
One file in the current directory is named for
a President.  Print the file, then type "ready".
#create roosevelt
  this file is named roosevelt
  and contains three lines of
  text.
#copyout
#user
#uncopyout
tail -3 .ocopy >X1
#cmp X1 roosevelt
#log
#next
3.2b 2
```

Anything the student types between these commands is copied onto a file called *.copy*. This lets the script writer interrogate the student's responses upon regaining control.

#copyout
#uncopyout

Between these commands, any material typed at the student by any program is copied to the file *.ocopy*. This lets the script writer interrogate the effect of what the student typed, which true believers in the performance theory of learning usually prefer to the student's actual input.

#pipe
#unpipe

Normally the student input and the script commands are fed to the UNIX command interpreter (the "shell") one line at a time. This won't do if, for example, a sequence of editor commands is provided, since the input to the editor must be handed to the editor, not to the shell. Accordingly, the material between *#pipe* and *#unpipe* commands is fed continuously through a pipe so that such sequences work. If *copyout* is also desired the *copyout* brackets must include the *pipe* brackets.

There are several commands for setting status after the student has attempted the lesson.

#cmp file1 file2

is an in-line implementation of *cmp*, which compares two files for identity.

#match stuff

The last line of the student's input is compared to *stuff*, and the success or fail status is set according to it. Extraneous things like the word *answer* are stripped before the comparison is made. There may be several *#match* lines; this provides a convenient mechanism for handling multiple "right" answers. Any text up to a # on subsequent lines after a successful *#match* is printed; this is illustrated in Figure 4, another sample lesson.

#bad stuff

Figure 4: Another Sample Lesson

```
#print
What command will move the current line
to the end of the file? Type
"answer COMMAND", where COMMAND is the command.
#copyin
#user
#uncopyin
#match m$
#match .m$
"m$" is easier.
#log
#next
63.1d 10
```

This is similar to *#match*, except that it corresponds to specific failure answers; this can be used to produce hints for particular wrong answers that have been anticipated by the script writer.

#succeed
#fail

print a message upon success or failure (as determined by some previous mechanism).

When the student types one of the "commands" *yes*, *no*, *ready*, or *answer*, the driver terminates the *#user* command, and evaluation of the student's work can begin. This can be done either by the built-in commands above, such as *#match* and *#cmp*, or by status returned by normal UNIX commands, typically *grep* and *test*. The last command should return status true (0) if the task was done successfully and false (non-zero) otherwise; this status return tells the driver whether or not the student has successfully passed the lesson.

Performance can be logged:

#log file

writes the date, lesson, user name and speed rating, and a success/failure indication on *file*. The command

#log

by itself writes the logging information in the logging directory within the *learn* hierarchy, and is the normal form.

#next

is followed by a few lines, each with a successor lesson name and an optional speed rating on it. A typical set might read

```
25.1a  10
25.2a  5
25.3a  2
```

indicating that unit 25.1a is a suitable follow-on lesson for students with a speed rating of 10 units, 25.2a for student with speed near 5, and 25.3a for speed near 2. Speed ratings are maintained for each session with a student; the rating is increased by one each time the student gets a lesson right and decreased by four each time the student gets a lesson wrong. Thus the driver tries to maintain a level such that the users get 80% right answers. The maximum rating is limited to 10 and the minimum to 0. The initial rating is zero unless the student specifies a different rating when starting a session.

If the student passes a lesson, a new lesson is selected and the process repeats. If the student fails, a false status is returned and the program reverts to the previous lesson and tries another alternative. If it can not find another alternative, it skips forward a lesson. *bye*, bye, which causes a graceful exit from the *learn* system. Hanging up is the usual novice's way out.

The lessons may form an arbitrary directed graph, although the present program imposes a limitation on cycles in that it will not present a lesson twice in the same session. If the student is unable to answer one of the exercises correctly, the driver searches for a previous lesson with a set of alternatives as successors (following the *#next* line). From the previous lesson with alternatives one route was taken earlier; the program simply tries a different one.

It is perfectly possible to write sophisticated scripts that evaluate the student's speed of response, or try to estimate the elegance of the answer, or provide detailed analysis of wrong answers. Lesson writing is so tedious already, however, that most of these abilities are likely to go unused.

The driver program depends heavily on features of UNIX that are not available on many other operating systems. These include the ease of manipulating files and directories, file redirection, the ability to use the command interpreter as just another program (even in a pipeline), command status testing and branching, the ability to catch signals like interrupts, and of course the pipeline mechanism itself. Although some parts of *learn* might be transferable to other systems, some generality will probably be lost.

A bit of history: The first version of *learn* had fewer built-in words in the driver program, and made more use of the facilities of UNIX. For example, file comparison was done by creating a *cmp* process, rather than comparing the two files within *learn*. Lessons were not stored as text files, but as archives. There was no concept of the in-line document; even *#print* had to be followed by a file name. Thus the initialization for each lesson was to extract the archive into the working directory (typically 4-8 files), then *#print* the lesson text.

The combination of such things made *learn* slower. The new version is about 4 or 5 times faster. Furthermore, it appears even faster to the user because in a typical lesson, the printing of the message comes first, and file setup with *#create* can be overlapped with the printng, so that when the program finishes printing, it is really ready for the user to type at it.

It is also a great advantage to the script maintainer that lessons are now just ordinary text files. They can be edited without any difficulty, and UNIX text manipulation tools can be applied to them. The result has been that there is much less resistance to going in and fixing substandard lessons.

6. Conclusions

The following observations can be made about secretaries, typists, and other non-programmers who have used *learn*:

(a) A novice must have assistance with the mechanics of communicating with the computer to get through to the first lesson or two; once the first few lessons are passed people can proceed on their own.

(b) The terminology used in the first few lessons is obscure to those inexperienced with computers. It would help if there were a low level reference card for UNIX to supplement the existing programmer oriented bulky manual and bulky reference card.

(c) The concept of "substitutable argument" is hard to grasp, and requires help.

(d) They enjoy the system for the most part. Motivation matters a great deal, however.

It takes an hour or two for a novice to get through the script on file handling. The total time for a reasonably intelligent and motivated novice to proceed from ignorance to a reasonable ability to create new files and manipulate old ones seems to be a few days, with perhaps half of each day spent on the machine.

The normal way of proceeding has been to have students in the same room with someone who knows UNIX and the scripts. Thus the student is not brought to a halt by difficult questions. The burden on the counselor, however, is much lower than that on a teacher of a course. Ideally, the students should be encouraged to proceed with instruction immediately prior to their actual use of the

computer. They should exercise the scripts on the same computer and the same kind of terminal that they will later use for their real work, and their first few jobs for the computer should be relatively easy ones. Also, both training and initial work should take place on days when the UNIX hardware and software are working reliably. Rarely is all of this possible, but the closer one comes the better the result. For example, if it is known that the hardware is shaky one day, it is better to attempt to reschedule training for another one. Students are very frustrated by machine downtime; when nothing is happening, it takes some sophistication and experience to distinguish an infinite loop, a slow but functioning program, a program waiting for the user, and a broken machine.*

One disadvantage of training with *learn* is that students come to depend completely on the CAI system, and do not try to read manuals or use other learning aids. This is unfortunate, not only because of the increased demands for completeness and accuracy of the scripts, but because the scripts do not cover all of the UNIX system. New users should have manuals (appropriate for their level) and read them; the scripts ought to be altered to recommend suitable documents and urge students to read them.

There are several other difficulties which are clearly evident. From the student's viewpoint, the most serious is that lessons still crop up which simply can't be passed. Sometimes this is due to poor explanations, but just as often it is some error in the lesson itself — a botched setup, a missing file, an invalid test for correctness, or some system facility that doesn't work on the local system in the same way it did on the development system. It takes knowledge and a certain healthy arrogance on the part of the user to recognize that the fault is not his or hers, but the script writer's. Permitting the student to get on with the next lesson regardless does alleviate this somewhat, and the logging facilities make it easy to watch for lessons that no one can pass, but it is still a problem.

The biggest problem with the previous *learn* was speed (or lack thereof) — it was often excruciatingly slow and made a significant drain on the system. The current version so far does not seem to have that difficulty, although some scripts, notably *eqn*, are intrinsically slow. *eqn*, for example, must do a lot of work even to print its introductions, let alone check the student responses, but delay is perceptible in all scripts from time to time.

Another potential problem is that it is possible to break *learn* inadvertently, by pushing interrupt at the wrong time, or by removing critical files, or any number of similar slips. The defenses against such problems have steadily been improved, to the point where most students should not notice difficulties. Of course, it will always be possible to break *learn* maliciously, but this is not likely to be a problem.

One area is more fundamental — some UNIX commands are sufficiently global in their effect that *learn* currently does not allow them to be executed at all. The most obvious is *cd*, which changes to another directory. The prospect of a student who is learning about directories inadvertently moving to some random directory and removing files has deterred us from even writing lessons on *cd*, but ultimately lessons on such topics probably should be added.

7. Acknowledgments

We are grateful to all those who have tried *learn,* for we have benefited greatly from their suggestions and criticisms. In particular, M. E. Bittrich, J. L. Blue, S. I. Feldman, P. A. Fox, and M. J. McAlpin have provided substantial feedback. Conversations with E. Z. Rothkopf also provided many of the ideas in the system. We are also indebted to Don Jackowski for serving as a guinea pig for the second version, and to Tom Plum for his efforts to improve the C script.

References

1. D.L. Bitzer and D. Skaperdas, "The Economics of a Large Scale Computer Based Educational System: Plato IV," in *Computer Assisted Instruction, Testing and Guidance*, ed. Wayne Holtzman, pp. 17-29, Harper and Row, New York, 1970.

* We have even known an expert programmer to decide the computer was broken when he had simply left his terminal in local mode. Novices have great difficulties with such problems.

2. D.C. Gray, J.P. Hulskamp, J.H. Kumm, S. Lichtenstein, and N.E. Nimmervoll, "COALA - A Minicomputer CAI System," *IEEE Trans. Education*, vol. E-20(1), pp. 73-77, Feb. 1977.

3. P. Suppes, "On Using Computers to Individualize Instruction," in *The Computer in American Education*, ed. D.D. Bushnell and D.W. Allen, pp. 11-24, John Wiley, New York, 1967.

4. B.F. Skinner, "Why We Need Teaching Machines," *Harv. Educ. Review*, vol. 31, pp. 377-398, 1961. Reprinted in *Educational Technology*, ed. J.P. DeCecco, Holt Rinehart & Winston (New York, 1964)

5. K. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, *UNIX Programmer's Manual*, Bell Laboratories, 1978. See section *ed* (1).

6. B.W. Kernighan, *A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX text editor*, 1974. Bell Laboratories internal memorandum

7. B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1978.

An Introduction to the UNIX Shell

S. R. Bourne

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

(Updated for 4.3BSD by Mark Seiden)

ABSTRACT

The *shell*‡ is a command programming language that provides an interface to the UNIX† operating system. Its features include control-flow primitives, parameter passing, variables and string substitution. Constructs such as *while, if then else, case* and *for* are available. Two-way communication is possible between the *shell* and commands. String-valued parameters, typically file names or flags, may be passed to a command. A return code is set by commands that may be used to determine control-flow, and the standard output from a command may be used as shell input.

The *shell* can modify the environment in which commands run. Input and output can be redirected to files, and processes that communicate through 'pipes' can be invoked. Commands are found by searching directories in the file system in a sequence that can be defined by the user. Commands can be read either from the terminal or from a file, which allows command procedures to be stored for later use.

1.0 Introduction

The shell is both a command language and a programming language that provides an interface to the UNIX operating system. This memorandum describes, with examples, the UNIX shell. The first section covers most of the everyday requirements of terminal users. Some familiarity with UNIX is an advantage when reading this section; see, for example, "UNIX for beginners".[1] Section 2 describes those features of the shell primarily intended for use within shell procedures. These include the control-flow primitives and string-valued variables provided by the shell. A knowledge of a programming language would be a help when reading this section. The last section describes the more advanced features of the shell. References of the form "see *pipe* (2)" are to a section of the UNIX manual.[2]

1.1 Simple commands

Simple commands consist of one or more words separated by blanks. The first word is the name of the command to be executed; any remaining words are passed as arguments to the command. For example,

```
who
```

is a command that prints the names of users logged in. The command

‡ This paper describes sh(1). If it's the c shell (csh) you're interested in, a good place to begin is William Joy's paper "An Introduction to the C shell" (USD:4).
† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

```
ls -l
```

prints a list of files in the current directory. The argument *-l* tells *ls* to print status information, size and the creation date for each file.

1.2 Background commands

To execute a command the shell normally creates a new *process* and waits for it to finish. A command may be run without waiting for it to finish. For example,

```
cc pgm.c &
```


calls the C compiler to compile the file *pgm.c*. The trailing **&** is an operator that instructs the shell not to wait for the command to finish. To help keep track of such a process the shell reports its process number following its creation. A list of currently active processes may be obtained using the *ps* command.

1.3 Input output redirection

Most commands produce output on the standard output that is initially connected to the terminal. This output may be sent to a file by writing, for example,

```
ls -l >file
```

The notation *>file* is interpreted by the shell and is not passed as an argument to *ls*. If *file* does not exist then the shell creates it; otherwise the original contents of *file* are replaced with the output from *ls*. Output may be appended to a file using the notation

```
ls -l >>file
```

In this case *file* is also created if it does not already exist.

The standard input of a command may be taken from a file instead of the terminal by writing, for example,

```
wc <file
```

The command *wc* reads its standard input (in this case redirected from *file*) and prints the number of characters, words and lines found. If only the number of lines is required then

```
wc -l <file
```

could be used.

1.4 Pipelines and filters

The standard output of one command may be connected to the standard input of another by writing the 'pipe' operator, indicated by |, as in,

```
ls -l | wc
```

Two commands connected in this way constitute a *pipeline* and the overall effect is the same as

```
ls -l >file; wc <file
```

except that no *file* is used. Instead the two processes are connected by a pipe (see *pipe* (2)) and are run in parallel. Pipes are unidirectional and synchronization is achieved by halting *wc* when there is nothing to read and halting *ls* when the pipe is full.

A *filter* is a command that reads its standard input, transforms it in some way, and prints the result as output. One such filter, *grep,* selects from its input those lines that contain some specified string. For example,

```
ls | grep old
```

prints those lines, if any, of the output from *ls* that contain the string *old.* Another useful filter is *sort.*

For example,

```
who | sort
```

will print an alphabetically sorted list of logged in users.

A pipeline may consist of more than two commands, for example,

```
ls | grep old | wc -l
```

prints the number of file names in the current directory containing the string *old.*

1.5 File name generation

Many commands accept arguments which are file names. For example,

```
ls -l main.c
```

prints information relating to the file *main.c*.

The shell provides a mechanism for generating a list of file names that match a pattern. For example,

```
ls -l *.c
```

generates, as arguments to *ls,* all file names in the current directory that end in *.c*. The character * is a pattern that will match any string including the null string. In general *patterns* are specified as follows.

*	Matches any string of characters including the null string.
?	Matches any single character.
[...]	Matches any one of the characters enclosed. A pair of characters separated by a minus will match any character lexically between the pair.

For example,

```
[a-z]*
```

matches all names in the current directory beginning with one of the letters *a* through *z.*

```
/usr/fred/test/?
```

matches all names in the directory **/usr/fred/test** that consist of a single character. If no file name is found that matches the pattern then the pattern is passed, unchanged, as an argument.

This mechanism is useful both to save typing and to select names according to some pattern. It may also be used to find files. For example,

```
echo /usr/fred/*/core
```

finds and prints the names of all *core* files in sub-directories of **/usr/fred**. (*echo* is a standard UNIX command that prints its arguments, separated by blanks.) This last feature can be expensive, requiring a scan of all sub-directories of **/usr/fred**.

There is one exception to the general rules given for patterns. The character '.' at the start of a file name must be explicitly matched.

```
echo *
```

will therefore echo all file names in the current directory not beginning with '.'.

```
echo .*
```

will echo all those file names that begin with '.'. This avoids inadvertent matching of the names '.' and '..' which mean 'the current directory' and 'the parent directory' respectively. (Notice that *ls* suppresses information for the files '.' and '..'.)

1.6 Quoting

Characters that have a special meaning to the shell, such as < > * ? | &, are called metacharacters. A complete list of metacharacters is given in appendix B. Any character preceded by a \ is *quoted* and loses its special meaning, if any. The \ is elided so that

```
echo \?
```

will echo a single ?, and

```
echo \\
```

will echo a single \. To allow long strings to be continued over more than one line the sequence **\newline** is ignored.

\ is convenient for quoting single characters. When more than one character needs quoting the above mechanism is clumsy and error prone. A string of characters may be quoted by enclosing the string between single quotes. For example,

```
echo xx'****'xx
```

will echo

```
xx****xx
```

The quoted string may not contain a single quote but may contain newlines, which are preserved. This quoting mechanism is the most simple and is recommended for casual use.

A third quoting mechanism using double quotes is also available that prevents interpretation of some but not all metacharacters. Discussion of the details is deferred to section 3.4.

1.7 Prompting

When the shell is used from a terminal it will issue a prompt before reading a command. By default this prompt is '$ '. It may be changed by saying, for example,

```
PS1=yesdear
```

that sets the prompt to be the string *yesdear*. If a newline is typed and further input is needed then the shell will issue the prompt '> '. Sometimes this can be caused by mistyping a quote mark. If it is unexpected then an interrupt (DEL) will return the shell to read another command. This prompt may be changed by saying, for example,

```
PS2=more
```

1.8 The shell and login

Following *login* (1) the shell is called to read and execute commands typed at the terminal. If the user's login directory contains the file **.profile** then it is assumed to contain commands and is read by the shell before reading any commands from the terminal.

1.9 Summary

- **ls**
  Print the names of files in the current directory.
- **ls >file**
  Put the output from *ls* into *file*.
- **ls | wc -l**
  Print the number of files in the current directory.
- **ls | grep old**
  Print those file names containing the string *old*.

- **ls | grep old | wc -l**
  Print the number of files whose name contains the string *old.*
- **cc pgm.c &**
  Run *cc* in the background.

2.0 Shell procedures

The shell may be used to read and execute commands contained in a file. For example,

```
sh file [ args ... ]
```

calls the shell to read commands from *file.* Such a file is called a *command procedure* or *shell procedure.* Arguments may be supplied with the call and are referred to in *file* using the positional parameters **$1, $2, ...** For example, if the file *wg* contains

```
who | grep $1
```

then

```
sh wg fred
```

is equivalent to

```
who | grep fred
```

UNIX files have three independent attributes, *read, write* and *execute.* The UNIX command *chmod* (1) may be used to make a file executable. For example,

```
chmod +x wg
```

will ensure that the file *wg* has execute status. Following this, the command

```
wg fred
```

is equivalent to

```
sh wg fred
```

This allows shell procedures and programs to be used interchangeably. In either case a new process is created to run the command.

As well as providing names for the positional parameters, the number of positional parameters in the call is available as **$#.** The name of the file being executed is available as **$0.**

A special shell parameter **$*** is used to substitute for all positional parameters except **$0.** A typical use of this is to provide some default arguments, as in,

```
nroff -T450 -ms $*
```

which simply prepends some arguments to those already given.

2.1 Control flow - for

A frequent use of shell procedures is to loop through the arguments **($1, $2, ...)** executing commands once for each argument. An example of such a procedure is *tel* that searches the file **/usr/lib/telnos** that contains lines of the form

```
...
fred mh0123
bert mh0789
...
```

The text of *tel* is

```
for i
do grep $i /usr/lib/telnos; done
```

The command

```
tel fred
```

prints those lines in **/usr/lib/telnos** that contain the string *fred*.

```
tel fred bert
```

prints those lines containing *fred* followed by those for *bert.*

The **for** loop notation is recognized by the shell and has the general form

for *name* **in** *w1 w2* ...
do *command-list*
done

A *command-list* is a sequence of one or more simple commands separated or terminated by a newline or semicolon. Furthermore, reserved words like **do** and **done** are only recognized following a newline or semicolon. *name* is a shell variable that is set to the words *w1 w2* ... in turn each time the *command-list* following **do** is executed. If **in** *w1 w2* ... is omitted then the loop is executed once for each positional parameter; that is, **in** *$**** is assumed.

Another example of the use of the **for** loop is the *create* command whose text is

```
for i do >$i; done
```

The command

```
create alpha beta
```

ensures that two empty files *alpha* and *beta* exist and are empty. The notation *>file* may be used on its own to create or clear the contents of a file. Notice also that a semicolon (or newline) is required before **done.**

2.2 Control flow - case

A multiple way branch is provided for by the **case** notation. For example,

```
case $# in
    1)  cat >>$1 ;;
    2)  cat >>$2 <$1 ;;
    *)  echo 'usage: append [ from ] to' ;;
esac
```

is an *append* command. When called with one argument as

```
append file
```

$# is the string *1* and the standard input is copied onto the end of *file* using the *cat* command.

```
append file1 file2
```

appends the contents of *file1* onto *file2.* If the number of arguments supplied to *append* is oth than 1 or 2 then a message is printed indicating proper usage.

The general form of the **case** command is

case *word* **in**
    pattern) *command-list*;;
    ...
esac

The shell attempts to match *word* with each *pattern,* in the order in which the patterns appear. If a

match is found the associated *command-list* is executed and execution of the **case** is complete. Since * is the pattern that matches any string it can be used for the default case.

A word of caution: no check is made to ensure that only one pattern matches the case argument. The first match found defines the set of commands to be executed. In the example below the commands following the second * will never be executed.

```
case $# in
    *) ... ;;
    *) ... ;;
esac
```

Another example of the use of the **case** construction is to distinguish between different forms of an argument. The following example is a fragment of a *cc* command.

```
for i
do case $i in
   -[ocs]) ... ;;
   -*)     echo 'unknown flag $i' ;;
   *.c)    /lib/c0 $i ... ;;
   *)echo 'unexpected argument $i' ;;
   esac
done
```

To allow the same commands to be associated with more than one pattern the **case** command provides for alternative patterns separated by a | . For example,

```
case $i in
    -x|-y)    ...
esac
```

is equivalent to

```
case $i in
    -[xy])    ...
esac
```

The usual quoting conventions apply so that

```
case $i in
    \?)  ...
```

will match the character ?.

2.3 Here documents

The shell procedure *tel* in section 2.1 uses the file **/usr/lib/telnos** to supply the data for *grep*. An alternative is to include this data within the shell procedure as a *here* document, as in,

```
for i
do grep $i <<!
   ...
   fred mh0123
   bert mh0789
   ...
!
done
```

In this example the shell takes the lines between <<! and ! as the standard input for *grep*. The string ! is arbitrary, the document being terminated by a line that consists of the string following <<.

Parameters are substituted in the document before it is made available to *grep* as illustrated by the following procedure called *edg*.

```
ed $3 <<%
g/$1/s//$2/g
w
%
```

The call

```
edg string1 string2 file
```

is then equivalent to the command

```
ed file <<%
g/string1/s//string2/g
w
%
```

and changes all occurrences of *string1* in *file* to *string2*. Substitution can be prevented using \ to quote the special character $ as in

```
ed $3 <<+
1,\$s/$1/$2/g
w
+
```

(This version of *edg* is equivalent to the first except that *ed* will print a ? if there are no occurrences of the string **$1**.) Substitution within a *here* document may be prevented entirely by quoting the terminating string, for example,

```
grep $i <<\#
...
#
```

The document is presented without modification to *grep*. If parameter substitution is not required in a *here* document this latter form is more efficient.

2.4 Shell variables

The shell provides string-valued variables. Variable names begin with a letter and consist of letters, digits and underscores. Variables may be given values by writing, for example,

```
user=fred box=m000 acct=mh0000
```

which assigns values to the variables **user, box** and **acct.** A variable may be set to the null string by saying, for example,

```
null=
```

The value of a variable is substituted by preceding its name with $; for example,

```
echo $user
```

will echo *fred.*

Variables may be used interactively to provide abbreviations for frequently used strings. For example,

```
b=/usr/fred/bin
mv pgm $b
```

will move the file *pgm* from the current directory to the directory **/usr/fred/bin**. A more general notation is available for parameter (or variable) substitution, as in,

```
echo ${user}
```

which is equivalent to

```
echo $user
```

and is used when the parameter name is followed by a letter or digit. For example,

```
tmp=/tmp/ps
ps a >${tmp}a
```

will direct the output of *ps* to the file **/tmp/psa**, whereas,

```
ps a >$tmpa
```

would cause the value of the variable **tmpa** to be substituted.

Except for **$?** the following are set initially by the shell. **$?** is set after executing each command.

$? The exit status (return code) of the last command executed as a decimal string. Most commands return a zero exit status if they complete successfully, otherwise a non-zero exit status is returned. Testing the value of return codes is dealt with later under **if** and **while** commands.

$# The number of positional parameters (in decimal). Used, for example, in the *append* command to check the number of parameters.

$$ The process number of this shell (in decimal). Since process numbers are unique among all existing processes, this string is frequently used to generate unique temporary file names. For example,

```
ps a >/tmp/ps$$
...
rm /tmp/ps$$
```

$! The process number of the last process run in the background (in decimal).

$- The current shell flags, such as `-x` and `-v`.

Some variables have a special meaning to the shell and should be avoided for general use.

$MAIL When used interactively the shell looks at the file specified by this variable before it issues a prompt. If the specified file has been modified since it was last looked at the shell prints the message *you have mail* before prompting for the next command. This variable is typically set in the file **.profile**, in the user's login directory. For example,

```
MAIL=/usr/spool/mail/fred
```

$HOME The default argument for the *cd* command. The current directory is used to resolve file name references that do not begin with a /, and is changed using the *cd* command. For example,

```
cd /usr/fred/bin
```

makes the current directory **/usr/fred/bin**.

```
cat wn
```

will print on the terminal the file *wn* in this directory. The command *cd* with no argument is equivalent to

```
cd $HOME
```

This variable is also typically set in the the user's login profile.

$PATH A list of directories that contain commands (the *search path*). Each time a command is

executed by the shell a list of directories is searched for an executable file. If **$PATH** is not set then the current directory, **/bin**, and **/usr/bin** are searched by default. Otherwise **$PATH** consists of directory names separated by :. For example,

```
PATH=:/usr/fred/bin:/bin:/usr/bin
```

specifies that the current directory (the null string before the first :), **/usr/fred/bin**, **/bin** and **/usr/bin** are to be searched in that order. In this way individual users can have their own 'private' commands that are accessible independently of the current directory. If the command name contains a / then this directory search is not used; a single attempt is made to execute the command.

$PS1 The primary shell prompt string, by default, '$ '.

$PS2 The shell prompt when further input is needed, by default, '> '.

$IFS The set of characters used by *blank interpretation* (see section 3.4).

2.5 The test command

The *test* command, although not part of the shell, is intended for use by shell programs. For example,

```
test -f file
```

returns zero exit status if *file* exists and non-zero exit status otherwise. In general *test* evaluates a predicate and returns the result as its exit status. Some of the more frequently used *test* arguments are given here, see *test* (1) for a complete specification.

```
test s      true if the argument s is not the null string
test -f file true if file exists
test -r file true if file is readable
test -w file      true if file is writable
test -d filetrue if file is a directory
```

2.6 Control flow - while

The actions of the **for** loop and the **case** branch are determined by data available to the shell. A **while** or **until** loop and an **if then else** branch are also provided whose actions are determined by the exit status returned by commands. A **while** loop has the general form

while *command-list*$_1$
do *command-list*$_2$
done

The value tested by the **while** command is the exit status of the last simple command following **while**. Each time round the loop *command-list*$_1$ is executed; if a zero exit status is returned then *command-list*$_2$ is executed; otherwise, the loop terminates. For example,

```
while test $1
do ...
   shift
done
```

is equivalent to

```
for i
do ...
done
```

shift is a shell command that renames the positional parameters **$2**, **$3**, ... as **$1**, **$2**, ... and loses **$1**.

Another kind of use for the **while/until** loop is to wait until some external event occurs and then run some commands. In an **until** loop the termination condition is reversed. For example,

```
until test -f file
do sleep 300; done
commands
```

will loop until *file* exists. Each time round the loop it waits for 5 minutes before trying again. (Presumably another process will eventually create the file.)

2.7 Control flow - if

Also available is a general conditional branch of the form,

```
if command-list
then command-list
else command-list
fi
```

that tests the value returned by the last simple command following **if.**

The **if** command may be used in conjunction with the *test* command to test for the existence of a file as in

```
if test -f file
then process file
else do something else
fi
```

An example of the use of **if, case** and **for** constructions is given in section 2.10.

A multiple test **if** command of the form

```
if ...
then ...
else if ...
     then ...
     else if ...
          ...
          fi
     fi
fi
```

may be written using an extension of the **if** notation as,

```
if ...
then ...
elif ...
then ...
elif ...
...
fi
```

The following example is the *touch* command which changes the 'last modified' time for a list of files. The command may be used in conjunction with *make* (1) to force recompilation of a list of files.

```
flag=
for i
do case $i in
   -c)    flag=N ;;
   *)if test -f $i
     then ln $i junk$$; rm junk$$
     elif test $flag
     then echo file \'$i\' does not exist
     else >$i
     fi
   esac
done
```


The -c flag is used in this command to force subsequent files to be created if they do not already exist. Otherwise, if the file does not exist, an error message is printed. The shell variable *flag* is set to some non-null string if the -c argument is encountered. The commands

```
ln ...; rm ...
```

make a link to the file and then remove it thus causing the last modified date to be updated.
The sequence

```
if command1
then command2
fi
```

may be written

```
command1 && command2
```

Conversely,

```
command1 || command2
```

executes *command2* only if *command1* fails. In each case the value returned is that of the last simple command executed.

2.8 Command grouping

Commands may be grouped in two ways,

```
{ command-list ; }
```

and

```
( command-list )
```

In the first *command-list* is simply executed. The second form executes *command-list* as a separate process. For example,

```
(cd x; rm junk )
```

executes *rm junk* in the directory x without changing the current directory of the invoking shell.
The commands

```
cd x; rm junk
```

have the same effect but leave the invoking shell in the directory x.

2.9 Debugging shell procedures

The shell provides two tracing mechanisms to help when debugging shell procedures. The first is invoked within the procedure as

```
set -v
```

(v for verbose) and causes lines of the procedure to be printed as they are read. It is useful to help isolate syntax errors. It may be invoked without modifying the procedure by saying

```
sh -v proc ...
```

where *proc* is the name of the shell procedure. This flag may be used in conjunction with the **-n** flag which prevents execution of subsequent commands. (Note that saying *set -n* at a terminal will render the terminal useless until an end-of-file is typed.)

The command

```
set -x
```

will produce an execution trace. Following parameter substitution each command is printed as it is executed. (Try these at the terminal to see what effect they have.) Both flags may be turned off by saying

```
set -
```

and the current setting of the shell flags is available as $-.

2.10 The man command

The following is the *man* command which is used to diplay sections of the UNIX manual on your terminal. It is called, for example, as

```
man sh
man -t ed
man 2 fork
```

In the first the manual section for *sh* is displayed.. Since no section is specified, section 1 is used. The second example will typeset (**-t** option) the manual section for *ed*. The last prints the *fork* manual page from section 2, which covers system calls.

```
cd /usr/man

: 'colon is the comment command'
: 'default is nroff ($N), section 1 ($s)'
N=n s=1

for i
do case $i in
   [1-9]*)s=$i ;;
   -t)     N=t ;;
   -n)     N=n ;;
   -*)     echo unknown flag \'$i\' ;;
   *)if test -f man$s/$i.$s
     then ${N}roff man0/${N}aa man$s/$i.$s
     else : 'look through all manual sections'
          found=no
          for j in 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
          do if test -f man$j/$i.$j
             then man $j $i
                  found=yes
             fi
          done
          case $found in
               no) echo '$i: manual page not found'
          esac
     fi
  esac
done
```

Figure 1. A version of the man command

3.0 Keyword parameters

Shell variables may be given values by assignment or when a shell procedure is invoked. An argument to a shell procedure of the form *name=value* that precedes the command name causes *value* to be assigned to *name* before execution of the procedure begins. The value of *name* in the invoking shell is not affected. For example,

```
user=fred command
```

will execute *command* with **user** set to *fred*. The **-k** flag causes arguments of the form *name=value* to be interpreted in this way anywhere in the argument list. Such *names* are sometimes called keyword parameters. If any arguments remain they are available as positional parameters **$1, $2, ...**

The *set* command may also be used to set positional parameters from within a procedure. For example,

```
set - *
```

will set **$1** to the first file name in the current directory, **$2** to the next, and so on. Note that the first argument, **-**, ensures correct treatment when the first file name begins with a **-**.

3.1 Parameter transmission

When a shell procedure is invoked both positional and keyword parameters may be supplied with the call. Keyword parameters are also made available implicitly to a shell procedure by specifying in advance that such parameters are to be exported. For example,

```
export user box
```

marks the variables **user** and **box** for export. When a shell procedure is invoked copies are made of all exportable variables for use within the invoked procedure. Modification of such variables within the procedure does not affect the values in the invoking shell. It is generally true of a shell procedure that it may not modify the state of its caller without explicit request on the part of the caller. (Shared file descriptors are an exception to this rule.)

Names whose value is intended to remain constant may be declared *readonly*. The form of this command is the same as that of the *export* command,

```
readonly name ...
```

Subsequent attempts to set readonly variables are illegal.

3.2 Parameter substitution

If a shell parameter is not set then the null string is substituted for it. For example, if the variable **d** is not set

```
echo $d
```

or

```
echo ${d}
```

will echo nothing. A default string may be given as in

```
echo ${d-.}
```

which will echo the value of the variable **d** if it is set and '.' otherwise. The default string is evaluated using the usual quoting conventions so that

```
echo ${d-'*'}
```

will echo * if the variable **d** is not set. Similarly

```
echo ${d-$1}
```

will echo the value of **d** if it is set and the value (if any) of **$1** otherwise. A variable may be assigned a default value using the notation

```
echo ${d=.}
```

which substitutes the same string as

```
echo ${d-.}
```

and if **d** were not previously set then it will be set to the string '.'. (The notation ${...=...} is not available for positional parameters.)

If there is no sensible default then the notation

```
echo ${d?message}
```

will echo the value of the variable **d** if it has one, otherwise *message* is printed by the shell and execution of the shell procedure is abandoned. If *message* is absent then a standard message is printed. A shell procedure that requires some parameters to be set might start as follows.

```
: ${user?} ${acct?} ${bin?}
...
```

Colon (:) is a command that is built in to the shell and does nothing once its arguments have been evaluated. If any of the variables **user, acct** or **bin** are not set then the shell will abandon execution of the procedure.

3.3 Command substitution

The standard output from a command can be substituted in a similar way to parameters. The command *pwd* prints on its standard output the name of the current directory. For example, if the current directory is **/usr/fred/bin** then the command

```
d=`pwd`
```

is equivalent to

```
d=/usr/fred/bin
```

The entire string between grave accents (`...`) is taken as the command to be executed and is replaced with the output from the command. The command is written using the usual quoting conventions except that a ` must be escaped using a \. For example,

```
ls `echo "$1"`
```

is equivalent to

```
ls $1
```

Command substitution occurs in all contexts where parameter substitution occurs (including *here* documents) and the treatment of the resulting text is the same in both cases. This mechanism allows string processing commands to be used within shell procedures. An example of such a command is *basename* which removes a specified suffix from a string. For example,

```
basename main.c .c
```

will print the string *main*. Its use is illustrated by the following fragment from a *cc* command.

```
case $A in
    ...
    *.c)    B=`basename $A .c`
    ...
esac
```

that sets **B** to the part of **$A** with the suffix **.c** stripped.

Here are some composite examples.

- **for i in `ls -t`; do ...**
  The variable **i** is set to the names of files in time order, most recent first.
- **set `date`; echo $6 $2 $3, $4**
  will print, e.g., *1977 Nov 1, 23:59:59*

3.4 Evaluation and quoting

The shell is a macro processor that provides parameter substitution, command substitution and file name generation for the arguments to commands. This section discusses the order in which these evaluations occur and the effects of the various quoting mechanisms.

Commands are parsed initially according to the grammar given in appendix A. Before a command is executed the following substitutions occur.

- parameter substitution, e.g. **$user**
- command substitution, e.g. **`pwd`**

  Only one evaluation occurs so that if, for example, the value of the variable **X** is the string *$y* then

```
echo $X
```

will echo *$y*.

- blank interpretation

  Following the above substitutions the resulting characters are broken into non-blank words (*blank interpretation*). For this purpose 'blanks' are the characters of the string **$IFS**. By default, this string consists of blank, tab and newline. The null string is not regarded as a word unless it is quoted. For example,

  ```
  echo ''
  ```

  will pass on the null string as the first argument to *echo*, whereas

  ```
  echo $null
  ```

  will call *echo* with no arguments if the variable **null** is not set or set to the null string.

- file name generation

  Each word is then scanned for the file pattern characters *, ? and [...] and an alphabetical list of file names is generated to replace the word. Each such file name is a separate argument.

The evaluations just described also occur in the list of words associated with a **for** loop. Only substitution occurs in the *word* used for a **case** branch.

As well as the quoting mechanisms described earlier using \ and '...' a third quoting mechanism is provided using double quotes. Within double quotes parameter and command substitution occurs but file name generation and the interpretation of blanks does not. The following characters have a special meaning within double quotes and may be quoted using \.

$	parameter substitution
`	command substitution
"	ends the quoted string
\	quotes the special characters $ ` " \

For example,

```
echo "$x"
```

will pass the value of the variable x as a single argument to *echo*. Similarly,

```
echo "$*"
```

will pass the positional parameters as a single argument and is equivalent to

```
echo "$1 $2 ..."
```

The notation $@ is the same as $* except when it is quoted.

```
echo "$@"
```

will pass the positional parameters, unevaluated, to *echo* and is equivalent to

```
echo "$1" "$2" ...
```

The following table gives, for each quoting mechanism, the shell metacharacters that are evaluated.

	metacharacter					
	\	$	*	`	"	'
'	n	n	n	n	n	t
`	y	n	n	t	n	n
"	y	y	n	y	t	n

t terminator
y interpreted
n not interpreted

Figure 2. Quoting mechanisms

In cases where more than one evaluation of a string is required the built-in command *eval* may be used. For example, if the variable X has the value *$y*, and if y has the value *pqr* then

```
eval echo $X
```

will echo the string *pqr*.

In general the *eval* command evaluates its arguments (as do all commands) and treats the result as input to the shell. The input is read and the resulting command(s) executed. For example,

```
wg='eval who|grep'
$wg fred
```

is equivalent to

```
who|grep fred
```

In this example, *eval* is required since there is no interpretation of metacharacters, such as |, **following substitution.**

3.5 Error handling

The treatment of errors detected by the shell depends on the type of error and on whether the shell is being used interactively. An interactive shell is one whose input and output are connected to a terminal (as determined by *gtty* (2)). A shell invoked with the **-i** flag is also interactive.

Execution of a command (see also 3.7) may fail for any of the following reasons.

- Input output redirection may fail. For example, if a file does not exist or cannot be created.
- The command itself does not exist or cannot be executed.
- The command terminates abnormally, for example, with a "bus error" or "memory fault". See Figure 2 below for a complete list of UNIX signals.
- The command terminates normally but returns a non-zero exit status.

In all of these cases the shell will go on to execute the next command. Except for the last case an error message will be printed by the shell. All remaining errors cause the shell to exit from a command procedure. An interactive shell will return to read another command from the terminal. Such errors include the following.

- Syntax errors. e.g., if ... then ... done
- A signal such as interrupt. The shell waits for the current command, if any, to finish execution and then either exits or returns to the terminal.
- Failure of any of the built-in commands such as *cd*.

The shell flag **-e** causes the shell to terminate if any error is detected.

1 hangup
2 interrupt
3* quit
4* illegal instruction
5* trace trap
6* IOT instruction
7* EMT instruction
8* floating point exception
9 kill (cannot be caught or ignored)
10* bus error
11* segmentation violation
12* bad argument to system call
13 write on a pipe with no one to read it
14 alarm clock
15 software termination (from *kill* (1))

Figure 3. UNIX signals†

Those signals marked with an asterisk produce a core dump if not caught. However, the shell itself ignores quit which is the only external signal that can cause a dump. The signals in this list of potential interest to shell programs are 1, 2, 3, 14 and 15.

3.6 Fault handling

Shell procedures normally terminate when an interrupt is received from the terminal. The *trap* command is used if some cleaning up is required, such as removing temporary files. For example,

```
trap 'rm /tmp/ps$$; exit' 2
```

sets a trap for signal 2 (terminal interrupt), and if this signal is received will execute the commands

```
rm /tmp/ps$$; exit
```

exit is another built-in command that terminates execution of a shell procedure. The *exit* is required; otherwise, after the trap has been taken, the shell will resume executing the procedure at the place where it was interrupted.

UNIX signals can be handled in one of three ways. They can be ignored, in which case the signal is never sent to the process. They can be caught, in which case the process must decide what action to take when the signal is received. Lastly, they can be left to cause termination of the process without it having to take any further action. If a signal is being ignored on entry to the shell procedure, for example, by invoking it in the background (see 3.7) then *trap* commands (and the signal) are ignored.

The use of *trap* is illustrated by this modified version of the *touch* command (Figure 4). The cleanup action is to remove the file **junk$$**.

† Additional signals have been added in Berkeley Unix. See sigvec(2) or signal(3C) for an up-to-date list.

```
flag=
trap ´rm -f junk$$; exit´ 1 2 3 15
for i
do case $i in
   -c)     flag=N ;;
   *)if test -f $i
     then ln $i junk$$; rm junk$$
     elif test $flag
     then echo file \´$i\´ does not exist
     else >$i
     fi
   esac
done
```

Figure 4. The touch command

The *trap* command appears before the creation of the temporary file; otherwise it would be possible for the process to die without removing the file.

Since there is no signal 0 in UNIX it is used by the shell to indicate the commands to be executed on exit from the shell procedure.

A procedure may, itself, elect to ignore signals by specifying the null string as the argument to trap. The following fragment is taken from the *nohup* command.

```
trap ´´ 1 2 3 15
```

which causes *hangup, interrupt, quit* and *kill* to be ignored both by the procedure and by invoked commands.

Traps may be reset by saying

```
trap 2 3
```

which resets the traps for signals 2 and 3 to their default values. A list of the current values of traps may be obtained by writing

```
trap
```

The procedure *scan* (Figure 5) is an example of the use of *trap* where there is no exit in the trap command. *scan* takes each directory in the current directory, prompts with its name, and then executes commands typed at the terminal until an end of file or an interrupt is received. Interrupts are ignored while executing the requested commands but cause termination when *scan* is waiting for input.

```
d=`pwd`
for i in *
do if test -d $d/$i
   then cd $d/$i
        while echo "$i:"
              trap exit 2
              read x
        do trap : 2; eval $x; done
   fi
done
```

Figure 5. The scan command

read x is a built-in command that reads one line from the standard input and places the result in the variable `x`. It returns a non-zero exit status if either an end-of-file is read or an interrupt is received.

3.7 Command execution

To run a command (other than a built-in) the shell first creates a new process using the system call *fork*. The execution environment for the command includes input, output and the states of signals, and is established in the child process before the command is executed. The built-in command *exec* is used in the rare cases when no fork is required and simply replaces the shell with a new command. For example, a simple version of the *nohup* command looks like

```
trap '' 1 2 3 15
exec $*
```

The *trap* turns off the signals specified so that they are ignored by subsequently created commands and *exec* replaces the shell by the command specified.

Most forms of input output redirection have already been described. In the following *word* is only subject to parameter and command substitution. No file name generation or blank interpretation takes place so that, for example,

```
echo ... >*.c
```

will write its output into a file whose name is `*.c`. Input output specifications are evaluated left to right as they appear in the command.

`> word` The standard output (file descriptor 1) is sent to the file *word* which is created if it does not already exist.

`>> word` The standard output is sent to file *word*. If the file exists then output is appended (by seeking to the end); otherwise the file is created.

`< word` The standard input (file descriptor 0) is taken from the file *word*.

`<< word` The standard input is taken from the lines of shell input that follow up to but not including a line consisting only of *word*. If *word* is quoted then no interpretation of the document occurs. If *word* is not quoted then parameter and command substitution occur and \ is used to quote the characters \ $ ` and the first character of *word*. In the latter case **\newline** is ignored (c.f. quoted strings).

`>& digit` The file descriptor *digit* is duplicated using the system call *dup* (2) and the result is used as the standard output.

`<& digit` The standard input is duplicated from file descriptor *digit*.

`<&-` The standard input is closed.

`>&-` The standard output is closed.

Any of the above may be preceded by a digit in which case the file descriptor created is that specified by the digit instead of the default 0 or 1. For example,

```
... 2>file
```

runs a command with message output (file descriptor 2) directed to *file*.

```
... 2>&1
```

runs a command with its standard output and message output merged. (Strictly speaking file descriptor 2 is created by duplicating file descriptor 1 but the effect is usually to merge the two streams.)

The environment for a command run in the background such as

```
list *.c | lpr &
```

is modified in two ways. Firstly, the default standard input for such a command is the empty file **/dev/null**. This prevents two processes (the shell and the command), which are running in parallel, from trying to read the same input. Chaos would ensue if this were not the case. For example,

```
ed file &
```

would allow both the editor and the shell to read from the same input at the same time.

The other modification to the environment of a background command is to turn off the QUIT and INTERRUPT signals so that they are ignored by the command. This allows these signals to be used at the terminal without causing background commands to terminate. For this reason the UNIX convention for a signal is that if it is set to 1 (ignored) then it is never changed even for a short time. Note that the shell command *trap* has no effect for an ignored signal.

3.8 Invoking the shell

The following flags are interpreted by the shell when it is invoked. If the first character of argument zero is a minus, then commands are read from the file **.profile**.

-c *string*
: If the **-c** flag is present then commands are read from *string*.

-s
: If the **-s** flag is present or if no arguments remain then commands are read from the standard input. Shell output is written to file descriptor 2.

-i
: If the **-i** flag is present or if the shell input and output are attached to a terminal (as told by *gtty*) then this shell is *interactive*. In this case TERMINATE is ignored (so that **kill 0** does not kill an interactive shell) and INTERRUPT is caught and ignored (so that **wait** is interruptable). In all cases QUIT is ignored by the shell.

Acknowledgements

The design of the shell is based in part on the original UNIX shell[3] and the PWB/UNIX shell,[4] some features having been taken from both. Similarities also exist with the command interpreters of the Cambridge Multiple Access System[5] and of CTSS.[6]

I would like to thank Dennis Ritchie and John Mashey for many discussions during the design of the shell. I am also grateful to the members of the Computing Science Research Center and to Joe Maranzano for their comments on drafts of this document.

References

1. B. W. Kernighan, *UNIX for Beginners*, 1978. Reprinted as USD:1 in *UNIX User's Manual*, Usenix Association, (1986).
2. K. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, *UNIX Programmer's Manual*, Bell Laboratories, 1978. Seventh Edition.
3. K. Thompson, "The UNIX Command Language," in *Structured Programming—Infotech State of the Art Report*, pp. 375-384, Infotech International Ltd., Nicholson House, Maidenhead, Berkshire, England, March 1975.
4. J. R. Mashey, *PWB/UNIX Shell Tutorial*, September 30, 1977.
5. D. F. Hartley (Ed.), *The Cambridge Multiple Access System – Users Reference Manual*, University Mathematical Laboratory, Cambridge, England, 1968.
6. P. A. Crisman (Ed.), *The Compatible Time-Sharing System*, M.I.T. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1965.

Appendix A - Grammar

item: *word*
input-output
name = *value*

simple-command: *item*
simple-command item

command: *simple-command*
(*command-list*)
{ *command-list* }
for *name* **do** *command-list* **done**
for *name* **in** *word* ... **do** *command-list* **done**
while *command-list* **do** *command-list* **done**
until *command-list* **do** *command-list* **done**
case *word* **in** *case-part* ... **esac**
if *command-list* **then** *command-list else-part* **fi**

pipeline: *command*
pipeline | *command*

andor: *pipeline*
andor && *pipeline*
andor || *pipeline*

command-list: *andor*
command-list ;
command-list &
command-list ; *andor*
command-list & *andor*

input-output: > *file*
< *file*
>> *word*
<< *word*

file: *word*
& *digit*
& –

case-part: *pattern*) *command-list* ;;

pattern: *word*
pattern | *word*

else-part: **elif** *command-list* **then** *command-list else-part*
else *command-list*
empty

empty:

word: a sequence of non-blank characters

name: a sequence of letters, digits or underscores starting with a letter

digit: **0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9**

Appendix B - Meta-characters and Reserved Words

a) syntactic

|	pipe symbol
&&	'andf' symbol
||	'orf' symbol
;	command separator
;;	case delimiter
&	background commands
( )	command grouping
<	input redirection
<<	input from a here document
>	output creation
>>	output append

b) patterns

*	match any character(s) including none
?	match any single character
[...]	match any of the enclosed characters

c) substitution

${...}	substitute shell variable
`...`	substitute command output

d) quoting

\	quote the next character
'...'	quote the enclosed characters except for '
"..."	quote the enclosed characters except for $ ` \ "

e) reserved words

if then else elif fi
case in esac
for while until do done
{ }

An Introduction to the C shell

William Joy
(revised for 4.3BSD by Mark Seiden)

Computer Science Division
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California, Berkeley
Berkeley, California 94720

ABSTRACT

Csh is a new command language interpreter for UNIX† systems. It incorporates good features of other shells and a *history* mechanism similar to the *redo* of INTERLISP. While incorporating many features of other shells which make writing shell programs (shell scripts) easier, most of the features unique to *csh* are designed more for the interactive UNIX user.

UNIX users who have read a general introduction to the system will find a valuable basic explanation of the shell here. Simple terminal interaction with *csh* is possible after reading just the first section of this document. The second section describes the shell's capabilities which you can explore after you have begun to become acquainted with the shell. Later sections introduce features which are useful, but not necessary for all users of the shell.

Additional information includes an appendix listing special characters of the shell and a glossary of terms and commands introduced in this manual.

Introduction

A *shell* is a command language interpreter. *Csh* is the name of one particular command interpreter on UNIX. The primary purpose of *csh* is to translate command lines typed at a terminal into system actions, such as invocation of other programs. *Csh* is a user program just like any you might write. Hopefully, *csh* will be a very useful program for you in interacting with the UNIX system.

In addition to this document, you will want to refer to a copy of the UNIX User Reference Manual. The *csh* documentation in section 1 of the manual provides a full description of all features of the shell and is the definitive reference for questions about the shell.

Many words in this document are shown in *italics.* These are important words; names of commands, and words which have special meaning in discussing the shell and UNIX. Many of the words are defined in a glossary at the end of this document. If you don't know what is meant by a word, you should look for it in the glossary.

Acknowledgements

Numerous people have provided good input about previous versions of *csh* and aided in its debugging and in the debugging of its documentation. I would especially like to thank Michael Ubell who made the crucial observation that history commands could be done well over the word structure of input text, and implemented a prototype history mechanism in an older version of the shell. Eric Allman has also provided a large number of useful comments on the shell, helping to unify those

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

concepts which are present and to identify and eliminate useless and marginally useful features. Mike O'Brien suggested the pathname hashing mechanism which speeds command execution. Jim Kulp added the job control and directory stack primitives and added their documentation to this introduction.

1. Terminal usage of the shell

1.1. The basic notion of commands

A *shell* in UNIX acts mostly as a medium through which other *programs* are invoked. While it has a set of *builtin* functions which it performs directly, most commands cause execution of programs that are, in fact, external to the shell. The shell is thus distinguished from the command interpreters of other systems both by the fact that it is just a user program, and by the fact that it is used almost exclusively as a mechanism for invoking other programs.

Commands in the UNIX system consist of a list of strings or *words* interpreted as a *command name* followed by *arguments.* Thus the command

```
mail bill
```

consists of two words. The first word *mail* names the command to be executed, in this case the mail program which sends messages to other users. The shell uses the name of the command in attempting to execute it for you. It will look in a number of *directories* for a file with the name *mail* which is expected to contain the mail program.

The rest of the words of the command are given as *arguments* to the command itself when it is executed. In this case we specified also the argument *bill* which is interpreted by the *mail* program to be the name of a user to whom mail is to be sent. In normal terminal usage we might use the *mail* command as follows.

```
% mail bill
I have a question about the csh documentation.
My document seems to be missing page 5.
Does a page five exist?
     Bill
EOT
%
```

Here we typed a message to send to *bill* and ended this message with a ^D which sent an end-of-file to the mail program. (Here and throughout this document, the notation "^*x*" is to be read "control-*x*" and represents the striking of the *x* key while the control key is held down.) The mail program then echoed the characters 'EOT' and transmitted our message. The characters '% ' were printed before and after the mail command by the shell to indicate that input was needed.

After typing the '% ' prompt the shell was reading command input from our terminal. We typed a complete command 'mail bill'. The shell then executed the *mail* program with argument *bill* and went dormant waiting for it to complete. The mail program then read input from our terminal until we signalled an end-of-file via typing a ^D after which the shell noticed that mail had completed and signaled us that it was ready to read from the terminal again by printing another '% ' prompt.

This is the essential pattern of all interaction with UNIX through the shell. A complete command is typed at the terminal, the shell executes the command and when this execution completes, it prompts for a new command. If you run the editor for an hour, the shell will patiently wait for you to finish editing and obediently prompt you again whenever you finish editing.

An example of a useful command you can execute now is the *tset* command, which sets the default *erase* and *kill* characters on your terminal – the erase character erases the last character you typed and the kill character erases the entire line you have entered so far. By default, the erase character is the delete key (equivalent to '^?') and the kill character is '^U'. Some people prefer to make the erase character the backspace key (equivalent to '^H'). You can make this be true by typing

```
tset -e
```

which tells the program *tset* to set the erase character to tset's default setting for this character (a backspace).

1.2. Flag arguments

A useful notion in UNIX is that of a *flag* argument. While many arguments to commands specify file names or user names, some arguments rather specify an optional capability of the command which you wish to invoke. By convention, such arguments begin with the character '–' (hyphen). Thus the command

```
ls
```

will produce a list of the files in the current *working directory*. The option *–s* is the size option, and

```
ls –s
```

causes *ls* to also give, for each file the size of the file in blocks of 512 characters. The manual section for each command in the UNIX reference manual gives the available options for each command. The *ls* command has a large number of useful and interesting options. Most other commands have either no options or only one or two options. It is hard to remember options of commands which are not used very frequently, so most UNIX utilities perform only one or two functions rather than having a large number of hard to remember options.

1.3. Output to files

Commands that normally read input or write output on the terminal can also be executed with this input and/or output done to a file.

Thus suppose we wish to save the current date in a file called 'now'. The command

```
date
```

will print the current date on our terminal. This is because our terminal is the default *standard output* for the date command and the date command prints the date on its standard output. The shell lets us *redirect* the *standard output* of a command through a notation using the *metacharacter* '>' and the name of the file where output is to be placed. Thus the command

```
date > now
```

runs the *date* command such that its standard output is the file 'now' rather than the terminal. Thus this command places the current date and time into the file 'now'. It is important to know that the *date* command was unaware that its output was going to a file rather than to the terminal. The shell performed this *redirection* before the command began executing.

One other thing to note here is that the file 'now' need not have existed before the *date* command was executed; the shell would have created the file if it did not exist. And if the file did exist? If it had existed previously these previous contents would have been discarded! A shell option *noclobber* exists to prevent this from happening accidentally; it is discussed in section 2.2.

The system normally keeps files which you create with '>' and all other files. Thus the default is for files to be permanent. If you wish to create a file which will be removed automatically, you can begin its name with a '#' character, this 'scratch' character denotes the fact that the file will be a scratch file.* The system will remove such files after a couple of days, or sooner if file space becomes very tight. Thus, in running the *date* command above, we don't really want to save the output forever, so we would more likely do

```
date > #now
```

*Note that if your erase character is a '#', you will have to precede the '#' with a '\'. The fact that the '#' character is the old (pre-CRT) standard erase character means that it seldom appears in a file name, and allows this convention to be used for scratch files. If you are using a CRT, your erase character should be a ^H, as we demonstrated in section 1.1 how this could be set up.

1.4. Metacharacters in the shell

The shell has a large number of special characters (like '>') which indicate special functions. We say that these notations have *syntactic* and *semantic* meaning to the shell. In general, most characters which are neither letters nor digits have special meaning to the shell. We shall shortly learn a means of *quotation* which allows us to use *metacharacters* without the shell treating them in any special way.

Metacharacters normally have effect only when the shell is reading our input. We need not worry about placing shell metacharacters in a letter we are sending via *mail,* or when we are typing in text or data to some other program. Note that the shell is only reading input when it has prompted with '% ' (although we can type our input even before it prompts).

1.5. Input from files; pipelines

We learned above how to *redirect* the *standard output* of a command to a file. It is also possible to redirect the *standard input* of a command from a file. This is not often necessary since most commands will read from a file whose name is given as an argument. We can give the command

```
sort < data
```

to run the *sort* command with standard input, where the command normally reads its input, from the file 'data'. We would more likely say

```
sort data
```

letting the *sort* command open the file 'data' for input itself since this is less to type.

We should note that if we just typed

```
sort
```

then the sort program would sort lines from its *standard input.* Since we did not *redirect* the standard input, it would sort lines as we typed them on the terminal until we typed a ^D to indicate an end-of-file.

A most useful capability is the ability to combine the standard output of one command with the standard input of another, i.e. to run the commands in a sequence known as a *pipeline.* For instance the command

```
ls –s
```

normally produces a list of the files in our directory with the size of each in blocks of 512 characters. If we are interested in learning which of our files is largest we may wish to have this sorted by size rather than by name, which is the default way in which *ls* sorts. We could look at the many options of *ls* to see if there was an option to do this but would eventually discover that there is not. Instead we can use a couple of simple options of the *sort* command, combining it with *ls* to get what we want.

The *–n* option of sort specifies a numeric sort rather than an alphabetic sort. Thus

```
ls –s | sort –n
```

specifies that the output of the *ls* command run with the option *–s* is to be *piped* to the command *sort* run with the numeric sort option. This would give us a sorted list of our files by size, but with the smallest first. We could then use the *–r* reverse sort option and the *head* command in combination with the previous command doing

```
ls –s | sort –n –r | head –5
```

Here we have taken a list of our files sorted alphabetically, each with the size in blocks. We have run this to the standard input of the *sort* command asking it to sort numerically in reverse order (largest first). This output has then been run into the command *head* which gives us the first few lines. In this case we have asked *head* for the first 5 lines. Thus this command gives us the names and sizes of our 5 largest files.

The notation introduced above is called the *pipe* mechanism. Commands separated by ' | ' characters are connected together by the shell and the standard output of each is run into the standard input of the next. The leftmost command in a pipeline will normally take its standard input from the terminal and the rightmost will place its standard output on the terminal. Other examples of pipelines will be given later when we discuss the history mechanism; one important use of pipes which is illustrated there is in the routing of information to the line printer.

1.6. Filenames

Many commands to be executed will need the names of files as arguments. UNIX *pathnames* consist of a number of *components* separated by '/'. Each component except the last names a directory in which the next component resides, in effect specifying the *path* of directories to follow to reach the file. Thus the pathname

```
/etc/motd
```

specifies a file in the directory 'etc' which is a subdirectory of the *root* directory '/'. Within this directory the file named is 'motd' which stands for 'message of the day'. A *pathname* that begins with a slash is said to be an *absolute* pathname since it is specified from the absolute top of the entire directory hierarchy of the system (the *root*). *Pathnames* which do not begin with '/' are interpreted as starting in the current *working directory*, which is, by default, your *home* directory and can be changed dynamically by the *cd* change directory command. Such pathnames are said to be *relative* to the working directory since they are found by starting in the working directory and descending to lower levels of directories for each *component* of the pathname. If the pathname contains no slashes at all then the file is contained in the working directory itself and the pathname is merely the name of the file in this directory. Absolute pathnames have no relation to the working directory.

Most filenames consist of a number of alphanumeric characters and '.'s (periods). In fact, all printing characters except '/' (slash) may appear in filenames. It is inconvenient to have most non-alphabetic characters in filenames because many of these have special meaning to the shell. The character '.' (period) is not a shell-metacharacter and is often used to separate the *extension* of a file name from the base of the name. Thus

```
prog.c prog.o prog.errs prog.output
```

are four related files. They share a *base* portion of a name (a base portion being that part of the name that is left when a trailing '.' and following characters which are not '.' are stripped off). The file 'prog.c' might be the source for a C program, the file 'prog.o' the corresponding object file, the file 'prog.errs' the errors resulting from a compilation of the program and the file 'prog.output' the output of a run of the program.

If we wished to refer to all four of these files in a command, we could use the notation

```
prog.*
```

This expression is expanded by the shell, before the command to which it is an argument is executed, into a list of names which begin with 'prog.'. The character '*' here matches any sequence (including the empty sequence) of characters in a file name. The names which match are alphabetically sorted and placed in the *argument list* of the command. Thus the command

```
echo prog.*
```

will echo the names

```
prog.c prog.errs prog.o prog.output
```

Note that the names are in sorted order here, and a different order than we listed them above. The *echo* command receives four words as arguments, even though we only typed one word as as argument directly. The four words were generated by *filename expansion* of the one input word.

Other notations for *filename expansion* are also available. The character '?' matches any single character in a filename. Thus

```
echo ? ?? ???
```

will echo a line of filenames; first those with one character names, then those with two character names, and finally those with three character names. The names of each length will be independently sorted.

Another mechanism consists of a sequence of characters between '[' and ']'. This metasequence matches any single character from the enclosed set. Thus

```
prog.[co]
```

will match

```
prog.c prog.o
```

in the example above. We can also place two characters around a '–' in this notation to denote a range. Thus

```
chap.[1-5]
```

might match files

```
chap.1 chap.2 chap.3 chap.4 chap.5
```

if they existed. This is shorthand for

```
chap.[12345]
```

and otherwise equivalent.

An important point to note is that if a list of argument words to a command (an *argument list)* contains filename expansion syntax, and if this filename expansion syntax fails to match any existing file names, then the shell considers this to be an error and prints a diagnostic

```
No match.
```

and does not execute the command.

Another very important point is that files with the character '.' at the beginning are treated specially. Neither '*' or '?' or the '[' ']' mechanism will match it. This prevents accidental matching of the filenames '.' and '..' in the working directory which have special meaning to the system, as well as other files such as *.cshrc* which are not normally visible. We will discuss the special role of the file *.cshrc* later.

Another filename expansion mechanism gives access to the pathname of the *home* directory of other users. This notation consists of the character '~' (tilde) followed by another user's login name. For instance the word '~bill' would map to the pathname '/usr/bill' if the home directory for 'bill' was '/usr/bill'. Since, on large systems, users may have login directories scattered over many different disk volumes with different prefix directory names, this notation provides a convenient way of accessing the files of other users.

A special case of this notation consists of a '~' alone, e.g. '~/mbox'. This notation is expanded by the shell into the file 'mbox' in your *home* directory, i.e. into '/usr/bill/mbox' for me on Ernie Co-vax, the UCB Computer Science Department VAX machine, where this document was prepared. This can be very useful if you have used *cd* to change to another directory and have found a file you wish to copy using *cp.* If I give the command

```
cp thatfile ~
```

the shell will expand this command to

```
cp thatfile /usr/bill
```

since my home directory is /usr/bill.

There also exists a mechanism using the characters '{' and '}' for abbreviating a set of words which have common parts but cannot be abbreviated by the above mechanisms because they are not

files, are the names of files which do not yet exist, are not thus conveniently described. This mechanism will be described much later, in section 4.2, as it is used less frequently.

1.7. Quotation

We have already seen a number of metacharacters used by the shell. These metacharacters pose a problem in that we cannot use them directly as parts of words. Thus the command

```
echo *
```

will not echo the character '*'. It will either echo an sorted list of filenames in the current *working directory,* or print the message 'No match' if there are no files in the working directory.

The recommended mechanism for placing characters which are neither numbers, digits, '/', '.' or '–' in an argument word to a command is to enclose it with single quotation characters ' ', i.e.

```
echo '*'
```

There is one special character '!' which is used by the *history* mechanism of the shell and which cannot be *escaped* by placing it within ' ' characters. It and the character ' ' itself can be preceded by a single '\' to prevent their special meaning. Thus

```
echo \'\!
```

prints

```
'!
```

These two mechanisms suffice to place any printing character into a word which is an argument to a shell command. They can be combined, as in

```
echo \'*'
```

which prints

```
'*
```

since the first '\' escaped the first ' ' and the '*' was enclosed between ' ' characters.

1.8. Terminating commands

When you are executing a command and the shell is waiting for it to complete there are several ways to force it to stop. For instance if you type the command

```
cat /etc/passwd
```

the system will print a copy of a list of all users of the system on your terminal. This is likely to continue for several minutes unless you stop it. You can send an INTERRUPT *signal* to the *cat* command by typing ^C on your terminal.* Since *cat* does not take any precautions to avoid or otherwise handle this signal the INTERRUPT will cause it to terminate. The shell notices that *cat* has terminated and prompts you again with '% '. If you hit INTERRUPT again, the shell will just repeat its prompt since it handles INTERRUPT signals and chooses to continue to execute commands rather than terminating like *cat* did, which would have the effect of logging you out.

Another way in which many programs terminate is when they get an end-of-file from their standard input. Thus the *mail* program in the first example above was terminated when we typed a ^D which generates an end-of-file from the standard input. The shell also terminates when it gets an end-of-file printing 'logout'; UNIX then logs you off the system. Since this means that typing too many ^D's can accidentally log us off, the shell has a mechanism for preventing this. This *ignoreeof* option will be discussed in section 2.2.

*On some older Unix systems the DEL or RUBOUT key has the same effect. "stty all" will tell you the INTR key value.

If a command has its standard input redirected from a file, then it will normally terminate when it reaches the end of this file. Thus if we execute

```
mail bill < prepared.text
```

the mail command will terminate without our typing a ^D. This is because it read to the end-of-file of our file 'prepared.text' in which we placed a message for 'bill' with an editor program. We could also have done

```
cat prepared.text | mail bill
```

since the *cat* command would then have written the text through the pipe to the standard input of the mail command. When the *cat* command completed it would have terminated, closing down the pipeline and the *mail* command would have received an end-of-file from it and terminated. Using a pipe here is more complicated than redirecting input so we would more likely use the first form. These commands could also have been stopped by sending an INTERRUPT.

Another possibility for stopping a command is to suspend its execution temporarily, with the possibility of continuing execution later. This is done by sending a STOP signal via typing a ^Z. This signal causes all commands running on the terminal (usually one but more if a pipeline is executing) to become suspended. The shell notices that the command(s) have been suspended, types 'Stopped' and then prompts for a new command. The previously executing command has been suspended, but otherwise unaffected by the STOP signal. Any other commands can be executed while the original command remains suspended. The suspended command can be continued using the *fg* command with no arguments. The shell will then retype the command to remind you which command is being continued, and cause the command to resume execution. Unless any input files in use by the suspended command have been changed in the meantime, the suspension has no effect whatsoever on the execution of the command. This feature can be very useful during editing, when you need to look at another file before continuing. An example of command suspension follows.


```
% mail harold
Someone just copied a big file into my directory and its name is
^Z
Stopped
% ls
funnyfile
prog.c
prog.o
% jobs
[1] + Stopped                 mail harold
% fg
mail harold
funnyfile. Do you know who did it?
EOT
%
```

In this example someone was sending a message to Harold and forgot the name of the file he wanted to mention. The mail command was suspended by typing ^Z. When the shell noticed that the mail program was suspended, it typed 'Stopped' and prompted for a new command. Then the *ls* command was typed to find out the name of the file. The *jobs* command was run to find out which command was suspended. At this time the *fg* command was typed to continue execution of the mail program. Input to the mail program was then continued and ended with a ^D which indicated the end of the message at which time the mail program typed EOT. The *jobs* command will show which commands are suspended. The ^Z should only be typed at the beginning of a line since everything typed on the current line is discarded when a signal is sent from the keyboard. This also happens on INTERRUPT, and QUIT signals. More information on suspending jobs and controlling them is given in section 2.6.

If you write or run programs which are not fully debugged then it may be necessary to stop them somewhat ungracefully. This can be done by sending them a QUIT signal, sent by typing a ^\. This will usually provoke the shell to produce a message like:

Quit (Core dumped)

indicating that a file 'core' has been created containing information about the running program's state when it terminated due to the QUIT signal. You can examine this file yourself, or forward information to the maintainer of the program telling him/her where the *core file* is.

If you run background commands (as explained in section 2.6) then these commands will ignore INTERRUPT and QUIT signals at the terminal. To stop them you must use the *kill* command. See section 2.6 for an example.

If you want to examine the output of a command without having it move off the screen as the output of the

cat /etc/passwd

command will, you can use the command

more /etc/passwd

The *more* program pauses after each complete screenful and types '--More--' at which point you can hit a space to get another screenful, a return to get another line, a '?' to get some help on other commands, or a 'q' to end the *more* program. You can also use more as a filter, i.e.

cat /etc/passwd | more

works just like the more simple more command above.

For stopping output of commands not involving *more* you can use the ^S key to stop the typeout. The typeout will resume when you hit ^Q or any other key, but ^Q is normally used because it only restarts the output and does not become input to the program which is running. This works well on low-speed terminals, but at 9600 baud it is hard to type ^S and ^Q fast enough to paginate the output nicely, and a program like *more* is usually used.

An additional possibility is to use the ^O flush output character; when this character is typed, all output from the current command is thrown away (quickly) until the next input read occurs or until the next shell prompt. This can be used to allow a command to complete without having to suffer through the output on a slow terminal; ^O is a toggle, so flushing can be turned off by typing ^O again while output is being flushed.

1.9. What now?

We have so far seen a number of mechanisms of the shell and learned a lot about the way in which it operates. The remaining sections will go yet further into the internals of the shell, but you will surely want to try using the shell before you go any further. To try it you can log in to UNIX and type the following command to the system:

chsh myname /bin/csh

Here 'myname' should be replaced by the name you typed to the system prompt of 'login:' to get onto the system. Thus I would use 'chsh bill /bin/csh'. **You only have to do this once; it takes effect at next login.** You are now ready to try using *csh.*

Before you do the 'chsh' command, the shell you are using when you log into the system is '/bin/sh'. In fact, much of the above discussion is applicable to '/bin/sh'. The next section will introduce many features particular to *csh* so you should change your shell to *csh* before you begin reading it.

2. Details on the shell for terminal users

2.1. Shell startup and termination

When you login, the shell is started by the system in your *home* directory and begins by reading commands from a file *.cshrc* in this directory. All shells which you may start during your terminal session will read from this file. We will later see what kinds of commands are usefully placed there. For now we need not have this file and the shell does not complain about its absence.

A *login shell*, executed after you login to the system, will, after it reads commands from *.cshrc*, read commands from a file *.login* also in your home directory. This file contains commands which you wish to do each time you login to the UNIX system. My *.login* file looks something like:

```
set ignoreeof
set mail=(/usr/spool/mail/bill)
echo "${prompt}users" ; users
alias ts \
        'set noglob ; eval `tset -s -m dialup:c100rv4pna -m plugboard:?hp2621nl *` ';
ts; stty intr ^C kill ^U crt
set time=15 history=10
msgs -f
if (-e $mail) then
        echo "${prompt}mail"
        mail
endif
```

This file contains several commands to be executed by UNIX each time I login. The first is a *set* command which is interpreted directly by the shell. It sets the shell variable *ignoreeof* which causes the shell to not log me off if I hit ^D. Rather, I use the *logout* command to log off of the system. By setting the *mail* variable, I ask the shell to watch for incoming mail to me. Every 5 minutes the shell looks for this file and tells me if more mail has arrived there. An alternative to this is to put the command

```
biff y
```

in place of this *set;* this will cause me to be notified immediately when mail arrives, and to be shown the first few lines of the new message.

Next I set the shell variable 'time' to '15' causing the shell to automatically print out statistics lines for commands which execute for at least 15 seconds of CPU time. The variable 'history' is set to 10 indicating that I want the shell to remember the last 10 commands I type in its *history list*, (described later).

I create an *alias* "ts" which executes a *tset*(1) command setting up the modes of the terminal. The parameters to *tset* indicate the kinds of terminal which I usually use when not on a hardwired port. I then execute "ts" and also use the *stty* command to change the interrupt character to ^C and the line kill character to ^U.

I then run the 'msgs' program, which provides me with any system messages which I have not seen before; the '-f' option here prevents it from telling me anything if there are no new messages. Finally, if my mailbox file exists, then I run the 'mail' program to process my mail.

When the 'mail' and 'msgs' programs finish, the shell will finish processing my *.login* file and begin reading commands from the terminal, prompting for each with '% '. When I log off (by giving the *logout* command) the shell will print 'logout' and execute commands from the file '.logout' if it exists in my home directory. After that the shell will terminate and UNIX will log me off the system. If the system is not going down, I will receive a new login message. In any case, after the 'logout' message the shell is committed to terminating and will take no further input from my terminal.

2.2. Shell variables

The shell maintains a set of *variables*. We saw above the variables *history* and *time* which had values '10' and '15'. In fact, each shell variable has as value an array of zero or more *strings*. Shell variables may be assigned values by the set command. It has several forms, the most useful of which was given above and is

```
set name=value
```

Shell variables may be used to store values which are to be used in commands later through a substitution mechanism. The shell variables most commonly referenced are, however, those which the shell itself refers to. By changing the values of these variables one can directly affect the behavior of the shell.

One of the most important variables is the variable *path*. This variable contains a sequence of directory names where the shell searches for commands. The *set* command with no arguments shows the value of all variables currently defined (we usually say *set)* in the shell. The default value for path will be shown by *set* to be

```
% set
argv    ()
cwd     /usr/bill
home    /usr/bill
path    (. /usr/ucb /bin /usr/bin)
prompt  %
shell   /bin/csh
status  0
term    c100rv4pna
user    bill
%
```


This output indicates that the variable path points to the current directory '.' and then '/usr/ucb', '/bin' and '/usr/bin'. Commands which you may write might be in '.' (usually one of your directories). Commands developed at Berkeley, live in '/usr/ucb' while commands developed at Bell Laboratories live in '/bin' and '/usr/bin'.

A number of locally developed programs on the system live in the directory '/usr/local'. If we wish that all shells which we invoke to have access to these new programs we can place the command

```
set path=(. /usr/ucb /bin /usr/bin /usr/local)
```

in our file *.cshrc* in our home directory. Try doing this and then logging out and back in and do

```
set
```

again to see that the value assigned to *path* has changed.

One thing you should be aware of is that the shell examines each directory which you insert into your path and determines which commands are contained there. Except for the current directory '.', which the shell treats specially, this means that if commands are added to a directory in your search path after you have started the shell, they will not necessarily be found by the shell. If you wish to use a command which has been added in this way, you should give the command

```
rehash
```

to the shell, which will cause it to recompute its internal table of command locations, so that it will find the newly added command. Since the shell has to look in the current directory '.' on each command, placing it at the end of the path specification usually works equivalently and reduces overhead.

† Another directory that might interest you is /usr/new, which contains many useful user-contributed programs provided with Berkeley Unix.

Other useful built in variables are the variable *home* which shows your home directory, *cwd* which contains your current working directory, the variable *ignoreeof* which can be set in your *.login* file to tell the shell not to exit when it receives an end-of-file from a terminal (as described above). The variable 'ignoreeof' is one of several variables which the shell does not care about the value of, only whether they are *set* or *unset*. Thus to set this variable you simply do

```
set ignoreeof
```

and to unset it do

```
unset ignoreeof
```

These give the variable 'ignoreeof' no value, but none is desired or required.

Finally, some other built-in shell variables of use are the variables *noclobber* and *mail*. The metasyntax

```
> filename
```

which redirects the standard output of a command will overwrite and destroy the previous contents of the named file. In this way you may accidentally overwrite a file which is valuable. If you would prefer that the shell not overwrite files in this way you can

```
set noclobber
```

in your *.login* file. Then trying to do

```
date > now
```

would cause a diagnostic if 'now' existed already. You could type

```
date >! now
```

if you really wanted to overwrite the contents of 'now'. The '>!' is a special metasyntax indicating that clobbering the file is ok.†

2.3. The shell's history list

The shell can maintain a *history list* into which it places the words of previous commands. It is possible to use a notation to reuse commands or words from commands in forming new commands. This mechanism can be used to repeat previous commands or to correct minor typing mistakes in commands.

The following figure gives a sample session involving typical usage of the history mechanism of the shell. In this example we have a very simple C program which has a bug (or two) in it in the file 'bug.c', which we 'cat' out on our terminal. We then try to run the C compiler on it, referring to the file again as '!$', meaning the last argument to the previous command. Here the '!' is the history mechanism invocation metacharacter, and the '$' stands for the last argument, by analogy to '$' in the editor which stands for the end of the line. The shell echoed the command, as it would have been typed without use of the history mechanism, and then executed it. The compilation yielded error diagnostics so we now run the editor on the file we were trying to compile, fix the bug, and run the C compiler again, this time referring to this command simply as '!c', which repeats the last command which started with the letter 'c'. If there were other commands starting with 'c' done recently we could have said '!cc' or even '!cc:p' which would have printed the last command starting with 'cc' without executing it.

After this recompilation, we ran the resulting 'a.out' file, and then noting that there still was a bug, ran the editor again. After fixing the program we ran the C compiler again, but tacked onto the command an extra '–o bug' telling the compiler to place the resultant binary in the file 'bug' rather than 'a.out'. In general, the history mechanisms may be used anywhere in the formation of new

†The space between the '!' and the word 'now' is critical here, as '!now' would be an invocation of the *history* mechanism, and have a totally different effect.

```
% cat bug.c
main()

{
        printf("hello);
}
% cc !$
cc bug.c
"bug.c", line 4: newline in string or char constant
"bug.c", line 5: syntax error
% ed !$
ed bug.c
29
4s/);/"&/p
        printf("hello");
w
30
q
% !c
cc bug.c
% a.out
hello% !e
ed bug.c
30
4s/lo/lo\\n/p
        printf("hello\n");
w
32
q
% !c -o bug
cc bug.c -o bug
% size a.out bug
a.out: 2784+364+1028 = 4176b = 0x1050b
bug: 2784+364+1028 = 4176b = 0x1050b
% ls -l !*
ls -l a.out bug
-rwxr-xr-x 1 bill       3932 Dec 19 09:41 a.out
-rwxr-xr-x 1 bill       3932 Dec 19 09:42 bug
% bug
hello
% num bug.c | spp
spp: Command not found.
% ^spp^ssp
num bug.c | ssp
    1  main()
    3  {
    4          printf("hello\n");
    5  }
% !! | lpr
num bug.c | ssp | lpr
%
```

commands and other characters may be placed before and after the substituted commands.

We then ran the 'size' command to see how large the binary program images we have created were, and then an 'ls –l' command with the same argument list, denoting the argument list '*'. Finally we ran the program 'bug' to see that its output is indeed correct.

To make a numbered listing of the program we ran the 'num' command on the file 'bug.c'. In order to compress out blank lines in the output of 'num' we ran the output through the filter 'ssp', but misspelled it as spp. To correct this we used a shell substitute, placing the old text and new text between '^' characters. This is similar to the substitute command in the editor. Finally, we repeated the same command with '!!', but sent its output to the line printer.

There are other mechanisms available for repeating commands. The *history* command prints out a number of previous commands with numbers by which they can be referenced. There is a way to refer to a previous command by searching for a string which appeared in it, and there are other, less useful, ways to select arguments to include in a new command. A complete description of all these mechanisms is given in the C shell manual pages in the UNIX Programmer's Manual.

2.4. Aliases

The shell has an *alias* mechanism which can be used to make transformations on input commands. This mechanism can be used to simplify the commands you type, to supply default arguments to commands, or to perform transformations on commands and their arguments. The alias facility is similar to a macro facility. Some of the features obtained by aliasing can be obtained also using shell command files, but these take place in another instance of the shell and cannot directly affect the current shells environment or involve commands such as *cd* which must be done in the current shell.

As an example, suppose that there is a new version of the mail program on the system called 'newmail' you wish to use, rather than the standard mail program which is called 'mail'. If you place the shell command

```
alias mail newmail
```

in your *.cshrc* file, the shell will transform an input line of the form

```
mail bill
```

into a call on 'newmail'. More generally, suppose we wish the command 'ls' to always show sizes of files, that is to always do '–s'. We can do

```
alias ls ls –s
```

or even

```
alias dir ls –s
```

creating a new command syntax 'dir' which does an 'ls –s'. If we say

```
dir ~bill
```

then the shell will translate this to

```
ls –s /mnt/bill
```

Thus the *alias* mechanism can be used to provide short names for commands, to provide default arguments, and to define new short commands in terms of other commands. It is also possible to define aliases which contain multiple commands or pipelines, showing where the arguments to the original command are to be substituted using the facilities of the history mechanism. Thus the definition

```
alias cd 'cd \!* ; ls '
```

would do an *ls* command after each change directory *cd* command. We enclosed the entire alias definition in '' characters to prevent most substitutions from occurring and the character ';' from

being recognized as a metacharacter. The '!' here is escaped with a '\' to prevent it from being interpreted when the alias command is typed in. The '\!*' here substitutes the entire argument list to the pre-aliasing *cd* command, without giving an error if there were no arguments. The ';' separating commands is used here to indicate that one command is to be done and then the next. Similarly the definition

```
alias whois 'grep \!^ /etc/passwd'
```

defines a command which looks up its first argument in the password file.

Warning: The shell currently reads the *.cshrc* file each time it starts up. If you place a large number of commands there, shells will tend to start slowly. A mechanism for saving the shell environment after reading the *.cshrc* file and quickly restoring it is under development, but for now you should try to limit the number of aliases you have to a reasonable number... 10 or 15 is reasonable, 50 or 60 will cause a noticeable delay in starting up shells, and make the system seem sluggish when you execute commands from within the editor and other programs.

2.5. More redirection; >> and >&

There are a few more notations useful to the terminal user which have not been introduced yet.

In addition to the standard output, commands also have a *diagnostic output* which is normally directed to the terminal even when the standard output is redirected to a file or a pipe. It is occasionally desirable to direct the diagnostic output along with the standard output. For instance if you want to redirect the output of a long running command into a file and wish to have a record of any error diagnostic it produces you can do

```
command >& file
```

The '>&' here tells the shell to route both the diagnostic output and the standard output into 'file'. Similarly you can give the command

```
command |& lpr
```

to route both standard and diagnostic output through the pipe to the line printer daemon *lpr*.‡

Finally, it is possible to use the form

```
command >> file
```

to place output at the end of an existing file.†

2.6. Jobs; Background, Foreground, or Suspended

When one or more commands are typed together as a pipeline or as a sequence of commands separated by semicolons, a single *job* is created by the shell consisting of these commands together as a unit. Single commands without pipes or semicolons create the simplest jobs. Usually, every line typed to the shell creates a job. Some lines that create jobs (one per line) are

```
sort < data
ls -s | sort -n | head -5
mail harold
```

If the metacharacter '&' is typed at the end of the commands, then the job is started as a *background* job. This means that the shell does not wait for it to complete but immediately prompts and

‡ A command of the form

```
command >&! file
```

exists, and is used when *noclobber* is set and *file* already exists.

† If *noclobber* is set, then an error will result if *file* does not exist, otherwise the shell will create *file* if it doesn't exist. A form

```
command >>! file
```

makes it not be an error for file to not exist when *noclobber* is set.

is ready for another command. The job runs *in the background* at the same time that normal jobs, called *foreground* jobs, continue to be read and executed by the shell one at a time. Thus

```
du > usage &
```

would run the *du* program, which reports on the disk usage of your working directory (as well as any directories below it), put the output into the file 'usage' and return immediately with a prompt for the next command without out waiting for *du* to finish. The *du* program would continue executing in the background until it finished, even though you can type and execute more commands in the mean time. When a background job terminates, a message is typed by the shell just before the next prompt telling you that the job has completed. In the following example the *du* job finishes sometime during the execution of the *mail* command and its completion is reported just before the prompt after the *mail* job is finished.

```
% du > usage &
[1] 503
% mail bill
How do you know when a background job is finished?
EOT
[1] - Done                    du > usage
%
```

If the job did not terminate normally the 'Done' message might say something else like 'Killed'. If you want the terminations of background jobs to be reported at the time they occur (possibly interrupting the output of other foreground jobs), you can set the *notify* variable. In the previous example this would mean that the 'Done' message might have come right in the middle of the message to Bill. Background jobs are unaffected by any signals from the keyboard like the STOP, INTERRUPT, or QUIT signals mentioned earlier.

Jobs are recorded in a table inside the shell until they terminate. In this table, the shell remembers the command names, arguments and the *process numbers* of all commands in the job as well as the working directory where the job was started. Each job in the table is either running *in the foreground* with the shell waiting for it to terminate, running *in the background,* or *suspended.* Only one job can be running in the foreground at one time, but several jobs can be suspended or running in the background at once. As each job is started, it is assigned a small identifying number called the *job number* which can be used later to refer to the job in the commands described below. Job numbers remain the same until the job terminates and then are re-used.

When a job is started in the backgound using '&', its number, as well as the process numbers of all its (top level) commands, is typed by the shell before prompting you for another command. For example,

```
% ls -s | sort -n > usage &
[2] 2034 2035
%
```

runs the 'ls' program with the '-s' options, pipes this output into the 'sort' program with the '-n' option which puts its output into the file 'usage'. Since the '&' was at the end of the line, these two programs were started together as a background job. After starting the job, the shell prints the job number in brackets (2 in this case) followed by the process number of each program started in the job. Then the shell immediates prompts for a new command, leaving the job running simultaneously.

As mentioned in section 1.8, foreground jobs become *suspended* by typing ^Z which sends a STOP signal to the currently running foreground job. A background job can become suspended by using the *stop* command described below. When jobs are suspended they merely stop any further progress until started again, either in the foreground or the backgound. The shell notices when a job becomes stopped and reports this fact, much like it reports the termination of background jobs. For foreground jobs this looks like

```
% du > usage
^Z
Stopped
%
```

'Stopped' message is typed by the shell when it notices that the *du* program stopped. For background jobs, using the *stop* command, it is

```
% sort usage &
[1] 2345
% stop %1
[1] + Stopped (signal)        sort usage
%
```

Suspending foreground jobs can be very useful when you need to temporarily change what you are doing (execute other commands) and then return to the suspended job. Also, foreground jobs can be suspended and then continued as background jobs using the *bg* command, allowing you to continue other work and stop waiting for the foreground job to finish. Thus

```
% du > usage
^Z
Stopped
% bg
[1] du > usage &
%
```


starts 'du' in the foreground, stops it before it finishes, then continues it in the background allowing more foreground commands to be executed. This is especially helpful when a foreground job ends up taking longer than you expected and you wish you had started it in the backgound in the beginning.

All *job control* commands can take an argument that identifies a particular job. All job name arguments begin with the character '%', since some of the job control commands also accept process numbers (printed by the *ps* command.) The default job (when no argument is given) is called the *current* job and is identified by a '+' in the output of the *jobs* command, which shows you which jobs you have. When only one job is stopped or running in the background (the usual case) it is always the current job thus no argument is needed. If a job is stopped while running in the foreground it becomes the *current* job and the existing current job becomes the *previous* job – identified by a '–' in the output of *jobs*. When the current job terminates, the previous job becomes the current job. When given, the argument is either '%–' (indicating the previous job); '%#', where # is the job number; '%pref' where pref is some unique prefix of the command name and arguments of one of the jobs; or '%?' followed by some string found in only one of the jobs.

The *jobs* command types the table of jobs, giving the job number, commands and status ('Stopped' or 'Running') of each backgound or suspended job. With the '–l' option the process numbers are also typed.

```
% du > usage &
[1] 3398
% ls –s | sort –n > myfile &
[2] 3405
% mail bill
^Z
Stopped
% jobs
[1] – Running              du > usage
[2]   Running              ls –s | sort –n > myfile
[3] + Stopped              mail bill
% fg %ls
ls –s | sort –n > myfile
% more myfile
```

The *fg* command runs a suspended or background job in the foreground. It is used to restart a previously suspended job or change a background job to run in the foreground (allowing signals or input from the terminal). In the above example we used *fg* to change the 'ls' job from the background to the foreground since we wanted to wait for it to finish before looking at its output file. The *bg* command runs a suspended job in the background. It is usually used after stopping the currently running foreground job with the STOP signal. The combination of the STOP signal and the *bg* command changes a foreground job into a background job. The *stop* command suspends a background job.

The *kill* command terminates a background or suspended job immediately. In addition to jobs, it may be given process numbers as arguments, as printed by *ps*. Thus, in the example above, the running *du* command could have been terminated by the command

```
% kill %1
[1] Terminated             du > usage
%
```

The *notify* command (not the variable mentioned earlier) indicates that the termination of a specific job should be reported at the time it finishes instead of waiting for the next prompt.

If a job running in the background tries to read input from the terminal it is automatically stopped. When such a job is then run in the foreground, input can be given to the job. If desired, the job can be run in the background again until it requests input again. This is illustrated in the following sequence where the 's' command in the text editor might take a long time.

```
% ed bigfile
120000
1,$s/thisword/thatword/
^Z
Stopped
% bg
[1] ed bigfile &
%
 . . . some foreground commands
[1] Stopped (tty input)    ed bigfile
% fg
ed bigfile
w
120000
q
%
```

So after the 's' command was issued, the 'ed' job was stopped with ^Z and then put in the background using *bg*. Some time later when the 's' command was finished, *ed* tried to read another command and was stopped because jobs in the backgound cannot read from the terminal. The *fg* command returned the 'ed' job to the foreground where it could once again accept commands from the terminal.

The command

```
stty tostop
```

causes all background jobs run on your terminal to stop when they are about to write output to the terminal. This prevents messages from background jobs from interrupting foreground job output and allows you to run a job in the background without losing terminal output. It also can be used for interactive programs that sometimes have long periods without interaction. Thus each time it outputs a prompt for more input it will stop before the prompt. It can then be run in the foreground using *fg*, more input can be given and, if necessary stopped and returned to the background. This *stty* command might be a good thing to put in your *.login* file if you do not like output from background jobs interrupting your work. It also can reduce the need for redirecting the output of background jobs if the output is not very big:

```
% stty tostop
% wc hugefile &
[1] 10387
% ed text
. . . some time later
q
[1] Stopped (tty output)     wc hugefile
% fg wc
wc hugefile
  13371   30123   302577
% stty -tostop
```

Thus after some time the 'wc' command, which counts the lines, words and characters in a file, had one line of output. When it tried to write this to the terminal it stopped. By restarting it in the foreground we allowed it to write on the terminal exactly when we were ready to look at its output. Programs which attempt to change the mode of the terminal will also block, whether or not *tostop* is set, when they are not in the foreground, as it would be very unpleasant to have a background job change the state of the terminal.

Since the *jobs* command only prints jobs started in the currently executing shell, it knows nothing about background jobs started in other login sessions or within shell files. The *ps* can be used in this case to find out about background jobs not started in the current shell.

2.7. Working Directories

As mentioned in section 1.6, the shell is always in a particular *working directory*. The 'change directory' command *chdir* (its short form *cd* may also be used) changes the working directory of the shell, that is, changes the directory you are located in.

It is useful to make a directory for each project you wish to work on and to place all files related to that project in that directory. The 'make directory' command, *mkdir*, creates a new directory. The *pwd* ('print working directory') command reports the absolute pathname of the working directory of the shell, that is, the directory you are located in. Thus in the example below:

```
% pwd
/usr/bill
% mkdir newpaper
% chdir newpaper
% pwd
/usr/bill/newpaper
%
```

the user has created and moved to the directory *newpaper.* where, for example, he might place a group of related files.

No matter where you have moved to in a directory hierarchy, you can return to your 'home' login directory by doing just

```
cd
```

with no arguments. The name '..' always means the directory above the current one in the hierarchy, thus

```
cd ..
```

changes the shell's working directory to the one directly above the current one. The name '..' can be used in any pathname, thus,

```
cd ../programs
```

means change to the directory 'programs' contained in the directory above the current one. If you have several directories for different projects under, say, your home directory, this shorthand notation permits you to switch easily between them.

The shell always remembers the pathname of its current working directory in the variable *cwd.* The shell can also be requested to remember the previous directory when you change to a new working directory. If the 'push directory' command *pushd* is used in place of the *cd* command, the shell saves the name of the current working directory on a *directory stack* before changing to the new one. You can see this list at any time by typing the 'directories' command *dirs.*

```
% pushd newpaper/references
~/newpaper/references ~
% pushd /usr/lib/tmac
/usr/lib/tmac ~/newpaper/references ~
% dirs
/usr/lib/tmac ~/newpaper/references ~
% popd
~/newpaper/references ~
% popd
~
%
```

The list is printed in a horizontal line, reading left to right, with a tilde (~) as shorthand for your home directory—in this case '/usr/bill'. The directory stack is printed whenever there is more than one entry on it and it changes. It is also printed by a *dirs* command. *Dirs* is usually faster and more informative than *pwd* since it shows the current working directory as well as any other directories remembered in the stack.

The *pushd* command with no argument alternates the current directory with the first directory in the list. The 'pop directory' *popd* command without an argument returns you to the directory you were in prior to the current one, discarding the previous current directory from the stack (forgetting it). Typing *popd* several times in a series takes you backward through the directories you had been in (changed to) by *pushd* command. There are other options to *pushd* and *popd* to manipulate the contents of the directory stack and to change to directories not at the top of the stack; see the *csh* manual page for details.

Since the shell remembers the working directory in which each job was started, it warns you when you might be confused by restarting a job in the foreground which has a different working directory than the current working directory of the shell. Thus if you start a background job, then change the shell's working directory and then cause the background job to run in the foreground, the shell warns you that the working directory of the currently running foreground job is different from that of the shell.

```
% dirs –l
/mnt/bill
% cd myproject
% dirs
~/myproject
% ed prog.c
1143
^Z
Stopped
% cd ..
% ls
myproject
textfile
% fg
ed prog.c (wd: ~/myproject)
```


This way the shell warns you when there is an implied change of working directory, even though no cd command was issued. In the above example the 'ed' job was still in '/mnt/bill/project' even though the shell had changed to '/mnt/bill'. A similar warning is given when such a foreground job terminates or is suspended (using the STOP signal) since the return to the shell again implies a change of working directory.

```
% fg
ed prog.c (wd: ~/myproject)
. . . after some editing
q
(wd now: ~)
%
```

These messages are sometimes confusing if you use programs that change their own working directories, since the shell only remembers which directory a job is started in, and assumes it stays there. The '–l' option of *jobs* will type the working directory of suspended or background jobs when it is different from the current working directory of the shell.

2.8. Useful built-in commands

We now give a few of the useful built-in commands of the shell describing how they are used.

The *alias* command described above is used to assign new aliases and to show the existing aliases. With no arguments it prints the current aliases. It may also be given only one argument such as

```
alias ls
```

to show the current alias for, e.g., 'ls'.

The *echo* command prints its arguments. It is often used in *shell scripts* or as an interactive command to see what filename expansions will produce.

The *history* command will show the contents of the history list. The numbers given with the history events can be used to reference previous events which are difficult to reference using the contextual mechanisms introduced above. There is also a shell variable called *prompt.* By placing a '!' character in its value the shell will there substitute the number of the current command in the history

list. You can use this number to refer to this command in a history substitution. Thus you could

```
set prompt='\! % '
```

Note that the '!' character had to be *escaped* here even within '' characters.

The *limit* command is used to restrict use of resources. With no arguments it prints the current limitations:

```
cputime      unlimited
filesize     unlimited
datasize     5616 kbytes
stacksize    512 kbytes
coredumpsize unlimited
```

Limits can be set, e.g.:

```
limit coredumpsize 128k
```

Most reasonable units abbreviations will work; see the *csh* manual page for more details.

The *logout* command can be used to terminate a login shell which has *ignoreeof* set.

The *rehash* command causes the shell to recompute a table of where commands are located. This is necessary if you add a command to a directory in the current shell's search path and wish the shell to find it, since otherwise the hashing algorithm may tell the shell that the command wasn't in that directory when the hash table was computed.

The *repeat* command can be used to repeat a command several times. Thus to make 5 copies of the file *one* in the file *five* you could do

```
repeat 5 cat one >> five
```

The *setenv* command can be used to set variables in the environment. Thus

```
setenv TERM adm3a
```

will set the value of the environment variable TERM to 'adm3a'. A user program *printenv* exists which will print out the environment. It might then show:

```
% printenv
HOME=/usr/bill
SHELL=/bin/csh
PATH=:/usr/ucb:/bin:/usr/bin:/usr/local
TERM=adm3a
USER=bill
%
```

The *source* command can be used to force the current shell to read commands from a file. Thus

```
source .cshrc
```

can be used after editing in a change to the *.cshrc* file which you wish to take effect right away.

The *time* command can be used to cause a command to be timed no matter how much CPU time it takes. Thus

```
% time cp /etc/rc /usr/bill/rc
0.0u 0.1s 0:01 8% 2+1k 3+2io 1pf+0w
% time wc /etc/rc /usr/bill/rc
    52    178   1347 /etc/rc
    52    178   1347 /usr/bill/rc
   104    356   2694 total
0.1u 0.1s 0:00 13% 3+3k 5+3io 7pf+0w
%
```

indicates that the *cp* command used a negligible amount of user time (u) and about 1/10th of a system time (s); the elapsed time was 1 second (0:01), there was an average memory usage of 2k bytes of program space and 1k bytes of data space over the cpu time involved (2+1k); the program did three disk reads and two disk writes (3+2io), and took one page fault and was not swapped (1pf+0w). The word count command *wc* on the other hand used 0.1 seconds of user time and 0.1 seconds of system time in less than a second of elapsed time. The percentage '13%' indicates that over the period when it was active the command 'wc' used an average of 13 percent of the available CPU cycles of the machine.

The *unalias* and *unset* commands can be used to remove aliases and variable definitions from the shell, and *unsetenv* removes variables from the environment.

2.9. What else?

This concludes the basic discussion of the shell for terminal users. There are more features of the shell to be discussed here, and all features of the shell are discussed in its manual pages. One useful feature which is discussed later is the *foreach* built-in command which can be used to run the same command sequence with a number of different arguments.

If you intend to use UNIX a lot you you should look through the rest of this document and the csh manual pages (section1) to become familiar with the other facilities which are available to you.

3. Shell control structures and command scripts

3.1. Introduction

It is possible to place commands in files and to cause shells to be invoked to read and execute commands from these files, which are called *shell scripts*. We here detail those features of the shell useful to the writers of such scripts.

3.2. Make

It is important to first note what shell scripts are *not* useful for. There is a program called *make* which is very useful for maintaining a group of related files or performing sets of operations on related files. For instance a large program consisting of one or more files can have its dependencies described in a *makefile* which contains definitions of the commands used to create these different files when changes occur. Definitions of the means for printing listings, cleaning up the directory in which the files reside, and installing the resultant programs are easily, and most appropriately placed in this *makefile*. This format is superior and preferable to maintaining a group of shell procedures to maintain these files.

Similarly when working on a document a *makefile* may be created which defines how different versions of the document are to be created and which options of *nroff* or *troff* are appropriate.

3.3. Invocation and the argv variable

A *csh* command script may be interpreted by saying

```
% csh script ...
```

where *script* is the name of the file containing a group of *csh* commands and '...' is replaced by a sequence of arguments. The shell places these arguments in the variable *argv* and then begins to read commands from the script. These parameters are then available through the same mechanisms which are used to reference any other shell variables.

If you make the file 'script' executable by doing

```
chmod 755 script
```

and place a shell comment at the beginning of the shell script (i.e. begin the file with a '#' character) then a '/bin/csh' will automatically be invoked to execute 'script' when you type

```
script
```

If the file does not begin with a '#' then the standard shell '/bin/sh' will be used to execute it. This allows you to convert your older shell scripts to use *csh* at your convenience.

3.4. Variable substitution

After each input line is broken into words and history substitutions are done on it, the input line is parsed into distinct commands. Before each command is executed a mechanism know as *variable substitution* is done on these words. Keyed by the character '$' this substitution replaces the names of variables by their values. Thus

```
echo $argv
```

when placed in a command script would cause the current value of the variable *argv* to be echoed to the output of the shell script. It is an error for *argv* to be unset at this point.

A number of notations are provided for accessing components and attributes of variables. The notation

```
$?name
```

expands to '1' if name is *set* or to '0' if name is not *set*. It is the fundamental mechanism used for checking whether particular variables have been assigned values. All other forms of reference to

undefined variables cause errors.

The notation

```
$#name
```

expands to the number of elements in the variable *name*. Thus

```
% set argv=(a b c)
% echo $?argv
1
% echo $#argv
3
% unset argv
% echo $?argv
0
% echo $argv
Undefined variable: argv.
%
```


It is also possible to access the components of a variable which has several values. Thus

```
$argv[1]
```

gives the first component of *argv* or in the example above 'a'. Similarly

```
$argv[$#argv]
```

would give 'c', and

```
$argv[1-2]
```

would give 'a b'. Other notations useful in shell scripts are

```
$n
```

where *n* is an integer as a shorthand for

```
$argv[n]
```

the *nth* parameter and

```
$*
```

which is a shorthand for

```
$argv
```

The form

```
$$
```

expands to the process number of the current shell. Since this process number is unique in the system it can be used in generation of unique temporary file names. The form

```
$<
```

is quite special and is replaced by the next line of input read from the shell's standard input (not the script it is reading). This is useful for writing shell scripts that are interactive, reading commands from the terminal, or even writing a shell script that acts as a filter, reading lines from its input file. Thus the sequence

```
echo 'yes or no?\c'
set a=($<)
```

would write out the prompt 'yes or no?' without a newline and then read the answer into the variable 'a'. In this case '$#a' would be '0' if either a blank line or end-of-file (^D) was typed.

One minor difference between '$n' and '$argv[n]' should be noted here. The form '$argv[n]' will yield an error if *n* is not in the range '1-$#argv' while '$n' will never yield an out of range subscript error. This is for compatibility with the way older shells handled parameters.

Another important point is that it is never an error to give a subrange of the form 'n-'; if there are less than *n* components of the given variable then no words are substituted. A range of the form 'm-n' likewise returns an empty vector without giving an error when *m* exceeds the number of elements of the given variable, provided the subscript *n* is in range.

3.5. Expressions

In order for interesting shell scripts to be constructed it must be possible to evaluate expressions in the shell based on the values of variables. In fact, all the arithmetic operations of the language C are available in the shell with the same precedence that they have in C. In particular, the operations '==' and '!=' compare strings and the operators '&&' and '| |' implement the boolean and/or operations. The special operators '=~' and '!~' are similar to '==' and '!=' except that the string on the right side can have pattern matching characters (like *, ? or []) and the test is whether the string on the left matches the pattern on the right.

The shell also allows file enquiries of the form

-? filename

where '?' is replace by a number of single characters. For instance the expression primitive

-e filename

tell whether the file 'filename' exists. Other primitives test for read, write and execute access to the file, whether it is a directory, or has non-zero length.

It is possible to test whether a command terminates normally, by a primitive of the form

{ command }

which returns true, i.e. '1' if the command succeeds exiting normally with exit status 0, or '0' if the command terminates abnormally or with exit status non-zero. If more detailed information about the execution status of a command is required, it can be executed and the variable '$status' examined in the next command. Since '$status' is set by every command, it is very transient. It can be saved if it is inconvenient to use it only in the single immediately following command.

For a full list of expression components available see the manual section for the shell.

3.6. Sample shell script

A sample shell script which makes use of the expression mechanism of the shell and some of its control structure follows:

```
% cat copyc
#
# Copyc copies those C programs in the specified list
# to the directory ~/backup if they differ from the files
# already in ~/backup
#
set noglob
foreach i ($argv)

        if ($i !~ *.c) continue  # not a .c file so do nothing

        if (! -r ~/backup/$i:t) then
                echo $i:t not in backup... not cp\'ed
                continue
        endif

        cmp -s $i ~/backup/$i:t # to set $status

        if ($status != 0) then
                echo new backup of $i
                cp $i ~/backup/$i:t
        endif
end
```


This script makes use of the *foreach* command, which causes the shell to execute the commands between the *foreach* and the matching *end* for each of the values given between '(' and ')' with the named variable, in this case 'i' set to successive values in the list. Within this loop we may use the command *break* to stop executing the loop and *continue* to prematurely terminate one iteration and begin the next. After the *foreach* loop the iteration variable (*i* in this case) has the value at the last iteration.

We set the variable *noglob* here to prevent filename expansion of the members of *argv*. This is a good idea, in general, if the arguments to a shell script are filenames which have already been expanded or if the arguments may contain filename expansion metacharacters. It is also possible to quote each use of a '$' variable expansion, but this is harder and less reliable.

The other control construct used here is a statement of the form

```
if ( expression ) then
        command
        ...
endif
```

The placement of the keywords here is **not** flexible due to the current implementation of the shell.†

†The following two formats are not currently acceptable to the shell:

```
if ( expression )               # Won't work!
then
        command
        ...
endif
```

and

```
if ( expression ) then command endif            # Won't work
```

The shell does have another form of the if statement of the form

if (expression) **command**

which can be written

```
if ( expression ) \
    command
```

Here we have escaped the newline for the sake of appearance. The command must not involve '|', '&' or ';' and must not be another control command. The second form requires the final '\' to **immediately** precede the end-of-line.

The more general *if* statements above also admit a sequence of *else-if* pairs followed by a single *else* and an *endif*, e.g.:

```
if ( expression ) then
    commands
else if (expression ) then
    commands
...

else
    commands
endif
```

Another important mechanism used in shell scripts is the ':' modifier. We can use the modifier ':r' here to extract a root of a filename or ':e' to extract the *extension.* Thus if the variable *i* has the value '/mnt/foo.bar' then

```
% echo $i $i:r $i:e
/mnt/foo.bar /mnt/foo bar
%
```

shows how the ':r' modifier strips off the trailing '.bar' and the the ':e' modifier leaves only the 'bar'. Other modifiers will take off the last component of a pathname leaving the head ':h' or all but the last component of a pathname leaving the tail ':t'. These modifiers are fully described in the *csh* manual pages in the User's Reference Manual. It is also possible to use the *command substitution* mechanism described in the next major section to perform modifications on strings to then reenter the shell's environment. Since each usage of this mechanism involves the creation of a new process, it is much more expensive to use than the ':' modification mechanism.‡ Finally, we note that the character '#' lexically introduces a shell comment in shell scripts (but not from the terminal). All subsequent characters on the input line after a '#' are discarded by the shell. This character can be quoted using '' or '\' to place it in an argument word.

3.7. Other control structures

The shell also has control structures *while* and *switch* similar to those of C. These take the forms

‡ It is also important to note that the current implementation of the shell limits the number of ':' modifiers on a '$' substitution to 1. Thus

```
% echo $i $i:h:t
/a/b/c /a/b:t
%
```

does not do what one would expect.

```
while ( expression )
    commands
end
```

and

```
switch ( word )

case str1:
    commands
    breaksw

...

case strn:
    commands
    breaksw

default:
    commands
    breaksw

endsw
```


For details see the manual section for *csh*. C programmers should note that we use *breaksw* to exit from a *switch* while *break* exits a *while* or *foreach* loop. A common mistake to make in *csh* scripts is to use *break* rather than *breaksw* in switches.

Finally, *csh* allows a *goto* statement, with labels looking like they do in C, i.e.:

```
loop:
    commands
    goto loop
```

3.8. Supplying input to commands

Commands run from shell scripts receive by default the standard input of the shell which is running the script. This is different from previous shells running under UNIX. It allows shell scripts to fully participate in pipelines, but mandates extra notation for commands which are to take inline data.

Thus we need a metanotation for supplying inline data to commands in shell scripts. As an example, consider this script which runs the editor to delete leading blanks from the lines in each argument file:

```
% cat deblank
# deblank -- remove leading blanks
foreach i ($argv)
ed - $i << 'EOF'
1,$s/^[ ]*//
w
q
'EOF'
end
%
```

The notation '<< 'EOF'' means that the standard input for the *ed* command is to come from the text in the shell script file up to the next line consisting of exactly ''EOF''. The fact that the 'EOF' is enclosed in '' characters, i.e. quoted, causes the shell to not perform variable substitution on the

intervening lines. In general, if any part of the word following the '<<' which the shell uses to terminate the text to be given to the command is quoted then these substitutions will not be performed. In this case since we used the form '1,$' in our editor script we needed to insure that this '$' was not variable substituted. We could also have insured this by preceding the '$' here with a '\', i.e.:

```
1,\$s/^[ ]*//
```

but quoting the 'EOF' terminator is a more reliable way of achieving the same thing.

3.9. Catching interrupts

If our shell script creates temporary files, we may wish to catch interruptions of the shell script so that we can clean up these files. We can then do

```
onintr label
```

where *label* is a label in our program. If an interrupt is received the shell will do a 'goto label' and we can remove the temporary files and then do an *exit* command (which is built in to the shell) to exit from the shell script. If we wish to exit with a non-zero status we can do

```
exit(1)
```

e.g. to exit with status '1'.

3.10. What else?

There are other features of the shell useful to writers of shell procedures. The *verbose* and *echo* options and the related *-v* and *-x* command line options can be used to help trace the actions of the shell. The *-n* option causes the shell only to read commands and not to execute them and may sometimes be of use.

One other thing to note is that *csh* will not execute shell scripts which do not begin with the character '#', that is shell scripts that do not begin with a comment. Similarly, the '/bin/sh' on your system may well defer to 'csh' to interpret shell scripts which begin with '#'. This allows shell scripts for both shells to live in harmony.

There is also another quotation mechanism using '"' which allows only some of the expansion mechanisms we have so far discussed to occur on the quoted string and serves to make this string into a single word as '`' does.

4. Other, less commonly used, shell features

4.1. Loops at the terminal; variables as vectors

It is occasionally useful to use the *foreach* control structure at the terminal to aid in performing a number of similar commands. For instance, there were at one point three shells in use on the Cory UNIX system at Cory Hall, '/bin/sh', '/bin/nsh', and '/bin/csh'. To count the number of persons using each shell one could have issued the commands

```
% grep -c csh$ /etc/passwd
27
% grep -c nsh$ /etc/passwd
128
% grep -c -v sh$ /etc/passwd
430
%
```

Since these commands are very similar we can use *foreach* to do this more easily.

```
% foreach i ('sh$' 'csh$' '-v sh$')
? grep -c $i /etc/passwd
? end
27
128
430
%
```


Note here that the shell prompts for input with '? ' when reading the body of the loop.

Very useful with loops are variables which contain lists of filenames or other words. You can, for example, do

```
% set a=(`ls`)
% echo $a
csh.n csh.rm
% ls
csh.n
csh.rm
% echo $#a
2
%
```

The *set* command here gave the variable *a* a list of all the filenames in the current directory as value. We can then iterate over these names to perform any chosen function.

The output of a command within '`' characters is converted by the shell to a list of words. You can also place the '`' quoted string within '"' characters to take each (non-empty) line as a component of the variable; preventing the lines from being split into words at blanks and tabs. A modifier ':x' exists which can be used later to expand each component of the variable into another variable splitting it into separate words at embedded blanks and tabs.

4.2. Braces { ... } in argument expansion

Another form of filename expansion, alluded to before involves the characters '{' and '}'. These characters specify that the contained strings, separated by ',' are to be consecutively substituted into the containing characters and the results expanded left to right. Thus

```
A{str1,str2,...strn}B
```

expands to

Astr1B Astr2B ... AstrnB

This expansion occurs before the other filename expansions, and may be applied recursively (i.e. nested). The results of each expanded string are sorted separately, left to right order being preserved. The resulting filenames are not required to exist if no other expansion mechanisms are used. This means that this mechanism can be used to generate arguments which are not filenames, but which have common parts.

A typical use of this would be

mkdir ~/{hdrs,retrofit,csh}

to make subdirectories 'hdrs', 'retrofit' and 'csh' in your home directory. This mechanism is most useful when the common prefix is longer than in this example, i.e.

chown root /usr/{ucb/{ex,edit},lib/{ex?.?*,how_ex}}

4.3. Command substitution

A command enclosed in `` ` `` characters is replaced, just before filenames are expanded, by the output from that command. Thus it is possible to do

set pwd=`pwd`

to save the current directory in the variable *pwd* or to do

ex `grep -l TRACE *.c`

to run the editor *ex* supplying as arguments those files whose names end in '.c' which have the string 'TRACE' in them.*

4.4. Other details not covered here

In particular circumstances it may be necessary to know the exact nature and order of different substitutions performed by the shell. The exact meaning of certain combinations of quotations is also occasionally important. These are detailed fully in its manual section.

The shell has a number of command line option flags mostly of use in writing UNIX programs, and debugging shell scripts. See the csh(1) manual section for a list of these options.

*Command expansion also occurs in input redirected with '<<' and within '"' quotations. Refer to the shell manual section for full details.

Appendix – Special characters

The following table lists the special characters of *csh* and the UNIX system, giving for each the section(s) in which it is discussed. A number of these characters also have special meaning in expressions. See the *csh* manual section for a complete list.

Syntactic metacharacters

;	2.4	separates commands to be executed sequentially
|	1.5	separates commands in a pipeline
( )	2.2,3.6	brackets expressions and variable values
&	2.5	follows commands to be executed without waiting for completion

Filename metacharacters

/	1.6	separates components of a file's pathname
?	1.6	expansion character matching any single character
*	1.6	expansion character matching any sequence of characters
[ ]	1.6	expansion sequence matching any single character from a set
~	1.6	used at the beginning of a filename to indicate home directories
{ }	4.2	used to specify groups of arguments with common parts

Quotation metacharacters

\	1.7	prevents meta-meaning of following single character
'	1.7	prevents meta-meaning of a group of characters
"	4.3	like ', but allows variable and command expansion

Input/output metacharacters

<	1.5	indicates redirected input
>	1.3	indicates redirected output

Expansion/substitution metacharacters

$	3.4	indicates variable substitution
!	2.3	indicates history substitution
:	3.6	precedes substitution modifiers
^	2.3	used in special forms of history substitution
`	4.3	indicates command substitution

Other metacharacters

#	1.3,3.6	begins scratch file names; indicates shell comments
-	1.2	prefixes option (flag) arguments to commands
%	2.6	prefixes job name specifications

Glossary

This glossary lists the most important terms introduced in the introduction to the shell and gives references to sections of the shell document for further information about them. References of the form 'pr (1)' indicate that the command *pr* is in the UNIX User Reference manual in section 1. You can look at an online copy of its manual page by doing

```
man 1 pr
```

References of the form (2.5) indicate that more information can be found in section 2.5 of this manual.

.
: Your current directory has the name '.' as well as the name printed by the command *pwd;* see also *dirs.* The current directory '.' is usually the first *component* of the search path contained in the variable *path*, thus commands which are in '.' are found first (2.2). The character '.' is also used in separating *components* of filenames (1.6). The character '.' at the beginning of a *component* of a *pathname* is treated specially and not matched by the *filename expansion* metacharacters '?', '*', and '[' ']' pairs (1.6).

..
: Each directory has a file '..' in it which is a reference to its parent directory. After changing into the directory with *chdir*, i.e.

```
chdir paper
```

you can return to the parent directory by doing

```
chdir ..
```

The current directory is printed by *pwd* (2.7).

a.out
: Compilers which create executable images create them, by default, in the file *a.out.* for historical reasons (2.3).

absolute pathname
: A *pathname* which begins with a '/' is *absolute* since it specifies the *path* of directories from the beginning of the entire directory system – called the *root* directory. *Pathnames* which are not *absolute* are called *relative* (see definition of *relative pathname*) (1.6).

alias
: An *alias* specifies a shorter or different name for a UNIX command, or a transformation on a command to be performed in the shell. The shell has a command *alias* which establishes *aliases* and can print their current values. The command *unalias* is used to remove *aliases* (2.4).

argument
: Commands in UNIX receive a list of *argument* words. Thus the command

```
echo a b c
```

consists of the *command name* 'echo' and three *argument* words 'a', 'b' and 'c'. The set of *arguments* after the *command name* is said to be the *argument list* of the command (1.1).

argv
: The list of arguments to a command written in the shell language (a shell script or shell procedure) is stored in a variable called *argv* within the shell. This name is taken from the conventional name in the C programming language (3.4).

background
: Commands started without waiting for them to complete are called *background* commands (2.6).

base
: A filename is sometimes thought of as consisting of a *base* part, before any '.' character, and an *extension* – the part after the '.'. See *filename* and *extension* (1.6) and basename (1).

bg
: The *bg* command causes a *suspended* job to continue execution in the *background* (2.6).

bin — A directory containing binaries of programs and shell scripts to be executed is typically called a *bin* directory. The standard system *bin* directories are '/bin' containing the most heavily used commands and '/usr/bin' which contains most other user programs. Programs developed at UC Berkeley live in '/usr/ucb', while locally written programs live in '/usr/local'. Games are kept in the directory '/usr/games'. You can place binaries in any directory. If you wish to execute them often, the name of the directories should be a *component* of the variable *path*.

break — *Break* is a builtin command used to exit from loops within the control structure of the shell (3.7).

breaksw — The *breaksw* builtin command is used to exit from a *switch* control structure, like a *break* exits from loops (3.7).

builtin — A command executed directly by the shell is called a *builtin* command. Most commands in UNIX are not built into the shell, but rather exist as files in *bin* directories. These commands are accessible because the directories in which they reside are named in the *path* variable.

case — A *case* command is used as a label in a *switch* statement in the shell's control structure, similar to that of the language C. Details are given in the shell documentation 'csh (1)' (3.7).

cat — The *cat* program catenates a list of specified files on the *standard output*. It is usually used to look at the contents of a single file on the terminal, to 'cat a file' (1.8, 2.3).

cd — The *cd* command is used to change the *working directory*. With no arguments, *cd* changes your *working directory* to be your *home* directory (2.4, 2.7).

chdir — The *chdir* command is a synonym for *cd*. *Cd* is usually used because it is easier to type.

chsh — The *chsh* command is used to change the shell which you use on UNIX. By default, you use an different version of the shell which resides in '/bin/sh'. You can change your shell to '/bin/csh' by doing

```
chsh your-login-name /bin/csh
```

Thus I would do

```
chsh bill /bin/csh
```

It is only necessary to do this once. The next time you log in to UNIX after doing this command, you will be using *csh* rather than the shell in '/bin/sh' (1.9).

cmp — *Cmp* is a program which compares files. It is usually used on binary files, or to see if two files are identical (3.6). For comparing text files the program *diff*, described in 'diff (1)' is used.

command — A function performed by the system, either by the shell (a builtin *command*) or by a program residing in a file in a directory within the UNIX system, is called a *command* (1.1).

command name — When a command is issued, it consists of a *command name*, which is the first word of the command, followed by arguments. The convention on UNIX is that the first word of a command names the function to be performed (1.1).

command substitution — The replacement of a command enclosed in ``` ` ``` characters by the text output by that command is called *command substitution* (4.3).

component — A part of a *pathname* between '/' characters is called a *component* of that *pathname*. A variable which has multiple strings as value is said to have several *component*s; each string is a *component* of the variable.

continue — A builtin command which causes execution of the enclosing *foreach* or *while* loop to cycle prematurely. Similar to the *continue* command in the programming language C (3.6).

control-· — Certain special characters, called *control* characters, are produced by holding down the CONTROL key on your terminal and simultaneously pressing another character, much like the SHIFT key is used to produce upper case characters. Thus *control*-c is produced by holding down the CONTROL key while pressing the 'c' key. Usually UNIX prints an caret (^) followed by the corresponding letter when you type a *control* character (e.g. '^C' for *control*-c (1.8).

core dump — When a program terminates abnormally, the system places an image of its current state in a file named 'core'. This *core dump* can be examined with the system debugger 'adb (1)' or 'sdb (1)' in order to determine what went wrong with the program (1.8). If the shell produces a message of the form

Illegal instruction (core dumped)

(where 'Illegal instruction' is only one of several possible messages), you should report this to the author of the program or a system administrator, saving the 'core' file.

cp — The *cp* (copy) program is used to copy the contents of one file into another file. It is one of the most commonly used UNIX commands (1.6).

csh — The name of the shell program that this document describes.

.cshrc — The file *.cshrc* in your *home* directory is read by each shell as it begins execution. It is usually used to change the setting of the variable *path* and to set *alias* parameters which are to take effect globally (2.1).

cwd — The *cwd* variable in the shell holds the *absolute pathname* of the current *working directory*. It is changed by the shell whenever your current *working directory* changes and should not be changed otherwise (2.2).

date — The *date* command prints the current date and time (1.3).

debugging — *Debugging* is the process of correcting mistakes in programs and shell scripts. The shell has several options and variables which may be used to aid in shell *debugging* (4.4).

default: — The label *default:* is used within shell *switch* statements, as it is in the C language to label the code to be executed if none of the *case* labels matches the value switched on (3.7).

DELETE — The DELETE or RUBOUT key on the terminal normally causes an interrupt to be sent to the current job. Many users change the interrupt character to be ^C.

detached — A command that continues running in the *background* after you logout is said to be *detached*.

diagnostic — An error message produced by a program is often referred to as a *diagnostic*. Most error messages are not written to the *standard output*, since that is often directed away from the terminal (1.3, 1.5). Error messsages are instead written to the *diagnostic output* which may be directed away from the terminal, but usually is not. Thus *diagnostics* will usually appear on the terminal (2.5).

directory — A structure which contains files. At any time you are in one particular *directory* whose names can be printed by the command *pwd*. The *chdir* command will change you to another *directory*, and make the files in that *directory* visible. The *directory* in which you are when you first login is your *home* directory (1.1, 2.7).

directory stack — The shell saves the names of previous *working directories* in the *directory stack* when you change your current *working directory* via the *pushd* command. The *directory stack* can be printed by using the *dirs* command, which includes your current

working directory as the first directory name on the left (2.7).

dirs — The *dirs* command prints the shell's *directory stack* (2.7).

du — The *du* command is a program (described in 'du (1)') which prints the number of disk blocks is all directories below and including your current *working directory* (2.6).

echo — The *echo* command prints its arguments (1.6, 3.6).

else — The *else* command is part of the 'if-then-else-endif' control command construct (3.6).

endif — If an *if* statement is ended with the word *then*, all lines following the *if* up to a line starting with the word *endif* or *else* are executed if the condition between parentheses after the *if* is true (3.6).

EOF — An *end-of-file* is generated by the terminal by a control-d, and whenever a command reads to the end of a file which it has been given as input. Commands receiving input from a *pipe* receive an *end-of-file* when the command sending them input completes. Most commands terminate when they receive an *end-of-file*. The shell has an option to ignore *end-of-file* from a terminal input which may help you keep from logging out accidentally by typing too many control-d's (1.1, 1.8, 3.8).

escape — A character '\' used to prevent the special meaning of a metacharacter is said to *escape* the character from its special meaning. Thus

```
echo \*
```

will echo the character '*' while just

```
echo *
```

will echo the names of the file in the current directory. In this example, \ *escape*s '*' (1.7). There is also a non-printing character called *escape*, usually labelled ESC or ALTMODE on terminal keyboards. Some older UNIX systems use this character to indicate that output is to be *suspended*. Most systems use control-s to stop the output and control-q to start it.

/etc/passwd — This file contains information about the accounts currently on the system. It consists of a line for each account with fields separated by ':' characters (1.8). You can look at this file by saying

```
cat /etc/passwd
```

The commands *finger* and *grep* are often used to search for information in this file. See 'finger (1)', 'passwd(5)', and 'grep (1)' for more details.

exit — The *exit* command is used to force termination of a shell script, and is built into the shell (3.9).

exit status — A command which discovers a problem may reflect this back to the command (such as a shell) which invoked (executed) it. It does this by returning a non-zero number as its *exit status*, a status of zero being considered 'normal termination'. The *exit* command can be used to force a shell command script to give a non-zero *exit status* (3.6).

expansion — The replacement of strings in the shell input which contain metacharacters by other strings is referred to as the process of *expansion*. Thus the replacement of the word '*' by a sorted list of files in the current directory is a 'filename expansion'. Similarly the replacement of the characters '!!' by the text of the last command is a 'history expansion'. *Expansions* are also referred to as *substitutions* (1.6, 3.4, 4.2).

expressions — *Expressions* are used in the shell to control the conditional structures used in the writing of shell scripts and in calculating values for these scripts. The operators available in shell *expressions* are those of the language C (3.5).

extension — Filenames often consist of a *base* name and an *extension* separated by the character '.'. By convention, groups of related files often share the same *root* name. Thus if

'prog.c' were a C program, then the object file for this program would be stored in 'prog.o'. Similarly a paper written with the '–me' nroff macro package might be stored in 'paper.me' while a formatted version of this paper might be kept in 'paper.out' and a list of spelling errors in 'paper.errs' (1.6).

fg — The *job control* command *fg* is used to run a *background* or *suspended* job in the *foreground* (1.8, 2.6).

filename — Each file in UNIX has a name consisting of up to 14 characters and not including the character '/' which is used in *pathname* building. Most *filenames* do not begin with the character '.', and contain only letters and digits with perhaps a '.' separating the *base* portion of the *filename* from an *extension* (1.6).

filename expansion — *Filename expansion* uses the metacharacters '*', '?' and '[' and ']' to provide a convenient mechanism for naming files. Using *filename expansion* it is easy to name all the files in the current directory, or all files which have a common *root* name. Other *filename expansion* mechanisms use the metacharacter '~' and allow files in other users' directories to be named easily (1.6, 4.2).

flag — Many UNIX commands accept arguments which are not the names of files or other users but are used to modify the action of the commands. These are referred to as *flag* options, and by convention consist of one or more letters preceded by the character '–' (1.2). Thus the *ls* (list files) command has an option '–s' to list the sizes of files. This is specified

```
ls –s
```

foreach — The *foreach* command is used in shell scripts and at the terminal to specify repetition of a sequence of commands while the value of a certain shell variable ranges through a specified list (3.6, 4.1).

foreground — When commands are executing in the normal way such that the shell is waiting for them to finish before prompting for another command they are said to be *foreground jobs* or *running in the foreground*. This is as opposed to *background*. *Foreground* jobs can be stopped by signals from the terminal caused by typing different control characters at the keyboard (1.8, 2.6).

goto — The shell has a command *goto* used in shell scripts to transfer control to a given label (3.7).

grep — The *grep* command searches through a list of argument files for a specified string. Thus

```
grep bill /etc/passwd
```

will print each line in the file */etc/passwd* which contains the string 'bill'. Actually, *grep* scans for *regular expressions* in the sense of the editors 'ed (1)' and 'ex (1)'. *Grep* stands for 'globally find *regular expression* and print' (2.4).

head — The *head* command prints the first few lines of one or more files. If you have a bunch of files containing text which you are wondering about it is sometimes useful to run *head* with these files as arguments. This will usually show enough of what is in these files to let you decide which you are interested in (1.5).
Head is also used to describe the part of a *pathname* before and including the last '/' character. The *tail* of a *pathname* is the part after the last '/'. The ':h' and ':t' modifiers allow the *head* or *tail* of a *pathname* stored in a shell variable to be used (3.6).

history — The *history* mechanism of the shell allows previous commands to be repeated, possibly after modification to correct typing mistakes or to change the meaning of the command. The shell has a *history list* where these commands are kept, and a *history*

variable which controls how large this list is (2.3).

home directory
: Each user has a *home directory*, which is given in your entry in the password file, */etc/passwd*. This is the directory which you are placed in when you first login. The *cd* or *chdir* command with no arguments takes you back to this directory, whose name is recorded in the shell variable *home*. You can also access the *home directories* of other users in forming filenames using a *filename expansion* notation and the character '~' (1.6).

if
: A conditional command within the shell, the *if* command is used in shell command scripts to make decisions about what course of action to take next (3.6).

ignoreeof
: Normally, your shell will exit, printing 'logout' if you type a control-d at a prompt of '% '. This is the way you usually log off the system. You can *set* the *ignoreeof* variable if you wish in your *.login* file and then use the command *logout* to logout. This is useful if you sometimes accidentally type too many control-d characters, logging yourself off (2.2).

input
: Many commands on UNIX take information from the terminal or from files which they then act on. This information is called *input*. Commands normally read for *input* from their *standard input* which is, by default, the terminal. This *standard input* can be redirected from a file using a shell metanotation with the character '<'. Many commands will also read from a file specified as argument. Commands placed in *pipelines* will read from the output of the previous command in the *pipeline*. The leftmost command in a *pipeline* reads from the terminal if you neither redirect its *input* nor give it a filename to use as *standard input*. Special mechanisms exist for supplying input to commands in shell scripts (1.5, 3.8).

interrupt
: An *interrupt* is a signal to a program that is generated by typing ^C. (On older versions of UNIX the RUBOUT or DELETE key were used for this purpose.) It causes most programs to stop execution. Certain programs, such as the shell and the editors, handle an *interrupt* in special ways, usually by stopping what they are doing and prompting for another command. While the shell is executing another command and waiting for it to finish, the shell does not listen to *interrupts.* The shell often wakes up when you hit *interrupt* because many commands die when they receive an *interrupt* (1.8, 3.9).

job
: One or more commands typed on the same input line separated by '|' or ';' characters are run together and are called a *job*. Simple commands run by themselves without any '|' or ';' characters are the simplest *jobs. Jobs* are classified as *foreground*, *background*, or *suspended* (2.6).

job control
: The builtin functions that control the execution of jobs are called *job control* commands. These are *bg, fg, stop, kill* (2.6).

job number
: When each job is started it is assigned a small number called a *job number* which is printed next to the job in the output of the *jobs* command. This number, preceded by a '%' character, can be used as an argument to *job control* commands to indicate a specific job (2.6).

jobs
: The *jobs* command prints a table showing jobs that are either running in the *background* or are *suspended* (2.6).

kill
: A command which sends a signal to a job causing it to terminate (2.6).

.login
: The file *.login* in your *home* directory is read by the shell each time you login to UNIX and the commands there are executed. There are a number of commands which are usefully placed here, especially *set* commands to the shell itself (2.1).

login shell
: The shell that is started on your terminal when you login is called your *login shell*. It is different from other shells which you may run (e.g. on shell scripts) in that it reads the *.login* file before reading commands from the terminal and it reads the *.logout*

file after you logout (2.1).

logout — The *logout* command causes a login shell to exit. Normally, a login shell will exit when you hit control-d generating an *end-of-file,* but if you have set *ignoreeof* in you *.login* file then this will not work and you must use *logout* to log off the UNIX system (2.8).

.logout — When you log off of UNIX the shell will execute commands from the file *.logout* in your *home* directory after it prints 'logout'.

lpr — The command *lpr* is the line printer daemon. The standard input of *lpr* spooled and printed on the UNIX line printer. You can also give *lpr* a list of filenames as arguments to be printed. It is most common to use *lpr* as the last component of a *pipeline* (2.3).

ls — The *ls* (list files) command is one of the most commonly used UNIX commands. With no argument filenames it prints the names of the files in the current directory. It has a number of useful *flag* arguments, and can also be given the names of directories as arguments, in which case it lists the names of the files in these directories (1.2).

mail — The *mail* program is used to send and receive messages from other UNIX users (1.1, 2.1), whether they are logged on or not.

make — The *make* command is used to maintain one or more related files and to organize functions to be performed on these files. In many ways *make* is easier to use, and more helpful than shell command scripts (3.2).

makefile — The file containing commands for *make* is called *makefile* or *Makefile* (3.2).

manual — The *manual* often referred to is the 'UNIX manual'. It contains 8 numbered sections with a description of each UNIX program (section 1), system call (section 2), subroutine (section 3), device (section 4), special data structure (section 5), game (section 6), miscellaneous item (section 7) and system administration program (section 8). There are also supplementary documents (tutorials and reference guides) for individual programs which require explanation in more detail. An online version of the *manual* is accessible through the *man* command. Its documentation can be obtained online via

```
man man
```

If you can't decide what manual page to look in, try the *apropos*(1) command. The supplementary documents are in subdirectories of /usr/doc.

metacharacter — Many characters which are neither letters nor digits have special meaning either to the shell or to UNIX. These characters are called *metacharacters*. If it is necessary to place these characters in arguments to commands without them having their special meaning then they must be *quoted*. An example of a *metacharacter* is the character '>' which is used to indicate placement of output into a file. For the purposes of the *history* mechanism, most unquoted *metacharacters* form separate words (1.4). The appendix to this user's manual lists the *metacharacters* in groups by their function.

mkdir — The *mkdir* command is used to create a new directory.

modifier — Substitutions with the *history* mechanism, keyed by the character '!' or of variables using the metacharacter '$', are often subjected to modifications, indicated by placing the character ':' after the substitution and following this with the *modifier* itself. The *command substitution* mechanism can also be used to perform modification in a similar way, but this notation is less clear (3.6).

more — The program *more* writes a file on your terminal allowing you to control how much text is displayed at a time. *More* can move through the file screenful by screenful, line by line, search forward for a string, or start again at the beginning of the file. It is generally the easiest way of viewing a file (1.8).

noclobber — The shell has a variable *noclobber* which may be set in the file *.login* to prevent accidental destruction of files by the '>' output redirection metasyntax of the shell (2.2, 2.5).

noglob — The shell variable *noglob* is set to suppress the *filename expansion* of arguments containing the metacharacters '~', '*', '?', '[' and ']' (3.6).

notify — The *notify* command tells the shell to report on the termination of a specific *background job* at the exact time it occurs as opposed to waiting until just before the next prompt to report the termination. The *notify* variable, if set, causes the shell to always report the termination of *background* jobs exactly when they occur (2.6).

onintr — The *onintr* command is built into the shell and is used to control the action of a shell command script when an *interrupt* signal is received (3.9).

output — Many commands in UNIX result in some lines of text which are called their *output.* This *output* is usually placed on what is known as the *standard output* which is normally connected to the user's terminal. The shell has a syntax using the metacharacter '>' for redirecting the *standard output* of a command to a file (1.3). Using the *pipe* mechanism and the metacharacter '|' it is also possible for the *standard output* of one command to become the *standard input* of another command (1.5). Certain commands such as the line printer daemon *p* do not place their results on the *standard output* but rather in more useful places such as on the line printer (2.3). Similarly the *write* command places its output on another user's terminal rather than its *standard output* (2.3). Commands also have a *diagnostic output* where they write their error messages. Normally these go to the terminal even if the *standard output* has been sent to a file or another command, but it is possible to direct error diagnostics along with *standard output* using a special metanotation (2.5).

path — The shell has a variable *path* which gives the names of the directories in which it searches for the commands which it is given. It always checks first to see if the command it is given is built into the shell. If it is, then it need not search for the command as it can do it internally. If the command is not builtin, then the shell searches for a file with the name given in each of the directories in the *path* variable, left to right. Since the normal definition of the *path* variable is

```
path (. /usr/ucb /bin /usr/bin)
```

the shell normally looks in the current directory, and then in the standard system directories '/usr/ucb', '/bin' and '/usr/bin' for the named command (2.2). If the command cannot be found the shell will print an error diagnostic. Scripts of shell commands will be executed using another shell to interpret them if they have 'execute' permission set. This is normally true because a command of the form

```
chmod 755 script
```

was executed to turn this execute permission on (3.3). If you add new commands to a directory in the *path*, you should issue the command *rehash* (2.2).

pathname — A list of names, separated by '/' characters, forms a *pathname.* Each *component,* between successive '/' characters, names a directory in which the next *component* file resides. *Pathnames* which begin with the character '/' are interpreted relative to the *root* directory in the filesystem. Other *pathnames* are interpreted relative to the current directory as reported by *pwd.* The last component of a *pathname* may name a directory, but usually names a file.

pipeline — A group of commands which are connected together, the *standard output* of each connected to the *standard input* of the next, is called a *pipeline.* The *pipe* mechanism used to connect these commands is indicated by the shell metacharacter '|' (1.5, 2.3).

popd — The *popd* command changes the shell's *working directory* to the directory you most recently left using the *pushd* command. It returns to the directory without having to

type its name, forgetting the name of the current *working directory* before doing so (2.7).

port — The part of a computer system to which each terminal is connected is called a *port*. Usually the system has a fixed number of *ports*, some of which are connected to telephone lines for dial-up access, and some of which are permanently wired directly to specific terminals.

pr — The *pr* command is used to prepare listings of the contents of files with headers giving the name of the file and the date and time at which the file was last modified (2.3).

printenv — The *printenv* command is used to print the current setting of variables in the environment (2.8).

process — An instance of a running program is called a *process* (2.6). UNIX assigns each *process* a unique number when it is started – called the *process number*. *Process numbers* can be used to stop individual *processes* using the *kill* or *stop* commands when the *processes* are part of a detached *background* job.

program — Usually synonymous with *command*; a binary file or shell command script which performs a useful function is often called a *program*.

prompt — Many programs will print a *prompt* on the terminal when they expect input. Thus the editor 'ex (1)' will print a ':' when it expects input. The shell *prompts* for input with '% ' and occasionally with '? ' when reading commands from the terminal (1.1). The shell has a variable *prompt* which may be set to a different value to change the shell's main *prompt*. This is mostly used when debugging the shell (2.8).

pushd — The *pushd* command, which means 'push directory', changes the shell's *working directory* and also remembers the current *working directory* before the change is made, allowing you to return to the same directory via the *popd* command later without retyping its name (2.7).

ps — The *ps* command is used to show the processes you are currently running. Each process is shown with its unique process number, an indication of the terminal name it is attached to, an indication of the state of the process (whether it is running, stopped, awaiting some event (sleeping), and whether it is swapped out), and the amount of CPU time it has used so far. The command is identified by printing some of the words used when it was invoked (2.6). Shells, such as the *csh* you use to run the *ps* command, are not normally shown in the output.

pwd — The *pwd* command prints the full *pathname* of the current *working directory*. The *dirs* builtin command is usually a better and faster choice.

quit — The *quit* signal, generated by a control-\, is used to terminate programs which are behaving unreasonably. It normally produces a core image file (1.8).

quotation — The process by which metacharacters are prevented their special meaning, usually by using the character '' in pairs, or by using the character '\', is referred to as *quotation* (1.7).

redirection — The routing of input or output from or to a file is known as *redirection* of input or output (1.3).

rehash — The *rehash* command tells the shell to rebuild its internal table of which commands are found in which directories in your *path*. This is necessary when a new program is installed in one of these directories (2.8).

relative pathname — A *pathname* which does not begin with a '/' is called a *relative pathname* since it is interpreted *relative* to the current *working directory*. The first *component* of such a *pathname* refers to some file or directory in the *working directory*, and subsequent *components* between '/' characters refer to directories below the *working directory*.

Pathnames that are not *relative* are called *absolute pathnames* (1.6).

repeat — The *repeat* command iterates another command a specified number of times.

root — The directory that is at the top of the entire directory structure is called the *root* directory since it is the 'root' of the entire tree structure of directories. The name used in *pathnames* to indicate the *root* is '/'. *Pathnames* starting with '/' are said to be *absolute* since they start at the *root* directory. *Root* is also used as the part of a *pathname* that is left after removing the *extension*. See *filename* for a further explanation (1.6).

RUBOUT — The RUBOUT or DELETE key is often used to erase the previously typed character; some users prefer the BACKSPACE for this purpose. On older versions of UNIX this key served as the INTR character.

scratch file — Files whose names begin with a '#' are referred to as *scratch files*, since they are automatically removed by the system after a couple of days of non-use, or more frequently if disk space becomes tight (1.3).

script — Sequences of shell commands placed in a file are called shell command *scripts*. It is often possible to perform simple tasks using these *scripts* without writing a program in a language such as C, by using the shell to selectively run other programs (3.3, 3.10).

set — The builtin *set* command is used to assign new values to shell variables and to show the values of the current variables. Many shell variables have special meaning to the shell itself. Thus by using the *set* command the behavior of the shell can be affected (2.1).

setenv — Variables in the environment 'environ (5)' can be changed by using the *setenv* builtin command (2.8). The *printenv* command can be used to print the value of the variables in the environment.

shell — A *shell* is a command language interpreter. It is possible to write and run your own *shell*, as *shells* are no different than any other programs as far as the system is concerned. This manual deals with the details of one particular *shell*, called *csh.*

shell script — See *script* (3.3, 3.10).

signal — A *signal* in UNIX is a short message that is sent to a running program which causes something to happen to that process. *Signals* are sent either by typing special *control* characters on the keyboard or by using the *kill* or *stop* commands (1.8, 2.6).

sort — The *sort* program sorts a sequence of lines in ways that can be controlled by argument *flags* (1.5).

source — The *source* command causes the shell to read commands from a specified file. It is most useful for reading files such as *.cshrc* after changing them (2.8).

special character — See *metacharacters* and the appendix to this manual.

standard — We refer often to the *standard input* and *standard output* of commands. See *input* and *output* (1.3, 3.8).

status — A command normally returns a *status* when it finishes. By convention a *status* of zero indicates that the command succeeded. Commands may return non-zero *status* to indicate that some abnormal event has occurred. The shell variable *status* is set to the *status* returned by the last command. It is most useful in shell commmand scripts (3.6).

stop — The *stop* command causes a *background* job to become *suspended* (2.6).

string — A sequential group of characters taken together is called a *string*. *Strings* can contain any printable characters (2.2).

stty — The *stty* program changes certain parameters inside UNIX which determine how your terminal is handled. See 'stty (1)' for a complete description (2.6).

substitution — The shell implements a number of *substitutions* where sequences indicated by meta-characters are replaced by other sequences. Notable examples of this are history *substitution* keyed by the metacharacter '!' and variable *substitution* indicated by '$'. We also refer to *substitutions* as *expansions* (3.4).

suspended — A job becomes *suspended* after a STOP signal is sent to it, either by typing a *control*-z at the terminal (for *foreground* jobs) or by using the *stop* command (for *background* jobs). When *suspended*, a job temporarily stops running until it is restarted by either the *fg* or *bg* command (2.6).

switch — The *switch* command of the shell allows the shell to select one of a number of sequences of commands based on an argument string. It is similar to the *switch* statement in the language C (3.7).

termination — When a command which is being executed finishes we say it undergoes *termination* or *terminates.* Commands normally terminate when they read an *end-of-file* from their *standard input*. It is also possible to terminate commands by sending them an *interrupt* or *quit* signal (1.8). The *kill* program terminates specified jobs (2.6).

then — The *then* command is part of the shell's 'if-then-else-endif' control construct used in command scripts (3.6).

time — The *time* command can be used to measure the amount of CPU and real time consumed by a specified command as well as the amount of disk I/O (input/output), memory used, and number of page faults and swaps taken by the command (2.1, 2.8).

tset — The *tset* program is used to set standard erase and kill characters and to tell the system what kind of terminal you are using. It is often invoked in a *.login* file (2.1).

tty — The word *tty* is a historical abbreviation for 'teletype' which is frequently used in UNIX to indicate the *port* to which a given terminal is connected. The *tty* command will print the name of the *tty* or *port* to which your terminal is presently connected.

unalias — The *unalias* command removes aliases (2.8).

UNIX — UNIX is an operating system on which *csh* runs. UNIX provides facilities which allow *csh* to invoke other programs such as editors and text formatters which you may wish to use.

unset — The *unset* command removes the definitions of shell variables (2.2, 2.8).

variable expansion — See *variables* and *expansion* (2.2, 3.4).

variables — *Variables* in *csh* hold one or more strings as value. The most common use of *variables* is in controlling the behavior of the shell. See *path*, *noclobber*, and *ignoreeof* for examples. *Variables* such as *argv* are also used in writing shell programs (shell command scripts) (2.2).

verbose — The *verbose* shell variable can be set to cause commands to be echoed after they are history expanded. This is often useful in debugging shell scripts. The *verbose* variable is set by the shell's *-v* command line option (3.10).

wc — The *wc* program calculates the number of characters, words, and lines in the files whose names are given as arguments (2.6).

while — The *while* builtin control construct is used in shell command scripts (3.7).

word — A sequence of characters which forms an argument to a command is called a *word*. Many characters which are neither letters, digits, '-', '.' nor '/' form *words* all by themselves even if they are not surrounded by blanks. Any sequence of characters may be made into a *word* by surrounding it with '' characters except for the characters '' and '!' which require special treatment (1.1). This process of placing special

characters in *words* without their special meaning is called *quoting*.

working directory
: At any given time you are in one particular directory, called your *working directory*. This directory's name is printed by the *pwd* command and the files listed by *ls* are the ones in this directory. You can change *working directories* using *chdir*.

write
: The *write* command is an obsolete way of communicating with other users who are logged in to UNIX (you have to take turns typing). If you are both using display terminals, use *talk*(1), which is much more pleasant.

DC – An Interactive Desk Calculator

Robert Morris

Lorinda Cherry

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

DC is an interactive desk calculator program implemented on the UNIX† time-sharing system to do arbitrary-precision integer arithmetic. It has provision for manipulating scaled fixed-point numbers and for input and output in bases other than decimal.

The size of numbers that can be manipulated is limited only by available core storage. On typical implementations of UNIX, the size of numbers that can be handled varies from several hundred digits on the smallest systems to several thousand on the largest.

DC is an arbitrary precision arithmetic package implemented on the UNIX time-sharing system in the form of an interactive desk calculator. It works like a stacking calculator using reverse Polish notation. Ordinarily DC operates on decimal integers, but one may specify an input base, output base, and a number of fractional digits to be maintained.

A language called BC [1] has been developed which accepts programs written in the familiar style of higher-level programming languages and compiles output which is interpreted by DC. Some of the commands described below were designed for the compiler interface and are not easy for a human user to manipulate.

Numbers that are typed into DC are put on a push-down stack. DC commands work by taking the top number or two off the stack, performing the desired operation, and pushing the result on the stack. If an argument is given, input is taken from that file until its end, then from the standard input.

SYNOPTIC DESCRIPTION

Here we describe the DC commands that are intended for use by people. The additional commands that are intended to be invoked by compiled output are described in the detailed description.

Any number of commands are permitted on a line. Blanks and new-line characters are ignored except within numbers and in places where a register name is expected.

The following constructions are recognized:

number

The value of the number is pushed onto the main stack. A number is an unbroken string of the digits 0-9 and the capital letters A–F which are treated as digits with values 10–15 respectively. The number may be preceded by an underscore to input a negative number. Numbers may contain decimal points.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

+ – * % ^

The top two values on the stack are added (+), subtracted (–), multiplied (*), divided (/), remaindered (%), or exponentiated (^). The two entries are popped off the stack; the result is pushed on the stack in their place. The result of a division is an integer truncated toward zero. See the detailed description below for the treatment of numbers with decimal points. An exponent must not have any digits after the decimal point.

s*x*

The top of the main stack is popped and stored into a register named *x*, where *x* may be any character. If the **s** is capitalized, *x* is treated as a stack and the value is pushed onto it. Any character, even blank or new-line, is a valid register name.

l*x*

The value in register *x* is pushed onto the stack. The register *x* is not altered. If the **l** is capitalized, register *x* is treated as a stack and its top value is popped onto the main stack.

All registers start with empty value which is treated as a zero by the command **l** and is treated as an error by the command **L**.

d

The top value on the stack is duplicated.

p

The top value on the stack is printed. The top value remains unchanged.

f

All values on the stack and in registers are printed.

x

treats the top element of the stack as a character string, removes it from the stack, and executes it as a string of DC commands.

[...]

puts the bracketed character string onto the top of the stack.

q

exits the program. If executing a string, the recursion level is popped by two. If **q** is capitalized, the top value on the stack is popped and the string execution level is popped by that value.

<*x* **>***x* **=***x* **!<***x* **!>***x* **!=***x*

The top two elements of the stack are popped and compared. Register *x* is executed if they obey the stated relation. Exclamation point is negation.

v

replaces the top element on the stack by its square root. The square root of an integer is truncated to an integer. For the treatment of numbers with decimal points, see the detailed description below.

!

interprets the rest of the line as a UNIX command. Control returns to DC when the UNIX command terminates.

c

All values on the stack are popped; the stack becomes empty.

i

The top value on the stack is popped and used as the number radix for further input. If **i** is capitalized, the value of the input base is pushed onto the stack. No mechanism has been provided for the input of arbitrary numbers in bases less than 1 or greater than 16.

o

The top value on the stack is popped and used as the number radix for further output. If **o** is capitalized, the value of the output base is pushed onto the stack.

k

The top of the stack is popped, and that value is used as a scale factor that influences the number of decimal places that are maintained during multiplication, division, and exponentiation. The scale factor must be greater than or equal to zero and less than 100. If **k** is capitalized, the value of the scale factor is pushed onto the stack.

z

The value of the stack level is pushed onto the stack.

?

A line of input is taken from the input source (usually the console) and executed.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

Internal Representation of Numbers

Numbers are stored internally using a dynamic storage allocator. Numbers are kept in the form of a string of digits to the base 100 stored one digit per byte (centennial digits). The string is stored with the low-order digit at the beginning of the string. For example, the representation of 157 is 57,1. After any arithmetic operation on a number, care is taken that all digits are in the range 0–99 and that the number has no leading zeros. The number zero is represented by the empty string.

Negative numbers are represented in the 100's complement notation, which is analogous to two's complement notation for binary numbers. The high order digit of a negative number is always –1 and all other digits are in the range 0–99. The digit preceding the high order –1 digit is never a 99. The representation of –157 is 43,98,–1. We shall call this the canonical form of a number. The advantage of this kind of representation of negative numbers is ease of addition. When addition is performed digit by digit, the result is formally correct. The result need only be modified, if necessary, to put it into canonical form.

Because the largest valid digit is 99 and the byte can hold numbers twice that large, addition can be carried out and the handling of carries done later when that is convenient, as it sometimes is.

An additional byte is stored with each number beyond the high order digit to indicate the number of assumed decimal digits after the decimal point. The representation of .001 is 1,*3* where the scale has been italicized to emphasize the fact that it is not the high order digit. The value of this extra byte is called the **scale factor** of the number.

The Allocator

DC uses a dynamic string storage allocator for all of its internal storage. All reading and writing of numbers internally is done through the allocator. Associated with each string in the allocator is a four-word header containing pointers to the beginning of the string, the end of the string, the next place to write, and the next place to read. Communication between the allocator and DC is done via pointers to these headers.

The allocator initially has one large string on a list of free strings. All headers except the one pointing to this string are on a list of free headers. Requests for strings are made by size. The size of the string actually supplied is the next higher power of 2. When a request for a string is made, the allocator first checks the free list to see if there is a string of the desired size. If none is found, the allocator finds the next larger free string and splits it repeatedly until it has a string of the right size. Left-over strings are put on the free list. If there are no larger strings, the allocator tries to coalesce smaller free strings into larger ones. Since all strings are the result of splitting large strings, each string has a neighbor that is next to it in core and, if free, can be combined with it to make a string twice as long. This is an implementation of the 'buddy system' of allocation described in [2].

Failing to find a string of the proper length after coalescing, the allocator asks the system for more space. The amount of space on the system is the only limitation on the size and number of strings in DC. If at any time in the process of trying to allocate a string, the allocator runs out of headers, it also asks the system for more space.

There are routines in the allocator for reading, writing, copying, rewinding, forward-spacing, and backspacing strings. All string manipulation is done using these routines.

The reading and writing routines increment the read pointer or write pointer so that the characters of a string are read or written in succession by a series of read or write calls. The write pointer is interpreted as the end of the information-containing portion of a string and a call to read beyond that point returns an end-of-string indication. An attempt to write beyond the end of a string causes the allocator to allocate a larger space and then copy the old string into the larger block.

Internal Arithmetic

All arithmetic operations are done on integers. The operands (or operand) needed for the operation are popped from the main stack and their scale factors stripped off. Zeros are added or digits removed as necessary to get a properly scaled result from the internal arithmetic routine. For example, if the scale of the operands is different and decimal alignment is required, as it is for addition, zeros are appended to the operand with the smaller scale. After performing the required arithmetic operation, the proper scale factor is appended to the end of the number before it is pushed on the stack.

A register called **scale** plays a part in the results of most arithmetic operations. **scale** is the bound on the number of decimal places retained in arithmetic computations. **scale** may be set to the number on the top of the stack truncated to an integer with the **k** command. **K** may be used to push the value of **scale** on the stack. **scale** must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than 100. The descriptions of the individual arithmetic operations will include the exact effect of **scale** on the computations.

Addition and Subtraction

The scales of the two numbers are compared and trailing zeros are supplied to the number with the lower scale to give both numbers the same scale. The number with the smaller scale is multiplied by 10 if the difference of the scales is odd. The scale of the result is then set to the larger of the scales of the two operands.

Subtraction is performed by negating the number to be subtracted and proceeding as in addition.

Finally, the addition is performed digit by digit from the low order end of the number. The carries are propagated in the usual way. The resulting number is brought into canonical form, which

may require stripping of leading zeros, or for negative numbers replacing the high-order configuration 99,–1 by the digit –1. In any case, digits which are not in the range 0–99 must be brought into that range, propagating any carries or borrows that result.

Multiplication

The scales are removed from the two operands and saved. The operands are both made positive. Then multiplication is performed in a digit by digit manner that exactly mimics the hand method of multiplying. The first number is multiplied by each digit of the second number, beginning with its low order digit. The intermediate products are accumulated into a partial sum which becomes the final product. The product is put into the canonical form and its sign is computed from the signs of the original operands.

The scale of the result is set equal to the sum of the scales of the two operands. If that scale is larger than the internal register **scale** and also larger than both of the scales of the two operands, then the scale of the result is set equal to the largest of these three last quantities.

Division

The scales are removed from the two operands. Zeros are appended or digits removed from the dividend to make the scale of the result of the integer division equal to the internal quantity **scale**. The signs are removed and saved.

Division is performed much as it would be done by hand. The difference of the lengths of the two numbers is computed. If the divisor is longer than the dividend, zero is returned. Otherwise the top digit of the divisor is divided into the top two digits of the dividend. The result is used as the first (high-order) digit of the quotient. It may turn out be one unit too low, but if it is, the next trial quotient will be larger than 99 and this will be adjusted at the end of the process. The trial digit is multiplied by the divisor and the result subtracted from the dividend and the process is repeated to get additional quotient digits until the remaining dividend is smaller than the divisor. At the end, the digits of the quotient are put into the canonical form, with propagation of carry as needed. The sign is set from the sign of the operands.

Remainder

The division routine is called and division is performed exactly as described. The quantity returned is the remains of the dividend at the end of the divide process. Since division truncates toward zero, remainders have the same sign as the dividend. The scale of the remainder is set to the maximum of the scale of the dividend and the scale of the quotient plus the scale of the divisor.

Square Root

The scale is stripped from the operand. Zeros are added if necessary to make the integer result have a scale that is the larger of the internal quantity **scale** and the scale of the operand.

The method used to compute sqrt(y) is Newton's method with successive approximations by the rule

$$x_{n+1} = \tfrac{1}{2}(x_n + \frac{y}{x_n})$$

The initial guess is found by taking the integer square root of the top two digits.

Exponentiation

Only exponents with zero scale factor are handled. If the exponent is zero, then the result is 1. If the exponent is negative, then it is made positive and the base is divided into one. The scale of the base is removed.

The integer exponent is viewed as a binary number. The base is repeatedly squared and the result is obtained as a product of those powers of the base that correspond to the positions of the one-bits in the binary representation of the exponent. Enough digits of the result are removed to

make the scale of the result the same as if the indicated multiplication had been performed.

Input Conversion and Base

Numbers are converted to the internal representation as they are read in. The scale stored with a number is simply the number of fractional digits input. Negative numbers are indicated by preceding the number with a _ (an underscore). The hexadecimal digits A–F correspond to the numbers 10–15 regardless of input base. The **i** command can be used to change the base of the input numbers. This command pops the stack, truncates the resulting number to an integer, and uses it as the input base for all further input. The input base is initialized to 10 but may, for example be changed to 8 or 16 to do octal or hexadecimal to decimal conversions. The command **I** will push the value of the input base on the stack.

Output Commands

The command **p** causes the top of the stack to be printed. It does not remove the top of the stack. All of the stack and internal registers can be output by typing the command **f**. The **o** command can be used to change the output base. This command uses the top of the stack, truncated to an integer as the base for all further output. The output base in initialized to 10. It will work correctly for any base. The command **O** pushes the value of the output base on the stack.

Output Format and Base

The input and output bases only affect the interpretation of numbers on input and output; they have no effect on arithmetic computations. Large numbers are output with 70 characters per line; a \ indicates a continued line. All choices of input and output bases work correctly, although not all are useful. A particularly useful output base is 100000, which has the effect of grouping digits in fives. Bases of 8 and 16 can be used for decimal-octal or decimal-hexadecimal conversions.

Internal Registers

Numbers or strings may be stored in internal registers or loaded on the stack from registers with the commands **s** and **l**. The command **s***x* pops the top of the stack and stores the result in register **x**. *x* can be any character. **l***x* puts the contents of register **x** on the top of the stack. The **l** command has no effect on the contents of register *x*. The **s** command, however, is destructive.

Stack Commands

The command **c** clears the stack. The command **d** pushes a duplicate of the number on the top of the stack on the stack. The command **z** pushes the stack size on the stack. The command **X** replaces the number on the top of the stack with its scale factor. The command **Z** replaces the top of the stack with its length.

Subroutine Definitions and Calls

Enclosing a string in **[ ]** pushes the ascii string on the stack. The **q** command quits or in executing a string, pops the recursion levels by two.

Internal Registers – Programming DC

The load and store commands together with **[ ]** to store strings, **x** to execute and the testing commands '<', '>', '=', '!<', '!>', '!=' can be used to program DC. The **x** command assumes the top of the stack is an string of DC commands and executes it. The testing commands compare the top two elements on the stack and if the relation holds, execute the register that follows the relation. For example, to print the numbers 0-9,

```
[lip1+ si li10>a]sa
0si lax
```

Push-Down Registers and Arrays

These commands were designed for used by a compiler, not by people. They involve push-down registers and arrays. In addition to the stack that commands work on, DC can be thought of as having individual stacks for each register. These registers are operated on by the commands **S** and **L**. **S***x* pushes the top value of the main stack onto the stack for the register *x*. **L***x* pops the stack for register *x* and puts the result on the main stack. The commands **s** and **l** also work on registers but not as push-down stacks. **l** doesn't effect the top of the register stack, and **s** destroys what was there before.

The commands to work on arrays are **:** and **;**. **:***x* pops the stack and uses this value as an index into the array *x*. The next element on the stack is stored at this index in *x*. An index must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than 2048. **;***x* is the command to load the main stack from the array *x*. The value on the top of the stack is the index into the array *x* of the value to be loaded.

Miscellaneous Commands

The command **!** interprets the rest of the line as a UNIX command and passes it to UNIX to execute. One other compiler command is **Q**. This command uses the top of the stack as the number of levels of recursion to skip.

DESIGN CHOICES

The real reason for the use of a dynamic storage allocator was that a general purpose program could be (and in fact has been) used for a variety of other tasks. The allocator has some value for input and for compiling (i.e. the bracket [...] commands) where it cannot be known in advance how long a string will be. The result was that at a modest cost in execution time, all considerations of string allocation and sizes of strings were removed from the remainder of the program and debugging was made easier. The allocation method used wastes approximately 25% of available space.

The choice of 100 as a base for internal arithmetic seemingly has no compelling advantage. Yet the base cannot exceed 127 because of hardware limitations and at the cost of 5% in space, debugging was made a great deal easier and decimal output was made much faster.

The reason for a stack-type arithmetic design was to permit all DC commands from addition to subroutine execution to be implemented in essentially the same way. The result was a considerable degree of logical separation of the final program into modules with very little communication between modules.

The rationale for the lack of interaction between the scale and the bases was to provide an understandable means of proceeding after a change of base or scale when numbers had already been entered. An earlier implementation which had global notions of scale and base did not work out well. If the value of **scale** were to be interpreted in the current input or output base, then a change of base or scale in the midst of a computation would cause great confusion in the interpretation of the results. The current scheme has the advantage that the value of the input and output bases are only used for input and output, respectively, and they are ignored in all other operations. The value of scale is not used for any essential purpose by any part of the program and it is used only to prevent the number of decimal places resulting from the arithmetic operations from growing beyond all bounds.

The design rationale for the choices for the scales of the results of arithmetic were that in no case should any significant digits be thrown away if, on appearances, the user actually wanted them. Thus, if the user wants to add the numbers 1.5 and 3.517, it seemed reasonable to give him the result 5.017 without requiring him to unnecessarily specify his rather obvious requirements for precision.

On the other hand, multiplication and exponentiation produce results with many more digits than their operands and it seemed reasonable to give as a minimum the number of decimal places in the operands but not to give more than that number of digits unless the user asked for them by specifying a value for **scale**. Square root can be handled in just the same way as multiplication. The operation of division gives arbitrarily many decimal places and there is simply no way to guess how many places the user wants. In this case only, the user must specify a **scale** to get any decimal places at all.

The scale of remainder was chosen to make it possible to recreate the dividend from the quotient and remainder. This is easy to implement; no digits are thrown away.

References

[1] L. L. Cherry, R. Morris, *BC – An Arbitrary Precision Desk-Calculator Language.*

[2] K. C. Knowlton, *A Fast Storage Allocator,* Comm. ACM 8, pp. 623-625 (Oct. 1965).

BC – An Arbitrary Precision Desk-Calculator Language

Lorinda Cherry

Robert Morris

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

BC is a language and a compiler for doing arbitrary precision arithmetic on the PDP-11 under the UNIX† time-sharing system. The output of the compiler is interpreted and executed by a collection of routines which can input, output, and do arithmetic on indefinitely large integers and on scaled fixed-point numbers.

These routines are themselves based on a dynamic storage allocator. Overflow does not occur until all available core storage is exhausted.

The language has a complete control structure as well as immediate-mode operation. Functions can be defined and saved for later execution.

Two five hundred-digit numbers can be multiplied to give a thousand digit result in about ten seconds.

A small collection of library functions is also available, including sin, cos, arctan, log, exponential, and Bessel functions of integer order.

Some of the uses of this compiler are

- to do computation with large integers,
- to do computation accurate to many decimal places,
- conversion of numbers from one base to another base.

Introduction

BC is a language and a compiler for doing arbitrary precision arithmetic on the UNIX time-sharing system [1]. The compiler was written to make conveniently available a collection of routines (called DC [5]) which are capable of doing arithmetic on integers of arbitrary size. The compiler is by no means intended to provide a complete programming language. It is a minimal language facility.

There is a scaling provision that permits the use of decimal point notation. Provision is made for input and output in bases other than decimal. Numbers can be converted from decimal to octal by simply setting the output base to equal 8.

The actual limit on the number of digits that can be handled depends on the amount of storage available on the machine. Manipulation of numbers with many hundreds of digits is possible even on the smallest versions of UNIX.

The syntax of BC has been deliberately selected to agree substantially with the C language [2]. Those who are familiar with C will find few surprises in this language.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

Simple Computations with Integers

The simplest kind of statement is an arithmetic expression on a line by itself. For instance, if you type in the line:

```
142857 + 285714
```

the program responds immediately with the line

```
428571
```

The operators –, *, /, %, and ^ can also be used; they indicate subtraction, multiplication, division, remaindering, and exponentiation, respectively. Division of integers produces an integer result truncated toward zero. Division by zero produces an error comment.

Any term in an expression may be prefixed by a minus sign to indicate that it is to be negated (the 'unary' minus sign). The expression

```
7+-3
```

is interpreted to mean that –3 is to be added to 7.

More complex expressions with several operators and with parentheses are interpreted just as in Fortran, with ^ having the greatest binding power, then * and % and /, and finally + and –. Contents of parentheses are evaluated before material outside the parentheses. Exponentiations are performed from right to left and the other operators from left to right. The two expressions

```
a^b^c and a^(b^c)
```

are equivalent, as are the two expressions

```
a*b*c and (a*b)*c
```

BC shares with Fortran and C the undesirable convention that

```
a/b*c is equivalent to (a/b)*c
```

Internal storage registers to hold numbers have single lower-case letter names. The value of an expression can be assigned to a register in the usual way. The statement

```
x = x + 3
```

has the effect of increasing by three the value of the contents of the register named x. When, as in this case, the outermost operator is an =, the assignment is performed but the result is not printed. Only 26 of these named storage registers are available.

There is a built-in square root function whose result is truncated to an integer (but see scaling below). The lines

```
x = sqrt(191)
x
```

produce the printed result

```
13
```

Bases

There are special internal quantities, called 'ibase' and 'obase'. The contents of 'ibase', initially set to 10, determines the base used for interpreting numbers read in. For example, the lines

```
ibase = 8
11
```

will produce the output line

```
9
```

and you are all set up to do octal to decimal conversions. Beware, however of trying to change the input base back to decimal by typing

```
ibase = 10
```

Because the number 10 is interpreted as octal, this statement will have no effect. For those who deal in hexadecimal notation, the characters A–F are permitted in numbers (no matter what base is in effect) and are interpreted as digits having values 10–15 respectively. The statement

```
ibase = A
```

will change you back to decimal input base no matter what the current input base is. Negative and large positive input bases are permitted but useless. No mechanism has been provided for the input of arbitrary numbers in bases less than 1 and greater than 16.

The contents of 'obase', initially set to 10, are used as the base for output numbers. The lines

```
obase = 16
1000
```

will produce the output line

```
3E8
```

which is to be interpreted as a 3-digit hexadecimal number. Very large output bases are permitted, and they are sometimes useful. For example, large numbers can be output in groups of five digits by setting 'obase' to 100000. Strange (i.e. 1, 0, or negative) output bases are handled appropriately.

Very large numbers are split across lines with 70 characters per line. Lines which are continued end with \. Decimal output conversion is practically instantaneous, but output of very large numbers (i.e., more than 100 digits) with other bases is rather slow. Non-decimal output conversion of a one hundred digit number takes about three seconds.

It is best to remember that 'ibase' and 'obase' have no effect whatever on the course of internal computation or on the evaluation of expressions, but only affect input and output conversion, respectively.

Scaling

A third special internal quantity called 'scale' is used to determine the scale of calculated quantities. Numbers may have up to 99 decimal digits after the decimal point. This fractional part is retained in further computations. We refer to the number of digits after the decimal point of a number as its scale.

When two scaled numbers are combined by means of one of the arithmetic operations, the result has a scale determined by the following rules. For addition and subtraction, the scale of the result is the larger of the scales of the two operands. In this case, there is never any truncation of the result. For multiplications, the scale of the result is never less than the maximum of the two scales of the operands, never more than the sum of the scales of the operands and, subject to those two restrictions, the scale of the result is set equal to the contents of the internal quantity 'scale'. The scale of a quotient is the contents of the internal quantity 'scale'. The scale of a remainder is the sum of the scales of the quotient and the divisor. The result of an exponentiation is scaled as if the implied multiplications were performed. An exponent must be an integer. The scale of a square root is set to the maximum of the scale of the argument and the contents of 'scale'.

All of the internal operations are actually carried out in terms of integers, with digits being discarded when necessary. In every case where digits are discarded, truncation and not rounding is performed.

The contents of 'scale' must be no greater than 99 and no less than 0. It is initially set to 0. In case you need more than 99 fraction digits, you may arrange your own scaling.

The internal quantities 'scale', 'ibase', and 'obase' can be used in expressions just like other variables. The line

```
scale = scale + 1
```

increases the value of 'scale' by one, and the line

```
scale
```

causes the current value of 'scale' to be printed.

The value of 'scale' retains its meaning as a number of decimal digits to be retained in internal computation even when 'ibase' or 'obase' are not equal to 10. The internal computations (which are still conducted in decimal, regardless of the bases) are performed to the specified number of decimal digits, never hexadecimal or octal or any other kind of digits.

Functions

The name of a function is a single lower-case letter. Function names are permitted to collide with simple variable names. Twenty-six different defined functions are permitted in addition to the twenty-six variable names. The line

```
define a(x){
```

begins the definition of a function with one argument. This line must be followed by one or more statements, which make up the body of the function, ending with a right brace }. Return of control from a function occurs when a return statement is executed or when the end of the function is reached. The return statement can take either of the two forms

```
return
return(x)
```

In the first case, the value of the function is 0, and in the second, the value of the expression in parentheses.

Variables used in the function can be declared as automatic by a statement of the form

```
auto x,y,z
```

There can be only one 'auto' statement in a function and it must be the first statement in the definition. These automatic variables are allocated space and initialized to zero on entry to the function and thrown away on return. The values of any variables with the same names outside the function are not disturbed. Functions may be called recursively and the automatic variables at each level of call are protected. The parameters named in a function definition are treated in the same way as the automatic variables of that function with the single exception that they are given a value on entry to the function. An example of a function definition is

```
define a(x,y){
    auto z
    z = x*y
    return(z)
}
```

The value of this function, when called, will be the product of its two arguments.

A function is called by the appearance of its name followed by a string of arguments enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas. The result is unpredictable if the wrong number of arguments is used.

Functions with no arguments are defined and called using parentheses with nothing between them: b().

If the function *a* above has been defined, then the line

a(7,3.14)

would cause the result 21.98 to be printed and the line

x = a(a(3,4),5)

would cause the value of x to become 60.

Subscripted Variables

A single lower-case letter variable name followed by an expression in brackets is called a subscripted variable (an array element). The variable name is called the array name and the expression in brackets is called the subscript. Only one-dimensional arrays are permitted. The names of arrays are permitted to collide with the names of simple variables and function names. Any fractional part of a subscript is discarded before use. Subscripts must be greater than or equal to zero and less than or equal to 2047.

Subscripted variables may be freely used in expressions, in function calls, and in return statements.

An array name may be used as an argument to a function, or may be declared as automatic in a function definition by the use of empty brackets:

```
f(a[ ])
define f(a[ ])
auto a[ ]
```

When an array name is so used, the whole contents of the array are copied for the use of the function, and thrown away on exit from the function. Array names which refer to whole arrays cannot be used in any other contexts.

Control Statements

The 'if', the 'while', and the 'for' statements may be used to alter the flow within programs or to cause iteration. The range of each of them is a statement or a compound statement consisting of a collection of statements enclosed in braces. They are written in the following way

```
if(relation) statement
while(relation) statement
for(expression1; relation; expression2) statement
```

or

```
if(relation) {statements}
while(relation) {statements}
for(expression1; relation; expression2) {statements}
```

A relation in one of the control statements is an expression of the form

x>y

where two expressions are related by one of the six relational operators <, >, <=, >=, ==, or !=. The relation == stands for 'equal to' and != stands for 'not equal to'. The meaning of the remaining relational operators is clear.

BEWARE of using = instead of == in a relational. Unfortunately, both of them are legal, so you will not get a diagnostic message, but = really will not do a comparison.

The 'if' statement causes execution of its range if and only if the relation is true. Then control passes to the next statement in sequence.

The 'while' statement causes execution of its range repeatedly as long as the relation is true. The relation is tested before each execution of its range and if the relation is false, control passes to the next statement beyond the range of the while.

The 'for' statement begins by executing 'expression1'. Then the relation is tested and, if true, the statements in the range of the 'for' are executed. Then 'expression2' is executed. The relation is tested, and so on. The typical use of the 'for' statement is for a controlled iteration, as in the statement

```
for(i=1; i<=10; i=i+1) i
```

which will print the integers from 1 to 10. Here are some examples of the use of the control statements.

```
define f(n){
auto i, x
x=1
for(i=1; i<=n; i=i+1) x=x*i
return(x)
}
```

The line

```
f(a)
```

will print *a* factorial if *a* is a positive integer. Here is the definition of a function which will compute values of the binomial coefficient (m and n are assumed to be positive integers).

```
define b(n,m){
auto x, j
x=1
for(j=1; j<=m; j=j+1) x=x*(n-j+1)/j
return(x)
}
```

The following function computes values of the exponential function by summing the appropriate series without regard for possible truncation errors:

```
scale = 20
define e(x){
     auto a, b, c, d, n
     a = 1
     b = 1
     c = 1
     d = 0
     n = 1
     while(1==1){
          a = a*x
          b = b*n
          c = c + a/b
          n = n + 1
          if(c==d) return(c)
          d = c
     }
}
```


Some Details

There are some language features that every user should know about even if he will not use them.

Normally statements are typed one to a line. It is also permissible to type several statements on a line separated by semicolons.

If an assignment statement is parenthesized, it then has a value and it can be used anywhere that an expression can. For example, the line

```
(x=y+17)
```

not only makes the indicated assignment, but also prints the resulting value.

Here is an example of a use of the value of an assignment statement even when it is not parenthesized.

```
x = a[i=i+1]
```

causes a value to be assigned to x and also increments i before it is used as a subscript.

The following constructs work in BC in exactly the same manner as they do in the C language. Consult the appendix or the C manuals [2] for their exact workings.

x=y=z is the same as	x=(y=z)
x =+ y	x = x+y
x =– y	x = x–y
x =* y	x = x*y
x =/ y	x = x/y
x =% y	x = x%y
x =^ y	x = x^y
x++	(x=x+1)–1
x––	(x=x–1)+1
++x	x = x+1
––x	x = x–1

Even if you don't intend to use the constructs, if you type one inadvertently, something correct but unexpected may happen.

WARNING! In some of these constructions, spaces are significant. There is a real difference between x =– y and x= –y. The first replaces x by x–y and the second by –y.

Three Important Things

1. To exit a BC program, type 'quit'.

2. There is a comment convention identical to that of C and of PL/I. Comments begin with '/*' and end with '*/'.

3. There is a library of math functions which may be obtained by typing at command level

```
bc –l
```

This command will load a set of library functions which, at the time of writing, consists of sine (named 's'), cosine ('c'), arctangent ('a'), natural logarithm ('l'), exponential ('e') and Bessel functions of integer order ('j(n,x)'). Doubtless more functions will be added in time. The library sets the scale to 20. You can reset it to something else if you like. The design of these mathematical library routines is discussed elsewhere [3].

If you type

```
bc file ...
```

BC will read and execute the named file or files before accepting commands from the keyboard. In this way, you may load your favorite programs and function definitions.

Acknowledgement

The compiler is written in YACC [4]; its original version was written by S. C. Johnson.

References

[1] K. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, *UNIX Programmer's Manual,* Bell Laboratories, 1978.

[2] B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language,* Prentice-Hall, 1978.

[3] R. Morris, *A Library of Reference Standard Mathematical Subroutines,* Bell Laboratories internal memorandum, 1975.

[4] S. C. Johnson, *YACC — Yet Another Compiler-Compiler.* Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report #32, 1978.

[5] R. Morris and L. L. Cherry, *DC – An Interactive Desk Calculator.*

Appendix

1. Notation

In the following pages syntactic categories are in *italics*; literals are in **bold**; material in brackets [] is optional.

2. Tokens

Tokens consist of keywords, identifiers, constants, operators, and separators. Token separators may be blanks, tabs or comments. Newline characters or semicolons separate statements.

2.1. Comments

Comments are introduced by the characters /* and terminated by */.

2.2. Identifiers

There are three kinds of identifiers – ordinary identifiers, array identifiers and function identifiers. All three types consist of single lower-case letters. Array identifiers are followed by square brackets, possibly enclosing an expression describing a subscript. Arrays are singly dimensioned and may contain up to 2048 elements. Indexing begins at zero so an array may be indexed from 0 to 2047. Subscripts are truncated to integers. Function identifiers are followed by parentheses, possibly enclosing arguments. The three types of identifiers do not conflict; a program can have a variable named x, an array named x and a function named x, all of which are separate and distinct.

2.3. Keywords

The following are reserved keywords:

ibase	**if**
obase	**break**
scale	**define**
sqrt	**auto**
length	**return**
while	**quit**
for	

2.4. Constants

Constants consist of arbitrarily long numbers with an optional decimal point. The hexadecimal digits A–F are also recognized as digits with values 10–15, respectively.

3. Expressions

The value of an expression is printed unless the main operator is an assignment. Precedence is the same as the order of presentation here, with highest appearing first. Left or right associativity, where applicable, is discussed with each operator.

3.1. Primitive expressions

3.1.1. Named expressions

Named expressions are places where values are stored. Simply stated, named expressions are legal on the left side of an assignment. The value of a named expression is the value stored in the place named.

3.1.1.1. *identifiers*

Simple identifiers are named expressions. They have an initial value of zero.

3.1.1.2. *array-name*[*expression*]

Array elements are named expressions. They have an initial value of zero.

3.1.1.3. scale, ibase and obase

The internal registers **scale**, **ibase** and **obase** are all named expressions. **scale** is the number of digits after the decimal point to be retained in arithmetic operations. **scale** has an initial value of zero. **ibase** and **obase** are the input and output number radix respectively. Both **ibase** and **obase** have initial values of 10.

3.1.2. Function calls

3.1.2.1. *function-name*([*expression*[, *expression*...]])

A function call consists of a function name followed by parentheses containing a comma-separated list of expressions, which are the function arguments. A whole array passed as an argument is specified by the array name followed by empty square brackets. All function arguments are passed by value. As a result, changes made to the formal parameters have no effect on the actual arguments. If the function terminates by executing a return statement, the value of the function is the value of the expression in the parentheses of the return statement or is zero if no expression is provided or if there is no return statement.

3.1.2.2. sqrt(*expression*)

The result is the square root of the expression. The result is truncated in the least significant decimal place. The scale of the result is the scale of the expression or the value of **scale**, whichever is larger.

3.1.2.3. length(*expression*)

The result is the total number of significant decimal digits in the expression. The scale of the result is zero.

3.1.2.4. scale(*expression*)

The result is the scale of the expression. The scale of the result is zero.

3.1.3. Constants

Constants are primitive expressions.

3.1.4. Parentheses

An expression surrounded by parentheses is a primitive expression. The parentheses are used to alter the normal precedence.

3.2. Unary operators

The unary operators bind right to left.

3.2.1. – *expression*

The result is the negative of the expression.

3.2.2. ++ *named-expression*

The named expression is incremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression after incrementing.

3.2.3. -- *named-expression*

The named expression is decremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression after decrementing.

3.2.4. *named-expression* ++

The named expression is incremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression before incrementing.

3.2.5. *named-expression* --

The named expression is decremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression before decrementing.

3.3. Exponentiation operator

The exponentiation operator binds right to left.

3.3.1. *expression* ^ *expression*

The result is the first expression raised to the power of the second expression. The second expression must be an integer. If a is the scale of the left expression and b is the absolute value of the right expression, then the scale of the result is:

$\min(a \times b, \max(\textbf{scale}, a))$

3.4. Multiplicative operators

The operators *, /, % bind left to right.

3.4.1. *expression* * *expression*

The result is the product of the two expressions. If a and b are the scales of the two expressions, then the scale of the result is:

$\min(a+b, \max(\textbf{scale}, a, b))$

3.4.2. *expression* / *expression*

The result is the quotient of the two expressions. The scale of the result is the value of **scale**.

3.4.3. *expression* % *expression*

The % operator produces the remainder of the division of the two expressions. More precisely, *a*%*b* is *a*–*a*/*b***b*.

The scale of the result is the sum of the scale of the divisor and the value of **scale**

3.5. Additive operators

The additive operators bind left to right.

3.5.1. *expression + expression*

The result is the sum of the two expressions. The scale of the result is the maximun of the scales of the expressions.

3.5.2. *expression – expression*

The result is the difference of the two expressions. The scale of the result is the maximum of the scales of the expressions.

3.6. assignment operators

The assignment operators bind right to left.

3.6.1. *named-expression = expression*

This expression results in assigning the value of the expression on the right to the named expression on the left.

3.6.2. *named-expression =+ expression*

3.6.3. *named-expression =– expression*

3.6.4. *named-expression =* expression*

3.6.5. *named-expression =/ expression*

3.6.6. *named-expression =% expression*

3.6.7. *named-expression =^ expression*

The result of the above expressions is equivalent to "named expression = named expression OP expression", where OP is the operator after the = sign.

4. Relations

Unlike all other operators, the relational operators are only valid as the object of an **if**, **while**, or inside a **for** statement.

4.1. *expression < expression*

4.2. *expression > expression*

4.3. *expression <= expression*

4.4. *expression >= expression*

4.5. *expression == expression*

4.6. *expression != expression*

5. Storage classes

There are only two storage classes in BC, global and automatic (local). Only identifiers that are to be local to a function need be declared with the **auto** command. The arguments to a function are local to the function. All other identifiers are assumed to be global and available to all functions. All

identifiers, global and local, have initial values of zero. Identifiers declared as **auto** are allocated on entry to the function and released on returning from the function. They therefore do not retain values between function calls. **auto** arrays are specified by the array name followed by empty square brackets.

Automatic variables in BC do not work in exactly the same way as in either C or PL/I. On entry to a function, the old values of the names that appear as parameters and as automatic variables are pushed onto a stack. Until return is made from the function, reference to these names refers only to the new values.

6. Statements

Statements must be separated by semicolon or newline. Except where altered by control statements, execution is sequential.

6.1. Expression statements

When a statement is an expression, unless the main operator is an assignment, the value of the expression is printed, followed by a newline character.

6.2. Compound statements

Statements may be grouped together and used when one statement is expected by surrounding them with { }.

6.3. Quoted string statements

"any string"

This statement prints the string inside the quotes.

6.4. If statements

if (*relation*) *statement*

The substatement is executed if the relation is true.

6.5. While statements

while (*relation*) *statement*

The statement is executed while the relation is true. The test occurs before each execution of the statement.

6.6. For statements

for (*expression*; *relation*; *expression*) *statement*

The for statement is the same as

first-expression
while (*relation*) {
    statement
    last-expression
}

All three expressions must be present.

6.7. Break statements

break

break causes termination of a **for** or **while** statement.

6.8. Auto statements

auto *identifier*[,*identifier*]

The auto statement causes the values of the identifiers to be pushed down. The identifiers can be ordinary identifiers or array identifiers. Array identifiers are specified by following the array name by empty square brackets. The auto statement must be the first statement in a function definition.

6.9. Define statements

define([*parameter*[,*parameter*...]]**)**{
statements}

The define statement defines a function. The parameters may be ordinary identifiers or array names. Array names must be followed by empty square brackets.

6.10. Return statements

return

return(*expression* **)**

The return statement causes termination of a function, popping of its auto variables, and specifies the result of the function. The first form is equivalent to **return(0)**. The result of the function is the result of the expression in parentheses.

6.11. Quit

The quit statement stops execution of a BC program and returns control to UNIX when it is first encountered. Because it is not treated as an executable statement, it cannot be used in a function definition or in an **if, for,** or **while** statement.

MAIL REFERENCE MANUAL

Kurt Shoens

Revised by

Craig Leres

Version 5.2

August 26, 1986

1. Introduction

Mail provides a simple and friendly environment for sending and receiving mail. It divides incoming mail into its constituent messages and allows the user to deal with them in any order. In addition, it provides a set of *ed*-like commands for manipulating messages and sending mail. *Mail* offers the user simple editing capabilities to ease the composition of outgoing messages, as well as providing the ability to define and send to names which address groups of users. Finally, *Mail* is able to send and receive messages across such networks as the ARPANET, UUCP, and Berkeley network.

This document describes how to use the *Mail* program to send and receive messages. The reader is not assumed to be familiar with other message handling systems, but should be familiar with the UNIX[1] shell, the text editor, and some of the common UNIX commands. "The UNIX Programmer's Manual," "An Introduction to Csh," and "Text Editing with Ex and Vi" can be consulted for more information on these topics.

Here is how messages are handled: the mail system accepts incoming *messages* for you from other people and collects them in a file, called your *system mailbox*. When you login, the system notifies you if there are any messages waiting in your system mailbox. If you are a *csh* user, you will be notified when new mail arrives if you inform the shell of the location of your mailbox. On version 7 systems, your system mailbox is located in the directory /usr/spool/mail in a file with your login name. If your login name is "sam," then you can make *csh* notify you of new mail by including the following line in your .cshrc file:

```
set mail=/usr/spool/mail/sam
```

When you read your mail using *Mail*, it reads your system mailbox and separates that file into the individual messages that have been sent to you. You can then read, reply to, delete, or save these messages. Each message is marked with its author and the date they sent it.

[1] UNIX is a trademark of Bell Laboratories.

2. Common usage

The *Mail* command has two distinct usages, according to whether one wants to send or receive mail. Sending mail is simple: to send a message to a user whose login name is, say, "root," use the shell command:

```
% Mail root
```

then type your message. When you reach the end of the message, type an EOT (control–d) at the beginning of a line, which will cause *Mail* to echo "EOT" and return you to the Shell. When the user you sent mail to next logs in, he will receive the message:

```
You have mail.
```

to alert him to the existence of your message.

If, while you are composing the message you decide that you do not wish to send it after all, you can abort the letter with a RUBOUT. Typing a single RUBOUT causes *Mail* to print

```
(Interrupt -- one more to kill letter)
```

Typing a second RUBOUT causes *Mail* to save your partial letter on the file "dead.letter" in your home directory and abort the letter. Once you have sent mail to someone, there is no way to undo the act, so be careful.

The message your recipient reads will consist of the message you typed, preceded by a line telling who sent the message (your login name) and the date and time it was sent.

If you want to send the same message to several other people, you can list their login names on the command line. Thus,

```
% Mail sam bob john
Tuition fees are due next Friday. Don't forget!!
<Control–d>
EOT
%
```

will send the reminder to sam, bob, and john.

If, when you log in, you see the message,

```
You have mail.
```

you can read the mail by typing simply:

```
% Mail
```

Mail will respond by typing its version number and date and then listing the messages you have waiting. Then it will type a prompt and await your command. The messages are assigned numbers starting with 1 — you refer to the messages with these numbers. *Mail* keeps tack of which messages are *new* (have been sent since you last read your mail) and *read* (have been read by you). New messages have an N next to them in the header listing and old, but unread messages have a U next to them. *Mail* keeps track of new/old and read/unread messages by putting a header field called "Status" into your messages.

To look at a specific message, use the **type** command, which may be abbreviated to simply **t**. For example, if you had the following messages:

```
N 1 root    Wed Sep 21 09:21  "Tuition fees"
N 2 sam     Tue Sep 20 22:55
```

you could examine the first message by giving the command:

```
type 1
```

which might cause *Mail* to respond with, for example:

```
Message  1:
```

```
From root  Wed Sep 21 09:21:45 1978
Subject: Tuition fees
Status: R

Tuition fees are due next Wednesday.  Don't forget!!
```

Many *Mail* commands that operate on messages take a message number as an argument like the **type** command. For these commands, there is a notion of a current message. When you enter the *Mail* program, the current message is initially the first one. Thus, you can often omit the message number and use, for example,

```
t
```

to type the current message. As a further shorthand, you can type a message by simply giving its message number. Hence,

```
1
```

would type the first message.

Frequently, it is useful to read the messages in your mailbox in order, one after another. You can read the next message in *Mail* by simply typing a newline. As a special case, you can type a newline as your first command to *Mail* to type the first message.

If, after typing a message, you wish to immediately send a reply, you can do so with the **reply** command. **Reply**, like **type**, takes a message number as an argument. *Mail* then begins a message addressed to the user who sent you the message. You may then type in your letter in reply, followed by a <control-d> at the beginning of a line, as before. *Mail* will type EOT, then type the ampersand prompt to indicate its readiness to accept another command. In our example, if, after typing the first message, you wished to reply to it, you might give the command:

```
reply
```

Mail responds by typing:

```
To: root
Subject: Re: Tuition fees
```

and waiting for you to enter your letter. You are now in the message collection mode described at the beginning of this section and *Mail* will gather up your message up to a control–d. Note that it copies the subject header from the original message. This is useful in that correspondence about a particular matter will tend to retain the same subject heading, making it easy to recognize. If there are other header fields in the message, the information found will also be used. For example, if the letter had a "To:" header listing several recipients, *Mail* would arrange to send your replay to the same people as well. Similarly, if the original message contained a "Cc:" (carbon copies to) field, *Mail* would send your reply to *those* users, too. *Mail* is careful, though, not too send the message to *you*, even if you appear in the "To:" or "Cc:" field, unless you ask to be included explicitly. See section 4 for more details.

After typing in your letter, the dialog with *Mail* might look like the following:

```
reply
To: root
Subject: Tuition fees

Thanks for the reminder
EOT
&
```

The **reply** command is especially useful for sustaining extended conversations over the message system, with other "listening" users receiving copies of the conversation. The **reply** command can be abbreviated to **r**.

Sometimes you will receive a message that has been sent to several people and wish to reply *only* to the person who sent it. **Reply** with a capital **R** replies to a message, but sends a copy to the sender only.

If you wish, while reading your mail, to send a message to someone, but not as a reply to one of your messages, you can send the message directly with the **mail** command, which takes as arguments the names of the recipients you wish to send to. For example, to send a message to "frank," you would do:

```
mail frank
This is to confirm our meeting next Friday at 4.
EOT
&
```

The **mail** command can be abbreviated to **m**.

Normally, each message you receive is saved in the file *mbox* in your login directory at the time you leave *Mail*. Often, however, you will not want to save a particular message you have received because it is only of passing interest. To avoid saving a message in *mbox* you can delete it using the **delete** command. In our example,

```
delete 1
```

will prevent *Mail* from saving message 1 (from root) in *mbox*. In addition to not saving deleted messages, *Mail* will not let you type them, either. The effect is to make the message disappear altogether, along with its number. The **delete** command can be abbreviated to simply **d**.

Many features of *Mail* can be tailored to your liking with the **set** command. The **set** command has two forms, depending on whether you are setting a *binary* option or a *valued* option. Binary options are either on or off. For example, the "ask" option informs *Mail* that each time you send a message, you want it to prompt you for a subject header, to be included in the message. To set the "ask" option, you would type

```
set ask
```

Another useful *Mail* option is "hold." Unless told otherwise, *Mail* moves the messages from your system mailbox to the file *mbox* in your home directory when you leave *Mail*. If you want *Mail* to keep your letters in the system mailbox instead, you can set the "hold" option.

Valued options are values which *Mail* uses to adapt to your tastes. For example, the "SHELL" option tells *Mail* which shell you like to use, and is specified by

```
set SHELL=/bin/csh
```

for example. Note that no spaces are allowed in "SHELL=/bin/csh." A complete list of the *Mail* options appears in section 5.

Another important valued option is "crt." If you use a fast video terminal, you will find that when you print long messages, they fly by too quickly for you to read them. With the "crt" option, you can make *Mail* print any message larger than a given number of lines by sending it through the paging program *more*. For example, most CRT users with 24-line screens should do:

```
set crt=24
```

to paginate messages that will not fit on their screens. *More* prints a screenful of information, then types --MORE--. Type a space to see the next screenful.

Another adaptation to user needs that *Mail* provides is that of *aliases.* An alias is simply a name which stands for one or more real user names. *Mail* sent to an alias is really sent to the list of real users associated with it. For example, an alias can be defined for the members of a project, so that you can send mail to the whole project by sending mail to just a single name. The **alias** command in *Mail* defines an alias. Suppose that the users in a project are named Sam, Sally, Steve, and Susan. To define an alias called "project" for them, you would use the *Mail* command:

alias project sam sally steve susan

The **alias** command can also be used to provide a convenient name for someone whose user name is inconvenient. For example, if a user named "Bob Anderson" had the login name "anderson,"" you might want to use:

alias bob anderson

so that you could send mail to the shorter name, "bob."

While the **alias** and **set** commands allow you to customize *Mail*, they have the drawback that they must be retyped each time you enter *Mail.* To make them more convenient to use, *Mail* always looks for two files when it is invoked. It first reads a system wide file "/usr/lib/Mail.rc," then a user specific file, ".mailrc," which is found in the user's home directory. The system wide file is maintained by the system administrator and contains **set** commands that are applicable to all users of the system. The ".mailrc" file is usually used by each user to set options the way he likes and define individual aliases. For example, my .mailrc file looks like this:

set ask nosave SHELL=/bin/csh

As you can see, it is possible to set many options in the same **set** command. The "nosave" option is described in section 5.

Mail aliasing is implemented at the system-wide level by the mail delivery system *sendmail.* These aliases are stored in the file /usr/lib/aliases and are accessible to all users of the system. The lines in /usr/lib/aliases are of the form:

alias: $name_1$, $name_2$, $name_3$

where *alias* is the mailing list name and the $name_i$ are the members of the list. Long lists can be continued onto the next line by starting the next line with a space or tab. Remember that you must execute the shell command *newaliases* after editing /usr/lib/aliases since the delivery system uses an indexed file created by *newaliases.*

We have seen that *Mail* can be invoked with command line arguments which are people to send the message to, or with no arguments to read mail. Specifying the –f flag on the command line causes *Mail* to read messages from a file other than your system mailbox. For example, if you have a collection of messages in the file "letters" you can use *Mail* to read them with:

% Mail –f letters

You can use all the *Mail* commands described in this document to examine, modify, or delete messages from your "letters" file, which will be rewritten when you leave *Mail* with the **quit** command described below.

Since mail that you read is saved in the file *mbox* in your home directory by default, you can read *mbox* in your home directory by using simply

% Mail –f

Normally, messages that you examine using the **type** command are saved in the file "mbox" in your home directory if you leave *Mail* with the **quit** command described below. If you wish to retain a message in your system mailbox you can use the **preserve** command to

tell *Mail* to leave it there. The **preserve** command accepts a list of message numbers, just like **type** and may be abbreviated to **pre**.

Messages in your system mailbox that you do not examine are normally retained in your system mailbox automatically. If you wish to have such a message saved in *mbox* without reading it, you may use the **mbox** command to have them so saved. For example,

```
mbox 2
```

in our example would cause the second message (from sam) to be saved in *mbox* when the **quit** command is executed. **Mbox** is also the way to direct messages to your *mbox* file if you have set the "hold" option described above. **Mbox** can be abbreviated to **mb**.

When you have perused all the messages of interest, you can leave *Mail* with the **quit** command, which saves the messages you have typed but not deleted in the file *mbox* in your login directory. Deleted messages are discarded irretrievably, and messages left untouched are preserved in your system mailbox so that you will see them the next time you type:

```
% Mail
```

The **quit** command can be abbreviated to simply **q**.

If you wish for some reason to leave *Mail* quickly without altering either your system mailbox or *mbox*, you can type the **x** command (short for **exit**), which will immediately return you to the Shell without changing anything.

If, instead, you want to execute a Shell command without leaving *Mail*, you can type the command preceded by an exclamation point, just as in the text editor. Thus, for instance:

```
!date
```

will print the current date without leaving *Mail*.

Finally, the **help** command is available to print out a brief summary of the *Mail* commands, using only the single character command abbreviations.

3. Maintaining folders

Mail includes a simple facility for maintaining groups of messages together in folders. This section describes this facility.

To use the folder facility, you must tell *Mail* where you wish to keep your folders. Each folder of messages will be a single file. For convenience, all of your folders are kept in a single directory of your choosing. To tell *Mail* where your folder directory is, put a line of the form

```
set folder=letters
```

in your *.mailrc* file. If, as in the example above, your folder directory does not begin with a '/,' *Mail* will assume that your folder directory is to be found starting from your home directory. Thus, if your home directory is **/usr/person** the above example told *Mail* to find your folder directory in **/usr/person/letters**.

Anywhere a file name is expected, you can use a folder name, preceded with '+.' For example, to put a message into a folder with the **save** command, you can use:

```
save +classwork
```

to save the current message in the *classwork* folder. If the *classwork* folder does not yet exist, it will be created. Note that messages which are saved with the **save** command are automatically removed from your system mailbox.

In order to make a copy of a message in a folder without causing that message to be removed from your system mailbox, use the **copy** command, which is identical in all other respects to the **save** command. For example,

```
copy +classwork
```

copies the current message into the *classwork* folder and leaves a copy in your system mailbox.

The **folder** command can be used to direct *Mail* to the contents of a different folder. For example,

```
folder +classwork
```

directs *Mail* to read the contents of the *classwork* folder. All of the commands that you can use on your system mailbox are also applicable to folders, including **type**, **delete**, and **reply**. To inquire which folder you are currently editing, use simply:

```
folder
```

To list your current set of folders, use the **folders** command.

To start *Mail* reading one of your folders, you can use the **–f** option described in section 2. For example:

```
% Mail –f +classwork
```

will cause *Mail* to read your *classwork* folder without looking at your system mailbox.

4. More about sending mail

4.1. Tilde escapes

While typing in a message to be sent to others, it is often useful to be able to invoke the text editor on the partial message, print the message, execute a shell command, or do some other auxiliary function. *Mail* provides these capabilities through *tilde escapes*, which consist of a tilde (~) at the beginning of a line, followed by a single character which indicates the function to be performed. For example, to print the text of the message so far, use:

~p

which will print a line of dashes, the recipients of your message, and the text of the message so far. Since *Mail* requires two consecutive RUBOUT's to abort a letter, you can use a single RUBOUT to abort the output of ~p or any other ~ escape without killing your letter.

If you are dissatisfied with the message as it stands, you can invoke the text editor on it using the escape

~e

which causes the message to be copied into a temporary file and an instance of the editor to be spawned. After modifying the message to your satisfaction, write it out and quit the editor. *Mail* will respond by typing

(continue)

after which you may continue typing text which will be appended to your message, or type <control-d> to end the message. A standard text editor is provided by *Mail*. You can override this default by setting the valued option "EDITOR" to something else. For example, you might prefer:

set EDITOR=/usr/ucb/ex

Many systems offer a screen editor as an alternative to the standard text editor, such as the *vi* editor from UC Berkeley. To use the screen, or *visual* editor, on your current message, you can use the escape,

~v

~v works like ~e, except that the screen editor is invoked instead. A default screen editor is defined by *Mail*. If it does not suit you, you can set the valued option "VISUAL" to the path name of a different editor.

It is often useful to be able to include the contents of some file in your message; the escape

~r filename

is provided for this purpose, and causes the named file to be appended to your current message. *Mail* complains if the file doesn't exist or can't be read. If the read is successful, the number of lines and characters appended to your message is printed, after which you may continue appending text. The filename may contain shell metacharacters like * and ? which are expanded according to the conventions of your shell.

As a special case of ~r, the escape

~d

reads in the file "dead.letter" in your home directory. This is often useful since *Mail* copies the text of your message there when you abort a message with RUBOUT.

To save the current text of your message on a file you may use the

~w filename

escape. *Mail* will print out the number of lines and characters written to the file, after which you may continue appending text to your message. Shell metacharacters may be used in the filename, as in ~r and are expanded with the conventions of your shell.

If you are sending mail from within *Mail's* command mode you can read a message sent to you into the message you are constructing with the escape:

~m 4

which will read message 4 into the current message, shifted right by one tab stop. You can name any non-deleted message, or list of messages. Messages can also be forwarded without shifting by a tab stop with ~f. This is the usual way to forward a message.

If, in the process of composing a message, you decide to add additional people to the list of message recipients, you can do so with the escape

~t name1 name2 ...

You may name as few or many additional recipients as you wish. Note that the users originally on the recipient list will still receive the message; you cannot remove someone from the recipient list with ~t.

If you wish, you can associate a subject with your message by using the escape

~s Arbitrary string of text

which replaces any previous subject with "Arbitrary string of text." The subject, if given, is sent near the top of the message prefixed with "Subject:" You can see what the message will look like by using ~p.

For political reasons, one occasionally prefers to list certain people as recipients of carbon copies of a message rather than direct recipients. The escape

~c name1 name2 ...

adds the named people to the "Cc:" list, similar to ~t. Again, you can execute ~p to see what the message will look like.

The recipients of the message together constitute the "To:" field, the subject the "Subject:" field, and the carbon copies the "Cc:" field. If you wish to edit these in ways impossible with the ~t, ~s, and ~c escapes, you can use the escape

~h

which prints "To:" followed by the current list of recipients and leaves the cursor (or printhead) at the end of the line. If you type in ordinary characters, they are appended to the end of the current list of recipients. You can also use your erase character to erase back into the list of recipients, or your kill character to erase them altogether. Thus, for example, if your erase and kill characters are the standard (on printing terminals) # and @ symbols,

~h
To: root kurt####bill

would change the initial recipients "root kurt" to "root bill." When you type a newline, *Mail* advances to the "Subject:" field, where the same rules apply. Another newline brings you to the "Cc:" field, which may be edited in the same fashion. Another newline leaves you appending text to the end of your message. You can use ~p to print the current text of the header fields and the body of the message.

To effect a temporary escape to the shell, the escape

~!command

is used, which executes *command* and returns you to mailing mode without altering the text of your message. If you wish, instead, to filter the body of your message through a shell command, then you can use

~|command

which pipes your message through the command and uses the output as the new text of your message. If the command produces no output, *Mail* assumes that something is amiss and retains the old version of your message. A frequently-used filter is the command *fmt*, designed to format outgoing mail.

To effect a temporary escape to *Mail* command mode instead, you can use the

~:*Mail command*

escape. This is especially useful for retyping the message you are replying to, using, for example:

~:t

It is also useful for setting options and modifying aliases.

If you wish (for some reason) to send a message that contains a line beginning with a tilde, you must double it. Thus, for example,

~~This line begins with a tilde.

sends the line

~This line begins with a tilde.

Finally, the escape

~?

prints out a brief summary of the available tilde escapes.

On some terminals (particularly ones with no lower case) tilde's are difficult to type. *Mail* allows you to change the escape character with the "escape" option. For example, I set

set escape=]

and use a right bracket instead of a tilde. If I ever need to send a line beginning with right bracket, I double it, just as for ~. Changing the escape character removes the special meaning of ~.

4.2. Network access

This section describes how to send mail to people on other machines. Recall that sending to a plain login name sends mail to that person on your machine. If your machine is directly (or sometimes, even, indirectly) connected to the Arpanet, you can send messages to people on the Arpanet using a name of the form

name@host.domain

where *name* is the login name of the person you're trying to reach, *host* is the name of the machine on the Arpanet, and *domain* is the higher-level scope within which the hostname is known, e.g. EDU (for educational institutions), COM (for commercial entities), GOV (for governmental agencies), ARPA for many other things, BITNET or CSNET for those networks.

If your recipient logs in on a machine connected to yours by UUCP (the Bell Laboratories supplied network that communicates over telephone lines), sending mail can be a bit more complicated. You must know the list of machines through which your message must travel to arrive at his site. So, if his machine is directly connected to yours, you can send mail to him using the syntax:

host!name

where, again, *host* is the name of the machine and *name* is the login name. If your message must go through an intermediary machine first, you must use the syntax:

intermediary!host!name

and so on. It is actually a feature of UUCP that the map of all the systems in the network is not known anywhere (except where people decide to write it down for convenience). Talk to your system administrator about good ways to get places; the *uuname* command will tell you systems whose names are recognized, but not which ones are frequently called or well-connected.

When you use the **reply** command to respond to a letter, there is a problem of figuring out the names of the users in the "To:" and "Cc:" lists *relative to the current machine.* If the original letter was sent to you by someone on the local machine, then this problem does not exist, but if the message came from a remote machine, the problem must be dealt with. *Mail* uses a heuristic to build the correct name for each user relative to the local machine. So, when you **reply** to remote mail, the names in the "To:" and "Cc:" lists may change somewhat.

4.3. Special recipients

As described previously, you can send mail to either user names or **alias** names. It is also possible to send messages directly to files or to programs, using special conventions. If a recipient name has a '/' in it or begins with a '+', it is assumed to be the path name of a file into which to send the message. If the file already exists, the message is appended to the end of the file. If you want to name a file in your current directory (ie, one for which a '/' would not usually be needed) you can precede the name with './' So, to send mail to the file "memo" in the current directory, you can give the command:

```
% Mail ./memo
```

If the name begins with a '+,' it is expanded into the full path name of the folder name in your folder directory. This ability to send mail to files can be used for a variety of purposes, such as maintaining a journal and keeping a record of mail sent to a certain group of users. The second example can be done automatically by including the full pathname of the record file in the **alias** command for the group. Using our previous **alias** example, you might give the command:

```
alias project sam sally steve susan /usr/project/mail_record
```

Then, all mail sent to "project" would be saved on the file "/usr/project/mail_record" as well as being sent to the members of the project. This file can be examined using *Mail -f.*

It is sometimes useful to send mail directly to a program, for example one might write a project billboard program and want to access it using *Mail.* To send messages to the billboard program, one can send mail to the special name '|billboard' for example. *Mail* treats recipient names that begin with a '|' as a program to send the mail to. An **alias** can be set up to reference a '|' prefaced name if desired. *Caveats*: the shell treats '|' specially, so it must be quoted on the command line. Also, the '| program' must be presented as a single argument to mail. The safest course is to surround the entire name with double quotes. This also applies to usage in the **alias** command. For example, if we wanted to alias 'rmsgs' to 'rmsgs -s' we would need to say:

```
alias rmsgs "| rmsgs -s"
```

5. Additional features

This section describes some additional commands useful for reading your mail, setting options, and handling lists of messages.

5.1. Message lists

Several *Mail* commands accept a list of messages as an argument. Along with **type** and **delete**, described in section 2, there is the **from** command, which prints the message headers associated with the message list passed to it. The **from** command is particularly useful in conjunction with some of the message list features described below.

A *message list* consists of a list of message numbers, ranges, and names, separated by spaces or tabs. Message numbers may be either decimal numbers, which directly specify messages, or one of the special characters "↑" "." or "$" to specify the first relevant, current, or last relevant message, respectively. *Relevant* here means, for most commands "not deleted" and "deleted" for the **undelete** command.

A range of messages consists of two message numbers (of the form described in the previous paragraph) separated by a dash. Thus, to print the first four messages, use

```
type 1-4
```

and to print all the messages from the current message to the last message, use

```
type .-$
```

A *name* is a user name. The user names given in the message list are collected together and each message selected by other means is checked to make sure it was sent by one of the named users. If the message consists entirely of user names, then every message sent by one those users that is *relevant* (in the sense described earlier) is selected. Thus, to print every message sent to you by "root," do

```
type root
```

As a shorthand notation, you can specify simply "*" to get every *relevant* (same sense) message. Thus,

```
type *
```

prints all undeleted messages,

```
delete *
```

deletes all undeleted messages, and

```
undelete *
```

undeletes all deleted messages.

You can search for the presence of a word in subject lines with /. For example, to print the headers of all messages that contain the word "PASCAL," do:

```
from /pascal
```

Note that subject searching ignores upper/lower case differences.

5.2. List of commands

This section describes all the *Mail* commands available when receiving mail.

! Used to preface a command to be executed by the shell.

\- The - command goes to the previous message and prints it. The - command may be given a decimal number *n* as an argument, in which case the *n*th previous message is gone to and printed.

Print Like **print**, but also print out ignored header fields. See also **print** and **ignore**.

Reply

Note the capital R in the name. Frame a reply to a one or more messages. The reply (or replies if you are using this on multiple messages) will be sent ONLY to the person who sent you the message (respectively, the set of people who sent the messages you are replying to). You can add people using the ~t and ~c tilde escapes. The subject in your reply is formed by prefacing the subject in the original message with "Re:" unless it already began thus. If the original message included a "reply-to" header field, the reply will go *only* to the recipient named by "reply-to." You type in your message using the same conventions available to you through the **mail** command. The **Reply** command is especially useful for replying to messages that were sent to enormous distribution groups when you really just want to send a message to the originator. Use it often.

Type Identical to the **Print** command.

alias Define a name to stand for a set of other names. This is used when you want to send messages to a certain group of people and want to avoid retyping their names. For example

```
alias project john sue willie kathryn
```

creates an alias *project* which expands to the four people John, Sue, Willie, and Kathryn.

alternates

If you have accounts on several machines, you may find it convenient to use the /usr/lib/aliases on all the machines except one to direct your mail to a single account. The **alternates** command is used to inform *Mail* that each of these other addresses is really *you*. *Alternates* takes a list of user names and remembers that they are all actually you. When you **reply** to messages that were sent to one of these alternate names, *Mail* will not bother to send a copy of the message to this other address (which would simply be directed back to you by the alias mechanism). If *alternates* is given no argument, it lists the current set of alternate names. **Alternates** is usually used in the .mailrc file.

chdir The **chdir** command allows you to change your current directory. **Chdir** takes a single argument, which is taken to be the pathname of the directory to change to. If no argument is given, **chdir** changes to your home directory.

copy The **copy** command does the same thing that **save** does, except that it does not mark the messages it is used on for deletion when you quit.

delete

Deletes a list of messages. Deleted messages can be reclaimed with the **undelete** command.

dp These

commands delete the current message and print the next message. They are useful for quickly reading and disposing of mail.

edit To edit individual messages using the text editor, the **edit** command is provided. The **edit** command takes a list of messages as described under the **type** command and processes each by writing it into the file Message*x* where *x* is the message number being edited and executing the text editor on it. When you have edited the message to your satisfaction, write the message out and quit, upon which *Mail* will read the message back and remove the file. **Edit** may be abbreviated to **e**.

else Marks the end of the then-part of an **if** statement and the beginning of the part to take effect if the condition of the **if** statement is false.

endif Marks the end of an **if** statement.

exit Leave *Mail* without updating the system mailbox or the file your were reading. Thus, if you accidentally delete several messages, you can use **exit** to avoid scrambling your mailbox.

file The same as **folder.**

folders
List the names of the folders in your folder directory.

folder
The **folder** command switches to a new mail file or folder. With no arguments, it tells you which file you are currently reading. If you give it an argument, it will write out changes (such as deletions) you have made in the current file and read the new file. Some special conventions are recognized for the name:

Name	Meaning
#	Previous file read
%	Your system mailbox
%name	*Name*'s system mailbox
&	Your ~/mbox file
+folder	A file in your folder directory

from The **from** command takes a list of messages and prints out the header lines for each one; hence

```
from joe
```

is the easy way to display all the message headers from "joe."

headers
When you start up *Mail* to read your mail, it lists the message headers that you have. These headers tell you who each message is from, when they were sent, how many lines and characters each message is, and the "Subject:" header field of each message, if present. In addition, *Mail* tags the message header of each message that has been the object of the **preserve** command with a "P." Messages that have been **saved** or **written** are flagged with a "*." Finally, **deleted** messages are not printed at all. If you wish to reprint the current list of message headers, you can do so with the **headers** command. The **headers** command (and thus the initial header listing) only lists the first so many message headers. The number of headers listed depends on the speed of your terminal. This can be overridden by specifying the number of headers you want with the *window* option. *Mail* maintains a notion of the current "window" into your messages for the purposes of printing headers. Use the **z** command to move forward and back a window. You can move *Mail's* notion of the current window directly to a particular message by using, for example,

```
headers 40
```

to move *Mail's* attention to the messages around message 40. The **headers** command can be abbreviated to **h.**

help Print a brief and usually out of date help message about the commands in *Mail.* The *man* page for *mail* is usually more up-to-date than either the help message or this manual.

hold Arrange to hold a list of messages in the system mailbox, instead of moving them to the file *mbox* in your home directory. If you set the binary option *hold,* this will happen by default.

if Commands in your ".mailrc" file can be executed conditionally depending on whether you are sending or receiving mail with the **if** command. For example, you can do:

```
if receive
        commands...
endif
```

An **else** form is also available:

```
if send
        commands...
else
        commands...
endif
```

Note that the only allowed conditions are **receive** and **send**.

ignore
Add the list of header fields named to the *ignore list*. Header fields in the ignore list are not printed on your terminal when you print a message. This allows you to suppress printing of certain machine-generated header fields, such as *Via* which are not usually of interest. The **Type** and **Print** commands can be used to print a message in its entirety, including ignored fields. If **ignore** is executed with no arguments, it lists the current set of ignored fields.

list List the vaild *Mail* commands.

mail Send mail to one or more people. If you have the *ask* option set, *Mail* will prompt you for a subject to your message. Then you can type in your message, using tilde escapes as described in section 4 to edit, print, or modify your message. To signal your satisfaction with the message and send it, type control-d at the beginning of a line, or a . alone on a line if you set the option *dot*. To abort the message, type two interrupt characters (RUBOUT by default) in a row or use the **~q** escape.

mbox Indicate that a list of messages be sent to *mbox* in your home directory when you quit. This is the default action for messages if you do *not* have the *hold* option set.

next The **next** command goes to the next message and types it. If given a message list, **next** goes to the first such message and types it. Thus,

```
next root
```

goes to the next message sent by "root" and types it. The **next** command can be abbreviated to simply a newline, which means that one can go to and type a message by simply giving its message number or one of the magic characters "^" "." or "$". Thus,

prints the current message and

```
4
```

prints message 4, as described previously.

preserve
Same as **hold**. Cause a list of messages to be held in your system mailbox when you quit.

print Takes a message list and types out each message on the terminal.

quit Leave *Mail* and update the file, folder, or system mailbox your were reading. Messages that you have examined are marked as "read" and messages that existed when you started are marked as "old." If you were editing your system mailbox and if you have set the binary option *hold*, all messages which have not been deleted, saved, or mboxed will be retained in your system mailbox. If you were editing your system mailbox and

you did *not* have *hold* set, all messages which have not been deleted, saved, or preserved will be moved to the file *mbox* in your home directory.

reply Frame a reply to a single message. The reply will be sent to the person who sent you the message to which you are replying, plus all the people who received the original message, except you. You can add people using the ~t and ~c tilde escapes. The subject in your reply is formed by prefacing the subject in the original message with "Re:" unless it already began thus. If the original message included a "reply-to" header field, the reply will go *only* to the recipient named by "reply-to." You type in your message using the same conventions available to you through the **mail** command.

save It is often useful to be able to save messages on related topics in a file. The **save** command gives you ability to do this. The **save** command takes as argument a list of message numbers, followed by the name of the file on which to save the messages. The messages are appended to the named file, thus allowing one to keep several messages in the file, stored in the order they were put there. The **save** command can be abbreviated to **s**. An example of the **save** command relative to our running example is:

```
s 1 2 tuitionmail
```

Saved messages are not automatically saved in *mbox* at quit time, nor are they selected by the **next** command described above, unless explicitly specified.

set Set an option or give an option a value. Used to customize *Mail*. Section 5.3 contains a list of the options. Options can be *binary*, in which case they are *on* or *off*, or *valued*. To set a binary option *option on*, do

```
set option
```

To give the valued option *option* the value *value*, do

```
set option=value
```

Several options can be specified in a single **set** command.

shell The **shell** command allows you to escape to the shell. **Shell** invokes an interactive shell and allows you to type commands to it. When you leave the shell, you will return to *Mail*. The shell used is a default assumed by *Mail*; you can override this default by setting the valued option "SHELL," eg:

```
set SHELL=/bin/csh
```

source
The **source** command reads *Mail* commands from a file. It is useful when you are trying to fix your ".mailrc" file and you need to re-read it.

top The **top** command takes a message list and prints the first five lines of each addressed message. It may be abbreviated to **to**. If you wish, you can change the number of lines that **top** prints out by setting the valued option "toplines." On a CRT terminal,

```
set toplines=10
```

might be preferred.

type Print a list of messages on your terminal. If you have set the option *crt* to a number and the total number of lines in the messages you are printing exceed that specified by *crt*, the messages will be printed by a terminal paging program such as *more*.

undelete
The **undelete** command causes a message that had been deleted previously to regain its initial status. Only messages that have been deleted may be undeleted. This command may be abbreviated to **u**.

unset Reverse the action of setting a binary or valued option.

visual
It is often useful to be able to invoke one of two editors, based on the type of terminal one is using. To invoke a display oriented editor, you can use the **visual** command. The operation of the **visual** command is otherwise identical to that of the **edit** command.

Both the **edit** and **visual** commands assume some default text editors. These default editors can be overridden by the valued options "EDITOR" and "VISUAL" for the standard and screen editors. You might want to do:

```
set EDITOR=/usr/ucb/ex VISUAL=/usr/ucb/vi
```

write The **save** command always writes the entire message, including the headers, into the file. If you want to write just the message itself, you can use the **write** command. The **write** command has the same syntax as the **save** command, and can be abbreviated to simply **w**. Thus, we could write the second message by doing:

```
w 2 file.c
```

As suggested by this example, the **write** command is useful for such tasks as sending and receiving source program text over the message system.

z *Mail* presents message headers in windowfuls as described under the **headers** command. You can move *Mail's* attention forward to the next window by giving the

```
z+
```

command. Analogously, you can move to the previous window with:

```
z-
```

5.3. Custom options

Throughout this manual, we have seen examples of binary and valued options. This section describes each of the options in alphabetical order, including some that you have not seen yet. To avoid confusion, please note that the options are either all lower case letters or all upper case letters. When I start a sentence such as: "Ask" causes *Mail* to prompt you for a subject header, I am only capitalizing "ask" as a courtesy to English.

EDITOR
The valued option "EDITOR" defines the pathname of the text editor to be used in the **edit** command and ~e. If not defined, a standard editor is used.

SHELL
The valued option "SHELL" gives the path name of your shell. This shell is used for the ! command and ~! escape. In addition, this shell expands file names with shell metacharacters like * and ? in them.

VISUAL
The valued option "VISUAL" defines the pathname of your screen editor for use in the **visual** command and ~v escape. A standard screen editor is used if you do not define one.

append
The "append" option is binary and causes messages saved in *mbox* to be appended to the end rather than prepended. Normally, *Mail*will *mbox* in the same order that the system puts messages in your system mailbox. By setting "append," you are requesting that *mbox* be appended to regardless. It is in any event quicker to append.

ask "Ask" is a binary option which causes *Mail* to prompt you for the subject of each message you send. If you respond with simply a newline, no subject field will be sent.

askcc"Askcc" is a binary option which causes you to be prompted for additional carbon copy recipients at the end of each message. Responding with a newline shows your satisfaction with the current list.

autoprint
"Autoprint" is a binary option which causes the **delete** command to behave like **dp** – thus, after deleting a message, the next one will be typed automatically. This is useful to quickly scanning and deleting messages in your mailbox.

debug
The binary option "debug" causes debugging information to be displayed. Use of this option is the same as useing the

–d command line flag.

dot "Dot" is a binary option which, if set, causes *Mail* to interpret a period alone on a line as the terminator of a message you are sending.

escape
To allow you to change the escape character used when sending mail, you can set the valued option "escape." Only the first character of the "escape" option is used, and it must be doubled if it is to appear as the first character of a line of your message. If you change your escape character, then ~ loses all its special meaning, and need no longer be doubled at the beginning of a line.

folder
The name of the directory to use for storing folders of messages. If this name begins with a '/' *Mail* considers it to be an absolute pathname; otherwise, the folder directory is found relative to your home directory.

hold The binary option "hold" causes messages that have been read but not manually dealt with to be held in the system mailbox. This prevents such messages from being automatically swept into your mbox.

ignore
The binary option "ignore" causes RUBOUT characters from your terminal to be ignored and echoed as @'s while you are sending mail. RUBOUT characters retain their original meaning in *Mail* command mode. Setting the "ignore" option is equivalent to supplying the **–i** flag on the command line as described in section 6.

ignoreeof
An option related to "dot" is "ignoreeof" which makes *Mail* refuse to accept a control–d as the end of a message. "Ignoreeof" also applies to *Mail* command mode.

keep The "keep" option causes *Mail* to truncate your system mailbox instead of deleting it when it is empty. This is useful if you elect to protect your mailbox, which you would do with the shell command:

```
chmod 600 /usr/spool/mail/yourname
```

where *yourname* is your login name. If you do not do this, anyone can probably read your mail, although people usually don't.

keepsave
When you **save** a message, *Mail* usually discards it when you **quit**. To retain all saved messages, set the "keepsave" option.

metoo
When sending mail to an alias, *Mail* makes sure that if you are included in the alias, that mail will not be sent to you. This is useful if a single alias is being used by all members of the group. If however, you wish to receive a copy of all the messages you send to the alias, you can set the binary option "metoo."

noheader
The binary option "noheader" suppresses the printing of the version and headers when *Mail* is first invoked. Setting this option is the same as using –N on the command line.

nosave
Normally, when you abort a message with two RUBOUTs, *Mail* copies the partial letter to the file "dead.letter" in your home directory. Setting the binary option "nosave" prevents this.

quiet The binary option "quiet" suppresses the printing of the version when *Mail* is first invoked, as well as printing the for example "Message 4:" from the **type** command.

record
If you love to keep records, then the valued option "record" can be set to the name of a file to save your outgoing mail. Each new message you send is appended to the end of the file.

screen
When *Mail* initially prints the message headers, it determines the number to print by looking at the speed of your terminal. The faster your terminal, the more it prints. The valued option "screen" overrides this calculation and specifies how many message headers you want printed. This number is also used for scrolling with the z command.

sendmail
To alternate delivery system, set the "sendmail" option to the full pathname of the program to use. Note: this is not for everyone! Most people should use the default delivery system.

toplines
The valued option "toplines" defines the number of lines that the "top" command will print out instead of the default five lines.

verbose
The binary option "verbose" causes *Mail* to invoke sendmail with the –v flag, which causes it to go into versbose mode and announce expansion of aliases, etc. Setting the "verbose" option is equivalent to invoking *Mail* with the –v flag as described in section 6.

6. Command line options

This section describes command line options for *Mail* and what they are used for.

–N Suppress the initial printing of headers.

–d Turn on debugging information. Not of general interest.

–f file
Show the messages in *file* instead of your system mailbox. If *file* is omitted, *Mail* reads *mbox* in your home directory.

–i Ignore tty interrupt signals. Useful on noisy phone lines, which generate spurious RUBOUT or DELETE characters. It's usually more effective to change your interrupt character to control–c, for which see the *stty* shell command.

–n Inhibit reading of /usr/lib/Mail.rc. Not generally useful, since /usr/lib/Mail.rc is usually empty.

–s string
Used for sending mail. *String* is used as the subject of the message being composed. If *string* contains blanks, you must surround it with quote marks.

–u name
Read *names's* mail instead of your own. Unwitting others often neglect to protect their mailboxes, but discretion is advised. Essentially, **–u user** is a shorthand way of doing **–f /usr/spool/user**.

–v Use the –v flag when invoking sendmail. This feature may also be enabled by setting the the option "verbose".

The following command line flags are also recognized, but are intended for use by programs invoking *Mail* and not for people.

–T file
Arrange to print on *file* the contents of the *article-id* fields of all messages that were either read or deleted. **–T** is for the *readnews* program and should NOT be used for reading your mail.

–h number
Pass on hop count information. *Mail* will take the number, increment it, and pass it with **–h** to the mail delivery system. **–h** only has effect when sending mail and is used for network mail forwarding.

–r name
Used for network mail forwarding: interpret *name* as the sender of the message. The *name* and **–r** are simply sent along to the mail delivery system. Also, *Mail* will wait for the message to be sent and return the exit status. Also restricts formatting of message.

Note that **–h** and **–r**, which are for network mail forwarding, are not used in practice since mail forwarding is now handled separately. They may disappear soon.

7. Format of messages

This section describes the format of messages. Messages begin with a *from* line, which consists of the word "From" followed by a user name, followed by anything, followed by a date in the format returned by the *ctime* library routine described in section 3 of the Unix Programmer's Manual. A possible *ctime* format date is:

Tue Dec 1 10:58:23 1981

The *ctime* date may be optionally followed by a single space and a time zone indication, which should be three capital letters, such as PDT.

Following the *from* line are zero or more *header field* lines. Each header field line is of the form:

name: information

Name can be anything, but only certain header fields are recognized as having any meaning. The recognized header fields are: *article-id*, *bcc*, *cc*, *from*, *reply-to*, *sender*, *subject*, and *to*. Other header fields are also significant to other systems; see, for example, the current Arpanet message standard for much more on this topic. A header field can be continued onto following lines by making the first character on the following line a space or tab character.

If any headers are present, they must be followed by a blank line. The part that follows is called the *body* of the message, and must be ASCII text, not containing null characters. Each line in the message body must be terminated with an ASCII newline character and no line may be longer than 512 characters. If binary data must be passed through the mail system, it is suggested that this data be encoded in a system which encodes six bits into a printable character. For example, one could use the upper and lower case letters, the digits, and the characters comma and period to make up the 64 characters. Then, one can send a 16-bit binary number as three characters. These characters should be packed into lines, preferably lines about 70 characters long as long lines are transmitted more efficiently.

The message delivery system always adds a blank line to the end of each message. This blank line must not be deleted.

The UUCP message delivery system sometimes adds a blank line to the end of a message each time it is forwarded through a machine.

It should be noted that some network transport protocols enforce limits to the lengths of messages.

8. Glossary

This section contains the definitions of a few phrases peculiar to *Mail*.

alias An alternative name for a person or list of people.

flag An option, given on the command line of *Mail*, prefaced with a –. For example, –f is a flag.

header field
At the beginning of a message, a line which contains information that is part of the structure of the message. Popular header fields include *to*, *cc*, and *subject*.

mail
A collection of messages. Often used in the phrase, "Have you read your mail?"

mailbox
The place where your mail is stored, typically in the directory /usr/spool/mail.

message
A single letter from someone, initially stored in your *mailbox*.

message list
A string used in *Mail* command mode to describe a sequence of messages.

option
A piece of special purpose information used to tailor *Mail* to your taste. Options are specified with the **set** command.

9. Summary of commands, options, and escapes

This section gives a quick summary of the *Mail* commands, binary and valued options, and tilde escapes.

The following table describes the commands:

Command	*Description*
!	Single command escape to shell
-	Back up to previous message
Print	Type message with ignored fields
Reply	Reply to author of message only
Type	Type message with ignored fields
alias	Define an alias as a set of user names
alternates	List other names you are known by
chdir	Change working directory, home by default
copy	Copy a message to a file or folder
delete	Delete a list of messages
dt	Delete current message, type next message
endif	End of conditional statement; see **if**
edit	Edit a list of messages
else	Start of else part of conditional; see **if**
exit	Leave mail without changing anything
file	Interrogate/change current mail file
folder	Same as **file**
folders	List the folders in your folder directory
from	List headers of a list of messages
headers	List current window of messages
help	Print brief summary of *Mail* commands
hold	Same as **preserve**
if	Conditional execution of *Mail* commands
ignore	Set/examine list of ignored header fields
list	List valid *Mail* commands
local	List other names for the local host
mail	Send mail to specified names
mbox	Arrange to save a list of messages in *mbox*
next	Go to next message and type it
preserve	Arrange to leave list of messages in system mailbox
quit	Leave *Mail*; update system mailbox, *mbox* as appropriate
reply	Compose a reply to a message
save	Append messages, headers included, on a file
set	Set binary or valued options
shell	Invoke an interactive shell
top	Print first so many (5 by default) lines of list of messages
type	Print messages
undelete	Undelete list of messages
unset	Undo the operation of a **set**
visual	Invoke visual editor on a list of messages
write	Append messages to a file, don't include headers
z	Scroll to next/previous screenful of headers

The following table describes the options. Each option is shown as being either a binary or valued option.

Option	*Type*	*Description*
EDITOR	*valued*	Pathname of editor for ~e and **edit**
SHELL	*valued*	Pathname of shell for **shell**, ~! and **!**
VISUAL	*valued*	Pathname of screen editor for ~v, **visual**
append	*binary*	Always append messages to end of *mbox*
ask	*binary*	Prompt user for Subject: field when sending
askcc	*binary*	Prompt user for additional Cc's at end of message
autoprint	*binary*	Print next message after **delete**
crt	*valued*	Minimum number of lines before using *more*
debug	*binary*	Print out debugging information
dot	*binary*	Accept . alone on line to terminate message input
escape	*valued*	Escape character to be used instead of ~
folder	*valued*	Directory to store folders in
hold	*binary*	Hold messages in system mailbox by default
ignore	*binary*	Ignore RUBOUT while sending mail
ignoreeof	*binary*	Don't terminate letters/command input with ↑**D**
keep	*binary*	Don't unlink system mailbox when empty
keepsave	*binary*	Don't delete **saved** messages by default
metoo	*binary*	Include sending user in aliases
noheader	*binary*	Suppress initial printing of version and headers
nosave	*binary*	Don't save partial letter in *dead.letter*
quiet	*binary*	Suppress printing of *Mail* version and message numbers
record	*valued*	File to save all outgoing mail in
screen	*valued*	Size of window of message headers for **z**, etc.
sendmail	*valued*	Choose alternate mail delivery system
toplines	*valued*	Number of lines to print in **top**
verbose	*binary*	Invoke sendmail with the **-v** flag

The following table summarizes the tilde escapes available while sending mail.

Escape	*Arguments*	*Description*
~!	*command*	Execute shell command
~c	*name ...*	Add names to Cc: field
~d		Read *dead.letter* into message
~e		Invoke text editor on partial message
~f	*messages*	Read named messages
~h		Edit the header fields
~m	*messages*	Read named messages, right shift by tab
~p		Print message entered so far
~q		Abort entry of letter; like RUBOUT
~r	*filename*	Read file into message
~s	*string*	Set Subject: field to *string*
~t	*name ...*	Add names to To: field
~v		Invoke screen editor on message
~w	*filename*	Write message on file
~|	*command*	Pipe message through *command*
~~	*string*	Quote a ~ in front of *string*

The following table shows the command line flags that *Mail* accepts:

Flag	Description
–N	Suppress the initial printing of headers
–T *file*	Article-id's of read/deleted messages to *file*
–d	Turn on debugging
–f *file*	Show messages in *file* or *~/mbox*
–h *number*	Pass on hop count for mail forwarding
–i	Ignore tty interrupt signals
–n	Inhibit reading of /usr/lib/Mail.rc
–r *name*	Pass on *name* for mail forwarding
–s *string*	Use *string* as subject in outgoing mail
–u *name*	Read *name's* mail instead of your own
–v	Invoke sendmail with the –v flag

Notes: **–T**, **–d**, **–h**, and **–r** are not for human use.

THE RAND MH MESSAGE HANDLING SYSTEM: USER'S MANUAL

UCI/UCB Version

Marshall T. Rose
John L. Romine

Based on the original manual by
Borden, Gaines, and Shapiro

April 20, 1986
6.4 #2[UCI]

USD 8

CONTENTS

READ THIS i

FOREWORD ii

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS iii

PREFACE iv

SUMMARY v

Section

1. INTRODUCTION 1

2. OVERVIEW 3

3. TUTORIAL 5

4. DETAILED DESCRIPTION 7

THE USER PROFILE 7

MESSAGE NAMING 9

OTHER MH CONVENTIONS 10

MH COMMANDS 11

ALI 12

ANNO 13

BURST 14

COMP 16

DIST 18

FOLDER 20

FORW 23

INC 26

MARK 28

MHL 30

MHMAIL 34

MHOOK 35

MHPATH 39

MSGCHK 41

MSH 42

NEXT 45

PACKF 46

PICK 47
PREV 51
PROMPTER 52
RCVSTORE 54
REFILE 55
REPL 57
RMF 60
RMM 61
SCAN 62
SEND 64
SHOW 66
SORTM 68
VMH 69
WHATNOW 71
WHOM 73
MORE DETAILS 74
MH-ALIAS 75
MH-FORMAT 78
MH-MAIL 82
MH-PROFILE 85
AP 91
CONFLICT 93
DP 94
INSTALL-MH 95
POST 96

5. REPORTING PROBLEMS 98

6. ADVANCED FEATURES 99
USER-DEFINED SEQUENCES 99
Pick and User-Defined Sequences 99
Mark and User-Defined Sequences 100
Public and Private User-Defined Sequences 100
Sequence Negation 100
The Previous Sequence 101
The Unseen Sequence 101
COMPOSITION OF MAIL 101
The Draft Folder 102
What Happens if the Draft Exists 103
The Push Option at What now? Level 104
Options at What now? Level 104
Digests 104
FOLDER HANDLING 105
Relative Folder Addressing 106

The Folder–Stack 106

Appendix
A. Command Summary 107
B. Message Name BNF 110

REFERENCES 111

READ THIS

Although the *MH* system was originally developed by the Rand Corporation, and is now in the public domain, the Rand Corporation assumes no responsibility for *MH* or this particular version of *MH*.

In addition, the Regents of the University of California issue the following **disclaimer** in regard to the UCI/UCB version of *MH*:

> "Although each program has been tested by its contributor, no warranty, express or implied, is made by the contributor or the University of California, as to the accuracy and functioning of the program and related program material, nor shall the fact of distribution constitute any such warranty, and no responsibility is assumed by the contributor or the University of California in connection herewith."

This version of *MH* is in the public domain, and as such, there are no real restrictions on its use. The *MH* source code and documentation have no licensing restrictions whatsoever. As a courtesy, the authors ask only that you provide appropriate credit to the Rand Corporation and the University of California for having developed the software.

MH is a software package that is supported neither by the Rand Corporation nor the University of California. However, since we do use the software ourselves and plan to continue using (and improving) *MH*, bug reports and their associated fixes should be reported back to us so that we may include them in future releases. The current computer mailbox for *MH* is **Bug-MH@UCI.EDU** (in the ARPA Internet), and **...!ucbvax!ucivax!bug-mh** (UUCP). Presently, there are two Internet discussion groups, **MH-Users@UCI.EDU** and **MH-Workers@UCI.EDU**. If there is sufficient interest, corresponding Usenet news groups may be established along with the appropriate gateways.

FOREWORD

This document describes the Rand *MH* Message Handling System. Its primary purpose is to serve as a user's manual. It has been heavily based on a previous version of the manual, prepared by Bruce Borden, Stockton Gaines, and Norman Shapiro.

MH is a particularly novel system, and thus it is often more prone to change than other pieces of production software. As such, some specific points in this manual may not be correct in the future. In all cases, the on–line sections of this manual, available through the UNIX[1] *man* command, should present the most current information.

When reading this document as a user's manual, certain sections are more interesting than others. The Preface and Summary are not particularly interesting to those interested in learning *MH*. The Introduction is slightly more interesting, as it touches upon the organization of the remainder of this document. The most useful sections are the Overview, Tutorial, and Detailed Description. The Overview should be read by all *MH* users, regardless of their expertise (beginning, novice, advanced, or hacker). The Tutorial should be read by all beginning and novice *MH* users, as it presents a nice description of the *MH* system. The Detailed Description should be read by the day–to–day user of *MH*, as it spells out all of the realities of the *MH* system. The Advanced Features section discusses some powerful *MH* capabilities for advanced users. Appendix A is particularly useful for novices, as it summarizes the invocation syntax of all the *MH* commands.

There are also several other documents which may be useful to you: *The Rand MH Message Handling System: Tutorial*, which is a tutorial for *MH*; *The Rand MH Message Handling System: The UCI BBoards Facility*, which describes the BBoards handling under *MH*; *MH.5: How to process 200 messages a day and still get some real work done*, which was presented at the 1985 Summer Usenix Conference and Exhibition in Portland, Oregon; *MH: A Multifarious User Agent*, which has been accepted for publication by Computer Networks; *MZnet: Mail Service for Personal Micro–Computer Systems*, which was presented at the First International Symposium on Computer Message Systems in Nottingham, U.K.; and, *Design of the TTI Prototype Trusted Mail Agent*, which describes a proprietary "trusted" mail system built on *MH*. All of these documents exist in the *mh.6* distribution sent to your site. There's also a document, *Changes to the Rand MH Message Handling System: MH.6*, which describes user–visible changes made to *MH* since the last major release.

This manual is very large, as it describes a large, powerful system in gruesome detail. The important thing to remember is:

DON'T PANIC[2]

As explained in the tutorial, you really need to know only 5 commands to handle most of your mail.

Very advanced users may wish to consult *The Rand MH Message Handling System: Administrator's Guide*, which is also present in the *mh.6* distribution sent to your site.

[1] UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

[2] Note the large, *friendly* letters.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The *MH* system described herein is based on the original Rand *MH* system. It has been extensively developed (perhaps too much so) by Marshall T. Rose and John L. Romine at the University of California, Irvine. Einar A. Stefferud, Jerry N. Sweet, and Terry P. Domae provided numerous suggestions to improve the UCI version of *MH*. Of course, a large number of people have helped MH/ along. The list of "*MH* immortals" is too long to list here. However, Van Jacobson deserves a special acknowledgement for his tireless work in improving the performance of *MH*. Some programs have been speeded-up by a factor of 10 or 20. All of users of *MH*, everywhere, owe a special thanks to Van.

This manual is based on the original *MH* manual written at Rand by Bruce Borden, Stockton Gaines, and Norman Shapiro.

PREFACE

This report describes a system for dealing with messages transmitted on a computer. Such messages might originate with other users of the same computer or might come from an outside source through a network to which the user's computer is connected. Such computer-based message systems are becoming increasingly widely used, both within and outside the Department of Defense.

The message handling system *MH* was developed for two reasons. One was to investigate some research ideas concerning how a message system might take advantage of the architecture of the UNIX time-sharing operating system for Digital Equipment Corporation PDP-11 and VAX computers, and the special features of UNIX's command-level interface with the user (the "shell"). The other reason was to provide a better and more adaptable base than that of conventional designs on which to build a command and control message system. The effort has succeeded in both regards, although this report mainly describes the message system itself and how it fits in with UNIX.

The present report should be of interest to three groups of readers. First, it is a complete reference manual for the users of *MH*. Second, it should be of interest to those who have a general knowledge of computer-based message systems, both in civilian and military applications. Finally, it should be of interest to those who build large subsystems that interface with users, since it illustrates a new approach to such interfaces.

The original *MH* system was developed by Bruce Borden, using an approach suggested by Stockton Gaines and Norman Shapiro. Valuable assistance was provided by Phyllis Kantar in the later stages of the system's implementation. Several colleagues contributed to the ideas included in this system, particularly Robert Anderson and David Crocker. In addition, valuable experience in message systems, and a valuable source of ideas, was available to us in the form of a previous message system for UNIX called MS, designed at Rand by David Crocker.

This report was originally prepared as part of the Rand project entitled "Data Automation Research", sponsored by Project AIR FORCE.

SUMMARY

Electronic communication of text messages is becoming commonplace. Computer-based message systems–software packages that provide tools for dealing with messages–are used in many contexts. In particular, message systems are becoming increasingly important in command and control and intelligence applications.

This report describes a message handling system called *MH*. This system provides the user with tools to compose, send, receive, store, retrieve, forward, and reply to messages. *MH* has been built on the UNIX time-sharing system, a popular operating system developed for the DEC PDP-11 and VAX classes of computers.

A complete description of *MH* is given for users of the system. For those who do not intend to use the system, this description gives a general idea of what a message system is like. The system involves some new ideas about how large subsystems can be constructed.

The interesting and unusual features of *MH* include the following: The user command interface to *MH* is the UNIX "shell" (the standard UNIX command interpreter). Each separable component of message handling, such as message composition or message display, is a separate command. Each program is driven from and updates a private user environment, which is stored as a file between program invocations. This private environment also contains information to "custom tailor" *MH* to the individual's tastes. *MH* stores each message as a separate file under UNIX, and it utilizes the tree-structured UNIX file system to organize groups of files within separate directories or "folders". All of the UNIX facilities for dealing with files and directories, such as renaming, copying, deleting, cataloging, off-line printing, etc., are applicable to messages and directories of messages (folders). Thus, important capabilities needed in a message system are available in *MH* without the need (often seen in other message systems) for code that duplicates the facilities of the supporting operating system. It also allows users familiar with the shell to use *MH* with minimal effort.

1. INTRODUCTION

Although people can travel cross-country in hours and can reach others by telephone in seconds, communications still depend heavily upon paper, most of which is distributed through the mails.

There are several major reasons for this continued dependence on written documents. First, a written document may be proofread and corrected prior to its distribution, giving the author complete control over his words. Thus, a written document is better than a telephone conversation in this respect. Second, a carefully written document is far less likely to be misinterpreted or poorly translated than a phone conversation. Third, a signature offers reasonable verification of authorship, which cannot be provided with media such as telegrams.

However, the need for fast, accurate, and reproducible document distribution is obvious. One solution in widespread use is the telefax. Another that is rapidly gaining popularity is electronic mail. Electronic mail is similar to telefax in that the data to be sent are digitized, transmitted via phone lines, and turned back into a document at the receiver. The advantage of electronic mail is in its compression factor. Whereas a telefax must scan a page in very fine lines and send all of the black and white information, electronic mail assigns characters fixed codes which can be transmitted as a few bits of information. Telefax presently has the advantage of being able to transmit an arbitrary page, including pictures, but electronic mail is beginning to deal with this problem. Electronic mail also integrates well with current directions in office automation, allowing documents prepared with sophisticated equipment at one site to be quickly transferred and printed at another site.

Currently, most electronic mail is intraorganizational, with mail transfer remaining within one computer. As computer networking becomes more common, however, it is becoming more feasible to communicate with anyone whose computer can be linked to your own via a network.

The pioneering efforts on general-purpose electronic mail were by organizations using the DoD ARPAnet[1]. The capability to send messages between computers existed before the ARPAnet was developed, but it was used only in limited ways. With the advent of the ARPAnet, tools began to be developed which made it convenient for individuals or organizations to distribute messages over broad geographic areas, using diverse computer facilities. The interest and activity in message systems has now reached such proportions that steps have been taken within the DoD to coordinate and unify the development of military message systems. The use of electronic mail is expected to increase dramatically in the next few years. The utility of such systems in the command and control and intelligence environments is clear, and applications in these areas will probably lead the way. As the costs for sending and handling electronic messages continue their rapid decrease, such uses can be expected to spread rapidly into other areas and, of course, will not be limited to the DoD.

A message system provides tools that help users (individuals or organizations) deal with messages in various ways. Messages must be composed, sent, received, stored, retrieved, forwarded, and replied to. Today's best interactive computer systems provide a variety of word-processing and information handling capabilities. The message handling facilities should be well integrated with the rest of the system, so as to be a graceful extension of overall system capability.

The message system described in this report, *MH*, provides most of the features that can be found in other message systems and also incorporates some new ones. It has been built on the UNIX time-sharing system[2], a popular operating system for the DEC PDP-11[1] and VAX-11 classes of computers. A "secure" operating system similar to UNIX is currently being developed[3], and that system will also run *MH*.

[1] PDP and VAX are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

This report provides a complete description of *MH* and thus may serve as a user's manual, although parts of the report will be of interest to non-users as well. Sections 2 and 3, the Overview and Tutorial, present the key ideas of *MH* and will give those not familiar with message systems an idea of what such systems are like.

MH consists of a set of commands which use some special files and conventions. The final section is divided into three parts. The first part covers the information a user needs to know in addition to the commands. Then, each of the *MH* commands is described in detail. Finally, other obscure details are revealed. A summary of the commands is given in Appendix A, and the syntax of message sequences is given in Appendix B.

A novel approach has been taken in the design of *MH*. Instead of creating a large subsystem that appears as a single command to the user (such as MS[4]), *MH* is a collection of separate commands which are run as separate programs. The file and directory system of UNIX are used directly. Messages are stored as individual files (datasets), and collections of them are grouped into directories. In contrast, most other message systems store messages in a complicated data structure within a monolithic file. With the *MH* approach, UNIX commands can be interleaved with commands invoking the functions of the message handler. Conversely, existing UNIX commands can be used in connection with messages. For example, all the usual UNIX editing, text-formatting, and printing facilities can be applied directly to individual messages. MH, therefore, consists of a relatively small amount of new code; it makes extensive use of other UNIX software to provide the capabilities found in other message systems.

2. OVERVIEW

There are three main aspects of *MH* : the way messages are stored (the message database), the user's profile (which directs how certain actions of the message handler take place), and the commands for dealing with messages.

Under *MH*, each message is stored as a separate file. A user can take any action with a message that he could with an ordinary file in UNIX. A UNIX directory in which messages are stored is called a folder. Each folder contains some standard entries to support the message-handling functions. The messages in a folder have numerical names. These folders (directories) are entries in a particular directory path, described in the user profile, through which *MH* can find message folders. Using the UNIX "link" facility, it is possible for one copy of a message to be "filed" in more than one folder, providing a message index facility. Also, using the UNIX tree-structured file system, it is possible to have a folder within a folder, nested arbitrarily deep, and have the full power of the *MH* commands available.

Each user of *MH* has a user profile, a file in his **$HOME** (initial login) directory called *.mh_profile*. This profile contains several pieces of information used by the *MH* commands: a path name to the directory that contains the message folders and parameters that tailor *MH* commands to the individual user's requirements. There is also another file, called the user context, which contains information concerning which folder the user last referenced (the "current" folder). It also contains most of the necessary state information concerning how the user is dealing with his messages, enabling *MH* to be implemented as a set of individual UNIX commands, in contrast to the usual approach of a monolithic subsystem.

In *MH*, incoming mail is appended to the end of a file in a system spooling area for the user. This area is called the mail drop directory, and the file is called the user's mail drop. Normally when the user logins in, s/he is informed of new mail (or the *MH* program *msgchk* may be run). The user adds the new messages to his/her collection of *MH* messages by invoking the command *inc*. The *inc* (incorporate) command adds the new messages to a folder called "inbox", assigning them names which are consecutive integers starting with the next highest integer available in inbox. *inc* also produces a *scan* summary of the messages thus incorporated. A folder can be compacted into a single file, for easy storage, by using the *packf* command. Also, messages within a folder can be sorted by date and time with the *sortm* command.

There are four commands for examining the messages in a folder: *show*, *prev*, *next*, and *scan*. The *show* command displays a message in a folder, *prev* displays the message preceding the current message, and *next* displays the message following the current message. *MH* lets the user choose the program that displays individual messages. A special program, *mhl*, can be used to display messages according to the user's preferences. The *scan* command summarizes the messages in a folder, normally producing one line per message, showing who the message is from, the date, the subject, etc.

The user may move a message from one folder to another with the command *refile*. Messages may be removed from a folder by means of the command *rmm*. In addition, a user may query what the current folder is and may specify that a new folder become the current folder, through the command *folder*. All folders may be summarized with the *folders* command. A message folder (or subfolder) may be removed by means of the command *rmf*.

A set of messages based on content may be selected by use of the command *pick*. This command searches through messages in a folder and selects those that match a given set of criteria. These messages are then bound to a "sequence" name for use with other *MH* commands. The *mark* command manipulates these sequences.

There are five commands enabling the user to create new messages and send them: *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, *repl*, and *send*. The *comp* command provides the facility for the user to compose a new message; *dist* redistributes mail to additional addressees; *forw* enables the user to forward messages; and *repl* facilitates the generation of a reply to an incoming message. The last three commands may optionally annotate the original message. Messages may be arbitrarily annotated with the *anno* command. Once a draft has been constructed by one of the four above composition programs, a user–specifiable program is run to query the user as to the disposition of the draft prior to sending. *MH* provides the simple *whatnow* program to start users off. If a message is not sent directly by one of these commands, it may be sent at a later time using the command *send*. *MH* allows the use of any UNIX editor when composing a message. For rapid entry, a special editor, *prompter*, is provided. For programs, a special mail-sending program, *mhmail*, is provided.

MH supports a personal aliasing facility which gives users the capability to considerably shorten address typein and use meaningful names for addresses. The *ali* program can be used to query *MH* as to the expansion of a list of aliases. After composing a message, but prior to sending, the *whom* command can be used to determine exactly who a message would go to.

MH provides a natural interface for telling the user's shell the names of *MH* messages and folders. The *mhpath* program achieves this capability.

The *burst* command can be used to "shred" digests of messages into individual messages.

All of the elements summarized above are described in more detail in the following sections. Many of the normal facilities of UNIX provide additional capabilities for dealing with messages in various ways. For example, it is possible to print messages on the line-printer without requiring any additional code within *MH* . Using standard UNIX facilities, any terminal output can be redirected to a file for repeated or future viewing. In general, the flexibility and capabilities of the UNIX interface with the user are preserved as a result of the integration of *MH* into the UNIX structure.

3. TUTORIAL

This tutorial provides a brief introduction to the *MH* commands. It should be sufficient to allow the user to read his mail, do some simple manipulations of it, and create and send messages.

A message has two major pieces: the header and the body. The body consists of the text of the message (whatever you care to type in). It follows the header and is separated from it by an empty line. (When you compose a message, the form that appears on your terminal shows a line of dashes after the header. This is for convenience and is replaced by an empty line when the message is sent.) The header is composed of several components, including the subject of the message and the person to whom it is addressed. Each component starts with a name and a colon; components must not start with a blank. The text of the component may take more than one line, but each continuation line must start with a blank. Messages typically have "To:", "cc:", and "Subject:" components. When composing a message, you should include the "To:" and "Subject:" components; the "cc:" (for people you want to send copies to) is not necessary.

The basic *MH* commands are *inc*, *scan*, *show*, *next*, *prev*, *rmm*, *comp*, and *repl*. These are described below.

inc

When you get the message "You have mail", type the command *inc*. You will get a "scan listing" such as:

```
 7+   7/13 Cas      revival of measurement work
 8    10/ 9 Norm     NBS people and publications
 9    11/26 To:norm  question ≪Are there any functions
```

This shows the messages you received since the last time you executed this command (*inc* adds these new messages to your inbox folder). You can see this list again, plus a list of any other messages you have, by using the *scan* command.

scan

The scan listing shows the message number, followed by the date and the sender. (If you are the sender, the addressee in the "To:" component is displayed. You may send yourself a message by including your name among the "To:" or "cc:" addressees.) It also shows the message's subject; if the subject is short, the first part of the body of the message is included after the characters ≪.

show

This command shows the current message, that is, the first one of the new messages after an *inc*. If the message is not specified by name (number), it is generally the last message referred to by an *MH* command. For example,

show 5 will show message 5.

You can use the show command to copy a message or print a message.

show > x	will copy the message to file x.
show | lpr	will print the message, using the *lpr* command.
next	will show the message that follows the current message.
prev	will show the message previous to the current message.
rmm	will remove the current message.
rmm 3	will remove message 3.

comp

The *comp* command puts you in the editor to write or edit a message. Fill in or delete the "To:", "cc:", and "Subject:" fields, as appropriate, and type the body of the message. Then exit normally from the editor. You will be asked "What now?". Type a carriage return to see the options. Typing **send** will cause the message to be sent; typing **quit** will cause an exit from *comp*, with the message draft saved.

If you quit without sending the message, it will be saved in a file called <name>/Mail/draft (where <name> is your **$HOME** directory). You can resume editing the message later with "comp –use"; or you can send the message later, using the *send* command.

comp –editor prompter

This command uses a different editor and is useful for preparing "quick and dirty" messages. It prompts you for each component of the header. Type the information for that component, or type a carriage return to omit the component. After that, type the body of the message. Backspacing is the only form of editing allowed with this editor. When the body is complete, type a carriage return followed by <EOT> (usually <CTRL-D>). This completes the initial preparation of the message; from then on, use the same procedures as with *comp* (above).

repl
repl n

This command makes up an initial message form with a header that is appropriate for replying to an existing message. The message being answered is the current message if no message number is mentioned, or n if a number is specified. After the header is completed, you can finish the message as in *comp* (above).

This is enough information to get you going using *MH*. There are more commands, and the commands described here have more features. Subsequent sections explain *MH* in complete detail. The system is quite powerful if you want to use its sophisticated features, but the foregoing commands suffice for sending and receiving messages.

There are numerous additional capabilities you may wish to explore. For example, the *pick* command will select a subset of messages based on specified criteria such as sender and/or subject. Groups of messages may be designated, as described in Sec. IV, under **Message Naming**. The file *.mh_profile* can be used to tailor your use of the message system to your needs and preferences, as described in Sec. IV, under **The User Profile**. In general, you may learn additional features of the system selectively, according to your requirements, by studying the relevant sections of this manual. There is no need to learn all the details of the system at once.

4. DETAILED DESCRIPTION

This section describes the *MH* system in detail, including the components of the user profile, the conventions for message naming, and some of the other *MH* conventions. Readers who are generally familiar with computer systems will be able to follow the principal ideas, although some details may be meaningful only to those familiar with UNIX.

THE USER PROFILE

The first time an *MH* command is issued by a new user, the system prompts for a "Path" and creates an *MH* "profile".

Each *MH* user has a profile which contains tailoring information for each individual program. Other profile entries control the *MH* path (where folders and special files are kept), folder and message protections, editor selection, and default arguments for each *MH* program. Each user of *MH* also has a context file which contains current state information for the *MH* package (the location of the context file is kept in the user's *MH* directory, or may be named in the user profile). When a folder becomes the current folder, it is recorded in the user's context. (Other state information is kept in the context file, see the manual entry for *mh-profile* (5) for more details.) In general, the term "profile entry" refer to entries in either the profile or context file. Users of *MH* needn't worry about the distinction, *MH* handles these things automatically.

The *MH* profile is stored in the file *.mh_profile* in the user's **$HOME** directory[1]. It has the format of a message without any body. That is, each profile entry is on one line, with a keyword followed by a colon (:) followed by text particular to the keyword.

☛ *This file must not have blank lines.*

The keywords may have any combination of upper and lower case. (See the information of *mh-mail* later on in this manual for a description of message formats.)

For the average *MH* user, the only profile entry of importance is "Path". Path specifies a directory in which *MH* folders and certain files such as "draft" are found. The argument to this keyword must be a legal UNIX path that names an existing directory. If this path is not absolute (i.e., does not begin with a /), it will be presumed to start from the user's **$HOME** directory. All folder and message references within *MH* will relate to this path unless full path names are used.

Message protection defaults to 644, and folder protection to 711. These may be changed by profile entries "Msg-Protect" and "Folder-Protect", respectively. The argument to these keywords is an octal number which is used as the UNIX file mode[2].

When an *MH* program starts running, it looks through the user's profile for an entry with a keyword matching the program's name. For example, when *comp* is run, it looks for a "comp" profile entry. If one is found, the text of the profile entry is used as the default switch setting until all defaults are overridden by explicit switches passed to the program as arguments. Thus the profile entry "comp: -form standard.list" would direct *comp* to use the file "standard.list" as the message skeleton. If an explicit form switch is given to the *comp* command, it will override the switch obtained from the profile.

[1] By defining the environment variable **$MH**, you can specify an alternate profile to be used by *MH* commands.

[2] See *chmod* (1) in the *UNIX Programmer's Manual* [5].

In UNIX, a program may exist under several names, either by linking or aliasing. The actual invocation name is used by an *MH* program when scanning for its profile defaults[3]. Thus, each *MH* program may have several names by which it can be invoked, and each name may have a different set of default switches. For example, if *comp* is invoked by the name *icomp*, the profile entry "icomp" will control the default switches for this invocation of the *comp* program. This provides a powerful definitional facility for commonly used switch settings.

The default editor for editing within *comp*, *repl*, *forw*, and *dist*, is usually *prompter*, but might be something else at your site, such as */usr/ucb/ex* or */bin/e*. A different editor may be used by specifying the profile entry "Editor: ". The argument to "Editor" is the name of an executable program or shell command file which can be found via the user's $PATH defined search path, excluding the current directory. The "Editor:" profile specification may in turn be overridden by a '–editor <editor>' profile switch associated with *comp*, *repl*, *forw*, or *dist*. Finally, an explicit editor switch specified with any of these four commands will have ultimate precedence.

During message composition, more than one editor may be used. For example, one editor (such as *prompter*) may be used initially, and a second editor may be invoked later to revise the message being composed (see the discussion of *comp* in Section 5 for details). A profile entry "<lasteditor>–next: <editor>" specifies the name of the editor to be used after a particular editor. Thus "comp: –e prompter" causes the initial text to be collected by *prompter*, and the profile entry "prompter–next: ed" names ed as the editor to be invoked for the next round of editing.

Some of the *MH* commands, such as *show*, can be used on message folders owned by others, if those folders are readable. However, you cannot write in someone else's folder. All the *MH* command actions not requiring write permission may be used with a "read-only" folder.

Table 1 lists examples of some of the currently defined profile entries, typical arguments, and the programs that reference the entries.

[3] Unfortunately, the shell does not preserve aliasing information when calling a program, hence if a program is invoked by an alias different than its name, the program will examine the profile entry for its name, not the alias that the user invoked it as. The correct solution is to create a (soft) link in your *$HOME/bin* directory to the *MH* program of your choice. By giving this link a different name, you can use an alternate set of defaults for the command.

Table 1

PROFILE COMPONENTS

Keyword and Argument	*MH* Programs that use Component
Path: Mail	All
Current-Folder: inbox	Most
Editor: /usr/ucb/ex	*comp, dist, forw, repl*
Msg-Protect: 644	*inc*
Folder-Protect: 711	*inc, pick, refile*
<program>: default switches	All
prompter-next: ed	*comp, dist, forw, repl*

Path should be present. Current-Folder is maintained automatically by many *MH* commands (see the **Context** sections of the individual commands in Sec. IV). All other entries are optional, defaulting to the values described above.

MESSAGE NAMING

Messages may be referred to explicitly or implicitly when using *MH* commands. A formal syntax of message names is given in Appendix B, but the following description should be sufficient for most *MH* users. Some details of message naming that apply only to certain commands are included in the description of those commands.

Most of the *MH* commands accept arguments specifying one or more folders, and one or more messages to operate on. The use of the word "msg" as an argument to a command means that exactly one message name may be specified. A message name may be a number, such as 1, 33, or 234, or it may be one of the "reserved" message names: first, last, prev, next, and cur. (As a shorthand, a period (.) is equivalent to cur.) The meanings of these names are straightforward: "first" is the first message in the folder; "last" is the last message in the folder; "prev" is the message numerically previous to the current message; "next" is the message numerically following the current message; "cur" (or ".") is the current message in the folder. In addition, *MH* supports user-defined-sequences; see the description of the *mark* command for more information.

The default in commands that take a "msg" argument is always "cur".

The word "msgs" indicates that several messages may be specified. Such a specification consists of several message designations separated by spaces. A message designation is either a message name or a message range. A message range is a specification of the form name1-name2 or name1:n, where name1 and name2 are message names and n is an integer. The first form designates all the messages from name1 to name2 inclusive; this must be a non-empty range. The second form specifies up to n messages, starting with name1 if name1 is a number, or first, cur, or next, and ending with name1 if name1 is last or prev. This interpretation of n is overridden if n is preceded by a plus sign or a minus sign; +n always means up to n messages starting with name1, and -n always means up to n messages ending with name1. Repeated specifications of the same message have the same effect as a single specification of the message. Examples of specifications are:

1 5 7–11 22
first 6 8 next
first–10
last:5

The message name "all" is a shorthand for "first–last", indicating all of the messages in the folder.

In commands that accept "msgs" arguments, the default is either cur or all, depending on which makes more sense.

In all of the *MH* commands, a plus sign preceding an argument indicates a folder name. Thus, "+inbox" is the name of the user's standard inbox. If an explicit folder argument is given to an *MH* command, it will become the current folder (that is, the "Current-Folder:" entry in the user's profile will be changed to this folder). In the case of the *refile* command, which can have multiple output folders, a new source folder (other than the default current folder) is specified by '–src +folder'.

OTHER MH CONVENTIONS

One very powerful feature of *MH* is that the *MH* commands may be issued from any current directory, and the proper path to the appropriate folder(s) will be taken from the user's profile. If the *MH* path is not appropriate for a specific folder or file, the automatic prepending of the *MH* path can be avoided by beginning a folder or file name with /, or with ./ or ../ component. Thus any specific absolute path may be specified along with any path relative to the current working directory.

Arguments to the various programs may be given in any order, with the exception of a few switches whose arguments must follow immediately, such as '–src +folder' for *refile*.

Whenever an *MH* command prompts the user, the valid options will be listed in response to a <RETURN>. (The first of the listed options is the default if end-of-file is encountered, such as from a command file.) A valid response is any *unique* abbreviation of one of the listed options.

Standard UNIX documentation conventions are used in this report to describe *MH* command syntax. Arguments enclosed in brackets ([ ]) are optional; exactly one of the arguments enclosed within braces ({ }) must be specified, and all other arguments are required. The use of ellipsis dots (...) indicates zero or more repetitions of the previous item. For example, "+folder ..." would indicate that one or more "+folder" arguments is required and "[+folder ...]" indicates that 0 or more "+folder" arguments may be given.

MH departs from UNIX standards by using switches that consist of more than one character, e.g. '–header'. To minimize typing, only a unique abbreviation of a switch need be typed; thus, for '–header', '–hea' is probably sufficient, depending on the other switches the command accepts. Each *MH* program accepts the switch '–help' (which **must** be spelled out fully) and produces a syntax description and a list of switches. In the list of switches, parentheses indicate required characters. For example, all '–help' switches will appear as "–(help)", indicating that no abbreviation is accepted. Furthermore, the '–help' switch tells the version of the *MH* program you invoked.

Many *MH* switches have both on and off forms, such as '–format' and '–noformat'. In many of the descriptions which follow, only one form is defined; the other form, often used to nullify profile switch settings, is assumed to be the opposite.

MH COMMANDS

The *MH* package comprises several programs:

ali (1)	– list mail aliases
anno (1)	– annotate messages
burst (1)	– explode digests into messages
comp (1)	– compose a message
dist (1)	– redistribute a message to additional addresses
folder (1)	– set/list current folder/message
folders (1)	– list all folders
forw (1)	– forward messages
inc (1)	– incorporate new mail
mark (1)	– mark messages
mhl (1)	– produce formatted listings of MH messages
mhmail (1)	– send or read mail
mhook (1)	– MH receive–mail hooks
mhpath (1)	– print full pathnames of MH messages and folders
msgchk (1)	– check for messages
msh (1)	– MH shell (and BBoard reader)
next (1)	– show the next message
packf (1)	– compress a folder into a single file
pick (1)	– select messages by content
prev (1)	– show the previous message
prompter (1)	– prompting editor front end
rcvstore (1)	– incorporate new mail asynchronously
refile (1)	– file messages in other folders
repl (1)	– reply to a message
rmf (1)	– remove folder
rmm (1)	– remove messages
scan (1)	– produce a one line per message scan listing
send (1)	– send a message
show (1)	– show (list) messages
sortm (1)	– sort messages
vmh (1)	– visual front–end to MH
whatnow (1)	– prompting front–end for send
whom (1)	– report to whom a message would go

These programs are described below. The form of the descriptions conforms to the standard form for the description of UNIX commands.

NAME

ali – list mail aliases

SYNOPSIS

ali [–alias aliasfile] [–list] [–nolist] [–normalize] [–nonormalize] [–user] [–nouser] aliases ...
[–help]

DESCRIPTION

Ali searches the named mail alias files for each of the given *aliases*. It creates a list of addresses for those *aliases*, and writes that list on standard output. If the '–list' option is specified, each address appears on a separate line; otherwise, the addresses are separated by commas and printed on as few lines as possible.

The '–user' option directs *ali* to perform its processing in an inverted fashion: instead of listing the addresses that each given alias expands to, *ali* will list the aliases that expand to each given address. If the '–normalize' switch is given, *ali* will try to track down the official hostname of the address.

Each *alias* is processed as described in *mh–alias* (5).

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
/etc/passwd	List of users
/etc/group	List of groups

Profile Components

None

See Also

mh–alias(5)

Defaults

'–alias /usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases'
'–nolist'
'–nonormalize'
'–nouser'

Context

None

Bugs

The '–user' option with '–nonormalize' is not entirely accurate, as it does not replace local nicknames for hosts with their official site names.

NAME

anno – annotate messages

SYNOPSIS

anno [+folder] [msgs] [–component field] [–inplace] [–noinplace] [–text body] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Anno annotates the specified messages in the named folder using the field and body. Annotation is optionally performed by *dist*, *forw*, and *repl*, to keep track of your distribution of, forwarding of, and replies to a message. By using *anno*, you can perform arbitrary annotations of your own. Each message selected will be annotated with the lines

field: date
field: body

The '–inplace' switch causes annotation to be done in place in order to preserve links to the annotated message.

The field specified should be a valid 822-style message field name, which means that it should consist of alphanumerics (or dashes) only. The body specified is arbitrary text.

If a '–component field' is not specified when *anno* is invoked, *anno* will prompt the user for the name of field for the annotation.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

dist (1), forw (1), repl (1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to cur
'–noinplace'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. The first message annotated will become the current message.

NAME

burst - explode digests into messages

SYNOPSIS

burst [+folder] [msgs] [-inplace] [-noinplace] [-quiet] [-noquiet] [-verbose] [-noverbose] [-help]

DESCRIPTION

Burst considers the specified messages in the named folder to be Internet digests, and explodes them in that folder.

If '-inplace' is given, each digest is replaced by the "table of contents" for the digest (the original digest is removed). *Burst* then renumbers all of the messages following the digest in the folder to make room for each of the messages contained within the digest. These messages are placed immediately after the digest.

If '-noinplace' is given, each digest is preserved, no table of contents is produced, and the messages contained within the digest are placed at the end of the folder. Other messages are not tampered with in any way.

The '-quiet' switch directs *burst* to be silent about reporting messages that are not in digest format.

The '-verbose' switch directs *burst* to tell the user the general actions that it is taking to explode the digest.

It turns out that *burst* works equally well on forwarded messages and blind-carbon-copies as on Internet digests, provided that the former two were generated by *forw* or *send*.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder
Msg-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new message

See Also

Proposed Standard for Message Encapsulation (aka RFC-934), inc(1), msh(1), pack(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to cur
'-noinplace'
'-noquiet'
'-noverbose'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. If '–inplace' is given, then the first message burst becomes the current message. This leaves the context ready for a *show* of the table of contents of the digest, and a *next* to see the first message of the digest. If '–noinplace' is given, then the first message extracted from the first digest burst becomes the current message. This leaves the context in a similar, but not identical, state to the context achieved when using '–inplace'.

Bugs

The *burst* program enforces a limit on the number of messages which may be *burst* from a single message. This number is on the order of 1000 messages. There is usually no limit on the number of messages which may reside in the folder after the *burst*ing.

Although *burst* uses a sophisticated algorithm to determine where one encapsulated message ends and another begins, not all digestifying programs use an encapsulation algorithm. In degenerate cases, this usually results in *burst* finding an encapsulation boundary prematurely and splitting a single encapsulated message into two or more messages. These erroneous digestifying programs should be fixed.

Furthermore, any text which appears after the last encapsulated message is not placed in a seperate message by *burst*. In the case of digestified messages, this text is usally an "End of digest" string. As a result of this possibly un–friendly behavior on the part of *burst*, note that when the '–inplace' option is used, this trailing information is lost. In practice, this is not a problem since correspondents usually place remarks in text prior to the first encapsulated message, and this information is not lost.

NAME

comp – compose a message

SYNOPSIS

comp [+folder] [msg] [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [–editor editor] [–noedit] [–file file] [–form formfile] [–use] [–nouse] [–whatnowproc program] [–nowhatnowproc] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Comp is used to create a new message to be mailed. It copies a message form to the draft being composed and then invokes an editor on the draft (unless '–noedit' is given, in which case the initial edit is suppressed).

The default message form contains the following elements:

To:
cc:
Subject:

If the file named "components" exists in the user's MH directory, it will be used instead of this form. The file specified by '–form formfile' will be used if given. You may also start *comp* using the contents of an existing message as the form. If you supply either a '+folder' or 'msg' argument, that message will be used as the form. You may not supply both a '–form formfile' and a '+folder' or 'msg' argument. The line of dashes or a blank line must be left between the header and the body of the message for the message to be identified properly when it is sent (see *send* (1)). The switch '–use' directs *comp* to continue editing an already started message. That is, if a *comp* (or *dist*, *repl*, or *forw*) is terminated without sending the draft, the draft can be edited again via "comp –use".

If the draft already exists, *comp* will ask you as to the disposition of the draft. A reply of **quit** will abort *comp*, leaving the draft intact; **replace** will replace the existing draft with the appropriate form; **list** will display the draft; **use** will use the draft for further composition; and **refile +folder** will file the draft in the given folder, and give you a new draft with the appropriate form. (The '+folder' argument to **refile** is required.)

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

The '–file file' switch says to use the named file as the message draft.

Upon exiting from the editor, *comp* will invoke the *whatnow* program. See *whatnow* (1) for a discussion of available options. The invocation of this program can be inhibited by using the '–nowhatnowproc' switch. (In truth of fact, it is the *whatnow* program which starts the initial edit. Hence, '–nowhatnowproc' will prevent any edit from occurring.)

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/components	The message skeleton
or <mh–dir>/components	Rather than the standard skeleton
$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
<mh–dir>/draft	The draft file

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Draft-Folder:	To find the default draft-folder
Editor:	To override the default editor
Msg-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new message (draft)
fileproc:	Program to refile the message
whatnowproc:	Program to ask the "What now?" questions

See Also

dist(1), forw(1), repl(1), send(1), whatnow(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msg' defaults to the current message
'-nodraftfolder'
'-nouse'

Context

None

Bugs

If *whatnowproc* is *whatnow*, then *comp* uses a built-in *whatnow*, it does not actually run the *whatnow* program. Hence, if you define your own *whatnowproc*, don't call it *whatnow* since *comp* won't run it.

NAME

dist – redistribute a message to additional addresses

SYNOPSIS

dist [+folder] [msg] [–annotate] [–noannotate] [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [–editor editor] [–noedit] [–form formfile] [–inplace] [–noinplace] [–whatnowproc program] [–nowhatnowproc] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Dist is similar to *forw*. It prepares the specified message for redistribution to addresses that (presumably) are not on the original address list.

The default message form contains the following elements:

Resent-To:
Resent-cc:

If the file named "distcomps" exists in the user's MH directory, it will be used instead of this form. In either case, the file specified by '–form formfile' will be used if given. The form used will be prepended to the message being resent.

If the draft already exists, *dist* will ask you as to the disposition of the draft. A reply of **quit** will abort *dist*, leaving the draft intact; **replace** will replace the existing draft with a blank skeleton; and **list** will display the draft.

Only those addresses in "Resent–To:", "Resent–cc:", and "Resent–Bcc:" will be sent. Also, a "Resent–Fcc: folder" will be honored (see *send* (1)). Note that with *dist*, the draft should contain only "Resent–xxx:" fields and no body. The headers and the body of the original message are copied to the draft when the message is sent. Use care in constructing the headers for the redistribution.

If the '–annotate' switch is given, the message being distributed will be annotated with the lines:

Resent: date
Resent: addrs

where each address list contains as many lines as required. This annotation will be done only if the message is sent directly from *dist*. If the message is not sent immediately from *dist*, "comp –use" may be used to re–edit and send the constructed message, but the annotations won't take place. The '–inplace' switch causes annotation to be done in place in order to preserve links to the annotated message.

See *comp* (1) for a description of the '–editor' and '–noedit' switches. Note that while in the editor, the message being resent is available through a link named "@" (assuming the default *whatnowproc*). In addition, the actual pathname of the message is stored in the environment variable **$editalt**, and the pathname of the folder containing the message is stored in the environment variable **$mhfolder**.

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

Upon exiting from the editor, *dist* will invoke the *whatnow* program. See *whatnow* (1) for a discussion of available options. The invocation of this program can be inhibited by using the '–nowhatnowproc' switch. (In truth of fact, it is the *whatnow* program which starts the initial edit. Hence, '–nowhatnowproc' will prevent any edit from occurring.)

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/distcomps	The message skeleton
or <mh–dir>/distcomps	Rather than the standard skeleton
$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
<mh–dir>/draft	The draft file

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder
Draft–Folder:	To find the default draft–folder
Editor:	To override the default editor
fileproc:	Program to refile the message
whatnowproc:	Program to ask the "What now?" questions

See Also

comp(1), forw(1), repl(1), send(1), whatnow(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msg' defaults to cur
'–noannotate'
'–nodraftfolder'
'–noinplace'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. The message distributed will become the current message.

History

Dist originally used headers of the form "Distribute–xxx:" instead of "Resent–xxx:". In order to conform with the ARPA Internet standard, RFC–822, the "Resent–xxx:" form is now used. *Dist* will recognize "Distribute–xxx:" type headers and automatically convert them to "Resent–xxx:".

Bugs

Dist does not *rigorously* check the message being distributed for adherence to the transport standard, but *post* called by *send* does. The *post* program will balk (and rightly so) at poorly formatted messages, and *dist* won't correct things for you.

If *whatnowproc* is *whatnow*, then *dist* uses a built–in *whatnow*, it does not actually run the *whatnow* program. Hence, if you define your own *whatnowproc*, don't call it *whatnow* since *dist* won't run it.

If your current working directory is not writable, the link named "@" is not available.

NAME

folder, folders – set/list current folder/message

SYNOPSIS

folder [+folder] [msg] [–all] [–fast] [–nofast] [–header] [–noheader] [–pack] [–nopack] [–recurse] [–norecurse] [–total] [–nototal] [–print] [–noprint] [–list] [–nolist] [–push] [–pop] [–help]

folders

DESCRIPTION

Since the *MH* environment is the shell, it is easy to lose track of the current folder from day to day.

When *folder* is given the '–print' switch (the default), the current folder and/or message may be set, or all folders may be listed. When a '+folder' argument is given, this corresponds to a "cd" operation in the *CShell*; when no '+folder' argument is given, this corresponds roughly to a "pwd" operation in the *CShell*.

Folder will list the current folder, the number of messages in it, the range of the messages (low–high), and the current message within the folder, and will flag extra files if they exist. An example of the output is:

```
inbox+          has  16 messages (  3– 22); cur=  5.
```

If a '+folder' and/or 'msg' are specified, they will become the current folder and/or message. Specifying '–all' will produce a line for each folder in the user's MH directory, sorted alphabetically. These folders are preceded by the read–only folders, which occur as "atr–cur–" entries in the user's *MH* context. For example,

```
Folder                # of messages ( range )  cur msg (other files)
/fsd/rs/m/tacc      has  35 messages (  1– 35); cur= 23.
/rnd/phyl/Mail/EP   has  82 messages (  1–108); cur= 82.
ff                  has  no messages.
inbox+              has  16 messages (  3– 22); cur=  5.
mh                  has  76 messages (  1– 76); cur= 70.
notes               has   2 messages (  1–  2); cur=  1.
ucom                has 124 messages (  1–124); cur=  6; (others).
                TOTAL= 339 messages in 7 folders
```

The "+" after inbox indicates that it is the current folder. The "(others)" indicates that the folder 'ucom' has files which aren't messages. These files may either be sub–folders, or files that don't belong under the MH file naming scheme.

The header is output if either an '–all' or a '–header' switch is specified; it is suppressed by '–noheader'. Also, if *folder* is invoked by a name ending with "s" (e.g., *folders*), '–all' is assumed. A '–total' switch will produce only the summary line.

If a '+folder' and/or 'msg' is given along with the '–all' switch, *folder* will, in addition to setting the current folder and/or message, list the top–level folders for the current folder (with '–norecurse') or list all folders under the current folder recursively (with '–recurse').

If '–fast' is given, only the folder name (or names in the case of '–all') will be listed. (This is faster because the folders need not be read.)

The '–pack' switch will compress the message names in a folder, removing holes in message numbering.

The '–recurse' switch will list each folder recursively. Use of this option effectively defeats the speed enhancement of the '–fast' option, since each folder must be searched for subfolders. Nevertheless, the combination of these options is useful.

If the specified (or default) folder doesn't exist, the user will be queried if the folder should be created. (This is the easy way to create an empty folder for use later.)

The '–push' switch directs *folder* to push the current folder onto the *folder–stack*, and make the '+folder' argument the current folder. If '+folder' is not given, the current folder and the top of the *folder–stack* are exchanged. This corresponds to the "pushd" operation in the *CShell*.

The '–pop' switch directs *folder* to discard the top of the *folder–stack*, after setting the current folder to that value. No '+folder' argument is allowed. This corresponds to the "popd" operation in the *CShell*. The '–push' switch and the '–pop' switch are mutually exclusive: the last occurrence of either one overrides any previous occurrence of the other.

The '–list' switch directs *folder* to list the contents of the *folder–stack*. No '+folder' argument is allowed. After a successful '–push' or '–pop', the '–list' action is taken. This corresponds to the "dirs" operation in the *CShell*.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder
Folder–Protect:	To set mode when creating a new folder
Folder–Stack:	To determine the folder stack
lsproc:	Program to list the contents of a folder

See Also

refile(1), mhpath(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msg' defaults to none
'–nofast'
'–noheader'
'–nototal'
'–nopack'
'–norecurse'
'–print' is the default if no '–list', '–push', or '–pop' is specified

Context

If '+folder' and/or 'msg' are given, they will become the current folder and/or message.

History

In previous versions of *MH*, the '–fast' switch prevented context changes from occurring for the current folder. This is no longer the case: if '+folder' is given, then *folder* will always change the current folder to that.

NAME

forw – forward messages

SYNOPSIS

forw [+folder] [msgs] [–annotate] [–noannotate] [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [–editor editor] [–noedit] [–filter filterfile] [–form formfile] [–format] [–noformat] [–inplace] [–noinplace] [–whatnowproc program] [–nowhatnowproc] [–help]

forw [+folder] [msgs] [–digest list] [–issue number] [–volume number] [other switches for *forw*] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Forw may be used to prepare a message containing other messages. It constructs the new message from the components file or '–form formfile' (see *comp*), with a body composed of the message(s) to be forwarded. An editor is invoked as in *comp*, and after editing is complete, the user is prompted before the message is sent.

The default message form contains the following elements:

To:
cc:
Subject:

If the file named "forwcomps" exists in the user's MH directory, it will be used instead of this form. In either case, the file specified by '–form formfile' will be used if given.

If the draft already exists, *forw* will ask you as to the disposition of the draft. A reply of **quit** will abort *forw*, leaving the draft intact; **replace** will replace the existing draft with a blank skeleton; and **list** will display the draft.

If the '–annotate' switch is given, each message being forwarded will be annotated with the lines

Forwarded: date
Forwarded: addrs

where each address list contains as many lines as required. This annotation will be done only if the message is sent directly from *forw*. If the message is not sent immediately from *forw*, "comp –use" may be used to re–edit and send the constructed message, but the annotations won't take place. The '–inplace' switch causes annotation to be done in place in order to preserve links to the annotated message.

See *comp* (1) for a description of the '–editor' and '–noedit' switches.

Although *forw* uses the '–form formfile' switch to direct it how to construct the beginning of the draft, the '–filter filterfile', '–format', and '–noformat' switches direct *forw* as to how each forwarded message should be formatted in the body of the draft. If '–noformat' is specified, then each forwarded message is output exactly as it appears. If '–format' or '–filter filterfile' is specified, then each forwarded message is filtered (re–formatted) prior to being output to the body of the draft. The filter file for *forw* should be a standard form file for *mhl*, as *forw* will

invoke *mhl* to format the forwarded messages. The default message filter (what you get with '–format') is:

```
width=80,overflowtext=,overflowoffset=10
leftadjust,compress,compwidth=9
From:
Date:formatfield="%<(nodate{text})%{text}%|%(putstr(tws{text}))%>"
To:
cc:
Subject:
:
body:nocomponent,overflowoffset=0,noleftadjust,nocompress
```

If the file named "mhl.forward" exists in the user's MH directory, it will be used instead of this form. In either case, the file specified by '–filter filterfile' will be used if given. To summarize: '–noformat' will reproduce each forwarded message exactly, '–format' will use *mhl* and a default filterfile, "mhl.forward", to format each forwarded message, and '–filter filterfile' will use the named filterfile to format each forwarded message with *mhl.*

Each forwarded message is separated with an encapsulation delimiter so that when received, the message is suitable for bursting by *burst* (1).

For users of *prompter* (1), by specifying prompter's '-prepend' switch in the .mh_profile file, any commentary text is entered before the forwarded messages. (A major win!)

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

Upon exiting from the editor, *forw* will invoke the *whatnow* program. See *whatnow* (1) for a discussion of available options. The invocation of this program can be inhibited by using the '–nowhatnowproc' switch. (In truth of fact, it is the *whatnow* program which starts the initial edit. Hence, '–nowhatnowproc' will prevent any edit from occurring.)

The '–digest list', '–issue number', and '–volume number' switches implement a digest facility for *MH*. See the *MH* user's manual for more information.

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/forwcomps	The message skeleton
or <mh-dir>/forwcomps	Rather than the standard skeleton
/usr/new/lib/mh/digestcomps	The message skeleton if '–digest' is given
or <mh-dir>/digestcomps	Rather than the standard skeleton
/usr/new/lib/mh/mhl.forward	The message filter
or <mh-dir>/mhl.forward	Rather than the standard filter
$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
<mh-dir>/draft	The draft file

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder
Draft-Folder:	To find the default draft-folder
Editor:	To override the default editor
Msg-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new message (draft)
fileproc:	Program to refile the message
mhlproc:	Program to filter messages being forwarded
whatnowproc:	Program to ask the "What now?" questions

See Also

Proposed Standard for Message Encapsulation (aka RFC-934), comp(1), dist(1), repl(1), send(1), whatnow(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to cur
'-noannotate'
'-nodraftfolder'
'-noformat'
'-noinplace'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. The first message forwarded will become the current message.

Bugs

If *whatnowproc* is *whatnow*, then *forw* uses a built-in *whatnow*, it does not actually run the *whatnow* program. Hence, if you define your own *whatnowproc*, don't call it *whatnow* since *forw* won't run it.

When *forw* is told to annotate the messages it forwards, it doesn't actually annotate them until the draft is successfully sent. If from the *whatnowproc*, you *push* instead of *send*, it's possible to confuse *forw* by re-ordering the file (e.g., by using 'folder -pack') before the message is successfully sent. *Dist* and *repl* don't have this problem.

NAME

inc – incorporate new mail

SYNOPSIS

inc [+folder] [–audit audit–file] [–noaudit] [–changecur] [–nochangecur] [–form formatfile] [–format string] [–file name] [–silent] [–nosilent] [–truncate] [–notruncate] [–width columns] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Inc incorporates mail from the user's incoming mail drop into an *MH* folder. If '+folder' isn't specified, the folder named "inbox" in the user's *MH* directory will be used. The new messages being incorporated are assigned numbers starting with the next highest number in the folder. If the specified (or default) folder doesn't exist, the user will be queried prior to its creation. As the messages are processed, a *scan* listing of the new mail is produced.

If the user's profile contains a "Msg–Protect: nnn" entry, it will be used as the protection on the newly created messages, otherwise the *MH* default of 0644 will be used. During all operations on messages, this initially assigned protection will be preserved for each message, so *chmod*(1) may be used to set a protection on an individual message, and its protection will be preserved thereafter.

If the switch '–audit audit–file' is specified (usually as a default switch in the profile), then *inc* will append a header line and a line per message to the end of the specified audit–file with the format:

≪inc≫ date
<scan line for first message>
<scan line for second message>
<etc.>

This is useful for keeping track of volume and source of incoming mail. Eventually, *repl*, *forw*, *comp*, and *dist* may also produce audits to this (or another) file, perhaps with "Message–Id:" information to keep an exact correspondence history. "Audit–file" will be in the user's MH directory unless a full path is specified.

Inc will incorporate even improperly formatted messages into the user's MH folder, inserting a blank line prior to the offending component and printing a comment identifying the bad message.

In all cases, the user's mail drop will be zeroed, unless the '–notruncate' switch is given.

If the profile entry "Unseen–Sequence" is present and non–empty, then *inc* will add each of the newly incorporated messages to each sequence named by the profile entry. This is similar to the "Previous–Sequence" profile entry supported by all *MH* commands which take 'msgs' or 'msg' arguments. Note that *inc* will not zero each sequence prior to adding messages.

The interpretation of the '–form formatfile', '–format string', and '–width columns' switches is the same as in *scan* (1).

By using the '–file name' switch, one can direct *inc* to incorporate messages from a file other than the user's maildrop. Note that the name file will NOT be zeroed, unless the '–truncate' switch is given.

If the environment variable **$MAILDROP** is set, then *inc* uses it as the location of the user's maildrop instead of the default (the '-file name' switch still overrides this, however). If this environment variable is not set, then *inc* will consult the profile entry "MailDrop" for this information. If the value found is not absolute, then it is interpreted relative to the user's *Mail* directory. If the value is not found, then *inc* will look in the standard system location for the user's maildrop.

The '-silent' switch directs *inc* to be quiet and not ask any questions at all. This is useful for putting *inc* in the background and going on to other things.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file
/usr/spool/mail/$USER	Location of mail drop

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Alternate-Mailboxes:	To determine the user's mailboxes
Folder-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new folder
Msg-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new message and audit-file
Unseen-Sequence:	To name sequences denoting unseen messages

See Also

mhmail(1), scan(1), mh-mail(5), post(8)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to "inbox"
'-noaudit'
'-changecur'
'-format' defaulted as described above
'-nosilent'
'-truncate' if '-file name' not given, '-notruncate' otherwise
'-width' defaulted to the width of the terminal

Context

The folder into which messages are being incorporated will become the current folder. The first message incorporated will become the current message, unless the '-nochangecur' option is specified. This leaves the context ready for a *show* of the first new message.

Bugs

The argument to the '-format' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *inc*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double-quotes.

NAME

mark – mark messages

SYNOPSIS

mark [+folder] [msgs] [–sequence name ...] [–add] [–delete] [–list] [–public] [–nopublic] [–zero] [–nozero] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

The *mark* command manipulates message sequences by adding or deleting message numbers from folder–specific message sequences, or by listing those sequences and messages. A message sequence is a keyword, just like one of the "reserved" message names, such as "first" or "next". Unlike the "reserved" message names, which have a fixed semantics on a per–folder basis, the semantics of a message sequence may be defined, modified, and removed by the user. Message sequences are folder–specific, e.g., the sequence name "seen" in the context of folder "+inbox" need not have any relation whatsoever to the sequence of the same name in a folder of a different name.

Three action switches direct the operation of *mark*. These switches are mutually exclusive: the last occurrence of any of them overrides any previous occurrence of the other two.

The '–add' switch tells *mark* to add messages to sequences or to create a new sequence. For each sequence named via the '–sequence name' argument (which must occur at least once) the messages named via 'msgs' (which defaults to "cur" if no 'msgs' are given), are added to the sequence. The messages to be added need not be absent from the sequence. If the '–zero' switch is specified, the sequence will be emptied prior to adding the messages. Hence, '–add –zero' means that each sequence should be initialized to the indicated messages, while '–add –nozero' means that each sequence should be appended to by the indicated messages.

The '–delete' switch tells *mark* to delete messages from sequences, and is the dual of '–add'. For each of the named sequences, the named messages are removed from the sequence. These messages need not be already present in the sequence. If the '–zero' switch is specified, then all messages in the folder are appended to the sequence prior to removing the messages. Hence, '–delete –zero' means that each sequence should contain all messages except those indicated, while '–delete –nozero' means that only the indicated messages should be removed from each sequence. As expected, the command 'mark –sequence seen –delete all' deletes the sequence "seen" from the current folder.

When creating (or modifying) a sequence, the '–public' switch indicates that the sequence should be made readable for other *MH* users. In contrast, the '–nopublic' switch indicates that the sequence should be private to the user's *MH* environment.

The '–list' switch tells *mark* to list both the sequences defined for the folder and the messages associated with those sequences. *Mark* will list each sequence named via '–sequence name' (or all of them if '–sequence' isn't used), and the messages associated with that sequence. The '–zero' switch does not affect the operation of '–list'.

The current restrictions on sequences are:

The name used to denote a message sequence must consist solely of alphabetic characters, and can not be one of the "reserved" message names (e.g., "first", "cur", and so forth).

Only a certain number of sequences may be defined for a given folder. This number is

usually limited to 10.

The name used to denote a message sequence can not occur as part of a message range, e.g., constructs like "seen:20" or "seen-10" are forbidden.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

pick (1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'-add' if 'msgs' is specified, '-list' otherwise
'msgs' defaults to cur (or all if '-list' is specified)
'-nopublic' if the folder is read-only, '-public' otherwise
'-nozero'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder.

NAME

mhl – produce formatted listings of MH messages

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/mhl [–bell] [–nobell] [–clear] [–noclear] [–folder +folder] [–form formfile] [–length lines] [–width columns] [–moreproc program] [–nomoreproc] [files ...] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Mhl is a formatted message listing program. It can be used as a replacement for *more* (1) (the default *showproc*). As with *more*, each of the messages specified as arguments (or the standard input) will be output. If more than one message file is specified, the user will be prompted prior to each one, and a <RETURN> or <EOT> will begin the output, with <RETURN> clearing the screen (if appropriate), and <EOT> (usually CTRL–D) suppressing the screen clear. An <INTERRUPT> (usually CTRL–C) will abort the current message output, prompting for the next message (if there is one), and a <QUIT> (usually CTRL-\) will terminate the program (without core dump).

The '–bell' option tells *mhl* to ring the terminal's bell at the end of each page, while the '–clear' option tells *mhl* to clear the scree at the end of each page (or output a formfeed after each message). Both of these switches (and their inverse counterparts) take effect only if the profile entry *moreproc* is defined but empty, and *mhl* is outputting to a terminal. If the *moreproc* entry is defined and non-empty, and *mhl* is outputting to a terminal, then *mhl* will cause the *moreproc* to be placed between the terminal and *mhl* and the switches are ignored. Furthermore, if the '–clear' switch is used and *mhl's* output is directed to a terminal, then *mhl* will consult the **$TERM** and **$TERMCAP** environment variables to determine the user's terminal type in order to find out how to clear the screen. If the '–clear' switch is used and *mhl's* output is not directed to a terminal (e.g., a pipe or a file), then *mhl* will send a formfeed after each message.

To override the default *moreproc* and the profile entry, use the '–moreproc program' switch.

The '–length length' and '–width width' switches set the screen length and width, respectively. These default to the values indicated by **$TERMCAP**, if appropriate, otherwise they default to 40 and 80, respectively.

The default format file used by *mhl* is called *mhl.format* (which is first searched for in the user's *MH* directory, and then sought in the */usr/new/lib/mh* directory), this can be changed by using the '–form formatfile' switch.

Finally, the '–folder +folder' switch sets the *MH* folder name, which is used for the "messagename:" field described below. The environment variable **$mhfolder** is consulted for the default value, which *show*, *next*, and *prev* initialize appropriately.

Mhl operates in two phases: 1) read and parse the format file, and 2) process each message (file). During phase 1, an internal description of the format is produced as a structured list. In phase 2, this list is walked for each message, outputting message information under the format constraints from the format file.

The "mhl.format" form file contains information controlling screen clearing, screen size, wrap–around control, transparent text, component ordering, and component formatting. Also, a list of components to ignore may be specified, and a couple of "special" components are defined to provide added functionality. Message output will be in the order specified by

the order in the format file.

Each line of mhl.format has one of the formats:

```
;comment
:cleartext
variable[,variable...]
component:[variable,...]
```

A line beginning with a ';' is a comment, and is ignored. A line beginning with a ':' is clear text, and is output exactly as is. A line containing only a ':' produces a blank line in the output. A line beginning with "component:" defines the format for the specified component, and finally, remaining lines define the global environment.

For example, the line:

```
width=80,length=40,clearscreen,overflowtext="***",overflowoffset=5
```

defines the screen size to be 80 columns by 40 rows, specifies that the screen should be cleared prior to each page, that the overflow indentation is 5, and that overflow text should be flagged with "***".

Following are all of the current variables and their arguments. If they follow a component, they apply only to that component, otherwise, their affect is global. Since the whole format is parsed before any output processing, the last global switch setting for a variable applies to the whole message if that variable is used in a global context (i.e., bell, clearscreen, width, length).

variable	*type*	*semantics*
width	integer	screen width or component width
length	integer	screen length or component length
offset	integer	positions to indent "component: "
overflowtext	string	text to use at the beginning of an overflow line
overflowoffset	integer	positions to indent overflow lines
compwidth	integer	positions to indent component text after the first line is output
uppercase	flag	output text of this component in all upper case
nouppercase	flag	don't uppercase
clearscreen	flag/G	clear the screen prior to each page
noclearscreen	flag/G	don't clearscreen
bell	flag/G	ring the bell at the end of each page
nobell	flag/G	don't bell
component	string/L	name to use instead of "component" for this component
nocomponent	flag	don't output "component: " for this component
center	flag	center component on line (works for one-line components only)
nocenter	flag	don't center
leftadjust	flag	strip off leading whitespace on each line of text
noleftadjust	flag	don't leftadjust

compress	flag	change newlines in text to spaces
nocompress	flag	don't compress
formatfield	string	format string for this component
addrfield	flag	field contains addresses
datefield	flag	field contains dates

To specify the value of integer–valued and string–valued variables, follow their name with an equals–sign and the value. Integer–valued variables are given decimal values, while string–valued variables are given arbirtray text bracketed by double–quotes. If a value is suffixed by "/G" or "/L", then its value is useful in a global–only or local–only context (respectively).

A line of the form:

ignores=component,...

specifies a list of components which are never output.

The component "MessageName" (case–insensitive) will output the actual message name (file name) preceded by the folder name if one is specified or found in the environment. The format is identical to that produced by the '–header' option to *show*.

The component "Extras" will output all of the components of the message which were not matched by explicit components, or included in the ignore list. If this component is not specified, an ignore list is not needed since all non–specified components will be ignored.

If "nocomponent" is NOT specified, then the component name will be output as it appears in the format file.

The default format is:

```
: -- using template mhl.format --
overflowtext="***",overflowoffset=5
leftadjust,compwidth=9
ignores=msgid,message-id,received
Date:formatfield="%<(nodate{text})%{text}%|%(putstr(pretty{text}))%>"
To:
cc:
:
From:
Subject:
:
extras:nocomponent
:
body:nocomponent,overflowtext=,overflowoffset=0,noleftadjust
```

The variable "formatfield" specifies a format string (see *mh–format*(5)). The variables "addrfield" and "datefield" (which are mutually exclusive), control the interpretation of the escapes.

By default, *mhl* does not apply any formatting string to fields containing address or dates (see *mh–mail* (5) for a list of these fields). Note that this results in faster operation since *mhl* must parse both addresses and dates in order to apply a format string to them. If desired,

mhl can be given a default format string for either address or date fields (but not both). To do this, on a global line specify either the variable addrfield or the variable datefield, along with the variable formatfield.

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/mhl.format	The message template
or <mh-dir>/mhl.format	Rather than the standard template
$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

moreproc:	Program to use as interactive front-end

See Also

show(1), ap(8), dp(8)

Defaults

'-bell'
'-noclear'
'-length 40'
'-width 80'

Context

None

Bugs

There should be some way to pass 'bell' and 'clear' information to the front-end.

On hosts where *MH* was configured with the BERK option, address parsing is not enabled.

NAME

mhmail – send or read mail

SYNOPSIS

mhmail [addrs ... [–body text] [–cc addrs ...] [–from addr] [–subject subject]] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

MHmail is intended as a replacement for the standard Bell mail program (*bellmail* (1)), compatible with *MH*. When invoked without arguments, it simply invokes *inc* (1) to incorporate new messages from the user's maildrop. When one or more users is specified, a message is read from the standard input and spooled to a temporary file. *MHmail* then invokes *post* (8) with the name of the temporary file as its argument to deliver the message to the specified user.

The '–subject subject' switch can be used to specify the "Subject:" field of the message. The '–body text' switch can be used to specify the text of the message; if it is specified, then the standard input is not read. Normally, addresses appearing as arguments are put in the "To:" field. If the '–cc' switch is used, all addresses following it are placed in the "cc:" field.

By using '–from addr', you can specify the "From:" header of the draft. Naturally, *post* will fill–in the "Sender:" header correctly.

This program is intended for the use of programs such as *at* (1), which expect to send mail automatically to various users. Normally, real people (as opposed to the "unreal" ones) will prefer to use *comp* (1) and *send* (1) to send messages.

Files

/usr/new/mh/inc	Program to incorporate a maildrop into a folder
/usr/new/lib/mh/post	Program to deliver a message
/tmp/mhmail*	Temporary copy of message

Profile Components

None

See Also

inc(1), post(8)

Defaults

None

Context

If *inc* is invoked, then *inc*'s context changes occur.

NAME

mhook - MH receive-mail hooks

SYNOPSIS

$HOME/.maildelivery

/usr/new/lib/mh/rcvdist address ... [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/rcvpack file [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/rcvtty [command ...] [-help]

DESCRIPTION

A receive-mail hook is a program that is run whenever you receive a mail message. You do NOT invoke the hook yourself, rather the hook is invoked on your behalf by *SendMail*, when you include the line

"| /usr/new/lib/mh/slocal"

in your .forward file in your home directory.

The *.maildelivery* file, which is an ordinary ASCII file, controls how local delivery is performed. This file is read by *slocal*.

The format of each line in the *.maildelivery* file is

field pattern action result string

where

field:
The name of a field that is to be searched for a pattern. This is any field in the headers of the message that might be present. In addition, the following special fields are also defined:
source: the out-of-band sender information
addr: the address that was used to cause delivery to the recipient
default: this matches *only* if the message hasn't been delivered yet
*: this always matches

pattern:
The sequence of characters to match in the specified field. Matching is case-insensitive but not RE-based.

action:
The action to take to deliver the message. This is one of

file or >:
Append the message to the file named by **string**. The standard maildrop delivery process is used. If the message can be appended to the file, then this action succeeds.

When writing to the file, a new field is added:

Delivery-Date: date

which indicates the date and time that message was appended to the file.

pipe or |:
Pipe the message as the standard input to the command named by **string**, using the Bourne shell *sh* (1) to interpret the string. Prior to giving the string to the shell, it is expanded with the following built-in variables:
$(sender): the return address for the message
$(address): the address that was used to cause delivery to the recipient
$(size): the size of the message in bytes
$(reply-to): either the "Reply-To:" or "From:" field of the message
$(info): miscellaneous out-of-band information

When a process is invoked, its environment is: the user/group id:s are set to recipient's id:s; the working directory is the recipient's directory; the umask is 0077; the process has no /dev/tty; the standard input is set to the message; the standard output and diagnostic output are set to /dev/null; all other file-descriptors are closed; the environment variables **$USER**, **$HOME**, **$SHELL** are set appropriately, and no other environment variables exist.

The process is given a certain amount of time to execute. If the process does not exit within this limit, the process will be terminated with extreme prejudice. The amount of time is calculated as ((size x 60) + 300) seconds, where size is the number of bytes in the message.

The exit status of the process is consulted in determining the success of the action. An exit status of zero means that the action succeeded. Any other exit status (or abnormal termination) means that the action failed.

In order to avoid any time limitations, you might implement a process that began by *forking*. The parent would return the appropriate value immediately, and the child could continue on, doing whatever it wanted for as long as it wanted. This approach is somewhat risky if the parent is going to return an exit status of zero. If the parent is going to return a non-zero exit status, then this approach can lead to quicker delivery into your maildrop.

qpipe or *<caret>*:
Similar to *pipe*, but executes the command directly, after built-in variable expansion, without assistance from the shell.

destroy:
This action always succeeds.

result:
Indicates how the action should be performed:

A:
Perform the action. If the action succeeded, then the message is considered delivered.

R:
Perform the action. Regardless of the outcome of the action, the message is not considered delivered.

Perform the action only if the message has not been delivered. If the action succeeded, then the message is considered delivered.

The file is always read completely, so that several matches can be made and several actions can be taken. The *.maildelivery* file must be owned either by the user or by root, and must be writable only by the owner. If the *.maildelivery* file can not be found, or does not perform an action which delivers the message, then the file /usr/new/lib/mh/maildelivery is read according to the same rules. This file must be owned by the root and must be writable only by the root. If this file can not be found or does not perform an action which delivers the message, then standard delivery to the user's maildrop, /usr/spool/mail/$USER, is performed.

Arguments in the *.maildelivery* file are separated by white-space or comma. Since double-quotes are honored, these characters may be included in a single argument by enclosing the entire argument in double-quotes. A double-quote can be included by preceeding it with a backslash.

To summarize, here's an example:

```
#field   pattern          action  result  string
# lines starting with a '#' are ignored, as are blank lines
#
# file mail with mmdf2 in the "To:" line into file mmdf2.log
To       mmdf2            file    A       mmdf2.log
# Messages from mmdf pipe to the program err-message-archive
From     mmdf             pipe    A       err-message-archive
# Anything with the "Sender:" address "uk-mmdf-workers"
# file in mmdf2.log if not filed already
Sender   uk-mmdf-workers  file    ?       mmdf2.log
# "To:" unix - put in file unix-news
To       Unix             >       A       unix-news
# if the address is jpo=mmdf - pipe into mmdf-redist
addr     jpo=mmdf         |       A       mmdf-redist
# if the address is jpo=ack - send an acknowledgement copy back
addr     jpo=ack          |       R       "resend -r $(reply-to)"
# anything from steve - destroy!
From     steve            destroy A       -
# anything not matched yet - put into mailbox
default  -                >       ?       mailbox
# always run rcvalert
*        -                |       R       rcvalert
```

Four programs are currently standardly available, *rcvdist* (redistribute incoming messages to additional recipients), *rcvpack* (save incoming messages in a *packf*'d file), and *rcvtty* (notify user of incoming messages). The fourth program, *rcvstore* (1) is described separately. They all reside in the */usr/new/lib/mh/* directory.

The *rcvdist* program will resend a copy of the message to all of the addresses listed on its command line.

The *rcvpack* program will append a copy of the message to the file listed on its command line. Its use is obsoleted by the *.maildelivery*.

The *rcvtty* program executes the named file with the message as its standard input, and gives the resulting output to the terminal access daemon for display on your terminal. If the terminal access daemon is unavailable on your system, then *rcvtty* will write the output to your terminal if, and only if, your terminal has "world–writable" permission. If no file is specified, or is bogus, etc., then the *rcvtty* program will give a one–line scan listing to the terminal access daemon.

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file
$HOME/.maildelivery	The file controlling local delivery
/usr/new/lib/mh/maildelivery	Rather than the standard file

See Also

rcvstore (1)

Context

None

History

For compatibility with older versions of *MH*, if *slocal* can't find the user's *.maildelivery* file, it will attempt to execute an old–style rcvmail hook in the user's $HOME directory. In particular, it will first attempt to execute

.mh_receive file maildrop directory user

failing that it will attempt to execute

$HOME/bin/rcvmail user file sender

before giving up and writing to the user's maildrop.

In addition, whenever a hook or process is invoked, file–descriptor three (3) is set to the message in addition to the standard input.

Bugs

Only two return codes are meaningful, others should be.

NAME

mhpath – print full pathnames of MH messages and folders

SYNOPSIS

mhpath [+folder] [msgs] [-help]

DESCRIPTION

Mhpath expands and sorts the message list 'msgs' and writes the full pathnames of the messages to the standard output separated by newlines. If no 'msgs' are specified, *mhpath* outputs the folder pathname instead.

Contrasted with other MH commands, a message argument to *mhpath* may often be intended for *writing*. Because of this: 1) the name "new" has been added to *mhpath*'s list of reserved message names (the others are "first", "last", "prev", "next", "cur", and "all"). The new message is equivalent to the message after the last message in a folder (and equivalent to 1 in a folder without messages). The "new" message may not be used as part of a message range. 2) Within a message list, the following designations may refer to messages that do not exist: a single numeric message name, the single message name "cur", and (obviously) the single message name "new". All other message designations must refer to at least one existing message. 3) An empty folder is not in itself an error.

Message numbers greater than the highest existing message in a folder as part of a range designation are replaced with the next free message number.

Examples: The current folder foo contains messages 3 5 6. Cur is 4.

```
% mhpath
/r/phyl/Mail/foo

% mhpath all
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/3
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/5
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/6

% mhpath 2001
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/7

% mhpath 1-2001
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/3
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/5
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/6

% mhpath new
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/7

% mhpath last new
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/6
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/7

% mhpath last-new
bad message list "last-new".
```

```
% mhpath cur
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/4

% mhpath 1-2
no messages in range "1-2".

% mhpath first:2
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/3
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/5

% mhpath 1 2
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/1
/r/phyl/Mail/foo/2
```

MHpath is also useful in back-quoted operations:

```
% cd `mhpath +inbox`

% echo `mhpath +`
/r/phyl/Mail
```

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

folder(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to none

Context

None

Bugs

Like all MH commands, *mhpath* expands and sorts [msgs]. So don't expect

```
mv `mhpath 501 500`
```

to move 501 to 500. Quite the reverse. But

```
mv `mhpath 501` `mhpath 500`
```

will do the trick.

Out of range message 0 is treated far more severely than large out of range message numbers.

NAME

msgchk - check for messages

SYNOPSIS

msgchk [users ...] [-help]

DESCRIPTION

The *msgchk* program checks all known mail drops for mail waiting for you to receive. For those drops which have mail for you, *msgchk* will indicate if it believes that you have seen the mail in question before.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file
/usr/spool/mail/$USER	Location of mail drop

Profile Components

None

See Also

inc(1)

Defaults

'user' defaults to the current user

Context

None

NAME

msh – MH shell (and BBoard reader)

SYNOPSIS

msh [–prompt string] [–scan] [–noscan] [–topcur] [–notopcur] [file] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

msh is an interactive program that implements a subset of the normal *MH* commands operating on a single file in *packf*'d format. That is, *msh* is used to read a file that contains a number of messages, as opposed to the standard *MH* style of reading a number of files, each file being a separate message in a folder. *msh*'s chief advantage is that the normal *MH* style does not allow a file to have more than one message in it. Hence, *msh* is ideal for reading *BBoards*, as these files are delivered by the transport system in this format. In addition, *msh* can be used on other files, such as message archives which have been *packed* (see *packf* (1)). Finally, *msh* is an excellent *MH* tutor. As the only commands available to the user are *MH* commands, this allows *MH* beginners to concentrate on how commands to *MH* are formed and (more or less) what they mean.

When invoked, *msh* reads the named file, and enters a command loop. The user may type most of the normal *MH* commands. The syntax and semantics of these commands typed to *msh* are identical to their *MH* counterparts. In cases where the nature of *msh* would be inconsistent (e.g., specifying a '+folder' with some commands), *msh* will duly inform the user. The commands that *msh* currently supports (in some slightly modified or restricted forms) are:

ali
burst
comp
dist
folder
forw
inc
mark
mhmail
msgchk
next
packf
pick
prev
refile
repl
rmm
scan
send
show
sortm
whatnow
whom

In addition, *msh* has a "help" command which gives a brief overview. To terminate *msh*, type CTRL–D, or use the "quit" command. If *msh* is being invoked from *bbc*, then typing CTRL–D will also tell *bbc* to exit as well, while using the "quit" command will return control

to *bbc*, and *bbc* will continue examining the list of BBoards that it is scanning.

If the file is writable and has been modified, then using "quit" will query the user if the file should be updated.

The '–prompt string' switch sets the prompting string for *msh*.

You may wish to use an alternate *MH* profile for the commands that *msh* executes; see *mh-profile* (5) for details about the $MH environment variable.

When invoked from *bbc*, two special features are enabled: First, the '–scan' switch directs *msh* to do a 'scan unseen' on start–up if new items are present in the BBoard. This feature is best used from *bbc*, which correctly sets the stage. Second, the *mark* command in *msh* acts specially when you are reading a BBoard, since *msh* will consult the sequence "unseen" in determining what messages you have actually read. When *msh* exits, it reports this information to *bbc*. In addition, if you give the *mark* command with no arguments, *msh* will interpret it as 'mark –sequence unseen –delete –nozero all' Hence, to discard all of the messages in the current BBoard you're reading, just use the *mark* command with no arguments.

When invoked from *vmh*, another special feature is enabled: The 'topcur' switch directs *msh* to have the current message "track" the top line of the *vmh* scan window. Normally, *msh* has the current message "track" the center of the window (under '–notopcur', which is the default).

msh supports an output redirection facility. Commands may be followed by one of

> *file*	write output to *file*
>> *file*	append output to *file*
| *command*	pipe output to UNIX *command*

If *file* starts with a ' ' (tilde), then a *csh*-like expansion takes place. Note that *command* is interpreted by *sh* (1). Also note that *msh* does NOT support history substitutions, variable substitutions, or alias substitutions.

When parsing commands to the left of any redirection symbol, *msh* will honor '\' (back–slash) as the quote next–character symbol, and '"' (double–quote) as quote–word delimiters. All other input tokens are separated by whitespace (spaces and tabs).

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Msg–Protect:	To set mode when creating a new 'file'
fileproc:	Program to file messages
showproc:	Program to show messages

See Also

bbc(1)

Defaults

'file' defaults to "./msgbox"
'–prompt (msh) '
'–noscan'
'–notopcur'

Context

None

Bugs

The argument to the '–prompt' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *msh*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double–quotes.

There is a strict limit of messages per file in *packf*'d format which *msh* can handle. Usually, this limit is 1000 messages.

Please remember that *msh* is not the *CShell*, and that a lot of the nice facilities provided by the latter are not present in the former.

In particular, *msh* does not understand back–quoting, so the only effective way to use *pick* inside *msh* is to always use the '–seq select' switch. Clever users of *MH* will put the line

```
pick: –seq select –list
```

in their .mh_profile file so that *pick* works equally well from both the shell and *msh*.

The *msh* program inherits most (if not all) of the bugs from the *MH* commands it implements.

NAME

next – show the next message

SYNOPSIS

next [+folder] [–header] [–noheader] [–showproc program] [–noshowproc]
[switches for *showproc*] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Next performs a *show* on the next message in the specified (or current) folder. Like *show*, it passes any switches on to the program *showproc*, which is called to list the message. This command is almost exactly equivalent to "show next". Consult the manual entry for *show* (1) for all the details.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder
showproc:	Program to show the message

See Also

show(1), prev(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'–format'
'–header'

Context

If a folder is specified, it will become the current folder. The message that is shown (i.e., the next message in sequence) will become the current message.

Bugs

next is really a link to the *show* program. As a result, if you make a link to *next* and that link is not called *next*, your link will act like *show* instead. To circumvent this, add a profile–entry for the link to your *MH* profile and add the argument *next* to the entry.

NAME

packf – compress a folder into a single file

SYNOPSIS

packf [+folder] [msgs] [–file name] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Packf takes messages from a folder and copies them to a single file. Each message in the file is separated by four CTRL–A's and a newline. Messages packed can be unpacked using *inc*.

If the *name* given to the '–file name' switch exists, then the messages specified will be appended to the end of the file, otherwise the file will be created and the messages appended.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder
Msg–Protect:	To set mode when creating a new 'file'

See Also

inc(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to all
'–file ./msgbox'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. The first message packed will become the current message.

NAME

pick – select messages by content

SYNOPSIS

pick { -cc, -date, -from, -search, -subject, -to, --component } [+folder] [msgs] [-help] [-before date] [-after date] [-datefield field] pattern [-and ...] [-or ...] [-not ...] [-lbrace ... -rbrace] [-sequence name ...] [-public] [-nopublic] [-zero] [-nozero] [-list] [-nolist]

typically:

```
scan 'pick -from jones'
pick -to holloway -sequence select
show 'pick -before friday'
```

DESCRIPTION

Pick searches messages within a folder for the specified contents, and then identifies those messages. Two types of search primitives are available: pattern matching and date constraint operations.

A modified *grep*(1) is used to perform the matching, so the full regular expression (see *ed*(1)) facility is available within 'pattern'. With '-search', 'pattern' is used directly, and with the others, the grep pattern constructed is:

"component[\t]*:.*pattern"

This means that the pattern specified for a '-search' will be found everywhere in the message, including the header and the body, while the other pattern matching requests are limited to the single specified component. The expression

'--component pattern'

is a shorthand for specifying

'-search "component[\t]*:.*pattern" '

It is used to pick a component which is not one of "To:", "cc:", "Date:", "From:", or "Subject:". An example is 'pick --reply-to pooh'.

Pattern matching is performed on a per-line basis. Within the header of the message, each component is treated as one long line, but in the body, each line is separate. Lower-case letters in the search pattern will match either lower or upper case in the message, while upper case will match only upper case.

Independent of any pattern matching operations requested, the switches '-after date' or '-before date' may also be used to introduce date/time contraints on all of the messages. By default, the "Date:" field is consulted, but if another date yielding field (such as "BB-Posted:" or "Delivery-Date:") should be used, the '-datefield field' switch may be used. *Pick* will actually parse the date fields in each of the messages specified in 'msgs' (unlike the '-date' switch described above which does a pattern matching operation), and compare them to the

date/time specified by use of the '–after' and '–before' switches. If '–after' is given, then only those messages whose "Date:" field value is chronologically after the date specified will be considered. The '–before' switch specifies the complimentary action.

Both the '–after' and '–before' switches take legal 822–style date specifications as arguments. *Pick* will default certain missing fields so that the entire date need not be specified. These fields are (in order of defaulting): timezone, time and timezone, date, date and timezone. All defaults are taken from the current date, time, and timezone. In addition to 822–style dates, *pick* will also recognize any of the days of the week ("sunday", "monday", and so on), and the special dates "today", "yesterday", and "tomorrow". All days of the week are judged to refer to a day in the past (e.g., telling *pick* "saturday" on a "tuesday" means "last saturday" not "this saturday"). Finally, in addition to these special specifications, *pick* will also honor a specification of the form "–dd", which means "dd days ago".

Pick supports complex boolean operations on the searching primitives with the '–and', '–or', '–not', and '–lbrace ... –rbrace' switches. For example,

```
pick –after yesterday –and –lbrace –from freida –or –from fear –rbrace
```

identifies messages recently sent by "frieda" or "fear".

The matching primitives take precedence over the '–not' switch, which in turn takes precedence over '–and' which in turn takes precedence over '–or'. To override the default precedence, the '–lbrace' and '–rbrace' switches are provided, which act just like opening and closing parentheses in logical expressions.

Once the search has been performed, if the '–list' switch is given, the message numbers of the selected messages are written to the standard output separated by newlines. This is *extremely* useful for quickly generating arguments for other *MH* programs by using the "backquoting" syntax of the shell. For example, the command

```
scan 'pick +todo –after "31 Mar 83 0123 PST"'
```

says to *scan* those messages in the indicated folder which meet the appropriate criterion. Note that since *pick* 's context changes are written out prior to *scan* 's invocation, you need not give the folder argument to *scan* as well.

Regardless of the operation of the '–list' switch, the '–sequence name' switch may be given once for each sequence the user wishes to define. For each sequence named, that sequence will be defined to mean exactly those messages selected by *pick*. For example,

```
pick –from frated –seq fred
```

defines a new message sequence for the current folder called "fred" which contains exactly those messages that were selected.

Note that whenever *pick* processes a '–sequence name' switch, it sets '–nolist'.

By default, *pick* will zero the sequence before adding it. This action can be disabled with the '–nozero' switch, which means that the messages selected by *pick* will be added to the sequence, if it already exists, and any messages already a part of that sequence will remain so.

The '–public' and '–nopublic' switches are used by *pick* in the same way *mark* uses them.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

mark(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to all
'-datefield date'
'-nopublic' if the folder is read-only, '-public' otherwise
'-zero'
'-list' is the default if no '-sequence', '-nolist' otherwise

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder.

History

In previous versions of *MH*, the *pick* command would *show*, *scan*, or *refile* the selected messages. This was rather "inverted logic" from the UNIX point of view, so *pick* was changed to define sequences and output those sequences. Hence, *pick* can be used to generate the arguments for all other *MH* commands, instead of giving *pick* endless switches for invoking those commands itself.

Also, previous versions of *pick* balked if you didn't specify a search string or a date/time constraint. The current version does not, and merely matches the messages you specify. This lets you type something like:

```
show 'pick last:20 -seq fear'
```

instead of typing

```
mark -add -nozero -seq fear last:20
show fear
```

Finally, timezones used to be ignored when comparing dates: they aren't any more.

Bugs

The argument to the '–after' and '–before' switches must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *pick*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double–quotes. Furthermore, any occurance of '–datefield' must occur prior to the '–after' or '–before' switch it applies to.

If *pick* is used in a back–quoted operation, such as

```
scan 'pick –from jones'
```

and *pick* fails (e.g., no messages are from "jones"), then the shell will still run the outer command (e.g., "scan"). Since no messages were matched, *pick* produced no output, and the argument given to the outer command as a result of backquoting *pick* is empty. In the case of *MH* programs, the outer command now acts as if the default 'msg' or 'msgs' should be used (e.g., "all" in the case of *scan*). To prevent this unexpected behavior, if '–list' was given, and if its standard output is not a tty, then *pick* outputs the illegal message number "0" when it fails. This lets the outer command fail gracefully as well.

NAME

prev – show the previous message

SYNOPSIS

prev [+folder] [–header] [–noheader] [–showproc program] [–noshowproc]
[–switches for *showproc*] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Prev performs a *show* on the previous message in the specified (or current) folder. Like *show*, it passes any switches on to the program named by *showproc*, which is called to list the message. This command is almost exactly equivalent to "show prev". Consult the manual entry for *show* (1) for all the details.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder
showproc:	Program to show the message

See Also

show(1), next(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'–format'
'–header'

Context

If a folder is specified, it will become the current folder. The message that is shown (i.e., the previous message in sequence) will become the current message.

Bugs

prev is really a link to the *show* program. As a result, if you make a link to *prev* and that link is not called *prev*, your link will act like *show* instead. To circumvent this, add a profile–entry for the link to your *MH* profile and add the argument *prev* to the entry.

NAME

prompter – prompting editor front–end

SYNOPSIS

prompter [–erase chr] [–kill chr] [–prepend] [–noprepend] [–rapid] [–norapid] file [–help]

DESCRIPTION

This program is normally not invoked directly by users but takes the place of an editor and acts as an editor front–end. It operates on an 822–style message draft skeleton specified by file, normally provided by *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, or *repl*.

Prompter is an editor which allows rapid composition of messages. It is particularly useful to network and low–speed (less than 2400 baud) users of *MH*. It is an *MH* program in that it can have its own profile entry with switches, but it is not invoked directly by the user. The commands *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* invoke *prompter* as an editor, either when invoked with '–editor prompter', or by the profile entry "Editor: prompter", or when given the command 'edit prompter' at "What now?" level.

For each empty component *prompter* finds in the draft, the user is prompted for a response; A <RETURN> will cause the whole component to be left out. Otherwise, a '\' preceding a <RETURN> will continue the response on the next line, allowing for multiline components. Continuation lines **must** begin with a space or tab.

Each non–empty component is copied to the draft and displayed on the terminal.

The start of the message body is denoted by a blank line or a line of dashes. If the body is non–empty, the prompt, which isn't written to the file, is

"--------Enter additional text",

or (if '–prepend' was given)

"--------Enter initial text".

Message–body typing is terminated with an end–of–file (usually CTRL–D). At this point control is returned to the calling program, where the user is asked "What now?". See *whatnow* for the valid options to this query.

By using the '–prepend' switch, the user can add type–in to the beginning of the message body and have the rest of the body follow. This is useful for the *forw* command.

By using the '–rapid' switch, if the draft already contains text in the message–body, it is not displayed on the user's terminal. This is useful for low–speed terminals.

The line editing characters for kill and erase may be specified by the user via the arguments '–kill chr' and '–erase chr', where chr may be a character; or '\nnn', where "nnn" is the octal value for the character.

An interrupt (usually CTRL–C) during component typing will abort *prompter* and the *MH* command that invoked it. An interrupt during message–body typing is equivalent to CTRL–D, for historical reasons. This means that *prompter* should finish up and exit.

The first non-flag argument to *prompter* is taken as the name of the draft file, and subsequent non-flag arguments are ignored.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
/tmp/prompter*	Temporary copy of message

Profile Components

prompter-next:	To name the editor to be used on exit from *prompter*
Msg-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new draft

See Also

comp(1), dist(1), forw(1), repl(1), whatnow(1)

Defaults

'-prepend'
'-norapid'

Context

None

Bugs

Prompter uses *stdio* (3), so it will lose if you edit files with nulls in them.

NAME

rcvstore – incorporate new mail asynchronously

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/rcvstore [+folder] [–create] [–nocreate] [–sequence name ...] [–public] [–nopublic] [–zero] [–nozero] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Rcvstore incorporates a message from the standard input into an *MH* folder. If '+folder' isn't specified, the folder named "inbox" in the user's *MH* directory will be used instead. The new message being incorporated is assigned the next highest number in the folder. If the specified (or default) folder doesn't exist, then it will be created if the '–create' option is specified, otherwise *rcvstore* will exit.

If the user's profile contains a "Msg–Protect: nnn" entry, it will be used as the protection on the newly created messages, otherwise the *MH* default of 0644 will be used. During all operations on messages, this initially assigned protection will be preserved for each message, so *chmod*(1) may be used to set a protection on an individual message, and its protection will be preserved thereafter.

Rcvstore will incorporate anything except zero length messages into the user's MH folder.

If the profile entry "Unseen–Sequence" is present and non–empty, then *rcvstore* will add the newly incorporated message to each sequence named by the profile entry. This is similar to the "Previous–Sequence" profile entry supported by all *MH* commands which take 'msgs' or 'msg' arguments. Note that *rcvstore* will not zero each sequence prior to adding messages.

Furthermore, the incoming messages may be added to user-defined sequences as they arrive by appropriate use of the '–sequence' option. As with *pick*, use of the '–zero' and '–nozero' switches can also be used to zero old sequences or not. Similarly, use of the '–public' and '–nopublic switches may be used to force additions to public and private sequences.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Folder–Protect:	To set mode when creating a new folder
Msg–Protect:	To set mode when creating a new message
Unseen–Sequence:	To name sequences denoting unseen messages

See Also

inc(1), pick(1), mh–mail(5)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to "inbox"
'–create'
'–nopublic' if the folder is read–only, '–public' otherwise
'–nozero'

Context

No context changes will be attempted, with the exception of sequence manipulation.

NAME

refile – file message in other folders

SYNOPSIS

refile [msgs] [–draft] [–link] [–nolink] [–preserve] [–nopreserve] [–src +folder] [–file file] +folder ... [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Refile moves (*mv* (1)) or links (*ln* (1)) messages from a source folder into one or more destination folders. If you think of a message as a sheet of paper, this operation is not unlike filing the sheet of paper (or copies) in file cabinet folders. When a message is filed, it is linked into the destination folder(s) if possible, and is copied otherwise. As long as the destination folders are all on the same file system, multiple filing causes little storage overhead. This facility provides a good way to cross–file or multiply–index messages. For example, if a message is received from Jones about the ARPA Map Project, the command

refile cur +jones +Map

would allow the message to be found in either of the two folders 'jones' or 'Map'.

The option '–file file' directs *refile* to use the specified file as the source message to be filed, rather than a message from a folder. Note that the file should be a validly formatted message, just like any other *MH* message. It should **NOT** be in mail drop format (to convert a file in mail drop format to a folder of *MH* messages, see *inc* (1)).

If a destination folder doesn't exist, *refile* will ask if you want to create it. A negative response will abort the file operation.

The option '–link' preserves the source folder copy of the message (i.e., it does a *ln*(1) rather than a *mv*(1)), whereas, '–nolink' deletes the filed messages from the source folder. Normally, when a message is filed, it is assigned the next highest number available in each of the destination folders. Use of the '–preserve' switch will override this message renaming, but name conflicts may occur, so use this switch cautiously.

If '–link' is not specified (or '–nolink' is specified), the filed messages will be removed (*unlink* (2)) from the source folder, similar to the way *mv* (1) works.

If the user has a profile component such as

rmmproc: /bin/rm

then instead of simply renaming the message file, *refile* will call the named program to delete the file.

The '–draft' switch tells *refile* to file the <mh–dir>/draft.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder
Folder-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new folder
rmmproc:	Program to delete the message

See Also

folder(1)

Defaults

'-src +folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to cur
'-nolink'
'-nopreserve'

Context

If '-src +folder' is given, it will become the current folder. If neither '-link' nor 'all' is specified, the current message in the source folder will be set to the last message specified; otherwise, the current message won't be changed.

If the Previous-Sequence profile entry is set, in addition to defining the named sequences from the source folder, *refile* will also define those sequences for the destination folders. See *mh-profile* (1) for information concerning the previous sequence.

NAME

repl – reply to a message

SYNOPSIS

repl [+folder] [msg] [–annotate] [–noannotate] [–cc all/to/cc/me] [–nocc all/to/cc/me] [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [–editor editor] [–noedit] [–fcc +folder] [–filter filterfile] [–form formfile] [–format] [–noformat] [–inplace] [–noinplace] [–query] [–noquery] [–width columns] [–whatnowproc program] [–nowhatnowproc] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Repl aids a user in producing a reply to an existing message. *Repl* uses a reply template to guide its actions when constructing the message draft of the reply. In its simplest form (with no arguments), it will set up a message–form skeleton in reply to the current message in the current folder, and invoke the whatnow shell. The default reply template will direct *repl* to construct the composed message as follows:

To: <Reply–To> or <From>
cc: <cc>, <To>, and yourself
Subject: Re: <Subject>
In–reply–to: Your message of <Date>.
<Message–Id>

where field names enclosed in angle brackets (< >) indicate the contents of the named field from the message to which the reply is being made. The '–cc type' switch takes an argument which specifies who gets placed on the "cc:" list of the reply. The '–query' switch modifies the action of '–cc type' switch by interactively asking you if each address that normally would be placed in the "To:" and "cc:" list should actually be sent a copy. (This is useful for special–purpose replies.) Note that the position of the '–cc' and '–nocc' switches, like all other switches which take a positive and negative form, is important.

If the file named "replcomps" exists in the user's MH directory, it will be used instead of the default form. In either case, the file specified by '–form formfile' will be used if given.

If the draft already exists, *repl* will ask you as to the disposition of the draft. A reply of **quit** will abort *repl*, leaving the draft intact; **replace** will replace the existing draft with a blank skeleton; and **list** will display the draft.

See *comp* (1) for a description of the '–editor' and '–noedit' switches. Note that while in the editor, the message being replied to is available through a link named "@" (assuming the default *whatnowproc*). In addition, the actual pathname of the message is stored in the environment variable **$editalt**, and the pathname of the folder containing the message is stored in the environment variable **$mhfolder**.

Although *repl* uses the '–form formfile' switch to direct it how to construct the beginning of the draft, the '–filter filterfile' switch directs *repl* as to how the message being replied–to should be formatted in the body of the draft. If '–filter' is not specified, then the message being replied–to is not included in the body of the draft. If '–filter filterfile' is specified, then the message being replied–to is filtered (re–formatted) prior to being output to the body of the draft. The filter file for *repl* should be a standard form file for *mhl*, as *repl* will invoke *mhl* to format the message being replied–to. There is no default message filter ('–filter' must be followed by a file name). A filter file that is commonly used is:

```
:
body:nocomponent,compwidth=9,offset=9
```

which says to output a blank line and then the body of the message being replied–to, indented by one tab–stop.

If the '–annotate' switch is given, the message being replied–to will be annotated with the lines

```
Replied: date
Replied: addrs
```

where the address list contains one line for each addressee. The annotation will be done only if the message is sent directly from *repl*. If the message is not sent immediately from *repl*, "comp –use" may be used to re–edit and send the constructed message, but the annotations won't take place. The '–inplace' switch causes annotation to be done in place in order to preserve links to the annotated message.

With the '–format' switch one can indicate if Internet–style formatting should be used (or not be used with '–noformat'). If present (the default), then lines beginning with the fields "To:", "cc:", and "Bcc:" will be standardized and have duplicate addresses removed. In addition, the '–width columns' switch will guide *repl*'s formatting of these fields.

The '–fcc +folder' switch can be used to automatically specify a folder to receive Fcc:s. More than one folder, each preceeded by '–fcc' can be named.

A reply template is simply a format file. See *mh–format* (5) for the details.

In addition to the standard escapes, *repl* also recognizes the following additional escape:

escape	*substitution*
fcc	any '–fcc folder' switches

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

Upon exiting from the editor, *repl* will invoke the *whatnow* program. See *whatnow* (1) for a discussion of available options. The invocation of this program can be inhibited by using the '–nowhatnowproc' switch. (In truth of fact, it is the *whatnow* program which starts the initial edit. Hence, '–nowhatnowproc' will prevent any edit from occurring.)

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/replcomps	The reply template
or <mh–dir>/replcomps	Rather than the standard template
$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
<mh–dir>/draft	The draft file

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Alternate-Mailboxes:	To determine the user's mailboxes
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder
Draft-Folder:	To find the default draft-folder
Editor:	To override the default editor
Msg-Protect:	To set mode when creating a new message (draft)
fileproc:	Program to refile the message
mhlproc:	Program to filter message being replied-to
whatnowproc:	Program to ask the "What now?" questions

See Also

comp(1), dist(1), forw(1), send(1), whatnow(1), mh-format(5)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msg' defaults to cur
'-nocc all' at ATHENA sites, '-cc all' otherwise
'-format'
'-noannotate'
'-nodraftfolder'
'-noinplace'
'-noquery'
'-width 72'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. The message replied-to will become the current message.

Bugs

If any addresses occur in the reply template, addresses in the template that do not contain hosts are defaulted incorrectly. Instead of using the localhost for the default, *repl* uses the sender's host. Moral of the story: if you're going to include addresses in a reply template, include the host portion of the address.

If *whatnowproc* is *whatnow*, then *repl* uses a built-in *whatnow*, it does not actually run the *whatnow* program. Hence, if you define your own *whatnowproc*, don't call it *whatnow* since *repl* won't run it.

If your current working directory is not writable, the link named "@" is not available.

NAME

rmf – remove folder

SYNOPSIS

rmf [+folder] [–interactive] [–nointeractive] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Rmf removes all of the messages (files) within the specified (or default) folder, and then removes the folder (directory) itself. If there are any files within the folder which are not a part of *MH*, they will *not* be removed, and an error will be produced. If the folder is given explicitly or the '–nointeractive' option is given, then the folder will be removed without confirmation. Otherwise, the user will be asked for confirmation. If *rmf* can't find the current folder, for some reason, the folder to be removed defaults to '+inbox' with confirmation.

Rmf irreversibly deletes messages that don't have other links, so use it with caution.

If the folder being removed is a subfolder, the parent folder will become the new current folder, and *rmf* will produce a message telling the user this has happened. This provides an easy mechanism for selecting a set of messages, operating on the list, then removing the list and returning to the current folder from which the list was extracted.

Rmf of a read–only folder will delete the private sequence and cur information (i.e., "atr–*seq–folder*" entries) from the profile without affecting the folder itself.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

rmm(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder, usually with confirmation
'–interactive' if +folder' not given, '–nointeractive' otherwise

Context

Rmf will set the current folder to the parent folder if a subfolder is removed; or if the current folder is removed, it will make "inbox" current. Otherwise, it doesn't change the current folder or message.

Bugs

Although intuitively one would suspect that *rmf* works recursively, it does not. Hence if you have a sub–folder within a folder, in order to *rmf* the parent, you must first *rmf* each of the children.

NAME

rmm – remove messages

SYNOPSIS

rmm [+folder] [msgs] [-help]

DESCRIPTION

Rmm removes the specified messages by renaming the message files with preceding commas. Many sites consider files that start with a comma to be a temporary backup, and arrange for *cron* (8) to remove such files once a day.

If the user has a profile component such as

rmmproc: /bin/rm

then instead of simply renaming the message file, *rmm* will call the named program to delete the file. Note that at most installations, *cron* (8) is told to remove files that begin with a comma once a night.

Some users of csh prefer the following:

alias rmm 'refile +d'

where folder +d is a folder for deleted messages, and

alias mexp 'rm `mhpath +d all`'

is used to "expunge" deleted messages.

The current message is not changed by *rmm*, so a *next* will advance to the next message in the folder as expected.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder
rmmproc:	Program to delete the message

See Also

rmf(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to cur

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder.

NAME

scan – produce a one line per message scan listing

SYNOPSIS

scan [+folder] [msgs] [–clear] [–noclear] [–form formatfile] [–format string] [–header] [–noheader] [–width columns] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Scan produces a one–line–per–message listing of the specified messages. Each *scan* line contains the message number (name), the date, the "From:" field, the "Subject" field, and, if room allows, some of the body of the message. For example:

```
15+  7/ 5 Dcrocker  nned   ≪Last week I asked some of
16 - 7/ 5 dcrocker  message id format   ≪I recommend
18   7/ 6 Obrien    Re: Exit status from mkdir
19   7/ 7 Obrien    "scan" listing format in MH
```

The '+' on message 15 indicates that it is the current message. The '–' on message 16 indicates that it has been replied to, as indicated by a "Replied:" component produced by an '–annotate' switch to the *repl* command.

If there is sufficient room left on the *scan* line after the subject, the line will be filled with text from the body, preceded by <<, and terminated by >> if the body is sufficiently short. *Scan* actually reads each of the specified messages and parses them to extract the desired fields. During parsing, appropriate error messages will be produced if there are format errors in any of the messages.

The '–header' switch produces a header line prior to the *scan* listing. Currently, the name of the folder and the current date and time are output (see the **HISTORY** section for more information).

If the '–clear' switch is used and *scan's* output is directed to a terminal, then *scan* will consult the **$TERM** and **$TERMCAP** environment variables to determine your terminal type in order to find out how to clear the screen prior to exiting. If the '–clear' switch is used and *scan's* output is not directed to a terminal (e.g., a pipe or a file), then *scan* will send a formfeed prior to exiting.

For example, the command:

```
(scan –clear –header; show all –show pr –f) | lpr
```

produces a scan listing of the current folder, followed by a formfeed, followed by a formatted listing of all messages in the folder, one per page. Omitting '–show pr –f' will cause the messages to be concatenated, separated by a one–line header and two blank lines.

If *scan* encounters a message without a "Date:" field, rather than leaving that portion of the scan listing blank, the date is filled–in with the last write date of the message, and post–fixed with a '*'. This is particularly handy for scanning a *draft folder*, as message drafts usually aren't allowed to have dates in them.

To override the output format used by *scan*, the '–format string' or '–format file' switches are used. This permits individual fields of the scan listing to be extracted with ease. The string is

simply a format string and the file is simply a format file. See *mh-format* (5) for the details.

In addition to the standard escapes, *scan* also recognizes the following additional escape:

escape	*substitution*
body	the (compressed) first part of the body

On hosts where *MH* was configured with the BERK option, *scan* has two other switches: '-reverse', and '-noreverse'. These make *scan* list the messages in reverse order. In addition, *scan* will update the *MH* context prior to starting the listing, so interrupting a long *scan* listing preserves the new context. *MH* purists hate both of these ideas.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Alternate-Mailboxes:	To determine the user's mailboxes
Current-Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

inc(1), pick(1), show(1), mh-format(5)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the folder current
'msgs' defaults to all
'-format' defaulted as described above
'-noheader'
'-width' defaulted to the width of the terminal

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder.

History

Prior to using the format string mechanism, '-header' used to generate a heading saying what each column in the listing was. Format strings prevent this from happening.

Bugs

The argument to the '-format' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *scan*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double-quotes.

NAME

send – send a message

SYNOPSIS

send [–alias aliasfile] [–draft] [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [–filter filterfile] [–nofilter] [–format] [–noformat] [–forward] [–noforward] [–msgid] [–nomsgid] [–push] [–nopush] [–verbose] [–noverbose] [–watch] [–nowatch] [–width columns] [file ...] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Send will cause each of the specified files to be delivered (via *post* (8)) to each of the destinations in the "To:", "cc:", "Bcc:", and "Fcc:" fields of the message. If *send* is re–distributing a message, as invoked from *dist*, then the corresponding "Resent–xxx" fields are examined instead.

If '–push' is specified, *send* will detach itself from the user's terminal and perform its actions in the background. If *push* 'd and the draft can't be sent, then the '–forward' switch says that draft should be forwarded with the failure notice sent to the user. This differs from putting *send* in the background because the output is trapped and analyzed by *MH*.

If '–verbose' is specified, *send* will indicate the interactions occurring with the transport system, prior to actual delivery. If '–watch' is specified *send* will monitor the delivery of local and network mail. Hence, by specifying both switches, a large detail of information can be gathered about each step of the message's entry into the transport system.

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

Send with no *file* argument will query whether the draft is the intended file, whereas '–draft' will suppress this question. Once the transport system has successfully accepted custody of the message, the file will be renamed with a leading comma, which allows it to be retrieved until the next draft message is sent. If there are errors in the formatting of the message, *send* will abort with a (hopefully) helpful error message.

If a "Bcc:" field is encountered, its addresses will be used for delivery, and the "Bcc:" field will be removed from the message sent to sighted recipients. The blind recipients will receive an entirely new message with a minimal set of headers. Included in the body of the message will be a copy of the message sent to the sighted recipients. If '–filter filterfile' is specified, then this copy is filtered (re–formatted) prior to being sent to the blind recipients.

Prior to sending the message, the fields "From: user@local", and "Date: now" will be appended to the headers in the message. If the environment variable **$SIGNATURE** is set, then its value is used as your personal name when constructing the "From:" line of the message. If this environment variable is not set, then *send* will consult the profile entry "Signature" for this information. On hosts where *MH* was configured with the UCI option, if **$SIGNATURE** is not set and the "Signature" profile entry is not present, then the file **$HOME**/.signature is consulted. If '–msgid' is specified, then a "Message–ID:" field will also be added to the message.

If *send* is re–distributing a message (when invoked by *dist*), then "Resent–" will be prepended to each of these fields: "From:", "Date:", and "Message–ID:". If the message

already contains a "From:" field, then a "Sender: user@local" field will be added as well. (An already existing "Sender:" field is an error!)

By using the '-format' switch, each of the entries in the "To:" and "cc:" fields will be replaced with "standard" format entries. This standard format is designed to be usable by all of the message handlers on the various systems around the Internet. If '-noformat' is given, then headers are output exactly as they appear in the message draft.

If an "Fcc: folder" is encountered, the message will be copied to the specified folder for the sender in the format in which it will appear to any non-Bcc receivers of the message. That is, it will have the appended fields and field reformatting. The "Fcc:" fields will be removed from all outgoing copies of the message.

By using the '-width columns' switch, the user can direct *send* as to how long it should make header lines containing addresses.

By using the '-alias aliasfile' switch, the user can direct *send* to consult the named files for alias definitions (more than one file, each preceded by '-alias', can be named). See *mh-alias* (5) for more information.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Draft-Folder:	To find the default draft-folder
Signature:	To determine the user's mail signature
mailproc:	Program to post failure notices
postproc:	Program to post the message

See Also

comp(1), dist(1), forw(1), repl(1), mh-alias(5), post(8)

Defaults

'file' defaults to <mh-dir>/draft
'-alias /usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases'
'-nodraftfolder'
'-nofilter'
'-format'
'-forward'
'-nomsgid'
'-nopush'
'-noverbose'
'-nowatch'
'-width 72'

Context

None

NAME

show – show (list) messages

SYNOPSIS

show [+folder] [msgs] [–draft] [–header] [–noheader] [–showproc program] [–noshowproc] [switches for *showproc*] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Show lists each of the specified messages to the standard output (typically, the terminal). Typically, the messages are listed exactly as they are, with no reformatting. A program named by the *showproc* profile component is invoked to do the listing, and any switches not recognized by *show* are passed along to that program. The default program is known as *more* (1). To override the default and the *showproc* profile component, use the '–showproc program' switch. For example, '–show pr' will cause the *pr* (1) program to list the messages. The *MH* command *mhl* can be used as a *showproc* to show messages in a more uniform format. Normally, this program is specified as the *showproc* is the user's .mh_profile. See *mhl* (1) for the details. If the '–noshowproc' option is specified, '/bin/cat' is used instead of *showproc*.

The '–header' switch tells *show* to display a one–line description of the message being shown. This description includes the folder and the message number.

If no 'msgs' are specified, the current message is used. If more than one message is specified, *more* will prompt for a <RETURN> prior to listing each message. *more* will list each message, a page at a time. When the end of page is reached, *more* will ring the bell and wait for a <SPACE> or <RETURN>. If a <RETURN> is entered, *more* will print the next line, whereas <SPACE> will print the next screenful. To exit *more*, type "q".

If the standard output is not a terminal, no queries are made, and each file is listed with a one–line header and two lines of separation.

"show –draft" will list the file <mh–dir>/draft if it exists.

If the profile entry "Unseen–Sequence" is present and non–empty, then *show* will remove each of the messages shown from each sequence named by the profile entry. This is similar to the "Previous–Sequence" profile entry supported by all *MH* commands which take 'msgs' or 'msg' arguments.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder
Unseen–Sequence:	To name sequences denoting unseen messages
showproc:	Program to show messages

See Also

mhl(1), more(1), next(1), pick(1), prev(1), scan(1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to cur
'-format'
'-header'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. The last message shown will become the current message.

Bugs

The '-header' switch doesn't work when 'msgs' expands to more than one message. If the *showproc* is *mhl*, then is problem can be circumvented by referencing the "messagename" field in the *mhl* format file.

Show updates the user's context before showing the message. Hence if *show* will mark messages as seen prior to the user actually seeing them. This is generally not a problem, unless the user relies on the "unseen" messages mechanism, and interrupts *show* while it is showing "unseen" messages.

If *showproc* is *mhl*, then *show* uses a built-in *mhl*: it does not actually run the *mhl* program. Hence, if you define your own *showproc*, don't call it *mhl* since *show* won't run it.

If *more* (1) is your showproc (the default), then avoid running *show* in the background with only its standard output piped to another process, as in

```
show | imprint &
```

Due to a bug in *more*, show will go into a "tty input" state. To avoid this problem, re-direct *show*'s diagnostic output as well. For users of *csh*:

```
show |& imprint &
```

For users of *sh*:

```
show 2>&1 | imprint &
```

NAME

sortm – sort messages

SYNOPSIS

sortm [+folder] [msgs] [–datefield field] [–verbose] [–noverbose] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Sortm sorts the specified messages in the named folder according to the chronological order of the "Date:" field of each message. Messages which are in the folder, but not specified by 'msgs', are moved to the end of the folder. If a message does not exist (the folder has a gap), *sortm* may fill the gap if convenient.

The '–verbose' switch directs *sortm* to tell the user the general actions that it is taking to place the folder in sorted order.

The '–datefield field' switch tells *sortm* the name of the field to use when making the date comparison. If the user has a special field in each message, such as "BB–Posted:" or "Delivery–Date:", then the '–datefield' switch can be used to direct *sortm* which field to examine.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Current–Folder:	To find the default current folder

See Also

folder (1)

Defaults

'+folder' defaults to the current folder
'msgs' defaults to all
'–datefield date'
'–noverbose'

Context

If a folder is given, it will become the current folder. If the current message is moved, *sortm* will preserve its status as current.

History

Timezones used to be ignored when comparing dates: they aren't any more.

Bugs

If *sortm* encounters a message without a date–field, or if the message has a date–field that *sortm* cannot parse, then *sortm* attempts to keep the message in the same relative position. This does not always work. For instance, if the first message encountered lacks a date which can be parsed, then it will usually be placed at the end of the messages being sorted.

When *sortm* complains about a message which it can't temporarlly order, it complains about the message number *prior* to sorting. It should indicate what the message number will be *after* sorting.

NAME

vmh – visual front-end to MH

SYNOPSIS

vmh [-prompt string] [-vmhproc program] [-novmhproc] [switches for *vmhproc*] [-help]

DESCRIPTION

vmh is a program which implements the server side of the *MH* window management protocol and uses *curses* (3) routines to maintain a split-screen interface to any program which implements the client side of the protocol. This latter program, called the *vmhproc*, is specified using the '-vmhproc program' switch.

The upshot of all this is that one can run *msh* on a display terminal and get a nice visual interface. To do this, for example, just add the line

mshproc: vmh

to your .mh_profile. (This takes advantage of the fact that *msh* is the default *vmhproc* for *vmh*.)

In order to facilitate things, if the '-novmhproc' switch is given, and *vmh* can't run on the user's terminal, the *vmhproc* is run directly without the window management protocol.

After initializing the protocol, *vmh* prompts the user for a command to be given to the client. Usually, this results in output being sent to one or more windows. If a output to a window would cause it to scroll, *vmh* prompts the user for instructions, roughly permitting the capabilities of *less* or *more* (e.g., the ability to scroll backwards and forwards):

SPACE		advance to the next windowful
RETURN	*	advance to the next line
y	*	retreat to the previous line
d	*	advance to the next ten lines
u	*	retreat to the previous ten lines
g	*	go to an arbitrary line (preceed g with the line number)
G	*	go to the end of the window (if a line number is given, this acts like 'g')
CTRL-L		refresh the entire screen
h		print a help message
q		abort the window

(A '*' indicates that a numeric prefix is meaningful for this command.)

Note that if a command resulted in more than one window's worth of information being displayed, and you allow the command which is generating information for the window to gracefully finish (i.e., you don't use the 'q' command to abort information being sent to the window), then *vmh* will give you one last change to peruse the window. This is useful for scrolling back and forth. Just type 'q' when you're done.

To abnormally terminate *vmh* (without core dump), use <QUIT> (usually CTRL-\). For instance, this does the "right" thing with *bbc* and *msh*.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory

See Also

msh(1)

Defaults

'–prompt (vmh) '
'–vmhproc msh'

Context

None

Bugs

The argument to the '–prompt' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *vmh*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double–quotes.

At present, there is no way to pass signals (e.g., interrupt, quit) to the client. However, generating QUIT when *vmh* is reading a command from the terminal is sufficient to tell the client to go away quickly.

Acts strangely (loses peer or botches window management protocol with peer) on random occasions.

NAME

whatnow – prompting front–end for send

SYNOPSIS

whatnow [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [–editor editor] [–noedit] [–prompt string] [file] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Whatnow is the default program that queries the user about the disposition of a composed draft. It is normally invoked by one of *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, or *repl* after the initial edit.

When started, the editor is started on the draft (unless '–noedit' is given, in which case the initial edit is suppressed). Then, *whatnow* repetitively prompts the user with "What now?" and awaits a response. The valid responses are

display	to list the message being distributed/replied–to on the terminal
edit	to re–edit using the same editor that was used on the preceding round unless a profile entry "<lasteditor>–next: <editor>" names an alternate editor
edit <editor>	to invoke <editor> for further editing
list	to list the draft on the terminal
push	to send the message in the background
quit	to terminate the session and preserve the draft
quit –delete	to terminate, then delete the draft
refile +folder	to refile the draft into the given folder
send	to send the message
send –watch	to cause the delivery process to be monitored
whom	to list the addresses that the message will go to
whom –check	to list the addresses and verify that they are acceptable to the transport service

For the **edit** response, any valid switch to the editor is valid. Similarly, for the **send** and **whom** responses, any valid switch to *send* (1) and *whom* (1) commands, respectively, are valid. For the **push** response, any valid switch to *send* (1) is valid (as this merely invokes *send* with the '–push' option). For the *refile* response, any valid switch to the *fileproc* is valid. For the **display** and **list** responses, any valid argument to the *lproc* is valid. If any non–switch arguments are present, then the pathname of the draft will be excluded from the argument list given to the *lproc* (this is useful for listing another *MH* message).

See *mh–profile* (5) for further information about how editors are used by MH. It also discusses how complex environment variables can be used to direct *whatnow*'s actions.

The '–prompt string' switch sets the prompting string for *whatnow*.

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
<mh–dir>/draft	The draft file

Profile Components

Path:	To determine the user's MH directory
Draft-Folder:	To find the default draft-folder
Editor:	To override the default editor
<lasteditor>-next:	To name an editor to be used after exit from <lasteditor>
fileproc:	Program to refile the message
lproc:	Program to list the contents of a message
sendproc:	Program to use to send the message
whomproc:	Program to determine who a message would go to

See Also

send(1), whom(1)

Defaults

'-prompt "What Now? "'

Context

None

Bugs

The argument to the '-prompt' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *whatnow*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double-quotes.

If *sendproc* is *send*, then *whatnow* uses a built-in *send*, it does not actually run the *send* program. Hence, if you define your own *sendproc*, don't call it *send* since *whatnow* won't run it.

NAME

whom – report to whom a message would go

SYNOPSIS

whom [–alias aliasfile] [–check] [–nocheck] [–draft] [–draftfolder +folder] [–draftmessage msg] [–nodraftfolder] [file] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Whom is used to expand the headers of a message into a set of addresses and optionally verify that those addresses are deliverable at that time (if '–check' is given).

The '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg' switches invoke the *MH* draft folder facility. This is an advanced (and highly useful) feature. Consult the **Advanced Features** section of the *MH* manual for more information.

By using the '–alias aliasfile' switch, the user can direct *send* to consult the named files for alias definitions (more than one file, each preceeded by '–alias', can be named). See *mh–alias* (5) for more information.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Draft–Folder:	To find the default draft–folder
postproc:	Program to post the message

See Also

mh–alias(5), post(8)

Defaults

'file' defaults to <mh–dir>/draft
'–nocheck'
'–alias /usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases'

Context

None

Bugs

With the '–check' option, *whom* makes no guarantees that the addresses listed as being ok are really deliverable, rather, an address being listed as ok means that at the time that *whom* was run the address was thought to be deliverable by the transport service. For local addresses, this is absolute; for network addresses, it means that the host is known; for uucp addresses, it (often) means that the *UUCP* network is available for use.

MORE DETAILS

This section describes some of the more intense points of the *MH* system, by expanding on topics previously discussed. The format presented conforms to the standard form for the description of UNIX documentation.

NAME

mh-alias - alias file for MH message system

SYNOPSIS

any *MH* command

DESCRIPTION

This describes both *MH* personal alias files and the (primary) alias file for mail delivery, the file

/usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases

It does **not** describe aliases files used by the message transport system. Each line of the alias file has the format:

alias : address-group

or

alias ; address-group

or

< alias-file

where:

```
address-group  :=  address-list
                |  "<" file
                |  "=" UNIX-group
                |  "+" UNIX-group
                |  "*"

address-list   :=  address
                |  address-list, address
```

Continuation lines in alias files end with '\' followed by the newline character.

Alias-file and file are UNIX file names. UNIX-group is a group name (or number) from */etc/group*. An address is a "simple" Internet-style address. Througout this file, case is ignored, except for alias-file names.

If the line starts with a '<', then the file named after the '<' is read for more alias definitions. The reading is done recursively, so a '<' may occur in the beginning of an alias file with the expected results.

If the address-group starts with a '<', then the file named after the '<' is read and its contents are added to the address-list for the alias.

If the address-group starts with an '=', then the file */etc/group* is consulted for the UNIX-group named after the '='. Each login name occurring as a member of the group is added to the address-list for the alias.

In contrast, if the address-group starts with a '+', then the file */etc/group* is consulted to determine the group-id of the UNIX-group named after the '+'. Each login name occurring in the */etc/passwd* file whose group-id is indicated by this group is added to the address-list

for the alias.

If the address-group is simply "*", then the file */etc/passwd* is consulted and all login names with a userid greater than some magic number (usually 200) are added to the address-list for the alias.

In match, a trailing * on an alias will match just about anything appropriate. (See example below.)

An approximation of the way aliases are resolved at posting time is (it's not really done this way):

1) Build a list of all addresses from the message to be delivered, eliminating duplicate addresses.

2) If this draft originated on the local host, then for those addresses in the message that have no host specified, perform alias resolution.

3) For each line in the alias file, compare "alias" against all of the existing addresses. If a match, remove the matched "alias" from the address list, and add each new address in the address-group to the address list if it is not already on the list. The alias itself is not usually output, rather the address-group that the alias maps to is output instead. If "alias" is terminated with a ';' instead of a ':', then both the "alias" and the address are output in the correct format. (This makes replies possible since *MH* aliases and personal aliases are unknown to the mail transport system.)

Since the alias file is read line by line, forward references work, but backward references are not recognized, thus, there is no recursion.

Example:

```
</usr/new/lib/mh/BBoardAliases
sgroup: fred, fear, freida
fred: frated@UCI
UNIX-committee: <unix.aliases
staff: =staff
wheels: +wheel
everyone: *
news.*: news
```

The first line says that more aliases should immediately be read from the file */usr/new/lib/mh/BBoardAliases*. Following this, "fred" is defined as an alias for "frated@UCI", and "sgroup" is defined as an alias for the three names "frated@UCI", "fear", and "freida". Next, the definition of "UNIX-committee" is given by reading the file *unix.aliases* in the users *MH* directory, "staff" is defined as all users who are listed as members of the group "staff" in the */etc/group* file, and "wheels" is defined as all users whose group-id in */etc/passwd* is equivalent to the "wheel" group. Finally, "everyone" is defined as all users with a user-id in */etc/passwd* greater than 200, and all aliases of the form "news.<anything>" are defined to be "news".

The key thing to understand about aliasing in *MH* is that aliases in *MH* alias files are expanded into the headers of messages posted. This aliasing occurs first, at posting time, without the knowledge of the message transport system. In contrast, once the message transport system is given a message to deliver to a list of addresses, for each address that appears

to be local, a system-wide alias file is consulted. These aliases are NOT expanded into the headers of messages delivered.

Helpful Hints

To use aliasing in *MH* quickly, do the following:

First, in your *.mh_profile*, choose a name for your primary alias file, say "aliases", and add three lines:

```
ali: -alias aliases
send: -alias aliases
whom: -alias ailases
```

Second, create the file "aliases" in your *MH* directory.

Third, start adding aliases to your "aliases" file as appropriate.

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases Primary alias file

Profile Components

None

See Also

ali(1), send(1), whom(1), group(5), passwd(5), conflict(8), post(8)

Defaults

None

Context

None

History

In previous releases of *MH*, only a single, system-wide mh-alias file was supported. This led to a number of problems, since only mail-system administrators were capable of (un)defining aliases. Hence, the semantics of mh-alias were extended to support personal alias files. Users of *MH* no longer need to bother mail-system administrators for keeping information in the system-wide alias file, as each *MH* user can create/modify/remove aliases at will from any number of personal files.

Bugs

Although the forward-referencing semantics of *mh-alias* files prevent recursion, the "< alias-file" command may defeat this. Since the number of file descriptors is finite (and very limited), such infinite recursion will terminate with a meaningless diagnostic when all the fds are used up.

NAME

mh-format - format file for MH message system

SYNOPSIS

some *MH* commands

DESCRIPTION

Several *MH* commands utilize either a *format* string or a *format* file during their execution. For example, *scan* (1) uses a format string which directs it how to generate the scan listing for each message; *repl* (1) uses a format file which directs it how to generate the reply to a message, and so on.

Format strings are designed to be efficiently parsed by *MH* since they represent an integral part of *MH*. This means that novice, casual, or even advanced users of *MH* should deal with them. It suffices to have your local *MH* expert actually write new format commands or modify existing ones. This manual section explains how to do just that.

A format string is similar to a *printf* (3) string, but uses multi-letter '%'-escapes. When specifying a string, the usual C backslash characters are honored: '\b', '\f', '\n', '\r', and '\t'. Continuation lines in format files end with '\' followed by the newline character.

The interpretation model is based on a simple machine with two registers, *num* and *str*. The former contains an integer value, the latter a string value. When an escape is processed, if it requires an argument, it reads the current value of either *num* or *str*; and, if it returns a value, it writes either *num* or *str*.

Escapes are of three types: *components*, *functions*, and, *control*. A component escape is specified as '%{name}', and is created for each header found in the message being processed. For example '%{date} refers to the "Date:" field of the appropriate message. A component escape is always string valued.

A control escape is one of: '%<escape', '%|', and '%>', which correspond to if-then-else constructs: if 'escape' is non-zero (for integer-valued escapes), or non-empty (for string-valued escapes), then everything up to '%|' or '%>' (whichever comes first) is interpreted; otherwise, then skip to '%|' or '%>' (whichever comes first) and start interpreting again.

A function escape is specified as '%(name)', and is statically defined. Here is the list:

escape	*argument*		*returnsinterpretation*
nonzero	integer	integer	*num* is non-zero
zero	integer	integer	*num* is zero
eq	integer	integer	*num* == width
ne	integer	integer	*num* != width
gt	integer	integer	width > *num*
null	string	integer	*str* is empty
nonnull	string	integer	*str* is non-empty
putstr	string		print *str*
putstrf	string		print *str* in the specified width (e.g., %20(putstrf{subject})
putnum	integer		print *num*
putnumf	integer		print *num* in the specified width (e.g., %4(putnumf(msg))
msg		integer	message number

cur		integer	message is current
size		integer	size of message
strlen	string	integer	length of *str*
me		string	the user's mailbox
plus		integer	add width to *num*
minus		integer	subtract *num* from width
charleft		integer	space left in output buffer
timenow		integer	seconds since the UNIX epoch

When *str* is a date, these escapes are useful:

escape	*argument*		*returnsinterpretation*
sec	string	integer	seconds of the minute
min	string	integer	minutes of the day
hour	string	integer	hours of the day (24 hour clock)
mday	string	integer	day of the month
mon	string	integer	month of the year
wday	string	integer	day of the week (Sunday=0)
year	string	integer	year of the century
yday	string	integer	day of the year
dst	string	integer	daylight savings in effect
zone	string	integer	timezone
sday	string	integer	day of the week known 1 for explicit in date 0 for implicit (*MH* figured it out) -1 for unknown (*MH* couldn't figure it out)
clock	string	integer	seconds since the UNIX epoch
rclock	string	integer	seconds prior to current time
month	string	string	month of the year
lmonth	string	string	month of the year (long form)
tzone	string	string	timezone
day	string	string	day of the week
weekday	string	string	day of the week (long)
tws	string	string	official 822 rendering of the date
pretty	string	string	a more user-friendly rendering
nodate	string		date wasn't parseable

When *str* is an address, these escapes are useful:

escape	*argument*		*returnsinterpretation*
pers	string	string	the personal name of the address
mbox	string	string	the local part of the address
host	string	string	the domain part of the address
path	string	string	the route part of the address
type	string	integer	the type of host -1 for uucp 0 for local 1 for network 2 for unknown
nohost	string	integer	no host was present in the address
ingrp	string	integer	the address appeared inside a group
gname	string	string	name of the group (present for first address only)
note	string	string	commentary text
proper	string	string	official 822 rendering of the address

friendly	string	string	a more user-friendly rendering
mymbox	string		the address refers to the user's mailbox
formataddr	string		print *str* in an address list

With all this in mind, here's the default format string for *scan*. It's been divided into several pieces for readability. The first part is:

```
%4(putnumf(msg))%<(cur)+%| %>%<{replied}-%| %>
```

which says that the message number should be printed in four digits, if the message is the current message then a '+' else a space should be printed, and if a "Replied:" field is present then a '-' else a space should be printed. Next:

```
%02(putnumf(mon{date}))/%02(putnumf(mday{date}))
```

the hours and minutes are printed in two digits (zero filled). Next,

```
%<{date} %|*>
```

If no "Date:" field was present, then a '*' is printed, otherwise a space. Next,

```
%<(mymbox{from})To:%14(putstrf(friendly{to}))
```

if the message is from me, print 'To:' followed by a "user-friendly" rendering of the first address in the "To:" field. Continuing,

```
%|%17(putstrf(friendly{from}))%>
```

if the message isn't from me, then the print the "From:" address is printed. And finally,

```
%{subject}<<%{body}>>
```

the subject and initial body are printed.

Although this seems complicated, in point of fact, this method is flexible enough to extract individual fields and print them in any format the user desires.

If the '-form formatfile' switch is given, *scan* will treat each line in the named file as a format string and act accordingly. This lets the user employ canned scan listing formats. Take a look at the three files /usr/new/lib/mh/scan.time, /usr/new/lib/mh/scan.size, and /usr/new/lib/mh/scan.timely.

Files

None

Profile Components

None

See Also

ap(8), dp(8)

Defaults

None

Context

None

Bugs

On hosts where *MH* was configured with the BERK option, address parsing is not enabled.

NAME

mh-mail – message format for MH message system

SYNOPSIS

any *MH* command

DESCRIPTION

MH processes messages in a particular format. It should be noted that although neither Bell nor Berkeley mailers produce message files in the format that *MH* prefers, *MH* can read message files in that antiquated format.

Each user possesses a mail drop box which initially receives all messages processed by *post* (8). *Inc* (1) will read from that drop box and incorporate the new messages found there into the user's own mail folders (typically '+inbox'). The mail drop box consists of one or more messages.

Messages are expected to consist of lines of text. Graphics and binary data are not handled. No data compression is accepted. All text is clear ASCII 7-bit data.

The general "memo" framework of RFC-822 is used. A message consists of a block of information in a rigid format, followed by general text with no specified format. The rigidly formatted first part of a message is called the header, and the free-format portion is called the body. The header must always exist, but the body is optional. These parts are separated by an empty line, i.e., two consecutive newline characters. Within *MH*, the header and body may be separated by a line consisting of dashes:

```
To:
cc:
Subject:
--------
```

The header is composed of one or more header items. Each header item can be viewed as a single logical line of ASCII characters. If the text of a header item extends across several real lines, the continuation lines are indicated by leading spaces or tabs.

Each header item is called a component and is composed of a keyword or name, along with associated text. The keyword begins at the left margin, may NOT contain spaces or tabs, may not exceed 63 characters (as specified by RFC-822), and is terminated by a colon (':'). Certain components (as identified by their keywords) must follow rigidly defined formats in their text portions.

The text for most formatted components (e.g., "Date:" and "Message-Id:") is produced automatically. The only ones entered by the user are address fields such as "To:", "cc:", etc. Internet addresses are assigned mailbox names and host computer specifications. The rough format is "local@domain", such as "MH@UCI", or "MH@UCI-ICSA.ARPA". Multiple addresses are separated by commas. A missing host/domain is assumed to be the local host/domain.

As mentioned above, a blank line (or a line of dashes) signals that all following text up to the end of the file is the body. No formatting is expected or enforced within the body.

Following is a list of header components that are considered meaningful to various MH

programs.

Date:
Added by *post* (8), contains date and time of the message's entry into the transport system.

From:
Added by *post* (8), contains the address of the author or authors (may be more than one if a "Sender:" field is present). Replies are typically directed to addresses in the "Reply-To:" or "From:" field (the former has precedence if present).

Sender:
Added by *post* (8) in the event that the message already has a "From:" line. This line contains the address of the actual sender. Replies are never sent to addresses in the "Sender:" field.

To:
Contains addresses of primary recipients.

cc:
Contains addresses of secondary recipients.

Bcc:
Still more recipients. However, the "Bcc:" line is not copied onto the message as delivered, so these recipients are not listed. *MH* uses an encapsulation method for blind copies, see *send* (1).

Fcc:
Causes *post* (8) to copy the message into the specified folder for the sender, if the message was successfully given to the transport system.

Message-ID:
A unique message identifier added by *post* (8) if the '-msgid' flag is set.

Subject:
Sender's commentary. It is displayed by *scan* (1).

In-Reply-To:
A commentary line added by *repl* (1) when replying to a message.

Resent-Date:
Added when redistributing a message by *post* (8).

Resent-From:
Added when redistributing a message by *post* (8).

Resent-To:
New recipients for a message resent by *dist* (1).

Resent-cc:
Still more recipients. See "cc:" and "Resent-To:".

Resent-Bcc:
Even more recipients. See "Bcc:" and "Resent-To:".

Resent-Fcc:
Copy resent message into a folder. See "Fcc:" and "Resent-To:".

Resent-Message-Id:
A unique identifier glued on by *post* (8) if the '-msgid' flag is set. See "Message-Id:" and "Resent-To:".

Resent:
Annotation for *dist* (1) under the '-annotate' option.

Forwarded:
Annotation for *forw* (1) under the '-annotate' option.

Replied:
Annotation for *repl* (1) under the '-annotate' option.

Files

/usr/spool/mail/$USER	Location of mail drop

Profile Components
None

See Also
Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages (aka RFC-822)

Defaults
None

Context
None

NAME

.mh_profile – user customization for MH message system

SYNOPSIS

any *MH* command

DESCRIPTION

Each user of *MH* is expected to have a file named *.mh_profile* in his or her home directory. This file contains a set of user parameters used by some or all of the *MH* family of programs. Each line of the file is of the format

profile-component: *value*

The possible profile components are exemplified below. Only 'Path:' is mandatory. The others are optional; some have default values if they are not present. In the notation used below, (profile, default) indicates whether the information is kept in the user's *MH* profile or *MH* context, and indicates what the default value is.

Path: Mail
Locates *MH* transactions in directory "Mail". (profile, no default)

context: context
Declares the location of the *MH* context file, see the **HISTORY** section below. (profile, default: <mh-dir>/context)

Current-Folder: inbox
Keeps track of the current open folder. (context, default: +inbox)

Previous-Sequence: pseq
Names the sequences which should be defined as the 'msgs' or 'msg' argument given to the program. If not present, or empty, no sequences are defined. Otherwise, for each name given, the sequence is first zero'd and then each message is added to the sequence. (profile, no default)

Sequence-Negation: not
Defines the string which, when prefixed to a sequence name, negates that sequence. Hence, "notseen" means all those messages that are not a member of the sequence "seen". (profile, no default)

Unseen-Sequence: unseen
Names the sequences which should be defined as those messages recently incorporated by *inc*. *Show* knows to remove messages from this sequence once it thinks they have been seen. If not present, or empty, no sequences are defined. Otherwise, for each name given, the sequence is first zero'd and then each message is added to the sequence. (profile, no default)

mh-sequences: .mh_sequences
The name of the file in each folder which defines public sequences. To disable the use of public sequences, leave the value portion of this entry blank. (profile, default: .mh_sequences)

atr-*seq-folder*: 172 178-181 212

Keeps track of the private sequence called *seq* in the specified folder. (context, no default)

Editor: /usr/ucb/ex
Defines editor to be used by *comp* (1), *dist* (1), *forw* (1), and *repl* (1). (profile, default: prompter)

Msg-Protect: 644
Defines octal protection bits for message files. See *chmod* (1) for an explanation of the octal number. (profile, default: 0644)

Folder-Protect: 711
Defines protection bits for folder directories. (profile, default: 0711)

program: default switches
Sets default switches to be used whenever the mh program *program* is invoked. For example, one could override the *Editor*: profile component when replying to messages by adding a component such as:
repl: -editor /bin/ed
(profile, no defaults)

lasteditor-next: nexteditor
Names "nexteditor" to be the default editor after using "lasteditor". This takes effect at "What now?" level in *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl*. After editing the draft with "lasteditor", the default editor is set to be "nexteditor". If the user types "edit" without any arguments to "What now?", then "nexteditor" is used. (profile, no default)

bboards: system
Tells *bbc* which BBoards you are interested in. (profile, default: system)

Folder-Stack: *folders*
The contents of the folder-stack for the *folder* command. (context, no default)

mhe:
If present, tells *inc* to compose an *MHE* auditfile in addition to its other tasks. *MHE* is Brian Reid's *Emacs* front-end for *MH*. An early version is supplied with the *mh.6* distribution. (profile, no default)

Alternate-Mailboxes: mh@uci-750a, bug-mh*
Tells *repl* and *scan* which addresses are really yours. In this way, *repl* knows which addresses should be included in the reply, and *scan* knows if the message really originated from you. Addresses must be separated by a comma, and the hostnames listed should be the "official" hostnames for the mailboxes you indicate, as local nicknames for hosts are not replaced with their official site names. For each address, if a host is not given, then that address on any host is considered to be you. In addition, an asterisk ('*') may appear at either or both ends of the mailbox and host to indicate wild-card matching. (profile, default: your user-id)

Draft-Folder: drafts
Indicates a default draft folder for *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl*. (profile, no

default)

digest-issue-*list*: 1
Tells *forw* the last issue of the last volume sent for the digest *list*. (context, no default)

digest-volume-*list*: 1
Tells *forw* the last volume sent for the digest *list*. (context, no default)

MailDrop: .mail
Tells *inc* your maildrop, if different from the default. This is superceded by the **$MAILDROP** environment variable. (profile, default: /usr/spool/mail/$USER)

Signature: Rand MH System (agent: Marshall Rose)
Tells *send* your mail signature. This is superceded by the **$SIGNATURE** environment variable. On hosts where *MH* was configured with the UCI option, if **$SIGNATURE** is not set and this profile entry is not present, the file $HOME/.signature is consulted. (profile, no default)

The following profile elements are used whenever an *MH* program invokes some other program such as *more* (1). The *.mh_profile* can be used to select alternate programs if the user wishes. The default values are given in the examples.

fileproc:	/usr/new/mh/refile
incproc:	/usr/new/mh/inc
installproc:	/usr/new/lib/mh/install-mh
lproc:	/usr/ucb/more
mailproc:	/usr/new/mh/mhmail
mhlproc:	/usr/new/lib/mh/mhl
moreproc:	/usr/ucb/more
mshproc:	/usr/new/mh/msh
packproc:	/usr/new/mh/packf
postproc:	/usr/new/lib/mh/post
rmmproc:	none
rmfproc:	/usr/new/mh/rmf
sendproc:	/usr/new/mh/send
showproc:	/usr/ucb/more
whatnowproc:	/usr/new/mh/whatnow
whomproc:	/usr/new/mh/whom

If you define the environment variable **$MH**, you can specify a profile other than *.mh_profile* to be read by the *MH* programs that you invoke. If the value of **$MH** is not absolute, (i.e., does not begin with a /), it will be presumed to start from the current working directory. This is one of the very few exceptions in *MH* where non-absolute pathnames are not considered relative to the user's *MH* directory.

Similarly, if you define the environment variable **$MHCONTEXT**, you can specify a context other than the normal context file (as specified in the *MH* profile). As always, unless the value of **$MHCONTEXT** is absolute, it will be presumed to start from your *MH* directory.

MH programs also support other environment variables:

$MAILDROP : tells *inc* the default maildrop
This supercedes the "MailDrop:" profile entry.

$SIGNATURE : tells *send* and *post* your mail signature
This supercedes the "Signature:" profile entry.

$HOME : tells all *MH* programs your home directory

$SHELL : tells *bbl* the default shell to run

$TERM : tells *MH* your terminal type
The **$TERMCAP** environment variable is also consulted. In particular, these tells *scan* and *mhl* how to clear your terminal, and how many columns wide your terminal is. They also tell *mhl* how many lines long your terminal screen is.

$editalt : the alternate message
This is set by *dist* and *repl* during edit sessions so you can peruse the message being distributed or replied-to. The message is also available through a link called "@" in the current directory if your current working directory and the folder the message lives in are on the same UNIX filesystem.

$mhdraft : the path to the working draft
This is set by *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* to tell the *whatnowproc* which file to ask "What now?" questions about. In addition, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* set **$mhfolder** if appropriate. Further, *dist* and *repl* set **$mhaltmsg** to tell the *whatnowproc* about an alternate message associated with the draft (the message being distributed or replied–to), and *dist* sets **$mhdist** to tell the *whatnowproc* that message re–distribution is occurring. Also, **$mheditor** is set to tell the *whatnowproc* the user's choice of editor (unless overridden by '–noedit'). Similarly, **$mhuse** may be set by *comp*. Finally, **$mhmessages** is set by *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* if annotations are to occur (along with **$mhannotate**, and **$mhinplace**). It's amazing all the information that has to get passed via environment variables to make the "What now?" interface look squeaky clean to the *MH* user, isn't it? The reason for all this is that the *MH* user can select *any* program as the *whatnowproc*, including one of the standard shells. As a result, it's not possible to pass information via an argument list.
If the WHATNOW option was set during *MH* configuration (type '–help' to an *MH* command to find out), and if this environment variable is set, if the commands *refile*, *send*, *show*, or *whom* are not given any 'msgs' arguments, then they will default to using the file indicated by **$mhdraft**. This is useful for getting the default behavior supplied by the default *whatnowproc*.

$mhfolder : the folder containing the alternate message
This is set by *dist* and *repl* during edit sessions so you can peruse other messages in the current folder besides the one being distributed or replied-to. The **$mhfolder** environment variable is also set by *show*, *prev*, and *next* for use by *mhl*.

$MHBBRC :
If you define the environment variable $MHBBRC, you can specify a BBoards information file other than *.bbrc* to be read by *bbc*. If the value of **$MHBBRC** is not absolute, (i.e., does not begin with a /), it will be presumed to start from the current working directory.

$MHFD :

If the OVERHEAD option was set during *MH* configuration (type '-help' to an *MH* command to find out), then if this environment variable is set, *MH* considers it to be the number of a file-descriptor which is opened, read-only to the *MH* profile. Similarly, if the environment variable **$MHCONTEXTFD** is set, this is the number of a file-descriptor which is opened read-only to the *MH* context. This feature of *MH* is experimental, and is used to examine possible speed improvements for *MH* startup. Note that these environment variables must be set and non-empty to enable this feature. However, if OVERHEAD is enabled during *MH* configuration, then when *MH* programs call other *MH* programs, this scheme is used. These file-descriptors are not closed throughout the execution of the *MH* program, so children may take advantage of this. This approach is thought to be completely safe and does result in some performance enhancements.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
or $MH	Rather than the standard profile
<mh-dir>/context	The user context
or $CONTEXT	Rather than the standard context
<folder>/.mh_sequences	Public sequences for <folder>

Profile Components

All

See Also

mh(1), environ(5)

Defaults

None

Context

All

History

In previous versions of *MH*, the current-message value of a writable folder was kept in a file called "cur" in the folder itself. In *mh.3*, the *.mh_profile* contained the current-message values for all folders, regardless of their writability.

In all versions of *MH* since *mh.4*, the *.mh_profile* contains only static information, which *MH* programs will **NOT** update. Changes in context are made to the *context* file kept in the users MH *directory*. This includes, but is not limited to: the "Current-Folder" entry and all private sequence information. Public sequence information is kept in a file called *.mh_sequences* in each folder.

To convert from the format used in releases of *MH* prior to the format used in the *mh.4* release, *install-mh* should be invoked with the '-compat' switch. This generally happens automatically on *MH* systems generated with the "COMPAT" option during *MH* configuration.

The *.mh_profile* may override the path of the *context* file, by specifying a "context" entry (this must be in lower-case). If the entry is not absolute (does not start with a /), then it is interpreted relative to the user's *MH* directory. As a result, you can actually have more than one set of private sequences by using different context files.

Bugs

The shell quoting conventions are not available in the .mh_profile. Each token is separated by whitespace.

There is some question as to what kind of arguments should be placed in the profile as options. In order to provide a clear answer, recall command line semantics of all *MH* programs: conflicting switches (e.g., '-header and '-noheader') may occur more than one time on the command line, with the last switch taking effect. Other arguments, such as message sequences, filenames and folders, are always remembered on the invocation line and are not superseded by following arguments of the same type. Hence, it is safe to place only switches (and their arguments) in the profile.

If one finds that an *MH* program is being invoked again and again with the same arguments, and those arguments aren't switches, then there are a few possible solutions to this problem. The first is to create a (soft) link in your *$HOME/bin* directory to the *MH* program of your choice. By giving this link a different name, you can create a new entry in your profile and use an alternate set of defaults for the *MH* command. Similarly, you could create a small shell script which called the *MH* program of your choice with an alternate set of invocation line switches (using links and an alternate profile entry is preferable to this solution).

Finally, the *csh* user could create an alias for the command of the form:

```
alias cmd 'cmd arg1 arg2 ...'
```

In this way, the user can avoid lengthy type-in to the shell, and still give *MH* commands safely. (Recall that some *MH* commands invoke others, and that in all cases, the profile is read, meaning that aliases are disregarded beyond an initial command invocation)

NAME

ap – parse addresses 822–style

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/ap [–form formatfile] [–format string] [–normalize] [–nonormalize]
[–width columns] addrs ... [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Ap is a program that parses addresses according to the ARPA Internet standard. It also understands many non–standard formats. It is useful for seeing how *MH* will interpret an address.

The *ap* program treats each argument as one or more addresses, and prints those addresses out in the official 822–format. Hence, it is usually best to enclose each argument in double–quotes for the shell.

To override the output format used by *ap*, the '–format string' or '–format file' switches are used. This permits individual fields of the address to be extracted with ease. The string is simply a format stringand thefile is simply a format file. See *mh–format* (5) for the details.

In addition to the standard escapes, *scan* also recognizes the following additional escape:

escape	*substitution*
error	a diagnostic if the parse failed

If the '–normalize' switch is given, *ap* will try to track down the official hostname of the address.

Here is the default format string used by *ap*:

```
%<{error}%{error}: %{text}%|%(putstr(proper{text}))%>
```

which says that if an error was detected, print the error, a ':', and the address in error. Otherwise, output the 822–proper format of the address.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile
/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file

Profile Components

None

See Also

dp(8),
Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages (aka RFC–822)

Defaults

'–format' defaults as described above
'–normalize'
'–width' defaults to the width of the terminal

Context

None

Bugs

The argument to the '-format' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *ap*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double-quotes.

On hosts where *MH* was configured with the BERK option, address parsing is not enabled.

NAME

conflict – search for alias/password conflicts

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/conflict [–mail name] [–search directory] [aliasfiles...] [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Conflict is a program that checks to see if the interface between *MH* and transport system is in good shape

Conflict also checks for maildrops in /usr/spool/mail which do not belong to a valid user. It assumes that no user name will start with '.', and thus ignores files in /usr/spool/mail which begin with '.'. It also checks for entries in the *group* (5) file which do not belong to a valid user, and for users who do not have a valid group number. In addition duplicate users and groups are noted.

If the '–mail name' switch is used, then the results will be sent to the specified *name*. Otherwise, the results are sent to the standard output.

The '–search directory' switch can be used to search directories other than /usr/spool/mail and to report anomalies in those directories. The '–search directory' switch can appear more than one time in an invocation to *conflict*.

Conflict should be run under *cron* (8), or whenever system accounting takes place.

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file
/etc/passwd	List of users
/etc/group	List of groups
/usr/new/mh/mhmail	Program to send mail
/usr/spool/mail/	Directory of mail drop

Profile Components

None

See Also

mh–alias(5)

Defaults

'aliasfiles' defaults to /usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases

Context

None

NAME

dp - parse dates 822-style

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/dp [-form formatfile] [-format string] [-width columns] dates ... [-help]

DESCRIPTION

Dp is a program that parses dates according to the ARPA Internet standard. It also understands many non-standard formats, such as those produced by TOPS-20 sites and some UNIX sites using *ctime* (3). It is useful for seeing how *MH* will interpret a date.

The *dp* program treats each argument as a single date, and prints the date out in the official 822-format. Hence, it is usually best to enclose each argument in double-quotes for the shell.

To override the output format used by *dp*, the '-format string' or '-format file' switches are used. This permits individual fields of the address to be extracted with ease. The string is simply a format stringand thefile is simply a format file. See *mh-format* (5) for the details.

Here is the default format string used by *dp*:

```
%<(nodate{text})error: %{text}%|%(putstr(pretty{text}))%>
```

which says that if an error was detected, print the error, a ':', and the date in error. Otherwise, output the 822-proper format of the date.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

None

See Also

ap(8)
Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages (aka RFC-822)

Defaults

'-format' default as described above
'-width' default to the width of the terminal

Context

None

Bugs

The argument to the '-format' switch must be interpreted as a single token by the shell that invokes *dp*. Therefore, one must usually place the argument to this switch inside double-quotes.

NAME

install-mh - initialize the MH environment

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/install-mh [-auto] [-compat]

DESCRIPTION

When a user runs any *MH* program for the first time, the program will invoke *install-mh* (with the '-auto' switch) to query the user for the initial *MH* environment. The user does **NOT** invoke this program directly. The user is asked for the name of the directory that will be designated as the user's *MH* directory. If this directory does not exist, the user is asked if it should be created. Normally, this directory should be under the user's home directory, and has the default name of Mail/. After *install-mh* has written the initial .mh_profile for the user, control returns to the original *MH* program.

As with all *MH* commands, *install-mh* first consults the **$HOME** environment variable to determine the user's home directory. If **$HOME** is not set, then the */etc/passwd* file is consulted.

When converting from *mh.3* to *mh.4*, *install-mh* is automatically invoked with the '-compat' switch.

Files

$HOME/.mh_profile	The user profile

Profile Components

Path:	To set the user's MH directory

Context

With '-auto', the current folder is changed to "inbox".

NAME

post – deliver a message

SYNOPSIS

/usr/new/lib/mh/post [–alias aliasfile] [–filter filterfile] [–nofilter] [–format] [–noformat] [–msgid] [–nomsgid] [–verbose] [–noverbose] [–watch] [–nowatch] [–width columns] file [–help]

DESCRIPTION

Post is the program called by *send* (1) to deliver the message in *file* to local and remote users. In fact, all of the functions attributed to *send* on its manual page are performed by *post*, with *send* acting as a relatively simple preprocessor. Thus, it is *post* which parses the various header fields, appends From: and Date: lines, and interacts with the *SendMail* transport system. *Post* will not normally be called directly by the user.

Post searches the "To:", "cc:", "Bcc:", "Fcc:", and "Resent–xxx:" header lines of the specified message for destination addresses, checks these addresses for validity, and formats them so as to conform to ARPAnet Internet Message Format protocol, unless the '–noformat' flag is set. This will normally cause "*@local–site*" to be appended to each local destination address, as well as any local return addresses. The '–width columns' switch can be used to indicate the preferred length of the header components that contain addresses.

If a "Bcc:" field is encountered, its addresses will be used for delivery, and the "Bcc:" field will be removed from the message sent to sighted recipients. The blind recipients will receive an entirely new message with a minimal set of headers. Included in the body of the message will be a copy of the message sent to the sighted recipients. If '–filter filterfile' is specified, then this copy is filtered (re–formatted) prior to being sent to the blind recipients.

The '–alias aliasfile' switch can be used to specify a file that post should take aliases from. More than one file can be specified, each being preceded with '–alias'. In any event, the primary alias file is read first.

The '–msgid' switch indicates that a "Message–ID:" or "Resent–Message–ID:" field should be added to the header.

The '–verbose' switch indicates that the user should be informed of each step of the posting/filing process.

The '–watch' switch indicates that the user would like to watch the transport system's handling of the message (e.g., local and "fast" delivery).

Post consults the environment variable **$SIGNATURE** to determine the sender's personal name in constructing the "From:" line of the message.

Files

/usr/new/lib/mh/mtstailor	tailor file
/usr/new/mh/refile	Program to process Fcc:s
/usr/new/lib/mh/mhl	Program to process Bcc:s
/usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases	Primary alias file

Profile Components

post does **NOT** consult the user's .mh_profile

See Also

Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages (aka RFC–822), mhmail(1), send(1), mh–mail(5), mh–alias(5)

Defaults

'–alias /usr/new/lib/mh/MailAliases'
'–format'
'–nomsgid'
'–noverbose'
'–width 72'
'–nofilter'

Context

None

Bugs

"Reply–To:" fields are allowed to have groups in them according to the 822 specification, but *post* won't let you use them.

5. REPORTING PROBLEMS

If problems are encountered with an *MH* program, the problems should be reported to the local maintainers of *MH*. When doing this, the name of the program should be reported, along with the version information for the program. To find out what version of an *MH* program is being run, invoke the program with the '–help' switch. In addition to listing the syntax of the command, the program will list information pertaining to its version. This information includes the version of *MH*, the host it was generated on, and the date the program was loaded. A second line of information, found on versions of *MH* after #5.380 include *MH* configuration options. For example,

```
version: MH 6.1 #1[UCI] (nrtc-gremlin) of Wed Nov  6 01:13:53 PST 1985
options: [BSD42] [MHE] [NETWORK] [SENDMTS] [MMDFII] [SMTP] [POP]
```

The '6.1 #1[UCI]' indicates that the program is from the UCI *mh.6* version of *MH*. The program was generated on the host 'nrtc-gremlin' on 'Wed Nov 6 01:13:53 PST 1985'. It's usually a good idea to send the output of the '–help' switch along with your report.

If there is no local *MH* maintainer, try the address **Bug-MH**. If that fails, use the Internet mailbox **Bug-MH@UCI.EDU**.

6. ADVANCED FEATURES

This section describes some features of *MH* that were included strictly for advanced *MH* users. These capabilities permit *MH* to exhibit more powerful behavior for the seasoned *MH* users.

USER-DEFINED SEQUENCES

User-defined sequences allow the *MH* user a tremendous amount of power in dealing with groups of messages in the same folder by allowing the user to bind a group of messages to a meaningful symbolic name. The user may choose any name for a message sequence, as long as it consists of alphanumeric characters and does not conflict with the standard *MH* reserved message names (e.g., "first", etc). After defining a sequence, it can be used wherever an *MH* command expects a 'msg' or 'msgs' argument. Although all *MH* commands expand user-defined sequences as appropriate, there are two commands that allow the user to define and manipulate them: *pick* and *mark*.

Pick and User-Defined Sequences

Most users of *MH* will use user-defined sequences only with the *pick* command. By giving the '-sequence name' switch to *pick* (which can occur more than once on the command line), each sequence named is defined as those messages which *pick* matched according the the selection criteria it was given. Hence,

```
pick -from frated -seq fred
```

finds all those messages in the current folder which were from "frated", creates a sequence called "fred", and then adds them to the sequence. The user could then invoke

```
scan fred
```

to get a *scan* listing of those messages. Note that by default, *pick* creates the named sequences before it adds the selected messages to the sequence. Hence, if the named sequence already existed, the sequence is destroyed prior to being re-defined (nothing happens to the messages that were a part of this sequence, they simply cease to be members of that sequence). By using the '-nozero' switch, this behavior can be inhibited, as in

```
pick -from frated -seq sgroup
pick -from fear -seq sgroup -nozero
pick -from freida -seq sgroup -nozero
```

finds all those messages in the current folder which were from "frated", "fear", or "freida", and defines the sequence called "sgroup" as exactly those messages. These operations amounted to an "inclusive-or" of three selection criteria, using *pick*, one can also generate the "and" of some selection criteria as well:

```
pick -from frated -seq fred
pick -before friday -seq fred fred
```

This example defines the sequence called "fred" as exactly those messages from "frated" that were

dated prior to "friday".[1]

Pick is normally used as a back–quoted command, for example,

```
scan 'pick -from postmaster'
```

Now suppose that the user decides that another command should be issued, using exactly those messages. Since, *pick* wasn't given a '–sequence name' argument in this example, the user would end–up typing the entire back–quoted command again. A simpler way is to add a default sequence name to the .mh_profile. For example,

```
pick: -seq select -list
```

will tell *pick* to always define the sequence "select" whenever it's run. The '-list' is necessary since the '–sequence name' switch sets '–nolist' whenever the former is encountered. Hence, this profile entry makes *pick* define the "select" sequence and otherwise behave exactly as if there was no profile entry at all.

Mark and User–Defined Sequences

The *mark* command lets the user perform low–level manipulation of sequences, and also provides a well–needed debug facility to the implementors/developers/maintainers of *MH* (the *MH*–hacks). In the future, a user–friendly "front–end" for *mark* will probably be developed to give the *MH* user a way to take better advantage of the underlying facilities.

Public and Private User–Defined Sequences

There are two kinds of sequences: *public* sequences, and *private* sequences. *Public* sequences of a folder are accessible to any *MH* user that can read that folder and are kept in the .mh_sequences file in the folder. *Private* sequences are accessible only to the *MH* user that defined those sequences and are kept in the user's *MH* context file. By default, *pick* (and *mark*) create *public* sequences if the folder for which the sequences are being defined is writable by the *MH* user. Otherwise, *private* sequences are created. This can be overridden with the '–public' and '–private' switches.

Sequence Negation

In addition to telling an *MH* command to use the messages in the sequence "seen", as in

```
refile seen +old
```

it would be useful to be easily able to tell an *MH* command to use all messages *except* those in the sequence. One way of doing this would be to use *mark* and define the sequence explicitly, as in

```
mark -delete -zero seen -seq notseen
```

which, owing to *mark* 's cryptic interpretation of '–delete' and '–zero', defines the sequence "notseen" to be all messages not in the sequence "seen". Naturally, anytime the sequence "seen" is

[1] Of course, it is much easier to simply use the built–in boolean operation of *pick* to get the desired results:

```
pick -from frated -or -from fear -or -from freida -seq sgroup
```

and

```
pick -from frated -and -before friday -seq fred
```

do exactly the same thing as the five commands listed above. Hence, the '–nozero' option to *pick* is only useful to manipulate existing sequences.

changed, "notseen" will have to be updated. Another way to achieve this is to define the entry "Sequence-Negation:" in the .mh_profile. If the entry was

Sequence-Negation: not

then anytime an *MH* command was given "notseen" as a 'msg' or 'msgs' argument, it would substitute all messages that are not a member of the sequence "seen". That is,

refile notseen +new

does just that. The value of the "Sequence-Negation:" entry in the profile can be any string. Hence, experienced users of *MH* do not use a word, but rather a special character which their shell does not interpret (users of the *CShell* use a single caret or circumflex (usually shift-6), while users of the Bourne shell use an exclamation-mark). This is because there is nothing to prevent a user of *MH* from defining a sequence with this string as its prefix, if the string is nothing by letters and digits. Obviously, this could lead to confusing behavior if the "Sequence-Negation:" entry leads *MH* to believe that two sequences are opposites by virtue of their names differing by the prefix string.

The Previous Sequence

Many times users find themselves issuing a series of commands on the same sequences of messages. If the user first defined these messages as a sequence, then considerable typing may be saved. If the user doesn't have this foresight, *MH* provides a handy way of having *MH* remember the 'msgs' or 'msg' argument last given to an *MH* command. If the entry "Previous-Sequence:" is defined in the .mh_profile, then when the command finishes, it will define the sequence(s) named in the value of this entry as being exactly those messages that were specified. Hence, a profile entry of

Previous-Sequence: pseq

directs any *MH* command that accepts a 'msg' or 'msgs' argument to define the sequence "pseq" as those messages when it finishes. More than one sequence name may be placed in this entry, separated with spaces. The one disadvantage of this approach is that the *MH* progams have to update the sequence information for the folder each time they run (although most programs read this information, usually only *pick* and *mark* have to write this information out).

The Unseen Sequence

Finally, some users like to distinguish between messages which have been previously seen by them. Both *inc* and *show* honorthe profile entry "Unseen-Sequence" to support this activity. Whenever *inc* places new messages in a folder, if the entry "Unseen-Sequence" is defined in the .mh_profile, then when the command finishes, *inc* will add the new messages to the sequence(s) named in the value of this entry. Hence, a profile entry of

Unseen-Sequence: unseen

directs *inc* to add new messages to the sequence "unseen". Unlike the behavior of the "Previous-Sequence" entry in the profile however, the sequence(s) will **not** be zero'd.

Similarly, whenever *show* (or *next* or *prev*) displays a message, they remove those messages from any sequences named by the "Unseen-Sequence" entry in the profile.

COMPOSITION OF MAIL

There are a number of interesting advanced facilities for the composition of outgoing mail.

The Draft Folder

The *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* commands have two switches, '–draftfolder +folder' and '–draftmessage msg'. If '–draftfolder +folder' is used, these commands are directed to construct a draft message in the indicated folder. (The "Draft–Folder:" profile entry may be used to declare a default draft folder for use with *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl*) If '–draftmessage msg' is not used, it defaults to 'new' (unless the user invokes *comp* with '–use', in which case the default is 'cur'). Hence, the user may have several message compositions in progress simultaneously. Now, all of the *MH* tools are available on each of the user's message drafts (e.g., *show*, *scan*, *pick*, and so on). If the folder does not exist, the user is asked if it should be created (just like with *refile*). Also, the last draft message the user was composing is known as 'cur' in the draft folder.

Furthermore, the *send* command has these switches as well. Hence, from the shell, the user can send off whatever drafts desired using the standard *MH* 'msgs' convention with '–draftmessage msgs'. If no 'msgs' are given, it defaults to 'cur'.

In addition, all five programs have a '–nodraftfolder' switch, which undoes the last occurrence of '–draftfolder folder' (useful if the latter occurs in the user's *MH* profile).

If the user does not give the '–draftfolder +folder' switch, then all these commands act "normally". Note that the '–draft' switch to *send* and *show* still refers to the file called 'draft' in the user's *MH* directory. In the interests of economy of expression, when using *comp* or *send*, the user needn't prefix the draft 'msg' or 'msgs' with '–draftmessage'. Both of these commands accept a 'file' or 'files' argument, and they will, if given '–draftfolder +folder' treat these arguments as 'msg' or 'msgs'.[2] Hence,

```
send -draftf +drafts first
```

is the same as

```
send -draftf +drafts -draftm first
```

To make all this a bit more clear, here are some examples. Let's assume that the following entries are in the *MH* profile:

```
Draft–Folder: +drafts
sendf: -draftfolder +drafts
```

Furthermore, let's assume that the program *sendf* is a (symbolic) link in the user's **$HOME/bin/** directory to *send*. Then, any of the commands

```
comp
dist
forw
repl
```

constructs the message draft in the 'draft' folder using the 'new' message number. Furthermore, they each define 'cur' in this folder to be that message draft. If the user were to use the *quit* option at 'What now?' level, then later on, if no other draft composition was done, the draft could be sent with simply

[2] This may appear to be inconsistent, at first, but it saves a lot of typing.

```
sendf
```

Or, if more editing was required, the draft could be edited with

```
comp -use
```

Instead, if other drafts had been composed in the meantime, so that this message draft was no longer known as 'cur' in the 'draft' folder, then the user could *scan* the folder to see which message draft in the folder should be used for editing or sending. Clever users could even employ a back-quoted *pick* to do the work:

```
comp -use 'pick +drafts -to bug-mh'
```

or

```
sendf 'pick +drafts -to bug-mh'
```

Note that in the *comp* example, the output from *pick* must resolve to a single message draft (it makes no sense to talk about composing two or more drafts with one invocation of *comp*). In contrast, in the *send* example, as many message drafts as desired can appear, since *send* doesn't mind sending more than one draft at a time.

Note that the argument '–draftfolder +folder' is not included in the profile entry for *send*, since when *comp*, et. al., invoke *send* directly, they supply *send* with the UNIX pathname of the message draft, and **not** a 'draftmessage msg' argument. As far as *send* is concerned, a *draft folder* is not being used.

It is important to realize that *MH* treats the draft folder like a standard *MH* folder in nearly all respects. There are two exceptions: first, under no circumstancs will the '–draftfolder folder' switch cause the named folder to become the current folder.[3] Second, although conceptually *send* deletes the 'msgs' named in the draft folder, it does not call 'delete-prog' to perform the deletion.

What Happens if the Draft Exists

When the *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* commands are invoked and the draft you indicated already exists, these programs will prompt the user for a reponse directing the program's action. The prompt is

```
Draft "/usr/src/uci/mh/mhbox/draft" exists (xx bytes).
Disposition?
```

The appropriate responses and their meanings are: replace: deletes the draft and starts afresh; list: lists the draft; refile: files the draft into a folder and starts afresh; and, quit: leaves the draft intact and exits. In addition, if you specified '–draftfolder folder' to the command, then one other response will be accepted: new: finds a new draft, just as if '–draftmessage new' had been given. Finally, the *comp* command will accept one more response: use: re-uses the draft, just as if '–use' had been given.

[3] Obviously, if the folder appeared in the context of a standard '+folder' argument to an *MH* program, as in

```
scan +drafts
```

it might become the current folder, depending on the context changes of the *MH* program in question.

The Push Option at What now? Level

The *push* option to the "What now?" query in the *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* commands, directs the command to *send* the draft in a special detached fashion, with all normal output discarded. If *push* is used and the draft can not be sent, then *MH* will send the user a message, indicating the name of the draft file, and an explanation of the failure.

The user can also invoke *send* from the shell with the '-push' switch, which makes *send* act like it had been *push* 'd by one of the composition commands.

By using *push*, the user can free the shell to do other things, because it appears to the shell that the *MH* command has finished. As a result the shell will immediately prompt for another command, despite the fact that the command is really still running. Note that if the user indicates that annotations are to be performed (with '-annotate' to *dist*, *forw*, or *repl*), the annotations will be performed after the message has been successfully sent. This action will appear to occur asynchronously. Obviously, if one of the messages that is to be annotated is removed before the draft has been successfully sent, then when *MH* tries to make the annotations, it won't be able to do so. In previous versions of *MH*, this resulted in an error message mysteriously appearing on the user's terminal. In *mh.5* and later versions, in this special circumstance, no error will be generated.

If send is *push* 'd, then the '-forward' switch is examined if a failure notice is generated. If given, then the draft is forwarded with the failure notice sent to the user. This allows rapid *burst* 'ing of the failure notice to retrieve the unsent draft.

Options at What now? Level

By default, the message composition programs call a program called *whatnow* before the initial draft composition. The *MH* user can specify any program for this. Following is some information about the default "What now?" level. More detailed information can be found in the *whatnow* (1) manual entry.

When using the *comp*, *dist*, *forw*, and *repl* commands at "What now?" level, the *edit*, *list*, *headers*, *refile*, and (for the *dist* and *repl* commands) the *display* options will pass on any additional arguments given them to whatever program they invoke.

In *mh.1* (the original Rand *MH*) and *mh.2* (the first UCI version of *MH*), *MH* used a complicated heuristic to determine if the draft should be deleted or preserved after an unsuccessful edit. In *mh.3*, *MH* was changed to preserve the draft always, since *comp*, et. al., could usually look at a draft, apply another set of heuristics, and decide if it was important or not. With the notion of a *draft folder*, in which one by default gets a 'new' message draft, the edit deletion/preservation algorithm was re-implemented, to keep the draft folder from being cluttered with aborted edits.

Also, note that by default, if the draft cannot be successfully sent, these commands return to "What now?" level. But, when *push* is used, this does not happen (obviously). Hence, if these commands were expected to annotate any messages, this will have to be done by hand, later on, with the *anno* command.

Finally, if the '-delete' switch is not given to the *quit* option, then these commands will inform the user of the name of the unsent draft file.

Digests

The *forw* command has the beginnings of a digestifying facility, with the '-digest list', '-issue number', and '-volume number' switches.

If *forw* is given "list" to the '-digest' switch as the name of the discussion group, and the '-issue number' switch is not given, then *forw* looks for an entry in the user's *MH* context called "*digest*-issue-list" and increments its value to use as the issue number. Similarly, if the '-volume number' switch is not given, then *forw* looks for "*digest*-volume-list" (but does not

increment its value) to use as the volume number.

Having calculated the name of the digest and the volume and issue numbers, *forw* will now process the components file using the same format string mechanism used by *repl*. The current '%'–escapes are:

escape	*type*	*substitution*
digest	string	digest name
issue	integer	issue number
volume	integer	volume number

In addition, to capture the current date, any of the escapes valid for *dp* (8) are also valid for *forw*.

The default components file used by *forw* when in digest mode is:

```
\" .so /usr/new/lib/mh/digestcomps  included inline here so it looks good
From:    %{digest}-Request
To:      %{digest} Distribution: dist-%{digest};
Subject: %{digest} Digest V%(putnum(msg)) #%(putnum(cur))
Reply-To: %{digest}
--------
%{digest} Digest          %(putstr(weekday{date})), %2(putnumf(mday{date})) \
%(putstr(month{date})) 19%02(putnumf(year{date}))
                    Volume %(putnum(msg)) : Issue %(putnum(cur))

Today's Topics:
```

Hence, when the '–digest' switch is present, the first step taken by *forw* is to expand the format strings in the component file. The next step is to compose the draft using the standard digest encapsulation algorithm (even putting an "End of list Digest" trailer in the draft). Once the draft is composed by *forw*, *forw* writes out the volume and issue profile entries for the digest, and then invokes the editor.

Naturally, when composing the draft, *forw* will honor the '–filter filterfile' switch, which is given to *mhl* to filter each message being forwarded prior to encapsulation in the draft. A good filter file to use, which is called *mhl.digest*, is:

```
width=80,overflowoffset=10
leftadjust,compress,compwidth=9
Date:formatfield="%<(nodate{text})%{text}%|%(putstr(tws{text}))%>"
From:
Subject:
:
body:nocomponent,overflowoffset=0,noleftadjust,nocompress
```

FOLDER HANDLING

There are two interesting facilities for manipulating folders: relative folder addressing, which allows a user to shorten the typing of long folder names; and the folder–stack, which permits a user to keep a stack of current folders.

Relative Folder Addressing

By default, when '+folder' is given, and the folder name is not absolute (does not start with /, ./, or ../), then the UNIX pathname of the folder is interpreted relative to the user's *MH* directory. Although this mechanism works fine for top-level folders and their immediate sub-folders, once the depth of the sub-folder tree grows, it becomes rather unwieldly:

```
scan +mh/mh.4/draft/flames
```

is a lot of typing. *MH* can't do anything if the current folder was "+inbox", but if the current folder was, say, "+mh/mh.4/draft", *MH* has a short-hand notation to reference a sub-folder of the current folder. Using the '@folder' notation, the *MH* user can direct any *MH* program which expects a '+folder' argument to look for the folder relative to the current folder instead of the user's *MH* directory. Hence, if the current folder *was* "+mh/mh.4/draft", then

```
scan @flames
```

would do the trick handily. In addition, if the current folder *was* "+mh/mh.4/draft",

```
scan @../pick
```

would scan the folder "+mh/mh.4/pick", since, in the UNIX fashion, it references the folder "pick" which is a sub-folder of the folder that is the parent of the current folder. Since most advanced *MH* users seem to exhibit a large degree of locality in referencing folders when they process mail, this convention should receive a wide range of uses.

The Folder-Stack

The *folder-stack* mechanism in *MH* gives the *MH* user a facility similar to the *CShell* 's directory-stack. Simply put,

```
folder -push +foo
```

makes "foo" the current folder, saving the folder that was previously the current folder on the *folder-stack*. As expected,

```
folder -pop
```

takes the top of the *folder-stack* and makes it the current folder. Each of these switches lists the *folder-stack* when they execute. It is simple to write a *pushf* command as a shell script. It's one line:

```
exec folder -push $@
```

Probably a better way is to link *folder* to the $HOME/bin/ directory under the name of *pushf* and then add the entry

```
pushf: -push
```

to the .mh_profile.

The manual page for *folder* discusses the analogy between the *CShell* directory stack commands and the switches in *folder* which manipulate the *folder-stack*. The *folder* command uses the context entry 'Folder-Stack:' to keep track of the folders in the user's stack of folders.

Appendix A
COMMAND SUMMARY

ali [-alias aliasfile] [-list] [-nolist] [-normalize] [-nonormalize] [-user] [-nouser] names ...
[-help]

anno [+folder] [msgs] [-component field] [-inplace] [-noinplace] [-text body] [-help]

burst [+folder] [msgs] [-inplace] [-noinplace] [-quiet] [-noquiet] [-verbose] [-noverbose]
[-help]

comp [+folder] [msg] [-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg] [-nodraftfolder]
[-editor editor] [-noedit] [-file file] [-form formfile] [-use] [-nouse]
[-whatnowproc program] [-nowhatnowproc] [-help]

dist [+folder] [msg] [-annotate] [-noannotate] [-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg]
[-nodraftfolder] [-editor editor] [-noedit] [-form formfile] [-inplace] [-noinplace]
[-whatnowproc program] [-nowhatnowproc] [-help]

folder [+folder] [msg] [-all] [-fast] [-nofast] [-header] [-noheader] [-pack] [-nopack]
[-recurse] [-norecurse] [-total] [-nototal] [-print] [-noprint] [-list] [-nolist] [-push]
[-pop] [-help]

folders

forw [+folder] [msgs] [-annotate] [-noannotate] [-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg]
[-nodraftfolder] [-editor editor] [-noedit] [-filter filterfile] [-form formfile] [-format]
[-noformat] [-inplace] [-noinplace] [-whatnowproc program] [-nowhatnowproc]
[-help]

forw [+folder] [msgs] [-digest list] [-issue number] [-volume number]
[other switches for *forw*] [-help]

inc [+folder] [-audit audit-file] [-noaudit] [-changecur] [-nochangecur] [-file name]
[-form formatfile] [-format string] [-silent] [-nosilent] [-truncate] [-notruncate]
[-width columns] [-help]

mark [+folder] [msgs] [-sequence name ...] [-add] [-delete] [-list] [-public] [-nopublic]
[-zero] [-nozero] [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/mhl [-bell] [-nobell] [-clear] [-noclear] [-folder +folder] [-form formfile]
[-length lines] [-width columns] [-moreproc program] [-nomoreproc] [files ...] [-help]

mhmail [addrs ... [-body text] [-cc addrs ...] [-from addr] [-subject subject]] [-help]

mhpath [+folder] [msgs] [-help]

msgchk [users ...] [-help]

msh [-prompt string] [-scan] [-noscan] [-topcur] [-notopcur] [file] [-help]

next [+folder] [-header] [-noheader] [-showproc program] [-noshowproc]
[switches for *showproc*] [-help]

packf [+folder] [msgs] [-file name] [-help]

pick { -cc | -date | -from | -search | -subject | -to | --component } [+folder] [msgs] [-help]
[-before date] [-after date] [-datefield field]
pattern [-and ...] [-or ...] [-not ...] [-lbrace ... -rbrace]
[-sequence name ...] [-public] [-nopublic] [-zero] [-nozero]
[-list] [-nolist]

prev [+folder] [-header] [-noheader] [-showproc program] [-noshowproc]
[switches for *showproc*] [-help]

prompter [-erase chr] [-kill chr] [-prepend] [-noprepend] [-rapid] [-norapid] file [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/rcvstore [+folder] [-create] [-nocreate] [-sequence name ...] [-public]
[-nopublic] [-zero] [-nozero] [-help]

refile [msgs] [-draft] [-link] [-nolink] [-preserve] [-nopreserve] [-src +folder] [-file file]
+folder ... [-help]

repl [+folder] [msg] [-annotate] [-noannotate] [-cc all/to/cc/me] [-nocc all/to/cc/me]
[-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg] [-nodraftfolder] [-editor editor] [-noedit]
[-fcc +folder] [-filter filterfile] [-form formfile] [-format] [-noformat] [-inplace]
[-noinplace] [-query] [-noquery] [-whatnowproc program] [-nowhatnowproc]
[-width columns] [-help]

rmf [+folder] [-interactive] [-nointeractive] [-help]

rmm [+folder] [msgs] [-help]

scan [+folder] [msgs] [-clear] [-noclear] [-form formatfile] [-format string] [-header] [-noheader] [-width columns] [-help]

send [-alias aliasfile] [-draft] [-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg] [-nodraftfolder] [-filter filterfile] [-nofilter] [-format] [-noformat] [-forward] [-noforward] [-msgid] [-nomsgid] [-push] [-nopush] [-verbose] [-noverbose] [-watch] [-nowatch] [-width columns] [file ...] [-help]

show [+folder] [msgs] [-draft] [-header] [-noheader] [-showproc program] [-noshowproc] [switches for *showproc*] [-help]

sortm [+folder] [msgs] [-datefield field] [-verbose] [-noverbose] [-help]

vmh [-prompt string] [-vmhproc program] [-novmhproc] [switches for *vmhproc*] [-help]

whatnow [-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg] [-nodraftfolder] [-editor editor] [-noedit] [-prompt string] [file] [-help]

whom [-alias aliasfile] [-check] [-nocheck] [-draft] [-draftfolder +folder] [-draftmessage msg] [-nodraftfolder] [file] [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/ap [-form formatfile] [-format string] [-normalize] [-nonormalize] [-width columns] addrs ... [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/conflict [-mail name] [-search directory] [aliasfiles ...] [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/dp [-form formatfile] [-format string] [-width columns] dates ... [-help]

/usr/new/lib/mh/install-mh [-auto] [-compat]

/usr/new/lib/mh/post [-alias aliasfile] [-filter filterfile] [-nofilter] [-format] [-noformat] [-msgid] [-nomsgid] [-verbose] [-noverbose] [-watch] [-nowatch] [-width columns] file [-help]

Appendix B
MESSAGE NAME BNF

```
msgs          :=  msgspec                 |
                  msgs msgspec

msgspec       :=  msg                     |
                  msg-range               |
                  msg-sequence            |
                  user-defined-sequence

msg           :=  msg-name                |
                  <number>

msg-name      :=  "first"                 |
                  "last"                  |
                  "cur"                   |
                  "."                     |
                  "next"                  |
                  "prev"

msg-range     :=  msg"-"msg               |
                  "all"

msg-sequence  :=  msg":"signed-number

signed-number :=  "+"<number>             |
                  "-"<number>             |
                  <number>
```

Where <number> is a decimal number greater than zero.

Msg-range specifies all of the messages in the given range and must not be empty.

Msg-sequence specifies up to <number> of messages, beginning with "msg" (in the case of first, cur, next, or <number>), or ending with "msg" (in the case of prev or last). +<number> forces "starting with msg", and –<number> forces "ending with number". In all cases, "msg" must exist.

User–defined sequences are defined and manipulated with the *pick* and *mark* commands.

REFERENCES

1. Crocker, D. H., J. J. Vittal, K. T. Pogran, and D. A. Henderson, Jr., "Standard for the Format of ARPA Network Text Messages," *RFC733*, November 1977.

2. Thompson, K., and D. M. Ritchie, "The UNIX Time-sharing System," *Communications of the ACM*, Vol. 17, July 1974, pp. 365-375.

3. McCauley, E. J., and P. J. Drongowski, "KSOS–The Design of a Secure Operating System." *AFIPS Conference Proceedings*, National Computer Conference, Vol. 48, 1979, pp. 345-353.

4. Crocker, David H., *Framework and Functions of the "MS" Personal Message System*, The Rand Corporation, R-2134-ARPA, December 1977.

5. Thompson, K., and D. M. Ritchie, *UNIX Programmer's Manual*, 6th ed., Western Electric Company, May 1975 (available only to UNIX licensees).

6. Crocker, D. H., "Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages," *RFC822*, Augus 1982.

How to Read the Network News

Mark R. Horton
AT&T Bell Laboratories
Columbus, OH 43213

Revised by Rick Adams for 2.10.3

What is the Network News?

USENET (Users' Network) is a bulletin board shared among many computer systems around the world. USENET is a logical network, sitting on top of several physical networks, among them *UUCP*, *BLICN*, *BERKNET*, *X.25*, and the *ARPANET*. Sites on USENET include many universities, private companies and research organizations. Most of the members of USENET are either university computer science departments or part of AT&T. Currently, there are over 2000 USENET sites in the USA, Canada, Europe, Japan and Korea with more joining every day. Most are running the UNIX† operating system.

The network news, or simply *netnews*, is the set of programs that provide access to the news and transfer it from one machine to the next. Netnews was originally written at Duke University and has been modified extensively by the University of California at Berkeley and others. Netnews allows articles to be posted for limited or very wide distribution. This document contains a list of newsgroups that were active at the time the document was written. It exists to assist you in determining which newsgroups you may want to subscribe to. When creating a new article, the level of distribution can be controlled by use of the "Distribution" field. This will prevent notices of apartments for rent in New Jersey being broadcast to California (or even Europe).

Any user can post an article, which will be sent out to the network to be read by persons interested in that topic. You can specify which topics are of interest to you by putting them in a *subscription list*. Then, whenever you ask to read news, the news reading program will present all unread articles of interest. There are also facilities for browsing through old news, posting follow-up articles, and sending direct electronic mail replies to the author of an article.

This paper is a tutorial, aimed at the user who wants to read and possibly post news. The system administrator who must install the software should see the companion document *USENET Version B Installation*.

Why USENET?

USENET is useful in a number of ways. Someone wishing to announce a new program or product can reach a wide audience. A user can ask "Does anyone have an *x*?" and will usually get several responses within a day or two. Bug reports and their fixes can be made quickly available without the usual overhead of sending out mass mailings. Discussions involving many people at different locations can take place without having to get everyone together.

Another facility with similar capabilities to *netnews* is the *electronic mailing list*. A mailing list is a collection of electronic mailing addresses of users who are interested in a particular topic. By

†UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

sending electronic mail to the list, all users on the list receive a copy of the article. While the mailing list facility is quite useful, USENET offers a number of advantages not present in mailing lists. Getting yourself on a mailing list is not always easy. You have to figure out who maintains the list and ask them to put you on it. Often these people are out of town or busy, and don't put you on the list for several days. Sometimes you have to send mail to the entire mailing list, hoping that one of the readers will tell you who maintains the list. Once you are on the list, you often find yourself in the middle of a discussion. Netnews keeps old articles around until they expire (usually about two weeks) so you can browse through old news to catch up on what you missed. Similarly, referring to an old article is easy, without having to keep a personal file of all old mail to the list.

Another advantage is appreciated by the other users of the system. There is less overhead in having only one copy of each message sent to each machine, rather than having separate copies sent to each of several users on the same machine. This cuts down on computer time to process the messages, and on-line costs for telephone calls to transfer messages from one machine to another (when phone lines are used). Another advantage is in the disk space consumed. When only one message is sent to each system, only one copy of the message is kept on disk. In a mailing list environment, each user has a copy in a mailbox.

How do I Read News?

In the USENET jargon, interest topics are called *newsgroups*. A newsgroup list appears in a later section, current as this paper was written. You have your own *subscription list* of newsgroups to which you are said to *subscribe*.

The simplest way to read news is to type the command:

readnews

Other possibilities include: a full-screen-oriented news reading program, *vnews*(1), (described in the Appendix) and the *notesfile* system, which can also be used for news (described in a separate paper.) Each newsgroup to which you subscribe will be presented, one article at a time. As each article is presented, you will be shown the *header* (containing the name of the author, the subject, and the length of the article) and you will be asked if you want more. There are a number of possible choices you can make at this point. The three most common (**y**, **n**, and **q**) are suggested by the program. (To see a complete list of possible responses, type **?** for help.) You can type **y** for "yes" (or simply hit <RETURN>) and the rest of the message will be displayed. (If the message is long, it may stop before it runs off the top of the screen. Type <SPACE> or <RETURN> to see more of the message. Another choice you can make is **n** for "no". This means you are not interested in the message – it will not be offered to you again. A third option is **q** for "quit". This causes a record to be made of which articles you read (or refused) and you will exit netnews. When you have read all the news, this happens automatically. The **q** command is mainly useful if you are in a hurry and don't have time to read all the news right now. (Many users put a *readnews*(1) or *checknews*(1) command in their *.profile* or *.login* files so that they will see new news each time they log in.)

If you are reading news for the first time, you may find yourself swamped by the volume of unread news, especially if the default subscription is **all**. Don't let this bother you. If you are getting newsgroups in which you have no interest, you can change your subscription list (see below). Also, bear in mind that what you see is probably at least two weeks' accumulation of news. If you want to just get rid of all old news and start anew, type

readnews -p -n all > /dev/null &

which will throw away all old news, recording that you have seen it all. (The & puts it in the background; chances are that there is so much old news on your machine that you won't want to wait for it all.) Or, you can use the **K** command to mark all articles in the current newsgroup as read.

Once you catch up with (or ignore) all the old news, the news will come in daily at a more manageable rate. (If the daily rate is still too much you may wish to unsubscribe to some of the higher volume, less useful newsgroups.) Finally, note that while an article is printing, you can hit your interrupt character (usually <CONTROL-C> or <DELETE>), which will throw away the rest of the

article.

Among the other commands you can type after seeing the header of an article are:

x Exit *readnews*. This is different from **q** in that the **q** command will update the record of which articles you have read, but **x** will pretend you never started *readnews*.

N Go on to the next newsgroup. The remaining articles in the current newsgroup are considered *unread*, and will be offered to you again the next time you read news.

s *file* The article is saved in a disk file with the given name. In practice, what usually happens is that an article is printed, and then *readnews* goes on to print the header of the next article before you get a chance to type anything. So you usually want to write out the *previous* message (the last one you have read in full); in this case, use the form **s–** *filename*.

e Erase the memory of having seen this article. It will be offered to you again next time, as though you had never seen it. The **e–** case variation (erase memory of the previously read article instead of the current article) is useful for checking follow-ups to see if anyone has already said what you wanted to say.

r Reply to the author of the message. You will be placed in the editor, with a set of headers derived from the message you are replying to. Type in your message after the blank line. If you wish to edit the header list to add more recipients or send carbon copies, for instance, you can edit the header lines. Anyone listed on a line beginning with "To" or "Cc" will receive a copy of your reply. Note that the path used to receive a piece of news may not be the fastest way to reply by mail. If speed is important and you know a faster way, edit it in place of what the reply command supplied. A mail command will then be started up, addressed to the persons listed in the header. You are then returned to *readnews*. The case **r–** is also useful to reply to the previous message. Another variation on this is **rd–** which puts you in **$MAILER** (or *mail*(1) by default) to type in your reply directly.

f Post a follow-up message to the same newsgroup. This posts an article on this newsgroup with the same title as the original article. Use common sense when posting follow-ups. (Read Matt Bishop's paper "How to use USENET Effectively" for extended discussion of when and when not to post -- many follow-up articles should have just been replies.) You will be placed in the editor. Enter your message and exit. The case **f–** is also useful to follow up the previous message. In each case, the editor you are placed in will be *vi*(1) unless you set **EDITOR** (in your environment) to some other editor. You should enter the text of the follow-up after the blank line.

+ The article is skipped for now. The next time you read news, you will be offered this article again.

– Go back to the previous article. This toggles, so that two –'s get you the current article.

b Back up one article in the current group. This is not necessarily the previous article.

U Unsubscribe from this newsgroup. Your *.newsrc*(5) file will be edited to change the **:** for that newsgroup to an **!** preventing you from being shown that newsgroup again.

? If you type any unrecognized command, a summary of valid commands will be printed.

Changing your Subscription List

If you take no special action you will subscribe to a default subscription list. This default varies locally. To find out your local default, type

readnews –s

Typically this list will include all newsgroups ending in "general", such as **general**, and **net.general**. (As distributed, the default is **general,all.general**. Another popular default is **all**.) You can change this by creating a file in your home directory named *.newsrc* which contains as its first line a line of the

form:

options –n newsgroup,newsgroup,newsgroup ...

If your lines get too long, you can continue them on subsequent lines by beginning those lines with a space. (The netnews system will put extra lines in this file to record which articles you have read. You should ignore these lines unless you want to edit them.) For example, if you are creating a subscription list for the first time, and have already read news, you will find some text already in your *.newsrc* file, recording which articles you have read. You should put your **options** line before the first line of the file.) Thus,

options –n general,net.general,mod.human-nets

will subscribe to those three newsgroups.

An **!** can be used to exclude certain newsgroups and the word **all** can be used as a wild card, representing any newsgroup. You can also use **all** as a prefix or suffix to match a class of newsgroups. For example,

options –n all,!mod.all,!net.jokes,!all.unix-all

will result in a subscription to all newsgroups except for ARPANET news, jokes, and any UNIX information. The metacharacter **.** is like **/** to the shell, and **all** is like ***.**

A simpler way to subscribe to news is to subscribe to **all**, and then use the **U** *readnews* command to unsubscribe to newsgroups you don't want to read. This way you will see new newsgroups that are created, get a chance to evaluate them, and then unsubscribe to those that don't interest you.

The order of the newsgroups in your *.newsrc* (after the options line) is the order in which newsgroups will be shown. If you want something other than the default, move the lines around until you are satisfied with the order. Be careful to keep the options line as the first line in the file.

Submitting Articles

To submit a new news article type

postnews

First, it will ask you if this is a follow-up to an article. Answer **yes** or **no**. If **yes**, you really should have done an **f** from *readnews*, but it will try and figure out which article you are following up to. It will ask for the newsgroup in which you read the article and the article number. If you can't remember, go back to *readnews* and find out. It is important that discussions are kept together. It is very frustrating for someone to read a follow-up that says: "I agree. It's very dangerous to leave that program as distributed." and not have any idea what the poster was referring to.

If you answer **no**, *postnews*(1) will ask you for the subject of the new article. This should be as informative as possible. For example, "'67 Porsche for sale in New Jersey" is much better than "Car for sale" or even "For sale". It will then ask which newsgroups you want the article posted in. If you are unsure, type **?** instead of a specific newsgroup and it will show you the list of currently available groups. Then, you will be asked how far your article should be distributed. It is important to keep this as small as possible to accomplish the purpose of your article. Remember that many newsgroups are read in Europe, Australia, and Asia in addition to the United States and Canada. It does no good (to use the previous example) to post a "Car for sale in New Jersey" article with a distribution of **world**. There is almost no chance that a person in Sweden or Korea would be interested in buying your car (even if it is a Porsche). It is a waste of money and computer resources to transmit the article that far. For this specific case, the appropriate distribution would be **nj** or only in New Jersey. If there were no local distribution available, at least it should be confined to **usa**. If you are unsure of the distributions available at your site, type **?** instead of a distribution and you will receive a list of distributions valid for your site. If the distribution is **world**, your article will be read (perhaps with disgust) by thousands of people around the world.

Then you will be placed in the editor. Enter the text of your article, after the blank line, and exit the editor. The article will be posted to the newsgroups specified. If you change your mind

about the headers while you are still in the editor, you can edit them as well. Extra headers can also be added before the blank line.

Browsing through Old News

There are a number of command line options to the *readnews* command to help you find an old article you want to see again. The **-n** *newsgroups* option restricts your search to certain newsgroups. The **-x** option arranges to ignore the record of articles read, which is kept in your *.newsrc* file. This will cause all articles in all newsgroups to which you subscribe to be displayed, even those which you have already seen. It also causes *readnews* to not update the *.newsrc* file. The **-a** *date* option asks for news received after the given *date*. Note that even with the **-a** option, only articles you have not already seen will be printed, unless you combine it with the **-x** option. (Articles are kept on file until they expire, typically after two weeks.) The **-t** *keywords* option restricts the query to articles mentioning one of the *keywords* in the title of the article. Thus, the command

readnews -n net.unix -x -a last thursday -t setuid

asks for all articles in newsgroup **net.unix** since last Thursday about the setuid feature. (Be careful with the **-t** option. The above example will not find articles about "suid", nor will it find articles with no title or whose author did not use the word "setuid" in the title.)

Other useful options include the **-l** option (which lists only the headers of articles – a useful form for browsing through lots of messages.) The **-p** option prints the messages without asking for any input; this is similar to some older news programs on many UNIX systems and is useful for directing output to a printer. The **-r** option produces articles in reverse order, from newest to oldest.

User Interfaces

The *user interface* of a program is the view it presents to the user, that is, what it prints and what it allows you to type. *Readnews* has options allowing you to use different user interfaces. The interface described above is called the "msgs" interface because it mimics the style of the Berkeley *msgs*(1) program. (This program, in turn, mimics a program at MIT of the same name.) The key element of the msgs interface is that after printing the header, you are asked if you want the rest of the message.

Another interface is available with the **-c** option. In this case, the entire message is printed, header and body, and you are prompted at the end of the message. The command options are the same as the msgs interface, but it is usually not necessary to use the – suffix on the **r**, **s**, or **f** commands. This interface is called the "/bin/mail" (pronounced "bin mail") interface, because it mimics the UNIX program of that name.

A third interface is the *Mail*(1) (pronounced "cap mail") interface, available with the **-M** option. This invokes the *Mail* program directly, and allows you to read news with the same commands as you read mail. (This interface may not work on your system – it requires a special version of *Mail* with a **-T** option.)

A fourth interface, is the MH news/mail program from Rand. That program can be used directly to read network news.

A fifth interface, *vnews*, which works well on display terminals, is described in the Appendix.

A sixth possibility is the *notesfile* system, described in a separate paper. It is also display-oriented.

A seventh possibility is to use your favorite mail system as an interface. There are a number of different mail reading programs, including */bin/mail*(1), *Mail*, *msg*(1), and MH. Any mail system with an option to specify an alternative mailbox can be used to read news. For example, to use *Mail* without the **-M** option, type

readnews -c "Mail -f %"

The shell command in quotes is invoked as a child of *readnews*. The **-f** option to *Mail* names the alternative mailbox. *Readnews* will put the news in a temporary file, and give the name of this file to

the mailer in place of the %. There is an important difference when using this kind of interface. The mailers do not give any indication of which articles you read and which ones you skipped. *Readnews* will assume you read *all* the articles, even if you didn't, and mark them all read. By contrast, the -M option uses the -T option to *Mail*, asking *Mail* to tell *readnews* which articles you read.

Getting News when you Log In

Most users like to be told when they first log in if there is any news. This way they are reminded of news, but are not interrupted by it during the day. If you log in once in the morning, you can think of getting the news as reading the morning newspaper. It is common to put a *checknews* or *readnews* command in your *.profile* or *.login* file of commands that are executed when you log in.

Since there might not be any news, and since the *readnews* command goes to a considerable amount of work to find all unread news (assuming you are going to read it), there is another command, called *checknews*, which tells you if there is any news. The *checknews* command is smaller and faster than *readnews*, and was designed especially for a login file. There are also options to be silent if there is (or is not) news, and to start up *readnews* automatically if there is news.

The options to *checknews* are:

-y Print "There is news" if there is any unread news.

-v If -y is also given, instead of printing "There is news", prints "News: *newsgroup* ..." giving the name of the first newsgroup containing unread news. If **general** is the first newsgroup presented, this can be used to tell users whether the unread news is important.

-n Print "No news" if there is no unread news.

-e If there is any unread news, start up *readnews*. Any additional arguments after the -e will be passed to readnews.

Thus,

checknews -yn

tells you whether there is any unread news.

checknews -e -M

starts up *readnews* with the *Mail* interface if there is news, and otherwise does nothing.

checknews -y

tells you if there is news, and is silent if there is no news.

Creating New Newsgroups

New newsgroups are proposed by the users and created by site administrators. To create a newsgroup, first make sure this is the right thing to do. Normally a suggestion is first posted to **net.news.group,net.relatedgroup** for a net newsgroup (**net.relatedgroup** should be the group which you are proposing to subdivide.) For example, to propose creating **net.tv.soaps**, post the original article to **net.tv,net.news.group**). Followups are made to **net.news.group** *only*. (You can force this by putting the line:

Followup-To: net.news.group

in the headers of your original posting). If it is established that there is general interest in such a group, and a name is agreed on, then ask your local netnews administrator to create the newsgroup. (It can actually be created by any netnews administrator anywhere on the net, within the scope of the newsgroup.) Once the newsgroup is created and the first article has been posted, the newsgroup is available for all interested persons to post to.

List of Newsgroups

This section lists the newsgroups that are currently active. It is intended to help you decide what you want to subscribe to. Note that the list is constantly changing. Note also that this list only describes those groups available on a network-wide basis. Since not all installations choose to receive all newsgroups, it is recommended that each installation edit the list of local newsgroups to be correct before distributing this document to their users. If this is not possible, a local appendix can be created.

Local

Local groups are kept on the current machine only. Local names can be identified by the lack of a prefix, that is, there are no periods in local newsgroup names.

general — News to be read by everyone on the local machine. For example: "The system will be down Monday morning for PM." Or, "A new version of program *x* has been installed." This newsgroup is usually mandatory – you are required to subscribe to this newsgroup. (The list of mandatory newsgroups varies locally.) This requirement assures that important announcements reach all users. (Formerly *msgs*.)

Network Wide

These are the groups as of the last editing of this manual. The list is undoubtably already out of date. A current list can be obtained by typing ? to the "Newsgroups? " prompt in postnews.

net.abortion	All sorts of discussions on abortion.
net.ai	Artificial intelligence discussions.
net.analog	Analog design developments, ideas, and components.
net.announce	Moderated, general announcements of interest to all.
net.announce.newusers	Moderated, explanatory postings for new users.
net.announce.arpa-internet	Announcements from the Arpa world.
net.arch	Computer architecture.
net.astro	Astronomy discussions and information.
net.astro.expert	Discussion by experts in astronomy.
net.audio	High fidelity audio.
net.auto	Automobiles, automotive products and laws.
net.auto.tech	Technical aspects of automobiles, et. al.
net.aviation	Aviation rules, means, and methods.
net.bicycle	Bicycles, related products and laws.
net.bio	Biology and related sciences.
net.books	Books of all *genres*, shapes, and sizes.
net.bugs	General bug reports and fixes.
net.bugs.2bsd	Reports of UNIX* version 2BSD related bugs.
net.bugs.4bsd	Reports of UNIX version 4BSD related bugs.
net.bugs.usg	Reports of USG (System III, V, etc.) bugs.
net.bugs.uucp	Reports of UUCP related bugs.
net.bugs.v7	Reports of UNIX V7 related bugs.
net.cog-eng	Cognitive engineering.
net.college	College, college activities, campus life, etc.
net.columbia	The space shuttle and the STS program.
net.comics	The funnies, old and new.
net.consumers	Consumer interests, product reviews, etc.
net.cooks	Food, cooking, cookbooks, and recipes.
net.crypt	Different methods of data en/decryption.
net.cse	Computer science education.
net.cycle	Motorcycles and related products and laws.
net.database	Database and data management issues and theory.

net.dcom	Data communications hardware and software.
net.decus	DEC* Users' Society newsgroup.
net.emacs	EMACS editors of different flavors.
net.eunice	The SRI Eunice system.
net.followup	Followups to articles in net.general.
net.games	Games and computer games.
net.games.board	Discussion and hints on board games.
net.games.chess	Chess & computer chess.
net.games.emp	Discussion and hints about Empire.
net.games.frp	Discussion about Fantasy Role Playing games.
net.games.go	Discussion about Go.
net.games.hack	Discussion, hints, etc. about the Hack game.
net.games.pbm	Discussion about Play by Mail games.
net.games.rogue	Discussion and hints about Rogue.
net.games.trivia	Discussion about trivia.
net.games.video	Discussion about video games.
net.garden	Gardening, methods and results.
net.general	*Important* and timely announcements of interest to all.
net.graphics	Computer graphics, art, animation, image processing.
net.ham-radio	Amateur Radio practices, contests, events, rules, etc.
net.ham-radio.packet	Discussion about packet radio setups.
net.info-terms	All sorts of terminals.
net.internat	Discussion about international standards
net.invest	Investments and the handling of money.
net.jobs	Job announcements, requests, etc.
net.jokes	Jokes and the like. May be somewhat offensive.
net.jokes.d	Discussions on the content of net.jokes articles
net.kids	Children, their behavior and activities.
net.lan	Local area network hardware and software.
net.lang	Different computer languages.
net.lang.ada	Discussion about Ada*.
net.lang.apl	Discussion about APL.
net.lang.c	Discussion about C.
net.lang.f77	Discussion about FORTRAN.
net.lang.forth	Discussion about Forth.
net.lang.lisp	Discussion about LISP.
net.lang.mod2	Discussion about Modula-2.
net.lang.pascal	Discussion about Pascal.
net.lang.prolog	Discussion about PROLOG.
net.lang.st80	Discussion about Smalltalk 80.
net.legal	Legalities and the ethics of law.
net.lsi	Large scale integrated circuits.
net.mag	Magazine summaries, tables of contents, etc.
net.mail	Proposed new mail/network standards.
net.mail.headers	Gatewayed from the ARPA header-people list.
net.math	Mathematical discussions and puzzles.
net.math.stat	Statistics discussion.
net.math.symbolic	Symbolic algebra discussion.
net.med	Medicine and its related products and regulations.
net.micro	Micro computers of all kinds.
net.micro.16k	National Semiconductor 32000 series chips
net.micro.6809	Discussion about 6809's.
net.micro.68k	Discussion about 68k's.

net.micro.apple	Discussion about Apple micros.
net.micro.amiga	Talk about the new Amiga micro.
net.micro.atari	Discussion about Atari micros.
net.micro.att	Discussions about AT&T microcomputers
net.micro.cbm	Discussion about Commodore micros.
net.micro.cpm	Discussion about the CP/M operating system.
net.micro.hp	Discussion about Hewlett/Packard's.
net.micro.mac	Material about the Apple Macintosh & Lisa.
net.micro.pc	Discussion about IBM personal computers.
net.micro.ti	Discussion about Texas Instruments.
net.micro.trs-80	Discussion about TRS-80's.
net.misc	Various discussions too short-lived for other groups.
net.motss	Issues pertaining to homosexuality.
net.movies	Reviews and discussions of movies.
net.music	Music lovers' group.
net.music.classical	Discussion about classical music.
net.music.folk	Folks discussing folk music of various sorts.
net.music.gdead	A group for (Grateful) Dead-heads.
net.music.synth	Synthesizers and computer music.
net.net-people	Announcements, requests, etc. about people on the net.
net.news	Discussions of USENET itself.
net.news.adm	Comments directed to news administrators.
net.news.b	Discussion about B news software.
net.news.config	Postings of system down times and interruptions.
net.news.group	Discussions and lists of newsgroups
net.news.newsite	Postings of new site announcements.
net.news.notes	Notesfile software from the Univ. of Illinois.
net.news.sa	Comments directed to system administrators.
net.news.stargate	Discussion about satellite transmission of news.
net.nlang	Natural languages, cultures, heritages, etc.
net.nlang.africa	Discussions about Africa & things African.
net.nlang.celts	Group about Celtics.
net.nlang.greek	Group about Greeks.
net.nlang.india	Group for discussion about India & things Indian
net.origins	Evolution versus creationism (sometimes hot!).
net.periphs	Peripheral devices.
net.pets	Pets, pet care, and household animals in general.
net.philosophy	Philosophical discussions.
net.physics	Physical laws, properties, etc.
net.poems	For the posting of poems.
net.politics	Political discussions. Could get hot.
net.politics.theory	Theory of politics and political systems.
net.puzzle	Puzzles, problems, and quizzes.
net.railroad	Real and model train fans' newsgroup.
net.rec	Recreational/participant sports.
net.rec.birds	Hobbyists interested in bird watching.
net.rec.boat	Hobbyists interested in boating.
net.rec.bridge	Hobbyists interested in bridge.
net.rec.nude	Hobbyists interested in naturist/nudist activities.
net.rec.photo	Hobbyists interested in photography.
net.rec.scuba	Hobbyists interested in SCUBA diving.
net.rec.ski	Hobbyists interested in skiing.
net.rec.skydive	Hobbyists interested in skydiving.

net.rec.wood	Hobbyists interested in woodworking.
net.religion	Religious, ethical, and moral implications of actions.
net.religion.christian	Discussion about form and nature of Christianity
net.religion.jewish	Information and discussion about Judaism.
net.research	Research and computer research.
net.roots	Genealogical matters.
net.rumor	For the posting of rumors.
net.sci	General purpose scientific discussions.
net.sf-lovers	Science fiction lovers' newsgroup.
net.singles	Newsgroup for single people, their activities, etc.
net.social	Like net.singles, but for everyone.
net.sources	For the posting of software packages & documentation.
net.sources.bugs	For bug fixes and features discussion.
net.sources.games	Postings of recreational software.
net.sources.mac	Software for the Apple Macintosh.
net.space	Space, space programs, space related research, etc.
net.sport	Spectator sports.
net.sport.baseball	Discussion about baseball.
net.sport.football	Discussion about football.
net.sport.hockey	Discussion about hockey.
net.sport.hoops	Discussion about basketball.
net.startrek	Star Trek, the TV show and the movies.
net.suicide	Suicide, laws, ethics, and its causes and effects (!).
net.taxes	Tax laws and advice.
net.test	For testing of network software. Very boring.
net.text	Text processing.
net.travel	Traveling all over the world.
net.tv	The boob tube, its history, and past and current shows.
net.tv.drwho	Discussion about Dr. Who.
net.tv.soaps	Postings about soap operas.
net.unix	UNIX neophytes group.
net.unix-wizards	Discussions, bug reports, and fixes on and for UNIX.
net.usenix	USENIX Association events and announcements.
net.veg	Vegetarians.
net.video	Video and video components.
net.wanted	Requests for things that are needed.
net.wanted.sources	Requests for software, termcap entries, etc.
net.wines	Wines and spirits.
net.wobegon	"A Prairie Home Companion" radio show discussion.
net.women	Women's rights, discrimination, etc.
net.works	Assorted workstations.
mod.ai	Discussions about Artificial Intelligence
mod.compilers	Discussion about compiler construction, theory, etc.
mod.computers	Discussion about various computers and related.
mod.computers.apollo	Apollo computer systems.
mod.computers.ibm-pc	The IBM PC, PC-XT, and PC-AT.
mod.computers.laser-printers	Laser printers, hardware and software.
mod.computers.macintosh	Apple Macintosh micros.
mod.computers.pyramid	Pyramid 90x computers.
mod.computers.ridge	Ridge 32 computers and ROS.
mod.computers.sequent	Sequent systems, (esp. Balance 8000).
mod.computers.sun	Sun "workstation" computers
mod.computers.vax	DEC's VAX* line of computers & VMS.

mod.computers.workstations	Various workstation-type computers.
mod.graphics	Graphics software, hardware, theory, etc.
mod.human-nets	Computer aided communications digest.
mod.legal	Discussions of computers and the law.
mod.map	Various maps, including UUCP maps.
mod.motss	Moderated newsgroup on gay issues and topics.
mod.movies	Moderated reviews and discussion of movies.
mod.music	Moderated reviews and discussion of things musical.
mod.newprod	Announcements of new products of interest to readers.
mod.newslists	Postings of news-related statistics and lists.
mod.os	Disussions about operating systems and related areas.
mod.os.os9	Discussions about the os9 operating system.
mod.os.unix	Moderated discussion of Unix* features and bugs.
mod.politics	Discussions on political problems, systems, solutions.
mod.politics.arms-d	Arms discussion digest.
mod.protocols	Various forms and types of FTP protocol discussions.
mod.protocols.appletalk	Applebus hardware & software discussion.
mod.protocols.kermit	Information about the Kermit package.
mod.protocols.tcp-ip	TCP and IP network protocols.
mod.rec	Discussions on pastimes (not currently active).
mod.rec.guns	Discussions about firearms.
mod.recipes	A "distributed cookbook" of screened recipes.
mod.risks	Risks to the public from computers & users.
mod.sources	Moderated postings of public-domain sources.
mod.sources.doc	Archived public-domain documentation.
mod.std	Moderated discussion about various standards.
mod.std.c	Discussion about C language standards.
mod.std.mumps	Discussion for the X11.1 committee on Mumps.
mod.std.unix	Discussion for the P1003 committee on Unix.
mod.techreports	Announcements and lists of technical reports.
mod.telecom	Telecommunications digest.
mod.test	Testing of moderated newsgroups -- no moderator.
mod.vlsi	Very large scale integrated circuits.

Appendix – How to use vnews

Overview

Vnews is a program for reading USENET news. It is based on *readnews* but has a CRT-oriented (full screen) user interface. The command line options are identical. The list of available commands is quite similar, although since *vnews* is a *visual* interface, most *vnews* commands do not have to be terminated by a newline.

Vnews uses all but the last two lines of the screen to display the current article. The next to the last line is the secondary prompt line, and is used to input string arguments to commands. The last line contains several fields. The first field is the prompt field. If *vnews* is at the end of an article, the prompt is "next?"; otherwise the prompt is "more?". The second field is the newsgroup field, which displays the current newsgroup, the number of the current article, and the number of the last article in the newsgroup. The third field contains the current time, and the last field contains the word "mail" if you have mail. When you receive new mail, the bell on the terminal is rung and the word "MAIL" appears in capital letters for 30 seconds.

Commands

Most of the *readnews* commands have *vnews* counterparts and vice versa. Some differences are:

- It lacks a "digest" command (to deal specially with collections of articles bundled together). This would be nice to have, but it does not seem to be a major deficiency since you can move around in the digest with *vnews* commands.
- To get to the previous group, use the N command with a – argument.
- *Vnews* has commands for moving around in the article which *readnews* does not have since they aren't applicable.
- It has a "parent" command which will go to the article that the current article is a follow-up to, and a "write" command that writes out the body of an article without the header.
- You can refer to the current article from the shell or while writing a follow-up as $A.
- The "decrypt" command (for decoding possibly offensive material) always does *rot13* which seems to be the default standard but the *readnews* version of it occasionally gets confused.

Commands that differ from *readnews*

Each *vnews* command may be preceded by a *count*. Some commands use the count; others ignore it. If *count* is omitted, it defaults to one. Some commands prompt for an argument on the second line from the bottom of the screen. Standard UNIX erase and kill processing is done on this argument. The argument is terminated by a return. An interrupt (<DELETE> or <BREAK>) gets you out of any partially entered command.

<CR>
A carriage return prints more of the current article, or goes on to the next article if you are at the end of the current article. A <SPACE> is equivalent to <CR>.

<CONTROL-B>
Go backwards *count* pages.

<CONTROL-F>
Go forward *count* pages.

<CONTROL-D>
Go forwards half a page.

<CONTROL-U>
Go backwards half a page.

<CONTROL-N>
Go forwards *count* lines.

<CONTROL-Z>
Go backwards *count* lines.

<CONTROL-L>
Redraw the screen. **<CONTROL-L>** may be typed at any time.

b Back up one article in the current group.

l Redisplay the article after you have sent a follow-up or reply.

n Move on to the next item in a digest. "." is equivalent to **n**. This is convenient if your terminal has a keypad.

p Show the parent article (the article that the current article is a follow-up to). This doesn't work if the current article was posted by A-news or notesfiles. To switch between the current and parent articles, use the **-** command. Unfortunately, if you use several **p** commands to trace the discussion back further, there is no command to return to the original level.

ug Unsubscribe to the current group. This is a two character command to ensure that it is not typed accidentally and to leave room for other types of unsubscribes (*e.g.*, unsubscribe to discussion).

v Print the current version of the news software.

D Decrypts a joke. It only handles *rot13* jokes. The **D** command is a toggle; typing another **D** re-encrypts the joke.

How to Use USENET Effectively

Matt Bishop
Research Institute for Advanced Computer Science
Mail Stop 230-5
NASA Ames Research Center
Moffett Field, CA 94035

1. Introduction

USENET is a worldwide bulletin board system in which thousands of computers pass articles back and forth. Of necessity, customs have sprung up enabling very diverse people and groups to communicate peaceably and effectively using USENET. These customs are for the most part written, but are scattered over several documents that can be difficult to find; in any case, even if a new user can find all the documents, he most likely will have neither the time nor the inclination to read them all. This document is intended to collect all these conventions into one place, thereby making it easy for new users to learn about the world of USENET. (Old-timers, too, will benefit from reading this.)

You should read this document and understand it thoroughly before you even think about posting anything. If you have questions, please ask your USENET administrator (who can usually be reached by sending mail to *usenet*) or a more knowledgeable USENET user. Believe me, you will save yourself a lot of grief.

The mechanics of posting an article to USENET are explained in Mark Horton's excellent paper *How to Read the Network News*; if you have not read that yet, stop here and do so. A lot of what follows depends on your knowing (at least vaguely) the mechanics of posting news.

Before we discuss these customs, we ought to look at the history of USENET, what it is today, and why we need these conventions.

2. All About USENET

USENET began on a set of computers in North Carolina's Research Triangle. The programs involved (known as "netnews" then, and "A news" now) exchanged messages; it was a small, multi-computer bulletin board system. As time passed, administrators of other systems began to connect their computers to this bulletin board system. The network grew. Then, at Berkeley, the news programs were rewritten (this version became known as "B news") and the format changed to conform to ARPA standards (again, this became the "B protocol for news".†) This version of news was very widely distributed, and at this point USENET began to take on its current shape.

USENET is a *logical* network (as opposed to a *physical* network.) It is also a very amorphous network, in that there is no central administration or controlling site. There is not even an official list of members, although there is a very complete unofficial one. A site gets access to USENET by finding some other site already on USENET that it can connect to and exchange news articles. So long as this second site (called a *neighbor* of the first site) remains willing and able to pass articles to and from the first site, the first site is on USENET. A site leaves the USENET only when no one is willing or able to pass articles to, or accept articles from, it.

---

† See *Standard for Interchange of USENET Messages* for a description of the two formats.

As a result, USENET has no equivalent of a "sysop" or central authority controlling the bulletin board. What little control is exercised is wielded by the person at each site who is responsible for maintaining the USENET connecions (this person is called the "USENET administrator.") Because most USENET administrators are (relatively) new to USENET, and because administering USENET locally involves a great deal of work, most USENET administrators tend to follow the lead of other, more experienced, administrators (often known somewhat irreverently as "net gurus.") This is not an abdication of responsibility, but a means of keeping the amount of work little enough so it can be done without interfering with the local USENET administrator's job. An example of this is the list of currently active newsgroups circulated every month or so. It is not "official" – no one has that authority – but as the maintainer is doing the work that every other USENET administrator would have to do otherwise, it is accepted as a valid list. If the maintainer changes the list in a way another USENET administrator finds unacceptable, that administrator can simply ignore the list. (Incidentally, the "net gurus" became known as such because of the work they have contributed to USENET. Their experience is a valuable resource for each USENET administrator.)

Because the USENET has grown so wildly, a number of problems have appeared. One of these problems is technical, and a number of the conventions this document describes spring from attempts to keep this problem under control.

The technical problem arises due to the transport mechanism used by most USENET sites. Most computers on USENET do not have access to large-area networks like ARPANET. As a result the only viable transport mechanism these sites can use is a set of programs collectively known as UUCP and which communicate over dialup telephone lines. Initially, news programs generated one UUCP command per article. With the explosion of the USENET, the number of articles simply swamped many sites; phone lines would be tied up all day transmitting news, and many articles would be processed at the same time, slowing down the computers noticeably.

The solution was to batch messages. This way, many articles are sent via UUCP with one command, and the command on the receiving machine would split the file into separate articles, which could then be processed individually. While this increased the size of the files being sent, it cut down on the number of UUCP commands sent, and since sending a command involves quite a bit of overhead, this decreased the duration of phone calls, and to a lesser degree the load on the computer. At some sites, such as Purdue, this was not quite enough, so a simple spooler was implemented to process the individual articles one at a time. This reduced the system load to a very acceptable amount.

However, the problem has not gone away by any means. In one sense it has become worse; as more articles are posted to the network, phone costs and system load averages increase, and system administrators require USENET administrators to cut back or eliminate newsgroups and to transmit news only at night (which means long propagation delays). In short, everyone who has anything to do with administering any USENET site is very concerned about the future of USENET, both in general and at his own site.

Many of the rules you will read address this concern. The fear that USENET may collapse is not a bogeyman, but very real. We hope it will not collapse, and the rules below outline some ways to prevent problems and increase the likelihood that enough sites will remain on USENET to keep it alive. There is no central authority that can force you to follow them, but by doing so you will help keep USENET a valuable resource to the computer community.

3. Deciding to Post

Before you decide to post an article, you should consider a few things.

3.1. Do not repeat postings

This applies even if you did not post the information the first time around. If you know the answer to a question someone asked, first read the followups, and if you have something more to contribute, mail it to the questioner; if you think it should be seen by others, ask the questioner to summarize the answers he receives in a subsequent article. One of the biggest problems on USENET is

that many copies of the same answer to a simple question are posted.

If you want to repost something because you believe it did not get to other USENET sites due to transmission problems (this happens sometimes, but a lot less often than commonly believed), do some checking before you repost. If you have a friend at another USENET site, call him and ask if the article made it to his site. Ask your USENET administrator if he knows of any problems in the USENET; there are special newsgroups to which USENET administrators subscribe in which problems are reported, or he can contact his counterparts at other sites for information. Finally, if you decide you must repost it, indicate in the article subject that it is a reposting, and say why you are reposting it (if you don't, you'll undoubtedly get some very nasty mail.)

Reposting announcements of products or services is flatly forbidden. Doing so may convince other sites to turn off your USENET access.

When school starts, hoards of new users descend upon the USENET asking questions. Many of these questions have been asked, and answered, literally thousands of times since USENET began. The most common of these questions, and their answers, have been collected in the hope that the new users will read them and not re-post the same questions. So, if you want to ask a question, check Appendix I (**Answers to Frequently Asked Questions**) to be sure it isn't one that has been asked and answered literally hundreds of times before you started reading the USENET.

3.2. Do not post anything when upset, angry, or intoxicated

Posting an article is a lot like driving a car – you have to be in control of yourself. Postings which begin "Jane, you ignorant slut, ..." are very definitely considered in poor taste†. Unfortunately, they are also far too common.

The psychology of this is interesting. One popular belief is that since we interact with USENET via computers, we all often forget that a computer did not do the posting; a human did. A contributing factor is that you don't have to look the target of abuse in the eye when you post an abusive message; eye-to-eye contact has an amazing effect on inhibiting obnoxious behavior. As a result, discussions on the USENET often degenerate into a catfight far more readily than would a face-to-face discussion.

Before you post an article, think a minute; decide whether or not you are upset, angry, or high. If you are, wait until you calm down (or come down) before deciding to post something. Then think about whether or not you really want to post it. You will be amazed what waiting a day or even a few hours can do for your perspective.

Bear in mind that shouting hasn't convinced anyone of anything since the days of Charlemagne, and being abusive makes people hold even more tenaciously to their ideas or opinions. Gentleness, courtesy, and eloquence are far more persuasive; not only do they indicate you have enough confidence in your words to allow them to speak for you, but also they indicate a respect for your audience. This in turn makes it easier for your audience to like or respect you – and people tend to be far more interested in, and receptive to, arguments advanced by those they like or respect than by writers who are abusive. Finally, remember that some discussions or situations simply cannot be resolved. Because people are different, agreed-upon facts often lead to wildly different feelings and conclusions. These differences are what makes life so wonderful; were we all alike, the world would be a very boring place. So, don't get frantic; relax and enjoy the discussion. Who knows, you might even learn something!

3.3. Be sure your posting is appropriate to USENET

Some things are inappropriate to post to USENET. Discussing whether or not some other discussion is appropriate, or if it is in the right newsgroup, is an example. Invariably, the "meta-discussion" generates so many articles that the discussion is simply overwhelmed and vanishes; but

† Unless you are critiquing *Saturday Night Live.*

the meta-discussion lingers on for several weeks, driving most of the readers of that newsgroup out of their collective minds. Help preserve the sanity of your fellow USENET readers by mailing such comments to the people involved, rather than posting them.

Another example of inappropriate postings is the infamous "spelling flame." Every few months someone takes another poster to task for poor spelling or grammar. Soon, everyone jumps on the bandwagon, tearing apart one another's postings for such errors. To put it mildly, this angers almost everyone involved for no real reason. Please remember that we all make mistakes, and there are a lot of people for whom English is a second language. So, try to keep your spelling and grammar comments to yourself – but if you find you simply cannot, mail them to the poster rather than posting them.

Far more insidious are requests similar to "How can I splice into the local cable TV transmission line?" Posting to USENET is akin to publishing, so don't ask for or post instructions on how to do something illegal. And please don't quote the First Amendment, or the laws allowing freedom of speech in your country; while the posting programs will not stop you, the aftermath could be very unpleasant – lawsuits and court trials usually are, and the USENET would certainly collapse as sites dropped from it to protect themselves from legal liability. You wouldn't want that on your conscience, would you? Of course not.

Related to this is the next rule.

3.4. Do not post other people's work without permission

Posting something to USENET puts it in the public domain for all practical purposes. So, be careful about posting things like UNIX†-related material (specifically source code) or company documents; consider licensing and nondisclosure agreements first. Some people regard the posting of "diffs" based on licensed code to be a suitable compromise, as they are only useful to those who have the base code already.

Copyrighted works are a separate problem. Both United States and international law provide protection for copyrighted works; other than short extracts for purposes of criticism, you cannot copy a copyrighted work in whole or in part without permission of the copyright holder (who may, or may not, be the author.) Without this protection, artists could not make any money and hence would have limited incentive to make the fruits of their art available at all. Posting a copyrighted work without permission is theft, even though the property stolen is not tangible in most cases. Hence, posting movie and book reviews, song lyrics, or anything else which is copyrighted without the permission of the copyright holder, could cause you personally, your company, or the USENET itself to be held liable for damages. Please be very careful that you obey the law when posting such material!

3.5. Don't forget that opinions are those of the poster and not his employer.

Every so often, someone will post a particularly disgusting article, and a number of responses will ask if all employees of the original poster's company share his (revolting) opinion, or suggest that action be taken against that company. Please remember that all opinions or statements in articles are to be attributed to the poster *only*, and in particular, do not necessarily represent the opinions of the poster's employer, the owner of the computer on which the article originated, or anyone involved with any aspect of USENET – and consequently the responsibility for any USENET message rests with the poster and with no one else. The appropriate response is not to attack the company or its other employees; let the poster know what you think of his posting via mail. If the postings continue, take advantage of the news software's presenting you with the author's name and the subject line and then asking if you want to see the article; start looking for the poster's name or the offensive subject in the articles presented to you and skip them. If you really get offended, you can unsubscribe from a newsgroup.

†UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

Part of the price of freedom is allowing others to make fools of themselves. You wouldn't like to be censored, so don't advocate censorship of others. No one is forcing you to read the postings.

In some countries, posting or receiving certain types of articles may be a criminal offense. As a result, certain newsgroups which circulate freely within the United States may not be circulated in other nations without risking civil or criminal liabilities. In this case, the appropriate action for sites in that country is neither to accept nor to transmit the newsgroup. No site is *ever* forced to accept or pass on *any* newsgroup.

4. Where to Post

The various newsgroups and distributions have various rules associated with their use. This section will describe these rules and offer suggestions on which newsgroups to post your message.

4.1. Keep the distribution as limited as possible

A basic principle of posting is to keep the distribution of your article as limited as possible. Like our modern society, USENET is suffering from both an information glut and information pollution. It is widely believed that the USENET will cease to function unless we are able to cut down the quantity of articles. One step in this direction is not to post something to places where it will be worthless. For example, if you live in Hackensack, New Jersey, the probability of anyone in Korea wanting to buy your 1972 Toyota is about as close to zero as you can get. So confine your posting to the New Jersey area.

To do this, you can either post to a local group, or post to a net-wide group and use the *distribution* feature to limit how widely your article will go. When you give your posting program (usually *postnews*(1)) a distribution, you are (in essence) saying that machines which do not recognize that distribution should not get the article. (Think of it as a subgroup based on locality and you'll get the idea.) For example, if you are posting in the San Francisco Bay Area, and you post your article to **net.auto** but give **ba** as the distribution, the article will not be sent beyond the San Francisco Bay Area (to which the **ba** distribution is local) even though you put it in a net-wide newsgroup. Had you given the distribution as **ca** (the California distribution), your article would have been sent to all Californian sites on USENET. Had you given the distribution as **net**, your article would have been sent to all sites on USENET.

4.2. Do not post the same article twice to different groups

If you have an article that you want to post to more than one group, post to both at the same time. Newer versions of the news software will show an article only once regardless of how many newsgroups it appears in. But if you post it once to each different group, all versions of news software will show it once for each newsgroup. This angers a lot of people and wastes everybody's time.

4.3. Do not post to "mod." or "net.announce" newsgroups

You may not post directly to certain newsgroups; you cannot post to some at all. Newer versions of the news software will inform you when either of these restrictions apply, but older versions of news software will not.

The **mod.** newsgroups are *bona fide* moderated newsgroups. If you want to have the appropriate moderator post something, mail it to him. (If you do not know his address, ask your USENET administrator. In some cases, the software will automatically mail, rather than post, your article to the moderator.)

The newsgroup **net.announce** and its subgroups are moderated newsgroups designed for important announcements. It is used to post important announcements that everyone on USENET can read. (**Net.general** was meant to provide such a place, but so many inappropriate messages have been posted there that a lot of people began to unsubscribe; hence, this moderated newsgroup was set up. Very few messages are posted to it, so don't be afraid to subscribe; you will not be overwhelmed.) To

post to this group, mail your announcement to the moderator, and he will either post it or suggest an alternative (such as a more appropriate newsgroup.) Messages for **net.announce** should be short, important enough so that everyone on USENET should see the headers, not cross-posted to any other newsgroup, and signed; messages which are political, commercial, or religious in nature will be rejected.

4.4. Do not post to "net.general"

Of course, there are exceptions to this rule, but almost all articles posted to **net.general** do not belong there. Only articles of general interest and importance to *everyone* on USENET should be posted there. "Everyone" includes the USENET readers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Canada, the United States, and possibly other places.

This means that announcements of services or products, test messages, seminar announcements, program sources and bug reports, requests for addresses, and so forth do *not* go to **net.general**. If you wish to post a follow-up to an article you saw in **net.general**, put the followup posting in **net.followup**. (Again, newer versions of news software will do this automatically, but do not rely on this feature as your software may be old.)

Similarly, never post to **net.general** and another newsgroup. If your article belongs in any other newsgroup, put it there, and not in **net.general**. (There is one exception to this rule – articles may be cross-posted to **net.general** and **net.announce**. Since **net.announce** is moderated, though, the exception does not matter to you.)

4.5. Ask someone if you can't figure out where to post your article

If you cannot figure out where to post something, look in **net.announce.newusers** for the list of active newsgroups. (This is posted biweekly. If you can't find it, look at the list in *How to Read the Network News*; but be aware that list is undoubtedly out of date already.) If your article does not seem to fit in any of the listed groups, post it to **net.misc** or don't post it.

If you still are not sure which newsgroup to post your article to, ask an old-timer. If your site doesn't have any old-timers (or none of the old-timers will admit to being old-timers), contact any of the following people:

Gene Spafford (spaf@gatech.CSNET, spaf@gatech.UUCP)
Mark Horton (mark@cbosgd.UUCP)
Rick Adams (rick@seismo.CSS.GOV, rick@seismo.UUCP)
Chuq Von Rospach (chuq@sun.UUCP)
Matt Bishop (mab@riacs.ARPA, mab@riacs.UUCP)

We will be happy to help you. But, please, do not post the article to the net before you ask us!

4.6. Be sure there is a consensus before creating a new newsgroup

Creating a new newsgroup is, in general, a very bad idea. Currently, there are so many articles being posted that the USENET is in dange of collapse as site after site decides to cease to accept and retransmit certain newsgroups. Moreover, there is no established procedure for deleting a newsgroup, so once created, newsgroups tend to stay around. They also tend to encourage people to think up new newsgroups, and the cycle repeats. Try to avoid thinking up new newsgroups.

If, however, you believe a new group should be created, be sure you have a consensus that the group is needed (either a mailing list has enough traffic and readers to justify turning it into a newsgroup, or a discussion in a current newsgroup becomes so large for a period of time long enough to warrant splitting it into a newsgroup.) Then post an article to **net.news.group** as well as any other groups related to your proposed new group, and discuss the topics you are proposing be covered in your new group, what it should be called, whether it is *really* needed, and so forth. Try to resolve all objections, and take into account all suggestions and comments; finally, have everyone mail you a "yes" or "no" vote on whether the group should be created. Try to get at least 40 or 50 "yes" votes before creating the group; if you want to be safe, get around 100.

4.7. Watch out for newsgroups which have special rules about posting

Some newsgroups have special rules. This section summarizes them.

net.books	Do not post anything revealing a plot or a plot twist without putting the word "spoiler" somewhere in the "Subject" field. This will let those who do not wish to have a surprise spoiled skip the article.
net.followup	This group is for followups to articles posted in **net.general** or for results of surveys. No discussions are allowed.
net.jokes	If you want to post an offensive joke (this includes racial, religious, sexual, and scatalogical humor, among other kinds) rotate it. (If you do not know what this means, look in the section **Writing Your Posting.**)
net.movies	Do not post anything revealing a plot or a plot twist without putting the word "spoiler" in the "Subject" field. This will let those who do not wish to have a surprise spoiled skip the article.
net.news.group	Discussions about whether or not to create new groups, and what to name them, go here. Please mail your votes to the proposer; don't post them.
net.sources	Source code postings go here. Discussions are not allowed. Do not post bug fixes here.
net.sources.bugs	Bug reports and bug fixes to sources posted in **net.sources** go here.
net.test	Use the smallest distribution possible. In the body of the message, say what you are testing.
net.wanted	Requests for things other than source code go here. Please use the smallest distribution possible. Post offers here, too.
net.wanted.sources	Requests for sources go here.

5. Writing the Article

Here are some suggestions to help you communicate effectively with others on the USENET. Perhaps the best advice is not to be afraid to consult a book on writing style; two of the best are *How to Write for the World of Work* by Cunningham and Pearsall, and *Elements of Style* by Strunk and White.

5.1. Write for your audience

USENET is an international network, and any article you post will be *very* widely read. Even more importantly, your future employers may be among the readers! So, try to make a good impression.

A basic principle of all writing is to write at your readers' reading level. It is better to go below than above. Aiming where "their heads ought to be" may be fine if you are a college professor (and a lot of us would dispute even that), but it is guaranteed to cause people to ignore your article. Studies have shown that the average American reads at the fifth grade level and the average professional reads at the twelfth grade level.

5.2. Be clear and concise

Remember that you are writing for a very busy audience; your readers will not puzzle over your article. So be very clear and very concise. Be precise as well; choose the least ambiguous word you can, taking into account the context in which you are using the word. Split your posting into sections and paragraphs as appropriate. Use a descriptive title in the "Subject" field, and be sure that the title is related to the body of the article. If the title is not related, feel free to change it to a title that is.

5.3. Proofread your article

This is a matter of courtesy; since you want others to read your article, the least you can do is check that it says what you mean in a clear, concise manner. Check for typographical errors, silly grammar errors, and misspellings; if you have a spelling checking program, use it. Also be sure the article is easy to read. Use white space – blanks, tabs, and newlines – and both upper and lower case letters. Do not omit the definite and indefinite articles, either; not only do "a", "an", and "the" make a posting much easier to read, their omission can make a posting ambiguous.

5.4. Be extra careful with announcements of products or services

When writing a product or service announcement, bear in mind that others will be paying most of the telephone bills. So, if you are announcing several things, combine all the announcements into one article. Mark the posting as a product or service announcement in the title in the "Subject" field. Advertising hyperbole is not appropriate here; remember that your audience is to a large degree technically literate, and your product will stand or fall on its technical merits. Be aware that posting obnoxious or inappropriate advertisements is very serious and if you do it, you may find your neighbors yanking your USENET access.

5.5. Indicate sarcasm and humor

Remember that people cannot see you when they read your posting; hence, all the subtle nuances of body and facial motion are hidden. It can be quite difficult to tell when you are being sarcastic or humorous. To deal with this problem, the USENET readers and posters have developed a special sign. Mark passages you intend to be taken as humorous with the "smiley face", while looks like this: ":-)". (Think of a head facing you lying on its right side and look again if you don't understand why that symbol was chosen.) As for sarcasm, there is no universal symbol for that (unless the sarcasm is meant humorously, in which case use the smiley face again.) But mark your passage so everyone will realize you are being sarcastic.

5.6. Mark postings which spoil surprises

High on the list of obnoxious messages are those that spoil the plot of a book or movie by giving away an unexpected detail. If you post such an article, please put the word "spoiler" in the "Subject" field of your posting, so people who do not wish to have a surprise ruined can skip the article.

5.7. Rotate offensive postings

If you feel you must post a message that may offend people, you can do one of two things. You can post it to the newsgroup **net.flame** or you can take steps to be sure the message will only be read by those who explicitly ask for it to be shown to them. In the latter case, the USENET convention is to encrypt these messages by shifting each letter 13 characters, so that (for example) "a" becomes "n". (In more precise terms, this is a Caesar cipher of shift 13; on the USENET, it is called *rot13*.) When you do this, put the word "rot13" in the "Subject" field. The news reader you are using almost certainly has a command to encrypt and decrypt such messages; if not, use the UNIX command

```
tr a-zA-Z n-za-mN-ZA-M
```

5.8. The shorter your signature, the better

Keep signatures concise; 2 or 3 lines are usually plenty. Include your name and addresses on any major networks (such as ARPANET, BITNET, or CSNET). This helps people contact you quickly and easily, usually more so than by following the return path of the article. Do not include pictures, graphics or clever quotations that make the signature longer; this is not the appropriate place for them, and many sites resent paying the phone bills for such signatures.

6. Conclusion and Summary

Here is a list of the rules given above:

☛ Deciding to post

- Do not repeat postings
- Do not post anything when upset, angry, or intoxicated
- Be sure your posting is appropriate to USENET
- Do not post other people's work without permission
- Don't forget that opinions are those of the poster and not his company

☛ Where to Post

- Keep the distribution as limited as possible
- Do not post the same article twice to different groups
- Do not post to **mod.**, or **net.announce** newsgroups
- Do not post to **net.general**
- Ask someone if you can't figure out where to post your article
- Be sure there is a consensus before creating a new newsgroup
- Watch out for newsgroups which have special rules about posting

☛ Writing the Article

- Write for your audience
- Be clear and concise
- Proofread your article
- Be extra careful with announcements of products or services
- Indicate sarcasm and humor
- Mark postings which spoil surprises
- Rotate offensive postings
- The shorter your signature, the better

The USENET can be a great place for us all. Sadly, not enough people are following the customs that have been established to keep the USENET civilized. This document was written to educate all users of the USENET on their responsibilities. Let's clean up the USENET, and turn it into a friendly, helpful community again!

Acknowledgements: The writing of this document was inspired by Chuq von Rospach's posting on USENET etiquette, and it draws on previous work by Mark Horton, A. Jeff Offutt, Gene Spafford, and Chuq von Rospach.

USD 10

Appendix I. Answers to Frequently Asked Questions

originally from Jerry Schwarz (jerry@eagle.UUCP)
modified by Gene Spafford (spaf@gatech.UUCP)
modified by Matt Bishop (mab@riacs.ARPA)

This document discusses some items that occur repeatedly on USENET. They frequently are submitted by new users, and result in many followups, sometimes swamping groups for weeks. The purpose of this note is to head off these annoying events by answering some questions and warning about the inevitable consequence of asking others. If you don't like my answers, let me know and I may include revisions in future versions of this note.

1. What does UNIX stand for?

   It is not an acronym, but is a pun on "MULTICS." MULTICS is a large operating system that was being developed shortly before UNIX was created.

2. What is the derivation of "foo" as a filler word?

   The favorite story is that it comes from "fubar" which is an acronym for "fouled up beyond all recognition," which is supposed to be a military term. (Various forms of this exist, "fouled" usually being replaced by a stronger word.) "Foo" and "Bar" have the same derivation.

3. Is a machine at "foo" on the net?

   These questions belong in **net.news.config** if anywhere, but in fact your best bet is usually to phone somebody at "foo" to find out. If you don't know anybody at "foo" you can always try calling and asking for the "computer center." Also, see the newsgroup **mod.map**, where maps of USENET and the UUCP network are posted regularly.

4. What does "rc" at the end of files like *.newsrc* mean?

   According to Dennis Ritchie, "The name *rc* comes from RUNCOM, which was the rough equivalent on the MIT CTSS system of what UNIX calls shell scripts. Of course RUNCOM derives from *run commands.*"

5. What do "- (nf)" and "Orphaned Response" in an item's title mean?

   It means that the item was created by "notefiles," an alternative news handling interface that many people prefer. If you want to find out more you can read the *"Notesfile* System Reference Manual" or contact *uiucdcs!essick.*

6. What does ":-)" mean?

   This is the net convention for a "smiley face." It means that something is being said in jest. If it doesn't look like a smiley face to you, flop your head over to the left and look again.

7. How do I decrypt jokes in **net.jokes**?

   The standard cipher used in **net.jokes** in called "rot13." Each letter is replaced by the letter 13 further along in the alphabet (cycling around at the end). Most systems have a built in command to decrypt such articles; *readnews*(1) and *vnews*(1) have the **D** command, *rn*(1) (another popular public-domain full screen news reader) has the **X** or <CONTROL-X> commands, *notes*(1) has **%** or **R**. If your system doesn't have a program to encrypt and decrypt these, you can quickly create a shell script using *tr*(1):

   ```
   tr A-Za-z N-ZA-Mn-za-m
   ```

   On some versions of UNIX, the *tr* command should be written as:

   ```
   tr "[a-m][n-z][A-M][N-Z]" "[n-z][a-m][N-Z][A-M]"
   ```

8. **net.general**: Is John Doe out there anywhere?

   I suspect that these items are people looking for freshman roommates that they haven't seen in ten years. If you have some idea where the person is you are usually better off calling the organization. For example, if you call any Bell Labs location and request John Doe's number. They

can give it to you even if he works at a different location. If you must try the net, use newsgroup **net.net-people**, *not* **net.general**.

9. **net.math**: Proofs that 1 = 0.

   Almost everyone has seen one or more of these in high school. They are almost always based on either division by 0 or taking the square root of a negative number.

10. **net.games**: Where can I get the source for *empire*(6) or *rogue*(6)?

    You can't. The authors of these games, as is their right, have chosen not to make the sources available.

11. **net.unix-wizards**: How do I remove files with non-ASCII characters in their names?

    You can try to find a pattern that uniquely identifies the file. This sometimes fails because a peculiarity of some shells is that they strip off the high-order bit of characters in command lines. Next, you can try an "rm –i", or "rm –r" (see *rm*(1).) Finally, you can mess around with i-node numbers and *find*(1).

12. **net.unix-wizards**: There is a bug in the way UNIX handles protection for programs that run setuid.

    There are indeed problems with the treatment of protection in setuid programs. When this is brought up, suggestions for changes range from implementing a full capability list arrangement to new kernel calls for allowing more control over when the effective id is used and when the real id is used to control accesses. Sooner or later you can expect this to be improved. For now you just have to live with it.

13. **net.women**: What do you think about abortion?

    Although abortion might appear to be an appropriate topic for **net.women**, more heat than light is generated when it is brought up. Since the newsgroup **net.abortion** has been created, all abortion-related discussion should take place there.

14. **net.singles**: What do "MOTOS," "MOTSS,", "MOTAS", and "SO" stand for?

    Member of the opposite sex, member of the same sex, member of the appropriate sex, and significant other, respectively.

15 **net.columbia**: Shouldn't this name be changed?

    The name was devised to honor the first space shuttle. It was realized at the time the group began that the name would quickly become out of date. The intent was to create a bit of instant nostalgia.

16. **net.columbia**: Shouldn't this group be merged with **net.space**? No. **Net.columbia** is for timely news bulletins. **Net.space** is for discussions.

17. How do I use the "Distribution" feature?

    When *postnews*(1) prompts you for a distribution, it's asking how widely distributed you want your article. The set of possible replies is different, depending on where you are, but at Bell Labs in Murray Hill, New Jersey, possibilities include:

mh3bc1	local to this machine
mh	Bell Labs, Murray Hill Branch
nj	all sites in New Jersey
btl	All Bell Labs machines
att	All AT&T machines
usa	Everywhere in the USA
na	Everywhere in North America
net	Everywhere on USENET in the world (same as "world")

    If you hit <RETURN>, you'll get the default, which is the first part of the newsgroup name. This default is often not appropriate – *please* take a moment to think about how far away people are likely to be interested in what you have to say. Used car ads, housing wanted ads, and things for sale other than specialized equipment like computers certainly shouldn't be distributed to Europe

and Korea, or even to the next state.

The newsgroup **na.forsale** exists for postings of sale announcements. Its distribution is limited to North America; posters should restrict this distribution even further, if possible and appropriate.

18. Why do some people put funny lines ("bug killers") at the beginning of their articles?

Some earlier versions of news had a bug which would drop the first 512 or 1024 bytes of text of certain articles. The bug was triggered whenever the article started with whitespace (a blank or a tab). A fix many people adopted was to begin their articles with a line containing a character other than white space. This gradually evolved into the habit of including amusing first lines.

The original bug has since been fixed in newer version of news, and sites running older versions of news have applied a patch to prevent articles from losing text. The "bug-killer" lines are therefore probably no longer needed, but they linger on.

19. What is the address or phone number of the "foo" company?

Try the white and yellow pages of your phone directory, first; a sales representative will surely know, and if you're a potential customer they will be who you're looking for. Phone books for other cities are usually available in libraries of any size. Whoever buys or recommends things for your company will probably have some buyer's guides or national company directories. Call or visit the reference desk of your library; they have several company and organization directories and many will answer questions like this over the phone. Remember if you only know the city where the company is, you can telephone to find out their full address or a dealer. The network is *not* a free resource, although it may look like that to some people. It is far better to spend a few minutes of your own time researching an answer rather than broadcast your laziness and/or ineptitude to the net.

Report No. UIUCDCS-R-82-1081

U S D 11

NOTESFILE REFERENCE MANUAL
(abridged)

by

Raymond B. Essick IV
Rob Kolstad

February 14, 1983
(Revised: October 20, 1985)
(Printed: April 8, 1986)

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS AT URBANA-CHAMPAIGN
1304 W. SPRINGFIELD AVENUE
URBANA, ILLINOIS 61801-2987

Supported in part by NASA Project NAS-1-138

USD 11

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 Introduction. 1

2 Using Notesfiles. 1
2.1 Invocation. 1
2.2 Notesfile Names and Wildcards. 2
2.3 The -f Option. 3
2.4 General. 3
2.4.1 Help. 3
2.4.2 Exiting. 3
2.4.3 Shells. 4
2.4.4 Comments & Suggestions. 4
2.5 The Index Page. 4
2.5.1 Scrolling the Index Page. 5
2.5.2 Choosing Notes & Responses. 5
2.6 Notes & Responses. 5
2.6.1 Reading Notes. 5
2.6.2 Reading Responses. 7
2.6.3 Writing Notes & Responses. 7
2.6.4 Mailing Notesfile Text. 8
2.6.5 Forwarding Text To Other Notesfiles. 8
2.6.6 Saving Text in Local Files. 8
2.6.7 Deletion. 8
2.6.8 Online Communication. 8
2.6.9 Editing Note Titles. 9
2.6.10 Editing Notes/Responses. 9
2.7 Other Commands. 9
2.7.1 Returning to the Index Page. 9
2.7.2 Searching Titles for Keywords. 9
2.7.3 Searching for Authors. 9
2.7.4 Stacking Notesfiles. 9
2.7.5 Accessing Archives. 10
2.7.6 Policy Note. 10
2.8 The Sequencer. 10
2.8.1 Seeing New Notes and Responses. 10
2.8.2 Alternate Sequencers. 11
2.8.3 Automatic Sequencing. 11
2.9 Environment Variables. 12

3 Other Notesfile Utilities. 13
3.1 Hard Copy Output. 13
3.2 Piped Insertion of Notes. 13
3.3 User Subroutines. 13
3.3.1 Nfcomment. 13
3.3.2 Nfabort. 14
3.4 Statistics. 14
3.5 Checking for New Notes. 15

APPENDICES

USD 11

1 Introduction.

Notesfiles support computer managed discussion forums. Discussions can have many different purposes and scopes: the notesfile system has been designed to be flexible enough to handle differing requirements.

Each notesfile discusses a single topic. The depth of discussion within a notesfile is ideally held constant. While some users may require a general discussion of personal workstations, a different group may desire detailed discussions about the I/O bus structure of the WICAT 68000 (a particular workstation). These discussions might well be separated into two different notesfiles.

Each notesfile contains a list of logically independent notes (called base notes). A note is a block of text with a comment or question intended to be seen by members of the notesfile community. The note display shows the text, its creation time, its title, the notesfile's title, the author's name (some notesfiles allow anonymous notes), the number of "responses", and optionally a "director message". Each base note can have a number of "responses": replies, retorts, further comments, criticism, or related questions concerning the base note. Thus, a notesfile contains an ordered list of ordered lists. This arrangement has historically been more convenient than other proposals (e.g., trees were studied on the PLATO (trademark of Control Data Corporation) system).

The concept of a notesfile was originally implemented at the University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, on the PLATO system. The UNIX (trademark of Bell Laboratoris) notesfile system includes these ideas with adaptations and enhancements made possible by the UNIX environment.

The UNIX notesfile system was designed and implemented by Ray Essick at the University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign. It provides users with the abilities to read notes and responses, write notes and responses, forward note text to other users (via mail) or other notesfiles, save note text in their own files, and sequence through a set of notesfiles seeing just new text. Each notesfile has a set of "directors" who manage the notesfile: they delete old notes, compress the file when needed, grant and restrict access to the notesfile, and set different notesfile parameters (e.g., title, "director message", policy note, whether notes' authors can be anonymous). Some notesfiles contain correspondence from other computers. Like the UNIX "USENET", notes and responses are exchanged (often over phone lines) with remote machines. The notesfile system provides automatic exchange and updating of notes in an arbitrarily connected network.

This document details the use of notesfiles from invocation through intersystem notes exchanges. The last chapter summarizes the entire set of commands for easy reference. An appendix contains detailed checklists for the installation of a notesfile system.

2 Using Notesfiles.

The notesfile system is invoked with a single command line. Most notesfile commands require only a single character (like the vi editor). Those that require more than one character are terminated by a carriage return.

2.1 Invocation.

Invoke the notesfile system with:

notes [-sxi] [-a subsequencer] [-t termtype] [-f nfile] [topic1] [topic2 ...]

The topic list (e.g., topic1) specifies the notesfiles to read. Invoking the notes system with NO

arguments yields a list of some available topics. When more than one topic is specified, the user encounters each topic sequentially (i.e., topic2 is entered upon completion of topic1).

The -s switch activates the "notesfile sequencer" which is discussed in section 2.8. Specify "-x" to use the extended sequencer. The "-i" flag selects yet another sequencing mode. The "-a" option specifies a particular subsequencer. This allows several users sharing a signon to maintain their own sequencing timestamp information.

The -t option directs the notesfile system to use "termtype" as the user's terminal type, overriding the TERM shell variable.

The -f option directs the notesfile system to read the contents of the file "nfile" for a list of notesfiles to read. See section 2.3 ("The -f Option") for more information on the format of this file.

2.2 Notesfile Names and Wildcards.

Notesfiles can be specified in several ways. The most common way is to merely give the name of the notesfile, such as "general". These notesfiles typically reside in the directory "/usr/spool/notes". Notesfiles may also be specified by their complete pathname; thus you could also refer to "general" by its full pathname "/usr/spool/notes/general". Using complete naming, notesfiles can be placed anywhere in the filesystem. This allows "private" notesfiles to be stored in personal directories.

The notesfile system supports pattern matching for names in the same manner as the shell. By using the shell meta-characters "*", "?", "[" and "]", the user can specify a number of notesfiles with a single entry. To read all the notesfiles that pertain to unix, enter the following line (the quotes are required to protect the metacharacters from interpretation by the shell):

```
notes "*unix*"
```

There are several ways to read the notesfiles test1, test2, test3 and test4:

```
notes test1 test2 test3 test4
notes "test?"
notes "test[1234]"
```

Entries can also be eliminated from the list of notesfiles to look at. By prefixing a notesfile name (possibly containing wildcard characters) with a '!', the notesfiles are excluded from the list to be examined. If one wished to look at all of the "test" notesfiles except test3, one could specify:

```
notes "test?" !test3
```

If you use the c shell, you will have to escape the '!', the history character:

```
notes "test?" \!test3
```

These features are available from the normal entry (notes) and the automatic sequencer entry (see section 2.8). Most notesfile programs recognize this format. Among those which do not are programs which must receive exactly one notesfile name.

2.3 The -f Option.

The "-f" option of the notesfile system specifies a file of notesfile names to read. The file consists of lines containing notesfile names:

```
nfgripes
net.unix-wizards
net.general
fa.telecom
```

The names start at the left margin; they are indented here for readability. Wildcard characters ("*", "?", "[", and "]") are acceptable in this context. Full names such as "/usr/spool/notes/general" are also accepted. Notesfiles can be eliminated through the "!" feature as described in section 2.2. The sequencer mode can be changed (see section 2.8) by inserting a line of the form:

```
-s
```

Again, this starts at the left margin. The "s" can be any of: "s", "x", "i", or "n". When a line of this form is read from the file, the sequencer mode is set to the corresponding mode: The normal "s"equencer, the e"x"tended sequencer, the "i"ndex sequencer, and "n"o sequencer.

To always enter nfgripes, micronotes, and bicycle while only entering the networked notesfiles "net.*" when new notes are present, one might use "notes -f myfile" with this "myfile":

```
-x
nfgripes
micronotes
bicycle
-s
net.*
```

2.4 General.

Almost all notesfile commands consist of exactly one character (no carriage return). Only commands that are longer than one character require a terminating carriage return (currently, choosing a note to read is the only non-single character command).

The commands were chosen to be easy to remember. Upper case forms of commands usually function like their lower case counterparts but with some additional feature or power (i.e., "w" writes a response, "W" includes the current displayed text in the response).

Some commands are available almost everywhere in the notesfile system. These include those for help, exiting, forking a shell, and making a comment for the suggestion box.

2.4.1 Help.

Typing "?" anywhere will list the available options in an abbreviated format.

2.4.2 Exiting.

Type "q" ("quit") to leave the current notesfile. Capital "Q" leaves the current notesfile and refrains from entering your last entry time into the sequencer table (see section "The Sequencer"). The notesfile system proceeds to the next topic in the invocation list. The "k" and "K" keys function exactly as "q" and "Q".

Use control-D ("signoff") to leave the notesfile system completely (without updating entry time information). The "z" command (which functions only when reading notes or responses or when on the index page) behaves similarly to control-D: the user exits the notesfile system immediately, but unlike control-D, updates the entry time information for the current notesfile.

2.4.3 Shells.

Fork a shell at any time by typing "!" (just like many other Unix programs).

2.4.4 Comments & Suggestions.

Type capital "B" ("suggestion Box") while on the index page or reading notes to make a comment or suggestion about the notesfile program. Your suggestion will be stored in another notesfile reviewed frequently by the notesfile system manager.

2.5 The Index Page.

When the notes system is invoked without the -s option, the user sees an index of the most recent notes. A sample page is shown below:

Workstation Discussion 2:03 pm Jan 4, 1982

12/9/81	2 Stanford SUN	4	horton
	3*WICAT 68000		kolstad
	4 M68000	1	horton
	5 Dolphin	3	duke!johnson
12/10	6 CDC Standalone	1	smith
	8 IBM Personal Computer		henry
	9 Personal computers harmful?	8	Anonymous
	10 Ethernet interfaces 3 mhz?	23	essick
	11 Requirements for uiucdcs	10	botten
1/1/82	12 Happy New Year!	5	mjk

The upper left corner shows the notesfile's title. In this example, the notesfile discusses personal workstations. The current time and date are displayed in the upper right corner. Approximately ten note titles are displayed (if available). More notes are displayed on longer screens (such as the Ann Arbor Ambassador). Each note is displayed with its date (if different from the previous date), note number, title, number of responses (if any), and author. The first note above was written by user "horton" on December 9th, is entitled "Stanford SUN" and has four responses. Note 7 has been deleted for some reason (by either its author or a notesfile director). Note 5 was written by user "johnson" whose signon resides on the "duke" system. Note 9 was written by an author who preferred to remain unidentified. Notes with director messages (sometimes denoting importance) are displayed with a "*" next to the note number (see note 3 above).

From the index page the user may:

- Scroll the index forward or backward.
- Read a note.
- Write a note.
- Go to the next unread note.
- Search for notes or responses after a specific date/time.

- Search for keywords within notes' titles.
- Search for notes/responses by a specific author.
- Go to another notesfile.
- Consult the notesfile's archive.
- Read the policy note.
- Check on anonymous and networked status.
- Register a complaint/suggestion about notesfiles.
- Fork a shell.
- Exit the notes program.
- Invoke notesfile director options (if the user is a director).

2.5.1 Scrolling the Index Page.

Scroll the index page by:

+, <return>, <space> forward one page
* forward to the most recent page (* is multiple +'s)
- backward one page
= backward all the way (= is multiple -'s)

2.5.2 Choosing Notes & Responses.

While on the index page, choose a note to read by typing its number followed by a carriage return. (This is the only command that requires a carriage return after it.) Usually the space bar is used to scan text. To skip to a particular note or response, use the features below.

While reading a note, ";" or "+" advances to the first response of the note. The next note is displayed if there are no responses. The number keys ("1", "2", ... , "9") advance that many responses. If there are fewer responses, the last response is displayed. The return key skips the responses and goes to the next note. Press "-" or backspace to see the previous page of the current note; if the page currently displayed is the first, the notesfile program displays the first page of the previous note.

While a response is on the screen, the ";" and "+" keys display the next response. As with reading a note, if there are no further responses these keys advance to the next note. The number keys ("1", ... , "9") will advance the appropriate number of responses. If there are fewer responses, the last response is displayed. The "-" or backspace keys display the previous page of the current response. If the current page is the first page of the response, these keys display the first page of the previous response. Enter "=" to see the base note of the current note string. Press the return key to proceed to the next note.

2.6 Notes & Responses.

2.6.1 Reading Notes.

After selecting a note from the index page (or entering the notesfile with your "sequencer" on), the note is displayed. A sample display is shown below:

Note 15 Workstation Discussion 2 responses
horton WICAT 150 4:03 pm Dec 11, 1981

Wicat System 150

8 MHz 68000, Mem. mgmt, Multibus architecture, 256k to 1.5 Mb RAM,16/32/64Kbyte EPROM,
10 ms interval timer, 2 RS232 (19.6k async, 56k sync), 16 bit parallel intelligent disk controller,
10 Mbyte winchester (5.25", 3600 rpm, access: 3 ms trk-trk, 70 avg, 150 max),
960Kb floppy (5.25", 300 rpm, access 10 ms trk-trk, 267 avg, 583 max)
Options: battery backed clock, graphics with touch panel, video disk control,
High Speed Serial Network Interface
Unix/V7 avail, Pascal, C, APL, ADA, Cobol, Fortran, Lisp, Basic, Asm

This is note number 15 in the "Workstation Discussion" file. User "horton" wrote this note at 4:03 pm on December 11th, 1981. Two responses have been written. The note's title is "WICAT 150". If a director had written the note, the "director message" might have been displayed beneath the note's title. Director's notes sometimes contain important information or new policies.

Since notes and responses can each be up to 3 Mbytes long, the display routine breaks text into pages automatically. For all but the last page of a long note or response, the lower right corner of the display shows the percentage of the note that has been shown. For all but the first page of long text, the message "[Continued]" appears in the upper left portion of the display. Use the space bar to see the next page of a long note or response. When the last page is displayed, the space key functions as the ";" key: it proceeds to the next response. The "-" and backspace keys back up the display to the previous page. Only the first 50 pages of text are managed this way; typing "-" from the fifty-second page will return to the fiftieth page. The "=" key returns to the first page of the note.

While reading a note, it is possible to:

- Display the next, previous, or first page of the note.
- Write a response to the displayed note.
- Read next note or previous note.
- Read next unread response or note.
- Return to the index page.
- Skip to a given response.
- Delete the note (if you are its author or a file director).
- Edit the note's title (if it is yours).
- Edit the note (if it is yours and there are no responses).
- Copy the note to another notesfile.
- Save the note in your file space.
- Mail the note to someone.
- Talk ("write") to the author of the note.
- Search for keywords in note titles.
- Search for notes/responses by a particular author.
- Toggle the director message (if privileged).
- Fork a shell.
- Go to another notesfile.
- Make a comment or suggestion about notesfiles.
- Exit the notesfile program.

2.6.2 Reading Responses.

Response displays are similar to those of main notes with the exception that "Response x of y" replaces the note's title. The first response to note 15 is shown below:

```
Note 15          Workstation Discussion
koehler           Response 1 of 2       11:53 pm  Dec 11, 1981

Does anyone have any insight about the relative speeds of the Winchester disks available
on these systems? The previous disk seems to have track to track response times commensurate
with reasonably fast 8" floppies. I wonder if some of the manufacturers are using disks that
will not meet reasonable specifications for response time for these kinds of applications.

On the other hand, with intelligent layout of file sectors, the I/O system
could romp and stomp on often used files...
          ======================================
```


The commands for manipulating the text of a long response are the same as those for looking at long notes. Typing space will move to the next page. Typing "-" or backspace will display the previous page, within the same limitations as for reading notes (only 50 pages are kept). Press "=" to go back to the first page of the text.

The options available while reading responses include:

- Display the next, previous, or first page of the response.
- Go to a different response (usually the next one).
- Go to the next unread note/response.
- Reread the base note.
- Reread the previous note.
- Return to the index page.
- Copy the response to another notesfile.
- Mail the response to someone.
- Save the response in your file space.
- Talk to the response's author.
- Write another response to the note.
- Search for keywords in note titles.
- Search for notes/responses by particular authors.
- Delete the response (if you are its author or a file director).
- Edit the response (if it is yours and there are no later responses).
- Fork a shell
- Go to another notesfile.
- Register a suggestion or complaint about the notesfile program.
- Exit the notesfile program.

2.6.3 Writing Notes & Responses.

Write new base notes by hitting "w" while reading the index page. The notesfile system will then invoke an editor ("ed" by default; use either of the shell variables NFED or EDITOR to change it). After the prompt, compose the text you wish to enter, then write the text to the disk and leave the editor. The system will prompt you for various options if they are available: anonymity, director message status, and the note's title.

To write a response to a note type "w" while that note or any of its responses is displayed. The same steps used to write a base note should then be followed.

2.6.4 Mailing Notesfile Text.

Both notes and responses can be mailed to other users (with optional appended text). The capital "M" ("mail") command gives you the opportunity to edit the text then send it to anyone. Its inferior counterpart, "m", allows you to mail a message to anyone. To mail to the author of the text, use capital "P" ("Personal comment") to send the text and your comments; use "p" for a simple letter.

To use a specific mail program, set the environment variable MAILER. If this is not set, a standard mail program is used.

2.6.5 Forwarding Text To Other Notesfiles.

There are several methods for forwarding text from one notesfile to another. Single notes or responses can be copied with the "c" or "C" command while entire note strings can be forwarded with the "f" and "F" commands.

The "f" ("forward") command is given when a base note is displayed on the screen. When given, the "f" command causes the base note and all of its responses to be copied to another notesfile. The user is prompted for the destination notesfile. The copied note and all of the copied responses contain header information detailing their origin. Where "f" copies the note string without change, the "F" command allows the user to edit the text of the note and each response before inserting it into the target notesfile.

The "c" ("copy") command prompts for a destination notesfile then copies the currently displayed note or response to the target notesfile. The user is allowed to choose between forwarding the note as a response or as a new base note. The "c" command does not give the user a chance to edit the text before inserting it in the new notesfile. The extended copying command "C" allows editing of the note text before it is copied to the other notesfile.

Both the "c" and "C" commands provide for the forwarded text to be entered as either a new note or as a response to an existing note. In the latter case, an index page is given to the user for choosing the appropriate note to which to respond.

2.6.6 Saving Text in Local Files.

The "s" ("save") command appends the current displayed text to a file of your choice (which is created if not present). Notesfiles prompts for the file name; typing only a carriage return aborts the command -- no text is saved. Capital "S" appends the base note and all its responses. The number of lines saved and the name of the file written are printed when the command completes.

2.6.7 Deletion.

Capital "D" ("delete") deletes a note or response if it is yours and has no subsequent responses. Notes already sent to the network can not be deleted by non-directors. Directors can delete any note or response with the "Z" ("zap") command.

2.6.8 Online Communication.

Typing "t" ("talk") attempts to page the author of the current displayed text. The Unix "write" command to him/her is issued if the author is local and non-anonymous. If the environment variable WRITE is defined, the program it specifies is used to write to the author.

2.6.9 Editing Note Titles.

While reading a base note, type "e" ("edit") to change the note's title (provided you are the author of the note or a notesfile director).

2.6.10 Editing Notes/Responses.

"E" allows editing of the text of a note or response. It is not permitted to edit an article if it has subsequent responses or if it has been sent to the network. If the "later responses" are deleted, it is possible to edit the original text.

2.7 Other Commands.

2.7.1 Returning to the Index Page.

Type "i" ("index") while reading notes or responses to return to the index page.

2.7.2 Searching Titles for Keywords.

While reading, you can search backwards for keywords appearing in note titles. Typing "x" ("x is the unknown title") prompts for the substring to be found. Searching begins at the current note (or from the last note shown on the index page) and proceeds towards note 1. The search is insensitive to upper/lowercase distinctions. Use upper case "X" to continue the search. The search can be aborted by hitting the RUBOUT (or DELETE) key.

2.7.3 Searching for Authors.

The "a" command searches backwards for notes or responses written by a specific author. Notesfiles prompts for the author's name. The "A" command continues the search backwards. The author name may be preceded by an optional 'system!'. Abort the search by hitting the RUBOUT (or DELETE) key.

The entire name need not be specified when searching for articles by a particular author. Author searching uses substring searching. Searching for the author "john" will yield articles written by a local user "john", a remote user "somewhere!johnston", and any articles from the "uiucjohnny" machine. Author searching is case sensitive.

2.7.4 Stacking Notesfiles.

Sometimes it is useful to be able to glance at another notesfile while reading notes. Using "n", the user can save (stack) his current place and peruse another notesfile.

When on the index page or while reading notes/responses, type "n" ("nest") to read another notesfile. Notesfiles prompts for the notesfile to read. If the notesfile exists, the place is marked in the old notesfile and the new one's index is displayed.

Type any of the standard keys to leave the nested notesfile. Both "q" and "Q" leave the nested notesfile and return to the previously stacked notesfile. Control-d ("signoff") causes the notesfile program to exit regardless of the depth of nesting.

Sequencing is turned off in the new notesfile regardless of its state in the old notesfile. The depth of the stack of notesfiles is limited only by the amount of memory available to the user.

2.7.5 Accessing Archives.

As notesfiles grow, it becomes impractical to keep every discussion. In some cases, the old discussions are deleted; other cases require these old discussions to be saved somewhere. Each active notesfile can have an archive notesfile. An archive notesfile contains the old discussions from the active notesfile.

The archive of an active notesfile is accessed by explicitly naming the notesfile (/usr/spool/oldnotes/micronotes for example) or through the "N" command from the active notesfile.

2.7.6 Policy Note.

A notesfile director can write an optional policy note to describe the purpose of a notesfile. Read the policy note by typing "p" ("policy") from the index page.

2.8 The Sequencer.

Most users prefer to scan notesfiles and see only those notes written since their last reading. The notesfile "sequencer" provides this capability. It is activated by the "-s" option ("sequencer") on the command line. When the sequencer is activated, the notesfile system automatically remembers the last time the user read notes in each notesfile. Subsequent entries to the notesfile can use the "last time" information to show only new notes and responses. If there is nothing new in a notesfile, the sequencer proceeds to the next notesfile specified in the command line.

The normal sequencer does not give the user a chance to read the notesfile if there are no new notes or responses; sometimes it is desirable to be able to do so. Use the "-x" option to enable the sequencer and enter the notesfile even if there are no new notes.

No keys need be pressed if there are no new notes in the entire list and the normal ("-s") sequencer mode is selected. With the extended ("-x") sequencer, the user must type "q", "Q", or control-d for each notesfile regardless of whether there are new notes.

The "-i" mode of sequencing is similar to the "-s" mode. Using the "-i" mode, notesfiles without new entries are passed over. The user starts reading on the index page of notesfiles which contain new notes.

2.8.1 Seeing New Notes and Responses.

The sequencer always shows the base note of a modified note string, whether or not is has been shown before, in order to establish the context of the new response(s). The "j" command skips to the next modified text (note or response).

If the rest of a particular note string seems uninteresting, skip to the next modified note string with the "J" ("big Jump") command. This skips any new responses on the current note string. It is common to follow closely only a few note strings, skipping others using the "J" command.

The "last time" information is kept in a special file for each user. When the sequencer is enabled, the time for the notesfile is loaded into a variable and used to specify which notes and responses are new. If the sequencer is not enabled, this variable is initialized to January 1, 1970. The "j" and "J" keys use this variable to determine which notes and responses are "new".

If the sequencer is enabled, after exiting a notesfile the "last time" information is updated to the time that the user entered this notesfile. The entry time is used rather than the exit time to ensure that all notes are seen, including ones written during the just completed session. If the sequencer is

disabled, the "last time" information is not modified. The "last time" information for a particular notesfile is updated as that notesfile is exited; using "Q" or control-D later will have no effect on the sequencer information for notesfiles already read.

The "o" and "O" commands allow the user to modify the variable used to determine whether notes and responses are "new". The "o" command allows the user to set this variable to any date he wishes. Use the "O" command to set this variable to show only notes and responses written that day. The "last time" file kept for each user is never modified by the "o" and "O" commands.

When no more new notes or responses exist, both the "j" and "J" commands will take the user to the index page. To exit the notesfile, use the "q" command. Exiting with "q" will update the user's "last entry" time. Exiting with capital "Q" will NOT modify the "last entry" time for that notesfile (neither will control-D).

The "l" and "L" command behave similarly to "j" and "J". The difference is that while "j" and "J' take the user to the last index page when no more new notes or responses exist, the "l" and "L" commands will leave the notesfile as if a "q" had been typed. Thus when no more new notes exist, the "l" command is like typing "jq".

2.8.2 Alternate Sequencers.

If several people share a login account, it is convenient for each to have a set of sequencing timestamps. This is accomplished through the use of the subsequencer option of notesfiles.

Specifying the -a option and a subsequencer name causes notes to use a different sequencing timestamp file. Many different subsequencer names can be used with each login account.

The main sequencer file for a given account is distinct from each of its subsequencer files. Each of the subsequencer files is normally distinct. If the subsequencer names are not unique in their first 6 characters, subsequencer files may collide.

2.8.3 Automatic Sequencing.

An alternate entry to the notes program allows the user to invoke notes with the sequencer enabled and a list of notesfiles to be scanned with a single, simple command. The "autoseq" command is invoked by typing

```
autoseq
```

and reads the environment variable "NFSEQ" to find the names of all notesfiles to be scanned. On some systems, the "autoseq" command may be known as "readnotes", "autonotes" or some similar variant; substitute the appropriate name in the following paragraphs. The "NFSEQ" variable should be defined in .profile for Bourne shell users as follows:

```
NFSEQ="pbnotes,micronotes,helpnotes,works"
export NFSEQ
```

For users of the C shell, the following line should be added to the .login file:

```
setenv NFSEQ "pbnotes,micronotes,helpnotes,works"
```

With NFSEQ assigned this value, a call to autoseq will process the notesfiles "pbnotes", "micronotes", "helpnotes", and "works" with the sequencer turned on.

The full naming conventions, pattern matching capabilities, and '!' exclusion described in

section 2.2 ("Notesfile Names and Wildcards") are available in autoseq. To read all notesfiles with "unix" in their names, and the four test notesfiles ("test1" though "test4"), the NFSEQ variable might be defined as:

NFSEQ="*unix*,test[1234]"

If the first character of an entry in the NFSEQ list is ":", the notesfile system reads the file name following for a list of notesfiles. To have the automatic sequencer read the file "/usr/essick/.nfseq" for a list of notesfiles to scan, define NFSEQ as:

NFSEQ=":/usr/essick/.nfseq"

For this feature to work, the file must have group read privileges. The notesfile program runs "set-uid" and can not read files which are readable only by the owner.

The following definitions are also valid. The first one reads the notesfiles specified in the file "/usr/essick/.nfseq" and then reads the notesfiles pbnotes and micronotes. The second definition will read the notesfile pbnotes, those specified in "/usr/essick/.nfseq", micronotes and the ones specified in "/usr/essick/.other". If the notesfile program is unable to read the file specified, it skips to the next entry. For a description of the format of these files, see the section 2.3, "The -f Option".

NFSEQ=":/usr/essick/.nfseq,pbnotes,micronotes"

NFSEQ="pbnotes,:/usr/essick/.nfseq,micronotes,:/usr/essick/.other"

The automatic sequencer uses the "-s" mode of sequencing. The user does not enter notesfiles which have no new text. By specifying "-x" or "-i" on the command line, the user can use the appropriate sequencer mode.

The subsequencer option of notes is available from the autoseq program by specifying "-a name" on the command line, and has identical semantics with use of this option when invoking notes.

2.9 Environment Variables.

The notesfile program reads several environment variables to tailor the system to the user's preferences. Below is a list of the variables, their purpose, and their default values. These defaults are for UNIX 4.xBSD and may be slightly different for other versions of UNIX.

- "NFED" specifies which editor will be invoked when the user writes a note or response. If this variable is not specified, the notesfile system looks for the environment variable "EDITOR" (which many other programs use). If neither "NFED" nor "EDITOR" are defined, a default editor is used (/bin/ed).
- "NFSEQ" is a list of notesfiles that the user wishes to scan using the automatic sequencing entry to notesfiles. The use of this variable is described in the section on sequencing. If unspecified, the system uses a standard set which usually includes "general" and "net.general".
- "PAGER" is the paging program ("more", "pg") which is used for scrolling the help files. The default paging program is /usr/ucb/more.
- "MAILER" determines the mail program to use. This defaults to /usr/ucb/mail.
- "WRITE" is used to specify the program for communication between users. If undefined, the Unix program "write" is used.
- "TERM" determines the type of terminal in use. This must be set for notes to know

what screen handling conventions to use. In most cases the value will be correctly initialized by the system at login time.

- "SHELL" specifies which shell the user is running. This will almost always be set by the operating system.

3 Other Notesfile Utilities.

The notesfile distribution includes utility programs to provide hard copy output, additional interfaces to user programs, and statistics. They are described below.

3.1 Hard Copy Output.

The program "nfprint" sends to standard output a nicely formatted listing of the notesfile in its command line. Its format is:

nfprint [-lnn] [-p] [-t] topic [note#] [note#-note#] [...]

The "-l" option specifies an alternate page size (the default is 66). The optional note number list specifies that only certain notes of the notesfile are to be printed. The list can specify individual notes and ranges. The notes are printed in the order specified.

The -p option specifies that each notestring is to begin on a new page. The -t option signifies that only a table of contents is to be generated.

3.2 Piped Insertion of Notes.

The nfpipe program enters text from the standard input into a notesfile:

nfpipe topic [-t title] [-d] [-a]

The -t option allows specification of a title. The -d and -a options specify the director and anonymous flags respectively (if available). If no title is specified, one is manufactured from the first line of the note.

3.3 User Subroutines.

3.3.1 Nfcomment.

The nfcomment subroutine is callable from a user's C program. It allows any user program to enter text into a notesfile:

nfcomment (nfname, text, title, dirflag, anonflag)

The parameters are:

```
char *nfname;  /* name of notesfile */
char *text;    /* null terminated text to be entered */
char *title;   /* if non-null, title of note */
int dirflag;   /* != 0 -> director flag on (if allowed) */
int anonflag;  /* != 0 -> anonymous note (if allowed) */
```

If the text pointer is NULL, the text of the note will be read from standard input. If no title is specified the subroutine will manufacture a title from the first line of the note. This routine is useful for error reports, user comments about programs, and automatic logging of statistics or internal states.

This routine can be loaded with a C program by specifying '-lnfcom' on the 'cc' command line.

3.3.2 Nfabort.

Nfabort allows users to generate core images of their process, save the core image in a "known" place, and log that fact in a notesfile. This proves useful for intermittent failures; The programmer regularly scans the notesfile and can examine the core dump at leisure. Some of the problems of recreating conditions which cause errors are eliminated by this approach.

Nfabort is callable from the user program. It accepts the following parameters:

nfabort (nfname, message, title, cname, exitcode)

The parameters are:

```
char *nfname;  /* name of notesfile */
char *message; /* text string to insert */
char *title;   /* title of the message */
char *cname;   /* prefix for core image destination */
int exitcode;  /* code for exit() */
```

The core image is placed in the file specified by concatenating the "cname" argument and a unique integer (the process id of the current process). The notesfile specified by the "nfname" parameter receives a note whose body consists of the text pointed to by "message" and a line telling the complete pathname of the core image. The title of the note is specified by the "title" parameter. After the core image is generated and the note has been written, nfabort terminates with the exit code specified by the "exitcode" parameter.

Nfabort generates default values for each of the string parameters if NULL pointers are passed. This routine can be loaded with a C program by specifying '-lnfcom' on the 'cc' command line.

3.4 Statistics.

The notesfile system keeps statistics on where notes and responses originate, the number of network accesses, duplications and orphaned responses. Combined with the use of the log maintained by the notesfile networking software, monitoring notesfile traffic is quite easy.

The -s option specifies that only a summary is to be produced, skipping the individual reports. Wildcard constructs with '*', '?', '[', and ']' are recognized by nfstats. Invoke the statistics program with:

nfstats [-s] topic1 [...]

Typical output is:

```
        rbenotes on uiucdcs at  6:24 pm  May  7, 1982
                    NOTES     RESPS     TOTALS
Local Reads         359       115       474
Local Written       53        55        108
Networked in        0         0         0
Networked out       0         0         0
Network Dropped     0         0         0
Network Transmissions: 0  Network Receptions: 0
Orphaned Responses Received: 0    Entries into notesfile: 109
Total time in notesfile:  66.57 minutes  Average Time/entry:  0.61 minutes
Created at 10:04 pm  May  5, 1982, Used on 3 days
```

A combined set of statistics is produced at the end of listings of more than one notesfile. The statistics are largely self explanatory.

3.5 Checking for New Notes.

The checknotes program checks the notesfiles specified by the NFSEQ environment variable to determine if there are new notes. The exit code is arranged to make the program useful in shell scripts: 0 (TRUE) is there are new notes, 1 (FALSE) otherwise.

Use the "-q" option to receive a message

```
There are new notes
```

if one or more of the notesfiles have notes/responses written since the user's last entry time into that notesfile.

The "-n" option is similar to the "-q" option, with the exception that it yields output when there are no new notes. The output of checknotes with the "-n" option is:

```
There are no new notes
```

Use "-v" to print the name of each notesfile with new notes/responses. The "-s" option is suitable for use in conditional expressions in shell scripts; no output is generated by this option.

USD 11

A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX Text Editor

Brian W. Kernighan

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

Almost all text input on the UNIX† operating system is done with the text-editor *ed*. This memorandum is a tutorial guide to help beginners get started with text editing.

Although it does not cover everything, it does discuss enough for most users' day-to-day needs. This includes printing, appending, changing, deleting, moving and inserting entire lines of text; reading and writing files; context searching and line addressing; the substitute command; the global commands; and the use of special characters for advanced editing.

Introduction

Ed is a "text editor", that is, an interactive program for creating and modifying "text", using directions provided by a user at a terminal. The text is often a document like this one, or a program or perhaps data for a program.

This introduction is meant to simplify learning *ed*. The recommended way to learn *ed* is to read this document, simultaneously using *ed* to follow the examples, then to read the description in section I of the *UNIX Programmer's Manual*, all the while experimenting with *ed*. (Solicitation of advice from experienced users is also useful.)

Do the exercises! They cover material not completely discussed in the actual text. An appendix summarizes the commands.

Disclaimer

This is an introduction and a tutorial. For this reason, no attempt is made to cover more than a part of the facilities that *ed* offers (although this fraction includes the most useful and frequently used parts). When you have mastered the Tutorial, try *Advanced Editing on UNIX*. Also, there is not enough space to explain basic UNIX procedures. We will assume that you know how to log on to UNIX, and that you have at least a vague understanding of what a file is. For more on that, read *UNIX for Beginners*.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

You must also know what character to type as the end-of-line on your particular terminal. This character is the RETURN key on most terminals. Throughout, we will refer to this character, whatever it is, as RETURN.

Getting Started

We'll assume that you have logged in to your system and it has just printed the prompt character, usually either a $ or a %. The easiest way to get *ed* is to type

ed (followed by a return)

You are now ready to go – *ed* is waiting for you to tell it what to do.

Creating Text – the Append command "a"

As your first problem, suppose you want to create some text starting from scratch. Perhaps you are typing the very first draft of a paper; clearly it will have to start somewhere, and undergo modifications later. This section will show how to get some text in, just to get started. Later we'll talk about how to change it.

When *ed* is first started, it is rather like working with a blank piece of paper – there is no text or information present. This must be supplied by the person using *ed;* it is usually done by typing in the text, or by reading it into *ed* from a file. We will

start by typing in some text, and return shortly to how to read files.

First a bit of terminology. In *ed* jargon, the text being worked on is said to be "kept in a buffer." Think of the buffer as a work space, if you like, or simply as the information that you are going to be editing. In effect the buffer is like the piece of paper, on which we will write things, then change some of them, and finally file the whole thing away for another day.

The user tells *ed* what to do to his text by typing instructions called "commands." Most commands consist of a single letter, which must be typed in lower case. Each command is typed on a separate line. (Sometimes the command is preceded by information about what line or lines of text are to be affected – we will discuss these shortly.) *Ed* makes no response to most commands – there is no prompting or typing of messages like "ready". (This silence is preferred by experienced users, but sometimes a hangup for beginners.)

The first command is *append,* written as the letter

```
a
```

all by itself. It means "append (or add) text lines to the buffer, as I type them in." Appending is rather like writing fresh material on a piece of paper.

So to enter lines of text into the buffer, just type an **a** followed by a RETURN, followed by the lines of text you want, like this:

```
a
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
.
```

The only way to stop appending is to type a line that contains only a period. The "." is used to tell *ed* that you have finished appending. (Even experienced users forget that terminating "." sometimes. If *ed* seems to be ignoring you, type an extra line with just "." on it. You may then find you've added some garbage lines to your text, which you'll have to take out later.)

After the append command has been done, the buffer will contain the three lines

```
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
```

The "**a**" and "." aren't there, because they are not text.

To add more text to what you already have, just issue another **a** command, and continue typing.

Error Messages – "?"

If at any time you make an error in the commands you type to *ed,* it will tell you by typing

```
?
```

This is about as cryptic as it can be, but with practice, you can usually figure out how you goofed.

Writing text out as a file – the Write command "w"

It's likely that you'll want to save your text for later use. To write out the contents of the buffer onto a file, use the *write* command

```
w
```

followed by the filename you want to write on. This will copy the buffer's contents onto the specified file (destroying any previous information on the file). To save the text on a file named **junk**, for example, type

```
w junk
```

Leave a space between **w** and the file name. *Ed* will respond by printing the number of characters it wrote out. In this case, *ed* would respond with

```
68
```

(Remember that blanks and the return character at the end of each line are included in the character count.) Writing a file just makes a copy of the text – the buffer's contents are not disturbed, so you can go on adding lines to it. This is an important point. *Ed* at all times works on a copy of a file, not the file itself. No change in the contents of a file takes place until you give a **w** command. (Writing out the text onto a file from time to time as it is being created is a good idea, since if the system crashes or if you make some horrible mistake, you will lose all the text in the buffer but any text that was written onto a file is relatively safe.)

Leaving ed – the Quit command "q"

To terminate a session with *ed*, save the text you're working on by writing it onto a file using the **w** command, and then type the command

```
q
```

which stands for *quit.* The system will respond with the prompt character ($ or %). At this point your buffer vanishes, with all its text, which is why you want to write it out before quitting.†

† Actually, *ed* will print **?** if you try to quit without writing. At that point, write if you want; if not, another **q** will get you out regardless.

Exercise 1:

Enter *ed* and create some text using

```
a
. . . text . . .
.
```

Write it out using w. Then leave *ed* with the q command, and print the file, to see that everything worked. (To print a file, say

```
pr filename
```

or

```
cat filename
```

in response to the prompt character. Try both.)

Reading text from a file – the Edit command "e"

A common way to get text into the buffer is to read it from a file in the file system. This is what you do to edit text that you saved with the w command in a previous session. The *edit* command e fetches the entire contents of a file into the buffer. So if you had saved the three lines "Now is the time", etc., with a w command in an earlier session, the *ed* command

```
e junk
```

would fetch the entire contents of the file **junk** into the buffer, and respond

```
68
```

which is the number of characters in **junk**. *If anything was already in the buffer, it is deleted first.*

If you use the e command to read a file into the buffer, then you need not use a file name after a subsequent w command; *ed* remembers the last file name used in an e command, and w will write on this file. Thus a good way to operate is

```
ed
e file
[editing session]
w
q
```

This way, you can simply say w from time to time, and be secure in the knowledge that if you got the file name right at the beginning, you are writing into the proper file each time.

You can find out at any time what file name *ed* is remembering by typing the *file* command f. In this example, if you typed

```
f
```

ed would reply

```
junk
```

Reading text from a file – the Read command "r"

Sometimes you want to read a file into the buffer without destroying anything that is already there. This is done by the *read* command r. The command

```
r junk
```

will read the file **junk** into the buffer; it adds it to the end of whatever is already in the buffer. So if you do a read after an edit:

```
e junk
r junk
```

the buffer will contain *two* copies of the text (six lines).

```
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
```

Like the w and e commands, r prints the number of characters read in, after the reading operation is complete.

Generally speaking, r is much less used than e.

Exercise 2:

Experiment with the e command – try reading and printing various files. You may get an error **?name**, where **name** is the name of a file; this means that the file doesn't exist, typically because you spelled the file name wrong, or perhaps that you are not allowed to read or write it. Try alternately reading and appending to see that they work similarly. Verify that

```
ed filename
```

is exactly equivalent to

```
ed
e filename
```

What does

```
f filename
```

do?

Printing the contents of the buffer – the Print command "p"

To *print* or list the contents of the buffer (or parts of it) on the terminal, use the print command

```
p
```

The way this is done is as follows. Specify the lines where you want printing to begin and where you want it to end, separated by a comma, and followed by the letter p. Thus to print the first two lines of the buffer, for example, (that is, lines 1 through 2)

say

```
1,2p     (starting line=1, ending line=2 p)
```

Ed will respond with

```
Now is the time
for all good men
```

Suppose you want to print *all* the lines in the buffer. You could use **1,3p** as above if you knew there were exactly 3 lines in the buffer. But in general, you don't know how many there are, so what do you use for the ending line number? *Ed* provides a shorthand symbol for "line number of last line in buffer" – the dollar sign $. Use it this way:

```
1,$p
```

This will print *all* the lines in the buffer (line 1 to last line.) If you want to stop the printing before it is finished, push the DEL or Delete key; *ed* will type

```
?
```

and wait for the next command.

To print the *last* line of the buffer, you could use

```
$,$p
```

but *ed* lets you abbreviate this to

```
$p
```

You can print any single line by typing the line number followed by a **p**. Thus

```
1p
```

produces the response

```
Now is the time
```

which is the first line of the buffer.

In fact, *ed* lets you abbreviate even further: you can print any single line by typing *just* the line number – no need to type the letter **p**. So if you say

```
$
```

ed will print the last line of the buffer.

You can also use $ in combinations like

```
$-1,$p
```

which prints the last two lines of the buffer. This helps when you want to see how far you got in typing.

Exercise 3:

As before, create some text using the **a** command and experiment with the **p** command. You will find, for example, that you can't print line 0 or a line beyond the end of the buffer, and that attempts to print a buffer in reverse order by saying

```
3,1p
```

don't work.

The current line – "Dot" or "."

Suppose your buffer still contains the six lines as above, that you have just typed

```
1,3p
```

and *ed* has printed the three lines for you. Try typing just

```
p    (no line numbers)
```

This will print

```
to come to the aid of their party.
```

which is the third line of the buffer. In fact it is the last (most recent) line that you have done anything with. (You just printed it!) You can repeat this **p** command without line numbers, and it will continue to print line 3.

The reason is that *ed* maintains a record of the last line that you did anything to (in this case, line 3, which you just printed) so that it can be used instead of an explicit line number. This most recent line is referred to by the shorthand symbol

```
.    (pronounced "dot").
```

Dot is a line number in the same way that $ is; it means exactly "the current line", or loosely, "the line you most recently did something to." You can use it in several ways – one possibility is to say

```
.,$p
```

This will print all the lines from (including) the current line to the end of the buffer. In our example these are lines 3 through 6.

Some commands change the value of dot, while others do not. The **p** command sets dot to the number of the last line printed; the last command will set both . and $ to 6.

Dot is most useful when used in combinations like this one:

```
.+1 (or equivalently, .+1p)
```

This means "print the next line" and is a handy way to step slowly through a buffer. You can also say

```
.-1 (or .-1p )
```

which means "print the line *before* the current line." This enables you to go backwards if you wish. Another useful one is something like

```
.-3,.-1p
```

which prints the previous three lines.

Don't forget that all of these change the value of dot. You can find out what dot is at any time by

typing

```
.=
```

Ed will respond by printing the value of dot.

Let's summarize some things about the **p** command and dot. Essentially **p** can be preceded by 0, 1, or 2 line numbers. If there is no line number given, it prints the "current line", the line that dot refers to. If there is one line number given (with or without the letter **p**), it prints that line (and dot is set there); and if there are two line numbers, it prints all the lines in that range (and sets dot to the last line printed.) If two line numbers are specified the first can't be bigger than the second (see Exercise 2.)

Typing a single return will cause printing of the next line – it's equivalent to **.+1p**. Try it. Try typing a –; you will find that it's equivalent to **.–1p**.

Deleting lines: the "d" command

Suppose you want to get rid of the three extra lines in the buffer. This is done by the *delete* command

```
d
```

Except that **d** deletes lines instead of printing them, its action is similar to that of **p**. The lines to be deleted are specified for **d** exactly as they are for **p**:

starting line, ending line **d**

Thus the command

```
4,$d
```

deletes lines 4 through the end. There are now three lines left, as you can check by using

```
1,$p
```

And notice that $ now is line 3! Dot is set to the next line after the last line deleted, unless the last line deleted is the last line in the buffer. In that case, dot is set to $.

Exercise 4:

Experiment with **a**, **e**, **r**, **w**, **p** and **d** until you are sure that you know what they do, and until you understand how dot, $, and line numbers are used.

If you are adventurous, try using line numbers with **a**, **r** and **w** as well. You will find that **a** will append lines *after* the line number that you specify (rather than after dot); that **r** reads a file in *after* the line number you specify (not necessarily at the end of the buffer); and that **w** will write out exactly the lines you specify, not necessarily the whole buffer. These variations are sometimes handy. For instance you can insert a file at the beginning of a buffer by saying

```
0r filename
```

and you can enter lines at the beginning of the buffer by saying

```
0a
. . . text . . .
.
```

Notice that **.w** is *very* different from

```
.
w
```

Modifying text: the Substitute command "s"

We are now ready to try one of the most important of all commands – the substitute command

```
s
```

This is the command that is used to change individual words or letters within a line or group of lines. It is what you use, for example, for correcting spelling mistakes and typing errors.

Suppose that by a typing error, line 1 says

```
Now is th time
```

– the *e* has been left off *the*. You can use **s** to fix this up as follows:

```
1s/th/the/
```

This says: "in line 1, substitute for the characters *th* the characters *the*." To verify that it works (*ed* will not print the result automatically) say

```
p
```

and get

```
Now is the time
```

which is what you wanted. Notice that dot must have been set to the line where the substitution took place, since the **p** command printed that line. Dot is always set this way with the **s** command.

The general way to use the substitute command is

starting-line, ending-line **s***/change this/to this/*

Whatever string of characters is between the first pair of slashes is replaced by whatever is between the second pair, in *all* the lines between *starting-line* and *ending-line*. Only the first occurrence on each line is changed, however. If you want to change *every* occurrence, see Exercise 5. The rules for line numbers are the same as those for **p**, except that dot is set to the last line changed. (But there is a trap for the unwary: if no substitution took place, dot is *not* changed. This causes an error ? as a warning.)

Thus you can say

```
1,$s/speling/spelling/
```

and correct the first spelling mistake on each line in the text. (This is useful for people who are consistent misspellers!)

If no line numbers are given, the **s** command assumes we mean "make the substitution on line dot", so it changes things only on the current line. This leads to the very common sequence

```
s/something/something else/p
```

which makes some correction on the current line, and then prints it, to make sure it worked out right. If it didn't, you can try again. (Notice that there is a **p** on the same line as the **s** command. With few exceptions, **p** can follow any command; no other multi-command lines are legal.)

It's also legal to say

```
s/ . . . //
```

which means "change the first string of characters to "*nothing*", i.e., remove them. This is useful for deleting extra words in a line or removing extra letters from words. For instance, if you had

```
Nowxx is the time
```

you can say

```
s/xx//p
```

to get

```
Now is the time
```

Notice that // (two adjacent slashes) means "no characters", not a blank. There *is* a difference! (See below for another meaning of //.)

Exercise 5:

Experiment with the substitute command. See what happens if you substitute for some word on a line with several occurrences of that word. For example, do this:

```
a
the other side of the coin
.
s/the/on the/p
```

You will get

```
on the other side of the coin
```

A substitute command changes only the first occurrence of the first string. You can change all occurrences by adding a **g** (for "global") to the **s** command, like this:

```
s/ . . . / . . . /gp
```

Try other characters instead of slashes to delimit the two sets of characters in the **s** command – anything should work except blanks or tabs.

(If you get funny results using any of the characters

```
^   .   $   [   *   \   &
```

read the section on "Special Characters".)

Context searching – "/ . . . /"

With the substitute command mastered, you can move on to another highly important idea of *ed* – context searching.

Suppose you have the original three line text in the buffer:

```
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
```

Suppose you want to find the line that contains *their* so you can change it to *the*. Now with only three lines in the buffer, it's pretty easy to keep track of what line the word *their* is on. But if the buffer contained several hundred lines, and you'd been making changes, deleting and rearranging lines, and so on, you would no longer really know what this line number would be. Context searching is simply a method of specifying the desired line, regardless of what its number is, by specifying some context on it.

The way to say "search for a line that contains this particular string of characters" is to type

```
/string of characters we want to find/
```

For example, the *ed* command

```
/their/
```

is a context search which is sufficient to find the desired line – it will locate the next occurrence of the characters between slashes ("their"). It also sets dot to that line and prints the line for verification:

```
to come to the aid of their party.
```

"Next occurrence" means that *ed* starts looking for the string at line **.+1**, searches to the end of the buffer, then continues at line 1 and searches to line dot. (That is, the search "wraps around" from $ to 1.) It scans all the lines in the buffer until it either finds the desired line or gets back to dot again. If the given string of characters can't be found in any line, *ed* types the error message

```
?
```

Otherwise it prints the line it found.

You can do both the search for the desired line *and* a substitution all at once, like this:

```
/their/s/their/the/p
```

which will yield

```
to come to the aid of the party.
```

There were three parts to that last command: context search for the desired line, make the substitution, print the line.

The expression **/their/** is a context search expression. In their simplest form, all context search expressions are like this – a string of characters surrounded by slashes. Context searches are interchangeable with line numbers, so they can be used by themselves to find and print a desired line, or as line numbers for some other command, like **s**. They were used both ways in the examples above.

Suppose the buffer contains the three familiar lines

```
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
```

Then the *ed* line numbers

```
/Now/+1
/good/
/party/–1
```

are all context search expressions, and they all refer to the same line (line 2). To make a change in line 2, you could say

```
/Now/+1s/good/bad/
```

or

```
/good/s/good/bad/
```

or

```
/party/–1s/good/bad/
```

The choice is dictated only by convenience. You could print all three lines by, for instance

```
/Now/,/party/p
```

or

```
/Now/,/Now/+2p
```

or by any number of similar combinations. The first one of these might be better if you don't know how many lines are involved. (Of course, if there were only three lines in the buffer, you'd use

```
1,$p
```

but not if there were several hundred.)

The basic rule is: a context search expression is *the same as* a line number, so it can be used wherever a line number is needed.

Exercise 6:

Experiment with context searching. Try a body of text with several occurrences of the same string of characters, and scan through it using the same context search.

Try using context searches as line numbers for the substitute, print and delete commands. (They can also be used with **r**, **w**, and **a**.)

Try context searching using **?text?** instead of **/text/**. This scans lines in the buffer in reverse order rather than normal. This is sometimes useful if you go too far while looking for some string of characters – it's an easy way to back up.

(If you get funny results with any of the characters

```
^  .  $  [  *  \  &
```

read the section on "Special Characters".)

Ed provides a shorthand for repeating a context search for the same string. For example, the *ed* line number

```
/string/
```

will find the next occurrence of **string**. It often happens that this is not the desired line, so the search must be repeated. This can be done by typing merely

```
//
```

This shorthand stands for "the most recently used context search expression." It can also be used as the first string of the substitute command, as in

```
/string1/s//string2/
```

which will find the next occurrence of **string1** and replace it by **string2**. This can save a lot of typing. Similarly

```
??
```

means "scan backwards for the same expression."

Change and Insert – "c" and "i"

This section discusses the *change* command

```
c
```

which is used to change or replace a group of one or more lines, and the *insert* command

```
i
```

which is used for inserting a group of one or more lines.

"Change", written as

```
c
```

is used to replace a number of lines with different lines, which are typed in at the terminal. For example, to change lines **.+1** through **$** to something else, type

```
.+1,$c
. . . type the lines of text you want here . . .
.
```

The lines you type between the **c** command and the **.** will take the place of the original lines between start line and end line. This is most useful in replacing a line or several lines which have errors in them.

If only one line is specified in the **c** command, then just that line is replaced. (You can type in as many replacement lines as you like.) Notice the use of **.** to end the input – this works just like the **.** in the append command and must appear by itself on a new line. If no line number is given, line dot is replaced. The value of dot is set to the last line you typed in.

"Insert" is similar to append – for instance

```
/string/i
. . . type the lines to be inserted here . . .
.
```

will insert the given text *before* the next line that contains "string". The text between **i** and **.** is *inserted before* the specified line. If no line number is specified dot is used. Dot is set to the last line inserted.

Exercise 7:

"Change" is rather like a combination of delete followed by insert. Experiment to verify that

```
start, end d
i
. . . text . . .
.
```

is almost the same as

```
start, end c
. . . text . . .
.
```

These are not *precisely* the same if line **$** gets deleted. Check this out. What is dot?

Experiment with **a** and **i**, to see that they are similar, but not the same. You will observe that

```
line-number a
. . . text . . .
.
```

appends *after* the given line, while

```
line-number i
. . . text . . .
.
```

inserts *before* it. Observe that if no line number is given, **i** inserts before line dot, while **a** appends after line dot.

Moving text around: the "m" command

The move command **m** is used for cutting and pasting – it lets you move a group of lines from one place to another in the buffer. Suppose you want to put the first three lines of the buffer at the end instead. You could do it by saying:

```
1,3w temp
$r temp
1,3d
```

(Do you see why?) but you can do it a lot easier with the **m** command:

```
1,3m$
```

The general case is

start line, end line **m** *after this line*

Notice that there is a third line to be specified – the place where the moved stuff gets put. Of course the lines to be moved can be specified by context searches; if you had

```
First paragraph
. . .
end of first paragraph.
Second paragraph
. . .
end of second paragraph.
```

you could reverse the two paragraphs like this:

```
/Second/,/end of second/m/First/-1
```

Notice the **-1**: the moved text goes *after* the line mentioned. Dot gets set to the last line moved.

The global commands "g" and "v"

The *global* command **g** is used to execute one or more *ed* commands on all those lines in the buffer that match some specified string. For example

```
g/peling/p
```

prints all lines that contain **peling**. More usefully,

```
g/peling/s//pelling/gp
```

makes the substitution everywhere on the line, then prints each corrected line. Compare this to

```
1,$s/peling/pelling/gp
```

which only prints the last line substituted. Another subtle difference is that the **g** command does not give a **?** if **peling** is not found where the **s** command will.

There may be several commands (including **a**, **c**, **i**, **r**, **w**, but not **g**); in that case, every line except the last must end with a backslash ****:

```
g/xxx/.-1s/abc/def/\
.+2s/ghi/jkl/\
.-2,.p
```

makes changes in the lines before and after each line that contains **xxx**, then prints all three lines.

The **v** command is the same as **g**, except that the commands are executed on every line that does *not*

match the string following v:

```
v/ /d
```

deletes every line that does not contain a blank.

Special Characters

You may have noticed that things just don't work right when you used some characters like ., *, $, and others in context searches and the substitute command. The reason is rather complex, although the cure is simple. Basically, *ed* treats these characters as special, with special meanings. For instance, *in a context search or the first string of the substitute command only,* . means "any character," not a period, so

```
/x.y/
```

means "a line with an x, *any character,* and a y," *not* just "a line with an x, a period, and a y." A complete list of the special characters that can cause trouble is the following:

```
^   .   $   [   *   \
```

Warning: The backslash character \ is special to *ed.* For safety's sake, avoid it where possible. If you have to use one of the special characters in a substitute command, you can turn off its magic meaning temporarily by preceding it with the backslash. Thus

```
s/\\\.\*/backslash dot star/
```

will change \.* into "backslash dot star".

Here is a hurried synopsis of the other special characters. First, the circumflex ^ signifies the beginning of a line. Thus

```
/^string/
```

finds **string** only if it is at the beginning of a line: it will find

```
string
```

but not

```
the string...
```

The dollar-sign $ is just the opposite of the circumflex; it means the end of a line:

```
/string$/
```

will only find an occurrence of **string** that is at the end of some line. This implies, of course, that

```
/^string$/
```

will find only a line that contains just **string**, and

```
/^.$/
```

finds a line containing exactly one character.

The character ., as we mentioned above, matches anything;

```
/x.y/
```

matches any of

```
x+y
x-y
x y
x.y
```

This is useful in conjunction with *, which is a repetition character; a* is a shorthand for "any number of a's," so .* matches any number of anythings. This is used like this:

```
s/.*/stuff/
```

which changes an entire line, or

```
s/.*,//
```

which deletes all characters in the line up to and including the last comma. (Since .* finds the longest possible match, this goes up to the last comma.)

[is used with] to form "character classes"; for example,

```
/[0123456789]/
```

matches any single digit – any one of the characters inside the braces will cause a match. This can be abbreviated to **[0–9]**.

Finally, the & is another shorthand character – it is used only on the right-hand part of a substitute command where it means "whatever was matched on the left-hand side". It is used to save typing. Suppose the current line contained

```
Now is the time
```

and you wanted to put parentheses around it. You could just retype the line, but this is tedious. Or you could say

```
s/^/(/
s/$/)/
```

using your knowledge of ^ and $. But the easiest way uses the &:

```
s/.*/(&)/
```

This says "match the whole line, and replace it by itself surrounded by parentheses." The & can be used several times in a line; consider using

```
s/.*/&?  &!!/
```

to produce

```
Now is the time?  Now is the time!!
```

You don't have to match the whole line, of course: if the buffer contains

the end of the world

you could type

/world/s//& is at hand/

to produce

the end of the world is at hand

Observe this expression carefully, for it illustrates how to take advantage of *ed* to save typing. The string **/world/** found the desired line; the shorthand // found the same word in the line; and the & saves you from typing it again.

The & is a special character only within the replacement text of a substitute command, and has no special meaning elsewhere. You can turn off the special meaning of & by preceding it with a \:

s/ampersand/\&/

will convert the word "ampersand" into the literal symbol & in the current line.

Summary of Commands and Line Numbers

The general form of *ed* commands is the command name, perhaps preceded by one or two line numbers, and, in the case of **e**, **r**, and **w**, followed by a file name. Only one command is allowed per line, but a **p** command may follow any other command (except for **e**, **r**, **w** and **q**).

a: Append, that is, add lines to the buffer (at line dot, unless a different line is specified). Appending continues until . is typed on a new line. Dot is set to the last line appended.

c: Change the specified lines to the new text which follows. The new lines are terminated by a ., as with **a**. If no lines are specified, replace line dot. Dot is set to last line changed.

d: Delete the lines specified. If none are specified, delete line dot. Dot is set to the first undeleted line, unless $ is deleted, in which case dot is set to $.

e: Edit new file. Any previous contents of the buffer are thrown away, so issue a **w** beforehand.

f: Print remembered filename. If a name follows **f** the remembered name will be set to it.

g: The command

g/---/commands

will execute the commands on those lines that contain ---, which can be any context search expression.

i: Insert lines before specified line (or dot) until a . is typed on a new line. Dot is set to last line inserted.

m: Move lines specified to after the line named after **m**. Dot is set to the last line moved.

p: Print specified lines. If none specified, print line dot. A single line number is equivalent to *line-number* **p**. A single return prints **.+1**, the next line.

q: Quit *ed*. Wipes out all text in buffer if you give it twice in a row without first giving a **w** command.

r: Read a file into buffer (at end unless specified elsewhere.) Dot set to last line read.

s: The command

s/string1/string2/

substitutes the characters **string1** into **string2** in the specified lines. If no lines are specified, make the substitution in line dot. Dot is set to last line in which a substitution took place, which means that if no substitution took place, dot is not changed. **s** changes only the first occurrence of **string1** on a line; to change all of them, type a **g** after the final slash.

v: The command

v/---/commands

executes **commands** on those lines that *do not* contain ---.

w: Write out buffer onto a file. Dot is not changed.

.=: Print value of dot. (= by itself prints the value of $.)

!: The line

!command-line

causes **command-line** to be executed as a UNIX command.

/-----/: Context search. Search for next line which contains this string of characters. Print it. Dot is set to the line where string was found. Search starts at **.+1**, wraps around from $ to 1, and continues to dot, if necessary.

?-----?: Context search in reverse direction. Start search at **.–1**, scan to 1, wrap around to $.

Advanced Editing on UNIX

Brian W. Kernighan

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

(Updated for 4.3BSD by Mark Seiden)

ABSTRACT

This paper is meant to help secretaries, typists and programmers to make effective use of the UNIX† facilities for preparing and editing text. It provides explanations and examples of

- special characters, line addressing and global commands in the editor **ed**;
- commands for "cut and paste" operations on files and parts of files, including the **mv**, **cp**, **cat** and **rm** commands, and the **r**, **w**, **m** and **t** commands of the editor;
- editing scripts and editor-based programs like **grep** and **sed**.

Although the treatment is aimed at non-programmers, new users with any background should find helpful hints on how to get their jobs done more easily.

1. INTRODUCTION

Although UNIX provides remarkably effective tools for text editing, that by itself is no guarantee that everyone will automatically make the most effective use of them. In particular, people who are not computer specialists — typists, secretaries, casual users — often use the system less effectively than they might. (There is a good argument that new users would better use their time learning a display editor, like *vi*, or perhaps a version of *emacs*, like *jove*, rather than an editor as ignorant of display terminals as *ed.)*

This document is intended as a sequel to *A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX Text Editor* [1], providing explanations and examples of how to edit using *ed* with less effort. (You should also be familiar with the material in *UNIX For Beginners* [2].) Further information on all commands discussed here can be found in section 1 of the *The UNIX User's Manual* [3].

Examples are based on observations of users and the difficulties they encounter. Topics covered include special characters in searches and substitute commands, line addressing, the global commands, and line moving and copying. There are also brief discussions of effective use of related tools, like those for file manipulation, and those based on **ed**, like **grep** and **sed**.

A word of caution. There is only one way to learn to use something, and that is to *use* it. Reading a description is no substitute for trying something. A paper like this one should give you ideas about what to try, but until you actually try something, you will not learn it.

2. SPECIAL CHARACTERS

The editor **ed** is the primary interface to the system for many people, so it is worthwhile to know how to get the most out of **ed** for the least effort.

The next few sections will discuss shortcuts and labor-saving devices. Not all of these will be instantly useful to any one person, of course, but a few will be, and the others should give you ideas to store away for future use. And as always, until you try these things, they will remain theoretical knowledge, not something you have confidence in.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

The List command 'l'

ed provides two commands for printing the contents of the lines you're editing. Most people are familiar with p, in combinations like

```
1,$p
```

to print all the lines you're editing, or

```
s/abc/def/p
```

to change 'abc' to 'def' on the current line. Less familiar is the *list* command l (the letter '*l*'), which gives slightly more information than p. In particular, l makes visible characters that are normally invisible, such as tabs and backspaces. If you list a line that contains some of these, l will print each tab as > and each backspace as <.† This makes it much easier to correct the sort of typing mistake that inserts extra spaces adjacent to tabs, or inserts a backspace followed by a space.

The l command also 'folds' long lines for printing — any line that exceeds 72 characters is printed on multiple lines; each printed line except the last is terminated by a backslash \, so you can tell it was folded. This is useful for printing long lines on short terminals.

Occasionally the l command will print in a line a string of numbers preceded by a backslash, such as \07 or \16. These combinations are used to make visible characters that normally don't print, like form feed or vertical tab or bell. Each such combination is a single character. When you see such characters, be wary — they may have surprising meanings when printed on some terminals. Often their presence means that your finger slipped while you were typing; you almost never want them.

The Substitute Command 's'

Most of the next few sections will be taken up with a discussion of the substitute command s. Since this is the command for changing the contents of individual lines, it probably has the most complexity of any ed command, and the most potential for effective use.

As the simplest place to begin, recall the meaning of a trailing g after a substitute command. With

```
s/this/that/
```

and

```
s/this/that/g
```

the first one replaces the *first* 'this' on the line with 'that'. If there is more than one 'this' on the line, the second form with the trailing g changes *all* of them.

Either form of the s command can be followed by p or l to 'print' or 'list' (as described in the previous section) the contents of the line:

```
s/this/that/p
s/this/that/l
s/this/that/gp
s/this/that/gl
```

are all legal, and mean slightly different things. Make sure you know what the differences are.

Of course, any s command can be preceded by one or two 'line numbers' to specify that the substitution is to take place on a group of lines. Thus

```
1,$s/mispell/misspell/
```

changes the *first* occurrence of 'mispell' to 'misspell' on every line of the file. But

```
1,$s/mispell/misspell/g
```

changes *every* occurrence in every line (and this is more likely to be what you wanted in this particular case).

You should also notice that if you add a p or l to the end of any of these substitute commands, only the last line that got changed will be printed, not all the lines. We will talk later about how to print all the lines that were modified.

The Undo Command 'u'

Occasionally you will make a substitution in a line, only to realize too late that it was a ghastly mistake. The 'undo' command u lets you 'undo' the last substitution: the last line that was substituted can be restored to its previous state by typing the command

```
u
```

The Metacharacter '.'

As you have undoubtedly noticed when you use ed, certain characters have unexpected meanings when they occur in the left side of a substitute command, or in a search for a particular line. In the next several sections, we will talk about these special characters, which are often called 'metacharacters'.

The first one is the period '.'. On the left side of a substitute command, or in a search with '/.../', '.' stands for *any* single character. Thus the search

```
/x.y/
```

finds any line where 'x' and 'y' occur separated by a single character, as in

† These composite characters are created by overstriking a minus and a > or <, so they only appear as < or > on display terminals.

```
x+y
x–y
x□y
x.y
```

and so on. (We will use □ to stand for a space whenever we need to make it visible.)

Since '.' matches a single character, that gives you a way to deal with funny characters printed by l. Suppose you have a line that, when printed with the l command, appears as

```
.... th\07is ....
```

and you want to get rid of the \07 (which represents the bell character, by the way).

The most obvious solution is to try

```
s/\07//
```

but this will fail. (Try it.) The brute force solution, which most people would now take, is to re-type the entire line. This is guaranteed, and is actually quite a reasonable tactic if the line in question isn't too big, but for a very long line, re-typing is a bore. This is where the metacharacter '.' comes in handy. Since '\07' really represents a single character, if we say

```
s/th.is/this/
```

the job is done. The '.' matches the mysterious character between the 'h' and the 'i', *whatever it is.*

Bear in mind that since '.' matches any single character, the command

```
s/./,/
```

converts the first character on a line into a ',', which very often is not what you intended.

As is true of many characters in ed, the '.' has several meanings, depending on its context. This line shows all three:

```
.s/./,/
```

The first '.' is a line number, the number of the line we are editing, which is called 'line dot'. (We will discuss line dot more in Section 3.) The second '.' is a metacharacter that matches any single character on that line. The third '.' is the only one that really is an honest literal period. On the *right* side of a substitution, '.' is not special. If you apply this command to the line

```
Now is the time.
```

the result will be

```
.ow is the time.
```

which is probably not what you intended.

The Backslash '\'

Since a period means 'any character', the question naturally arises of what to do when you really want a period. For example, how do you convert the line

```
Now is the time.
```

into

```
Now is the time?
```

The backslash '\' does the job. A backslash turns off any special meaning that the next character might have; in particular, '\.' converts the '.' from a 'match anything' into a period, so you can use it to replace the period in

```
Now is the time.
```

like this:

```
s/\./?/
```

The pair of characters '\.' is considered by ed to be a single real period.

The backslash can also be used when searching for lines that contain a special character. Suppose you are looking for a line that contains

```
.PP
```

The search

```
/.PP/
```

isn't adequate, for it will find a line like

```
THE APPLICATION OF ...
```

because the '.' matches the letter 'A'. But if you say

```
/\.PP/
```

you will find only lines that contain '.PP'.

The backslash can also be used to turn off special meanings for characters other than '.'. For example, consider finding a line that contains a backslash. The search

```
/\/
```

won't work, because the '\' isn't a literal '\', but instead means that the second '/' no longer delimits the search. But by preceding a backslash with another one, you can search for a literal backslash. Thus

```
/\\/
```

does work. Similarly, you can search for a forward slash '/' with

```
/\//
```

The backslash turns off the meaning of the immediately following '/' so that it doesn't terminate the /.../ construction prematurely.

As an exercise, before reading further, find two substitute commands each of which will convert the line

```
\x\.\y
```

into the line

```
\x\y
```

Here are several solutions; verify that each works as advertised.

```
s/\\\.//
s/x../x/
s/..y/y/
```

A couple of miscellaneous notes about backslashes and special characters. First, you can use any character to delimit the pieces of an **s** command: there is nothing sacred about slashes. (But you must use slashes for context searching.) For instance, in a line that contains a lot of slashes already, like

```
//exec //sys.fort.go // etc...
```

you could use a colon as the delimiter — to delete all the slashes, type

```
s:/::g
```

Second, if # and @ are your character erase and line kill characters, you have to type \# and \@; this is true whether you're talking to **ed** or any other program.

When you are adding text with **a** or **i** or **c**, backslash is not special, and you should only put in one backslash for each one you really want.

The Dollar Sign '$'

The next metacharacter, the '$', stands for 'the end of the line'. As its most obvious use, suppose you have the line

```
Now is the
```

and you wish to add the word 'time' to the end. Use the $ like this:

```
s/$/␣time/
```

to get

```
Now is the time
```

Notice that a space is needed before 'time' in the substitute command, or you will get

```
Now is thetime
```

As another example, replace the second comma in the following line with a period without altering the first:

```
Now is the time, for all good men,
```

The command needed is

```
s/,$/./
```

The $ sign here provides context to make specific which comma we mean. Without it, of course, the **s** command would operate on the first comma to produce

```
Now is the time. for all good men,
```

As another example, to convert

```
Now is the time.
```

into

```
Now is the time?
```

as we did earlier, we can use

```
s/.$/?/
```

Like '.', the '$' has multiple meanings depending on context. In the line

```
$s/$/$/
```

the first '$' refers to the last line of the file, the second refers to the end of that line, and the third is a literal dollar sign, to be added to that line.

The Circumflex '^'

The circumflex (or hat or caret) '^' stands for the beginning of the line. For example, suppose you are looking for a line that begins with 'the'. If you simply say

```
/the/
```

you will in all likelihood find several lines that contain 'the' in the middle before arriving at the one you want. But with

```
/^the/
```

you narrow the context, and thus arrive at the desired one more easily.

The other use of '^' is of course to enable you to insert something at the beginning of a line:

```
s/^/␣/
```

places a space at the beginning of the current line.

Metacharacters can be combined. To search for a line that contains *only* the characters

```
.PP
```

you can use the command

```
/^\.PP$/
```

The Star '*'

Suppose you have a line that looks like this:

text x y *text*

where *text* stands for lots of text, and there are some indeterminate number of spaces between the x and the y. Suppose the job is to replace all the spaces between x and y by a single space. The line is too long to retype, and there are too many spaces to count. What now?

This is where the metacharacter '*' comes in handy. A character followed by a star stands for as many consecutive occurrences of that character as possible. To refer to all the spaces at once, say

s/x□*y/x□y/

The construction '□*' means 'as many spaces as possible'. Thus 'x□*y' means 'an x, as many spaces as possible, then a y'.

The star can be used with any character, not just space. If the original example was instead

text x--------y *text*

then all '–' signs can be replaced by a single space with the command

s/x–*y/x□y/

Finally, suppose that the line was

text x.....y *text*

Can you see what trap lies in wait for the unwary? If you blindly type

s/x.*y/x□y/

what will happen? The answer, naturally, is that it depends. If there are no other x's or y's on the line, then everything works, but it's blind luck, not good management. Remember that '.' matches *any* single character? Then '.*' matches as many single characters as possible, and unless you're careful, it can eat up a lot more of the line than you expected. If the line was, for example, like this:

text x *text* x.....y *text* y *text*

then saying

s/x.*y/x□y/

will take everything from the *first* 'x' to the *last* 'y', which, in this example, is undoubtedly more than you wanted.

The solution, of course, is to turn off the special meaning of '.' with '\.':

s/x\.*y/x□y/

Now everything works, for '\.*' means 'as many *periods* as possible'.

There are times when the pattern '.*' is exactly what you want. For example, to change

Now is the time for all good men ....

into

Now is the time.

use '.*' to eat up everything after the 'for':

s/□for.*/./

There are a couple of additional pitfalls associated with '*' that you should be aware of. Most notable is the fact that 'as many as possible' means *zero* or more. The fact that zero is a legitimate possibility is sometimes rather surprising. For example, if our line contained

text xy *text* x y *text*

and we said

s/x□*y/x□y/

the *first* 'xy' matches this pattern, for it consists of an 'x', zero spaces, and a 'y'. The result is that the substitute acts on the first 'xy', and does not touch the later one that actually contains some intervening spaces.

The way around this, if it matters, is to specify a pattern like

/x□□*y/

which says 'an x, a space, then as many more spaces as possible, then a y', in other words, one or more spaces.

The other startling behavior of '*' is again related to the fact that zero is a legitimate number of occurrences of something followed by a star. The command

s/x*/y/g

when applied to the line

abcdef

produces

yaybycydyeyfy

which is almost certainly not what was intended. The reason for this behavior is that zero is a legal number of matches, and there are no x's at the beginning of the line (so that gets converted into a 'y'), nor between the 'a' and the 'b' (so that gets converted into a 'y'), nor ... and so on. Make sure you really want zero matches; if not, in this case write

s/xx*/y/g

'xx*' is one or more x's.

The Brackets '[ ]'

Suppose that you want to delete any numbers that appear at the beginning of all lines of a file. You might first think of trying a series of commands like

```
1,$s/^1*//
1,$s/^2*//
1,$s/^3*//
```

and so on, but this is clearly going to take forever if the numbers are at all long. Unless you want to repeat the commands over and over until finally all numbers are gone, you must get all the digits on one pass. This is the purpose of the brackets [and].

The construction

```
[0123456789]
```

matches any single digit — the whole thing is called a 'character class'. With a character class, the job is easy. The pattern '[0123456789]*' matches zero or more digits (an entire number), so

```
1,$s/^[0123456789]*//
```

deletes all digits from the beginning of all lines.

Any characters can appear within a character class, and just to confuse the issue there are essentially no special characters inside the brackets; even the backslash doesn't have a special meaning. To search for special characters, for example, you can say

```
/[.\$^[]/
```

Within [...], the '[' is not special. To get a ']' into a character class, make it the first character.

It's a nuisance to have to spell out the digits, so you can abbreviate them as [0–9]; similarly, [a–z] stands for the lower case letters, and [A–Z] for upper case.

As a final frill on character classes, you can specify a class that means 'none of the following characters'. This is done by beginning the class with a '^':

```
[^0–9]
```

stands for 'any character *except* a digit'. Thus you might find the first line that doesn't begin with a tab or space by a search like

```
/^[^(space)(tab)]/
```

Within a character class, the circumflex has a special meaning only if it occurs at the beginning. Just to convince yourself, verify that

```
/^[^]/
```

finds a line that doesn't begin with a circumflex.

The Ampersand '&'

The ampersand '&' is used primarily to save typing. Suppose you have the line

```
Now is the time
```

and you want to make it

```
Now is the best time
```

Of course you can always say

```
s/the/the best/
```

but it seems silly to have to repeat the 'the'. The '&' is used to eliminate the repetition. On the *right* side of a substitute, the ampersand means 'whatever was just matched', so you can say

```
s/the/& best/
```

and the '&' will stand for 'the'. Of course this isn't much of a saving if the thing matched is just 'the', but if it is something truly long or awful, or if it is something like '.*' which matches a lot of text, you can save some tedious typing. There is also much less chance of making a typing error in the replacement text. For example, to parenthesize a line, regardless of its length,

```
s/.*/(&)/
```

The ampersand can occur more than once on the right side:

```
s/the/& best and & worst/
```

makes

```
Now is the best and the worst time
```

and

```
s/.*/&? &!!/
```

converts the original line into

```
Now is the time? Now is the time!!
```

To get a literal ampersand, naturally the backslash is used to turn off the special meaning:

```
s/ampersand/\&/
```

converts the word into the symbol. Notice that '&' is not special on the left side of a substitute, only on the *right* side.

Substituting Newlines

ed provides a facility for splitting a single line into two or more shorter lines by 'substituting in a newline'. As the simplest example, suppose a line has gotten unmanageably long because of editing (or merely because it was unwisely typed). If it looks like

text xy *text*

you can break it between the 'x' and the 'y' like this:

```
s/xy/x\
y/
```

This is actually a single command, although it is typed on two lines. Bearing in mind that '\' turns off special meanings, it seems relatively intuitive that a '\' at the end of a line would make the newline there no longer special.

You can in fact make a single line into several lines with this same mechanism. As a large example, consider underlining the word 'very' in a long line by splitting 'very' onto a separate line, and preceding it by the **roff** or **nroff** formatting command '.ul'.

text a very big *text*

The command

```
s/□very□/\
.ul\
very\
/
```

converts the line into four shorter lines, preceding the word 'very' by the line '.ul', and eliminating the spaces around the 'very', all at the same time.

When a newline is substituted in, dot is left pointing at the last line created.

Joining Lines

Lines may also be joined together, but this is done with the **j** command instead of **s**. Given the lines

```
Now is
□the time
```

and supposing that dot is set to the first of them, then the command

```
j
```

joins them together. No blanks are added, which is why we carefully showed a blank at the beginning of the second line.

All by itself, a **j** command joins line dot to line dot+1, but any contiguous set of lines can be joined. Just specify the starting and ending line numbers. For example,

```
1,$jp
```

joins all the lines into one big one and prints it. (More on line numbers in Section 3.)

Rearranging a Line with \(... \)

(This section should be skipped on first reading.) Recall that '&' is a shorthand that stands for whatever was matched by the left side of an **s** command. In much the same way you can capture separate pieces of what was matched; the only difference is that you have to specify on the left side just what pieces you're interested in.

Suppose, for instance, that you have a file of lines that consist of names in the form

```
Smith, A. B.
Jones, C.
```

and so on, and you want the initials to precede the name, as in

```
A. B. Smith
C. Jones
```

It is possible to do this with a series of editing commands, but it is tedious and error-prone. (It is instructive to figure out how it is done, though.)

The alternative is to 'tag' the pieces of the pattern (in this case, the last name, and the initials), and then rearrange the pieces. On the left side of a substitution, if part of the pattern is enclosed between \(and \), whatever matched that part is remembered, and available for use on the right side. On the right side, the symbol '\1' refers to whatever matched the first \(...\) pair, '\2' to the second \(...\), and so on.

The command

```
1,$s/^\([^,]*\),□*\(.*\)/\2□\1/
```

although hard to read, does the job. The first \(...\) matches the last name, which is any string up to the comma; this is referred to on the right side with '\1'. The second \(...\) is whatever follows the comma and any spaces, and is referred to as '\2'.

Of course, with any editing sequence this complicated, it's foolhardy to simply run it and hope. The global commands **g** and **v** discussed in section 4 provide a way for you to print exactly those lines which were affected by the substitute command, and thus verify that it did what you wanted in all cases.

3. LINE ADDRESSING IN THE EDITOR

The next general area we will discuss is that of line addressing in **ed**, that is, how you specify what lines are to be affected by editing commands. We have already used constructions like

```
1,$s/x/y/
```

to specify a change on all lines. And most users are long since familiar with using a single newline (or return) to print the next line, and with

```
/thing/
```

to find a line that contains 'thing'. Less familiar, surprisingly enough, is the use of

```
?thing?
```

to scan *backwards* for the previous occurrence of

'thing'. This is especially handy when you realize that the thing you want to operate on is back up the page from where you are currently editing.

The slash and question mark are the only characters you can use to delimit a context search, though you can use essentially any character in a substitute command.

Address Arithmetic

The next step is to combine the line numbers like '.', '$', '/.../' and '?...?' with '+' and '–'. Thus

```
$-1
```

is a command to print the next to last line of the current file (that is, one line before line '$'). For example, to recall how far you got in a previous editing session,

```
$-5,$p
```

prints the last six lines. (Be sure you understand why it's six, not five.) If there aren't six, of course, you'll get an error message.

As another example,

```
.-3,.+3p
```

prints from three lines before where you are now (at line dot) to three lines after, thus giving you a bit of context. By the way, the '+' can be omitted:

```
.-3,.3p
```

is absolutely identical in meaning.

Another area in which you can save typing effort in specifying lines is to use '–' and '+' as line numbers by themselves.

```
-
```

by itself is a command to move back up one line in the file. In fact, you can string several minus signs together to move back up that many lines:

```
---
```

moves up three lines, as does '–3'. Thus

```
-3,+3p
```

is also identical to the examples above.

Since '–' is shorter than '.–1', constructions like

```
-,.s/bad/good/
```

are useful. This changes 'bad' to 'good' on the previous line and on the current line.

'+' and '–' can be used in combination with searches using '/.../' and '?...?', and with '$'. The search

```
/thing/--
```

finds the line containing 'thing', and positions you two lines before it.

Repeated Searches

Suppose you ask for the search

```
/horrible thing/
```

and when the line is printed you discover that it isn't the horrible thing that you wanted, so it is necessary to repeat the search again. You don't have to re-type the search, for the construction

```
//
```

is a shorthand for 'the previous thing that was searched for', whatever it was. This can be repeated as many times as necessary. You can also go backwards:

```
??
```

searches for the same thing, but in the reverse direction.

Not only can you repeat the search, but you can use '//' as the left side of a substitute command, to mean 'the most recent pattern'.

```
/horrible thing/
.... ed prints line with 'horrible thing' ...
s//good/p
```

To go backwards and change a line, say

```
??s//good/
```

Of course, you can still use the '&' on the right hand side of a substitute to stand for whatever got matched:

```
//s//&□&/p
```

finds the next occurrence of whatever you searched for last, replaces it by two copies of itself, then prints the line just to verify that it worked.

Default Line Numbers and the Value of Dot

One of the most effective ways to speed up your editing is always to know what lines will be affected by a command if you don't specify the lines it is to act on, and on what line you will be positioned (i.e., the value of dot) when a command finishes. If you can edit without specifying unnecessary line numbers, you can save a lot of typing.

As the most obvious example, if you issue a search command like

```
/thing/
```

you are left pointing at the next line that contains 'thing'. Then no address is required with commands like **s** to make a substitution on that line, or **p** to print it, or **l** to list it, or **d** to delete it, or **a** to append text after it, or **c** to change it, or **i** to insert text before it.

What happens if there was no 'thing'? Then you are left right where you were — dot is unchanged. This is also true if you were sitting on the only 'thing' when you issued the command. The same rules hold for searches that use '?...?'; the only difference is the direction in which you search.

The delete command **d** leaves dot pointing at the line that followed the last deleted line. When line '$' gets deleted, however, dot points at the *new* line '$'.

The line-changing commands **a**, **c** and **i** by default all affect the current line — if you give no line number with them, **a** appends text after the current line, **c** changes the current line, and **i** inserts text before the current line.

a, **c**, and **i** behave identically in one respect — when you stop appending, changing or inserting, dot points at the last line entered. This is exactly what you want for typing and editing on the fly. For example, you can say

```
a
 ... text ...
 ... botch ...                (minor error)
.
s/botch/correct/              (fix botched line)
a
 ... more text ...
```

without specifying any line number for the substitute command or for the second append command. Or you can say

```
a
 ... text ...
 ... horrible botch ...       (major error)
.
c                             (replace entire line)
 ... fixed up line ...
```

You should experiment to determine what happens if you add *no* lines with **a**, **c** or **i**.

The **r** command will read a file into the text being edited, either at the end if you give no address, or after the specified line if you do. In either case, dot points at the last line read in. Remember that you can even say **0r** to read a file in at the beginning of the text. (You can also say **0a** or **1i** to start adding text at the beginning.)

The **w** command writes out the entire file. If you precede the command by one line number, that line is written, while if you precede it by two line numbers, that range of lines is written. The **w** command does *not* change dot: the current line remains the same, regardless of what lines are written. This is true even if you say something like

```
/^\.AB/,/^\.AE/w abstract
```

which involves a context search.

Since the **w** command is so easy to use, you should save what you are editing regularly as you go along just in case the system crashes, or in case you do something foolish, like clobbering what you're editing.

The least intuitive behavior, in a sense, is that of the **s** command. The rule is simple — you are left sitting on the last line that got changed. If there were no changes, then dot is unchanged.

To illustrate, suppose that there are three lines in the buffer, and you are sitting on the middle one:

```
x1
x2
x3
```

Then the command

```
-,+s/x/y/p
```

prints the third line, which is the last one changed. But if the three lines had been

```
x1
y2
y3
```

and the same command had been issued while dot pointed at the second line, then the result would be to change and print only the first line, and that is where dot would be set.

Semicolon ';'

Searches with '/.../' and '?...?' start at the current line and move forward or backward respectively until they either find the pattern or get back to the current line. Sometimes this is not what is wanted. Suppose, for example, that the buffer contains lines like this:

```
.
.
.
ab
.
.
.
bc
.
.
```

Starting at line 1, one would expect that the command

```
/a/,/b/p
```

prints all the lines from the 'ab' to the 'bc' inclusive. Actually this is not what happens. *Both* searches (for 'a' and for 'b') start from the same point, and thus they both find the line that contains 'ab'. The result is to print a single line. Worse, if there had been a line with a 'b' in it before the 'ab' line, then the print command would be in error, since the

second line number would be less than the first, and it is illegal to try to print lines in reverse order.

This is because the comma separator for line numbers doesn't set dot as each address is processed; each search starts from the same place. In **ed**, the semicolon ';' can be used just like comma, with the single difference that use of a semicolon forces dot to be set at that point as the line numbers are being evaluated. In effect, the semicolon 'moves' dot. Thus in our example above, the command

```
/a/;/b/p
```

prints the range of lines from 'ab' to 'bc', because after the 'a' is found, dot is set to that line, and then 'b' is searched for, starting beyond that line.

This property is most often useful in a very simple situation. Suppose you want to find the *second* occurrence of 'thing'. You could say

```
/thing/
//
```

but this prints the first occurrence as well as the second, and is a nuisance when you know very well that it is only the second one you're interested in. The solution is to say

```
/thing/;//
```

This says to find the first occurrence of 'thing', set dot to that line, then find the second and print only that.

Closely related is searching for the second previous occurrence of something, as in

```
?something?;??
```

Printing the third or fourth or ... in either direction is left as an exercise.

Finally, bear in mind that if you want to find the first occurrence of something in a file, starting at an arbitrary place within the file, it is not sufficient to say

```
1;/thing/
```

because this fails if 'thing' occurs on line 1. But it is possible to say

```
0;/thing/
```

(one of the few places where 0 is a legal line number), for this starts the search at line 1.

Interrupting the Editor

As a final note on what dot gets set to, you should be aware that if you hit the interrupt or delete or rubout or break key while **ed** is doing a command, things are put back together again and your state is restored as much as possible to what it was before the command began. Naturally, some changes are irrevocable — if you are reading or writing a file or making substitutions or deleting lines, these will be stopped in some clean but unpredictable state in the middle (which is why it is not usually wise to stop them). Dot may or may not be changed.

Printing is more clear cut. Dot is not changed until the printing is done. Thus if you print until you see an interesting line, then hit delete, you are *not* sitting on that line or even near it. Dot is left where it was when the **p** command was started.

4. GLOBAL COMMANDS

The global commands **g** and **v** are used to perform one or more editing commands on all lines that either contain (**g**) or don't contain (**v**) a specified pattern.

As the simplest example, the command

```
g/UNIX/p
```

prints all lines that contain the word 'UNIX'. The pattern that goes between the slashes can be anything that could be used in a line search or in a substitute command; exactly the same rules and limitations apply.

As another example, then,

```
g/^\./p
```

prints all the formatting commands in a file (lines that begin with '.').

The **v** command is identical to **g**, except that it operates on those line that do *not* contain an occurrence of the pattern. (Don't look too hard for mnemonic significance to the letter 'v'.) So

```
v/^\./p
```

prints all the lines that don't begin with '.' — the actual text lines.

The command that follows **g** or **v** can be anything:

```
g/^\./d
```

deletes all lines that begin with '.', and

```
g/^$/d
```

deletes all empty lines.

Probably the most useful command that can follow a global is the substitute command, for this can be used to make a change and print each affected line for verification. For example, we could change the word 'Unix' to 'UNIX' everywhere, and verify that it really worked, with

```
g/Unix/s//UNIX/gp
```

Notice that we used '//' in the substitute command to mean 'the previous pattern', in this case, 'Unix'. The **p** command is done on every line that matches the pattern, not just those on which a substitution

took place.

The global command operates by making two passes over the file. On the first pass, all lines that match the pattern are marked. On the second pass, each marked line in turn is examined, dot is set to that line, and the command executed. This means that it is possible for the command that follows a g or v to use addresses, set dot, and so on, quite freely.

```
g/^\.PP/+
```

prints the line that follows each '.PP' command (the signal for a new paragraph in some formatting packages). Remember that '+' means 'one line past dot'. And

```
g/topic/?^\.SH?1
```

searches for each line that contains 'topic', scans backwards until it finds a line that begins '.SH' (a section heading) and prints the line that follows that, thus showing the section headings under which 'topic' is mentioned. Finally,

```
g/^\.EQ/+,/^\.EN/-p
```

prints all the lines that lie between lines beginning with '.EQ' and '.EN' formatting commands.

The g and v commands can also be preceded by line numbers, in which case the lines searched are only those in the range specified.

Multi-line Global Commands

It is possible to do more than one command under the control of a global command, although the syntax for expressing the operation is not especially natural or pleasant. As an example, suppose the task is to change 'x' to 'y' and 'a' to 'b' on all lines that contain 'thing'. Then

```
g/thing/s/x/y/\
s/a/b/
```

is sufficient. The '\' signals the g command that the set of commands continues on the next line; it terminates on the first line that does not end with '\'. (As a minor blemish, you can't use a substitute command to insert a newline within a g command.)

You should watch out for this problem: the command

```
g/x/s//y/\
s/a/b/
```

does *not* work as you expect. The remembered pattern is the last pattern that was actually executed, so sometimes it will be 'x' (as expected), and sometimes it will be 'a' (not expected). You must spell it out, like this:

```
g/x/s/x/y/\
s/a/b/
```

It is also possible to execute a, c and i commands under a global command; as with other multi-line constructions, all that is needed is to add a '\' at the end of each line except the last. Thus to add a '.nf' and '.sp' command before each '.EQ' line, type

```
g/^\.EQ/i\
.nf\
.sp
```

There is no need for a final line containing a '.' to terminate the i command, unless there are further commands being done under the global. On the other hand, it does no harm to put it in either.

5. CUT AND PASTE WITH UNIX COMMANDS

One editing area in which non-programmers seem not very confident is in what might be called 'cut and paste' operations — changing the name of a file, making a copy of a file somewhere else, moving a few lines from one place to another in a file, inserting one file in the middle of another, splitting a file into pieces, and splicing two or more files together.

Yet most of these operations are actually quite easy, if you keep your wits about you and go cautiously. The next several sections talk about cut and paste. We will begin with the UNIX commands for moving entire files around, then discuss ed commands for operating on pieces of files.

Changing the Name of a File

You have a file named 'memo' and you want it to be called 'paper' instead. How is it done?

The UNIX program that renames files is called mv (for 'move'); it 'moves' the file from one name to another, like this:

```
mv memo paper
```

That's all there is to it: mv from the old name to the new name.

```
mv oldname newname
```

Warning: if there is already a file around with the new name, its present contents will be silently clobbered by the information from the other file. The one exception is that you can't move a file to itself —

```
mv x x
```

is illegal.

Making a Copy of a File

Sometimes what you want is a copy of a file — an entirely fresh version. This might be because you want to work on a file, and yet save a copy in case something gets fouled up, or just because you're

paranoid.

In any case, the way to do it is with the **cp** command. (**cp** stands for 'copy'; the system is big on short command names, which are appreciated by heavy users, but sometimes a strain for novices.) Suppose you have a file called 'good' and you want to save a copy before you make some dramatic editing changes. Choose a name — 'savegood' might be acceptable — then type

```
cp good savegood
```

This copies 'good' onto 'savegood', and you now have two identical copies of the file 'good'. (If 'savegood' previously contained something, it gets overwritten.)

Now if you decide at some time that you want to get back to the original state of 'good', you can say

```
mv savegood good
```

(if you're not interested in 'savegood' any more), or

```
cp savegood good
```

if you still want to retain a safe copy.

In summary, **mv** just renames a file; **cp** makes a duplicate copy. Both of them clobber the 'target' file if it already exists, so you had better be sure that's what you want to do *before* you do it.

Removing a File

If you decide you are really done with a file forever, you can remove it with the **rm** command:

```
rm savegood
```

throws away (irrevocably) the file called 'savegood'.

Putting Two or More Files Together

The next step is the familiar one of collecting two or more files into one big one. This will be needed, for example, when the author of a paper decides that several sections need to be combined into one. There are several ways to do it, of which the cleanest, once you get used to it, is a program called **cat**. (Not *all* programs have two-letter names.) **cat** is short for 'concatenate', which is exactly what we want to do.

Suppose the job is to combine the files 'file1' and 'file2' into a single file called 'bigfile'. If you say

```
cat file
```

the contents of 'file' will get printed on your terminal. If you say

```
cat file1 file2
```

the contents of 'file1' and then the contents of 'file2' will *both* be printed on your terminal, in that order. So **cat** combines the files, all right, but it's not much help to print them on the terminal — we want them in 'bigfile'.

Fortunately, there is a way. You can tell the system that instead of printing on your terminal, you want the same information put in a file. The way to do it is to add to the command line the character > and the name of the file where you want the output to go. Then you can say

```
cat file1 file2 >bigfile
```

and the job is done. (As with **cp** and **mv**, you're putting something into 'bigfile', and anything that was already there is destroyed.)

This ability to 'capture' the output of a program is one of the most useful aspects of the system. Fortunately it's not limited to the **cat** program — you can use it with *any* program that prints on your terminal. We'll see some more uses for it in a moment.

Naturally, you can combine several files, not just two:

```
cat file1 file2 file3 ... >bigfile
```

collects a whole bunch.

Question: is there any difference between

```
cp good savegood
```

and

```
cat good >savegood
```

Answer: for most purposes, no. You might reasonably ask why there are two programs in that case, since **cat** is obviously all you need. The answer is that **cp** can do some other things as well, which you can investigate for yourself by reading the manual. For now we'll stick to simple usages.

Adding Something to the End of a File

Sometimes you want to add one file to the end of another. We have enough building blocks now that you can do it; in fact before reading further it would be valuable if you figured out how. To be specific, how would you use **cp**, **mv** and/or **cat** to add the file 'good1' to the end of the file 'good'?

You could try

```
cat good good1 >temp
mv temp good
```

which is probably most direct. You should also understand why

```
cat good good1 >good
```

doesn't work. (Don't practice with a good 'good'!)

The easy way is to use a variant of >, called >>. In fact, >> is identical to > except that instead of clobbering the old file, it simply tacks stuff on at the end. Thus you could say

```
cat good1 >>good
```

and 'good1' is added to the end of 'good'. (And if 'good' didn't exist, this makes a copy of 'good1' called 'good'.)

6. CUT AND PASTE WITH THE EDITOR

Now we move on to manipulating pieces of files — individual lines or groups of lines. This is another area where new users seem unsure of themselves.

Filenames

The first step is to ensure that you know the **ed** commands for reading and writing files. Of course you can't go very far without knowing **r** and **w**. Equally useful, but less well known, is the 'edit' command **e**. Within **ed**, the command

```
e newfile
```

says 'I want to edit a new file called *newfile,* without leaving the editor.' The **e** command discards whatever you're currently working on and starts over on *newfile.* It's exactly the same as if you had quit with the **q** command, then re-entered **ed** with a new file name, except that if you have a pattern remembered, then a command like // will still work.

If you enter **ed** with the command

```
ed file
```

ed remembers the name of the file, and any subsequent **e**, **r** or **w** commands that don't contain a filename will refer to this remembered file. Thus

```
ed file1
... (editing) ...
w          (writes back in file1)
e file2    (edit new file, without leaving editor)
... (editing on file2) ...
w          (writes back on file2)
```

(and so on) does a series of edits on various files without ever leaving **ed** and without typing the name of any file more than once. (As an aside, if you examine the sequence of commands here, you can see why many UNIX systems use **e** as a synonym for **ed**.)

You can find out the remembered file name at any time with the **f** command; just type **f** without a file name. You can also change the name of the remembered file name with **f**; a useful sequence is

```
ed precious
f junk
... (editing) ...
```

which gets a copy of a precious file, then uses **f** to guarantee that a careless **w** command won't clobber the original.

Inserting One File into Another

Suppose you have a file called 'memo', and you want the file called 'table' to be inserted just after the reference to Table 1. That is, in 'memo' somewhere is a line that says

```
Table 1 shows that ...
```

and the data contained in 'table' has to go there, probably so it will be formatted properly by **nroff** or **troff**. Now what?

This one is easy. Edit 'memo', find 'Table 1', and add the file 'table' right there:

```
ed memo
/Table 1/
Table 1 shows that ... [response from ed]
.r table
```

The critical line is the last one. As we said earlier, the **r** command reads a file; here you asked for it to be read in right after line dot. An **r** command without any address adds lines at the end, so it is the same as **$r**.

Writing out Part of a File

The other side of the coin is writing out part of the document you're editing. For example, maybe you want to copy out into a separate file that table from the previous example, so it can be formatted and tested separately. Suppose that in the file being edited we have

```
.TS
...[lots of stuff]
.TE
```

which is the way a table is set up for the **tbl** program. To isolate the table in a separate file called 'table', first find the start of the table (the '.TS' line), then write out the interesting part:

```
/^\.TS/
.TS [ed prints the line it found]
.,/^\.TE/w table
```

and the job is done. If you are confident, you can do it all at once with

```
/^\.TS/;/^\.TE/w table
```

and now you have two copies, one in the file you're still editing, one in the file 'table' you've just written.

The point is that the **w** command can write out a group of lines, instead of the whole file. In fact, you can write out a single line if you like; just give one line number instead of two. For example, if you have just typed a horribly complicated line and you know that it (or something like it) is going to be needed later, then save it — don't re-type it. In the editor, say

```
a
...lots of stuff...
...horrible line...
.
.w  temp
a
...more stuff...
.
.r temp
a
...more stuff...
.
```

This last example is worth studying, to be sure you appreciate what's going on.

Moving Lines Around

Suppose you want to move a paragraph from its present position in a paper to the end. How would you do it? As a concrete example, suppose each paragraph in the paper begins with the formatting command '.PP'. Think about it and write down the details before reading on.

The brute force way (not necessarily bad) is to write the paragraph onto a temporary file, delete it from its current position, then read in the temporary file at the end. Assuming that you are sitting on the '.PP' command that begins the paragraph, this is the sequence of commands:

```
.,/^\.PP/–w temp
.,//–d
$r temp
```

That is, from where you are now ('.') until one line before the next '.PP' ('/^\.PP/–') write onto 'temp'. Then delete the same lines. Finally, read 'temp' at the end.

As we said, that's the brute force way. The easier way (often) is to use the *move* command **m** that **ed** provides — it lets you do the whole set of operations at one crack, without any temporary file.

The **m** command is like many other **ed** commands in that it takes up to two line numbers in front that tell what lines are to be affected. It is also *followed* by a line number that tells where the lines are to go. Thus

```
line1, line2 m line3
```

says to move all the lines between 'line1' and 'line2' after 'line3'. Naturally, any of 'line1' etc., can be patterns between slashes, $ signs, or other ways to specify lines.

Suppose again that you're sitting at the first line of the paragraph. Then you can say

```
.,/^\.PP/–m$
```

That's all.

As another example of a frequent operation, you can reverse the order of two adjacent lines by moving the first one to after the second. Suppose that you are positioned at the first. Then

```
m+
```

does it. It says to move line dot to after one line after line dot. If you are positioned on the second line,

```
m––
```

does the interchange.

As you can see, the **m** command is more succinct and direct than writing, deleting and rereading. When is brute force better anyway? This is a matter of personal taste — do what you have most confidence in. The main difficulty with the **m** command is that if you use patterns to specify both the lines you are moving and the target, you have to take care that you specify them properly, or you may well not move the lines you thought you did. The result of a botched **m** command can be a ghastly mess. Doing the job a step at a time makes it easier for you to verify at each step that you accomplished what you wanted to. It's also a good idea to issue a **w** command before doing anything complicated; then if you goof, it's easy to back up to where you were.

Marks

ed provides a facility for marking a line with a particular name so you can later reference it by name regardless of its actual line number. This can be handy for moving lines, and for keeping track of them even after they've been moved. The *mark* command is **k**; the command

```
kx
```

marks the current line with the name 'x'. If a line number precedes the **k**, that line is marked. (The mark name must be a single lower case letter.) Now you can refer to the marked line with the address

```
'x
```

Marks are most useful for moving things around. Find the first line of the block to be moved, and mark it with *'a*. Then find the last line and mark it with *'b*. Now position yourself at the place where the stuff is to go and say

```
'a,'bm.
```

Bear in mind that only one line can have a particular mark name associated with it at any given time.

Copying Lines

We mentioned earlier the idea of saving a line that was hard to type or used often, so as to cut down on typing time. Of course this could be more than one line; then the saving is presumably even greater.

ed provides another command, called **t** (for 'transfer') for making a copy of a group of one or more lines at any point. This is often easier than writing and reading.

The **t** command is identical to the **m** command, except that instead of moving lines it simply duplicates them at the place you named. Thus

```
1,$t$
```

duplicates the entire contents that you are editing. A more common use for **t** is for creating a series of lines that differ only slightly. For example, you can say

```
a
..... x ..... (long line)
.
t.              (make a copy)
s/x/y/          (change it a bit)
t.              (make third copy)
s/y/z/          (change it a bit)
```

and so on.

The Temporary Escape '!'

Sometimes it is convenient to be able to temporarily escape from the editor to do some other UNIX command, perhaps one of the file copy or move commands discussed in section 5, without leaving the editor. The 'escape' command **!** provides a way to do this.

If you say

```
!any UNIX command
```

your current editing state is suspended, and the UNIX command you asked for is executed. When the command finishes, **ed** will signal you by printing another **!**; at that point you can resume editing.

You can really do *any* UNIX command, including another **ed**. (This is quite common, in fact.) In this case, you can even do another **!**.

On Berkeley UNIX systems, there is an additional (and preferable) mechanism called *job control* which lets you suspend your edit session (or, for that matter, any program), return to the shell from which you invoked that program, and issue any commands, then resume the program from the point where it was stopped. See *An Introduction to the C Shell* for more details.

7. SUPPORTING TOOLS

There are several tools and techniques that go along with the editor, all of which are relatively easy once you know how **ed** works, because they are all based on the editor. In this section we will give some fairly cursory examples of these tools, more to indicate their existence than to provide a complete tutorial. More information on each can be found in [3].

Grep

Sometimes you want to find all occurrences of some word or pattern in a set of files, to edit them or perhaps just to verify their presence or absence. It may be possible to edit each file separately and look for the pattern of interest, but if there are many files this can get very tedious, and if the files are really big, it may be impossible because of limits in **ed**.

The program **grep** was invented to get around these limitations. The search patterns that we have described in the paper are often called 'regular expressions', and 'grep' stands for

```
g/re/p
```

That describes exactly what **grep** does — it prints every line in a set of files that contains a particular pattern. Thus

```
grep 'thing' file1 file2 file3 ...
```

finds 'thing' wherever it occurs in any of the files 'file1', 'file2', etc. **grep** also indicates the file in which the line was found, so you can later edit it if you like.

The pattern represented by 'thing' can be any pattern you can use in the editor, since **grep** and **ed** use exactly the same mechanism for pattern searching. It is wisest always to enclose the pattern in the single quotes '...' if it contains any non-alphabetic characters, since many such characters also mean something special to the UNIX command interpreter (the 'shell'). If you don't quote them, the command interpreter will try to interpret them before **grep** gets a chance.

There is also a way to find lines that *don't* contain a pattern:

```
grep -v 'thing' file1 file2 ...
```

finds all lines that don't contains 'thing'. The **-v** must occur in the position shown. Given **grep** and **grep -v**, it is possible to do things like selecting all lines that contain some combination of patterns. For example, to get all lines that contain 'x' but not 'y':

```
grep x file... | grep -v y
```

(The notation | is a 'pipe', which causes the output

of the first command to be used as input to the second command; see [2].)

Editing Scripts

If a fairly complicated set of editing operations is to be done on a whole set of files, the easiest thing to do is to make up a 'script', i.e., a file that contains the operations you want to perform, then apply this script to each file in turn.

For example, suppose you want to change every 'Unix' to 'UNIX' and every 'Gcos' to 'GCOS' in a large number of files. Then put into the file 'script' the lines

```
g/Unix/s//UNIX/g
g/Gcos/s//GCOS/g
w
q
```

Now you can say

```
ed file1 <script
ed file2 <script
...
```

This causes ed to take its commands from the prepared script. Notice that the whole job has to be planned in advance.

And of course by using the UNIX command interpreter, you can cycle through a set of files automatically, with varying degrees of ease.

Sed

sed ('stream editor') is a version of the editor with restricted capabilities but which is capable of processing unlimited amounts of input. Basically sed copies its input to its output, applying one or more editing commands to each line of input.

As an example, suppose that we want to do the 'Unix' to 'UNIX' part of the example given above, but without rewriting the files. Then the command

```
sed 's/Unix/UNIX/g' file1 file2 ...
```

applies the command 's/Unix/UNIX/g' to all lines from 'file1', 'file2', etc., and copies all lines to the output. The advantage of using sed in such a case is that it can be used with input too large for ed to handle. All the output can be collected in one place, either in a file or perhaps piped into another program.

If the editing transformation is so complicated that more than one editing command is needed, commands can be supplied from a file, or on the command line, with a slightly more complex syntax. To take commands from a file, for example,

```
sed -f cmdfile input-files...
```

sed has further capabilities, including conditional testing and branching, which we cannot go into here, but which are described in detail in *Sed – A Non-interactive Text Editor.*

Acknowledgement

I am grateful to Ted Dolotta for his careful reading and valuable suggestions.

References

[1] Brian W. Kernighan, *A Tutorial Introduction to the UNIX Text Editor,* Bell Laboratories internal memorandum.

[2] Brian W. Kernighan, *UNIX For Beginners,* Bell Laboratories internal memorandum.

[3] Ken L. Thompson and Dennis M. Ritchie, *The UNIX Programmer's Manual.* Bell Laboratories.

Edit: A Tutorial

Ricki Blau

James Joyce

Computing Services
University of California
Berkeley, California 94720

ABSTRACT

This narrative introduction to the use of the text editor *edit* assumes no prior familiarity with computers or with text editing. Its aim is to lead the beginning UNIX† user through the fundamental steps of writing and revising a file of text. Edit, a version of the text editor *ex*, was designed to provide an informative environment for new and casual users.

We welcome comments and suggestions about this tutorial and the UNIX documentation in general.

September 1981

USD 14

†UNIX is a trademark of Bell Laboratories.

Contents

Introduction 3

Session 1 4
- Making contact with UNIX 4
- Logging in 4
- Asking for *edit* 4
- The "Command not found" message 5
- A summary 5
- Entering text 5
- Messages from *edit* 5
- Text input mode 6
- Making corrections 6
- Writing text to disk 7
- Signing off 7

Session 2 8
- Adding more text to the file 8
- Interrupt 8
- Making corrections 8
- Listing what's in the buffer (p) 9
- Finding things in the buffer 9
- The current line 10
- Numbering lines (nu) 10
- Substitute command (s) 10
- Another way to list what's in the buffer (z) 11
- Saving the modified text 12

Session 3 13
- Bringing text into the buffer (e) 13
- Moving text in the buffer (m) 13
- Copying lines (copy) 14
- Deleting lines (d) 14
- A word or two of caution 15
- Undo (u) to the rescue 15
- More about the dot (.) and buffer end ($) 16
- Moving around in the buffer (+ and –) 16
- Changing lines (c) 17

Session 4 18
- Making commands global (g) 18
- More about searching and substituting 19
- Special characters 19
- Issuing UNIX commands from the editor 20
- Filenames and file manipulation 20
- The file (f) command 20
- Reading additional files (r) 21
- Writing parts of the buffer 21
- Recovering files 21
- Other recovery techniques 21
- Further reading and other information 22
- Using *ex* 22

Index 23

Introduction

Text editing using a terminal connected to a computer allows you to create, modify, and print text easily. A *text editor* is a program that assists you as you create and modify text. The text editor you will learn here is named *edit.* Creating text using edit is as easy as typing it on an electric typewriter. Modifying text involves telling the text editor what you want to add, change, or delete. You can review your text by typing a command to print the file contents as they are currently. Another program (which we do not discuss in this document), a text formatter, rearranges your text for you into "finished form."

These lessons assume no prior familiarity with computers or with text editing. They consist of a series of text editing sessions which lead you through the fundamental steps of creating and revising text. After scanning each lesson and before beginning the next, you should try the examples at a terminal to get a feeling for the actual process of text editing. If you set aside some time for experimentation, you will soon become familiar with using the computer to write and modify text. In addition to the actual use of the text editor, other features of UNIX will be very important to your work. You can begin to learn about these other features by reading one of the other tutorials that provide a general introduction to the system. You will be ready to proceed with this lesson as soon as you are familiar with (1) your terminal and its special keys, (2) how to login, (3) and the ways of correcting typing errors. Let's first define some terms:

program — A set of instructions, given to the computer, describing the sequence of steps the computer performs in order to accomplish a specific task. The task must be specific, such as balancing your checkbook or editing your text. A general task, such as working for world peace, is something we can all do, but not something we can currently write programs to do.

UNIX — UNIX is a special type of program, called an operating system, that supervises the machinery and all other programs comprising the total computer system.

edit — *edit* is the name of the UNIX text editor you will be learning to use, and is a program that aids you in writing or revising text. Edit was designed for beginning users, and is a simplified version of an editor named *ex.*

file — Each UNIX account is allotted space for the permanent storage of information, such as programs, data or text. A file is a logical unit of data, for example, an essay, a program, or a chapter from a book, which is stored on a computer system. Once you create a file, it is kept until you instruct the system to remove it. You may create a file during one UNIX session, end the session, and return to use it at a later time. Files contain anything you choose to write and store in them. The sizes of files vary to suit your needs; one file might hold only a single number, yet another might contain a very long document or program. The only way to save information from one session to the next is to store it in a file, which you will learn in Session 1.

filename — Filenames are used to distinguish one file from another, serving the same purpose as the labels of manila folders in a file cabinet. In order to write or access information in a file, you use the name of that file in a UNIX command, and the system will automatically locate the file.

disk — Files are stored on an input/output device called a disk, which looks something like a stack of phonograph records. Each surface is coated with a material similar to that on magnetic recording tape, and information is recorded on it.

buffer — A temporary work space, made available to the user for the duration of a session of text editing and used for creating and modifying the text file. We can think of the buffer as a blackboard that is erased after each class, where each session with the editor is a class.

Session 1

Making contact with UNIX

To use the editor you must first make contact with the computer by logging in to UNIX. We'll quickly review the standard UNIX login procedure for the two ways you can make contact: on a terminal that is directly linked to the computer, or over a telephone line where the computer answers your call.

Directly-linked terminals

Turn on your terminal and press the RETURN key. You are now ready to login.

Dial-up terminals

If your terminal connects with the computer over a telephone line, turn on the terminal, dial the system access number, and, when you hear a high-pitched tone, place the telephone handset in the acoustic coupler, if you are using one. You are now ready to login.

Logging in

The message inviting you to login is:

login:

Type your login name, which identifies you to UNIX, on the same line as the login message, and press RETURN. If the terminal you are using has both upper and lower case, **be sure you enter your login name in lower case;** otherwise UNIX assumes your terminal has only upper case and will not recognize lower case letters you may type. UNIX types "login:" and you reply with your login name, for example "susan":

login: **susan** *(and press the RETURN key)*

(In the examples, input you would type appears in **bold face** to distinguish it from the responses from UNIX.)

UNIX will next respond with a request for a password as an additional precaution to prevent unauthorized people from using your account. The password will not appear when you type it, to prevent others from seeing it. The message is:

Password: *(type your password and press RETURN)*

If any of the information you gave during the login sequence was mistyped or incorrect, UNIX will respond with

Login incorrect.
login:

in which case you should start the login process anew. Assuming that you have successfully logged in, UNIX will print the message of the day and eventually will present you with a % at the beginning of a fresh line. The % is the UNIX prompt symbol which tells you that UNIX is ready to accept a command.

Asking for *edit*

You are ready to tell UNIX that you want to work with edit, the text editor. Now is a convenient time to choose a name for the file of text you are about to create. To begin your editing session, type **edit** followed by a space and then the filename you have selected; for example, "text". After that, press the RETURN key and wait for edit's response:

```
% edit text    (followed by a RETURN)
"text" No such file or directory
:
```

If you typed the command correctly, you will now be in communication with edit. Edit has set aside a buffer for use as a temporary working space during your current editing session. Since "text" is a new file we are about to create the editor was unable to find that file, which it confirms by saying:

```
"text" No such file or directory
```

On the next line appears edit's prompt ":", announcing that you are in *command mode* and edit expects a command from you. You may now begin to create the new file.

The "Command not found" message

If you misspelled edit by typing, say, "editor", this might appear:

```
% editor
editor: Command not found
%
```

Your mistake in calling edit "editor" was treated by UNIX as a request for a program named "editor". Since there is no program named "editor", UNIX reported that the program was "not found". A new % indicates that UNIX is ready for another command, and you may then enter the correct command.

A summary

Your exchange with UNIX as you logged in and made contact with edit should look something like this:

```
login: susan
Password:
... A Message of General Interest ...
% edit text
"text" No such file or directory
:
```

Entering text

You may now begin entering text into the buffer. This is done by *appending* (or adding) text to whatever is currently in the buffer. Since there is nothing in the buffer at the moment, you are appending text to nothing; in effect, since you are adding text to nothing you are creating text. Most edit commands have two equivalent forms: a word that suggests what the command does, and a shorter abbreviation of that word. Many beginners find the full command names easier to remember at first, but once you are familiar with editing you may prefer to type the shorter abbreviations. The command to input text is "append". (It may be abbreviated "a".) Type **append** and press the RETURN key.

```
% edit text
:append
```

Messages from *edit*

If you make a mistake in entering a command and type something that edit does not recognize, edit will respond with a message intended to help you diagnose your error. For example, if you misspell the command to input text by typing, perhaps, "add" instead of "append" or "a", you will receive this message:

```
:add
add: Not an editor command
:
```

When you receive a diagnostic message, check what you typed in order to determine what part of your command confused edit. The message above means that edit was unable to recognize your mistyped command and, therefore, did not execute it. Instead, a new ":" appeared to let you know that edit is again ready to execute a command.

Text input mode

By giving the command "append" (or using the abbreviation "a"), you entered *text input mode,* also known as *append mode.* When you enter text input mode, edit stops sending you a prompt. You will not receive any prompts or error messages while in text input mode. You can enter pretty much anything you want on the lines. The lines are transmitted one by one to the buffer and held there during the editing session. You may append as much text as you want, and *when you wish to stop entering text lines you should type a period as the only character on the line and press the* RETURN *key.* When you type the period and press RETURN, you signal that you want to stop appending text, and edit responds by allowing you to exit text input mode and reenter command mode. Edit will again prompt you for a command by printing ":".

Leaving append mode does not destroy the text in the buffer. You have to leave append mode to do any of the other kinds of editing, such as changing, adding, or printing text. If you type a period as the first character and type any other character on the same line, edit will believe you want to remain in append mode and will not let you out. As this can be very frustrating, be sure to type **only** the period and the RETURN key.

This is a good place to learn an important lesson about computers and text: a blank space is a character as far as a computer is concerned. If you so much as type a period followed by a blank (that is, type a period and then the space bar on the keyboard), you will remain in append mode with the last line of text being:

```
.
```

Let's say that you enter the lines (try to type **exactly** what you see, including "thiss"):

```
This is some sample text.
And thiss is some more text.
Text editing is strange, but nice.
.
```

The last line is the period followed by a RETURN that gets you out of append mode.

Making corrections

If you have read a general introduction to UNIX, you will recall that it is possible to erase individual letters that you have typed. This is done by typing the designated erase character as many times as there are characters you want to erase.

The usual erase character varies from place to place and user to user. Often it is the backspace (control-H), so you can correct typing errors in the line you are typing by holding down the CTRL key and typing the "H" key. (Sometimes it is the DEL key.) If you type the erase character you will notice that the terminal backspaces in the line you are on. You can backspace over your error, and then type what you want to be the rest of the line.

If you make a bad start in a line and would like to begin again, you can either backspace to the beginning of the line or you can use the at-sign "@" to erase everything on the line:

```
Text edtiing is strange, but@
Text editing is strange, but nice.
```

When you type the at-sign (@), you erase the entire line typed so far and are given a fresh line to type

on. You may immediately begin to retype the line. This, unfortunately, does not work after you type the line and press RETURN. To make corrections in lines that have been completed, it is necessary to use the editing commands covered in the next sessions.

Writing text to disk

You are now ready to edit the text. One common operation is to write the text to disk as a file for safekeeping after the session is over. This is the only way to save information from one session to the next, since the editor's buffer is temporary and will last only until the end of the editing session. Learning how to write a file to disk is second in importance only to entering the text. To write the contents of the buffer to a disk file, use the command "write" (or its abbreviation "w"):

```
:write
```

Edit will copy the contents of the buffer to a disk file. If the file does not yet exist, a new file will be created automatically and the presence of a "[New file]" will be noted. The newly-created file will be given the name specified when you entered the editor, in this case "text". To confirm that the disk file has been successfully written, edit will repeat the filename and give the number of lines and the total number of characters in the file. The buffer remains unchanged by the "write" command. All of the lines that were written to disk will still be in the buffer, should you want to modify or add to them.

Edit must have a name for the file to be written. If you forgot to indicate the name of the file when you began to edit, edit will print in response to your write command:

```
No current filename
```

If this happens, you can specify the filename in a new write command:

```
:write text
```

After the "write" (or "w"), type a space and then the name of the file.

Signing off

We have done enough for this first lesson on using the UNIX text editor, and are ready to quit the session with edit. To do this we type "quit" (or "q") and press RETURN:

```
:write
"text" [New file]  3 lines, 90 characters
:quit
%
```

The % is from UNIX to tell you that your session with edit is over and you may command UNIX further. Since we want to end the entire session at the terminal, we also need to exit from UNIX. In response to the UNIX prompt of "%" type the command

```
%logout
```

This will end your session with UNIX, and will ready the terminal for the next user. It is always important to type **logout** at the end of a session to make absolutely sure no one could accidentally stumble into your abandoned session and thus gain access to your files, tempting even the most honest of souls.

This is the end of the first session on UNIX text editing.

Session 2

Login with UNIX as in the first session:

```
login: susan (carriage return)
Password:      (give password and carriage return)
... A Message of General Interest ...
%
```

When you indicate you want to edit, you can specify the name of the file you worked on last time. This will start edit working, and it will fetch the contents of the file into the buffer, so that you can resume editing the same file. When edit has copied the file into the buffer, it will repeat its name and tell you the number of lines and characters it contains. Thus,

```
% edit text
"text" 3 lines, 90 characters
:
```

means you asked edit to fetch the file named "text" for editing, causing it to copy the 90 characters of text into the buffer. Edit awaits your further instructions, and indicates this by its prompt character, the colon (:). In this session, we will append more text to our file, print the contents of the buffer, and learn to change the text of a line.

Adding more text to the file

If you want to add more to the end of your text you may do so by using the append command to enter text input mode. When "append" is the first command of your editing session, the lines you enter are placed at the end of the buffer. Here we'll use the abbreviation for the append command, "a":

```
:a
This is text added in Session 2.
It doesn't mean much here, but
it does illustrate the editor.
.
```

You may recall that once you enter append mode using the "a" (or "append") command, you need to type a line containing only a period (.) to exit append mode.

Interrupt

Should you press the RUB key (sometimes labelled DELETE) while working with edit, it will send this message to you:

```
Interrupt
:
```

Any command that edit might be executing is terminated by rub or delete, causing edit to prompt you for a new command. If you are appending text at the time, you will exit from append mode and be expected to give another command. The line of text you were typing when the append command was interrupted will not be entered into the buffer.

Making corrections

If while typing the line you hit an incorrect key, recall that you may delete the incorrect character or cancel the entire line of input by erasing in the usual way. Refer either to the last few pages of Session 1 if you need to review the procedures for making a correction. The most important idea to remember is that erasing a character or cancelling a line must be done before you press the RETURN key.

Listing what's in the buffer (p)

Having appended text to what you wrote in Session 1, you might want to see all the lines in the buffer. To print the contents of the buffer, type the command:

:1,$p

The "1"† stands for line 1 of the buffer, the "$" is a special symbol designating the last line of the buffer, and "p" (or **print**) is the command to print from line 1 to the end of the buffer. The command "1,$p" gives you:

```
This is some sample text.
And thiss is some more text.
Text editing is strange, but nice.
This is text added in Session 2.
It doesn't mean much here, but
it does illustrate the editor.
```

Occasionally, you may accidentally type a character that can't be printed, which can be done by striking a key while the CTRL key is pressed. In printing lines, edit uses a special notation to show the existence of non-printing characters. Suppose you had introduced the non-printing character "control-A" into the word "illustrate" by accidently pressing the CTRL key while typing "a". This can happen on many terminals because the CTRL key and the "A" key are beside each other. If your finger presses between the two keys, control-A results. When asked to print the contents of the buffer, edit would display

```
it does illustr^Ate the editor.
```

To represent the control-A, edit shows "^A". The sequence "^" followed by a capital letter stands for the one character entered by holding down the CTRL key and typing the letter which appears after the "^". We'll soon discuss the commands that can be used to correct this typing error.

In looking over the text we see that "this" is typed as "thiss" in the second line, a deliberate error so we can learn to make corrections. Let's correct the spelling.

Finding things in the buffer

In order to change something in the buffer we first need to find it. We can find "thiss" in the text we have entered by looking at a listing of the lines. Physically speaking, we search the lines of text looking for "thiss" and stop searching when we have found it. The way to tell edit to search for something is to type it inside slash marks:

:/thiss/

By typing **/thiss/** and pressing RETURN, you instruct edit to search for "thiss". If you ask edit to look for a pattern of characters which it cannot find in the buffer, it will respond "Pattern not found". When edit finds the characters "thiss", it will print the line of text for your inspection:

```
And thiss is some more text.
```

Edit is now positioned in the buffer at the line it just printed, ready to make a change in the line.

†The numeral "one" is the top left-most key, and should not be confused with the letter "el".

The current line

Edit keeps track of the line in the buffer where it is located at all times during an editing session. In general, the line that has been most recently printed, entered, or changed is the current location in the buffer. The editor is prepared to make changes at the current location in the buffer, unless you direct it to another location.

In particular, when you bring a file into the buffer, you will be located at the last line in the file, where the editor left off copying the lines from the file to the buffer. If your first editing command is "append", the lines you enter are added to the end of the file, after the current line — the last line in the file.

You can refer to your current location in the buffer by the symbol period (.) usually known by the name "dot". If you type "." and carriage return you will be instructing edit to print the current line:

```
:.
And thiss is some more text.
```

If you want to know the number of the current line, you can type .= and press RETURN, and edit will respond with the line number:

```
:.=
2
```

If you type the number of any line and press RETURN, edit will position you at that line and print its contents:

```
:2
And thiss is some more text.
```

You should experiment with these commands to gain experience in using them to make changes.

Numbering lines (nu)

The **number (nu)** command is similar to print, giving both the number and the text of each printed line. To see the number and the text of the current line type

```
:nu
     2  And thiss is some more text.
```

Note that the shortest abbreviation for the number command is "nu" (and not "n", which is used for a different command). You may specify a range of lines to be listed by the number command in the same way that lines are specified for print. For example, **1,$nu** lists all lines in the buffer with their corresponding line numbers.

Substitute command (s)

Now that you have found the misspelled word, you can change it from "thiss" to "this". As far as edit is concerned, changing things is a matter of substituting one thing for another. As *a* stood for *append,* so *s* stands for *substitute.* We will use the abbreviation "s" to reduce the chance of mistyping the substitute command. This command will instruct edit to make the change:

```
2s/thiss/this/
```

We first indicate the line to be changed, line 2, and then type an "s" to indicate we want edit to make a substitution. Inside the first set of slashes are the characters that we want to change, followed by the characters to replace them, and then a closing slash mark. To summarize:

2s/ *what is to be changed* / *what to change it to* /

If edit finds an exact match of the characters to be changed it will make the change **only** in the first occurrence of the characters. If it does not find the characters to be changed, it will respond:

Substitute pattern match failed

indicating that your instructions could not be carried out. When edit does find the characters that you want to change, it will make the substitution and automatically print the changed line, so that you can check that the correct substitution was made. In the example,

:2s/thiss/this/
And this is some more text.

line 2 (and line 2 only) will be searched for the characters "thiss", and when the first exact match is found, "thiss" will be changed to "this". Strictly speaking, it was not necessary above to specify the number of the line to be changed. In

:s/thiss/this/

edit will assume that we mean to change the line where we are currently located ("."). In this case, the command without a line number would have produced the same result because we were already located at the line we wished to change.

For another illustration of the substitute command, let us choose the line:

Text editing is strange, but nice.

You can make this line a bit more positive by taking out the characters "strange, but " so the line reads:

Text editing is nice.

A command that will first position edit at the desired line and then make the substitution is:

:/strange/s/strange, but //

What we have done here is combine our search with our substitution. Such combinations are perfectly legal, and speed up editing quite a bit once you get used to them. That is, you do not necessarily have to use line numbers to identify a line to edit. Instead, you may identify the line you want to change by asking edit to search for a specified pattern of letters that occurs in that line. The parts of the above command are:

/strange/	tells edit to find the characters "strange" in the text
s	tells edit to make a substitution
/strange, but //	substitutes nothing at all for the characters "strange, but "

You should note the space after "but" in "/strange, but /". If you do not indicate that the space is to be taken out, your line will read:

Text editing is nice.

which looks a little funny because of the extra space between "is" and "nice". Again, we realize from this that a blank space is a real character to a computer, and in editing text we need to be aware of spaces within a line just as we would be aware of an "a" or a "4".

Another way to list what's in the buffer (z)

Although the print command is useful for looking at specific lines in the buffer, other commands may be more convenient for viewing large sections of text. You can ask to see a screen full of text at a time by using the command **z**. If you type

:1z

edit will start with line 1 and continue printing lines, stopping either when the screen of your terminal is full or when the last line in the buffer has been printed. If you want to read the next segment of text, type the command

```
:z
```

If no starting line number is given for the z command, printing will start at the "current" line, in this case the last line printed. Viewing lines in the buffer one screen full at a time is known as *paging*. Paging can also be used to print a section of text on a hard-copy terminal.

Saving the modified text

This seems to be a good place to pause in our work, and so we should end the second session. If you (in haste) type "q" to quit the session your dialogue with edit will be:

```
:q
No write since last change (:quit! overrides)
:
```

This is edit's warning that you have not written the modified contents of the buffer to disk. You run the risk of losing the work you did during the editing session since you typed the latest write command. Because in this lesson we have not written to disk at all, everything we have done would have been lost if edit had obeyed the **q** command. If you did not want to save the work done during this editing session, you would have to type "q!" or ("quit!") to confirm that you indeed wanted to end the session immediately, leaving the file as it was after the most recent "write" command. However, since you want to save what you have edited, you need to type:

```
:w
"text" 6 lines, 171 characters
```

and then follow with the commands to quit and logout:

```
:q
% logout
```

and hang up the phone or turn off the terminal when UNIX asks for a name. Terminals connected to the port selector will stop after the logout command, and pressing keys on the keyboard will do nothing.

This is the end of the second session on UNIX text editing.

Session 3

Bringing text into the buffer (e)

Login to UNIX and make contact with edit. You should try to login without looking at the notes, but if you must then by all means do.

Did you remember to give the name of the file you wanted to edit? That is, did you type

% edit text

or simply

% edit

Both ways get you in contact with edit, but the first way will bring a copy of the file named "text" into the buffer. If you did forget to tell edit the name of your file, you can get it into the buffer by typing:

```
:e text
"text" 6 lines, 171 characters
```

The command **edit,** which may be abbreviated **e**, tells edit that you want to erase anything that might already be in the buffer and bring a copy of the file "text" into the buffer for editing. You may also use the edit (e) command to change files in the middle of an editing session, or to give edit the name of a new file that you want to create. Because the edit command clears the buffer, you will receive a warning if you try to edit a new file without having saved a copy of the old file. This gives you a chance to write the contents of the buffer to disk before editing the next file.

Moving text in the buffer (m)

Edit allows you to move lines of text from one location in the buffer to another by means of the **move (m)** command. The first two examples are for illustration only, though after you have read this Session you are welcome to return to them for practice. The command

:2,4m$

directs edit to move lines 2, 3, and 4 to the end of the buffer ($). The format for the move command is that you specify the first line to be moved, the last line to be moved, the move command "m", and the line after which the moved text is to be placed. So,

:1,3m6

would instruct edit to move lines 1 through 3 (inclusive) to a location after line 6 in the buffer. To move only one line, say, line 4, to a location in the buffer after line 5, the command would be "4m5".

Let's move some text using the command:

```
:5,$m1
2 lines moved
it does illustrate the editor.
```

After executing a command that moves more than one line of the buffer, edit tells how many lines were affected by the move and prints the last moved line for your inspection. If you want to see more than just the last line, you can then use the print (p), z, or number (nu) command to view more text. The buffer should now contain:

```
This is some sample text.
It doesn't mean much here, but
it does illustrate the editor.
And this is some more text.
Text editing is nice.
This is text added in Session 2.
```

You can restore the original order by typing:

:4,$m1

or, combining context searching and the move command:

:/And this is some/,/This is text/m/This is some sample/

(Do not type both examples here!) The problem with combining context searching with the move command is that your chance of making a typing error in such a long command is greater than if you type line numbers.

Copying lines (copy)

The **copy** command is used to make a second copy of specified lines, leaving the original lines where they were. Copy has the same format as the move command, for example:

:2,5copy $

makes a copy of lines 2 through 5, placing the added lines after the buffer's end ($). Experiment with the copy command so that you can become familiar with how it works. Note that the shortest abbreviation for copy is **co** (and not the letter "c", which has another meaning).

Deleting lines (d)

Suppose you want to delete the line

This is text added in Session 2.

from the buffer. If you know the number of the line to be deleted, you can type that number followed by **delete** or **d**. This example deletes line 4, which is "This is text added in Session 2." if you typed the commands suggested so far.

:4d
It doesn't mean much here, but

Here "4" is the number of the line to be deleted, and "delete" or "d" is the command to delete the line. After executing the delete command, edit prints the line that has become the current line (".").

If you do not happen to know the line number you can search for the line and then delete it using this sequence of commands:

:/added in Session 2./
This is text added in Session 2.
:d
It doesn't mean much here, but

The "/added in Session 2./" asks edit to locate and print the line containing the indicated text, starting its search at the current line and moving line by line until it finds the text. Once you are sure that you have correctly specified the line you want to delete, you can enter the delete (d) command. In this case it is not necessary to specify a line number before the "d". If no line number is given, edit deletes the current line ("."), that is, the line found by our search. After the deletion, your buffer should contain:

```
This is some sample text.
And this is some more text.
Text editing is nice.
It doesn't mean much here, but
it does illustrate the editor.
And this is some more text.
Text editing is nice.
This is text added in Session 2.
It doesn't mean much here, but
```

To delete both lines 2 and 3:

```
And this is some more text.
Text editing is nice.
```

you type

```
:2,3d
2 lines deleted
```

which specifies the range of lines from 2 to 3, and the operation on those lines — "d" for delete. If you delete more than one line you will receive a message telling you the number of lines deleted, as indicated in the example above.

The previous example assumes that you know the line numbers for the lines to be deleted. If you do not you might combine the search command with the delete command:

```
:/And this is some/,/Text editing is nice./d
```

A word or two of caution

In using the search function to locate lines to be deleted you should be **absolutely sure** the characters you give as the basis for the search will take edit to the line you want deleted. Edit will search for the first occurrence of the characters starting from where you last edited – that is, from the line you see printed if you type dot (.).

A search based on too few characters may result in the wrong lines being deleted, which edit will do as easily as if you had meant it. For this reason, it is usually safer to specify the search and then delete in two separate steps, at least until you become familiar enough with using the editor that you understand how best to specify searches. For a beginner it is not a bad idea to double-check each command before pressing RETURN to send the command on its way.

Undo (u) to the rescue

The **undo (u)** command has the ability to reverse the effects of the last command that changed the buffer. To undo the previous command, type "u" or "undo". Undo can rescue the contents of the buffer from many an unfortunate mistake. However, its powers are not unlimited, so it is still wise to be reasonably careful about the commands you give.

It is possible to undo only commands which have the power to change the buffer — for example, delete, append, move, copy, substitute, and even undo itself. The commands write (w) and edit (e), which interact with disk files, cannot be undone, nor can commands that do not change the buffer, such as print. Most importantly, the **only** command that can be reversed by undo is the last "undoable" command you typed. You can use control-H and @ to change commands while you are typing them, and undo to reverse the effect of the commands after you have typed them and pressed RETURN.

To illustrate, let's issue an undo command. Recall that the last buffer-changing command we gave deleted the lines formerly numbered 2 and 3. Typing undo at this moment will reverse the effects of the deletion, causing those two lines to be replaced in the buffer.

```
:u
2 more lines in file after undo
And this is some more text.
```

Here again, edit informs you if the command affects more than one line, and prints the text of the line which is now "dot" (the current line).

More about the dot (.) and buffer end ($)

The function assumed by the symbol dot depends on its context. It can be used:

1. to exit from append mode; we type dot (and only a dot) on a line and press RETURN;
2. to refer to the line we are at in the buffer.

Dot can also be combined with the equal sign to get the number of the line currently being edited:

```
:.=
```

If we type ".=" we are asking for the number of the line, and if we type "." we are asking for the text of the line.

In this editing session and the last, we used the dollar sign to indicate the end of the buffer in commands such as print, copy, and move. The dollar sign as a command asks edit to print the last line in the buffer. If the dollar sign is combined with the equal sign ($=) edit will print the line number corresponding to the last line in the buffer.

"." and "$", then, represent line numbers. Whenever appropriate, these symbols can be used in place of line numbers in commands. For example

```
:.,$d
```

instructs edit to delete all lines from the current line (.) to the end of the buffer.

Moving around in the buffer (+ and –)

When you are editing you often want to go back and re-read a previous line. You could specify a context search for a line you want to read if you remember some of its text, but if you simply want to see what was written a few, say 3, lines ago, you can type

```
-3p
```

This tells edit to move back to a position 3 lines before the current line (.) and print that line. You can move forward in the buffer similarly:

```
+2p
```

instructs edit to print the line that is 2 ahead of your current position.

You may use "+" and "–" in any command where edit accepts line numbers. Line numbers specified with "+" or "–" can be combined to print a range of lines. The command

```
:-1,+2copy$
```

makes a copy of 4 lines: the current line, the line before it, and the two after it. The copied lines will be placed after the last line in the buffer ($), and the original lines referred to by "–1" and "+2" remain where they are.

Try typing only "–"; you will move back one line just as if you had typed "–1p". Typing the command "+" works similarly. You might also try typing a few plus or minus signs in a row (such as "+++") to see edit's response. Typing RETURN alone on a line is the equivalent of typing "+1p"; it will move you one line ahead in the buffer and print that line.

If you are at the last line of the buffer and try to move further ahead, perhaps by typing a "+" or a carriage return alone on the line, edit will remind you that you are at the end of the buffer:

At end-of-file

or

Not that many lines in buffer

Similarly, if you try to move to a position before the first line, edit will print one of these messages:

Nonzero address required on this command

or

Negative address – first buffer line is 1

The number associated with a buffer line is the line's "address", in that it can be used to locate the line.

Changing lines (c)

You can also delete certain lines and insert new text in their place. This can be accomplished easily with the **change (c)** command. The change command instructs edit to delete specified lines and then switch to text input mode to accept the text that will replace them. Let's say you want to change the first two lines in the buffer:

This is some sample text.
And this is some more text.

to read

This text was created with the UNIX text editor.

To do so, you type:

:**1,2c**
2 lines changed
This text was created with the UNIX text editor.
.
:

In the command **1,2c** we specify that we want to change the range of lines beginning with 1 and ending with 2 by giving line numbers as with the print command. These lines will be deleted. After you type RETURN to end the change command, edit notifies you if more than one line will be changed and places you in text input mode. Any text typed on the following lines will be inserted into the position where lines were deleted by the change command. **You will remain in text input mode until you exit in the usual way, by typing a period alone on a line.** Note that the number of lines added to the buffer need not be the same as the number of lines deleted.

This is the end of the third session on text editing with UNIX.

Session 4

This lesson covers several topics, starting with commands that apply throughout the buffer, characters with special meanings, and how to issue UNIX commands while in the editor. The next topics deal with files: more on reading and writing, and methods of recovering files lost in a crash. The final section suggests sources of further information.

Making commands global (g)

One disadvantage to the commands we have used for searching or substituting is that if you have a number of instances of a word to change it appears that you have to type the command repeatedly, once for each time the change needs to be made. Edit, however, provides a way to make commands apply to the entire contents of the buffer – the **global (g)** command.

To print all lines containing a certain sequence of characters (say, "text") the command is:

```
:g/text/p
```

The "g" instructs edit to make a global search for all lines in the buffer containing the characters "text". The "p" prints the lines found.

To issue a global command, start by typing a "g" and then a search pattern identifying the lines to be affected. Then, on the same line, type the command to be executed for the identified lines. Global substitutions are frequently useful. For example, to change all instances of the word "text" to the word "material" the command would be a combination of the global search and the substitute command:

```
:g/text/s/text/material/g
```

Note the "g" at the end of the global command, which instructs edit to change each and every instance of "text" to "material". If you do not type the "g" at the end of the command only the *first* instance of "text" *in each line* will be changed (the normal result of the substitute command). The "g" at the end of the command is independent of the "g" at the beginning. You may give a command such as:

```
:5s/text/material/g
```

to change every instance of "text" in line 5 alone. Further, neither command will change "text" to "material" if "Text" begins with a capital rather than a lower-case *t*.

Edit does not automatically print the lines modified by a global command. If you want the lines to be printed, type a "p" at the end of the global command:

```
:g/text/s/text/material/gp
```


You should be careful about using the global command in combination with any other – in essence, be sure of what you are telling edit to do to the entire buffer. For example,

```
:g/ /d
72 less lines in file after global
```

will delete every line containing a blank anywhere in it. This could adversely affect your document, since most lines have spaces between words and thus would be deleted. After executing the global command, edit will print a warning if the command added or deleted more than one line. Fortunately, the undo command can reverse the effects of a global command. You should experiment with the global command on a small file of text to see what it can do for you.

More about searching and substituting

In using slashes to identify a character string that we want to search for or change, we have always specified the exact characters. There is a less tedious way to repeat the same string of characters. To change "text" to "texts" we may type either

:/text/s/text/texts/

as we have done in the past, or a somewhat abbreviated command:

:/text/s//texts/

In this example, the characters to be changed are not specified – there are no characters, not even a space, between the two slash marks that indicate what is to be changed. This lack of characters between the slashes is taken by the editor to mean "use the characters we last searched for as the characters to be changed."

Similarly, the last context search may be repeated by typing a pair of slashes with nothing between them:

:/does/
It doesn't mean much here, but
://
it does illustrate the editor.

(You should note that the search command found the characters "does" in the word "doesn't" in the first search request.) Because no characters are specified for the second search, the editor scans the buffer for the next occurrence of the characters "does".

Edit normally searches forward through the buffer, wrapping around from the end of the buffer to the beginning, until the specified character string is found. If you want to search in the reverse direction, use question marks (?) instead of slashes to surround the characters you are searching for.

It is also possible to repeat the last substitution without having to retype the entire command. An ampersand (&) used as a command repeats the most recent substitute command, using the same search and replacement patterns. After altering the current line by typing

:s/text/texts/

you type

:/text/&

or simply

://&

to make the same change on the next line in the buffer containing the characters "text".

Special characters

Two characters have special meanings when used in specifying searches: "$" and "^". "$" is taken by the editor to mean "end of the line" and is used to identify strings that occur at the end of a line.

:g/text.$/s//material./p

tells the editor to search for all lines ending in "text." (and nothing else, not even a blank space), to change each final "text." to "material.", and print the changed lines.

The symbol "^" indicates the beginning of a line. Thus,

:s/^/1. /

instructs the editor to insert "1." and a space at the beginning of the current line.

The characters "$" and "^" have special meanings only in the context of searching. At other times, they are ordinary characters. If you ever need to search for a character that has a special meaning, you must indicate that the character is to lose temporarily its special significance by typing another special character, the backslash (\), before it.

```
:s/\$/dollar/
```

looks for the character "$" in the current line and replaces it by the word "dollar". Were it not for the backslash, the "$" would have represented "the end of the line" in your search rather than the character "$". The backslash retains its special significance unless it is preceded by another backslash.

Issuing UNIX commands from the editor

After creating several files with the editor, you may want to delete files no longer useful to you or ask for a list of your files. Removing and listing files are not functions of the editor, and so they require the use of UNIX system commands (also referred to as "shell" commands, as "shell" is the name of the program that processes UNIX commands). You do not need to quit the editor to execute a UNIX command as long as you indicate that it is to be sent to the shell for execution. To use the UNIX command **rm** to remove the file named "junk" type:

```
:!rm junk
!
:
```

The exclamation mark (!) indicates that the rest of the line is to be processed as a shell command. If the buffer contents have not been written since the last change, a warning will be printed before the command is executed:

```
[No write since last change]
```

The editor prints a "!" when the command is completed. Other tutorials describe useful features of the system, of which an editor is only one part.

Filenames and file manipulation

Throughout each editing session, edit keeps track of the name of the file being edited as the *current filename.* Edit remembers as the current filename the name given when you entered the editor. The current filename changes whenever the edit (e) command is used to specify a new file. Once edit has recorded a current filename, it inserts that name into any command where a filename has been omitted. If a write command does not specify a file, edit, as we have seen, supplies the current filename. If you are editing a file named "draft3" having 283 lines in it, you can have the editor write onto a different file by including its name in the write command:

```
:w chapter3
"chapter3" [new file] 283 lines, 8698 characters
```

The current filename remembered by the editor *will not be changed as a result of the write command.* Thus, if the next write command does not specify a name, edit will write onto the current file ("draft3") and not onto the file "chapter3".

The file (f) command

To ask for the current filename, type **file** (or **f**). In response, the editor provides current information about the buffer, including the filename, your current position, the number of lines in the buffer, and the percent of the distance through the file your current location is.

```
:f
"text" [Modified] line 3 of 4 --75%--
```

If the contents of the buffer have changed since the last time the file was written, the editor will tell you that the file has been "[Modified]". After you save the changes by writing onto a disk file, the buffer will no longer be considered modified:

```
:w
"text" 4 lines, 88 characters
:f
"text" line 3 of 4 --75%--
```

Reading additional files (r)

The **read (r)** command allows you to add the contents of a file to the buffer at a specified location, essentially copying new lines between two existing lines. To use it, specify the line after which the new text will be placed, the **read (r)** command, and then the name of the file. If you have a file named "example", the command

```
:$r example
"example" 18 lines, 473 characters
```

reads the file "example" and adds it to the buffer after the last line. The current filename is not changed by the read command.

Writing parts of the buffer

The **write (w)** command can write all or part of the buffer to a file you specify. We are already familiar with writing the entire contents of the buffer to a disk file. To write only part of the buffer onto a file, indicate the beginning and ending lines before the write command, for example

```
:45,$w ending
```

Here all lines from 45 through the end of the buffer are written onto the file named *ending*. The lines remain in the buffer as part of the document you are editing, and you may continue to edit the entire buffer. Your original file is unaffected by your command to write part of the buffer to another file. Edit still remembers whether you have saved changes to the buffer in your original file or not.

Recovering files

Although it does not happen very often, there are times UNIX stops working because of some malfunction. This situation is known as a *crash*. Under most circumstances, edit's crash recovery feature is able to save work to within a few lines of changes before a crash (or an accidental phone hang up). If you lose the contents of an editing buffer in a system crash, you will normally receive mail when you login that gives the name of the recovered file. To recover the file, enter the editor and type the command **recover (rec)**, followed by the name of the lost file. For example, to recover the buffer for an edit session involving the file "chap6", the command is:

```
:recover chap6
```

Recover is sometimes unable to save the entire buffer successfully, so always check the contents of the saved buffer carefully before writing it back onto the original file. For best results, write the buffer to a new file temporarily so you can examine it without risk to the original file. Unfortunately, you cannot use the recover command to retrieve a file you removed using the shell command **rm**.

Other recovery techniques

If something goes wrong when you are using the editor, it may be possible to save your work by using the command **preserve (pre)**, which saves the buffer as if the system had crashed. If you are writing a file and you get the message "Quota exceeded", you have tried to use more disk storage than is allotted to your account. *Proceed with caution* because it is likely that only a part of the editor's buffer is now present in the file you tried to write. In this case you should use the shell escape from the editor (!) to remove some files you don't need and try to write the file again. If this is not possible and you cannot find someone to help you, enter the command

```
:preserve
```

and wait for the reply,

File preserved.

If you do not receive this reply, seek help immediately. Do not simply leave the editor. If you do, the buffer will be lost, and you may not be able to save your file. If the reply is "File preserved." you can leave the editor (or logout) to remedy the situation. After a preserve, you can use the recover command once the problem has been corrected, or the –r option of the edit command if you leave the editor and want to return.

If you make an undesirable change to the buffer and type a write command before discovering your mistake, the modified version will replace any previous version of the file. Should you ever lose a good version of a document in this way, do not panic and leave the editor. As long as you stay in the editor, the contents of the buffer remain accessible. Depending on the nature of the problem, it may be possible to restore the buffer to a more complete state with the undo command. After fixing the damaged buffer, you can again write the file to disk.

Further reading and other information

Edit is an editor designed for beginning and casual users. It is actually a version of a more powerful editor called *ex.* These lessons are intended to introduce you to the editor and its more commonly-used commands. We have not covered all of the editor's commands, but a selection of commands that should be sufficient to accomplish most of your editing tasks. You can find out more about the editor in the *Ex Reference Manual,* which is applicable to both *ex* and *edit.* One way to become familiar with the manual is to begin by reading the description of commands that you already know.

Using *ex*

As you become more experienced with using the editor, you may still find that edit continues to meet your needs. However, should you become interested in using *ex,* it is easy to switch. To begin an editing session with *ex,* use the name ex in your command instead of **edit.**

Edit commands also work in *ex,* but the editing environment is somewhat different. You should be aware of a few differences between *ex* and *edit.* In edit, only the characters "^", "$", and "\" have special meanings in searching the buffer or indicating characters to be changed by a substitute command. Several additional characters have special meanings in ex, as described in the *Ex Reference Manual.* Another feature of the edit environment prevents users from accidently entering two alternative modes of editing, *open* and *visual,* in which the editor behaves quite differently from normal command mode. If you are using ex and you encounter strange behavior, you may have accidently entered open mode by typing "o". Type the ESC key and then a "Q" to get out of open or visual mode and back into the regular editor command mode. The document *An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi* provide full details of visual mode.

An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi

William Joy

Mark Horton

Computer Science Division
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California, Berkeley
Berkeley, Ca. 94720

ABSTRACT

Vi (visual) is a display oriented interactive text editor. When using *vi* the screen of your terminal acts as a window into the file which you are editing. Changes which you make to the file are reflected in what you see.

Using *vi* you can insert new text any place in the file quite easily. Most of the commands to *vi* move the cursor around in the file. There are commands to move the cursor forward and backward in units of characters, words, sentences and paragraphs. A small set of operators, like **d** for delete and **c** for change, are combined with the motion commands to form operations such as delete word or change paragraph, in a simple and natural way. This regularity and the mnemonic assignment of commands to keys makes the editor command set easy to remember and to use.

Vi will work on a large number of display terminals, and new terminals are easily driven after editing a terminal description file. While it is advantageous to have an intelligent terminal which can locally insert and delete lines and characters from the display, the editor will function quite well on dumb terminals over slow phone lines. The editor makes allowance for the low bandwidth in these situations and uses smaller window sizes and different display updating algorithms to make best use of the limited speed available.

It is also possible to use the command set of *vi* on hardcopy terminals, storage tubes and "glass tty's" using a one line editing window; thus *vi's* command set is available on all terminals. The full command set of the more traditional, line oriented editor *ex* is available within *vi;* it is quite simple to switch between the two modes of editing.

1. Getting started

This document provides a quick introduction to *vi.* (Pronounced *vee-eye.*) You should be running *vi* on a file you are familiar with while you are reading this. The first part of this document (sections 1 through 5) describes the basics of using *vi.* Some topics of special interest are presented in section 6, and some nitty-gritty details of how the editor functions are saved for section 7 to avoid cluttering the presentation here.

The financial support of an IBM Graduate Fellowship and the National Science Foundation under grants MCS74-07644-A03 and MCS78-07291 is gratefully acknowledged.

There is also a short appendix here, which gives for each character the special meanings which this character has in *vi*. Attached to this document should be a quick reference card. This card summarizes the commands of *vi* in a very compact format. You should have the card handy while you are learning *vi*.

1.1. Specifying terminal type

Before you can start *vi* you must tell the system what kind of terminal you are using. Here is a (necessarily incomplete) list of terminal type codes. If your terminal does not appear here, you should consult with one of the staff members on your system to find out the code for your terminal. If your terminal does not have a code, one can be assigned and a description for the terminal can be created.

Code	Full name	Type
2621	Hewlett-Packard 2621A/P	Intelligent
2645	Hewlett-Packard 264x	Intelligent
act4	Microterm ACT-IV	Dumb
act5	Microterm ACT-V	Dumb
adm3a	Lear Siegler ADM-3a	Dumb
adm31	Lear Siegler ADM-31	Intelligent
c100	Human Design Concept 100	Intelligent
dm1520	Datamedia 1520	Dumb
dm2500	Datamedia 2500	Intelligent
dm3025	Datamedia 3025	Intelligent
fox	Perkin-Elmer Fox	Dumb
h1500	Hazeltine 1500	Intelligent
h19	Heathkit h19	Intelligent
i100	Infoton 100	Intelligent
mime	Imitating a smart act4	Intelligent
t1061	Teleray 1061	Intelligent
vt52	Dec VT-52	Dumb

Suppose for example that you have a Hewlett-Packard HP2621A terminal. The code used by the system for this terminal is '2621'. In this case you can use one of the following commands to tell the system the type of your terminal:

```
% setenv TERM 2621
```

This command works with the *csh* shell. If you are using the standard Bourne shell *sh* then you should give the commands

```
$ TERM=2621
$ export TERM
```

If you want to arrange to have your terminal type set up automatically when you log in, you can use the *tset* program. If you dial in on a *mime*, but often use hardwired ports, a typical line for your *.login* file (if you use csh) would be

```
setenv TERM `tset - -d mime`
```

or for your *.profile* file (if you use sh)

```
TERM=`tset - -d mime`
```

Tset knows which terminals are hardwired to each port and needs only to be told that when you dial in you are probably on a *mime*. *Tset* is usually used to change the erase and kill characters, too.

1.2. Editing a file

After telling the system which kind of terminal you have, you should make a copy of a file you are familiar with, and run *vi* on this file, giving the command

% **vi** *name*

replacing *name* with the name of the copy file you just created. The screen should clear and the text of your file should appear on the screen. If something else happens refer to the footnote.‡

1.3. The editor's copy: the buffer

The editor does not directly modify the file which you are editing. Rather, the editor makes a copy of this file, in a place called the *buffer,* and remembers the file's name. You do not affect the contents of the file unless and until you write the changes you make back into the original file.

1.4. Notational conventions

In our examples, input which must be typed as is will be presented in **bold face.** Text which should be replaced with appropriate input will be given in *italics.* We will represent special characters in SMALL CAPITALS.

1.5. Arrow keys

The editor command set is independent of the terminal you are using. On most terminals with cursor positioning keys, these keys will also work within the editor. If you don't have cursor positioning keys, or even if you do, you can use the **h j k** and **l** keys as cursor positioning keys (these are labelled with arrows on an *adm3a).**

(Particular note for the HP2621: on this terminal the function keys must be *shifted* (ick) to send to the machine, otherwise they only act locally. Unshifted use will leave the cursor positioned incorrectly.)

1.6. Special characters: ESC, CR and DEL

Several of these special characters are very important, so be sure to find them right now. Look on your keyboard for a key labelled ESC or ALT. It should be near the upper left corner of your terminal. Try hitting this key a few times. The editor will ring the bell to indicate that it is in a quiescent state.‡ Partially formed commands are cancelled by ESC, and when you insert text in the file you end the text insertion with ESC. This key is a fairly harmless one to hit, so you can just hit it if you don't know what is going on until the editor rings the bell.

The CR or RETURN key is important because it is used to terminate certain commands. It is usually at the right side of the keyboard, and is the same command used at the end of each shell command.

---

‡ If you gave the system an incorrect terminal type code then the editor may have just made a mess out of your screen. This happens when it sends control codes for one kind of terminal to some other kind of terminal. In this case hit the keys **:q** (colon and the q key) and then hit the RETURN key. This should get you back to the command level interpreter. Figure out what you did wrong (ask someone else if necessary) and try again.

Another thing which can go wrong is that you typed the wrong file name and the editor just printed an error diagnostic. In this case you should follow the above procedure for getting out of the editor, and try again this time spelling the file name correctly.

If the editor doesn't seem to respond to the commands which you type here, try sending an interrupt to it by hitting the DEL or RUB key on your terminal, and then hitting the :q command again followed by a carriage return.

* As we will see later, *h* moves back to the left (like control-h which is a backspace), *j* moves down (in the same column), *k* moves up (in the same column), and *l* moves to the right.

‡ On smart terminals where it is possible, the editor will quietly flash the screen rather than ringing the bell.

Another very useful key is the DEL or RUB key, which generates an interrupt, telling the editor to stop what it is doing. It is a forceful way of making the editor listen to you, or to return it to the quiescent state if you don't know or don't like what is going on. Try hitting the '/' key on your terminal. This key is used when you want to specify a string to be searched for. The cursor should now be positioned at the bottom line of the terminal after a '/' printed as a prompt. You can get the cursor back to the current position by hitting the DEL or RUB key; try this now.* From now on we will simply refer to hitting the DEL or RUB key as "sending an interrupt."**

The editor often echoes your commands on the last line of the terminal. If the cursor is on the first position of this last line, then the editor is performing a computation, such as computing a new position in the file after a search or running a command to reformat part of the buffer. When this is happening you can stop the editor by sending an interrupt.

1.7. Getting out of the editor

After you have worked with this introduction for a while, and you wish to do something else, you can give the command ZZ to the editor. This will write the contents of the editor's buffer back into the file you are editing, if you made any changes, and then quit from the editor. You can also end an editor session by giving the command :q!CR;† this is a dangerous but occasionally essential command which ends the editor session and discards all your changes. You need to know about this command in case you change the editor's copy of a file you wish only to look at. Be very careful not to give this command when you really want to save the changes you have made.

2. Moving around in the file

2.1. Scrolling and paging

The editor has a number of commands for moving around in the file. The most useful of these is generated by hitting the control and D keys at the same time, a control-D or "D". We will use this two character notation for referring to these control keys from now on. You may have a key labelled "" on your terminal. This key will be represented as '↑' in this document; "" is exclusively used as part of the "x' notation for control characters.‡

As you know now if you tried hitting ^D, this command scrolls down in the file. The D thus stands for down. Many editor commands are mnemonic and this makes them much easier to remember. For instance the command to scroll up is ^U. Many dumb terminals can't scroll up at all, in which case hitting ^U clears the screen and refreshes it with a line which is farther back in the file at the top.

If you want to see more of the file below where you are, you can hit ^E to expose one more line at the bottom of the screen, leaving the cursor where it is. The command ^Y (which is hopelessly non-mnemonic, but next to ^U on the keyboard) exposes one more line at the top of the screen.

There are other ways to move around in the file; the keys ^F and ^B move forward and backward a page, keeping a couple of lines of continuity between screens so that it is possible to read through a file using these rather than ^D and ^U if you wish.

Notice the difference between scrolling and paging. If you are trying to read the text in a file, hitting ^F to move forward a page will leave you only a little context to look back at. Scrolling on the other hand leaves more context, and happens more smoothly. You can continue to read the text as scrolling is taking place.

* Backspacing over the '/' will also cancel the search.
** On some systems, this interruptibility comes at a price: you cannot type ahead when the editor is computing with the cursor on the bottom line.
† All commands which read from the last display line can also be terminated with a ESC as well as an CR.
‡ If you don't have a "" key on your terminal then there is probably a key labelled '↑'; in any case these characters are one and the same.

2.2. Searching, goto, and previous context

Another way to position yourself in the file is by giving the editor a string to search for. Type the character / followed by a string of characters terminated by CR. The editor will position the cursor at the next occurrence of this string. Try hitting **n** to then go to the next occurrence of this string. The character ? will search backwards from where you are, and is otherwise like /.†

If the search string you give the editor is not present in the file the editor will print a diagnostic on the last line of the screen, and the cursor will be returned to its initial position.

If you wish the search to match only at the beginning of a line, begin the search string with an ↑. To match only at the end of a line, end the search string with a $. Thus /↑**search**CR will search for the word 'search' at the beginning of a line, and /**last$**CR searches for the word 'last' at the end of a line.*

The command **G**, when preceded by a number will position the cursor at that line in the file. Thus **1G** will move the cursor to the first line of the file. If you give **G** no count, then it moves to the end of the file.

If you are near the end of the file, and the last line is not at the bottom of the screen, the editor will place only the character '~' on each remaining line. This indicates that the last line in the file is on the screen; that is, the '~' lines are past the end of the file.

You can find out the state of the file you are editing by typing a ^**G**. The editor will show you the name of the file you are editing, the number of the current line, the number of lines in the buffer, and the percentage of the way through the buffer which you are. Try doing this now, and remember the number of the line you are on. Give a **G** command to get to the end and then another **G** command to get back where you were.

You can also get back to a previous position by using the command `` (two back quotes). This is often more convenient than **G** because it requires no advance preparation. Try giving a **G** or a search with / or ? and then a `` to get back to where you were. If you accidentally hit **n** or any command which moves you far away from a context of interest, you can quickly get back by hitting ``.

2.3. Moving around on the screen

Now try just moving the cursor around on the screen. If your terminal has arrow keys (4 or 5 keys with arrows going in each direction) try them and convince yourself that they work. If you don't have working arrow keys, you can always use **h**, **j**, **k**, and **l**. Experienced users of *vi* prefer these keys to arrow keys, because they are usually right underneath their fingers.

Hit the + key. Each time you do, notice that the cursor advances to the next line in the file, at the first non-white position on the line. The – key is like + but goes the other way.

These are very common keys for moving up and down lines in the file. Notice that if you go off the bottom or top with these keys then the screen will scroll down (and up if possible) to bring a line at a time into view. The RETURN key has the same effect as the + key.

Vi also has commands to take you to the top, middle and bottom of the screen. **H** will take you to the top (home) line on the screen. Try preceding it with a number as in **3H**. This will take you to the third line on the screen. Many *vi* commands take preceding numbers and do interesting things with them. Try **M**, which takes you to the middle line on the screen, and **L**, which takes you to the last line on the screen. **L** also takes counts, thus **5L** will take you to the fifth line from the bottom.

---

† These searches will normally wrap around the end of the file, and thus find the string even if it is not on a line in the direction you search provided it is anywhere else in the file. You can disable this wraparound in scans by giving the command **:se nowrapscan**CR, or more briefly **:se nows**CR.

*Actually, the string you give to search for here can be a *regular expression* in the sense of the editors *ex*(1) and *ed*(1). If you don't wish to learn about this yet, you can disable this more general facility by doing **:se nomagic**CR; by putting this command in EXINIT in your environment, you can have this always be in effect (more about *EXINIT* later.)

2.4. Moving within a line

Now try picking a word on some line on the screen, not the first word on the line. move the cursor using RETURN and – to be on the line where the word is. Try hitting the **w** key. This will advance the cursor to the next word on the line. Try hitting the **b** key to back up words in the line. Also try the **e** key which advances you to the end of the current word rather than to the beginning of the next word. Also try SPACE (the space bar) which moves right one character and the BS (backspace or ^H) key which moves left one character. The key **h** works as ^H does and is useful if you don't have a BS key. (Also, as noted just above, **l** will move to the right.)

If the line had punctuation in it you may have noticed that that the **w** and **b** keys stopped at each group of punctuation. You can also go back and forwards words without stopping at punctuation by using **W** and **B** rather than the lower case equivalents. Think of these as bigger words. Try these on a few lines with punctuation to see how they differ from the lower case **w** and **b**.

The word keys wrap around the end of line, rather than stopping at the end. Try moving to a word on a line below where you are by repeatedly hitting **w**.

2.5. Summary

SPACE	advance the cursor one position
^B	backwards to previous page
^D	scrolls down in the file
^E	exposes another line at the bottom
^F	forward to next page
^G	tell what is going on
^H	backspace the cursor
^N	next line, same column
^P	previous line, same column
^U	scrolls up in the file
^Y	exposes another line at the top
+	next line, at the beginning
–	previous line, at the beginning
/	scan for a following string forwards
?	scan backwards
B	back a word, ignoring punctuation
G	go to specified line, last default
H	home screen line
M	middle screen line
L	last screen line
W	forward a word, ignoring punctuation
b	back a word
e	end of current word
n	scan for next instance of / or ? pattern
w	word after this word

2.6. View

If you want to use the editor to look at a file, rather than to make changes, invoke it as *view* instead of *vi*. This will set the *readonly* option which will prevent you from accidently overwriting the file.

3. Making simple changes

3.1. Inserting

One of the most useful commands is the **i** (insert) command. After you type **i**, everything you type until you hit ESC is inserted into the file. Try this now; position yourself to some word in the file and try inserting text before this word. If you are on an dumb terminal it will seem, for a minute, that some of the characters in your line have been overwritten, but they will reappear when you hit ESC.

Now try finding a word which can, but does not, end in an 's'. Position yourself at this word and type **e** (move to end of word), then **a** for append and then 'sESC' to terminate the textual insert. This sequence of commands can be used to easily pluralize a word.

Try inserting and appending a few times to make sure you understand how this works; **i** placing text to the left of the cursor, **a** to the right.

It is often the case that you want to add new lines to the file you are editing, before or after some specific line in the file. Find a line where this makes sense and then give the command **o** to create a new line after the line you are on, or the command **O** to create a new line before the line you are on. After you create a new line in this way, text you type up to an ESC is inserted on the new line.

Many related editor commands are invoked by the same letter key and differ only in that one is given by a lower case key and the other is given by an upper case key. In these cases, the upper case key often differs from the lower case key in its sense of direction, with the upper case key working backward and/or up, while the lower case key moves forward and/or down.

Whenever you are typing in text, you can give many lines of input or just a few characters. To type in more than one line of text, hit a RETURN at the middle of your input. A new line will be created for text, and you can continue to type. If you are on a slow and dumb terminal the editor may choose to wait to redraw the tail of the screen, and will let you type over the existing screen lines. This avoids the lengthy delay which would occur if the editor attempted to keep the tail of the screen always up to date. The tail of the screen will be fixed up, and the missing lines will reappear, when you hit ESC.

While you are inserting new text, you can use the characters you normally use at the system command level (usually ^H or #) to backspace over the last character which you typed, and the character which you use to kill input lines (usually @, ^X, or ^U) to erase the input you have typed on the current line.† The character ^W will erase a whole word and leave you after the space after the previous word; it is useful for quickly backing up in an insert.

Notice that when you backspace during an insertion the characters you backspace over are not erased; the cursor moves backwards, and the characters remain on the display. This is often useful if you are planning to type in something similar. In any case the characters disappear when when you hit ESC; if you want to get rid of them immediately, hit an ESC and then **a** again.

Notice also that you can't erase characters which you didn't insert, and that you can't backspace around the end of a line. If you need to back up to the previous line to make a correction, just hit ESC and move the cursor back to the previous line. After making the correction you can return to where you were and use the insert or append command again.

3.2. Making small corrections

You can make small corrections in existing text quite easily. Find a single character which is wrong or just pick any character. Use the arrow keys to find the character, or get near the character with the word motion keys and then either backspace (hit the BS key or ^H or even just **h**) or SPACE (using the space bar) until the cursor is on the character which is wrong. If the character is not needed then hit the **x** key; this deletes the character from the file. It is analogous to the way you **x** out characters when you make mistakes on a typewriter (except it's not as messy).

† In fact, the character ^H (backspace) always works to erase the last input character here, regardless of what your erase character is.

If the character is incorrect, you can replace it with the correct character by giving the command **r***c*, where *c* is replaced by the correct character. Finally if the character which is incorrect should be replaced by more than one character, give the command **s** which substitutes a string of characters, ending with ESC, for it. If there are a small number of characters which are wrong you can precede **s** with a count of the number of characters to be replaced. Counts are also useful with **x** to specify the number of characters to be deleted.

3.3. More corrections: operators

You already know almost enough to make changes at a higher level. All you need to know now is that the **d** key acts as a delete operator. Try the command **dw** to delete a word. Try hitting **.** a few times. Notice that this repeats the effect of the **dw**. The command **.** repeats the last command which made a change. You can remember it by analogy with an ellipsis '...'.

Now try **db**. This deletes a word backwards, namely the preceding word. Try **d**SPACE. This deletes a single character, and is equivalent to the **x** command.

Another very useful operator is **c** or change. The command **cw** thus changes the text of a single word. You follow it by the replacement text ending with an ESC. Find a word which you can change to another, and try this now. Notice that the end of the text to be changed was marked with the character '$' so that you can see this as you are typing in the new material.

3.4. Operating on lines

It is often the case that you want to operate on lines. Find a line which you want to delete, and type **dd**, the **d** operator twice. This will delete the line. If you are on a dumb terminal, the editor may just erase the line on the screen, replacing it with a line with only an @ on it. This line does not correspond to any line in your file, but only acts as a place holder. It helps to avoid a lengthy redraw of the rest of the screen which would be necessary to close up the hole created by the deletion on a terminal without a delete line capability.

Try repeating the **c** operator twice; this will change a whole line, erasing its previous contents and replacing them with text you type up to an ESC.†

You can delete or change more than one line by preceding the **dd** or **cc** with a count, i.e. **5dd** deletes 5 lines. You can also give a command like **dL** to delete all the lines up to and including the last line on the screen, or **d3L** to delete through the third from the bottom line. Try some commands like this now.* Notice that the editor lets you know when you change a large number of lines so that you can see the extent of the change. The editor will also always tell you when a change you make affects text which you cannot see.

3.5. Undoing

Now suppose that the last change which you made was incorrect; you could use the insert, delete and append commands to put the correct material back. However, since it is often the case that we regret a change or make a change incorrectly, the editor provides a **u** (undo) command to reverse the last change which you made. Try this a few times, and give it twice in a row to notice that an **u** also undoes a **u**.

The undo command lets you reverse only a single change. After you make a number of changes to a line, you may decide that you would rather have the original state of the line back. The **U** command restores the current line to the state before you started changing it.

You can recover text which you delete, even if undo will not bring it back; see the section on recovering lost text below.

† The command **S** is a convenient synonym for for **cc**, by analogy with **s**. Think of **S** as a substitute on lines, while **s** is a substitute on characters.

* One subtle point here involves using the **/** search after a **d**. This will normally delete characters from the current position to the point of the match. If what is desired is to delete whole lines including the two points, give the pattern as **/pat/+0**, a line address.

3.6. Summary

SPACE	advance the cursor one position
^H	backspace the cursor
^W	erase a word during an insert
erase	your erase (usually ^H or #), erases a character during an insert
kill	your kill (usually @, ^X, or ^U), kills the insert on this line
.	repeats the changing command
O	opens and inputs new lines, above the current
U	undoes the changes you made to the current line
a	appends text after the cursor
c	changes the object you specify to the following text
d	deletes the object you specify
i	inserts text before the cursor
o	opens and inputs new lines, below the current
u	undoes the last change

4. Moving about; rearranging and duplicating text

4.1. Low level character motions

Now move the cursor to a line where there is a punctuation or a bracketing character such as a parenthesis or a comma or period. Try the command **f***x* where *x* is this character. This command finds the next *x* character to the right of the cursor in the current line. Try then hitting a **;**, which finds the next instance of the same character. By using the **f** command and then a sequence of **;**'s you can often get to a particular place in a line much faster than with a sequence of word motions or SPACEs. There is also a **F** command, which is like **f**, but searches backward. The **;** command repeats **F** also.

When you are operating on the text in a line it is often desirable to deal with the characters up to, but not including, the first instance of a character. Try **df***x* for some *x* now and notice that the *x* character is deleted. Undo this with **u** and then try **dt***x*; the **t** here stands for to, i.e. delete up to the next *x*, but not the *x*. The command **T** is the reverse of **t**.

When working with the text of a single line, an ↑ moves the cursor to the first non-white position on the line, and a **$** moves it to the end of the line. Thus **$a** will append new text at the end of the current line.

Your file may have tab (^I) characters in it. These characters are represented as a number of spaces expanding to a tab stop, where tab stops are every 8 positions.* When the cursor is at a tab, it sits on the last of the several spaces which represent that tab. Try moving the cursor back and forth over tabs so you understand how this works.

On rare occasions, your file may have nonprinting characters in it. These characters are displayed in the same way they are represented in this document, that is with a two character code, the first character of which is '^'. On the screen non-printing characters resemble a '^' character adjacent to another, but spacing or backspacing over the character will reveal that the two characters are, like the spaces representing a tab character, a single character.

The editor sometimes discards control characters, depending on the character and the setting of the *beautify* option, if you attempt to insert them in your file. You can get a control character in the file by beginning an insert and then typing a ^V before the control character. The ^V quotes the following character, causing it to be inserted directly into the file.

* This is settable by a command of the form :se ts=*x*CR, where *x* is 4 to set tabstops every four columns. This has effect on the screen representation within the editor.

4.2. Higher level text objects

In working with a document it is often advantageous to work in terms of sentences, paragraphs, and sections. The operations (and) move to the beginning of the previous and next sentences respectively. Thus the command **d)** will delete the rest of the current sentence; likewise **d(** will delete the previous sentence if you are at the beginning of the current sentence, or the current sentence up to where you are if you are not at the beginning of the current sentence.

A sentence is defined to end at a '.', '!' or '?' which is followed by either the end of a line, or by two spaces. Any number of closing ')', ']', '"' and ''' characters may appear after the '.', '!' or '?' before the spaces or end of line.

The operations { and } move over paragraphs and the operations **[[** and **]]** move over sections.†

A paragraph begins after each empty line, and also at each of a set of paragraph macros, specified by the pairs of characters in the definition of the string valued option *paragraphs*. The default setting for this option defines the paragraph macros of the *-ms* and *-mm* macro packages, i.e. the '.IP', '.LP', '.PP' and '.QP', '.P' and '.LI' macros.‡ Each paragraph boundary is also a sentence boundary. The sentence and paragraph commands can be given counts to operate over groups of sentences and paragraphs.

Sections in the editor begin after each macro in the *sections* option, normally '.NH', '.SH', '.H' and '.HU', and each line with a formfeed ^L in the first column. Section boundaries are always line and paragraph boundaries also.

Try experimenting with the sentence and paragraph commands until you are sure how they work. If you have a large document, try looking through it using the section commands. The section commands interpret a preceding count as a different window size in which to redraw the screen at the new location, and this window size is the base size for newly drawn windows until another size is specified. This is very useful if you are on a slow terminal and are looking for a particular section. You can give the first section command a small count to then see each successive section heading in a small window.

4.3. Rearranging and duplicating text

The editor has a single unnamed buffer where the last deleted or changed away text is saved, and a set of named buffers **a–z** which you can use to save copies of text and to move text around in your file and between files.

The operator **y** yanks a copy of the object which follows into the unnamed buffer. If preceded by a buffer name, "*x*y, where *x* here is replaced by a letter **a–z**, it places the text in the named buffer. The text can then be put back in the file with the commands **p** and **P**; **p** puts the text after or below the cursor, while **P** puts the text before or above the cursor.

If the text which you yank forms a part of a line, or is an object such as a sentence which partially spans more than one line, then when you put the text back, it will be placed after the cursor (or before if you use **P**). If the yanked text forms whole lines, they will be put back as whole lines, without changing the current line. In this case, the put acts much like a **o** or **O** command.

Try the command **YP**. This makes a copy of the current line and leaves you on this copy, which is placed before the current line. The command **Y** is a convenient abbreviation for **yy**. The command **Yp** will also make a copy of the current line, and place it after the current line. You can give **Y** a count of lines to yank, and thus duplicate several lines; try **3YP**.

To move text within the buffer, you need to delete it in one place, and put it back in another. You can precede a delete operation by the name of a buffer in which the text is to be stored as in

† The **[[** and **]]** operations require the operation character to be doubled because they can move the cursor far from where it currently is. While it is easy to get back with the command ``, these commands would still be frustrating if they were easy to hit accidentally.

‡ You can easily change or extend this set of macros by assigning a different string to the *paragraphs* option in your EXINIT. See section 6.2 for details. The '.bp' directive is also considered to start a paragraph.

"**a5dd** deleting 5 lines into the named buffer *a*. You can then move the cursor to the eventual resting place of the these lines and do a "**ap** or "**aP** to put them back. In fact, you can switch and edit another file before you put the lines back, by giving a command of the form **:e** *name*CR where *name* is the name of the other file you want to edit. You will have to write back the contents of the current editor buffer (or discard them) if you have made changes before the editor will let you switch to the other file. An ordinary delete command saves the text in the unnamed buffer, so that an ordinary put can move it elsewhere. However, the unnamed buffer is lost when you change files, so to move text from one file to another you should use an unnamed buffer.

4.4. Summary.

↑	first non-white on line
$	end of line
)	forward sentence
}	forward paragraph
]]	forward section
(	backward sentence
{	backward paragraph
[[	backward section
f*x*	find *x* forward in line
p	put text back, after cursor or below current line
y	yank operator, for copies and moves
t*x*	up to *x* forward, for operators
F*x*	f backward in line
P	put text back, before cursor or above current line
T*x*	t backward in line

5. High level commands

5.1. Writing, quitting, editing new files

So far we have seen how to enter *vi* and to write out our file using either **ZZ** or **:w**CR. The first exits from the editor, (writing if changes were made), the second writes and stays in the editor.

If you have changed the editor's copy of the file but do not wish to save your changes, either because you messed up the file or decided that the changes are not an improvement to the file, then you can give the command **:q!**CR to quit from the editor without writing the changes. You can also reedit the same file (starting over) by giving the command **:e!**CR. These commands should be used only rarely, and with caution, as it is not possible to recover the changes you have made after you discard them in this manner.

You can edit a different file without leaving the editor by giving the command **:e** *name*CR. If you have not written out your file before you try to do this, then the editor will tell you this, and delay editing the other file. You can then give the command **:w**CR to save your work and then the **:e** *name*CR command again, or carefully give the command **:e!** *name*CR, which edits the other file discarding the changes you have made to the current file. To have the editor automatically save changes, include *set autowrite* in your EXINIT, and use **:n** instead of **:e**.

5.2. Escaping to a shell

You can get to a shell to execute a single command by giving a *vi* command of the form **:!***cmd*CR. The system will run the single command *cmd* and when the command finishes, the editor will ask you to hit a RETURN to continue. When you have finished looking at the output on the screen, you should hit RETURN and the editor will clear the screen and redraw it. You can then continue editing. You can also give another : command when it asks you for a RETURN; in this case the screen will not be redrawn.

If you wish to execute more than one command in the shell, then you can give the command **:sh**CR. This will give you a new shell, and when you finish with the shell, ending it by typing a **^D**, the editor will clear the screen and continue.

On systems which support it, **^Z** will suspend the editor and return to the (top level) shell. When the editor is resumed, the screen will be redrawn.

5.3. Marking and returning

The command **``** returned to the previous place after a motion of the cursor by a command such as **/**, **?** or **G**. You can also mark lines in the file with single letter tags and return to these marks later by naming the tags. Try marking the current line with the command **m***x*, where you should pick some letter for *x*, say 'a'. Then move the cursor to a different line (any way you like) and hit **`a**. The cursor will return to the place which you marked. Marks last only until you edit another file.

When using operators such as **d** and referring to marked lines, it is often desirable to delete whole lines rather than deleting to the exact position in the line marked by **m**. In this case you can use the form *'x* rather than *`x*. Used without an operator, *'x* will move to the first non-white character of the marked line; similarly **''** moves to the first non-white character of the line containing the previous context mark **``**.

5.4. Adjusting the screen

If the screen image is messed up because of a transmission error to your terminal, or because some program other than the editor wrote output to your terminal, you can hit a **^L**, the ASCII form-feed character, to cause the screen to be refreshed.

On a dumb terminal, if there are @ lines in the middle of the screen as a result of line deletion, you may get rid of these lines by typing **^R** to cause the editor to retype the screen, closing up these holes.

Finally, if you wish to place a certain line on the screen at the top middle or bottom of the screen, you can position the cursor to that line, and then give a **z** command. You should follow the **z** command with a RETURN if you want the line to appear at the top of the window, a **.** if you want it at the center, or a **-** if you want it at the bottom.

6. Special topics

6.1. Editing on slow terminals

When you are on a slow terminal, it is important to limit the amount of output which is generated to your screen so that you will not suffer long delays, waiting for the screen to be refreshed. We have already pointed out how the editor optimizes the updating of the screen during insertions on dumb terminals to limit the delays, and how the editor erases lines to @ when they are deleted on dumb terminals.

The use of the slow terminal insertion mode is controlled by the *slowopen* option. You can force the editor to use this mode even on faster terminals by giving the command **:se slow**CR. If your system is sluggish this helps lessen the amount of output coming to your terminal. You can disable this option by **:se noslow**CR.

The editor can simulate an intelligent terminal on a dumb one. Try giving the command **:se redraw**CR. This simulation generates a great deal of output and is generally tolerable only on lightly loaded systems and fast terminals. You can disable this by giving the command **:se noredraw**CR.

The editor also makes editing more pleasant at low speed by starting editing in a small window, and letting the window expand as you edit. This works particularly well on intelligent terminals. The editor can expand the window easily when you insert in the middle of the screen on these terminals. If possible, try the editor on an intelligent terminal to see how this works.

You can control the size of the window which is redrawn each time the screen is cleared by giving window sizes as argument to the commands which cause large screen motions:

: / ? [[ ]] ` ´

Thus if you are searching for a particular instance of a common string in a file you can precede the first search command by a small number, say 3, and the editor will draw three line windows around each instance of the string which it locates.

You can easily expand or contract the window, placing the current line as you choose, by giving a number on a z command, after the z and before the following RETURN, . or –. Thus the command **z5.** redraws the screen with the current line in the center of a five line window.†

If the editor is redrawing or otherwise updating large portions of the display, you can interrupt this updating by hitting a DEL or RUB as usual. If you do this you may partially confuse the editor about what is displayed on the screen. You can still edit the text on the screen if you wish; clear up the confusion by hitting a ^L; or move or search again, ignoring the current state of the display.

See section 7.8 on *open* mode for another way to use the *vi* command set on slow terminals.

6.2. Options, set, and editor startup files

The editor has a set of options, some of which have been mentioned above. The most useful options are given in the following table.

Name	Default	Description
autoindent	noai	Supply indentation automatically
autowrite	noaw	Automatic write before **:n**, **:ta**, ^↑, **!**
ignorecase	noic	Ignore case in searching
lisp	nolisp	({) } commands deal with S-expressions
list	nolist	Tabs print as ^I; end of lines marked with $
magic	nomagic	The characters . [and * are special in scans
number	nonu	Lines are displayed prefixed with line numbers
paragraphs	para=IPLPPPQPbpP LI	Macro names which start paragraphs
redraw	nore	Simulate a smart terminal on a dumb one
sections	sect=NHSHH HU	Macro names which start new sections
shiftwidth	sw=8	Shift distance for <, > and input ^D and ^T
showmatch	nosm	Show matching (or { as) or } is typed
slowopen	slow	Postpone display updates during inserts
term	dumb	The kind of terminal you are using.

The options are of three kinds: numeric options, string options, and toggle options. You can set numeric and string options by a statement of the form

set *opt*=*val*

and toggle options can be set or unset by statements of one of the forms

set *opt*
set no*opt*

These statements can be placed in your EXINIT in your environment, or given while you are running *vi* by preceding them with a : and following them with a CR.

You can get a list of all options which you have changed by the command **:set**CR, or the value of a single option by the command **:set** *opt*?CR. A list of all possible options and their values is generated by **:set all**CR. Set can be abbreviated **se**. Multiple options can be placed on one line, e.g. **:se ai aw nu**CR.

† Note that the command **5z.** has an entirely different effect, placing line 5 in the center of a new window.

Options set by the **set** command only last while you stay in the editor. It is common to want to have certain options set whenever you use the editor. This can be accomplished by creating a list of *ex* commands† which are to be run every time you start up *ex*, *edit*, or *vi*. A typical list includes a **set** command, and possibly a few **map** commands. Since it is advisable to get these commands on one line, they can be separated with the | character, for example:

set ai aw terse|**map** @ dd|**map** # x

which sets the options *autoindent*, *autowrite*, *terse*, (the **set** command), makes @ delete a line, (the first **map**), and makes # delete a character, (the second **map**). (See section 6.9 for a description of the **map** command) This string should be placed in the variable EXINIT in your environment. If you use the shell *csh*, put this line in the file *.login* in your home directory:

setenv EXINIT '**set** ai aw terse|**map** @ dd|**map** # x'

If you use the standard shell *sh*, put these lines in the file *.profile* in your home directory:

EXINIT='**set** ai aw terse|**map** @ dd|**map** # x'
export EXINIT

Of course, the particulars of the line would depend on which options you wanted to set.

6.3. Recovering lost lines

You might have a serious problem if you delete a number of lines and then regret that they were deleted. Despair not, the editor saves the last 9 deleted blocks of text in a set of numbered registers 1–9. You can get the *n*'th previous deleted text back in your file by the command "*n***p**. The " here says that a buffer name is to follow, *n* is the number of the buffer you wish to try (use the number 1 for now), and **p** is the put command, which puts text in the buffer after the cursor. If this doesn't bring back the text you wanted, hit **u** to undo this and then **.** (period) to repeat the put command. In general the **.** command will repeat the last change you made. As a special case, when the last command refers to a numbered text buffer, the **.** command increments the number of the buffer before repeating the command. Thus a sequence of the form

"**1pu.u.**

will, if repeated long enough, show you all the deleted text which has been saved for you. You can omit the **u** commands here to gather up all this text in the buffer, or stop after any **.** command to keep just the then recovered text. The command **P** can also be used rather than **p** to put the recovered text before rather than after the cursor.

6.4. Recovering lost files

If the system crashes, you can recover the work you were doing to within a few changes. You will normally receive mail when you next login giving you the name of the file which has been saved for you. You should then change to the directory where you were when the system crashed and give a command of the form:

% **vi –r** *name*

replacing *name* with the name of the file which you were editing. This will recover your work to a point near where you left off.†

You can get a listing of the files which are saved for you by giving the command:

† All commands which start with **:** are *ex* commands.

† In rare cases, some of the lines of the file may be lost. The editor will give you the numbers of these lines and the text of the lines will be replaced by the string 'LOST'. These lines will almost always be among the last few which you changed. You can either choose to discard the changes which you made (if they are easy to remake) or to replace the few lost lines by hand.

% vi –r

If there is more than one instance of a particular file saved, the editor gives you the newest instance each time you recover it. You can thus get an older saved copy back by first recovering the newer copies.

For this feature to work, *vi* must be correctly installed by a super user on your system, and the *mail* program must exist to receive mail. The invocation "*vi -r*" will not always list all saved files, but they can be recovered even if they are not listed.

6.5. Continuous text input

When you are typing in large amounts of text it is convenient to have lines broken near the right margin automatically. You can cause this to happen by giving the command **:se wm=10**CR. This causes all lines to be broken at a space at least 10 columns from the right hand edge of the screen.

If the editor breaks an input line and you wish to put it back together you can tell it to join the lines with **J**. You can give **J** a count of the number of lines to be joined as in **3J** to join 3 lines. The editor supplies white space, if appropriate, at the juncture of the joined lines, and leaves the cursor at this white space. You can kill the white space with **x** if you don't want it.

6.6. Features for editing programs

The editor has a number of commands for editing programs. The thing that most distinguishes editing of programs from editing of text is the desirability of maintaining an indented structure to the body of the program. The editor has a *autoindent* facility for helping you generate correctly indented programs.

To enable this facility you can give the command **:se ai**CR. Now try opening a new line with **o** and type some characters on the line after a few tabs. If you now start another line, notice that the editor supplies white space at the beginning of the line to line it up with the previous line. You cannot backspace over this indentation, but you can use **^D** key to backtab over the supplied indentation.

Each time you type **^D** you back up one position, normally to an 8 column boundary. This amount is settable; the editor has an option called *shiftwidth* which you can set to change this value. Try giving the command **:se sw=4**CR and then experimenting with autoindent again.

For shifting lines in the program left and right, there are operators < and >. These shift the lines you specify right or left by one *shiftwidth*. Try << and >> which shift one line left or right, and **<L** and **>L** shifting the rest of the display left and right.

If you have a complicated expression and wish to see how the parentheses match, put the cursor at a left or right parenthesis and hit **%**. This will show you the matching parenthesis. This works also for braces { and }, and brackets [and].

If you are editing C programs, you can use the **[[** and **]]** keys to advance or retreat to a line starting with a {, i.e. a function declaration at a time. When **]]** is used with an operator it stops after a line which starts with }; this is sometimes useful with **y]]**.

6.7. Filtering portions of the buffer

You can run system commands over portions of the buffer using the operator **!**. You can use this to sort lines in the buffer, or to reformat portions of the buffer with a pretty-printer. Try typing in a list of random words, one per line and ending them with a blank line. Back up to the beginning of the list, and then give the command **!}sort**CR. This says to sort the next paragraph of material, and the blank line ends a paragraph.

6.8. Commands for editing LISP

If you are editing a LISP program you should set the option *lisp* by doing **:se lisp**CR. This changes the **(** and **)** commands to move backward and forward over s-expressions. The { and } commands are like **(** and **)** but don't stop at atoms. These can be used to skip to the next list, or through

a comment quickly.

The *autoindent* option works differently for LISP, supplying indent to align at the first argument to the last open list. If there is no such argument then the indent is two spaces more than the last level.

There is another option which is useful for typing in LISP, the *showmatch* option. Try setting it with :se smCR and then try typing a '(' some words and then a ')'. Notice that the cursor shows the position of the '(' which matches the ')' briefly. This happens only if the matching '(' is on the screen, and the cursor stays there for at most one second.

The editor also has an operator to realign existing lines as though they had been typed in with *lisp* and *autoindent* set. This is the = operator. Try the command =% at the beginning of a function. This will realign all the lines of the function declaration.

When you are editing LISP,, the [[and]] advance and retreat to lines beginning with a (, and are useful for dealing with entire function definitions.

6.9. Macros

Vi has a parameterless macro facility, which lets you set it up so that when you hit a single keystroke, the editor will act as though you had hit some longer sequence of keys. You can set this up if you find yourself typing the same sequence of commands repeatedly.

Briefly, there are two flavors of macros:

a) Ones where you put the macro body in a buffer register, say *x*. You can then type @x to invoke the macro. The @ may be followed by another @ to repeat the last macro.

b) You can use the *map* command from *vi* (typically in your *EXINIT*) with a command of the form:

:map *lhs rhs*CR

mapping *lhs* into *rhs*. There are restrictions: *lhs* should be one keystroke (either 1 character or one function key) since it must be entered within one second (unless *notimeout* is set, in which case you can type it as slowly as you wish, and *vi* will wait for you to finish it before it echoes anything). The *lhs* can be no longer than 10 characters, the *rhs* no longer than 100. To get a space, tab or newline into *lhs* or *rhs* you should escape them with a ^V. (It may be necessary to double the ^V if the map command is given inside *vi*, rather than in *ex.)* Spaces and tabs inside the *rhs* need not be escaped.

Thus to make the q key write and exit the editor, you can give the command

:map q :wq^V^VCR CR

which means that whenever you type q, it will be as though you had typed the four characters :wqCR. A ^V's is needed because without it the CR would end the : command, rather than becoming part of the *map* definition. There are two ^V's because from within *vi*, two ^V's must be typed to get one. The first CR is part of the *rhs*, the second terminates the : command.

Macros can be deleted with

unmap lhs

If the *lhs* of a macro is "#0" through "#9", this maps the particular function key instead of the 2 character "#" sequence. So that terminals without function keys can access such definitions, the form "#x" will mean function key *x* on all terminals (and need not be typed within one second.) The character "#" can be changed by using a macro in the usual way:

:map ^V^V^I #

to use tab, for example. (This won't affect the *map* command, which still uses #, but just the invocation from visual mode.

The undo command reverses an entire macro call as a unit, if it made any changes.

Placing a '!' after the word **map** causes the mapping to apply to input mode, rather than command mode. Thus, to arrange for ^T to be the same as 4 spaces in input mode, you can type:

:map ^T ^V␣␣␣␣

where ␣ is a blank. The ^V is necessary to prevent the blanks from being taken as white space between the *lhs* and *rhs*.

7. Word Abbreviations

A feature similar to macros in input mode is word abbreviation. This allows you to type a short word and have it expanded into a longer word or words. The commands are **:abbreviate** and **:unabbreviate (:ab** and **:una)** and have the same syntax as **:map**. For example:

:ab eecs Electrical Engineering and Computer Sciences

causes the word 'eecs' to always be changed into the phrase 'Electrical Engineering and Computer Sciences'. Word abbreviation is different from macros in that only whole words are affected. If 'eecs' were typed as part of a larger word, it would be left alone. Also, the partial word is echoed as it is typed. There is no need for an abbreviation to be a single keystroke, as it should be with a macro.

7.1. Abbreviations

The editor has a number of short commands which abbreviate longer commands which we have introduced here. You can find these commands easily on the quick reference card. They often save a bit of typing and you can learn them as convenient.

8. Nitty-gritty details

8.1. Line representation in the display

The editor folds long logical lines onto many physical lines in the display. Commands which advance lines advance logical lines and will skip over all the segments of a line in one motion. The command | moves the cursor to a specific column, and may be useful for getting near the middle of a long line to split it in half. Try **80|** on a line which is more than 80 columns long.†

The editor only puts full lines on the display; if there is not enough room on the display to fit a logical line, the editor leaves the physical line empty, placing only an @ on the line as a place holder. When you delete lines on a dumb terminal, the editor will often just clear the lines to @ to save time (rather than rewriting the rest of the screen.) You can always maximize the information on the screen by giving the **^R** command.

If you wish, you can have the editor place line numbers before each line on the display. Give the command **:se nu**CR to enable this, and the command **:se nonu**CR to turn it off. You can have tabs represented as ^I and the ends of lines indicated with '$' by giving the command **:se list**CR; **:se nolist**CR turns this off.

Finally, lines consisting of only the character '~' are displayed when the last line in the file is in the middle of the screen. These represent physical lines which are past the logical end of file.

8.2. Counts

Most *vi* commands will use a preceding count to affect their behavior in some way. The following table gives the common ways in which the counts are used:

† You can make long lines very easily by using **J** to join together short lines.

new window size	**: / ? [[ ]] ` '**
scroll amount	**^D ^U**
line/column number	**z G |**
repeat effect	most of the rest

The editor maintains a notion of the current default window size. On terminals which run at speeds greater than 1200 baud the editor uses the full terminal screen. On terminals which are slower than 1200 baud (most dialup lines are in this group) the editor uses 8 lines as the default window size. At 1200 baud the default is 16 lines.

This size is the size used when the editor clears and refills the screen after a search or other motion moves far from the edge of the current window. The commands which take a new window size as count all often cause the screen to be redrawn. If you anticipate this, but do not need as large a window as you are currently using, you may wish to change the screen size by specifying the new size before these commands. In any case, the number of lines used on the screen will expand if you move off the top with a **-** or similar command or off the bottom with a command such as RETURN or **^D**. The window will revert to the last specified size the next time it is cleared and refilled.†

The scroll commands **^D** and **^U** likewise remember the amount of scroll last specified, using half the basic window size initially. The simple insert commands use a count to specify a repetition of the inserted text. Thus **10a**+----ESC will insert a grid-like string of text. A few commands also use a preceding count as a line or column number.

Except for a few commands which ignore any counts (such as **^R**), the rest of the editor commands use a count to indicate a simple repetition of their effect. Thus **5w** advances five words on the current line, while **5**RETURN advances five lines. A very useful instance of a count as a repetition is a count given to the **.** command, which repeats the last changing command. If you do **dw** and then **3.**, you will delete first one and then three words. You can then delete two more words with **2.**.

8.3. More file manipulation commands

The following table lists the file manipulation commands which you can use when you are in *vi*.

:w	write back changes
:wq	write and quit
:x	write (if necessary) and quit (same as ZZ).
:e *name*	edit file *name*
:e!	reedit, discarding changes
:e + *name*	edit, starting at end
:e +*n*	edit, starting at line *n*
:e #	edit alternate file
:w *name*	write file *name*
:w! *name*	overwrite file *name*
:*x*,*y***w** *name*	write lines *x* through *y* to *name*
:r *name*	read file *name* into buffer
:r !*cmd*	read output of *cmd* into buffer
:n	edit next file in argument list
:n!	edit next file, discarding changes to current
:n *args*	specify new argument list
:ta *tag*	edit file containing tag *tag*, at *tag*

All of these commands are followed by a CR or ESC. The most basic commands are **:w** and **:e**. A normal editing session on a single file will end with a **ZZ** command. If you are editing for a long period

† But not by a **^L** which just redraws the screen as it is.

of time you can give :w commands occasionally after major amounts of editing, and then finish with a ZZ. When you edit more than one file, you can finish with one with a :w and start editing a new file by giving a :e command, or set *autowrite* and use :n <file>.

If you make changes to the editor's copy of a file, but do not wish to write them back, then you must give an ! after the command you would otherwise use; this forces the editor to discard any changes you have made. Use this carefully.

The :e command can be given a + argument to start at the end of the file, or a +*n* argument to start at line *n*. In actuality, *n* may be any editor command not containing a space, usefully a scan like +/*pat* or +?*pat*. In forming new names to the e command, you can use the character % which is replaced by the current file name, or the character # which is replaced by the alternate file name. The alternate file name is generally the last name you typed other than the current file. Thus if you try to do a :e and get a diagnostic that you haven't written the file, you can give a :w command and then a :e # command to redo the previous :e.

You can write part of the buffer to a file by finding out the lines that bound the range to be written using ^G, and giving these numbers after the : and before the w, separated by ,'s. You can also mark these lines with m and then use an address of the form ´*x*,´*y* on the w command here.

You can read another file into the buffer after the current line by using the :r command. You can similarly read in the output from a command, just use !*cmd* instead of a file name.

If you wish to edit a set of files in succession, you can give all the names on the command line, and then edit each one in turn using the command :n. It is also possible to respecify the list of files to be edited by giving the :n command a list of file names, or a pattern to be expanded as you would have given it on the initial *vi* command.

If you are editing large programs, you will find the :ta command very useful. It utilizes a data base of function names and their locations, which can be created by programs such as *ctags,* to quickly find a function whose name you give. If the :ta command will require the editor to switch files, then you must :w or abandon any changes before switching. You can repeat the :ta command without any arguments to look for the same tag again.

8.4. More about searching for strings

When you are searching for strings in the file with / and ?, the editor normally places you at the next or previous occurrence of the string. If you are using an operator such as d, c or y, then you may well wish to affect lines up to the line before the line containing the pattern. You can give a search of the form /*pat*/–*n* to refer to the *n*'th line before the next line containing *pat*, or you can use instead of – to refer to the lines after the one containing *pat*. If you don't give a line offset, then the editor will affect characters up to the match place, rather than whole lines; thus use "+0" to affect to the line which matches.

You can have the editor ignore the case of words in the searches it does by giving the command :se icCR. The command :se noicCR turns this off.

Strings given to searches may actually be regular expressions. If you do not want or need this facility, you should

```
set nomagic
```

in your EXINIT. In this case, only the characters ↑ and $ are special in patterns. The character \ is also then special (as it is most everywhere in the system), and may be used to get at the an extended pattern matching facility. It is also necessary to use a \ before a / in a forward scan or a ? in a backward scan, in any case. The following table gives the extended forms when **magic** is set.

↑	at beginning of pattern, matches beginning of line
$	at end of pattern, matches end of line
.	matches any character
\<	matches the beginning of a word
\>	matches the end of a word
[*str*]	matches any single character in *str*
[↑*str*]	matches any single character not in *str*
[*x*–*y*]	matches any character between *x* and *y*
*	matches any number of the preceding pattern

If you use **nomagic** mode, then the . [and * primitives are given with a preceding \.

8.5. More about input mode

There are a number of characters which you can use to make corrections during input mode. These are summarized in the following table.

^H	deletes the last input character
^W	deletes the last input word, defined as by **b**
erase	your erase character, same as ^H
kill	your kill character, deletes the input on this line
\	escapes a following ^H and your erase and kill
ESC	ends an insertion
DEL	interrupts an insertion, terminating it abnormally
CR	starts a new line
^D	backtabs over *autoindent*
0^D	kills all the *autoindent*
↑^D	same as 0^D, but restores indent next line
^V	quotes the next non-printing character into the file

The most usual way of making corrections to input is by typing ^H to correct a single character, or by typing one or more ^W's to back over incorrect words. If you use # as your erase character in the normal system, it will work like ^H.

Your system kill character, normally @, ^X or ^U, will erase all the input you have given on the current line. In general, you can neither erase input back around a line boundary nor can you erase characters which you did not insert with this insertion command. To make corrections on the previous line after a new line has been started you can hit ESC to end the insertion, move over and make the correction, and then return to where you were to continue. The command A which appends at the end of the current line is often useful for continuing.

If you wish to type in your erase or kill character (say # or @) then you must precede it with a \, just as you would do at the normal system command level. A more general way of typing nonprinting characters into the file is to precede them with a ^V. The ^V echoes as a ↑ character on which the cursor rests. This indicates that the editor expects you to type a control character. In fact you may type any character and it will be inserted into the file at that point.*

If you are using *autoindent* you can backtab over the indent which it supplies by typing a ^D. This backs up to a *shiftwidth* boundary. This only works immediately after the supplied *autoindent*.

* This is not quite true. The implementation of the editor does not allow the NULL (^@) character to appear in files. Also the LF (linefeed or ^J) character is used by the editor to separate lines in the file, so it cannot appear in the middle of a line. You can insert any other character, however, if you wait for the editor to echo the ↑ before you type the character. In fact, the editor will treat a following letter as a request for the corresponding control character. This is the only way to type ^S or ^Q, since the system normally uses them to suspend and resume output and never gives them to the editor to process.

When you are using *autoindent* you may wish to place a label at the left margin of a line. The way to do this easily is to type ↑ and then ^D. The editor will move the cursor to the left margin for one line, and restore the previous indent on the next. You can also type a **0** followed immediately by a ^D if you wish to kill all the indent and not have it come back on the next line.

8.6. Upper case only terminals

If your terminal has only upper case, you can still use *vi* by using the normal system convention for typing on such a terminal. Characters which you normally type are converted to lower case, and you can type upper case letters by preceding them with a \. The characters { ~ } | ` are not available on such terminals, but you can escape them as \(\↑ \) \! \'. These characters are represented on the display in the same way they are typed.‡

8.7. Vi and ex

Vi is actually one mode of editing within the editor *ex*. When you are running *vi* you can escape to the line oriented editor of *ex* by giving the command **Q**. All of the : commands which were introduced above are available in *ex*. Likewise, most *ex* commands can be invoked from *vi* using :. Just give them without the : and follow them with a CR.

In rare instances, an internal error may occur in *vi*. In this case you will get a diagnostic and be left in the command mode of *ex*. You can then save your work and quit if you wish by giving a command **x** after the : which *ex* prompts you with, or you can reenter *vi* by giving *ex* a *vi* command.

There are a number of things which you can do more easily in *ex* than in *vi*. Systematic changes in line oriented material are particularly easy. You can read the advanced editing documents for the editor *ed* to find out a lot more about this style of editing. Experienced users often mix their use of *ex* command mode and *vi* command mode to speed the work they are doing.

8.8. Open mode: vi on hardcopy terminals and "glass tty's" ‡

If you are on a hardcopy terminal or a terminal which does not have a cursor which can move off the bottom line, you can still use the command set of *vi*, but in a different mode. When you give a *vi* command, the editor will tell you that it is using *open* mode. This name comes from the *open* command in *ex*, which is used to get into the same mode.

The only difference between *visual* mode and *open* mode is the way in which the text is displayed.

In *open* mode the editor uses a single line window into the file, and moving backward and forward in the file causes new lines to be displayed, always below the current line. Two commands of *vi* work differently in *open:* **z** and ^**R**. The **z** command does not take parameters, but rather draws a window of context around the current line and then returns you to the current line.

If you are on a hardcopy terminal, the ^**R** command will retype the current line. On such terminals, the editor normally uses two lines to represent the current line. The first line is a copy of the line as you started to edit it, and you work on the line below this line. When you delete characters, the editor types a number of \'s to show you the characters which are deleted. The editor also reprints the current line soon after such changes so that you can see what the line looks like again.

It is sometimes useful to use this mode on very slow terminals which can support *vi* in the full screen mode. You can do this by entering *ex* and using an *open* command.

Acknowledgements

Bruce Englar encouraged the early development of this display editor. Peter Kessler helped bring sanity to version 2's command layout. Bill Joy wrote versions 1 and 2.0 through 2.7, and created the framework that users see in the present editor. Mark Horton added macros and other features and made the editor work on a large number of terminals and Unix systems.

‡ The \ character you give will not echo until you type another key.

Ex Reference Manual
Version 3.7

William Joy

Mark Horton

Computer Science Division
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California, Berkeley
Berkeley, Ca. 94720

ABSTRACT

Ex a line oriented text editor, which supports both command and display oriented editing. This reference manual describes the command oriented part of *ex;* the display editing features of *ex* are described in *An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi.* Other documents about the editor include the introduction *Edit: A tutorial*, the *Ex/edit Command Summary*, and a *Vi Quick Reference* card.

1. Starting ex

Each instance of the editor has a set of options, which can be set to tailor it to your liking. The command *edit* invokes a version of *ex* designed for more casual or beginning users by changing the default settings of some of these options. To simplify the description which follows we assume the default settings of the options.

When invoked, *ex* determines the terminal type from the TERM variable in the environment. It there is a TERMCAP variable in the environment, and the type of the terminal described there matches the TERM variable, then that description is used. Also if the TERMCAP variable contains a pathname (beginning with a /) then the editor will seek the description of the terminal in that file (rather than the default /etc/termcap). If there is a variable EXINIT in the environment, then the editor will execute the commands in that variable, otherwise if there is a file *.exrc* in your HOME directory *ex* reads commands from that file, simulating a *source* command. Option setting commands placed in EXINIT or *.exrc* will be executed before each editor session.

A command to enter *ex* has the following prototype:†

ex [**–**] [**–v**] [**–t** *tag*] [**–r**] [**–l**] [**–w***n*] [**–x**] [**–R**] [**+***command*] name ...

The most common case edits a single file with no options, i.e.:

ex name

The **–** command line option option suppresses all interactive-user feedback and is useful in processing editor scripts in command files. The **–v** option is equivalent to using *vi* rather than *ex*. The **–t** option is equivalent to an initial *tag* command, editing the file containing the *tag* and positioning the editor at its definition. The **–r** option is used in recovering after an

The financial support of an IBM Graduate Fellowship and the National Science Foundation under grants MCS74-07644-A03 and MCS78-07291 is gratefully acknowledged.

† Brackets '[' ']' surround optional parameters here.

editor or system crash, retrieving the last saved version of the named file or, if no file is specified, typing a list of saved files. The -l option sets up for editing LISP, setting the *showmatch* and *lisp* options. The -w option sets the default window size to *n*, and is useful on dialups to start in small windows. The -x option causes *ex* to prompt for a *key*, which is used to encrypt and decrypt the contents of the file, which should already be encrypted using the same key, see *crypt*(1). The -R option sets the *readonly* option at the start. *Name* arguments indicate files to be edited. An argument of the form *+command* indicates that the editor should begin by executing the specified command. If *command* is omitted, then it defaults to "$", positioning the editor at the last line of the first file initially. Other useful commands here are scanning patterns of the form "/pat" or line numbers, e.g. "+100" starting at line 100.

2. File manipulation

2.1. Current file

Ex is normally editing the contents of a single file, whose name is recorded in the *current* file name. *Ex* performs all editing actions in a buffer (actually a temporary file) into which the text of the file is initially read. Changes made to the buffer have no effect on the file being edited unless and until the buffer contents are written out to the file with a *write* command. After the buffer contents are written, the previous contents of the written file are no longer accessible. When a file is edited, its name becomes the current file name, and its contents are read into the buffer.

The current file is almost always considered to be *edited.* This means that the contents of the buffer are logically connected with the current file name, so that writing the current buffer contents onto that file, even if it exists, is a reasonable action. If the current file is not *edited* then *ex* will not normally write on it if it already exists.*

2.2. Alternate file

Each time a new value is given to the current file name, the previous current file name is saved as the *alternate* file name. Similarly if a file is mentioned but does not become the current file, it is saved as the alternate file name.

2.3. Filename expansion

Filenames within the editor may be specified using the normal shell expansion conventions. In addition, the character '%' in filenames is replaced by the *current* file name and the character '#' by the *alternate* file name.†

2.4. Multiple files and named buffers

If more than one file is given on the command line, then the first file is edited as described above. The remaining arguments are placed with the first file in the *argument list.* The current argument list may be displayed with the *args* command. The next file in the argument list may be edited with the *next* command. The argument list may also be respecified by specifying a list of names to the *next* command. These names are expanded, the resulting list of names becomes the new argument list, and *ex* edits the first file on the list.

For saving blocks of text while editing, and especially when editing more than one file, *ex* has a group of named buffers. These are similar to the normal buffer, except that only a limited number of operations are available on them. The buffers have names *a* through *z.*‡

* The *file* command will say "[Not edited]" if the current file is not considered edited.

† This makes it easy to deal alternately with two files and eliminates the need for retyping the name supplied on an *edit* command after a *No write since last change* diagnostic is received.

‡ It is also possible to refer to *A* through *Z;* the upper case buffers are the same as the lower but commands append to named buffers rather than replacing if upper case names are used.

2.5. Read only

It is possible to use *ex* in *read only* mode to look at files that you have no intention of modifying. This mode protects you from accidently overwriting the file. Read only mode is on when the *readonly* option is set. It can be turned on with the –R command line option, by the *view* command line invocation, or by setting the *readonly* option. It can be cleared by setting *noreadonly*. It is possible to write, even while in read only mode, by indicating that you really know what you are doing. You can write to a different file, or can use the ! form of write, even while in read only mode.

3. Exceptional Conditions

3.1. Errors and interrupts

When errors occur *ex* (optionally) rings the terminal bell and, in any case, prints an error diagnostic. If the primary input is from a file, editor processing will terminate. If an interrupt signal is received, *ex* prints "Interrupt" and returns to its command level. If the primary input is a file, then *ex* will exit when this occurs.

3.2. Recovering from hangups and crashes

If a hangup signal is received and the buffer has been modified since it was last written out, or if the system crashes, either the editor (in the first case) or the system (after it reboots in the second) will attempt to preserve the buffer. The next time you log in you should be able to recover the work you were doing, losing at most a few lines of changes from the last point before the hangup or editor crash. To recover a file you can use the –r option. If you were editing the file *resume,* then you should change to the directory where you were when the crash occurred, giving the command

ex –r *resume*

After checking that the retrieved file is indeed ok, you can *write* it over the previous contents of that file.

You will normally get mail from the system telling you when a file has been saved after a crash. The command

ex –r

will print a list of the files which have been saved for you. (In the case of a hangup, the file will not appear in the list, although it can be recovered.)

4. Editing modes

Ex has five distinct modes. The primary mode is *command* mode. Commands are entered in command mode when a ':' prompt is present, and are executed each time a complete line is sent. In *text input* mode *ex* gathers input lines and places them in the file. The *append, insert,* and *change* commands use text input mode. No prompt is printed when you are in text input mode. This mode is left by typing a '.' alone at the beginning of a line, and *command* mode resumes.

The last three modes are *open* and *visual* modes, entered by the commands of the same name, and, within open and visual modes *text insertion* mode. *Open* and *visual* modes allow local editing operations to be performed on the text in the file. The *open* command displays one line at a time on any terminal while *visual* works on CRT terminals with random positioning cursors, using the screen as a (single) window for file editing changes. These modes are described (only) in *An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi.*

5. Command structure

Most command names are English words, and initial prefixes of the words are acceptable abbreviations. The ambiguity of abbreviations is resolved in favor of the more commonly used commands.*

5.1. Command parameters

Most commands accept prefix addresses specifying the lines in the file upon which they are to have effect. The forms of these addresses will be discussed below. A number of commands also may take a trailing *count* specifying the number of lines to be involved in the command.† Thus the command "10p" will print the tenth line in the buffer while "delete 5" will delete five lines from the buffer, starting with the current line.

Some commands take other information or parameters, this information always being given after the command name.‡

5.2. Command variants

A number of commands have two distinct variants. The variant form of the command is invoked by placing an '!' immediately after the command name. Some of the default variants may be controlled by options; in this case, the '!' serves to toggle the default.

5.3. Flags after commands

The characters '#', 'p' and 'l' may be placed after many commands.** In this case, the command abbreviated by these characters is executed after the command completes. Since *ex* normally prints the new current line after each change, 'p' is rarely necessary. Any number of '+' or '–' characters may also be given with these flags. If they appear, the specified offset is applied to the current line value before the printing command is executed.

5.4. Comments

It is possible to give editor commands which are ignored. This is useful when making complex editor scripts for which comments are desired. The comment character is the double quote: ". Any command line beginning with " is ignored. Comments beginning with " may also be placed at the ends of commands, except in cases where they could be confused as part of text (shell escapes and the substitute and map commands).

5.5. Multiple commands per line

More than one command may be placed on a line by separating each pair of commands by a '|' character. However the *global* commands, comments, and the shell escape '!' must be the last command on a line, as they are not terminated by a '|'.

5.6. Reporting large changes

Most commands which change the contents of the editor buffer give feedback if the scope of the change exceeds a threshold given by the *report* option. This feedback helps to detect undesirably large changes so that they may be quickly and easily reversed with an *undo*. After commands with more global effect such as *global* or *visual*, you will be informed if the net change in the number of lines in the buffer during this command exceeds this threshold.

---

* As an example, the command *substitute* can be abbreviated 's' while the shortest available abbreviation for the *set* command is 'se'.

† Counts are rounded down if necessary.

‡ Examples would be option names in a *set* command i.e. "set number", a file name in an *edit* command, a regular expression in a *substitute* command, or a target address for a *copy* command, i.e. "1,5 copy 25".

** A 'p' or 'l' must be preceded by a blank or tab except in the single special case 'dp'.

6. Command addressing

6.1. Addressing primitives

	The current line. Most commands leave the current line as the last line which they affect. The default address for most commands is the current line, thus '.' is rarely used alone as an address.
n	The *n*th line in the editor's buffer, lines being numbered sequentially from 1.
$	The last line in the buffer.
%	An abbreviation for "1,$", the entire buffer.
+n −n	An offset relative to the current buffer line.†
/pat/ ?pat?	Scan forward and backward respectively for a line containing *pat*, a regular expression (as defined below). The scans normally wrap around the end of the buffer. If all that is desired is to print the next line containing *pat*, then the trailing / or ? may be omitted. If *pat* is omitted or explicitly empty, then the last regular expression specified is located.‡
" 'x	Before each non-relative motion of the current line '.', the previous current line is marked with a tag, subsequently referred to as '"'. This makes it easy to refer or return to this previous context. Marks may also be established by the *mark* command, using single lower case letters *x* and the marked lines referred to as *'x*'.

6.2. Combining addressing primitives

Addresses to commands consist of a series of addressing primitives, separated by ',' or ';'. Such address lists are evaluated left-to-right. When addresses are separated by ';' the current line '.' is set to the value of the previous addressing expression before the next address is interpreted. If more addresses are given than the command requires, then all but the last one or two are ignored. If the command takes two addresses, the first addressed line must precede the second in the buffer.†

7. Command descriptions

The following form is a prototype for all *ex* commands:

address **command** *! parameters count flags*

All parts are optional; the degenerate case is the empty command which prints the next line in the file. For sanity with use from within *visual* mode, *ex* ignores a ":" preceding any command.

In the following command descriptions, the default addresses are shown in parentheses, which are *not,* however, part of the command.

abbreviate *word rhs* abbr: **ab**

Add the named abbreviation to the current list. When in input mode in visual, if *word* is typed as a complete word, it will be changed to *rhs*.

† The forms '.+3' '+3' and '+++' are all equivalent; if the current line is line 100 they all address line 103.
‡ The forms \/ and \? scan using the last regular expression used in a scan; after a substitute // and ?? would scan using the substitute's regular expression.
† Null address specifications are permitted in a list of addresses, the default in this case is the current line '.'; thus ',100' is equivalent to '.,100'. It is an error to give a prefix address to a command which expects none.

(.) append abbr: **a**
text
.

Reads the input text and places it after the specified line. After the command, '.' addresses the last line input or the specified line if no lines were input. If address '0' is given, text is placed at the beginning of the buffer.

a!
text
.

The variant flag to *append* toggles the setting for the *autoindent* option during the input of *text.*

args

The members of the argument list are printed, with the current argument delimited by '[' and ']'.

(. , .) change *count* abbr: **c**
text
.

Replaces the specified lines with the input *text.* The current line becomes the last line input; if no lines were input it is left as for a *delete.*

c!
text
.

The variant toggles *autoindent* during the *change.*

(. , .) copy *addr flags* abbr: **co**

A *copy* of the specified lines is placed after *addr,* which may be '0'. The current line '.' addresses the last line of the copy. The command *t* is a synonym for *copy.*

(. , .) delete *buffer count flags* abbr: **d**

Removes the specified lines from the buffer. The line after the last line deleted becomes the current line; if the lines deleted were originally at the end, the new last line becomes the current line. If a named *buffer* is specified by giving a letter, then the specified lines are saved in that buffer, or appended to it if an upper case letter is used.

edit *file* abbr: **e**
ex *file*

Used to begin an editing session on a new file. The editor first checks to see if the buffer has been modified since the last *write* command was issued. If it has been, a warning is issued and the command is aborted. The command otherwise deletes the entire contents of the editor buffer, makes the named file the current file and prints the new filename. After insuring that this file is sensible† the editor reads the file into its buffer.

If the read of the file completes without error, the number of lines and characters read is typed. If there were any non-ASCII characters in the file they are stripped of their non-ASCII high bits, and any null characters in the file are discarded. If none of these errors occurred, the file is considered *edited.* If the last line of the input file is missing the

† I.e., that it is not a binary file such as a directory, a block or character special file other than */dev/tty,* a terminal, or a binary or executable file (as indicated by the first word).

trailing newline character, it will be supplied and a complaint will be issued. This command leaves the current line '.' at the last line read.‡

e! *file*

The variant form suppresses the complaint about modifications having been made and not written from the editor buffer, thus discarding all changes which have been made before editing the new file.

e +*n file*

Causes the editor to begin at line *n* rather than at the last line; *n* may also be an editor command containing no spaces, e.g.: "+/pat".

file abbr: f

Prints the current file name, whether it has been '[Modified]' since the last *write* command, whether it is *read only*, the current line, the number of lines in the buffer, and the percentage of the way through the buffer of the current line.*

file *file*

The current file name is changed to *file* which is considered '[Not edited]'.

(1 , $) **global** /*pat*/ *cmds* abbr: g

First marks each line among those specified which matches the given regular expression. Then the given command list is executed with '.' initially set to each marked line.

The command list consists of the remaining commands on the current input line and may continue to multiple lines by ending all but the last such line with a '\'. If *cmds* (and possibly the trailing / delimiter) is omitted, each line matching *pat* is printed. *Append, insert,* and *change* commands and associated input are permitted; the '.' terminating input may be omitted if it would be on the last line of the command list. *Open* and *visual* commands are permitted in the command list and take input from the terminal.

The *global* command itself may not appear in *cmds.* The *undo* command is also not permitted there, as *undo* instead can be used to reverse the entire *global* command. The options *autoprint* and *autoindent* are inhibited during a *global,* (and possibly the trailing / delimiter) and the value of the *report* option is temporarily infinite, in deference to a *report* for the entire global. Finally, the context mark '' is set to the value of '.' before the global command begins and is not changed during a global command, except perhaps by an *open* or *visual* within the *global.*

g! /*pat*/ *cmds* abbr: v

The variant form of *global* runs *cmds* at each line not matching *pat.*

(.) **insert** abbr: i
text

Places the given text before the specified line. The current line is left at the last line input; if there were none input it is left at the line before the addressed line. This command differs from *append* only in the placement of text.

‡ If executed from within *open* or *visual,* the current line is initially the first line of the file.
* In the rare case that the current file is '[Not edited]' this is noted also; in this case you have to use the form w! to write to the file, since the editor is not sure that a write will not destroy a file unrelated to the current contents of the buffer.

i!
text
.

The variant toggles *autoindent* during the *insert.*

(. , .+1) join *count flags* abbr: **j**

Places the text from a specified range of lines together on one line. White space is adjusted at each junction to provide at least one blank character, two if there was a '.' at the end of the line, or none if the first following character is a ')'. If there is already white space at the end of the line, then the white space at the start of the next line will be discarded.

j!

The variant causes a simpler *join* with no white space processing; the characters in the lines are simply concatenated.

(.) k *x*

The *k* command is a synonym for *mark.* It does not require a blank or tab before the following letter.

(. , .) list *count flags*

Prints the specified lines in a more unambiguous way: tabs are printed as '^I' and the end of each line is marked with a trailing '$'. The current line is left at the last line printed.

map *lhs rhs*

The *map* command is used to define macros for use in *visual* mode. *Lhs* should be a single character, or the sequence "#n", for n a digit, referring to function key *n.* When this character or function key is typed in *visual* mode, it will be as though the corresponding *rhs* had been typed. On terminals without function keys, you can type "#n". See section 6.9 of the "Introduction to Display Editing with Vi" for more details.

(.) mark *x*

Gives the specified line mark *x,* a single lower case letter. The *x* must be preceded by a blank or a tab. The addressing form 'x' then addresses this line. The current line is not affected by this command.

(. , .) move *addr* abbr: **m**

The *move* command repositions the specified lines to be after *addr*. The first of the moved lines becomes the current line.

next abbr: **n**

The next file from the command line argument list is edited.

n!

The variant suppresses warnings about the modifications to the buffer not having been written out, discarding (irretrievably) any changes which may have been made.

n *filelist*
n *+command filelist*

The specified *filelist* is expanded and the resulting list replaces the current argument list; the first file in the new list is then edited. If *command* is given (it must contain no spaces), then it is executed after editing the first such file.

(. , .) number *count flags* abbr: **# or nu**

Prints each specified line preceded by its buffer line number. The current line is left at the last line printed.

(.) open *flags* abbr: **o**
(.) open */pat/ flags*

Enters intraline editing *open* mode at each addressed line. If *pat* is given, then the cursor will be placed initially at the beginning of the string matched by the pattern. To exit this mode use Q. See *An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi* for more details.

preserve

The current editor buffer is saved as though the system had just crashed. This command is for use only in emergencies when a *write* command has resulted in an error and you don't know how to save your work. After a *preserve* you should seek help.

(. , .) print *count* abbr: **p or P**

Prints the specified lines with non-printing characters printed as control characters '^*x*'; delete (octal 177) is represented as '^?'. The current line is left at the last line printed.

(.) put *buffer* abbr: **pu**

Puts back previously *deleted* or *yanked* lines. Normally used with *delete* to effect movement of lines, or with *yank* to effect duplication of lines. If no *buffer* is specified, then the last *deleted* or *yanked* text is restored.* By using a named buffer, text may be restored that was saved there at any previous time.

quit abbr: **q**

Causes *ex* to terminate. No automatic write of the editor buffer to a file is performed. However, *ex* issues a warning message if the file has changed since the last *write* command was issued, and does not *quit.*† Normally, you will wish to save your changes, and you should give a *write* command; if you wish to discard them, use the **q!** command variant.

q!

Quits from the editor, discarding changes to the buffer without complaint.

(.) read *file* abbr: **r**

Places a copy of the text of the given file in the editing buffer after the specified line. If no *file* is given the current file name is used. The current file name is not changed unless there is none in which case *file* becomes the current name. The sensibility restrictions for the *edit* command apply here also. If the file buffer is empty and there is no current name then *ex* treats this as an *edit* command.

---

* But no modifying commands may intervene between the *delete* or *yank* and the *put,* nor may lines be moved between files without using a named buffer.
† *Ex* will also issue a diagnostic if there are more files in the argument list.

Address '0' is legal for this command and causes the file to be read at the beginning of the buffer. Statistics are given as for the *edit* command when the *read* successfully terminates. After a *read* the current line is the last line read.‡

(.) **read** *!command*

Reads the output of the command *command* into the buffer after the specified line. This is not a variant form of the command, rather a read specifying a *command* rather than a *filename;* a blank or tab before the **!** is mandatory.

recover *file*

Recovers *file* from the system save area. Used after a accidental hangup of the phone** or a system crash** or *preserve* command. Except when you use *preserve* you will be notified by mail when a file is saved.

rewind abbr: **rew**

The argument list is rewound, and the first file in the list is edited.

rew!

Rewinds the argument list discarding any changes made to the current buffer.

set *parameter*

With no arguments, prints those options whose values have been changed from their defaults; with parameter *all* it prints all of the option values.

Giving an option name followed by a '?' causes the current value of that option to be printed. The '?' is unnecessary unless the option is Boolean valued. Boolean options are given values either by the form 'set *option*' to turn them on or 'set no*option*' to turn them off; string and numeric options are assigned via the form 'set *option*=value'.

More than one parameter may be given to *set* ; they are interpreted left-to-right.

shell abbr: **sh**

A new shell is created. When it terminates, editing resumes.

source *file* abbr: **so**

Reads and executes commands from the specified file. *Source* commands may be nested.

(. , .) **substitute** */pat/repl/ options count flags* abbr: **s**

On each specified line, the first instance of pattern *pat* is replaced by replacement pattern *repl.* If the *global* indicator option character 'g' appears, then all instances are substituted; if the *confirm* indication character 'c' appears, then before each substitution the line to be substituted is typed with the string to be substituted marked with '↑' characters. By typing an 'y' one can cause the substitution to be performed, any other input causes no change to take place. After a *substitute* the current line is the last line substituted.

Lines may be split by substituting new-line characters into them. The newline in *repl* must be escaped by preceding it with a '\'. Other metacharacters available in *pat* and *repl* are described below.

‡ Within *open* and *visual* the current line is set to the first line read rather than the last.
** The system saves a copy of the file you were editing only if you have made changes to the file.

stop

Suspends the editor, returning control to the top level shell. If *autowrite* is set and there are unsaved changes, a write is done first unless the form **stop!** is used. This commands is only available where supported by the teletype driver and operating system.

(. , .) **substitute** *options count flags* abbr: **s**

If *pat* and *repl* are omitted, then the last substitution is repeated. This is a synonym for the **&** command.

(. , .) **t** *addr flags*

The *t* command is a synonym for *copy*.

ta *tag*

The focus of editing switches to the location of *tag,* switching to a different line in the current file where it is defined, or if necessary to another file.‡

The tags file is normally created by a program such as *ctags,* and consists of a number of lines with three fields separated by blanks or tabs. The first field gives the name of the tag, the second the name of the file where the tag resides, and the third gives an addressing form which can be used by the editor to find the tag; this field is usually a contextual scan using '*/pat/*' to be immune to minor changes in the file. Such scans are always performed as if *nomagic* was set.

The tag names in the tags file must be sorted alphabetically.

unabbreviate *word* abbr: **una**

Delete *word* from the list of abbreviations.

undo abbr: **u**

Reverses the changes made in the buffer by the last buffer editing command. Note that *global* commands are considered a single command for the purpose of *undo* (as are *open* and *visual.)* Also, the commands *write* and *edit* which interact with the file system cannot be undone. *Undo* is its own inverse.

Undo always marks the previous value of the current line '.' as '". After an *undo* the current line is the first line restored or the line before the first line deleted if no lines were restored. For commands with more global effect such as *global* and *visual* the current line regains it's pre-command value after an *undo.*

unmap *lhs*

The macro expansion associated by *map* for *lhs* is removed.

(1 , $) **v** */pat/ cmds*

A synonym for the *global* command variant **g!**, running the specified *cmds* on each line which does not match *pat.*

version abbr: **ve**

Prints the current version number of the editor as well as the date the editor was last changed.

‡ If you have modified the current file before giving a *tag* command, you must write it out; giving another *tag* command, specifying no *tag* will reuse the previous tag.

(.) visual *type count flags* abbr: **vi**

Enters visual mode at the specified line. *Type* is optional and may be '–' , '↑' or '.' as in the *z* command to specify the placement of the specified line on the screen. By default, if *type* is omitted, the specified line is placed as the first on the screen. A *count* specifies an initial window size; the default is the value of the option *window*. See the document *An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi* for more details. To exit this mode, type Q.

visual file
visual +*n* file

From visual mode, this command is the same as edit.

(1 , $) write *file* abbr: **w**

Writes changes made back to *file*, printing the number of lines and characters written. Normally *file* is omitted and the text goes back where it came from. If a *file* is specified, then text will be written to that file.* If the file does not exist it is created. The current file name is changed only if there is no current file name; the current line is never changed.

If an error occurs while writing the current and *edited* file, the editor considers that there has been "No write since last change" even if the buffer had not previously been modified.

(1 , $) write>> *file* abbr: **w>>**

Writes the buffer contents at the end of an existing file.

w! *name*

Overrides the checking of the normal *write* command, and will write to any file which the system permits.

(1 , $) w !*command*

Writes the specified lines into *command*. Note the difference between **w!** which overrides checks and **w !** which writes to a command.

wq *name*

Like a *write* and then a *quit* command.

wq! *name*

The variant overrides checking on the sensibility of the *write* command, as **w!** does.

xit *name*

If any changes have been made and not written, writes the buffer out. Then, in any case, quits.

(. , .) yank *buffer count* abbr: **ya**

Places the specified lines in the named *buffer*, for later retrieval via *put*. If no buffer name is specified, the lines go to a more volatile place; see the *put* command description.

* The editor writes to a file only if it is the current file and is *edited*, if the file does not exist, or if the file is actually a teletype, */dev/tty*, */dev/null*. Otherwise, you must give the variant form **w!** to force the write.

(.+1) **z** *count*

Print the next *count* lines, default *window*.

(.) **z** *type count*

Prints a window of text with the specified line at the top. If *type* is '–' the line is placed at the bottom; a '.' causes the line to be placed in the center.* A count gives the number of lines to be displayed rather than double the number specified by the *scroll* option. On a CRT the screen is cleared before display begins unless a count which is less than the screen size is given. The current line is left at the last line printed.

! *command*

The remainder of the line after the '!' character is sent to a shell to be executed. Within the text of *command* the characters '%' and '#' are expanded as in filenames and the character '!' is replaced with the text of the previous command. Thus, in particular, '!!' repeats the last such shell escape. If any such expansion is performed, the expanded line will be echoed. The current line is unchanged by this command.

If there has been "[No write]" of the buffer contents since the last change to the editing buffer, then a diagnostic will be printed before the command is executed as a warning. A single '!' is printed when the command completes.

(*addr* , *addr*) **!** *command*

Takes the specified address range and supplies it as standard input to *command;* the resulting output then replaces the input lines.

($) =

Prints the line number of the addressed line. The current line is unchanged.

(. , .) > *count flags*
(. , .) < *count flags*

Perform intelligent shifting on the specified lines; < shifts left and > shift right. The quantity of shift is determined by the *shiftwidth* option and the repetition of the specification character. Only white space (blanks and tabs) is shifted; no non-white characters are discarded in a left-shift. The current line becomes the last line which changed due to the shifting.

^D

An end-of-file from a terminal input scrolls through the file. The *scroll* option specifies the size of the scroll, normally a half screen of text.

(.+1 , .+1)
(.+1 , .+1) |

An address alone causes the addressed lines to be printed. A blank line prints the next line in the file.

(. , .) **&** *options count flags*

Repeats the previous *substitute* command.

---

* Forms 'z=' and 'z↑' also exist; 'z=' places the current line in the center, surrounds it with lines of '–' characters and leaves the current line at this line. The form 'z↑' prints the window before 'z–' would. The characters '+', '↑' and '–' may be repeated for cumulative effect. On some v2 editors, no *type* may be given.

(. , .) ~ *options count flags*

Replaces the previous regular expression with the previous replacement pattern from a substitution.

8. Regular expressions and substitute replacement patterns

8.1. Regular expressions

A regular expression specifies a set of strings of characters. A member of this set of strings is said to be *matched* by the regular expression. *Ex* remembers two previous regular expressions: the previous regular expression used in a *substitute* command and the previous regular expression used elsewhere (referred to as the previous *scanning* regular expression.) The previous regular expression can always be referred to by a null *re*, e.g. '//' or '??'.

8.2. Magic and nomagic

The regular expressions allowed by *ex* are constructed in one of two ways depending on the setting of the *magic* option. The *ex* and *vi* default setting of *magic* gives quick access to a powerful set of regular expression metacharacters. The disadvantage of *magic* is that the user must remember that these metacharacters are *magic* and precede them with the character '\' to use them as "ordinary" characters. With *nomagic,* the default for *edit,* regular expressions are much simpler, there being only two metacharacters. The power of the other metacharacters is still available by preceding the (now) ordinary character with a '\'. Note that '\' is thus always a metacharacter.

The remainder of the discussion of regular expressions assumes that that the setting of this option is *magic.*†

8.3. Basic regular expression summary

The following basic constructs are used to construct *magic* mode regular expressions.

char — An ordinary character matches itself. The characters '↑' at the beginning of a line, '$' at the end of line, '*' as any character other than the first, '.', '\', '[', and '~' are not ordinary characters and must be escaped (preceded) by '\' to be treated as such.

↑ — At the beginning of a pattern forces the match to succeed only at the beginning of a line.

$ — At the end of a regular expression forces the match to succeed only at the end of the line.

. — Matches any single character except the new-line character.

\< — Forces the match to occur only at the beginning of a "variable" or "word"; that is, either at the beginning of a line, or just before a letter, digit, or underline and after a character not one of these.

\> — Similar to '\<', but matching the end of a "variable" or "word", i.e. either the end of the line or before character which is neither a letter, nor a digit, nor the underline character.

[*string*] — Matches any (single) character in the class defined by *string.* Most characters in *string* define themselves. A pair of characters separated by '–' in *string* defines the set of characters collating between the specified lower and upper bounds, thus '[a–z]' as a regular expression matches any (single) lower-case

† To discern what is true with *nomagic* it suffices to remember that the only special characters in this case will be '↑' at the beginning of a regular expression, '$' at the end of a regular expression, and '\'. With *nomagic* the characters '~' and '&' also lose their special meanings related to the replacement pattern of a substitute.

letter. If the first character of *string* is an '↑' then the construct matches those characters which it otherwise would not; thus '[↑a–z]' matches anything but a lower-case letter (and of course a newline). To place any of the characters '↑', '[', or '–' in *string* you must escape them with a preceding '\'.

8.4. Combining regular expression primitives

The concatenation of two regular expressions matches the leftmost and then longest string which can be divided with the first piece matching the first regular expression and the second piece matching the second. Any of the (single character matching) regular expressions mentioned above may be followed by the character '*' to form a regular expression which matches any number of adjacent occurrences (including 0) of characters matched by the regular expression it follows.

The character '~' may be used in a regular expression, and matches the text which defined the replacement part of the last *substitute* command. A regular expression may be enclosed between the sequences '\(' and '\)' with side effects in the *substitute* replacement patterns.

8.5. Substitute replacement patterns

The basic metacharacters for the replacement pattern are '&' and '~'; these are given as '\&' and '\~' when *nomagic* is set. Each instance of '&' is replaced by the characters which the regular expression matched. The metacharacter '~' stands, in the replacement pattern, for the defining text of the previous replacement pattern.

Other metasequences possible in the replacement pattern are always introduced by the escaping character '\'. The sequence '*n*' is replaced by the text matched by the *n*-th regular subexpression enclosed between '\(' and '\)'.† The sequences '\u' and '\l' cause the immediately following character in the replacement to be converted to upper- or lower-case respectively if this character is a letter. The sequences '\U' and '\L' turn such conversion on, either until '\E' or '\e' is encountered, or until the end of the replacement pattern.

9. Option descriptions

autoindent, ai default: noai

Can be used to ease the preparation of structured program text. At the beginning of each *append*, *change* or *insert* command or when a new line is *opened* or created by an *append*, *change*, *insert*, or *substitute* operation within *open* or *visual* mode, *ex* looks at the line being appended after, the first line changed or the line inserted before and calculates the amount of white space at the start of the line. It then aligns the cursor at the level of indentation so determined.

If the user then types lines of text in, they will continue to be justified at the displayed indenting level. If more white space is typed at the beginning of a line, the following line will start aligned with the first non-white character of the previous line. To back the cursor up to the preceding tab stop one can hit ^D. The tab stops going backwards are defined at multiples of the *shiftwidth* option. You *cannot* backspace over the indent, except by sending an end-of-file with a ^D.

Specially processed in this mode is a line with no characters added to it, which turns into a completely blank line (the white space provided for the *autoindent* is discarded.) Also specially processed in this mode are lines beginning with an '↑' and immediately followed by a ^D. This causes the input to be repositioned at the beginning of the line, but retaining the previous indent for the next line. Similarly, a '0' followed by a ^D

† When nested, parenthesized subexpressions are present, *n* is determined by counting occurrences of '\(' starting from the left.

repositions at the beginning but without retaining the previous indent.

Autoindent doesn't happen in *global* commands or when the input is not a terminal.

autoprint, ap default: ap

Causes the current line to be printed after each *delete*, *copy*, *join*, *move*, *substitute*, *t*, *undo* or shift command. This has the same effect as supplying a trailing 'p' to each such command. *Autoprint* is suppressed in globals, and only applies to the last of many commands on a line.

autowrite, aw default: noaw

Causes the contents of the buffer to be written to the current file if you have modified it and give a *next, rewind, stop, tag,* or *!* command, or a ^↑ (switch files) or ^] (tag goto) command in *visual.* Note, that the *edit* and *ex* commands do **not** autowrite. In each case, there is an equivalent way of switching when autowrite is set to avoid the *autowrite* (*edit* for *next*, *rewind!* for .I rewind , *stop!* for *stop*, *tag!* for *tag*, *shell* for *!*, and :e # and a :ta! command from within *visual).*

beautify, bf default: nobeautify

Causes all control characters except tab, newline and form-feed to be discarded from the input. A complaint is registered the first time a backspace character is discarded. *Beautify* does not apply to command input.

directory, dir default: dir=/tmp

Specifies the directory in which *ex* places its buffer file. If this directory in not writable, then the editor will exit abruptly when it fails to be able to create its buffer there.

edcompatible default: noedcompatible

Causes the presence of absence of **g** and **c** suffixes on substitute commands to be remembered, and to be toggled by repeating the suffices. The suffix **r** makes the substitution be as in the ~ command, instead of like *&*.

errorbells, eb default: noeb

Error messages are preceded by a bell.* If possible the editor always places the error message in a standout mode of the terminal (such as inverse video) instead of ringing the bell.

hardtabs, ht default: ht=8

Gives the boundaries on which terminal hardware tabs are set (or on which the system expands tabs).

ignorecase, ic default: noic

All upper case characters in the text are mapped to lower case in regular expression matching. In addition, all upper case characters in regular expressions are mapped to lower case except in character class specifications.

lisp default: nolisp

Autoindent indents appropriately for *lisp* code, and the ( ) { } [[and]] commands in *open* and *visual* are modified to have meaning for *lisp.*

* Bell ringing in *open* and *visual* on errors is not suppressed by setting *noeb.*

list default: nolist

All printed lines will be displayed (more) unambiguously, showing tabs and end-of-lines as in the *list* command.

magic default: magic for *ex* and *vi*†

If *nomagic* is set, the number of regular expression metacharacters is greatly reduced, with only '↑' and '$' having special effects. In addition the metacharacters '~' and '&' of the replacement pattern are treated as normal characters. All the normal metacharacters may be made *magic* when *nomagic* is set by preceding them with a '\'.

mesg default: mesg

Causes write permission to be turned off to the terminal while you are in visual mode, if *nomesg* is set.

modeline default: nomodeline

If *modeline* is set, then the first 5 lines and the last five lines of the file will be checked for ex command lines and the comands issued. To be recognized as a command line, the line must have the string **ex:** or **vi:** preceeded by a tab or a space. This string may be anywhere in the line and anything after the *:* is interpeted as editor commands. This option defaults to off because of unexpected behavior when editting files such as */etc/passwd.*

number, nu default: nonumber

Causes all output lines to be printed with their line numbers. In addition each input line will be prompted for by supplying the line number it will have.

open default: open

If *noopen*, the commands *open* and *visual* are not permitted. This is set for *edit* to prevent confusion resulting from accidental entry to open or visual mode.

optimize, opt default: optimize

Throughput of text is expedited by setting the terminal to not do automatic carriage returns when printing more than one (logical) line of output, greatly speeding output on terminals without addressable cursors when text with leading white space is printed.

paragraphs, para default: para=IPLPPPQPP LIbp

Specifies the paragraphs for the { and } operations in *open* and *visual.* The pairs of characters in the option's value are the names of the macros which start paragraphs.

prompt default: prompt

Command mode input is prompted for with a ':'.

redraw default: noredraw

The editor simulates (using great amounts of output), an intelligent terminal on a dumb terminal (e.g. during insertions in *visual* the characters to the right of the cursor position are refreshed as each input character is typed.) Useful only at very high speed.

† *Nomagic* for *edit.*

remap default: remap

If on, macros are repeatedly tried until they are unchanged. For example, if **o** is mapped to **O**, and **O** is mapped to **I**, then if *remap* is set, **o** will map to **I**, but if *noremap* is set, it will map to **O**.

report default: report=5†

Specifies a threshold for feedback from commands. Any command which modifies more than the specified number of lines will provide feedback as to the scope of its changes. For commands such as *global*, *open*, *undo*, and *visual* which have potentially more far reaching scope, the net change in the number of lines in the buffer is presented at the end of the command, subject to this same threshold. Thus notification is suppressed during a *global* command on the individual commands performed.

scroll default: scroll=½ window

Determines the number of logical lines scrolled when an end-of-file is received from a terminal input in command mode, and the number of lines printed by a command mode *z* command (double the value of *scroll*).

sections default: sections=SHNHH HU

Specifies the section macros for the [[and]] operations in *open* and *visual.* The pairs of characters in the options's value are the names of the macros which start paragraphs.

shell, sh default: sh=/bin/sh

Gives the path name of the shell forked for the shell escape command '!', and by the *shell* command. The default is taken from SHELL in the environment, if present.

shiftwidth, sw default: sw=8

Gives the width a software tab stop, used in reverse tabbing with ^D when using *autoindent* to append text, and by the shift commands.

showmatch, sm default: nosm

In *open* and *visual* mode, when a) or } is typed, move the cursor to the matching (or { for one second if this matching character is on the screen. Extremely useful with *lisp.*

slowopen, slow terminal dependent

Affects the display algorithm used in *visual* mode, holding off display updating during input of new text to improve throughput when the terminal in use is both slow and unintelligent. See *An Introduction to Display Editing with Vi* for more details.

tabstop, ts default: ts=8

The editor expands tabs in the input file to be on *tabstop* boundaries for the purposes of display.

taglength, tl default: tl=0

Tags are not significant beyond this many characters. A value of zero (the default) means that all characters are significant.

† 2 for *edit.*

tags default: tags=tags /usr/lib/tags

A path of files to be used as tag files for the *tag* command. A requested tag is searched for in the specified files, sequentially. By default, files called **tags** are searched for in the current directory and in /usr/lib (a master file for the entire system).

term from environment TERM

The terminal type of the output device.

terse default: noterse

Shorter error diagnostics are produced for the experienced user.

warn default: warn

Warn if there has been '[No write since last change]' before a '!' command escape.

window default: window=speed dependent

The number of lines in a text window in the *visual* command. The default is 8 at slow speeds (600 baud or less), 16 at medium speed (1200 baud), and the full screen (minus one line) at higher speeds.

w300, w1200, w9600

These are not true options but set **window** only if the speed is slow (300), medium (1200), or high (9600), respectively. They are suitable for an EXINIT and make it easy to change the 8/16/full screen rule.

wrapscan, ws default: ws

Searches using the regular expressions in addressing will wrap around past the end of the file.

wrapmargin, wm default: wm=0

Defines a margin for automatic wrapover of text during input in *open* and *visual* modes. See *An Introduction to Text Editing with Vi* for details.

writeany, wa default: nowa

Inhibit the checks normally made before *write* commands, allowing a write to any file which the system protection mechanism will allow.

10. Limitations

Editor limits that the user is likely to encounter are as follows: 1024 characters per line, 256 characters per global command list, 128 characters per file name, 128 characters in the previous inserted and deleted text in *open* or *visual,* 100 characters in a shell escape command, 63 characters in a string valued option, and 30 characters in a tag name, and a limit of 250000 lines in the file is silently enforced.

The *visual* implementation limits the number of macros defined with map to 32, and the total number of characters in macros to be less than 512.

Acknowledgments. Chuck Haley contributed greatly to the early development of *ex.* Bruce Englar encouraged the redesign which led to *ex* version 1. Bill Joy wrote versions 1 and 2.0 through 2.7, and created the framework that users see in the present editor. Mark Horton added macros and other features and made the editor work on a large number of terminals and Unix systems.

JOVE Manual for UNIX Users

Jonathan Payne
(revised for 4.3BSD by Doug Kingston and Mark Seiden)

1. Introduction

JOVE* is an advanced, self-documenting, customizable real-time display editor. It (and this tutorial introduction) are based on the original EMACS editor and user manual written at M.I.T. by Richard Stallman+.

JOVE is considered a *display* editor because normally the text being edited is visible on the screen and is updated automatically as you type your commands.

It's considered a *real-time* editor because the display is updated very frequently, usually after each character or pair of characters you type. This minimizes the amount of information you must keep in your head as you edit.

JOVE is *advanced* because it provides facilities that go beyond simple insertion and deletion: filling of text; automatic indentations of programs; view more than one file at once; and dealing in terms of characters, words, lines, sentences and paragraphs. It is much easier to type one command meaning "go to the end of the paragraph" than to find the desired spot with repetition of simpler commands.

Self-documenting means that at almost any time you can easily find out what a command does, or to find all the commands that pertain to a topic.

Customizable means that you can change the definition of JOVE commands in little ways. For example, you can rearrange the command set; if you prefer to use arrow keys for the four basic cursor motion commands (up, down, left and right), you can. Another sort of customization is writing new commands by combining built in commands.

2. The Organization of the Screen

JOVE divides the screen up into several sections. The biggest of these sections is used to display the text you are editing. The terminal's cursor shows the position of *point*, the location at which editing takes place. While the cursor appears to point *at* a character, point should be thought of as between characters; it points *before* the character that the cursor appears on top of. Terminals have only one cursor, and when output is in progress it must appear where the typing is being done. This doesn't mean that point is moving; it is only that JOVE has no way of showing you the location of point except when the terminal is idle.

The lines of the screen are usually available for displaying text but sometimes are pre-empted by typeout from certain commands (such as a listing of all the editor commands). Most of the time, output from commands like these is only desired for a short period of time, usually just long enough to glance at it. When you have finished looking at the output, you can type Space to make your text reappear. (Usually a Space that you type inserts itself, but when there is typeout on the screen, it does nothing but get rid of that). Any other command executes normally, *after* redrawing your text.

2.1. The Message Line

The bottom line on the screen, called the *message line*, is reserved for printing messages and for accepting input from the user, such as filenames or search strings. When JOVE prompts for input, the cursor will temporarily appear on the bottom line, waiting for you to type a string. When you have finished typing your input, you can type a Return to send it to JOVE. If you change your mind about running the command that is waiting for input, you can type Control-G to abort, and you can

*JOVE stands for Jonathan's Own Version of Emacs.
+Although JOVE is meant to be compatible with EMACS, and indeed many of the basic commands are very similar, there are some major differences between the two editors, and you should not rely on their behaving identically.

continue with your editing.

When JOVE is prompting for a filename, all the usual editing facilities can be used to fix typos and such; in addition, JOVE has the following extra functions:

^N Insert the next filename from the argument list.

^P Insert the previous filename from the argument list.

^R Insert the full pathname of the file in the current buffer.

Sometimes you will see **--more--** on the message line. This happens when typeout from a command is too long to fit in the screen. It means that if you type a Space the next screenful of typeout will be printed. If you are not interested, typing anything but a Space will cause the rest of the output to be discarded. Typing C-G will discard the output and print *Aborted* where the **--more--** was. Typing any other command will discard the rest of the output and also execute the command.

The message line and the list of filenames from the shell command that invoked JOVE are kept in a special buffer called *Minibuf* that can be edited like any other buffer.

2.2. The Mode Line

At the bottom of the screen, but above the message line, is the *mode line.* The mode line format looks like this:

JOVE (major minor) Buffer: bufr "file" *

major is the name of the current *major mode.* At any time, JOVE can be in only one major mode at a time. Currently there are only four major modes: *Fundamental*, *Text*, *Lisp* and *C.*

minor is a list of the minor modes that are turned on. **Abbrev** means that *Word Abbrev* mode is on; **AI** means that *Auto Indent* mode is on; **Fill** means that *Auto Fill* mode is on; **OvrWt** means that *Over Write* mode is on. **Def** means that you are in the process of defining a keyboard macro. This is not really a mode, but it's useful to be reminded about it. The meanings of these modes are described later in this document.

bufr is the name of the currently selected *buffer.* Each buffer has its own name and holds a file being edited; this is how JOVE can hold several files at once. But at any given time you are editing only one of them, the *selected* buffer. When we speak of what some command does to "the buffer", we are talking about the currently selected buffer. Multiple buffers makes it easy to switch around between several files, and then it is very useful that the mode line tells you which one you are editing at any time. (You will see later that it is possible to divide the screen into multiple *windows*, each showing a different buffer. If you do this, there is a mode line beneath each window.)

file is the name of the file that you are editing. This is the default filename for commands that expect a filename as input.

The asterisk at the end of the mode line means that there are changes in the buffer that have not been saved in the file. If the file has not been changed since it was read in or saved, there is no asterisk.

3. Command Input Conventions

3.1. Notational Conventions for ASCII Characters

In this manual, "Control" characters (that is, characters that are typed with the Control key and some other key at the same time) are represented by "C-" followed by another character. Thus, C-A is the character you get when you type A with the Control key (sometimes labeled CTRL) down. Most control characters when present in the JOVE buffer are displayed with a caret; thus, ^A for C-A. Rubout (or DEL) is displayed as ^?, escape as ^[.

3.2. Command and Filename Completion

When you are typing the name of a JOVE command, you need type only enough letters to make the name unambiguous. At any point in the course of typing the name, you can type question mark (?) to

see a list of all the commands whose names begin with the characters you've already typed; you can type Space to have JOVE supply as many characters as it can; or you can type Return to complete the command if there is only one possibility. For example, if you have typed the letters "*au*" and you then type a question mark, you will see the list

auto-execute-command
auto-execute-macro
auto-fill-mode
auto-indent-mode

If you type a Return at this point, JOVE will complain by ringing the bell, because the letters you've typed do not unambiguously specify a single command. But if you type Space, JOVE will supply the characters "*to-*" because all commands that begin "*au*" also begin "*auto-*". You could then type the letter "*f*" followed by either Space or Return, and JOVE would complete the entire command.

Whenever JOVE is prompting you for a filename, say in the *find-file* command, you also need only type enough of the name to make it unambiguous with respect to files that already exist. In this case, question mark and Space work just as they do in command completion, but Return always accepts the name just as you've typed it, because you might want to create a new file with a name similar to that of an existing file.

4. Commands and Variables

JOVE is composed of *commands* which have long names such as *next-line*. Then *keys* such as C-N are connected to commands through the *command dispatch table*. When we say that C-N moves the cursor down a line, we are glossing over a distinction which is unimportant for ordinary use, but essential for simple customization: it is the command *next-line* which knows how to move a down line, and C-N moves down a line because it is connected to that command. The name for this connection is a *binding*; we say that the key C-N *is bound to* the command *next-line*.

Not all commands are bound to keys. To invoke a command that isn't bound to a key, you can type the sequence ESC X, which is bound to the command *execute-named-command*. You will then be able to type the name of whatever command you want to execute on the message line.

Sometimes the description of a command will say "to change this, set the variable *mumble-foo*". A variable is a name used to remember a value. JOVE contains variables which are there so that you can change them if you want to customize. The variable's value is examined by some command, and changing that value makes the command behave differently. Until you are interesting in customizing JOVE, you can ignore this information.

4.1. Prefix Characters

Because there are more command names than keys, JOVE provides *prefix characters* to increase the number of commands that can be invoked quickly and easily. When you type a prefix character JOVE will wait for another character before deciding what to do. If you wait more than a second or so, JOVE will print the prefix character on the message line as a reminder and leave the cursor down there until you type your next character. There are two prefix characters built into JOVE: Escape and Control-X. How the next character is interpreted depends on which prefix character you typed. For example, if you type Escape followed by B you'll run *backward-word*, but if you type Control-X followed by B you'll run *select-buffer*. Elsewhere in this manual, the Escape key is indicated as "ESC", which is also what JOVE displays on the message line for Escape.

4.2. Help

To get a list of keys and their associated commands, you type ESC X *describe-bindings*. If you want to describe a single key, ESC X *describe-key* will work. A description of an individual command is available by using ESC X *describe-command*, and descriptions of variables by using ESC X *describe-variable*. If you can't remember the name of the thing you want to know about, ESC X *apropos* will tell you if a command or variable has a given string in its name. For example, ESC X *apropos describe* will list the names of the four describe commands mentioned briefly in this section.

5. Basic Editing Commands

5.1. Inserting Text

To insert printing characters into the text you are editing, just type them. All printing characters you type are inserted into the text at the cursor (that is, at *point*), and the cursor moves forward. Any characters after the cursor move forward too. If the text in the buffer is FOOBAR, with the cursor before the B, then if you type XX, you get FOOXXBAR, with the cursor still before the B.

To correct text you have just inserted, you can use Rubout. Rubout deletes the character *before* the cursor (not the one that the cursor is on top of or under; that is the character *after* the cursor). The cursor and all characters after it move backwards. Therefore, if you typing a printing character and then type Rubout, they cancel out.

To end a line and start typing a new one, type Return. Return operates by inserting a *line-separator*, so if you type Return in the middle of a line, you break the line in two. Because a line-separator is just a single character, you can type Rubout at the beginning of a line to delete the line-separator and join it with the preceding line.

As a special case, if you type Return at the end of a line and there are two or more empty lines just below it, JOVE does not insert a line-separator but instead merely moves to the next (empty) line. This behavior is convenient when you want to add several lines of text in the middle of a buffer. You can use the Control-O (*newline-and-backup*) command to "open" several empty lines at once; then you can insert the new text, filling up these empty lines. The advantage is that JOVE does not have to redraw the bottom part of the screen for each Return you type, as it would ordinarily. That "redisplay" can be both slow and distracting.

If you add too many characters to one line, without breaking it with Return, the line will grow too long to display on one screen line. When this happens, JOVE puts an "!" at the extreme right margin, and doesn't bother to display the rest of the line unless the cursor happens to be in it. The "!" is not part of your text; conversely, even though you can't see the rest of your line, it's still there, and if you break the line, the "!" will go away.

Direct insertion works for printing characters and space, but other characters act as editing commands and do not insert themselves. If you need to insert a control character, Escape, or Rubout, you must first *quote* it by typing the Control-Q command first.

5.2. Moving the Cursor

To do more than insert characters, you have to know how to move the cursor. Here are a few of the commands for doing that.

C-A	Move to the beginning of the line.
C-E	Move to the end of the line.
C-F	Move forward over one character.
C-B	Move backward over one character.
C-N	Move down one line, vertically. If you start in the middle of one line, you end in the middle of the next.
C-P	Move up one line, vertically.
ESC <	Move to the beginning of the entire buffer.
ESC >	Move to the end of the entire buffer.
ESC ,	Move to the beginning of the visible window.
ESC .	Move to the end of the visible window.

5.3. Erasing Text

Rubout	Delete the character before the cursor.
C-D	Delete the character after the cursor.
C-K	Kill to the end of the line.

You already know about the Rubout command which deletes the character before the cursor. Another command, Control-D, deletes the character after the cursor, causing the rest of the text on the line to shift left. If Control-D is typed at the end of a line, that line and the next line are joined together.

To erase a larger amount of text, use the Control-K command, which kills a line at a time. If Control-K is done at the beginning or middle of a line, it kills all the text up to the end of the line. If Control-K is done at the end of a line, it joins that line and the next line. If Control-K is done twice, it kills the rest of the line and the line separator also.

5.4. Files — Saving Your Work

The commands above are sufficient for creating text in the JOVE buffer. The more advanced JOVE commands just make things easier. But to keep any text permanently you must put it in a *file*. Files are the objects which UNIX† uses for storing data for a length of time. To tell JOVE to read text into a file, choose a filename, such as *foo.bar*, and type C-X C-R *foo.bar*<return>. This reads the file *foo.bar* so that its contents appear on the screen for editing. You can make changes, and then save the file by typing C-X C-S (save-file). This makes the changes permanent and actually changes the file *foo.bar*. Until then, the changes are only inside JOVE, and the file *foo.bar* is not really changed. If the file *foo.bar* doesn't exist, and you want to create it, read it as if it did exist. When you save your text with C-X C-S the file will be created.

5.5. Exiting and Pausing — Leaving JOVE

The command C-X C-C (*exit-jove*) will terminate the JOVE session and return to the shell. If there are modified but unsaved buffers, JOVE will ask you for confirmation, and you can abort the command, look at what buffers are modified but unsaved using C-X C-B (*list-buffers*), save the valuable ones, and then exit. If what you want to do, on the other hand, is *preserve* the editing session but return to the shell temporarily you can (under Berkeley UNIX only) issue the command ESC S (*pause-jove*), do your UNIX work within the c-shell, then return to JOVE using the *fg* command to resume editing at the point where you paused. For this sort of situation you might consider using an *interactive shell* (that is, a shell in a JOVE window) which lets you use editor commands to manipulate your UNIX commands (and their output) while never leaving the editor. (The interactive shell feature is described below.)

5.6. Giving Numeric Arguments to JOVE Commands

Any JOVE command can be given a *numeric argument*. Some commands interpret the argument as a repetition count. For example, giving an argument of ten to the C-F command (forward-character) moves forward ten characters. With these commands, no argument is equivalent to an argument of 1.

Some commands use the value of the argument, but do something peculiar (or nothing) when there is no argument. For example, ESC G (*goto-line*) with an argument **n** goes to the beginning of the **n**'th line. But ESC G with no argument doesn't do anything. Similarly, C-K with an argument kills that many lines, including their line separators. Without an argument, C-K when there is text on the line to the right of the cursor kills that text; when there is no text after the cursor, C-K deletes the line separator.

The fundamental way of specifying an argument is to use ESC followed by the digits of the argument, for example, ESC 123 ESC G to go to line 123. Negative arguments are allowed, although not all of the commands know what to do with one.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

Typing C-U means do the next command four times. Two such C-U's multiply the next command by sixteen. Thus, C-U C-U C-F moves forward sixteen characters. This is a good way to move forward quickly, since it moves about 1/4 of a line on most terminals. Other useful combinations are: C-U C-U C-N (move down a good fraction of the screen), C-U C-U C-O (make "a lot" of blank lines), and C-U C-K (kill four lines — note that typing C-K four times would kill 2 lines).

There are other, terminal-dependent ways of specifying arguments. They have the same effect but may be easier to type. If your terminal has a numeric keypad which sends something recognizably different from the ordinary digits, it is possible to program JOVE to to allow use of the numeric keypad for specifying arguments.

5.7. The Mark and the Region

In general, a command that processes an arbitrary part of the buffer must know where to start and where to stop. In JOVE, such commands usually operate on the text between point and *the mark.* This body of text is called *the region.* To specify a region, you set point to one end of it and mark at the other. It doesn't matter which one comes earlier in the text.

C-@ Set the mark where point is.

C-X C-X Interchange mark and point.

For example, if you wish to convert part of the buffer to all upper-case, you can use the C-X C-U command, which operates on the text in the region. You can first go to the beginning of the text to be capitalized, put the mark there, move to the end, and then type C-X C-U. Or, you can set the mark at the end of the text, move to the beginning, and then type C-X C-U. C-X C-U runs the command *case-region-upper*, whose name signifies that the region, or everything between point and mark, is to be capitalized.

The way to set the mark is with the C-@ command or (on some terminals) the C-Space command. They set the mark where point is. Then you can move point away, leaving mark behind. When the mark is set, "[Point pushed]" is printed on the message line.

Since terminals have only one cursor, there is no way for JOVE to show you where the mark is located. You have to remember. The usual solution to this problem is to set the mark and then use it soon, before you forget where it is. But you can see where the mark is with the command C-X C-X which puts the mark where point was and point where mark was. The extent of the region is unchanged, but the cursor and point are now at the previous location of the mark.

5.8. The Ring of Marks

Aside from delimiting the region, the mark is also useful for remembering a spot that you may want to go back to. To make this feature more useful, JOVE remembers 16 previous locations of the mark. Most commands that set the mark push the old mark onto this stack. To return to a marked location, use C-U C-@. This moves point to where the mark was, and restores the mark from the stack of former marks. So repeated use of this command moves point to all of the old marks on the stack, one by one. Since the stack is actually a ring, enough uses of C-U C-@ bring point back to where it was originally.

Some commands whose primary purpose is to move point a great distance take advantage of the stack of marks to give you a way to undo the command. The best example is ESC <, which moves to the beginning of the buffer. If there are more than 22 lines between the beginning of the buffer and point, ESC < sets the mark first, so that you can use C-U C-@ or C-X C-X to go back to where you were. You can change the number of lines from 22 since it is kept in the variable *mark-threshold.* By setting it to 0, you can make these commands always set the mark. By setting it to a very large number you can prevent these commands from ever setting the mark. If a command decides to set the mark, it prints the message *[Point pushed].*

5.9. Killing and Moving Text

The most common way of moving or copying text with JOVE is to kill it, and get it back again in one or more places. This is very safe because the last several pieces of killed text are all remembered, and it is versatile, because the many commands for killing syntactic units can also be used for moving those units. There are also other ways of moving text for special purposes.

5.10. Deletion and Killing

Most commands which erase text from the buffer save it so that you can get it back if you change your mind, or move or copy it to other parts of the buffer. These commands are known as *kill* commands. The rest of the commands that erase text do not save it; they are known as *delete* commands. The delete commands include C-D and Rubout, which delete only one character at a time, and those commands that delete only spaces or line separators. Commands that can destroy significant amounts of nontrivial data generally kill. A command's name and description will use the words *kill* or *delete* to say which one it does.

C-D	Delete next character.
Rubout	Delete previous character.
ESC \	Delete spaces and tabs around point.
C-X C-O	Delete blank lines around the current line.
C-K	Kill rest of line or one or more lines.
C-W	Kill region (from point to the mark).
ESC D	Kill word.
ESC Rubout	Kill word backwards.
ESC K	Kill to end of sentence.
C-X Rubout	Kill to beginning of sentence.

5.11. Deletion

The most basic delete commands are C-D and Rubout. C-D deletes the character after the cursor, the one the cursor is "on top of" or "underneath". The cursor doesn't move. Rubout deletes the character before the cursor, and moves the cursor back. Line separators act like normal characters when deleted. Actually, C-D and Rubout aren't always *delete* commands; if you give an argument, they *kill* instead. This prevents you from losing a great deal of text by typing a large argument to a C-D or Rubout.

The other delete commands are those which delete only formatting characters: spaces, tabs, and line separators. ESC \ (*delete-white-space*) deletes all the spaces and tab characters before and after point. C-X C-O (*delete-blank-lines*) deletes all blank lines after the current line, and if the current line is blank deletes all the blank lines preceding the current line as well (leaving one blank line, the current line).

5.12. Killing by Lines

The simplest kill command is the C-K command. If issued at the beginning of a line, it kills all the text on the line, leaving it blank. If given on a line containing only white space (blanks and tabs) the line disappears. As a consequence, if you go to the front of a non-blank line and type two C-K's, the line disappears completely.

More generally, C-K kills from point up to the end of the line, unless it is at the end of a line. In that case, it kills the line separator following the line, thus merging the next line into the current one. Invisible spaces and tabs at the end of the line are ignored when deciding which case applies, so if point appears to be at the end of the line, you can be sure the line separator will be killed.

C-K with an argument of zero kills all the text before point on the current line.

5.13. Other Kill Commands

A kill command which is very general is C-W (*kill-region*), which kills everything between point and the mark.* With this command, you can kill and save contiguous characters, if you first set the mark at one end of them and go to the other end.

Other syntactic units can be killed, too; words, with ESC Rubout and ESC D; and, sentences, with ESC K and C-X Rubout.

5.14. Un-killing

Un-killing (yanking) is getting back text which was killed. The usual way to move or copy text is to kill it and then un-kill it one or more times.

C-Y Yank (re-insert) last killed text.

ESC Y Replace re-inserted killed text with the previously killed text.

ESC W Save region as last killed text without killing.

Killed text is pushed onto a *ring buffer* called the *kill ring* that remembers the last 10 blocks of text that were killed. (Why it is called a ring buffer will be explained below). The command C-Y (*yank*) reinserts the text of the most recent kill. It leaves the cursor at the end of the text, and puts the mark at the beginning. Thus, a single C-Y undoes the C-W.

If you wish to copy a block of text, you might want to use ESC W (*copy-region*), which copies the region into the kill ring without removing it from the buffer. This is approximately equivalent to C-W followed by C-Y, except that ESC W does not mark the buffer as "changed" and does not cause the screen to be rewritten.

There is only one kill ring shared among all the buffers. After visiting a new file, whatever was last killed in the previous file is still on top of the kill ring. This is important for moving text between files.

5.15. Appending Kills

Normally, each kill command pushes a new block onto the kill ring. However, two or more kill commands immediately in a row (without any other intervening commands) combine their text into a single entry on the ring, so that a single C-Y command gets it all back as it was before it was killed. This means that you don't have to kill all the text in one command; you can keep killing line after line, or word after word, until you have killed it all, and you can still get it all back at once.

Commands that kill forward from *point* add onto the end of the previous killed text. Commands that kill backward from *point* add onto the beginning. This way, any sequence of mixed forward and backward kill commands puts all the killed text into one entry without needing rearrangement.

5.16. Un-killing Earlier Kills

To recover killed text that is no longer the most recent kill, you need the ESC Y (*yank-pop*) command. The ESC Y command can be used only after a C-Y (yank) command or another ESC Y. It takes the un-killed text inserted by the C-Y and replaces it with the text from an earlier kill. So, to recover the text of the next-to-the-last kill, you first use C-Y to recover the last kill, and then discard it by use of ESC Y to move back to the previous kill.

You can think of all the last few kills as living on a ring. After a C-Y command, the text at the front of the ring is also present in the buffer. ESC Y "rotates" the ring bringing the previous string of text to the front and this text replaces the other text in the buffer as well. Enough ESC Y commands can rotate any part of the ring to the front, so you can get at any killed text so long as it is recent enough to be still in the ring. Eventually the ring rotates all the way around and the most recently killed text comes to the front (and into the buffer) again. ESC Y with a negative argument rotates the ring backwards.

---

*Often users switch this binding from C-W to C-X C-K because it is too easy to hit C-W accidentally.

When the text you are looking for is brought into the buffer, you can stop doing ESC Y's and the text will stay there. It's really just a copy of what's at the front of the ring, so editing it does not change what's in the ring. And the ring, once rotated, stays rotated, so that doing another C-Y gets another copy of what you rotated to the front with ESC Y.

If you change your mind about un-killing, C-W gets rid of the un-killed text, even after any number of ESC Y's.

6. Searching

The search commands are useful for finding and moving to arbitrary positions in the buffer in one swift motion. For example, if you just ran the spell program on a paper and you want to correct some word, you can use the search commands to move directly to that word. There are two flavors of search: *string search* and *incremental search*. The former is the default flavor—if you want to use incremental search you must rearrange the key bindings (see below).

6.1. Conventional Search

C-S Search forward.

C-R Search backward.

To search for the string "FOO" you type "C-S FOO<return>". If JOVE finds FOO it moves point to the end of it; otherwise JOVE prints an error message and leaves point unchanged. C-S searches forward from point so only occurrences of FOO after point are found. To search in the other direction use C-R. It is exactly the same as C-S except it searches in the opposite direction, and if it finds the string, it leaves point at the beginning of it, not at the end as in C-S.

While JOVE is searching it prints the search string on the message line. This is so you know what JOVE is doing. When the system is heavily loaded and editing in exceptionally large buffers, searches can take several (sometimes many) seconds.

JOVE remembers the last search string you used, so if you want to search for the same string you can type "C-S <return>". If you mistyped the last search string, you can type C-S followed by C-R. C-R, as usual, inserts the default search string into the minibuffer, and then you can fix it up.

6.2. Incremental Search

This search command is unusual in that is is *incremental*; it begins to search before you have typed the complete search string. As you type in the search string, JOVE shows you where it would be found. When you have typed enough characters to identify the place you want, you can stop. Depending on what you will do next, you may or may not need to terminate the search explicitly with a Return first.

The command to search is C-S (*i-search-forward*). C-S reads in characters and positions the cursor at the first occurrence of the characters that you have typed so far. If you type C-S and then F, the cursor moves in the text just after the next "F". Type an "O", and see the cursor move to after the next "FO". After another "O", the cursor is after the next "FOO". At the same time, the "FOO" has echoed on the message line.

If you type a mistaken character, you can rub it out. After the FOO, typing a Rubout makes the "O" disappear from the message line, leaving only "FO". The cursor moves back in the buffer to the "FO". Rubbing out the "O" and "F" moves the cursor back to where you started the search.

When you are satisfied with the place you have reached, you can type a Return, which stops searching, leaving the cursor where the search brought it. Also, any command not specially meaningful in searches stops the searching and is then executed. Thus, typing C-A would exit the search and then move to the beginning of the line. Return is necessary only if the next character you want to type is a printing character, Rubout, Return, or another search command, since those are the characters that have special meanings inside the search.

Sometimes you search for "FOO" and find it, but not the one you hoped to find. Perhaps there is a second FOO that you forgot about, after the one you just found. Then type another C-S and the

cursor will find the next FOO. This can be done any number of times. If you overshoot, you can return to previous finds by rubbing out the C-S's.

After you exit a search, you can search for the same string again by typing just C-S C-S: one C-S command to start the search and then another C-S to mean "search again for the same string".

If your string is not found at all, the message line says "Failing I-search". The cursor is after the place where JOVE found as much of your string as it could. Thus, if you search for FOOT and there is no FOOT, you might see the cursor after the FOO in FOOL. At this point there are several things you can do. If your string was mistyped, you can rub some of it out and correct it. If you like the place you have found, you can type Return or some other JOVE command to "accept what the search offered". Or you can type C-G, which undoes the search altogether and positions you back where you started the search.

You can also type C-R at any time to start searching backwards. If a search fails because the place you started was too late in the file, you should do this. Repeated C-R's keep looking backward for more occurrences of the last search string. A C-S starts going forward again. C-R's can be rubbed out just like anything else.

6.3. Searching with Regular Expressions

In addition to the searching facilities described above, JOVE can search for patterns using regular expressions. The handling of regular expressions in JOVE is like that of *ed(1)* or *vi(1)*, but with some notable additions. The extra metacharacters understood by JOVE are \<, \>, \| and \{. The first two of these match the beginnings and endings of words; Thus the search pattern, "\<Exec" would match all words beginning with the letters "Exec".

An \| signals the beginning of an alternative — that is, the pattern "foo\|bar" would match either "foo" or "bar". The "curly brace" is a way of introducing several sub-alternatives into a pattern. It parallels the [] construct of regular expressions, except it specifies a list of alternative words instead of just alternative characters. So the pattern "foo\{bar,baz\}bie" matches "foobarbie" or "foobazbie".

JOVE only regards metacharacters as special if the variable *match-regular-expressions* is set to "on". The ability to have JOVE ignore these characters is useful if you're editing a document about patterns and regular expressions or when a novice is learning JOVE.

Another variable that affects searching is *case-ignore-search*. If this variable is set to "on" then upper case and lower case letters are considered equal.

7. Replacement Commands

Global search-and-replace operations are not needed as often in JOVE as they are in other editors, but they are available. In addition to the simple Replace operation which is like that found in most editors, there is a Query Replace operation which asks, for each occurrence of the pattern, whether to replace it.

7.1. Global replacement

To replace every occurrence of FOO after point with BAR, you can do, e.g., "ESC R FOO<return>BAR" as the *replace-string* command is bound to the ESC R. Replacement takes place only between point and the end of the buffer so if you want to cover the whole buffer you must go to the beginning first.

7.2. Query Replace

If you want to change only some of the occurrences of FOO, not all, then the global *replace-string* is inappropriate; Instead, use, e.g., "ESC Q FOO<return>BAR", to run the command *query-replace-string*. This displays each occurrence of FOO and waits for you to say whether to replace it with a BAR. The things you can type when you are shown an occurrence of FOO are:

Space to replace the FOO.

Rubout	to skip to the next FOO without replacing this one.
Return	to stop without doing any more replacements.
Period	to replace this FOO and then stop.
! or P	to replace all remaining FOO's without asking.
C-R or R	to enter a recursive editing level, in case the FOO needs to be edited rather than just replaced with a BAR. When you are done, exit the recursive editing level with C-X C-C and the next FOO will be displayed.
C-W	to delete the FOO, and then start editing the buffer. When you are finished editing whatever is to replace the FOO, exit the recursive editing level with C-X C-C and the next FOO will be displayed.
U	move to the last replacement and undo it.

Another alternative is using *replace-in-region* which is just like *replace-string* except it searches only within the region.

8. Commands for English Text

JOVE has many commands that work on the basic units of English text: words, sentences and paragraphs.

8.1. Word Commands

JOVE has commands for moving over or operating on words. By convention, they are all ESC commands.

ESC F	Move Forward over a word.
ESC B	Move Backward over a word.
ESC D	Kill forward to the end of a word.
ESC Rubout	Kill backward to the beginning of a word.

Notice how these commands form a group that parallels the character- based commands, C-F, C-B, C-D, and Rubout.

The commands ESC F and ESC B move forward and backward over words. They are thus analogous to Control-F and Control-B, which move over single characters. Like their Control- analogues, ESC F and ESC B move several words if given an argument. ESC F with a negative argument moves backward like ESC B, and ESC B with a negative argument moves forward. Forward motion stops right after the last letter of the word, while backward motion stops right before the first letter.

It is easy to kill a word at a time. ESC D kills the word after point. To be precise, it kills everything from point to the place ESC F would move to. Thus, if point is in the middle of a word, only the part after point is killed. If some punctuation comes after point, and before the next word, it is killed along with the word. If you wish to kill only the next word but not the punctuation, simply do ESC F to get to the end, and kill the word backwards with ESC Rubout. ESC D takes arguments just like ESC F.

ESC Rubout kills the word before point. It kills everything from point back to where ESC B would move to. If point is after the space in "FOO, BAR", then "FOO, " is killed. If you wish to kill just "FOO", then do a ESC B and a ESC D instead of a ESC Rubout.

8.2. Sentence Commands

The JOVE commands for manipulating sentences and paragraphs are mostly ESC commands, so as to resemble the word-handling commands.

ESC A	Move back to the beginning of the sentence.

ESC E	Move forward to the end of the sentence.
ESC K	Kill forward to the end of the sentence.
C-X Rubout	Kill back to the beginning of the sentence.

The commands ESC A and ESC E move to the beginning and end of the current sentence, respectively. They were chosen to resemble Control-A and Control-E, which move to the beginning and end of a line. Unlike them, ESC A and ESC E if repeated or given numeric arguments move over successive sentences. JOVE considers a sentence to end wherever there is a ".", "?", or "!" followed by the end of a line or by one or more spaces. Neither ESC A nor ESC E moves past the end of the line or spaces which delimit the sentence.

Just as C-A and C-E have a kill command, C-K, to go with them, so ESC A and ESC E have a corresponding kill command ESC K which kills from point to the end of the sentence. With minus one as an argument it kills back to the beginning of the sentence. Positive arguments serve as a repeat count.

There is a special command, C-X Rubout for killing back to the beginning of a sentence, because this is useful when you change your mind in the middle of composing text.

8.3. Paragraph Commands

The JOVE commands for handling paragraphs are

ESC [	Move back to previous paragraph beginning.
ESC]	Move forward to next paragraph end.

ESC [moves to the beginning of the current or previous paragraph, while ESC] moves to the end of the current or next paragraph. Paragraphs are delimited by lines of differing indent, or lines with text formatter commands, or blank lines. JOVE knows how to deal with most indented paragraphs correctly, although it can get confused by one- or two-line paragraphs delimited only by indentation.

8.4. Text Indentation Commands

Tab	Indent "appropriately" in a mode-dependent fashion.
LineFeed	Is the same as Return, except it copies the indent of the line you just left.
ESC M	Moves to the line's first non-blank character.

The way to request indentation is with the Tab command. Its precise effect depends on the major mode. In *Text* mode, it indents to the next tab stop. In *C* mode, it indents to the "right" position for C programs.

To move over the indentation on a line, do ESC M (*first-non-blank*). This command, given anywhere on a line, positions the cursor at the first non-blank, non-tab character on the line.

8.5. Text Filling

Auto Fill mode causes text to be *filled* (broken up into lines that fit in a specified width) automatically as you type it in. If you alter existing text so that it is no longer properly filled, JOVE can fill it again if you ask.

Entering *Auto Fill* mode is done with ESC X *auto-fill-mode*. >From then on, lines are broken automatically at spaces when they get longer than the desired width. To leave *Auto Fill* mode, once again execute ESC X *auto-fill-mode*. When *Auto Fill* mode is in effect, the word **Fill** appears in the mode line.

If you edit the middle of a paragraph, it may no longer correctly be filled. To refill a paragraph, use the command ESC J (*fill-paragraph*). It causes the paragraph that point is inside to be filled. All the line breaks are removed and new ones inserted where necessary.

The maximum line width for filling is in the variable *right-margin*. Both ESC J and auto-fill make sure that no line exceeds this width. The value of *right-margin* is initially 72.

Normally ESC J figures out the indent of the paragraph and uses that same indent when filling. If you want to change the indent of a paragraph you set *left-margin* to the new position and type C-U ESC J. *fill-paragraph*, when supplied a numeric argument, uses the value of *left-margin*.

If you know where you want to set the right margin but you don't know the actual value, move to where you want to set the value and use the *right-margin-here* command. *left-margin-here* does the same for the *left-margin* variable.

8.6. Case Conversion Commands

ESC L	Convert following word to lower case.
ESC U	Convert following word to upper case.
ESC C	Capitalize the following word.

The word conversion commands are most useful. ESC L converts the word after point to lower case, moving past it. Thus, successive ESC L's convert successive words. ESC U converts to all capitals instead, while ESC C puts the first letter of the word into upper case and the rest into lower case. All these commands convert several words at once if given an argument. They are especially convenient for converting a large amount of text from all upper case to mixed case, because you can move through the test using ESC L, ESC U or ESC C on each word as appropriate.

When given a negative argument, the word case conversion commands apply to the appropriate number of words before point, but do not move point. This is convenient when you have just typed a word in the wrong case. You can give the case conversion command and continue typing.

If a word case conversion command is given in the middle of a word, it applies only to the part of the word which follows the cursor, treating it as a whole word.

The other case conversion functions are *case-region-upper* and *case-region-lower*, which convert everything between point and mark to the specified case. Point and mark remain unchanged.

8.7. Commands for Fixing Typos

In this section we describe the commands that are especially useful for the times when you catch a mistake on your text after you have made it, or change your mind while composing text on line.

Rubout	Delete last character.
ESC Rubout	Kill last word.
C-X Rubout	Kill to beginning of sentence.
C-T	Transpose two characters.
C-X C-T	Transpose two lines.
ESC Minus ESC L	Convert last word to lower case.
ESC Minus ESC U	Convert last word to upper case.
ESC Minus ESC C	Convert last word to lower case with capital initial.

8.8. Killing Your Mistakes

The Rubout command is the most important correction command. When used among printing (self-inserting) characters, it can be thought of as canceling the last character typed.

When your mistake is longer than a couple of characters, it might be more convenient to use ESC Rubout or C-X Rubout. ESC Rubout kills back to the start of the last word, and C-X Rubout kills back to the start of the last sentence. C-X Rubout is particularly useful when you are thinking of what to write as you type it, in case you change your mind about phrasing. ESC Rubout and C-X Rubout save the killed text for C-Y and ESC Y to retrieve.

ESC Rubout is often useful even when you have typed only a few characters wrong, if you know you are confused in your typing and aren't sure what you typed. At such a time, you cannot correct with Rubout except by looking at the screen to see what you did. It requires less thought to kill the whole

word and start over again, especially if the system is heavily loaded.

If you were typing a command or command parameters, C-G will abort the command with no further processing.

8.9. Transposition

The common error of transposing two characters can be fixed with the C-T (*transpose-characters*) command. Normally, C-T transposes the two characters on either side of the cursor and moves the cursor forward one character. Repeating the command several times "drags" a character to the right. (Remember that *point* is considered to be between two characters, even though the visible cursor in your terminal is on only one of them.) When given at the end of a line, rather than switching the last character of the line with the line separator, which would be useless, C-T transposes the last two characters on the line. So, if you catch your transposition error right away, you can fix it with just a C-T. If you don't catch it so fast, you must move the cursor back to between the two characters.

To transpose two lines, use the C-X C-T (*transpose-lines*) command. The line containing the cursor is exchanged with the line above it; the cursor is left at the beginning of the line following its original position.

8.10. Checking and Correcting Spelling

When you write a paper, you should correct its spelling at some point close to finishing it. To correct the entire buffer, do ESC X *spell-buffer*. This invokes the UNIX *spell* program, which prints a list of all the misspelled words. JOVE catches the list and places it in a JOVE buffer called **Spell**. You are given an opportunity to delete from that buffer any words that aren't really errors; then JOVE looks up each misspelled word and remembers where it is in the buffer being corrected. Then you can go forward to each misspelled word with C-X C-N (*next-error*) and backward with C-X C-P (*previous-error*). See the section entitled *Error Message Parsing*.

9. File Handling

The basic unit of stored data is the file. Each program, each paper, lives usually in its own file. To edit a program or paper, the editor must be told the name of the file that contains it. This is called *visiting* a file. To make your changes to the file permanent on disk, you must *save* the file.

9.1. Visiting Files

C-X C-V	Visit a file.
C-X C-R	Same as C-X C-V.
C-X C-S	Save the visited file.
ESC ~	Tell JOVE to forget that the buffer has been changed.

Visiting a file means copying its contents into JOVE where you can edit them. JOVE remembers the name of the file you visited. Unless you use the multiple buffer feature of JOVE, you can only be visiting one file at a time. The name of the current selected buffer is visible in the mode line.

The changes you make with JOVE are made in a copy inside JOVE. The file itself is not changed. The changed text is not permanent until you *save* it in a file. The first time you change the text, an asterisk appears at the end of the mode line; this indicates that the text contains fresh changes which will be lost unless you save them.

To visit a file, use the command C-X C-V. Follow the command with the name of the file you wish to visit, terminated by a Return. You can abort the command by typing C-G, or edit the filename with many of the standard JOVE commands (e.g., C-A, C-E, C-F, ESC F, ESC Rubout). If the filename you wish to visit is similar to the filename in the mode line (the default filename), you can type C-R to insert the default and then edit it. If you do type a Return to finish the command, the new file's text appears on the screen, and its name appears in the mode line. In addition, its name becomes the new default filename.

If you wish to save the file and make your changes permanent, type C-X C-S. After the save is finished, C-X C-S prints the filename and the number of characters and lines that it wrote to the file. If there are no changes to save (no asterisk at the end of the mode line), the file is not saved; otherwise the changes saved and the asterisk at the end of the mode line will disappear.

What if you want to create a file? Just visit it. JOVE prints *(New file)* but aside from that behaves as if you had visited an existing empty file. If you make any changes and save them, the file is created. If you visit a nonexistent file unintentionally (because you typed the wrong filename), go ahead and visit the file you meant. If you don't save the unwanted file, it is not created.

If you alter one file and then visit another in the same buffer, JOVE offers to save the old one. If you answer YES, the old file is saved; if you answer NO, all the changes you have made to it since the last save are lost. You should not type ahead after a file visiting command, because your type-ahead might answer an unexpected question in a way that you would regret.

Sometimes you will change a buffer by accident. Even if you undo the effect of the change by editing, JOVE still knows that "the buffer has been changed". You can tell JOVE to pretend that there have been no changes with the ESC ~ command (*make-buffer-unmodified*). This command simply clears the "modified" flag which says that the buffer contains changes which need to be saved. Even if the buffer really *is* changed JOVE will still act as if it were not.

If JOVE is about to save a file and sees that the date of the version on disk does not match what JOVE last read or wrote, JOVE notifies you of this fact, and asks what to do, because this probably means that something is wrong. For example, somebody else may have been editing the same file. If this is so, there is a good chance that your work or his work will be lost if you don't take the proper steps. You should first find out exactly what is going on. If you determine that somebody else has modified the file, save your file under a different filename and then DIFF the two files to merge the two sets of changes. (The "patch" command is useful for applying the results of context diffs directly). Also get in touch with the other person so that the files don't diverge any further.

9.2. How to Undo Drastic Changes to a File

If you have made several extensive changes to a file and then change your mind about them, and you haven't yet saved them, you can get rid of them by reading in the previous version of the file. You can do this with the C-X C-V command, to visit the unsaved version of the file.

9.3. Recovering from system/editor crashes

JOVE does not have *Auto Save* mode, but it does provide a way to recover your work in the event of a system or editor crash. JOVE saves information about the files you're editing every so many changes to a buffer to make recovery possible. Since a relatively small amount of information is involved it's hardly even noticeable when JOVE does this. The variable "sync-frequency" says how often to save the necessary information, and the default is every 50 changes. 50 is a very reasonable number: if you are writing a paper you will not lose more than the last 50 characters you typed, which is less than the average length of a line.

9.4. Miscellaneous File Operations

ESC X *write-file* <file><return> writes the contents of the buffer into the file <file>, and then visits that file. It can be thought of as a way of "changing the name" of the file you are visiting. Unlike C-X C-S, *write-file* saves even if the buffer has not been changed. C-X C-W is another way of getting this command.

ESC X *insert-file* <file><return> inserts the contents of <file> into the buffer at point, leaving point unchanged before the contents. You can also use C-X C-I to get this command.

ESC X *write-region* <file><return> writes the region (the text between point and mark) to the specified file. It does not set the visited filename. The buffer is not changed.

ESC X *append-region* <file><return> appends the region to <file>. The text is added to the end of <file>.

10. Using Multiple Buffers

When we speak of "the buffer", which contains the text you are editing, we have given the impression that there is only one. In fact, there may be many of them, each with its own body of text. At any time only one buffer can be *selected* and available for editing, but it isn't hard to switch to a different one. Each buffer individually remembers which file it is visiting, what modes are in effect, and whether there are any changes that need saving.

C-X B	Select or create a buffer.
C-X C-F	Visit a file in its own buffer.
C-X C-B	List the existing buffers.
C-X K	Kill a buffer.

Each buffer in JOVE has a single name, which normally doesn't change. A buffer's name can be any length. The name of the currently selected buffer and the name of the file visited in it are visible in the mode line when you are at top level. A newly started JOVE has only one buffer, named **Main**, unless you specified files to edit in the shell command that started JOVE.

10.1. Creating and Selecting Buffers

To create a new buffer, you need only think of a name for it (say, FOO) and then do C-X B FOO<return>, which is the command C-X B (*select-buffer*) followed by the name. This makes a new, empty buffer (if one by that name didn't previously exist) and selects it for editing. The new buffer is not visiting any file, so if you try to save it you will be asked for the filename to use. Each buffer has its own major mode; the new buffer's major mode is *Text* mode by default.

To return to buffer FOO later after having switched to another, the same command C-X B FOO<return> is used, since C-X B can tell whether a buffer named FOO exists already or not. C-X B Main<return> reselects the buffer Main that JOVE started out with. Just C-X B<return> reselects the previous buffer. Repeated C-X B<return>'s alternate between the last two buffers selected.

You can also read a file into its own newly created buffer, all with one command: C-X C-F (*find-file*), followed by the filename. The name of the buffer is the last element of the file's pathname. C-F stands for "Find", because if the specified file already resides in a buffer in your JOVE, that buffer is reselected. So you need not remember whether you have brought the file in already or not. A buffer created by C-X C-F can be reselected later with C-X B or C-X C-F, whichever you find more convenient. Nonexistent files can be created with C-X C-F just as they can with C-X C-V.

10.2. Using Existing Buffers

To get a list of all the buffers that exist, do C-X C-B (*list-buffers*). Each buffer's type, name, and visited filename is printed. An asterisk before the buffer name indicates a buffer which contains changes that have not been saved. The number that appears at the beginning of a line in a C-X C-B listing is that buffer's *buffer number*. You can select a buffer by typing its number in place of its name. If a buffer with that number doesn't already exist, a new buffer is created with that number as its name.

If several buffers have modified text in them, you should save some of them with C-X C-M (*write-modified-files*). This finds all the buffers that need saving and then saves them. Saving the buffers this way is much easier and more efficient (but more dangerous) than selecting each one and typing C-X C-S. If you give C-X C-M an argument, JOVE will ask for confirmation before saving each buffer.

ESC X *rename-buffer* <new name><return> changes the name of the currently selected buffer.

ESC X *erase-buffer* <buffer name><return> erases the contents of the <buffer name> without deleting the buffer entirely.

10.3. Killing Buffers

After you use a JOVE for a while, it may fill up with buffers which you no longer need. Eventually you can reach a point where trying to create any more results in an "out of memory" or "out of lines"

error. When this happens you will want to kill some buffers with the C-X K (*delete-buffer*) command. You can kill the buffer FOO by doing C-X K FOO<return>. If you type C-X K <return> JOVE will kill the previously selected buffer. If you try to kill a buffer that needs saving JOVE will ask you to confirm it.

If you need to kill several buffers, use the command *kill-some-buffers*. This prompts you with the name of each buffer and asks for confirmation before killing that buffer.

11. Controlling the Display

Since only part of a large file will fit on the screen, JOVE tries to show the part that is likely to be interesting. The display control commands allow you to see a different part of the file.

C-L	Reposition point at a specified vertical position, OR clear and redraw the screen with point in the same place.
C-V	Scroll forwards (a screen or a few lines).
ESC V	Scroll backwards.
C-Z	Scroll forward some lines.
ESC Z	Scroll backwards some lines.

The terminal screen is rarely large enough to display all of your file. If the whole buffer doesn't fit on the screen, JOVE shows a contiguous portion of it, containing *point*. It continues to show approximately the same portion until point moves outside of what is displayed; then JOVE chooses a new portion centered around the new *point*. This is JOVE's guess as to what you are most interested in seeing, but if the guess is wrong, you can use the display control commands to see a different portion. The available screen area through which you can see part of the buffer is called *the window*, and the choice of where in the buffer to start displaying is also called *the window*. (When there is only one window, it plus the mode line and the input line take up the whole screen).

First we describe how JOVE chooses a new window position on its own. The goal is usually to place *point* half way down the window. This is controlled by the variable *scroll-step*, whose value is the number of lines above the bottom or below the top of the window that the line containing point is placed. A value of 0 (the initial value) means center *point* in the window.

The basic display control command is C-L (*redraw-display*). In its simplest form, with no argument, it tells JOVE to choose a new window position, centering point half way from the top as usual.

C-L with a positive argument chooses a new window so as to put point that many lines from the top. An argument of zero puts point on the very top line. Point does not move with respect to the text; rather, the text and point move rigidly on the screen.

If point stays on the same line, the window is first cleared and then redrawn. Thus, two C-L's in a row are guaranteed to clear the current window. ESC C-L will clear and redraw the entire screen.

The *scrolling* commands C-V, ESC V, C-Z, and ESC Z, let you move the whole display up or down a few lines. C-V (*next-page*) with an argument shows you that many more lines at the bottom of the screen, moving the text and point up together as C-L might. C-V with a negative argument shows you more lines at the top of the screen, as does ESC V (*previous-page*) with a positive argument.

To read the buffer a window at a time, use the C-V command with no argument. It takes the last line at the bottom of the window and puts it at the top, followed by nearly a whole window of lines not visible before. Point is put at the top of the window. Thus, each C-V shows the "next page of text", except for one line of overlap to provide context. To move backward, use ESC V without an argument, which moves a whole window backwards (again with a line of overlap).

C-Z and ESC Z scroll one line forward and one line backward, respectively. These are convenient for moving in units of lines without having to type a numeric argument.

11.1. Multiple Windows

JOVE allows you to split the screen into two or more *windows* and use them to display parts of different files, or different parts of the same file.

C-X 2	Divide the current window into two smaller ones.
C-X 1	Delete all windows but the current one.
C-X D	Delete current window.
C-X N	Switch to the next window.
C-X P	Switch to the previous window.
C-X O	Same as C-X P.
C-X ^	Make this window bigger.
ESC C-V	Scroll the other window.

When using *multiple window* mode, the text portion of the screen is divided into separate parts called *windows*, which can display different pieces of text. Each window can display different files, or parts of the same file. Only one of the windows is *active;* that is the window which the cursor is in. Editing normally takes place in that window alone. To edit in another window, you would give a command to move the cursor to the other window, and then edit there.

Each window displays a mode line for the buffer it's displaying. This is useful to keep track of which window corresponds with which file. In addition, the mode line serves as a separator between windows. By setting the variable *mode-line-should-standout* to "on" you can have JOVE display the mode-line in reverse video (assuming your particular terminal has the reverse video capability).

The command C-X 2 (*split-current-window*) enters multiple window mode. A new mode line appears across the middle of the screen, dividing the text display area into two halves. Both windows contain the same buffer and display the same position in it, namely where point was at the time you issued the command. The cursor moves to the second window.

To return to viewing only one window, use the command C-X 1 (*delete-other-windows*). The current window expands to fill the whole screen, and the other windows disappear until the next C-X 2. (The buffers and their contents are unaffected by any of the window operations).

While there is more than one window, you can use C-X N (*next-window*) to switch to the next window, and C-X P (*previous-window*) to switch to the previous one. If you are in the bottom window and you type C-X N, you will be placed in the top window, and the same kind of thing happens when you type C-X P in the top window, namely you will be placed in the bottom window. C-X O is the same as C-X P. It stands for "other window" because when there are only two windows, repeated use of this command will switch between the two windows.

Often you will be editing one window while using the other just for reference. Then, the command ESC C-V (*page-next-window*) is very useful. It scrolls the next window, as if you switched to the next window, typed C-V, and switched back, without your having to do all that. With a negative argument, ESC C-V will do an ESC V in the next window.

When a window splits, both halves are approximately the same size. You can redistribute the screen space between the windows with the C-X ^ (*grow-window*) command. It makes the currently selected window grow one line bigger, or as many lines as is specified with a numeric argument. Use ESC X *shrink-window* to make the current window smaller.

11.2. Multiple Windows and Multiple Buffers

Buffers can be selected independently in each window. The C-X B command selects a new buffer in whichever window contains the cursor. Other windows' buffers do not change.

You can view the same buffer in more than one window. Although the same buffer appears in both windows, they have different values of point, so you can move around in one window while the other window continues to show the same text. Then, having found one place you wish to refer to, you can go back into the other window with C-X O or C-X P to make your changes.

If you have the same buffer in both windows, you must beware of trying to visit a different file in one of the windows with C-X C-V, because if you bring a new file into this buffer, it will replaced the old file in *both* windows. To view different files in different windows, you must switch buffers in one of the windows first (with C-X B or C-X C-F, perhaps).

A convenient "combination" command for viewing something in another window is C-X 4 (*window-find*). With this command you can ask to see any specified buffer, file or tag in the other window. Follow the C-X 4 with either B and a buffer name, F and a filename, or T and a tag name. This switches to the other window and finds there what you specified. If you were previously in one-window mode, multiple-window mode is entered. C-X 4 B is similar to C-X 2 C-X B. C-X 4 F is similar to C-X 2 C-X C-F. C-X 4 T is similar to C-X 2 C-X T. The difference is one of efficiency, and also that C-X 4 works equally well if you are already using two windows.

12. Processes Under JOVE

Another feature in JOVE is its ability to interact with UNIX in a useful way. You can run other UNIX commands from JOVE and catch their output in JOVE buffers. In this chapter we will discuss the different ways to run and interact with UNIX commands.

12.1. Non-interactive UNIX commands

To run a UNIX command from JOVE just type "C-X !" followed by the name of the command terminated with Return. For example, to get a list of all the users on the system, you do:

C-X ! who<return>

Then JOVE picks a reasonable buffer in which the output from the command will be placed. E.g., "who" uses a buffer called **who**; "ps alx" uses **ps**; and "fgrep -n foo *.c" uses **fgrep**. If JOVE wants to use a buffer that already exists it first erases the old contents. If the buffer it selects holds a file, not output from a previous shell command, you must first delete that buffer with C-X K.

Once JOVE has picked a buffer it puts that buffer in a window so you can see the command's output as it is running. If there is only one window JOVE will automatically make another one. Otherwise, JOVE tries to pick the most convenient window which isn't the current one.

It's not a good idea to type anything while the command is running. There are two reasons for this:

(i) JOVE won't see the characters (thus won't execute them) until the command finishes, so you may forget what you've typed.

(ii) Although JOVE won't know what you've typed, it *will* know that you've typed something, and then it will try to be "smart" and not update the display until it's interpreted what you've typed. But, of course, JOVE won't interpret what you type until the UNIX command completes, so you're left with the uneasy feeling you get when you don't know what the hell the computer is doing*.

If you want to interrupt the command for some reason (perhaps you mistyped it, or you changed your mind) you can type C-]. Typing this inside JOVE while a process is running is the same as typing C-C when you are outside JOVE, namely the process stops in a hurry.

When the command finishes, JOVE puts you back in the window in which you started. Then it prints a message indicating whether or not the command completed successfully in its (the command's) opinion. That is, if the command had what it considers an error (or you interrupt it with C-]) JOVE will print an appropriate message.

---

*This is a bug and should be fixed, but probably won't be for a while.

12.2. Limitations of Non-Interactive Processes

The reason these are called non-interactive processes is that you can't type any input to them; you can't interact with them; they can't ask you questions because there is no way for you to answer. For example, you can't run a command interpreter (a shell), or *mail* or *crypt* with C-X ! because there is no way to provide it with input. Remember that JOVE (not the process in the window) is listening to your keyboard, and JOVE waits until the process dies before it looks at what you type.

C-X ! is useful for running commands that do some output and then exit. For example, it's very useful to use with the C compiler to catch compilation error messages (see Compiling C Programs), or with the *grep* commands.

12.3. Interactive Processes — Run a Shell in a Window

Some versions of JOVE† have the capability of running interactive processes. This is more useful than non-interactive processes for certain types of jobs:

(i) You can go off and do some editing while the command is running. This is useful for commands that do sporadic output and run for fairly long periods of time.

(ii) Unlike non-interactive processes, you can type input to these. In addition, you can edit what you type with the power of all the JOVE commands *before* you send the input to the process. This is a really important feature, and is especially useful for running a shell in a window.

(iii) Because you can continue with normal editing while one of the processes is running, you can create a bunch of contexts and manage them (select them, delete them, or temporarily put them aside) with JOVE's window and buffer mechanisms.

Although we may have given an image of processes being attached to *windows,* in fact they are attached to *buffers.* Therefore, once an *i-process* is running you can select another buffer into that window, or if you wish you can delete the window altogether. If you reselect that buffer later it will be up to date. That is, even though the buffer wasn't visible it was still receiving output from the process. You don't have to worry about missing anything when the buffer isn't visible.

12.4. Advantages of Running Processes in JOVE Windows.

There are several advantages to running a shell in a window. What you type isn't seen immediately by the process; instead JOVE waits until you type an entire line before passing it on to the process to read. This means that before you type <return> all of JOVE's editing capabilities are available for fixing errors on your input line. If you discover an error at the beginning of the line, rather than erasing the whole line and starting over, you can simply move to the error, correct it, move back and continue typing.

Another feature is that you have the entire history of your session in a JOVE buffer. You don't have to worry about output from a command moving past the top of the screen. If you missed some output you can move back through it with ESC V and other commands. In addition, you can save yourself retyping a command (or a similar one) by sending edited versions of previous commands, or edit the output of one command to become a list of commands to be executed ("immediate shell scripts").

12.5. Differences between Normal and I-process Buffers

JOVE behaves differently in several ways when you are in an *i-process* buffer. Most obviously, <return> does different things depending on both your position in the buffer and on the state of the process. In the normal case, when point is at the end of the buffer, Return does what you'd expect: it inserts a line-separator and then sends the line to the process. If you are somewhere else in the buffer, possibly positioned at a previous command that you want to edit, Return will place a copy of that line (with the prompt discarded if there is one) at the end of the buffer and move you there. Then you can edit the line and type Return as in the normal case. If the process has died for some reason, Return does nothing. It doesn't even insert itself. If that happens unexpectedly, you should

† For example, the version provided with 4.3BSD.

type ESC X *list-processes*<return> to get a list of each process and its state. If your process died abnormally, *list-processes* may help you figure out why.

12.6. How to Run a Shell in a Window

Type ESC X *i-shell*<return> to start up a shell. As with C-X !, JOVE will create a buffer, called **shell-1**, and select a window for this new buffer. But unlike C-X ! you will be left in the new window. Now, the shell process is said to be attached to **shell-1**, and it is considered an *i-process* buffer.

13. Directory Handling

To save having to use absolute pathnames when you want to edit a nearby file JOVE allows you to move around the UNIX filesystem just as the c-shell does. These commands are:

cd dir	Change to the specified directory.
pushd [dir]	Like *cd*, but save the old directory on the directory stack. With no directory argument, simply exchange the top two directories on the stack and *cd* to the new top.
popd	Take the current directory off the stack and *cd* to the directory now at the top.
dirs	Display the contents of the directory stack.

The names and behavior of these commands were chosen to mimic those in the c-shell.

14. Editing C Programs

This section details the support provided by JOVE for working on C programs.

14.1. Indentation Commands

To save having to lay out C programs "by hand", JOVE has an idea of the correct indentation of a line, based on the surrounding context. When you are in C Mode, JOVE treats tabs specially — typing a tab at the beginning of a new line means "indent to the right place". Closing braces are also handled specially, and are indented to match the corresponding open brace.

14.2. Parenthesis and Brace Matching

To check that parentheses and braces match the way you think they do, turn on *Show Match* mode (ESC X show-match-mode). Then, whenever you type a close brace or parenthesis, the cursor moves momentarily to the matching opener, if it's currently visible. If it's not visible, JOVE displays the line containing the matching opener on the message line.

14.3. C Tags

Often when you are editing a C program, especially someone else's code, you see a function call and wonder what that function does. You then search for the function within the current file and if you're lucky find the definition, finally returning to the original spot when you are done. However, if are unlucky, the function turns out to be external (defined in another file) and you have to suspend the edit, *grep* for the function name in every .c that might contain it, and finally visit the appropriate file.

To avoid this diversion or the need to remember which function is defined in which file, Berkeley UNIX has a program called *ctags(1)*, which takes a set of source files and looks for function definitions, producing a file called *tags* as its output.

JOVE has a command called C-X T (*find-tag*) that prompts you for the name of a function (a *tag*), looks up the tag reference in the previously constructed tags file, then visits the file containing that tag in a new buffer, with point positioned at the definition of the function. There is another version of this command, namely *find-tag-at-point*, that uses the identifier at *point*.

So, when you've added new functions to a module, or moved some old ones around, run the *ctags* program to regenerate the *tags* file. JOVE looks in the file specified in the *tag-file* variable. The default

is "./tags", that is, the tag file in the current directory. If you wish to use an alternate tag file, you use C-U C-X T, and JOVE will prompt for a file name. If you find yourself specifying the same file again and again, you can set *tag-file* to that file, and run *find-tag* with no numeric argument.

To begin an editing session looking for a particular tag, use the *-t tag* command line option to JOVE. For example, say you wanted to look at the file containing the tag *SkipChar*, you would invoke JOVE as:

% jove -t SkipChar

14.4. Compiling Your Program

You've typed in a program or altered an existing one and now you want to run it through the compiler to check for errors. To save having to suspend the edit, run the compiler, scribble down error messages, and then resume the edit, JOVE allows you to compile your code while in the editor. This is done with the C-X C-E (*compile-it*) command. If you run *compile-it* with no argument it runs the UNIX *make* program into a buffer; If you need a special command or want to pass arguments to *make*, run *compile-it* with any argument (C-U is good enough) and you will be prompted for the command to execute.

If any error messages are produced, they are treated specially by JOVE. That treatment is the subject of the next section.

14.5. Error Message Parsing and Spelling Checking

JOVE knows how to interpret the error messages from many UNIX commands; In particular, the messages from *cc*, *grep* and *lint* can be understood. After running the *compile-it* command, the *parse-errors* command is automatically executed, and any errors found are displayed in a new buffer. The files whose names are found in parsing the error messages are each brought into JOVE buffers and the point is positioned at the first error in the first file. The commands *current-error*, C-X C-N (*next-error*), and C-X C-P (*previous-error*) can be used to traverse the list of errors.

If you already have a file called *errs* containing, say, c compiler messages then you can get JOVE to interpret the messages by invoking it as:

% jove -p errs

JOVE has a special mechanism for checking the the spelling of a document; It runs the UNIX spell program into a buffer. You then delete from this buffer all those words that are not spelling errors and then JOVE runs the *parse-spelling-errors* command to yield a list of errors just as in the last section.

15. Simple Customization

15.1. Major Modes

To help with editing particular types of file, say a paper or a C program, JOVE has several *major modes*. These are as follows:

15.1.1. Text mode

This is the default major mode. Nothing special is done.

15.1.2. C mode

This mode affects the behavior of the tab and parentheses characters. Instead of just inserting the tab, JOVE determines where the text "ought" to line up for the C language and tabs to that position instead. The same thing happens with the close brace and close parenthesis; they are tabbed to the "right" place and then inserted. Using the *auto-execute-command* command, you can make JOVE enter *C Mode* whenever you edit a file whose name ends in *.c*.

15.1.3. Lisp mode

This mode is analogous to *C Mode*, but performs the indentation needed to lay out Lisp programs properly. Note also the *grind-s-expr* command that prettyprints an *s-expression* and the *kill-mode-expression* command.

15.2. Minor Modes

In addition to the major modes, JOVE has a set of minor modes. These are as follows:

15.2.1. Auto Indent

In this mode, JOVE indents each line the same way as that above it. That is, the Return key in this mode acts as the Linefeed key ordinarily does.

15.2.2. Show Match

Move the cursor momentarily to the matching opening parenthesis when a closing parenthesis is typed.

15.2.3. Auto Fill

In *Auto Fill* mode, a newline is automatically inserted when the line length exceeds the right margin. This way, you can type a whole paper without having to use the Return key.

15.2.4. Over Write

In this mode, any text typed in will replace the previous contents. (The default is for new text to be inserted and "push" the old along.) This is useful for editing an already-formatted diagram in which you want to change some things without moving other things around on the screen.

15.2.5. Word Abbrev

In this mode, every word you type is compared to a list of word abbreviations; whenever you type an abbreviation, it is replaced by the text that it abbreviates. This can save typing if a particular word or phrase must be entered many times. The abbreviations and their expansions are held in a file that looks like:

```
abbrev:phrase
```

This file can be set up in your *~/.joverc* with the *read-word-abbrev-file* command. Then, whenever you are editing a buffer in *Word Abbrev* mode, JOVE checks for the abbreviations you've given. See also the commands *read-word-abbrev-file*, *write-word-abbrev-file*, *edit-word-abbrevs*, *define-global-word-abbrev*, *define-mode-word-abbrev*, and *bind-macro-to-word-abbrev*, and the variable *auto-case-abbrev*.

15.3. Variables

JOVE can be tailored to suit your needs by changing the values of variables. A JOVE variable can be given a value with the *set* command, and its value displayed with the *print* command.

The variables JOVE understands are listed along with the commands in the alphabetical list at the end of this document.

15.4. Key Re-binding

Many of the commands built into JOVE are not bound to specific keys. The command handler in JOVE is used to invoke these commands and is activated by the *execute-extended-command* command (ESC X). When the name of a command typed in is unambiguous, that command will be executed. Since it is very slow to have to type in the name of each command every time it is needed, JOVE makes it possible to *bind* commands to keys. When a command is *bound* to a key any future hits on that key will invoke that command. All the printing characters are initially bound to the command *self-insert*. Thus, typing any printing character causes it to be inserted into the text. Any of the

existing commands can be bound to any key. (A *key* may actually be a *control character* or an *escape sequence* as explained previously under *Command Input Conventions*).

Since there are more commands than there are keys, two keys are treated as *prefix* commands. When a key bound to one of the prefix commands is typed, the next character typed is interpreted on the basis that it was preceded by one of the prefix keys. Initially ^X and ESC are the prefix keys and many of the built in commands are initially bound to these "two stroke" keys. (For historical reasons, the Escape key is often referred to as "Meta").

15.5. Keyboard Macros

Although JOVE has many powerful commands, you often find that you have a task that no individual command can do. JOVE allows you to define your own commands from sequences of existing ones "by example"; Such a sequence is termed a *macro*. The procedure is as follows: First you type the *start-remembering* command, usually bound to C-X (. Next you "perform" the commands which as they are being executed are also remembered, which will constitute the body of the macro. Then you give the *stop-remembering* command, usually bound to C-X). You now have a *keyboard macro*. To run this command sequence again, use the command *execute-keyboard-macro*, usually bound to C-X E. You may find this bothersome to type and re-type, so there is a way to bind the macro to a key. First, you must give the keyboard macro a name using the *name-keyboard-macro* command. Then the binding is made with the *bind-macro-to-key* command. We're still not finished because all this hard work will be lost if you leave JOVE. What you do is to save your macros into a file with the *write-macros-to-file* command. There is a corresponding *read-macros-from-file* command to retrieve your macros in the next editing session.

15.6. Initialization Files

Users will likely want to modify the default key bindings to their liking. Since it would be quite annoying to have to set up the bindings each time JOVE is started up, JOVE has the ability to read in a "startup" file. Whenever JOVE is started, it reads commands from the file *.joverc* in the user's home directory. These commands are read as if they were typed to the command handler (ESC X) during an edit. There can be only one command per line in the startup file. If there is a file */usr/lib/jove/joverc*, then this file will be read before the user's *.joverc* file. This can be used to set up a system-wide default startup mode for JOVE that is tailored to the needs of that system.

The *source* command can be used to read commands from a specified file at any time during an editing session, even from inside the *.joverc* file. This means that a macro can be used to change the key bindings, e.g., to enter a mode, by reading from a specified file which contains all the necessary bindings.

16. Alphabetical List of Commands and Variables

16.1. Prefix-1 (Escape)

This reads the next character and runs a command based on the character typed. If you wait for more than a second or so before typing the next character, the message "ESC" will be printed on the message line to remind you that JOVE is waiting for another character.

16.2. Prefix-2 (C-X)

This reads the next character and runs a command based on the character typed. If you wait for more than a second or so before typing another character, the message "C-X" will be printed on the message line to remind you that JOVE is waiting for another character.

16.3. Prefix-3 (Not Bound)

This reads the next character and runs a command based on the character typed. If you wait for more than a second or so before typing the next character, the character that invoked Prefix-3 will be printed on the message line to remind you that JOVE is waiting for another one.

16.4. allow-^S-and-^Q (variable)

This variable, when set, tells JOVE that your terminal does not need to use the characters C-S and C-Q for flow control, and that it is okay to bind things to them. This variable should be set depending upon what kind of terminal you have.

16.5. allow-bad-filenames (variable)

If set, this variable permits filenames to contain "bad" characters such as those from the set *&%!"'[]{}. These files are harder to deal with, because the characters mean something to the shell. The default value is "off".

16.6. append-region (Not Bound)

This appends the region to a specified file. If the file does not already exist it is created.

16.7. apropos (Not Bound)

This types out all the commands, variables and macros with the specific keyword in their names. For each command and macro that contains the string, the key sequence that can be used to execute the command or macro is printed; with variables, the current value is printed. So, to find all the commands that are related to windows, you type "ESC X apropos window<Return>".

16.8. auto-case-abbrev (variable)

When this variable is on (the default), word abbreviations are adjusted for case automatically. For example, if "jove" were the abbreviation for "jonathan's own version of emacs", then typing "jove" would give you "jonathan's own version of emacs", typing "Jove" would give you "Jonathan's own version of emacs", and typing "JOVE" would give you "Jonathan's Own Version of Emacs". When this variable is "off", upper and lower case are distinguished when looking for the abbreviation, i.e., in the example above, "JOVE" and "Jove" would not be expanded unless they were defined separately.

16.9. auto-execute-command (Not Bound)

This tells JOVE to execute a command automatically when a file whose name matches a specified pattern is visited. The first argument is the command you want executed and the second is a regular expression pattern that specifies the files that apply. For example, if you want to be in show-match-mode when you edit C source files (that is, files that end with ".c" or ".h") you can type

ESC X auto-execute-command show-match-mode .*.[ch]$

16.10. auto-execute-macro (Not Bound)

This is like *auto-execute-command* except you use it to execute macros automatically instead of built-in commands.

16.11. auto-fill-mode (Not Bound)

This turns on Auto Fill mode (or off if it's currently on) in the selected buffer. When JOVE is in Auto Fill mode it automatically breaks lines for you when you reach the right margin so you don't have to remember to hit Return. JOVE uses 78 as the right margin but you can change that by setting the variable *right-margin* to another value. See the *set* command to learn how to do this.

16.12. auto-indent-mode (Not Bound)

This turns on Auto Indent mode (or off if it's currently on) in the selected buffer. When JOVE is in Auto Indent mode, Return indents the new line to the same position as the line you were just on. This is useful for lining up C code (or any other language (but what else is there besides C?)). This is out of date because of the new command called *newline-and-indent* but it remains because of several "requests" on the part of, uh, enthusiastic and excitable users, that it be left as it is.

16.13. backward-character (C-B)

This moves point backward over a single character. If point is at the beginning of the line it moves to the end of the previous line.

16.14. backward-paragraph (ESC [)

This moves point backward to the beginning of the current or previous paragraph. Paragraphs are bounded by lines that begin with a Period or Tab, or by blank lines; a change in indentation may also signal a break between paragraphs, except that JOVE allows the first line of a paragraph to be indented differently from the other lines.

16.15. backward-s-expression (ESC C-B)

This moves point backward over a s-expression. It is just like *forward-s-expression* with a negative argument.

16.16. backward-sentence (ESC A)

This moves point backward to the beginning of the current or previous sentence. JOVE considers the end of a sentence to be the characters ".", "!" or "?" followed by a Return or by one or more spaces.

16.17. backward-word (ESC B)

This moves point backward to the beginning of the current or previous word.

16.18. bad-filename-extensions (variable)

This contains a list of words separated by spaces which are to be considered bad filename extensions, and so will not be counted in filename completion. The default is ".o" so if you have jove.c and jove.o in the same directory, the filename completion will *not* complain of an ambiguity because it will ignore jove.o.

16.19. beginning-of-file (ESC <)

This moves point backward to the beginning of the buffer. This sometimes prints the "Point Pushed" message. If the top of the buffer isn't on the screen JOVE will set the mark so you can go back to where you were if you want.

16.20. beginning-of-line (C-A)

This moves point to the beginning of the current line.

16.21. beginning-of-window (ESC ,)

This moves point to the beginning of the current window. The sequence "ESC ," is the same as "ESC <" (beginning of file) except without the shift key on the "<", and can thus can easily be remembered.

16.22. bind-to-key (Not Bound)

This attaches a key to an internal JOVE command so that future hits on that key invoke that command. For example, to make "C-W" erase the previous word, you type "ESC X bind-to-key kill-previous-word C-W".

16.23. bind-macro-to-key (Not Bound)

This is like *bind-to-key* except you use it to attach keys to named macros.

16.24. bind-macro-to-word-abbrev (Not Bound)

This command allows you to bind a macro to a previously defined word abbreviation. Whenever you type the abbreviation, it will first be expanded as an abbreviation, and then the macro will be executed. Note that if the macro moves around, you should set the mark first (C-@) and then exchange the point and mark last (C-X C-X).

16.25. buffer-position (Not Bound)

This displays the current file name, current line number, total number of lines, percentage of the way through the file, and the position of the cursor in the current line.

16.26. c-mode (Not Bound)

This turns on C mode in the currently selected buffer. This is one of currently four possible major modes: Fundamental, Text, C, Lisp. When in C or Lisp mode, Tab, "}", and ")" behave a little differently from usual: They are indented to the "right" place for C (or Lisp) programs. In JOVE, the "right" place is simply the way the author likes it (but I've got good taste).

16.27. case-character-capitalize (Not Bound)

This capitalizes the character after point, i.e., the character undo the cursor. If a negative argument is supplied that many characters *before* point are upper cased.

16.28. case-ignore-search (variable)

This variable, when set, tells JOVE to treat upper and lower case as the same when searching. Thus "jove" and "JOVE" would match, and "JoVe" would match either. The default value of this variable is "off".

16.29. case-region-lower (Not Bound)

This changes all the upper case letters in the region to their lower case equivalent.

16.30. case-region-upper (Not Bound)

This changes all the lower case letters in the region to their upper case equivalent.

16.31. case-word-capitalize (ESC C)

This capitalizes the current word by making the current letter upper case and making the rest of the word lower case. Point is moved to the end of the word. If point is not positioned on a word it is first moved forward to the beginning of the next word. If a negative argument is supplied that many words *before* point are capitalized. This is useful for correcting the word just typed without having to

move point to the beginning of the word yourself.

16.32. case-word-lower (ESC L)

This lower-cases the current word and leaves point at the end of it. If point is in the middle of a word the rest of the word is converted. If point is not in a word it is first moved forward to the beginning of the next word. If a negative argument is supplied that many words *before* point are converted to lower case. This is useful for correcting the word just typed without having to move point to the beginning of the word yourself.

16.33. case-word-upper (ESC U)

This upper-cases the current word and leaves point at the end of it. If point is in the middle of a word the rest of the word is converted. If point is not in a word it is first moved forward to the beginning of the next word. If a negative argument is supplied that many words *before* point are converted to upper case. This is useful for correcting the word just typed without having to move point to the beginning of the word yourself.

16.34. character-to-octal-insert (Not Bound)

This inserts a Back-slash followed by the ascii value of the next character typed. For example, "C-G" inserts the string "\007".

16.35. cd (Not Bound)

This changes the current directory.

16.36. clear-and-redraw (ESC C-L)

This clears the entire screen and redraws all the windows. Use this when JOVE gets confused about what's on the screen, or when the screen gets filled with garbage characters or output from another program.

16.37. comment-format (variable)

This variable tells JOVE how to format your comments when you run the command *fill-comment*. Its format is this:

<open pattern>%!<line header>%c<line trailer>%!<close pattern>

The %!, %c, and %! must appear in the format; everything else is optional. A newline (represented by %n) may appear in the open or close patterns. %% is the representation for %. The default comment format is for C comments. See *fill-comment* for more.

16.38. compile-it (C-X C-E)

This compiles your program by running the UNIX command "make" into a buffer, and automatically parsing the error messages that are created (if any). See the *parse-errors* and *parse-special-errors* commands. To compile a C program without "make", use "C-U C-X C-E" and JOVE will prompt for a command to run instead of make. (And then the command you type will become the default command.) You can use this to parse the output from the C compiler or the "grep" or "lint" programs.

16.39. continue-process (Not Bound)

This sends SIGCONT to the current interactive process, *if* the process is currently stopped.

16.40. copy-region (ESC W)

This takes all the text in the region and copies it onto the kill ring buffer. This is just like running *kill-region* followed by the *yank* command. See the *kill-region* and *yank* commands.

16.41. current-error (Not Bound)

This moves to the current error in the list of parsed errors. See the *next-error* and *previous-error* commands for more detailed information.

16.42. date (Not Bound)

This prints the date on the message line.

16.43. define-mode-word-abbrev (Not Bound)

This defines a mode-specific abbreviation.

16.44. define-global-word-abbrev (Not Bound)

This defines a global abbreviation.

16.45. delete-blank-lines (C-X C-O)

This deletes all the blank lines around point. This is useful when you previously opened many lines with "C-O" and now wish to delete the unused ones.

16.46. delete-buffer (C-X K)

This deletes a buffer and frees up all the memory associated with it. Be careful! Once a buffer has been deleted it is gone forever. JOVE will ask you to confirm if you try to delete a buffer that needs saving. This command is useful for when JOVE runs out of space to store new buffers.

16.47. delete-macro (Not Bound)

This deletes a macro from the list of named macros. It is an error to delete the keyboard-macro. Once the macro is deleted it is gone forever. If you are about to save macros to a file and decide you don't want to save a particular one, delete it.

16.48. delete-next-character (C-D)

This deletes the character that's just after point (that is, the character under the cursor). If point is at the end of a line, the line separator is deleted and the next line is joined with the current one.

16.49. delete-other-windows (C-X 1)

This deletes all the other windows except the current one. This can be thought of as going back into One Window mode.

16.50. delete-previous-character (Rubout)

This deletes the character that's just before point (that is, the character before the cursor). If point is at the beginning of the line, the line separator is deleted and that line is joined with the previous one.

16.51. delete-white-space (ESC \)

This deletes all the Tabs and Spaces around point.

16.52. delete-current-window (C-X D)

This deletes the current window and moves point into one of the remaining ones. It is an error to try to delete the only remaining window.

16.53. describe-bindings (Not Bound)

This types out a list containing each bound key and the command that gets invoked every time that key is typed. To make a wall chart of JOVE commands, set *send-typeout-to-buffer* to "on" and JOVE will store the key bindings in a buffer which you can save to a file and then print.

16.54. describe-command (Not Bound)

This prints some info on a specified command.

16.55. describe-key (Not Bound)

This waits for you to type a key and then tells the name of the command that gets invoked every time that key is hit. Once you have the name of the command you can use the *describe-command* command to find out exactly what it does.

16.56. describe-variable (Not Bound)

This prints some info on a specified variable.

16.57. digit (ESC [0-9])

This reads a numeric argument. When you type "ESC" followed by a number, "digit" keeps reading numbers until you type some other command. Then that command is executes with the numeric argument you specified.

16.58. digit-1 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 1". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.59. digit-2 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 2". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.60. digit-3 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 3". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.61. digit-4 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 4". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.62. digit-5 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 5". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.63. digit-6 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 6". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.64. digit-7 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 7". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.65. digit-8 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 8". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.66. digit-9 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 9". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.67. digit-0 (Not Bound)

This pretends you typed "ESC 0". This is useful for terminals that have keypads that send special sequences for numbers typed on the keypad as opposed to numbers typed from the keyboard. This can save having type "ESC" when you want to specify an argument.

16.68. dirs (Not Bound)

This prints out the directory stack. See the "cd", "pushd", "popd" commands for more info.

16.69. disable-biff (variable)

When this is set, JOVE disables biff when you're editing and enables it again when you get out of JOVE, or when you pause to the parent shell or push to a new shell. (This means arrival of new mail will not be immediately apparent but will not cause indiscriminate writing on the display). The default is "off".

16.70. dstop-process (Not Bound)

Send the "dsusp" character to the current process. This is the character that suspends a process on the next read from the terminal. Most people have it set to C-Y. This only works if you have the interactive process feature, and if you are in a buffer bound to a process.

16.71. edit-word-abbrevs (Not Bound)

This creates a buffer with a list of each abbreviation and the phrase it expands into, and enters a recursive edit to let you change the abbreviations or add some more. The format of this list is "abbreviation:phrase" so if you add some more you should follow that format. It's probably simplest just to copy some already existing abbreviations and edit them. When you are done you type "C-X C-C" to exit the recursive edit.

16.72. end-of-file (ESC >)

This moves point forward to the end of the buffer. This sometimes prints the "Point Pushed" message. If the end of the buffer isn't on the screen JOVE will set the mark so you can go back to where you were if you want.

16.73. end-of-line (C-E)

This moves point to the end of the current line. If the line is too long to fit on the screen JOVE will scroll the line to the left to make the end of the line visible. The line will slide back to its normal position when you move backward past the leftmost visible character or when you move off the line altogether.

16.74. end-of-window (ESC .)

This moves point to the last character in the window.

16.75. eof-process (Not Bound)

Sends EOF to the current interactive process. This only works on versions of JOVE which run under 4.2-3 BSD VAX UNIX. You can't send EOF to processes on the 2.9 BSD PDP-11 UNIX.

16.76. erase-buffer (Not Bound)

This erases the contents of the specified buffer. This is like *delete-buffer* except it only erases the contents of the buffer, not the buffer itself. If you try to erase a buffer that needs saving you will be asked to confirm it.

16.77. error-window-size (variable)

This is the percentage of the screen to use for the error-window on the screen. When you execute *compile-it error-window-size* percent of the screen will go to the error window. If the window already exists and is a different size, it is made to be this size. The default value is 20%.

16.78. exchange-point-and-mark (C-X C-X)

This moves point to mark and makes mark the old point. This is for quickly moving from one end of the region to another.

16.79. execute-named-command (ESC X)

This is the way to execute a command that isn't bound to any key. When you are prompted with ": " you can type the name of the command. You don't have to type the entire name. Once the command is unambiguous you can type Space and JOVE will fill in the rest for you. If you are not sure of the name of the command, type "?" and JOVE will print a list of all the commands that you could possibly match given what you've already typed. If you don't have any idea what the command's name is but you know it has something to do with windows (for example), you can do "ESC X apropos window" and JOVE will print a list of all the commands that are related to windows. If you find yourself constantly executing the same commands this way you probably want to bind them to keys so that you can execute them more quickly. See the *bind-to-key* command.

16.80. execute-keyboard-macro (C-X E)

This executes the keyboard macro. If you supply a numeric argument the macro is executed that many times.

16.81. execute-macro (Not Bound)

This executes a specified macro. If you supply a numeric argument the macro is executed that many times.

16.82. exit-jove (C-X C-C)

This exits JOVE. If any buffers need saving JOVE will print a warning message and ask for confirmation. If you leave without saving your buffers all your work will be lost. If you made a mistake and really do want to exit then you can. If you are in a recursive editing level *exit-jove* will return you from that.

16.83. file-creation-mode (variable)

This variable has an octal value. It contains the mode (see *chmod(1)*) with which files should be created. This mode gets modified by your current umask setting (see *umask(1)*). The default value is usually *0666* or *0644*.

16.84. files-should-end-with-newline (variable)

This variable indicates that all files should always have a newline at the end. This is often necessary for line printers and the like. When set, if JOVE is writing a file whose last character is not a newline,

it will add one automatically.

16.85. fill-comment (Not Bound)

This command fills in your C comments to make them pretty and readable. This filling is done according the variable *comment-format*.

```
/*
 * the default format makes comments like this.
 */
```

This can be changed by changing the format variable. Other languages may be supported by changing the format variable appropriately. The formatter looks backwards from dot for an open comment symbol. If found, all indentation is done relative the position of the first character of the open symbol. If there is a matching close symbol, the entire comment is formatted. If not, the region between dot and the open symbol is reformatted.

16.86. fill-paragraph (ESC J)

This rearranges words between lines so that all the lines in the current paragraph extend as close to the right margin as possible, ensuring that none of the lines will be greater than the right margin. The default value for *right-margin* is 78, but can be changed with the *set* and *right-margin-here* commands. JOVE has a complicated algorithm for determining the beginning and end of the paragraph. In the normal case JOVE will give all the lines the same indent as they currently have, but if you wish to force a new indent you can supply a numeric argument to *fill-paragraph* (e.g., by typing C-U ESC J) and JOVE will indent each line to the column specified by the *left-margin* variable. See also the *left-margin* variable and *left-margin-here* command.

16.87. fill-region (Not Bound)

This is like *fill-paragraph*, except it operates on a region instead of just a paragraph.

16.88. filter-region (Not Bound)

This sends the text in the region to a UNIX command, and replaces the region with the output from that command. For example, if you are lazy and don't like to take the time to write properly indented C code, you can put the region around your C file and *filter-region* it through *cb*, the UNIX C beautifier. If you have a file that contains a bunch of lines that need to be sorted you can do that from inside JOVE too, by filtering the region through the *sort* UNIX command. Before output from the command replaces the region JOVE stores the old text in the kill ring, so if you are unhappy with the results you can easily get back the old text with "C-Y".

16.89. find-file (C-X C-F)

This visits a file into its own buffer and then selects that buffer. If you've already visited this file in another buffer, that buffer is selected. If the file doesn't yet exist, JOVE will print "(New file)" so that you know.

16.90. find-tag (C-X T)

This finds the file that contains the specified tag. JOVE looks up tags by default in the "tags" file in the current directory. You can change the default tag name by setting the *tag-file* variable to another name. If you specify a numeric argument to this command, you will be prompted for a tag file. This is a good way to specify another tag file without changing the default. If the tag cannot be found the error is reported and point stays where it is.

16.91. find-tag-at-point (Not Bound)

This finds the file that contains the tag that point is currently on. See *find-tag*.

16.92. first-non-blank (ESC M)

This moves point back to the indent of the current line.

16.93. forward-character (C-F)

This moves forward over a single character. If point is at the end of the line it moves to the beginning of the next one.

16.94. forward-paragraph (ESC])

This moves point forward to the end of the current or next paragraph. Paragraphs are bounded by lines that begin with a Period or Tab, or by blank lines; a change in indentation may also signal a break between paragraphs, except that JOVE allows the first line of a paragraph to be indented differently from the other lines.

16.95. forward-s-expression (ESC C-F)

This moves point forward over a s-expression. If the first significant character after point is "(", this moves past the matching ")". If the character begins an identifier, this moves just past it. This is mode dependent, so this will move over atoms in LISP mode and C identifiers in C mode. JOVE also matches "{".

16.96. forward-sentence (ESC E)

This moves point forward to the end of the current or next sentence. JOVE considers the end of a sentence to be the characters ".", "!" or "?" followed by a Return, or one or more spaces.

16.97. forward-word (ESC F)

This moves point forward to the end of the current or next word.

16.98. fundamental-mode (Not Bound)

This sets the major mode to Fundamental. This affects what JOVE considers as characters that make up words. For instance, Single-quote is not part of a word in Fundamental mode, but is in Text mode.

16.99. goto-line (ESC G)

If a numeric argument is supplied point moves to the beginning of that line. If no argument is supplied, point remains where it is. This is so you don't lose your place unintentionally, by accidentally hitting the "G" instead of "F".

16.100. grind-s-expr (Not Bound)

When point is positioned on a "(", this re-indents that LISP expression.

16.101. grow-window (C-X ^)

This makes the current window one line bigger. This only works when there is more than one window and provided there is room to change the size.

16.102. paren-flash () }])

This handles the C mode curly brace indentation, the Lisp mode paren indentation, and the Show Match mode paren/curly brace/square bracket flashing.

16.103. handle-tab (Tab)

This handles indenting to the "right" place in C and Lisp mode, and just inserts itself in Text mode.

16.104. i-search-forward (Not Bound)

Incremental search. Like search-forward except that instead of prompting for a string and searching for that string all at once, it accepts the string one character at a time. After each character you type as part of the search string, it searches for the entire string so far. When you like what it found, type the Return key to finish the search. You can take back a character with Rubout and the search will back up to the position before that character was typed. C-G aborts the search.

16.105. i-search-reverse (Not Bound)

Incremental search. Like search-reverse except that instead of prompting for a string and searching for that string all at once, it accepts the string one character at a time. After each character you type as part of the search string, it searches for the entire string so far. When you like what it found, type the Return key to finish the search. You can take back a character with Rubout and the search will back up to the position before that character was typed. C-G aborts the search.

16.106. insert-file (C-X C-I)

This inserts a specified file into the current buffer at point. Point is positioned at the beginning of the inserted file.

16.107. internal-tabstop (variable)

The number of spaces JOVE should print when it displays a tab character. The default value is 8.

16.108. interrupt-process (Not Bound)

This sends the interrupt character (usually C-C) to the interactive process in the current buffer. This is only for versions of JOVE that have the interactive processes feature. This only works when you are inside a buffer that's attached to a process.

16.109. i-shell (Not Bound)

This starts up an interactive shell in a window. JOVE uses "shell-1" as the name of the buffer in which the interacting takes place. See the manual for information on how to use interactive processes.

16.110. i-shell-command (Not Bound)

This is like *shell-command* except it lets you continue with your editing while the command is running. This is really useful for long running commands with sporadic output. See the manual for information on how to use interactive processes.

16.111. kill-next-word (ESC D)

This kills the text from point to the end of the current or next word.

16.112. kill-previous-word (ESC Rubout)

This kills the text from point to the beginning of the current or previous word.

16.113. kill-process (Not Bound)

This command prompts for a buffer name or buffer number (just as select-buffer does) and then sends the process in that buffer a kill signal (9).

16.114. kill-region (C-W)

This deletes the text in the region and saves it on the kill ring. Commands that delete text but save it on the kill ring all have the word "kill" in their names. Type "C-Y" to yank back the most recent kill.

16.115. kill-s-expression (ESC C-K)

This kills the text from point to the end of the current or next s-expression.

16.116. kill-some-buffers (Not Bound)

This goes through all the existing buffers and asks whether or not to kill them. If you decide to kill a buffer, and it turns out that the buffer is modified, JOVE will offer to save it first. This is useful for when JOVE runs out of memory to store lines (this only happens on PDP-11's) and you have lots of buffers that you are no longer using.

16.117. kill-to-beginning-of-sentence (C-X Rubout)

This kills from point to the beginning of the current or previous sentence.

16.118. kill-to-end-of-line (C-K)

This kills from point to the end of the current line. When point is at the end of the line the line separator is deleted and the next line is joined with current one. If a numeric argument is supplied that many lines are killed; if the argument is negative that many lines *before* point are killed; if the argument is zero the text from point to the beginning of the line is killed.

16.119. kill-to-end-of-sentence (ESC K)

This kills from point to the end of the current or next sentence. If a negative numeric argument is supplied it kills from point to the beginning of the current or previous sentence.

16.120. left-margin (variable)

This is how far lines should be indented when auto-indent mode is on, or when the *newline-and-indent* command is run (usually by typing LineFeed). It is also used by fill-paragraph and auto-fill mode. If the value is zero (the default) then the left margin is determined from the surrounding lines.

16.121. left-margin-here (Not Bound)

This sets the *left-margin* variable to the current position of point. This is an easy way to say, "Make the left margin begin here," without having to count the number of spaces over it actually is.

16.122. lisp-mode (Not Bound)

This turns on Lisp mode. Lisp mode is one of four mutually exclusive major modes: Fundamental, Text, C, and Lisp. In Lisp mode, the characters Tab and) are treated specially, similar to the way they are treated in C mode. Also, Auto Indent mode is affected, and handled specially.

16.123. list-buffers (C-X C-B)

This types out a list containing various information about each buffer. Right now that list looks like this:

(* means the buffer needs saving)

NO	Lines	Type		Name	File
--	-----	----		----	----
1	1	File		Main	[No file]
2	1	Scratch	*	Minibuf	[No file]
3	519	File	*	commands.doc	commands.doc

The first column lists the buffer's number. When JOVE prompts for a buffer name you can either type in the full name, or you can simply type the buffer's number. The second column is the number of lines in the buffer. The third says what type of buffer. There are four types: "File", "Scratch", "Process", "I-Process". "File" is simply a buffer that holds a file; "Scratch" is for buffers that JOVE uses internally; "Process" is one that holds the output from a UNIX command; "I-Process" is one that has an interactive process attached to it. The next column contains the name of the buffer. And the last

column is the name of the file that's attached to the buffer. In this case, both Minibuf and commands.doc have been changed but not yet saved. In fact Minibuf won't be saved since it's an internal JOVE buffer that I don't even care about.

16.124. list-processes (Not Bound)

This makes a list somewhat like "list-buffers" does, except its list consists of the current interactive processes. Right now the list looks like this:

Buffer	Status	Command name
shell-1	Running	i-shell
fgrep	Done	fgrep -n Buffer *.c

The first column has the name of the buffer to which the process is attached. The second has the status of the process; if a process has exited normally the status is "Done" as in fgrep; if the process exited with an error the status is "Exit N" where N is the value of the exit code; if the process was killed by some signal the status is the name of the signal that was used; otherwise the process is running. The last column is the name of the command that is being run.

16.125. mailbox (variable)

Set this to the full pathname of your mailbox. JOVE will look here to decide whether or not you have any unread mail. This defaults to /usr/spool/mail/$USER, where $USER is set to your login name.

16.126. mail-check-frequency (variable)

This is how often (in seconds) JOVE should check your mailbox for incoming mail. See also the *mailbox* and *disable-biff* variables.

16.127. make-backup-files (variable)

If this variable is set, then whenever JOVE writes out a file, it will move the previous version of the file (if there was one) to "#filename". This is often convenient if you save a file by accident. The default value of this variable is "off". *Note:* this is an optional part of JOVE, and your guru may not have it enabled, so it may not work.

16.128. make-buffer-unmodified (ESC ~)

This makes JOVE think the selected buffer hasn't been changed even if it has. Use this when you accidentally change the buffer but don't want it considered changed. Watch the mode line to see the * disappear when you use this command.

16.129. make-macro-interactive (Not Bound)

This command is meaningful only while you are defining a keyboard macro. Ordinarily, when a command in a macro definition requires a trailing text argument (file name, search string, etc.), the argument you supply becomes part of the macro definition. If you want to be able to supply a different argument each time the macro is used, then while you are defining it, you should give the make-macro-interactive command just before typing the argument which will be used during the definition process. Note: you must bind this command to a key in order to use it; you can't say ESC X make-macro-interactive.

16.130. mark-threshold (variable)

This variable contains the number of lines point may move by before the mark is set. If, in a search or something, point moves by more than this many lines, the mark is set so that you may return easily. The default value of this variable is 22 (one screenful, on most terminals).

16.131. marks-should-float (variable)

When this variable is "off", the position of a mark is remembered as a line number within the buffer and a character number within the line. If you add or delete text before the mark, it will no longer point to the text you marked originally because that text is no longer at the same line and character number. When this variable is "on", the position of a mark is adjusted to compensate for each insertion and deletion. This makes marks much more sensible to use, at the cost of slowing down insertion and deletion somewhat. The default value is "on".

16.132. match-regular-expressions (variable)

When set, JOVE will match regular expressions in search patterns. This makes special the characters ., *, [,], ^, and $, and the two-character sequences \<, \>, \(, \) and \|. See the *ed(1)* manual page, the tutorial "Advanced Editing in UNIX ", and the section above "Searching with Regular Expressions" for more information.

16.133. meta-key (variable)

You should set this variable to "on" if your terminal has a real Meta key. If your terminal has such a key, then a key sequence like ESC Y can be entered by holding down Meta and typing Y.

16.134. mode-line (variable)

The format of the mode line can be determined by setting this variable. The items in the line are specified using a printf(3) format, with the special things being marked as "%x". Digits may be used between the 'x' may be:

C	check for new mail, and displays "[New mail]" if there is any (see also the *mail-check-interval* and *disable-biff* variables)
F	the current file name, with leading path stripped
M	the current list of major and minor modes
b	the current buffer name
c	the fill character (-)
d	the current directory
e	end of string--this must be the last item in the string
f	the current file name
l	the current load average (updated automatically)
m	the buffer-modified symbol (*)
n	the current buffer number
s	space, but only if previous character is not a space
t	the current time (updated automatically)
[ ]	the square brackets printed when in a recursive edit
( )	items enclosed in %(... %) will only be printed on the bottom mode line, rather than copied when the window is split

In addition, any other character is simply copied into the mode line. Characters may be escaped with a backslash. To get a feel for all this, try typing "ESC X print mode-line" and compare the result with your current mode line.

16.135. mode-line-should-standout (variable)

If set, the mode line will be printed in reverse video, if your terminal supports it. The default for this variable is "off".

16.136. name-keyboard-macro (Not Bound)

This copies the keyboard macro and gives it a name freeing up the keyboard macro so you can define some more. Keyboard macros with their own names can be bound to keys just like built in commands can. See the *read-macros-file-file* and *write-macros-to-file* commands.

16.137. newline (Return)

This divides the current line at point moving all the text to the right of point down onto the newly created line. Point moves down to the beginning of the new line.

16.138. newline-and-backup (C-O)

This divides the current line at point moving all the text to the right of point down onto the newly created line. The difference between this and "newline" is that point does not move down to the beginning of the new line.

16.139. newline-and-indent (LineFeed)

This behaves the same was as Return does when in Auto Indent mode. This makes Auto Indent mode obsolete but it remains in the name of backward compatibility.

16.140. next-error (C-X C-N)

This moves to the next error in the list of errors that were parsed with *parse-errors* or *parse-special-errors*. In one window the list of errors is shown with the current one always at the top. In another window is the file that contains the error. Point is positioned in this window on the line where the error occurred.

16.141. next-line (C-N)

This moves down to the next line.

16.142. next-page (C-V)

This displays the next page of the buffer by taking the bottom line of the window and redrawing the window with it at the top. If there isn't another page in the buffer JOVE rings the bell. If a numeric argument is supplied the screen is scrolled up that many lines; if the argument is negative the screen is scrolled down.

16.143. next-window (C-X N)

This moves into the next window. Windows live in a circular list so when you're in the bottom window and you try to move to the next one you are moved to the top window. It is an error to use this command with only one window.

16.144. number-lines-in-window (Not Bound)

This displays the line numbers for each line in the buffer being displayed. The number isn't actually part of the text; it's just printed before the actual buffer line is. To turn this off you run the command again; it toggles.

16.145. over-write-mode (Not Bound)

This turns Over Write mode on (or off if it's currently on) in the selected buffer. When on, this mode changes the way the self-inserting characters work. Instead of inserting themselves and pushing the rest of the line over to the right, they replace or over-write the existing character. Also, Rubout replaces the character before point with a space instead of deleting it. When Over Write mode is on "OvrWt" is displayed on the mode line.

16.146. page-next-window (ESC C-V)

This displays the next page in the next window. This is exactly the same as "C-X N C-V C-X P".

16.147. paren-flash-delay (variable)

How long, in tenths of seconds, JOVE should pause on a matching parenthesis in *Show Match* mode. The default is 5.

16.148. parse-errors (Not Bound)

This takes the list of C compilation errors (or output from another program in the same format) in the current buffer and parses them for use with the *next-error* and *previous-error* and *current-error* commands. This is a very useful tool and helps with compiling C programs and when used in conjunction with the "grep" UNIX command very helpful in making changes to a bunch of files. This command understands errors produced by cc, cpp, and lint; plus any other program with the same format (e.g., "grep -n"). JOVE visits each file that has an error and remembers each line that contains an error. It doesn't matter if later you insert or delete some lines in the buffers containing errors; JOVE remembers where they are regardless. *next-error* is automatically executed after one of the parse commands, so you end up at the first error.

16.149. parse-special-errors (Not Bound)

This parses errors in an unknown format. Error parsing works with regular expression search strings with \(’s around the the file name and the line number. So, you can use *parse-special-errors* to parse lines that are in a slightly different format by typing in your own search string. If you don't know how to use regular expressions you can't use this command.

16.150. parse-spelling-errors-in-buffer (Not Bound)

This parses a list of words in the current buffer and looks them up in another buffer that you specify. This will probably go away soon.

16.151. pause-jove (ESC S)

This stops JOVE and returns control to the parent shell. This only works for users using the C-shell, and on systems that have the job control facility. To return to JOVE you type "fg" to the C-shell.

16.152. physical-tabstop (variable)

How many spaces your terminal prints when it prints a tab character.

16.153. pop-mark (Not Bound)

This gets executed when you run *set-mark* with a numeric argument. JOVE remembers the last 16 marks and you use *pop-mark* to go backward through the ring of marks. If you execute "*pop-mark* enough times you will eventually get back to where you started.

16.154. popd (Not Bound)

This pops one entry off the directory stack. Entries are pushed with the *pushd* command. The names were stolen from the C-shell and the behavior is the same.

16.155. previous-error (C-X C-P)

This is the same as *next-error* except it goes to the previous error. See *next-error* for documentation.

16.156. previous-line (C-P)

This moves up to the previous line.

16.157. previous-page (ESC V)

This displays the previous page of the current buffer by taking the top line and redrawing the window with it at the bottom. If a numeric argument is supplied the screen is scrolled down that many lines; if the argument is negative the screen is scrolled up.

16.158. previous-window (C-X P and C-X O)

This moves into the next window. Windows live in a circular list so when you're in the top window and you try to move to the previous one you are moved to the bottom window. It is an error to use this command with only one window.

16.159. print (Not Bound)

This prints the value of a JOVE variable.

16.160. print-message (Not Bound)

This command prompts for a message, and then prints it on the bottom line where JOVE messages are printed.

16.161. process-bind-to-key (Not Bound)

This command is identical to bind-to-key, except that it only affects your bindings when you are in a buffer attached to a process. When you enter the process buffer, any keys bound with this command will automatically take their new values. When you switch to a non-process buffer, the old bindings for those keys will be restored. For example, you might want to execute

```
process-bind-to-key stop-process ^Z
process-bind-to-key interrupt-process ^C
```

Then, when you start up an interactive process and switch into that buffer, C-Z will execute stop-process and C-C will execute interrupt- process. When you switch back to a non-process buffer, C-Z will go back to executing scroll-up (or whatever you have it bound to).

16.162. process-newline (Return)

This this only gets executed when in a buffer that is attached to an interactive-process. JOVE does two different things depending on where you are when you hit Return. When you're at the end of the I-Process buffer this does what Return normally does, except it also makes the line available to the process. When point is positioned at some other position that line is copied to the end of the buffer (with the prompt stripped) and point is moved there with it, so you can then edit that line before sending it to the process. This command *must* be bound to the key you usually use to enter shell commands (Return), or else you won't be able to enter any.

16.163. process-prompt (variable)

What a prompt looks like from the i-shell and i-shell-command processes. The default is "% ", the default C-shell prompt. This is actually a regular expression search string. So you can set it to be more than one thing at once using the \| operator. For instance, for LISP hackers, the prompt can be "% \|-> \|<[0-9]>: ".

16.164. push-shell (Not Bound)

This spawns a child shell and relinquishes control to it. This works on any version of UNIX, but this isn't as good as *pause-jove* because it takes time to start up the new shell and you get a brand new environment every time. To return to JOVE you type "C-D".

16.165. pushd (Not Bound)

This pushes a directory onto the directory stack and cd's into it. It asks for the directory name but if you don't specify one it switches the top two entries no the stack. It purposely behaves the same as C-shell's *pushd*.

16.166. pwd (Not Bound)

This prints the working directory.

16.167. quadruple-numeric-argument (C-U)

This multiplies the numeric argument by 4. So, "C-U C-F" means forward 4 characters and "C-U C-U C-N" means down 16 lines.

16.168. query-replace-string (ESC Q)

This replaces the occurrences of a specified string with a specified replacement string. When an occurrence is found point is moved to it and then JOVE asks what to do. The options are:

Space	to replace this occurrence and go on to the next one.
Period	to replace this occurrence and then stop.
Rubout	to skip this occurrence and go on to the next one.
C-R	to enter a recursive edit. This lets you temporarily suspend the replace, do some editing, and then return to continue where you left off. To continue with the Query Replace type "C-X C-C" as if you were trying to exit JOVE. Normally you would but when you are in a recursive edit all it does is exit that recursive editing level.
C-W	to delete the matched string and then enter a recursive edit.
U	to undo the last replacement.
P or !	to go ahead and replace the remaining occurrences without asking.
Return	to stop the Query Replace.

The search for occurrences starts at point and goes to the end of the buffer, so to replace in the entire buffer you must first go to the beginning.

16.169. quit-process (Not Bound)

This is the same as typing "C-\" (the Quit character) to a normal UNIX process, except it sends it to the current process in JOVE. This is only for versions of JOVE that have the interactive processes feature. This only works when you are inside a buffer that's attached to a process.

16.170. quoted-insert (C-Q)

This lets you insert characters that normally would be executed as other JOVE commands. For example, to insert "C-F" you type "C-Q C-F".

16.171. read-word-abbrev-file (Not Bound)

This reads a specified file that contains a bunch of abbreviation definitions, and makes those abbreviations available. If the selected buffer is not already in Word Abbrev mode this command puts it in that mode.

16.172. read-macros-from-file (Not Bound)

This reads the specified file that contains a bunch of macro definitions, and defines all the macros that were currently defined when the file was created. See *write-macros-to-file* to see how to save macros.

16.173. redraw-display (C-L)

This centers the line containing point in the window. If that line is already in the middle the window is first cleared and then redrawn. If a numeric argument is supplied, the line is positioned at that offset from the top of the window. For example, "ESC 0 C-L" positions the line containing point at the top of the window.

16.174. recursive-edit (Not Bound)

This enters a recursive editing level. This isn't really very useful. I don't know why it's available for public use. I think I'll delete it some day.

16.175. rename-buffer (Not Bound)

This lets you rename the current buffer.

16.176. replace-in-region (Not Bound)

This is the same as *replace-string* except that it is restricted to occurrences between Point and Mark.

16.177. replace-string (ESC R)

This replaces all occurrences of a specified string with a specified replacement string. This is just like *query-replace-string* except it replaces without asking.

16.178. right-margin (variable)

Where the right margin is for *Auto Fill* mode and the *justify-paragraph* and *justify-region* commands. The default is 78.

16.179. right-margin-here (Not Bound)

This sets the *right-margin* variable to the current position of point. This is an easy way to say, "Make the right margin begin here," without having to count the number of spaces over it actually is.

16.180. save-file (C-X C-S)

This saves the current buffer to the associated file. This makes your changes permanent so you should be sure you really want to. If the buffer has not been modified *save-file* refuses to do the save. If you really do want to write the file you can use "C-X C-W" which executes *write-file.*

16.181. scroll-down (ESC Z)

This scrolls the screen one line down. If the line containing point moves past the bottom of the window point is moved up to the center of the window. If a numeric argument is supplied that many lines are scrolled; if the argument is negative the screen is scrolled up instead.

16.182. scroll-step (variable)

How many lines should be scrolled if the *previous-line* or *next-line* commands move you off the top or bottom of the screen. You may wish to decrease this variable if you are on a slow terminal.

16.183. scroll-up (C-Z)

This scrolls the screen one line up. If the line containing point moves past the top of the window point is moved down to the center of the window. If a numeric argument is supplied that many lines are scrolled; if the argument is negative the screen is scrolled down instead.

16.184. search-exit-char (variable)

Set this to the character you want to use to exit incremental search. The default is Newline, which makes i-search compatible with normal string search.

16.185. search-forward (C-S)

This searches forward for a specified search string and positions point at the end of the string if it's found. If the string is not found point remains unchanged. This searches from point to the end of the buffer, so any matches before point will be missed.

16.186. search-reverse (C-R)

This searches backward for a specified search string and positions point at the beginning if the string if it's found. If the string is not found point remains unchanged. This searches from point to the beginning of the buffer, so any matches after point will be missed.

16.187. select-buffer (C-X B)

This selects a new or already existing buffer making it the current one. You can type either the buffer name or number. If you type in the name you need only type the name until it is unambiguous, at which point typing Escape or Space will complete it for you. If you want to create a new buffer you can type Return instead of Space, and a new empty buffer will be created.

16.188. self-insert (Most Printing Characters)

This inserts the character that invoked it into the buffer at point. Initially all but a few of the printing characters are bound to *self-insert*.

16.189. send-typeout-to-buffer (variable)

When this is set JOVE will send output that normally overwrites the screen (temporarily) to a buffer instead. This affects commands like *list-buffers*, *list-processes*, and other commands that use command completion. The default value is "off".

16.190. set (Not Bound)

This gives a specified variable a new value. Occasionally you'll see lines like "set this variable to that value to do this". Well, you use the *set* command to do that.

16.191. set-mark (C-@)

This sets the mark at the current position in the buffer. It prints the message "Point pushed" on the message line. It says that instead of "Mark set" because when you set the mark the previous mark is still remembered on a ring of 16 marks. So "Point pushed" means point is pushed onto the ring of marks and becomes the value of "the mark". To go through the ring of marks you type "C-U C-@", or execute the *pop-mark* command. If you type this enough times you will get back to where you started.

16.192. shell (variable)

The shell to be used with all the shell commands command. If your SHELL environment variable is set, it is used as the value of *shell*; otherwise "/bin/csh" is the default.

16.193. shell-command (C-X !)

This runs a UNIX command and places the output from that command in a buffer. JOVE creates a buffer that matches the name of the command you specify and then attaches that buffer to a window. So, when you have only one window running this command will cause JOVE to split the window and attach the new buffer to that window. Otherwise, JOVE finds the most convenient of the available windows and uses that one instead. If the buffer already exists it is first emptied, except that if it's

holding a file, not some output from a previous command, JOVE prints an error message and refuses to execute the command. If you really want to execute the command you should delete that buffer (saving it first, if you like) or use *shell-command-to-buffer*, and try again.

16.194. shell-command-to-buffer (Not Bound)

This is just like *shell-command* except it lets you specify the buffer to use instead of JOVE.

16.195. shell-flags (variable)

This defines the flags that are passed to shell commands. The default is "-c". See the *shell* variable to change the default shell.

16.196. show-match-mode (Not Bound)

This turns on Show Match mode (or off if it's currently on) in the selected buffer. This changes "}" and ")" so that when they are typed the are inserted as usual, and then the cursor flashes back to the matching "{" or "(" (depending on what was typed) for about half a second, and then goes back to just after the "}" or ")" that invoked the command. This is useful for typing in complicated expressions in a program. You can change how long the cursor sits on the matching paren by setting the "paren-flash-delay" variable in tenths of a second. If the matching "{" or "(" isn't visible nothing happens.

16.197. shrink-window (Not Bound)

This makes the current window one line shorter, if possible. Windows must be at least 2 lines high, one for the text and the other for the mode line.

16.198. source (Not Bound)

This reads a bunch of JOVE commands from a file. The format of the file is the same as that in your initialization file (your ".joverc") in your main directory. There should be one command per line and it should be as though you typed "ESC X" while in JOVE. For example, here's part of my initialization file:

```
bind-to-key i-search-reverse ^R
bind-to-key i-search-forward ^S
bind-to-key pause-jove ^[S
```

What they do is make "C-R" call the *i-search-reverse* command and "C-S" call *i-search-forward* and "ESC S" call *pause-jove.*

16.199. spell-buffer (Not Bound)

This runs the current buffer through the UNIX *spell* program and places the output in buffer "Spell". Then JOVE lets you edit the list of words, expecting you to delete the ones that you don't care about, i.e., the ones you know are spelled correctly. Then the *parse-spelling-errors-in-buffer* command comes along and finds all the misspelled words and sets things up so the error commands work.

16.200. split-current-window (C-X 2)

This splits the current window into two equal parts (providing the resulting windows would be big enough) and displays the selected buffer in both windows. Use "C-X 1" to go back to 1 window mode.

16.201. start-remembering (C-X ()

This starts remembering your key strokes in the Keyboard macro. To stop remembering you type "C-X)". Because of a bug in JOVE you can't stop remembering by typing "ESC X stop-remembering"; *stop-remembering* must be bound to "C-X)" in order to make things work correctly. To execute the remembered key strokes you type "C-X E" which runs the *execute-keyboard-macro* command. Sometimes you may want a macro to accept different input each time it runs. To see how to do this, see

the *make-macro-interactive* command.

16.202. stop-process (Not Bound)

This sends a stop signal (C-Z, for most people) to the current process. It only works if you have the interactive process feature, and you are in a buffer attached to a process.

16.203. stop-remembering (C-X))

This stop the definition of the keyboard macro. Because of a bug in JOVE, this must be bound to "C-X)". Anything else will not work properly.

16.204. string-length (Not Bound)

This prints the number of characters in the string that point sits in. Strings are surrounded by double quotes. JOVE knows that "\007" is considered a single character, namely "C-G", and also knows about other common ones, like "\r" (Return) and "\n" (LineFeed). This is mostly useful only for C programmers.

16.205. suspend-jove (ESC S)

This is a synonym for *pause-jove*.

16.206. sync-frequency (variable)

The temporary files used by JOVE are forced out to disk every *sync-frequency* modifications. The default is 50, which really makes good sense. Unless your system is very unstable, you probably shouldn't fool with this.

16.207. tag-file (variable)

This the name of the file in which JOVE should look up tag definitions. The default value is "./tags".

16.208. text-mode (Not Bound)

This sets the major mode to Text. Currently the other modes are Fundamental, C and Lisp mode.

16.209. transpose-characters (C-T)

This switches the character before point with the one after point, and then moves forward one. This doesn't work at the beginning of the line, and at the end of the line it switches the two characters before point. Since point is moved forward, so that the character that was before point is still before point, you can use "C-T" to drag a character down the length of a line. This command pretty quickly becomes very useful.

16.210. transpose-lines (C-X C-T)

This switches the current line with the one above it, and then moves down one so that the line that was above point is still above point. This, like *transpose-characters*, can be used to drag a line down a page.

16.211. unbind-key (Not Bound)

Use this to unbind *any* key sequence. You can use this to unbind even a prefix command, since this command does not use "key-map completion". For example, "ESC X unbind-key ESC [" unbinds the sequence "ESC [". This is useful for "turning off" something set in the system-wide ".joverc" file.

16.212. update-time-frequency (variable)

How often the mode line is updated (and thus the time and load average, if you display them). The default is 30 seconds.

16.213. use-i/d-char (variable)

If your terminal has insert/delete character capability you can tell JOVE not to use it by setting this to "off". In my opinion it is only worth using insert/delete character at low baud rates. WARNING: if you set this to "on" when your terminal doesn't have insert/delete character capability, you will get weird (perhaps fatal) results.

16.214. version (Not Bound)

Displays the version number of this JOVE.

16.215. visible-bell (variable)

Use the terminal's visible bell instead of beeping. This is set automatically if your terminal has the capability.

16.216. visible-spaces-in-window (Not Bound)

This displays an underscore character instead of each space in the window and displays a greater-than followed by spaces for each tab in the window. The actual text in the buffer is not changed; only the screen display is affected. To turn this off you run the command again; it toggles.

16.217. visit-file (C-X C-V)

This reads a specified file into the current buffer replacing the old text. If the buffer needs saving JOVE will offer to save it for you. Sometimes you use this to start over, say if you make lots of changes and then change your mind. If that's the case you don't want JOVE to save your buffer and you answer "NO" to the question.

16.218. window-find (C-X 4)

This lets you select another buffer in another window three different ways. This waits for another character which can be one of the following:

T	Finds a tag in the other window.
F	Finds a file in the other window.
B	Selects a buffer in the other window.

This is just a convenient short hand for "C-X 2" (or "C-X O" if there are already two windows) followed by the appropriate sequence for invoking each command. With this, though, there isn't the extra overhead of having to redisplay. In addition, you don't have to decide whether to type "C-X 2" or "C-X O" since "C-X 4" does the right thing.

16.219. word-abbrev-mode (Not Bound)

This turns on Word Abbrev mode (or off if it's currently on) in the selected buffer. Word Abbrev mode lets you specify a word (an abbreviation) and a phrase with which JOVE should substitute the abbreviation. You can use this to define words to expand into long phrases, e.g., "jove" can expand into "Jonathan's Own Version of Emacs"; another common use is defining words that you often misspell in the same way, e.g., "thier" => "their" or "teh" => "the". See the information on the *auto-case-abbrev* variable. There are two kinds of abbreviations: mode specific and global. If you define a Mode specific abbreviation in C mode, it will expand only in buffers that are in C mode. This is so you can have the same abbreviation expand to different things depending on your context. Global abbreviations expand regardless of the major mode of the buffer. The way it works is this: JOVE looks first in the mode specific table, and then in the global table. Whichever it finds it in first is the one that's used in the expansion. If it doesn't find the word it is left untouched. JOVE tries to expand words as they are typed, when you type a punctuation character or Space or Return. If you are in Auto Fill mode the expansion will be filled as if you typed it yourself.

16.220. wrap-search (variable)

If set, searches will "wrap around" the ends of the buffer instead of stopping at the bottom or top. The default is "off".

16.221. write-files-on-make (variable)

When set, all modified files will be written out before calling make when the *compile-it* command is executed. The default is "on".

16.222. write-word-abbrev-file (Not Bound)

This writes the currently defined abbreviations to a specified file. They can be read back in and automatically defined with *read-word-abbrev-file.*

16.223. write-file (C-X C-W)

This saves the current buffer to a specified file, and then makes that file the default file name for this buffer. If you specify a file that already exists you are asked to confirm over-writing it.

16.224. write-macros-to-file (Not Bound)

This writes the currently defined macros to a specified file. The macros can be read back in with *read-macros-from-file* so you can define macros and still use them in other instantiations of JOVE.

16.225. write-modified-files (C-X C-M)

This saves all the buffers that need saving. If you supply a numeric argument it asks for each buffer whether you really want to save it.

16.226. write-region (Not Bound)

This writes the text in the region to a specified file. If the file already exists you are asked to confirm over-writing it.

16.227. yank (C-Y)

This undoes the last kill command. That is, it inserts the killed text at point. When you do multiple kill commands in a row, they are merged so that yanking them back with "C–Y" yanks back all of them.

16.228. yank-pop (ESC Y)

This yanks back previous killed text. JOVE has a kill ring on which the last 10 kills are stored. *yank* yanks a copy of the text at the front of the ring. If you want one of the last ten kills you use "ESC Y" which rotates the ring so another different entry is now at the front. You can use "ESC Y" only immediately following a "C-Y" or another "ESC Y". If you supply a negative numeric argument the ring is rotated the other way. If you use this command enough times in a row you will eventually get back to where you started. Experiment with this. It's extremely useful.

SED — A Non-interactive Text Editor

Lee E. McMahon

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

Sed is a non-interactive context editor that runs on the UNIX† operating system. *Sed* is designed to be especially useful in three cases:

1) To edit files too large for comfortable interactive editing;
2) To edit any size file when the sequence of editing commands is too complicated to be comfortably typed in interactive mode.
3) To perform multiple 'global' editing functions efficiently in one pass through the input.

This memorandum constitutes a manual for users of *sed.*

Introduction

Sed is a non-interactive context editor designed to be especially useful in three cases:

1) To edit files too large for comfortable interactive editing;
2) To edit any size file when the sequence of editing commands is too complicated to be comfortably typed in interactive mode;
3) To perform multiple 'global' editing functions efficiently in one pass through the input.

Since only a few lines of the input reside in core at one time, and no temporary files are used, the effective size of file that can be edited is limited only by the requirement that the input and output fit simultaneously into available secondary storage.

Complicated editing scripts can be created separately and given to *sed* as a command file. For complex edits, this saves considerable typing, and its attendant errors. *Sed* running from a command file is much more efficient than any interactive editor known to the author, even if that editor can be driven by a pre-written script.

The principal loss of functions compared to an interactive editor are lack of relative addressing (because of the line-at-a-time operation), and lack of immediate verification that a command has done what was intended.

Sed is a lineal descendant of the UNIX editor, *ed.* Because of the differences between interactive and non-interactive operation, considerable changes have been made between *ed* and *sed;* even confirmed users of *ed* will frequently be surprised (and probably chagrined), if they rashly use *sed* without reading Sections 2 and 3 of this document. The most striking family resemblance between the two editors is in the class of patterns ('regular expressions') they recognize; the code for matching patterns is copied almost verbatim from the code for *ed,* and the description of regular expressions in Section 2 is copied almost verbatim from the UNIX Programmer's Manual[1]. (Both code and description were written by Dennis M. Ritchie.)

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

1. Overall Operation

Sed by default copies the standard input to the standard output, perhaps performing one or more editing commands on each line before writing it to the output. This behavior may be modified by flags on the command line; see Section 1.1 below.

The general format of an editing command is:

[address1,address2][function][arguments]

One or both addresses may be omitted; the format of addresses is given in Section 2. Any number of blanks or tabs may separate the addresses from the function. The function must be present; the available commands are discussed in Section 3. The arguments may be required or optional, according to which function is given; again, they are discussed in Section 3 under each individual function.

Tab characters and spaces at the beginning of lines are ignored.

1.1. Command-line Flags

Three flags are recognized on the command line:

-n: tells *sed* not to copy all lines, but only those specified by *p* functions or *p* flags after *s* functions (see Section 3.3);

-e: tells *sed* to take the next argument as an editing command;

-f: tells *sed* to take the next argument as a file name; the file should contain editing commands, one to a line.

1.2. Order of Application of Editing Commands

Before any editing is done (in fact, before any input file is even opened), all the editing commands are compiled into a form which will be moderately efficient during the execution phase (when the commands are actually applied to lines of the input file). The commands are compiled in the order in which they are encountered; this is generally the order in which they will be attempted at execution time. The commands are applied one at a time; the input to each command is the output of all preceding commands.

The default linear order of application of editing commands can be changed by the flow-of-control commands, *t* and *b* (see Section 3). Even when the order of application is changed by these commands, it is still true that the input line to any command is the output of any previously applied command.

1.3. Pattern-space

The range of pattern matches is called the pattern space. Ordinarily, the pattern space is one line of the input text, but more than one line can be read into the pattern space by using the *N* command (Section 3.6.).

1.4. Examples

Examples are scattered throughout the text. Except where otherwise noted, the examples all assume the following input text:

In Xanadu did Kubla Khan
A stately pleasure dome decree:
Where Alph, the sacred river, ran
Through caverns measureless to man
Down to a sunless sea.

(In no case is the output of the *sed* commands to be considered an improvement on Coleridge.)

Example:

The command

```
2q
```

will quit after copying the first two lines of the input. The output will be:

```
In Xanadu did Kubla Khan
A stately pleasure dome decree:
```

2. ADDRESSES: Selecting lines for editing

Lines in the input file(s) to which editing commands are to be applied can be selected by addresses. Addresses may be either line numbers or context addresses.

The application of a group of commands can be controlled by one address (or address-pair) by grouping the commands with curly braces ('{ }')(Sec. 3.6.).

2.1. Line-number Addresses

A line number is a decimal integer. As each line is read from the input, a line-number counter is incremented; a line-number address matches (selects) the input line which causes the internal counter to equal the address line-number. The counter runs cumulatively through multiple input files; it is not reset when a new input file is opened.

As a special case, the character $ matches the last line of the last input file.

2.2. Context Addresses

A context address is a pattern ('regular expression') enclosed in slashes ('/'). The regular expressions recognized by *sed* are constructed as follows:

1) An ordinary character (not one of those discussed below) is a regular expression, and matches that character.
2) A circumflex '^' at the beginning of a regular expression matches the null character at the beginning of a line.
3) A dollar-sign '$' at the end of a regular expression matches the null character at the end of a line.
4) The characters '\n' match an imbedded newline character, but not the newline at the end of the pattern space.
5) A period '.' matches any character except the terminal newline of the pattern space.
6) A regular expression followed by an asterisk '*' matches any number (including 0) of adjacent occurrences of the regular expression it follows.
7) A string of characters in square brackets '[ ]' matches any character in the string, and no others. If, however, the first character of the string is circumflex '^', the regular expression matches any character *except* the characters in the string and the terminal newline of the pattern space.
8) A concatenation of regular expressions is a regular expression which matches the concatenation of strings matched by the components of the regular expression.
9) A regular expression between the sequences '\(' and '\)' is identical in effect to the unadorned regular expression, but has side-effects which are described under the *s* command below and specification 10) immediately below.
10) The expression '*d*' means the same string of characters matched by an expression enclosed in '\(' and '\)' earlier in the same pattern. Here *d* is a single digit; the string specified is that beginning with the *d*th occurrence of '\(' counting from the left. For example, the expression '^\(.*\)\1' matches a line beginning with two repeated occurrences of the same string.
11) The null regular expression standing alone (e.g., '//') is equivalent to the last regular expression compiled.

To use one of the special characters (^ $. * [ ] \ /) as a literal (to match an occurrence of itself in the input), precede the special character by a backslash '\'.

For a context address to 'match' the input requires that the whole pattern within the address match some portion of the pattern space.

2.3. Number of Addresses

The commands in the next section can have 0, 1, or 2 addresses. Under each command the maximum number of allowed addresses is given. For a command to have more addresses than the maximum allowed is considered an error.

If a command has no addresses, it is applied to every line in the input.

If a command has one address, it is applied to all lines which match that address.

If a command has two addresses, it is applied to the first line which matches the first address, and to all subsequent lines until (and including) the first subsequent line which matches the second address. Then an attempt is made on subsequent lines to again match the first address, and the process is repeated.

Two addresses are separated by a comma.

Examples:

/an/	matches lines 1, 3, 4 in our sample text
/an.*an/	matches line 1
/^an/	matches no lines
/./	matches all lines
/\./	matches line 5
/r*an/	matches lines 1,3, 4 (number = zero!)
/\(an\).*\1/	matches line 1

3. FUNCTIONS

All functions are named by a single character. In the following summary, the maximum number of allowable addresses is given enclosed in parentheses, then the single character function name, possible arguments enclosed in angles (< >), an expanded English translation of the single-character name, and finally a description of what each function does. The angles around the arguments are *not* part of the argument, and should not be typed in actual editing commands.

3.1. Whole-line Oriented Functions

(2)d -- delete lines

The *d* function deletes from the file (does not write to the output) all those lines matched by its address(es).

It also has the side effect that no further commands are attempted on the corpse of a deleted line; as soon as the *d* function is executed, a new line is read from the input, and the list of editing commands is re-started from the beginning on the new line.

(2)n -- next line

The *n* function reads the next line from the input, replacing the current line. The current line is written to the output if it should be. The list of editing commands is continued following the *n* command.

(1)a\
<text> -- append lines

The *a* function causes the argument <text> to be written to the output after the line matched by its address. The *a* command is inherently multi-line; *a* must appear at

the end of a line, and <text> may contain any number of lines. To preserve the one-command-to-a-line fiction, the interior newlines must be hidden by a backslash character ('\') immediately preceding the newline. The <text> argument is terminated by the first unhidden newline (the first one not immediately preceded by backslash).

Once an *a* function is successfully executed, <text> will be written to the output regardless of what later commands do to the line which triggered it. The triggering line may be deleted entirely; <text> will still be written to the output.

The <text> is not scanned for address matches, and no editing commands are attempted on it. It does not cause any change in the line-number counter.

(1)i\
<text> -- insert lines

The *i* function behaves identically to the *a* function, except that <text> is written to the output *before* the matched line. All other comments about the *a* function apply to the *i* function as well.

(2)c\
<text> -- change lines

The *c* function deletes the lines selected by its address(es), and replaces them with the lines in <text>. Like *a* and *i*, *c* must be followed by a newline hidden by a backslash; and interior new lines in <text> must be hidden by backslashes.

The *c* command may have two addresses, and therefore select a range of lines. If it does, all the lines in the range are deleted, but only one copy of <text> is written to the output, *not* one copy per line deleted. As with *a* and *i*, <text> is not scanned for address matches, and no editing commands are attempted on it. It does not change the line-number counter.

After a line has been deleted by a *c* function, no further commands are attempted on the corpse.

If text is appended after a line by *a* or *r* functions, and the line is subsequently changed, the text inserted by the *c* function will be placed *before* the text of the *a* or *r* functions. (The *r* function is described in Section 3.4.)

Note: Within the text put in the output by these functions, leading blanks and tabs will disappear, as always in *sed* commands. To get leading blanks and tabs into the output, precede the first desired blank or tab by a backslash; the backslash will not appear in the output.

Example:

The list of editing commands:

```
n
a\
XXXX
d
```

applied to our standard input, produces:

```
In Xanadu did Kubhla Khan
XXXX
Where Alph, the sacred river, ran
XXXX
Down to a sunless sea.
```

In this particular case, the same effect would be produced by either of the two following command lists:

```
n       n
i\      c\
XXXX    XXXX
d
```

3.2. Substitute Function

One very important function changes parts of lines selected by a context search within the line.

(2)s<pattern><replacement><flags> -- substitute

The *s* function replaces *part* of a line (selected by <pattern>) with <replacement>. It can best be read:

Substitute for <pattern>, <replacement>

The <pattern> argument contains a pattern, exactly like the patterns in addresses (see 2.2 above). The only difference between <pattern> and a context address is that the context address must be delimited by slash ('/') characters; <pattern> may be delimited by any character other than space or newline.

By default, only the first string matched by <pattern> is replaced, but see the *g* flag below.

The <replacement> argument begins immediately after the second delimiting character of <pattern>, and must be followed immediately by another instance of the delimiting character. (Thus there are exactly *three* instances of the delimiting character.)

The <replacement> is not a pattern, and the characters which are special in patterns do not have special meaning in <replacement>. Instead, other characters are special:

& is replaced by the string matched by <pattern>

d (where *d* is a single digit) is replaced by the *d*th substring matched by parts of <pattern> enclosed in '\(' and '\)'. If nested substrings occur in <pattern>, the *d*th is determined by counting opening delimiters ('\(').

As in patterns, special characters may be made literal by preceding them with backslash ('\').

The <flags> argument may contain the following flags:

g -- substitute <replacement> for all (non-overlapping) instances of <pattern> in the line. After a successful substitution, the scan for the next instance of <pattern> begins just after the end of the inserted characters; characters put into the line from <replacement> are not rescanned.

p -- print the line if a successful replacement was done. The *p* flag causes the line to be written to the output if and only if a substitution was actually made by the *s* function. Notice that if several *s* functions, each followed by a *p* flag, successfully substitute in the same input line, multiple copies of the line will be written to the output: one for each successful substitution.

w <filename> -- write the line to a file if a successful replacement was done. The *w* flag causes lines which are actually substituted by the *s* function to be written to a file named by <filename>. If <filename> exists before *sed* is run, it is overwritten; if not, it is created.

A single space must separate *w* and <filename>.

The possibilities of multiple, somewhat different copies of one input line being written are the same as for *p*.

A maximum of 10 different file names may be mentioned after *w* flags and *w* functions (see below), combined.

Examples:

The following command, applied to our standard input,

```
s/to/by/w changes
```

produces, on the standard output:

```
In Xanadu did Kubhla Khan
A stately pleasure dome decree:
Where Alph, the sacred river, ran
Through caverns measureless by man
Down by a sunless sea.
```

and, on the file 'changes':

```
Through caverns measureless by man
Down by a sunless sea.
```

If the nocopy option is in effect, the command:

```
s/[.,;?:]/*P&*/gp
```

produces:

```
A stately pleasure dome decree*P:*
Where Alph*P,* the sacred river*P,* ran
Down to a sunless sea*P.*
```

Finally, to illustrate the effect of the *g* flag, the command:

```
/X/s/an/AN/p
```

produces (assuming nocopy mode):

```
In XANadu did Kubhla Khan
```

and the command:

```
/X/s/an/AN/gp
```

produces:

```
In XANadu did Kubhla KhAN
```

3.3. Input-output Functions

(2)p -- print

The print function writes the addressed lines to the standard output file. They are written at the time the *p* function is encountered, regardless of what succeeding editing commands may do to the lines.

(2)w <filename> -- write on <filename>

The write function writes the addressed lines to the file named by <filename>. If the file previously existed, it is overwritten; if not, it is created. The lines are written exactly as they exist when the write function is encountered for each line, regardless of what subsequent editing commands may do to them.

Exactly one space must separate the *w* and <filename>.

A maximum of ten different files may be mentioned in write functions and *w* flags after *s* functions, combined.

(1)r <filename> -- read the contents of a file

The read function reads the contents of <filename>, and appends them after the line matched by the address. The file is read and appended regardless of what subsequent editing commands do to the line which matched its address. If *r* and *a* functions are executed on the same line, the text from the *a* functions and the *r* functions is written to the output in the order that the functions are executed.

Exactly one space must separate the *r* and <filename>. If a file mentioned by a *r* function cannot be opened, it is considered a null file, not an error, and no diagnostic is given.

NOTE: Since there is a limit to the number of files that can be opened simultaneously, care should be taken that no more than ten files be mentioned in *w* functions or flags; that number is reduced by one if any *r* functions are present. (Only one read file is open at one time.)

Examples

Assume that the file 'note1' has the following contents:

Note: Kubla Khan (more properly Kublai Khan; 1216-1294) was the grandson and most eminent successor of Genghiz (Chingiz) Khan, and founder of the Mongol dynasty in China.

Then the following command:

```
/Kubla/r note1
```

produces:

```
In Xanadu did Kubla Khan
    Note: Kubla Khan (more properly Kublai Khan; 1216-1294) was the grandson and
    most eminent successor of Genghiz (Chingiz) Khan, and founder of the Mongol
    dynasty in China.
A stately pleasure dome decree:
Where Alph, the sacred river, ran
Through caverns measureless to man
Down to a sunless sea.
```

3.4. Multiple Input-line Functions

Three functions, all spelled with capital letters, deal specially with pattern spaces containing imbedded newlines; they are intended principally to provide pattern matches across lines in the input.

(2)N -- Next line

The next input line is appended to the current line in the pattern space; the two input lines are separated by an imbedded newline. Pattern matches may extend across the imbedded newline(s).

(2)D -- Delete first part of the pattern space

Delete up to and including the first newline character in the current pattern space. If the pattern space becomes empty (the only newline was the terminal newline), read another line from the input. In any case, begin the list of editing commands again from its beginning.

(2)P -- Print first part of the pattern space

Print up to and including the first newline in the pattern space.

The *P* and *D* functions are equivalent to their lower-case counterparts if there are no imbedded newlines in the pattern space.

3.5. Hold and Get Functions

Four functions save and retrieve part of the input for possible later use.

(2)h -- hold pattern space

The *h* functions copies the contents of the pattern space into a hold area (destroying the previous contents of the hold area).

(2)H -- Hold pattern space

The *H* function appends the contents of the pattern space to the contents of the hold area; the former and new contents are separated by a newline.

(2)g -- get contents of hold area

The *g* function copies the contents of the hold area into the pattern space (destroying the previous contents of the pattern space).

(2)G -- Get contents of hold area

The *G* function appends the contents of the hold area to the contents of the pattern space; the former and new contents are separated by a newline.

(2)x -- exchange

The exchange command interchanges the contents of the pattern space and the hold area.

Example

The commands

```
1h
1s/ did.*//
1x
G
s/\n/  :/
```

applied to our standard example, produce:

```
In Xanadu did Kubla Khan  :In Xanadu
A stately pleasure dome decree:  :In Xanadu
Where Alph, the sacred river, ran  :In Xanadu
Through caverns measureless to man  :In Xanadu
Down to a sunless sea.  :In Xanadu
```

3.6. Flow-of-Control Functions

These functions do no editing on the input lines, but control the application of functions to the lines selected by the address part.

(2)! -- Don't

The *Don't* command causes the next command (written on the same line), to be applied to all and only those input lines *not* selected by the adress part.

(2){ -- Grouping

The grouping command '{' causes the next set of commands to be applied (or not applied) as a block to the input lines selected by the addresses of the grouping command. The first of the commands under control of the grouping may appear on the same line as the '{' or on the next line.

The group of commands is terminated by a matching '}' standing on a line by itself. Groups can be nested.

(0):<label> -- place a label

The label function marks a place in the list of editing commands which may be referred to by *b* and *t* functions. The <label> may be any sequence of eight or fewer characters; if two different colon functions have identical labels, a compile time diagnostic will be generated, and no execution attempted.

(2)b<label> -- branch to label

The branch function causes the sequence of editing commands being applied to the current input line to be restarted immediately after the place where a colon function with the same <label> was encountered. If no colon function with the same label can be found after all the editing commands have been compiled, a compile time diagnostic is produced, and no execution is attempted.

A *b* function with no <label> is taken to be a branch to the end of the list of editing commands; whatever should be done with the current input line is done, and another input line is read; the list of editing commands is restarted from the beginning on the new line.

(2)t<label> -- test substitutions

The *t* function tests whether *any* successful substitutions have been made on the current input line; if so, it branches to <label>; if not, it does nothing. The flag which indicates that a successful substitution has been executed is reset by:

1) reading a new input line, or
2) executing a *t* function.

3.7. Miscellaneous Functions

(1)= -- equals

The = function writes to the standard output the line number of the line matched by its address.

(1)q -- quit

The *q* function causes the current line to be written to the output (if it should be), any appended or read text to be written, and execution to be terminated.

Reference

[1] Ken Thompson and Dennis M. Ritchie, *The UNIX Programmer's Manual.* Bell Laboratories, 1978.

Awk — A Pattern Scanning and Processing Language (Second Edition)

Alfred V. Aho

Brian W. Kernighan

Peter J. Weinberger

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

Awk is a programming language whose basic operation is to search a set of files for patterns, and to perform specified actions upon lines or fields of lines which contain instances of those patterns. *Awk* makes certain data selection and transformation operations easy to express; for example, the *awk* program

```
length > 72
```

prints all input lines whose length exceeds 72 characters; the program

```
NF % 2 == 0
```

prints all lines with an even number of fields; and the program

```
{ $1 = log($1); print }
```

replaces the first field of each line by its logarithm.

Awk patterns may include arbitrary boolean combinations of regular expressions and of relational operators on strings, numbers, fields, variables, and array elements. Actions may include the same pattern-matching constructions as in patterns, as well as arithmetic and string expressions and assignments, **if-else**, **while**, **for** statements, and multiple output streams.

This report contains a user's guide, a discussion of the design and implementation of *awk*, and some timing statistics.

1. Introduction

Awk is a programming language designed to make many common information retrieval and text manipulation tasks easy to state and to perform.

The basic operation of *awk* is to scan a set of input lines in order, searching for lines which match any of a set of patterns which the user has specified. For each pattern, an action can be specified; this action will be performed on each line that matches the pattern.

Readers familiar with the UNIX† program *grep*[1] will recognize the approach, although in *awk* the patterns may be more general than in *grep*, and the actions allowed are more involved than merely printing the matching line. For example, the *awk* program

```
{print $3, $2}
```

prints the third and second columns of a table in that order. The program

```
$2 ~ /A|B|C/
```

prints all input lines with an A, B, or C in the

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

second field. The program

```
$1 != prev    { print; prev = $1 }
```

prints all lines in which the first field is different from the previous first field.

1.1. Usage

The command

```
awk program [files]
```

executes the *awk* commands in the string **program** on the set of named files, or on the standard input if there are no files. The statements can also be placed in a file **pfile**, and executed by the command

```
awk -f pfile [files]
```


1.2. Program Structure

An *awk* program is a sequence of statements of the form:

```
pattern   { action }
pattern   { action }
...
```

Each line of input is matched against each of the patterns in turn. For each pattern that matches, the associated action is executed. When all the patterns have been tested, the next line is fetched and the matching starts over.

Either the pattern or the action may be left out, but not both. If there is no action for a pattern, the matching line is simply copied to the output. (Thus a line which matches several patterns can be printed several times.) If there is no pattern for an action, then the action is performed for every input line. A line which matches no pattern is ignored.

Since patterns and actions are both optional, actions must be enclosed in braces to distinguish them from patterns.

1.3. Records and Fields

Awk input is divided into "records" terminated by a record separator. The default record separator is a newline, so by default *awk* processes its input a line at a time. The number of the current record is available in a variable named **NR**.

Each input record is considered to be divided into "fields." Fields are normally separated by white space — blanks or tabs — but the input field separator may be changed, as described below. Fields are referred to as **$1**, **$2**, and so forth, where **$1** is the first field, and **$0** is the whole input record itself. Fields may be assigned to. The number of fields in the current record is available in a variable named **NF**.

The variables **FS** and **RS** refer to the input field and record separators; they may be changed at any time to any single character. The optional command-line argument **-F***c* may also be used to set **FS** to the character *c*.

If the record separator is empty, an empty input line is taken as the record separator, and blanks, tabs and newlines are treated as field separators.

The variable **FILENAME** contains the name of the current input file.

1.4. Printing

An action may have no pattern, in which case the action is executed for all lines. The simplest action is to print some or all of a record; this is accomplished by the *awk* command **print**. The *awk* program

```
{ print }
```

prints each record, thus copying the input to the output intact. More useful is to print a field or fields from each record. For instance,

```
print $2, $1
```

prints the first two fields in reverse order. Items separated by a comma in the print statement will be separated by the current output field separator when output. Items not separated by commas will be concatenated, so

```
print $1 $2
```

runs the first and second fields together.

The predefined variables **NF** and **NR** can be used; for example

```
{ print NR, NF, $0 }
```

prints each record preceded by the record number and the number of fields.

Output may be diverted to multiple files; the program

```
{ print $1 >"foo1"; print $2 >"foo2" }
```

writes the first field, **$1**, on the file **foo1**, and the second field on file **foo2**. The >> notation can also be used:

```
print $1 >>"foo"
```

appends the output to the file **foo**. (In each case, the output files are created if necessary.) The file name can be a variable or a field as well as a constant; for example,

```
print $1 >$2
```

uses the contents of field 2 as a file name.

Naturally there is a limit on the number of output files; currently it is 10.

Similarly, output can be piped into another process (on UNIX only); for instance,

```
print | "mail bwk"
```

mails the output to **bwk**.

The variables **OFS** and **ORS** may be used to change the current output field separator and output record separator. The output record separator is appended to the output of the **print** statement.

Awk also provides the **printf** statement for output formatting:

```
printf format expr, expr, ...
```

formats the expressions in the list according to the specification in **format** and prints them. For example,

```
printf "%8.2f  %10ld\n", $1, $2
```

prints **$1** as a floating point number 8 digits wide, with two after the decimal point, and **$2** as a 10-digit long decimal number, followed by a newline. No output separators are produced automatically; you must add them yourself, as in this example. The version of **printf** is identical to that used with C.[2]

2. Patterns

A pattern in front of an action acts as a selector that determines whether the action is to be executed. A variety of expressions may be used as patterns: regular expressions, arithmetic relational expressions, string-valued expressions, and arbitrary boolean combinations of these.

2.1. BEGIN and END

The special pattern **BEGIN** matches the beginning of the input, before the first record is read. The pattern **END** matches the end of the input, after the last record has been processed. **BEGIN** and **END** thus provide a way to gain control before and after processing, for initialization and wrapup.

As an example, the field separator can be set to a colon by

```
BEGIN  { FS = ":" }
... rest of program ...
```

Or the input lines may be counted by

```
END  { print NR }
```

If **BEGIN** is present, it must be the first pattern; **END** must be the last if used.

2.2. Regular Expressions

The simplest regular expression is a literal string of characters enclosed in slashes, like

```
/smith/
```

This is actually a complete *awk* program which will print all lines which contain any occurrence of the name "smith". If a line contains "smith" as part of a larger word, it will also be printed, as in

```
blacksmithing
```

Awk regular expressions include the regular expression forms found in the UNIX text editor *ed*[1] and *grep* (without back-referencing). In addition, *awk* allows parentheses for grouping, | for alternatives, + for "one or more", and ? for "zero or one", all as in *lex*. Character classes may be abbreviated: **[a-zA-Z0-9]** is the set of all letters and digits. As an example, the *awk* program

```
/[Aa]ho |[Ww]einberger |[Kk]ernighan/
```

will print all lines which contain any of the names "Aho," "Weinberger" or "Kernighan," whether capitalized or not.

Regular expressions (with the extensions listed above) must be enclosed in slashes, just as in *ed* and *sed*. Within a regular expression, blanks and the regular expression metacharacters are significant. To turn of the magic meaning of one of the regular expression characters, precede it with a backslash. An example is the pattern

```
/\/.*\//
```

which matches any string of characters enclosed in slashes.

One can also specify that any field or variable matches a regular expression (or does not match it) with the operators ~ and !~. The program

```
$1 ~ /[jJ]ohn/
```

prints all lines where the first field matches "john" or "John." Notice that this will also match "Johnson", "St. Johnsbury", and so on. To restrict it to exactly **[jJ]ohn**, use

```
$1 ~ /^[jJ]ohn$/
```

The caret ^ refers to the beginning of a line or field; the dollar sign $ refers to the end.

2.3. Relational Expressions

An *awk* pattern can be a relational expression involving the usual relational operators <, <=, ==, !=, >=, and >. An example is

```
$2 > $1 + 100
```

which selects lines where the second field is at least 100 greater than the first field. Similarly,

```
NF % 2 == 0
```

prints lines with an even number of fields.

In relational tests, if neither operand is numeric, a string comparison is made; otherwise it is numeric. Thus,

```
$1 >= "s"
```

selects lines that begin with an **s**, **t**, **u**, etc. In the absence of any other information, fields are treated as strings, so the program

```
$1 > $2
```

will perform a string comparison.

2.4. Combinations of Patterns

A pattern can be any boolean combination of patterns, using the operators || (or), && (and), and ! (not). For example,

```
$1 >= "s" && $1 < "t" && $1 != "smith"
```

selects lines where the first field begins with "s", but is not "smith". && and || guarantee that their operands will be evaluated from left to right; evaluation stops as soon as the truth or falsehood is determined.

2.5. Pattern Ranges

The "pattern" that selects an action may also consist of two patterns separated by a comma, as in

```
pat1, pat2 { ... }
```

In this case, the action is performed for each line between an occurrence of **pat1** and the next occurrence of **pat2** (inclusive). For example,

```
/start/, /stop/
```

prints all lines between **start** and **stop**, while

```
NR == 100, NR == 200 { ... }
```

does the action for lines 100 through 200 of the input.

3. Actions

An *awk* action is a sequence of action statements terminated by newlines or semicolons. These action statements can be used to do a variety of bookkeeping and string manipulating tasks.

3.1. Built-in Functions

Awk provides a "length" function to compute the length of a string of characters. This program prints each record, preceded by its length:

```
{print length, $0}
```

length by itself is a "pseudo-variable" which yields the length of the current record; **length(argument)** is a function which yields the length of its argument, as in the equivalent

```
{print length($0), $0}
```

The argument may be any expression.

Awk also provides the arithmetic functions **sqrt**, **log**, **exp**, and **int**, for square root, base *e* logarithm, exponential, and integer part of their respective arguments.

The name of one of these built-in functions, without argument or parentheses, stands for the value of the function on the whole record. The program

```
length < 10 || length > 20
```

prints lines whose length is less than 10 or greater than 20.

The function **substr(s, m, n)** produces the substring of **s** that begins at position **m** (origin 1) and is at most **n** characters long. If **n** is omitted, the substring goes to the end of **s**. The function **index(s1, s2)** returns the position where the string **s2** occurs in **s1**, or zero if it does not.

The function **sprintf(f, e1, e2, ...)** produces the value of the expressions **e1**, **e2**, etc., in the **printf** format specified by **f**. Thus, for example,

```
x = sprintf("%8.2f %10ld", $1, $2)
```

sets **x** to the string produced by formatting the values of **$1** and **$2**.

3.2. Variables, Expressions, and Assignments

Awk variables take on numeric (floating point) or string values according to context. For example, in

```
x = 1
```

x is clearly a number, while in

```
x = "smith"
```

it is clearly a string. Strings are converted to numbers and vice versa whenever context demands it. For instance,

```
x = "3" + "4"
```

assigns 7 to **x**. Strings which cannot be interpreted as numbers in a numerical context will generally have numeric value zero, but it is unwise to count on this behavior.

By default, variables (other than built-ins) are initialized to the null string, which has numerical value zero; this eliminates the need for most **BEGIN** sections. For example, the sums of the first two fields can be computed by

```
    { s1 += $1; s2 += $2 }
END{ print s1, s2 }
```

Arithmetic is done internally in floating point. The arithmetic operators are +, −, *, /, and % (mod). The C increment ++ and decrement −− operators are also available, and so are the assignment operators +=, −=, *=, /=, and %=. These operators may all be used in expressions.

3.3. Field Variables

Fields in *awk* share essentially all of the properties of variables — they may be used in arithmetic or string operations, and may be assigned to. Thus one can replace the first field with a sequence number like this:

```
{ $1 = NR; print }
```

or accumulate two fields into a third, like this:

```
{ $1 = $2 + $3; print $0 }
```

or assign a string to a field:

```
{ if ($3 > 1000)
    $3 = "too big"
  print
}
```

which replaces the third field by "too big" when it is, and in any case prints the record.

Field references may be numerical expressions, as in

```
{ print $i, $(i+1), $(i+n) }
```

Whether a field is deemed numeric or string depends on context; in ambiguous cases like

```
if ($1 == $2) ...
```

fields are treated as strings.

Each input line is split into fields automatically as necessary. It is also possible to split any variable or string into fields:

```
n = split(s, array, sep)
```

splits the the string s into array[1], ..., array[n]. The number of elements found is returned. If the sep argument is provided, it is used as the field separator; otherwise FS is used as the separator.

3.4. String Concatenation

Strings may be concatenated. For example

```
length($1 $2 $3)
```

returns the length of the first three fields. Or in a print statement,

```
print $1 " is " $2
```

prints the two fields separated by " is ". Variables and numeric expressions may also appear in concatenations.

3.5. Arrays

Array elements are not declared; they spring into existence by being mentioned. Subscripts may have *any* non-null value, including non-numeric strings. As an example of a conventional numeric subscript, the statement

```
x[NR] = $0
```

assigns the current input record to the NR-th element of the array x. In fact, it is possible in principle (though perhaps slow) to process the entire input in a random order with the *awk* program

```
      { x[NR] = $0 }
END{ ... program ... }
```

The first action merely records each input line in the array x.

Array elements may be named by non-numeric values, which gives *awk* a capability rather like the associative memory of Snobol tables. Suppose the input contains fields with values like apple, orange, etc. Then the program

```
/apple/   { x["apple"]++ }
/orange/  { x["orange"]++ }
END       { print x["apple"], x["orange"] }
```

increments counts for the named array elements, and prints them at the end of the input.

3.6. Flow-of-Control Statements

Awk provides the basic flow-of-control statements if-else, while, for, and statement grouping with braces, as in C. We showed the if statement in section 3.3 without describing it. The condition in parentheses is evaluated; if it is true, the statement following the if is done. The else part is optional.

The while statement is exactly like that of C. For example, to print all input fields one per line,

```
i = 1
while (i <= NF) {
    print $i
    ++i
}
```

The for statement is also exactly that of C:

```
for (i = 1; i <= NF; i++)
    print $i
```

does the same job as the while statement above.

There is an alternate form of the for statement which is suited for accessing the elements of an associative array:

```
for (i in array)
    statement
```

does *statement* with i set in turn to each element of array. The elements are accessed in an apparently

random order. Chaos will ensue if i is altered, or if any new elements are accessed during the loop.

The expression in the condition part of an **if**, **while** or **for** can include relational operators like <, <=, >, >=, == ("is equal to"), and != ("not equal to"); regular expression matches with the match operators ~ and !~; the logical operators ||, &&, and !; and of course parentheses for grouping.

The **break** statement causes an immediate exit from an enclosing **while** or **for**; the **continue** statement causes the next iteration to begin.

The statement **next** causes *awk* to skip immediately to the next record and begin scanning the patterns from the top. The statement **exit** causes the program to behave as if the end of the input had occurred.

Comments may be placed in *awk* programs: they begin with the character # and end with the end of the line, as in

```
print x, y # this is a comment
```

4. Design

The UNIX system already provides several programs that operate by passing input through a selection mechanism. *Grep*, the first and simplest, merely prints all lines which match a single specified pattern. *Egrep* provides more general patterns, i.e., regular expressions in full generality; *fgrep* searches for a set of keywords with a particularly fast algorithm. *Sed*[1] provides most of the editing facilities of the editor *ed*, applied to a stream of input. None of these programs provides numeric capabilities, logical relations, or variables.

Lex[3] provides general regular expression recognition capabilities, and, by serving as a C program generator, is essentially open-ended in its capabilities. The use of *lex*, however, requires a knowledge of C programming, and a *lex* program must be compiled and loaded before use, which discourages its use for one-shot applications.

Awk is an attempt to fill in another part of the matrix of possibilities. It provides general regular expression capabilities and an implicit input/output loop. But it also provides convenient numeric processing, variables, more general selection, and control flow in the actions. It does not require compilation or a knowledge of C. Finally, *awk* provides a convenient way to access fields within lines; it is unique in this respect.

Awk also tries to integrate strings and numbers completely, by treating all quantities as both string and numeric, deciding which representation is appropriate as late as possible. In most cases the user can simply ignore the differences.

Most of the effort in developing *awk* went into deciding what *awk* should or should not do (for instance, it doesn't do string substitution) and what the syntax should be (no explicit operator for concatenation) rather than on writing or debugging the code. We have tried to make the syntax powerful but easy to use and well adapted to scanning files. For example, the absence of declarations and implicit initializations, while probably a bad idea for a general-purpose programming language, is desirable in a language that is meant to be used for tiny programs that may even be composed on the command line.

In practice, *awk* usage seems to fall into two broad categories. One is what might be called "report generation" — processing an input to extract counts, sums, sub-totals, etc. This also includes the writing of trivial data validation programs, such as verifying that a field contains only numeric information or that certain delimiters are properly balanced. The combination of textual and numeric processing is invaluable here.

A second area of use is as a data transformer, converting data from the form produced by one program into that expected by another. The simplest examples merely select fields, perhaps with rearrangements.

5. Implementation

The actual implementation of *awk* uses the language development tools available on the UNIX operating system. The grammar is specified with *yacc*;[4] the lexical analysis is done by *lex*; the regular expression recognizers are deterministic finite automata constructed directly from the expressions. An *awk* program is translated into a parse tree which is then directly executed by a simple interpreter.

Awk was designed for ease of use rather than processing speed; the delayed evaluation of variable types and the necessity to break input into fields makes high speed difficult to achieve in any case. Nonetheless, the program has not proven to be unworkably slow.

Table I below shows the execution (user + system) time on a PDP-11/70 of the UNIX programs *wc*, *grep*, *egrep*, *fgrep*, *sed*, *lex*, and *awk* on the following simple tasks:

1. count the number of lines.
2. print all lines containing "doug".
3. print all lines containing "doug", "ken" or "dmr".
4. print the third field of each line.
5. print the third and second fields of each line, in that order.
6. append all lines containing "doug", "ken", and "dmr" to files "jdoug", "jken", and

"jdmr", respectively.

7. print each line prefixed by "line-number : ".
8. sum the fourth column of a table.

The program *wc* merely counts words, lines and characters in its input; we have already mentioned the others. In all cases the input was a file containing 10,000 lines as created by the command *ls -l*; each line has the form

-rw-rw-rw- 1 ava 123 Oct 15 17:05 xxx

The total length of this input is 452,960 characters. Times for *lex* do not include compile or load.

As might be expected, *awk* is not as fast as the specialized tools *wc*, *sed*, or the programs in the *grep* family, but is faster than the more general tool *lex*. In all cases, the tasks were about as easy to express as *awk* programs as programs in these other languages; tasks involving fields were considerably easier to express as *awk* programs. Some of the test programs are shown in *awk*, *sed* and *lex*.

References

1. K. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, *UNIX Programmer's Manual,* Bell Laboratories, May 1975. Sixth Edition
2. B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language,* Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1978.
3. M. E. Lesk, "Lex — A Lexical Analyzer Generator," Comp. Sci. Tech. Rep. No. 39, Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey, October 1975. Reprinted as PS1:16 in *UNIX Programmer's Manual,* Usenix Association, (1986).
4. S. C. Johnson, "Yacc — Yet Another Compiler-Compiler," Comp. Sci. Tech. Rep. No. 32, Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey, July 1975. Reprinted as PS1:15 in *UNIX Programmer's Manual,* Usenix Association, (1986).

Program	Task 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
wc	8.6							
grep	11.7	13.1						
egrep	6.2	11.5	11.6					
fgrep	7.7	13.8	16.1					
sed	10.2	11.6	15.8	29.0	30.5	16.1		
lex	65.1	150.1	144.2	67.7	70.3	104.0	81.7	92.8
awk	15.0	25.6	29.9	33.3	38.9	46.4	71.4	31.1

Table I. Execution Times of Programs. (Times are in sec.)

The programs for some of these jobs are shown below. The *lex* programs are generally too long to show.

AWK:

1.
```
END{print NR}
```

2.
```
/doug/
```

3.
```
/ken|doug|dmr/
```

4.
```
{print $3}
```

5.
```
{print $3, $2}
```

6.
```
/ken/{print >"jken"}
/doug/     {print >"jdoug"}
/dmr/      {print >"jdmr"}
```

7.
```
{print NR ": " $0}
```

8.
```
      {sum = sum + $4}
END{print sum}
```

SED:

1.
```
$=
```

2.
```
/doug/p
```

3.
```
/doug/p
/doug/d
/ken/p
/ken/d
/dmr/p
/dmr/d
```

4.
```
/[^ ]* [ ]*[^ ]* [ ]*\([^ ]*\) .*/s//\1/p
```

5.
```
/[^ ]* [ ]*\([^ ]*\) [ ]*\([^ ]*\) .*/s//\2 \1/p
```

6.
```
/ken/w jken
/doug/w jdoug
/dmr/w jdmr
```

LEX:

1.
```
%{
int i;
%}
%%
\n    i++;
.     ;
%%
yywrap() {
      printf("%d\n", i);
}
```

2.
```
%%
^.*doug.*$ printf("%s\n", yytext);
.     ;
\n    ;
```

Typing Documents on the UNIX System: Using the -ms Macros with Troff and Nroff

M. E. Lesk

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

This document describes a set of easy-to-use macros for preparing documents on the UNIX system. Documents may be produced on either the phototypesetter or a on a computer terminal, without changing the input.

The macros provide facilities for paragraphs, sections (optionally with automatic numbering), page titles, footnotes, equations, tables, two-column format, and cover pages for papers.

This memo includes, as an appendix, the text of the "Guide to Preparing Documents with -ms" which contains additional examples of features of -ms.

This manual is a revision of, and replaces, "Typing Documents on UNIX," dated November 22, 1974.

Introduction. This memorandum describes a package of commands to produce papers using the *troff* and *nroff* formatting programs on the UNIX system. As with other *roff*-derived programs, text is prepared interspersed with formatting commands. However, this package, which itself is written in *troff* commands, provides higher-level commands than those provided with the basic *troff* program. The commands available in this package are listed in Appendix A.

Text. Type normally, except that instead of indenting for paragraphs, place a line reading ".PP" before each paragraph. This will produce indenting and extra space.

Alternatively, the command .LP that was used here will produce a left-aligned (block) paragraph. The paragraph spacing can be changed: see below under "Registers."

Beginning. For a document with a paper-type cover sheet, the input should start as follows:

```
[optional overall format .RP – see below]
.TL
Title of document (one or more lines)
.AU
Author(s) (may also be several lines)
.AI
Author's institution(s)
.AB
Abstract; to be placed on the cover sheet of a paper.
Line length is 5/6 of normal; use .ll here to change.
.AE (abstract end)
text ... (begins with .PP, which see)
```

To omit some of the standard headings (e.g. no abstract, or no author's institution) just omit the

corresponding fields and command lines. The word ABSTRACT can be suppressed by writing ".AB no" for ".AB". Several interspersed .AU and .AI lines can be used for multiple authors. The headings are not compulsory: beginning with a .PP command is perfectly OK and will just start printing an ordinary paragraph. *Warning:* You can't just begin a document with a line of text. Some -ms command must precede any text input. When in doubt, use .LP to get proper initialization, although any of the commands .PP, .LP, .TL, .SH, .NH is good enough. Figure 1 shows the legal arrangement of commands at the start of a document.

Cover Sheets and First Pages. The first line of a document signals the general format of the first page. In particular, if it is ".RP" a cover sheet with title and abstract is prepared. The default format is useful for scanning drafts.

In general -ms is arranged so that only one form of a document need be stored, containing all information; the first command gives the format, and unnecessary items for that format are ignored.

Warning: don't put extraneous material between the .TL and .AE commands. Processing of the titling items is special, and other data placed in them may not behave as you expect. Don't forget that some -ms command must precede any input text.

Page headings. The -ms macros, by default, will print a page heading containing a page number (if greater than 1). A default page footer is provided only in *nroff*, where the date is used. The user can make minor adjustments to the page headings/footings by redefining the strings LH, CH, and RH which are the left, center and right portions of the page headings, respectively; and the strings LF, CF, and RF, which are the left, center and right portions of the page footer. For more complex formats, the user can redefine the macros PT and BT, which are invoked respectively at the top and bottom of each page. The margins (taken from registers HM and FM for the top and bottom margin respectively) are normally 1 inch; the page header/footer are in the middle of that space. The user who redefines these macros should be careful not to change parameters such as point size or font without resetting them to default values.

Multi-column formats. If you place the command ".2C" in your document, the document will be printed in double column format beginning at that point. This feature is not too useful in computer terminal output, but is often desirable on the typesetter. The command ".1C" will go back to one-column format and also skip to a new page. The ".2C" command is actually a special case of the command

.MC [column width [gutter width]]

which makes multiple columns with the specified column and gutter width; as many columns as will fit across the page are used. Thus triple, quadruple, ... column pages can be printed. Whenever the number of columns is changed (except going from full width to some larger number of columns) a new page is started.

Headings. To produce a special heading, there are two commands. If you type

```
.NH
type section heading here
may be several lines
```

you will get automatically numbered section headings (1, 2, 3, ...), in boldface. For example,

```
.NH
Care and Feeding of Department Heads
```

produces

1. Care and Feeding of Department Heads

Alternatively,

```
.SH
Care and Feeding of Directors
```

will print the heading with no number added:

Care and Feeding of Directors

Every section heading, of either type, should be followed by a paragraph beginning with .PP or .LP, indicating the end of the heading. Headings may contain more than one line of text.

The .NH command also supports more complex numbering schemes. If a numerical argument is given, it is taken to be a "level" number and an appropriate sub-section number is generated. Larger level numbers indicate deeper sub-sections, as in this example:

```
.NH
Erie-Lackawanna
.NH 2
Morris and Essex Division
.NH 3
Gladstone Branch
.NH 3
Montclair Branch
.NH 2
Boonton Line
```

generates:

2. Erie-Lackawanna

2.1. Morris and Essex Division

2.1.1. Gladstone Branch

2.1.2. Montclair Branch

2.2. Boonton Line

An explicit ".NH 0" will reset the numbering of level 1 to one, as here:

```
.NH 0
Penn Central
```

1. Penn Central

Indented paragraphs. (Paragraphs with hanging numbers, e.g. references.) The sequence

```
.IP [1]
Text for first paragraph, typed
normally for as long as you would
like on as many lines as needed.
.IP [2]
Text for second paragraph, ...
```

produces

[1] Text for first paragraph, typed normally for as long as you would like on as many lines as needed.

[2] Text for second paragraph, ...

A series of indented paragraphs may be followed by an ordinary paragraph beginning with .PP or .LP, depending on whether you wish indenting or not. The command .LP was used here.

More sophisticated uses of .IP are also possible. If the label is omitted, for example, a plain block indent is produced.

```
.IP
This material will
just be turned into a
block indent suitable for quotations or
such matter.
.LP
```

will produce

> This material will just be turned into a block indent suitable for quotations or such matter.

If a non-standard amount of indenting is required, it may be specified after the label (in character positions) and will remain in effect until the next .PP or .LP. Thus, the general form of the .IP command contains two additional fields: the label and the indenting length. For example,

```
.IP first: 9
Notice the longer label, requiring larger
indenting for these paragraphs.
.IP second:
And so forth.
.LP
```

produces this:

first: Notice the longer label, requiring larger indenting for these paragraphs.

second: And so forth.

It is also possible to produce multiple nested indents; the command .RS indicates that the next .IP starts from the current indentation level. Each .RE will eat up one level of indenting so you should balance .RS and .RE commands. The .RS command should be thought of as "move right" and the .RE command as "move left". As an example

```
.IP 1.
Bell Laboratories
.RS
.IP 1.1
Murray Hill
.IP 1.2
Holmdel
.IP 1.3
Whippany
.RS
.IP 1.3.1
Madison
.RE
.IP 1.4
Chester
.RE
.LP
```

will result in

1. Bell Laboratories
   - 1.1 Murray Hill
   - 1.2 Holmdel
   - 1.3 Whippany
     - 1.3.1 Madison
   - 1.4 Chester

All of these variations on .LP leave the right margin untouched. Sometimes, for purposes such as setting off a quotation, a paragraph indented on both right and left is required.

```
A single paragraph like this is
obtained by preceding it with .QP.
More complicated material (several
paragraphs) should be bracketed
with .QS and .QE.
```

Emphasis. To get italics (on the typesetter) or underlining (on the terminal) say

```
.I
as much text as you want
can be typed here
.R
```

as was done for *these three words.* The .R command restores the normal (usually Roman) font. If only one word is to be italicized, it may be just given on the line with the .I command,

```
.I word
```

and in this case no .R is needed to restore the previous font. **Boldface** can be produced by

```
.B
Text to be set in boldface
goes here
.R
```

and also will be underlined on the terminal or line printer. As with .I, a single word can be placed in boldface by placing it on the same line as the .B command.

A few size changes can be specified similarly with the commands .LG (make larger), .SM (make smaller), and .NL (return to normal size). The size change is two points; the commands may be repeated for increased effect (here one .NL canceled two .SM commands).

If actual underlining as opposed to italicizing is required on the typesetter, the command

```
.UL word
```

will underline a word. There is no way to underline multiple words on the typesetter.

Footnotes. Material placed between lines with the commands .FS (footnote) and .FE (footnote end) will be collected, remembered, and finally placed at the bottom of the current page*. By default, footnotes are 11/12th the length of normal text, but this can be changed using the FL register (see below).

Displays and Tables. To prepare displays of lines, such as tables, in which the lines should not be re-arranged, enclose them in the commands .DS and .DE

```
.DS
table lines, like the
examples here, are placed
between .DS and .DE
.DE
```

By default, lines between .DS and .DE are indented and left-adjusted. You can also center lines, or retain the left margin. Lines bracketed by .DS C and .DE commands are centered (and not re-arranged); lines bracketed by .DS L and .DE are left-adjusted, not indented, and not re-arranged. A plain .DS is equivalent to .DS I, which indents and left-adjusts. Thus,

* Like this.

these lines were preceded
by .DS C and followed by
a .DE command;

whereas

these lines were preceded
by .DS L and followed by
a .DE command.

Note that .DS C centers each line; there is a variant .DS B that makes the display into a left-adjusted block of text, and then centers that entire block. Normally a display is kept together, on one page. If you wish to have a long display which may be split across page boundaries, use .CD, .LD, or .ID in place of the commands .DS C, .DS L, or .DS I respectively. An extra argument to the .DS I or .DS command is taken as an amount to indent. Note: it is tempting to assume that .DS R will right adjust lines, but it doesn't work.

Boxing words or lines. To draw rectangular boxes around words the command

.BX word

will print word as shown. The boxes will not be neat on a terminal, and this should not be used as a substitute for italics.

Longer pieces of text may be boxed by enclosing them with .B1 and .B2:

.B1
text...
.B2

as has been done here.

Keeping blocks together. If you wish to keep a table or other block of lines together on a page, there are "keep - release" commands. If a block of lines preceded by .KS and followed by .KE does not fit on the remainder of the current page, it will begin on a new page. Lines bracketed by .DS and .DE commands are automatically kept together this way. There is also a "keep floating" command: if the block to be kept together is preceded by .KF instead of .KS and does not fit on the current page, it will be moved down through the text until the top of the next page. Thus, no large blank space will be introduced in the document.

Nroff/Troff commands. Among the useful commands from the basic formatting programs are the following. They all work with both typesetter and computer terminal output:

.bp - begin new page.
.br - "break", stop running text
from line to line.
.sp n - insert n blank lines.
.na - don't adjust right margins.

Date. By default, documents produced on computer terminals have the date at the bottom of each page; documents produced on the typesetter don't. To force the date, say ".DA". To force no date, say ".ND". To lie about the date, say ".DA July 4, 1776" which puts the specified date at the bottom of each page. The command

.ND May 8, 1945

in ".RP" format places the specified date on the cover sheet and nowhere else. Place this line before the title.

Signature line. You can obtain a signature line by placing the command .SG in the document. The authors' names will be output in place of the .SG line. An argument to .SG is used as a typing identification line, and placed after the signatures. The .SG command is ignored in released paper format.

Registers. Certain of the registers used by –ms can be altered to change default settings. They should be changed with .nr commands, as with

.nr PS 9

to make the default point size 9 point. If the effect is needed immediately, the normal *troff* command should be used in addition to changing the number register.

Register	Defines	Takes effect	Default
PS	point size	next para.	10
VS	line spacing	next para.	12 pts
LL	line length	next para.	6″
LT	title length	next para.	6″
PD	para. spacing	next para.	0.3 VS
PI	para. indent	next para.	5 ens
FL	footnote length	next FS	11/12 LL
CW	column width	next 2C	7/15 LL
GW	intercolumn gap	next 2C	1/15 LL
PO	page offset	next page	26/27″
HM	top margin	next page	1″
FM	bottom margin	next page	1″

You may also alter the strings LH, CH, and RH which are the left, center, and right headings respectively; and similarly LF, CF, and RF

which are strings in the page footer. The page number on *output* is taken from register PN, to permit changing its output style. For more complicated headers and footers the macros PT and BT can be redefined, as explained earlier.

Accents. To simplify typing certain foreign words, strings representing common accent marks are defined. They precede the letter over which the mark is to appear. Here are the strings:

Input	Output	Input	Output
*'e	é	*~a	ã
*`e	è	*Ce	ě
*:u	ü	*,c	ç
*^e	ê		

Use. After your document is prepared and stored on a file, you can print it on a terminal with the command*

nroff -ms file

and you can print it on the typesetter with the command

troff -ms file

(many options are possible). In each case, if your document is stored in several files, just list all the filenames where we have used "file". If equations or tables are used, *eqn* and/or *tbl* must be invoked as preprocessors.

References and further study. If you have to do Greek or mathematics, see *eqn* [1] for equation setting. To aid *eqn* users, *-ms* provides definitions of .EQ and .EN which normally center the equation and set it off slightly. An argument on .EQ is taken to be an equation number and placed in the right margin near the equation. In addition, there are three special arguments to EQ: the letters C, I, and L indicate centered (default), indented, and left adjusted equations, respectively. If there is both a format argument and an equation number, give the format argument first, as in

.EQ L (1.3a)

for a left-adjusted equation numbered (1.3a).

Similarly, the macros .TS and .TE are defined to separate tables (see [2]) from text with a little space. A very long table with a heading may be broken across pages by beginning it with .TS H instead of .TS, and placing the line .TH in the table data after the heading. If the table has no heading repeated from page to page, just use the ordinary .TS and .TE macros.

To learn more about *troff* see [3] for a general introduction, and [4] for the full details (experts only). Information on related UNIX commands is in [5]. For jobs that do not seem well-adapted to -ms, consider other macro packages. It is often far easier to write a specific macro packages for such tasks as imitating particular journals than to try to adapt -ms.

Acknowledgment. Many thanks are due to Brian Kernighan for his help in the design and implementation of this package, and for his assistance in preparing this manual.

* If .2C was used, pipe the *nroff* output through *col;* make the first line of the input ".pi /usr/bin/col."

References

[1] B. W. Kernighan and L. L. Cherry, *Typesetting Mathematics — Users Guide (2nd edition),* Bell Laboratories Computing Science Report no. 17.

[2] M. E. Lesk, *Tbl — A Program to Format Tables,* Bell Laboratories Computing Science Report no. 45.

[3] B. W. Kernighan, *A Troff Tutorial,* Bell Laboratories, 1976.

[4] J. F. Ossanna, *Nroff/Troff Reference Manual,* Bell Laboratories Computing Science Report no. 51.

[5] K. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, *UNIX Programmer's Manual,* Bell Laboratories, 1978.

Appendix A
List of Commands

1C	Return to single column format.	LG	Increase type size.
2C	Start double column format.	LP	Left aligned block paragraph.
AB	Begin abstract.		
AE	End abstract.		
AI	Specify author's institution.		
AU	Specify author.	ND	Change or cancel date.
B	Begin boldface.	NH	Specify numbered heading.
DA	Provide the date on each page.	NL	Return to normal type size.
DE	End display.	PP	Begin paragraph.
DS	Start display (also CD, LD, ID).		
EN	End equation.	R	Return to regular font (usually Roman).
EQ	Begin equation.	RE	End one level of relative indenting.
FE	End footnote.	RP	Use released paper format.
FS	Begin footnote.	RS	Relative indent increased one level.
		SG	Insert signature line.
I	Begin italics.	SH	Specify section heading.
		SM	Change to smaller type size.
IP	Begin indented paragraph.	TL	Specify title.
KE	Release keep.		
KF	Begin floating keep.	UL	Underline one word.
KS	Start keep.		

Register Names

The following register names are used by –ms internally. Independent use of these names in one's own macros may produce incorrect output. Note that no lower case letters are used in any –ms internal name.

Number registers used in –ms

:	DW	GW	HM	IQ	LL	NA	OJ	PO	T.	TV
#T	EF	H1	HT	IR	LT	NC	PD	PQ	TB	VS
1T	FL	H3	IK	KI	MM	NF	PF	PX	TD	YE
AV	FM	H4	IM	L1	MN	NS	PI	RO	TN	YY
CW	FP	H5	IP	LE	MO	OI	PN	ST	TQ	ZN

String registers used in –ms

'	A5	CB	DW	EZ	I	KF	MR	R1	RT	TL
`	AB	CC	DY	FA	I1	KQ	ND	R2	S0	TM
^	AE	CD	E1	FE	I2	KS	NH	R3	S1	TQ
~	AI	CF	E2	FJ	I3	LB	NL	R4	S2	TS
:	AU	CH	E3	FK	I4	LD	NP	R5	SG	TT
,	B	CM	E4	FN	I5	LG	OD	RC	SH	UL
1C	BG	CS	E5	FO	ID	LP	OK	RE	SM	WB
2C	BT	CT	EE	FQ	IE	ME	PP	RF	SN	WH
A1	C	D	EL	FS	IM	MF	PT	RH	SY	WT
A2	C1	DA	EM	FV	IP	MH	PY	RP	TA	XD
A3	C2	DE	EN	FY	IZ	MN	QF	RQ	TE	XF
A4	CA	DS	EQ	HO	KE	MO	R	RS	TH	XK

Order of Commands in Input

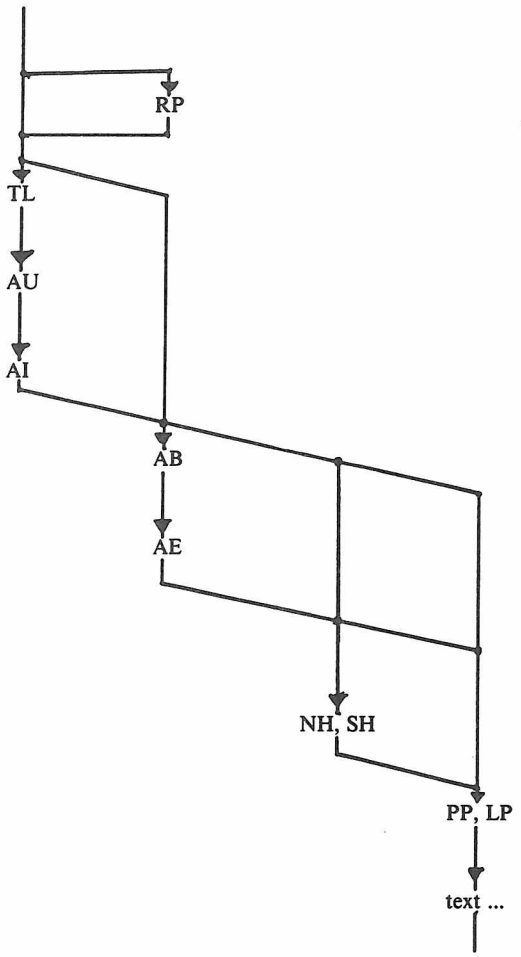


Figure 1

A Revised Version of –ms

Bill Tuthill

Computing Services
University of California
Berkeley, CA 94720

The –ms macros have been slightly revised and rearranged for the Berkeley Unix distribution. Because of the rearrangement, the new macros can be read by the computer in about half the time required by the previous version of –ms. This means that output will begin to appear between ten seconds and several minutes more quickly, depending on the system load. On long files, however, the savings in total time are not substantial. The old version of –ms is still available as –mos.

Several bugs in –ms have been fixed, including a bad problem with the .1C macro, minor difficulties with boxed text, a break induced by .EQ before initialization, the failure to set tab stops in displays, and several bothersome errors in the refer macros. Macros used only at Bell Laboratories have been removed. There are a few extensions to previous –ms macros, and a number of new macros, but all the documented –ms macros still work exactly as they did before, and have the same names as before. Output produced with –ms should look like output produced with –mos.

One important new feature is automatically numbered footnotes. Footnote numbers are printed by means of a pre-defined string (**), which you invoke separately from .FS and .FE. Each time it is used, this string increases the footnote number by one, whether or not you use .FS and .FE in your text. Footnote numbers will be superscripted on the phototypesetter and on daisy-wheel terminals, but on low-resolution devices (such as the lpr and a crt), they will be bracketed. If you use ** to indicate numbered footnotes, then the .FS macro will automatically include the footnote number at the bottom of the page. This footnote, for example, was produced as follows:[1]

```
This footnote, for example, was produced as follows:\**
.FS
    ...
.FE
```

If you are using ** to number footnotes, but want a particular footnote to be marked with an asterisk or a dagger, then give that mark as the first argument to .FS: †

```
then give that mark as the first argument to .FS: \(dg
.FS  \(dg
    ...
.FE
```

Footnote numbering will be temporarily suspended, because the ** string is not used. Instead of a dagger, you could use an asterisk * or double dagger ‡, represented as \(dd.

Another new feature is a macro for printing theses according to Berkeley standards. This macro is called .TM, which stands for thesis mode. (It is much like the .th macro in –me.) It will put page numbers in the upper right-hand corner; number the first page; suppress the date; and doublespace everything except quotes, displays, and keeps. Use it at the top of each file making up your thesis.

[1] If you never use the "**" string, no footnote numbers will appear anywhere in the text, including down here. The output footnotes will look exactly like footnotes produced with –mos.

† In the footnote, the dagger will appear where the footnote number would otherwise appear, as on the left.

Calling .TM defines the .CT macro for chapter titles, which skips to a new page and moves the pagenumber to the center footer. The .P1 (P one) macro can be used even without thesis mode to print the header on page 1, which is suppressed except in thesis mode. If you want roman numeral page numbering, use an ".af PN i" request.

There is a new macro especially for bibliography entries, called .XP, which stands for exdented paragraph. It will exdent the first line of the paragraph by \n(PI units, usually 5n (the same as the indent for the first line of a .PP). Most bibliographies are printed this way. Here are some examples of exdented paragraphs:

Lumley, Lyle S., *Sex in Crustaceans: Shell Fish Habits,* Harbinger Press, Tampa Bay and San Diego, October 1979. 243 pages. The pioneering work in this field.

Leffadinger, Harry A., "Mollusk Mating Season: 52 Weeks, or All Year?" in *Acta Biologica,* vol. 42, no. 11, November 1980. A provocative thesis, but the conclusions are wrong.

Of course, you will have to take care of italicizing the book title and journal, and quoting the title of the journal article. Indentation or exdentation can be changed by setting the value of number register PI.

If you need to produce endnotes rather than footnotes, put the references in a file of their own. This is similar to what you would do if you were typing the paper on a conventional typewriter. Note that you can use automatic footnote numbering without actually having .FS and .FE pairs in your text. If you place footnotes in a separate file, you can use .IP macros with ** as a hanging tag; this will give you numbers at the left-hand margin. With some styles of endnotes, you would want to use .PP rather then .IP macros, and specify ** before the reference begins.

There are four new macros to help produce a table of contents. Table of contents entries must be enclosed in .XS and .XE pairs, with optional .XA macros for additional entries; arguments to .XS and .XA specify the page number, to be printed at the right. A final .PX macro prints out the table of contents. Here is a sample of typical input and output text:


```
.XS ii
Introduction
.XA 1
Chapter 1: Review of the Literature
.XA 23
Chapter 2: Experimental Evidence
.XE
.PX
```

Table of Contents

Introduction ii
Chapter 1: Review of the Literature 1
Chapter 2: Experimental Evidence 23

The .XS and .XE pairs may also be used in the text, after a section header for instance, in which case page numbers are supplied automatically. However, most documents that require a table of contents are too long to produce in one run, which is necessary if this method is to work. It is recommended that you do a table of contents after finishing your document. To print out the table of contents, use the .PX macro; if you forget it, nothing will happen.

As an aid in producing text that will format correctly with both **nroff** and **troff**, there are some new string definitions that define quotation marks and dashes for each of these two formatting programs. The *- string will yield two hyphens in **nroff**, but in **troff** it will produce an em dash— like this one. The *Q and *U strings will produce " and " in **troff**, but " in **nroff**. (In typesetting, the double quote is traditionally considered bad form.)

There are now a large number of optional foreign accent marks defined by the –ms macros. All the accent marks available in –mos are present, and they all work just as they always did. However, there are better definitions available by placing .AM at the beginning of your document. Unlike the –mos accent marks, the accent strings should come *after* the letter being accented. Here is a list of the diacritical marks, with examples of what they look like.

name of accent	input	output
acute accent	e*´	é
grave accent	e*`	è
circumflex	o*^	ô
cedilla	c*,	ç
tilde	n*~	ñ
question	*?	¿
exclamation	*!	¡
umlaut	u*:	ü
digraph s	*8	ß
hacek	c*v	č
macron	a*_	ā
underdot	s*.	ṣ
o-slash	o*/	ø
angstrom	a*o	å
yogh	kni*3t	kniȝt
Thorn	*(Th	Þ
thorn	*(th	þ
Eth	*(D-	Ð
eth	*(d-	ð
hooked o	*q	ǫ
ae ligature	*(ae	æ
AE ligature	*(Ae	Æ
oe ligature	*(oe	œ
OE ligature	*(Oe	Œ

If you want to use these new diacritical marks, don't forget the .AM at the top of your file. Without it, some will not print at all, and others will be placed on the wrong letter.

It is also possible to produce custom headers and footers that are different on even and odd pages. The .OH and .EH macros define odd and even headers, while .OF and .EF define odd and even footers. Arguments to these four macros are specified as with .tl. This document was produced with:

```
.OH \fIThe -mx Macros'Page %\fP'
.EH \fIPage %'The -mx Macros\fP'
```

Note that it would be a error to have an apostrophe in the header text; if you need one, you will have to use a different delimiter around the left, center, and right portions of the title. You can use any character as a delimiter, provided it doesn't appear elsewhere in the argument to .OH, .EH, .OF, or EF.

The –ms macros work in conjunction with the **tbl**, **eqn**, and **refer** preprocessors. Macros to deal with these items are read in only as needed, as are the thesis macros (.TM), the special accent mark definitions (.AM), table of contents macros (.XS and .XE), and macros to format the optional cover page. The code for the –ms package lives in /usr/lib/tmac/tmac.s, and sourced files reside in the directory /usr/ucb/lib/ms.

USD 21

Writing Papers with NROFF using –me

*Eric P. Allman**

Project INGRES
Electronics Research Laboratory
University of California, Berkeley
Berkeley, California 94720

This document describes the text processing facilities available on the UNIX† operating system via NROFF† and the –me macro package. It is assumed that the reader already is generally familiar with the UNIX operating system and a text editor such as ex. This is intended to be a casual introduction, and as such not all material is covered. In particular, many variations and additional features of the –me macro package are not explained. For a complete discussion of this and other issues, see *The –me Reference Manual* and *The NROFF/TROFF Reference Manual.*

NROFF, a computer program that runs on the UNIX operating system, reads an input file prepared by the user and outputs a formatted paper suitable for publication or framing. The input consists of *text*, or words to be printed, and *requests*, which give instructions to the NROFF program telling how to format the printed copy.

Section 1 describes the basics of text processing. Section 2 describes the basic requests. Section 3 introduces displays. Annotations, such as footnotes, are handled in section 4. The more complex requests which are not discussed in section 2 are covered in section 5. Finally, section 6 discusses things you will need to know if you want to typeset documents. If you are a novice, you probably won't want to read beyond section 4 until you have tried some of the basic features out.

When you have your raw text ready, call the NROFF formatter by typing as a request to the UNIX shell:

nroff –me –T*type files*

where *type* describes the type of terminal you are outputting to. Common values are **dtc** for a DTC 300s (daisy-wheel type) printer and **lpr** for the line printer. If the **–T** flag is omitted, a "lowest common denominator" terminal is assumed; this is good for previewing output on most terminals. A complete description of options to the NROFF command can be found in *The NROFF/TROFF Reference Manual.*

The word *argument* is used in this manual to mean a word or number which appears on the same line as a request which modifies the meaning of that request. For example, the request

.sp

spaces one line, but

*Author's current address: Britton Lee, Inc., 1919 Addison Suite 105, Berkeley, California 94704.

†UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories

```
.sp 4
```

spaces four lines. The number **4** is an *argument* to the **.sp** request which says to space four lines instead of one. Arguments are separated from the request and from each other by spaces.

1. Basics of Text Processing

The primary function of NROFF is to *collect* words from input lines, *fill* output lines with those words, *justify* the right hand margin by inserting extra spaces in the line, and output the result. For example, the input:

```
Now is the time
for all good men
to come to the aid
of their party.
Four score and seven
years ago,...
```

will be read, packed onto output lines, and justified to produce:

> Now is the time for all good men to come to the aid of their party. Four score and seven years ago,...

Sometimes you may want to start a new output line even though the line you are on is not yet full; for example, at the end of a paragraph. To do this you can cause a *break*, which starts a new output line. Some requests cause a break automatically, as do blank input lines and input lines beginning with a space.

Not all input lines are text to be formatted. Some of the input lines are *requests* which describe how to format the text. Requests always have a period or an apostrophe ("'") as the first character of the input line.

The text formatter also does more complex things, such as automatically numbering pages, skipping over page folds, putting footnotes in the correct place, and so forth.

I can offer you a few hints for preparing text for input to NROFF. First, keep the input lines short. Short input lines are easier to edit, and NROFF will pack words onto longer lines for you anyhow. In keeping with this, it is helpful to begin a new line after every period, comma, or phrase, since common corrections are to add or delete sentences or phrases. Second, do not put spaces at the end of lines, since this can sometimes confuse the NROFF processor. Third, do not hyphenate words at the end of lines (except words that should have hyphens in them, such as "mother-in-law"); NROFF is smart enough to hyphenate words for you as needed, but is not smart enough to take hyphens out and join a word back together. Also, words such as "mother-in-law" should not be broken over a line, since then you will get a space where not wanted, such as "mother- in-law".

2. Basic Requests

2.1. Paragraphs

Paragraphs are begun by using the **.pp** request. For example, the input:

```
.pp
Now is the time for all good men
to come to the aid of their party.
Four score and seven years ago,...
```

produces a blank line followed by an indented first line. The result is:

Now is the time for all good men to come to the aid of their party.
Four score and seven years ago,...

Notice that the sentences of the paragraphs *must not* begin with a space, since blank lines and lines beginning with spaces cause a break. For example, if I had typed:

```
.pp
Now is the time for all good men
    to come to the aid of their party.
Four score and seven years ago,...
```

The output would be:

Now is the time for all good men
to come to the aid of their party. Four score and seven years ago,...

A new line begins after the word "men" because the second line began with a space character.

There are many fancier types of paragraphs, which will be described later.

2.2. Headers and Footers

Arbitrary headers and footers can be put at the top and bottom of every page. Two requests of the form **.he** *title* and **.fo** *title* define the titles to put at the head and the foot of every page, respectively. The titles are called *three-part* titles, that is, there is a left-justified part, a centered part, and a right-justified part. To separate these three parts the first character of *title* (whatever it may be) is used as a delimiter. Any character may be used, but backslash and double quote marks should be avoided. The percent sign is replaced by the current page number whenever found in the title. For example, the input:

```
.he 'Jane Jones'%'
.fo 'Jane Jones'My Book'
```

results in the page number centered at the top of each page, "Jane Jones" in the lower left corner, and "My Book" in the lower right corner.

2.3. Double Spacing

NROFF will double space output text automatically if you use the request **.ls 2**, as is done in this section. You can revert to single spaced mode by typing **.ls 1**.

2.4. Page Layout

A number of requests allow you to change the way the printed copy looks, sometimes called the *layout* of the output page. Most of these requests adjust the placing of "white space" (blank lines or spaces). In these explanations, characters in italics should be replaced with values you wish to use; bold characters represent characters which should actually be typed.

The **.bp** request starts a new page.

The request **.sp** *N* leaves *N* lines of blank space. *N* can be omitted (meaning skip a single line) or can be of the form *N***i** (for *N* inches) or *N***c** (for *N* centimeters). For example, the input:

```
.sp 1.5i
My thoughts on the subject
.sp
```

leaves one and a half inches of space, followed by the line "My thoughts on the subject", followed by a single blank line.

The **.in** +*N* request changes the amount of white space on the left of the page (the *indent*). The argument *N* can be of the form +*N* (meaning leave *N* spaces more than you are already

leaving), –*N* (meaning leave less than you do now), or just *N* (meaning leave exactly *N* spaces). *N* can be of the form *N*i or *N*c also. For example, the input:

```
initial text
.in 5
some text
.in +1i
more text
.in -2c
final text
```

produces "some text" indented exactly five spaces from the left margin, "more text" indented five spaces plus one inch from the left margin (fifteen spaces on a pica typewriter), and "final text" indented five spaces plus one inch minus two centimeters from the margin. That is, the output is:

```
initial text
          some text
                              more text
                    final text
```

The **.ti** +*N* (temporary indent) request is used like **.in** +*N* when the indent should apply to one line only, after which it should revert to the previous indent. For example, the input:

```
.in 1i
.ti 0
Ware, James R. The Best of Confucius,
Halcyon House, 1950.
An excellent book containing translations of
most of Confucius' most delightful sayings.
A definite must for anyone interested in the early foundations
of Chinese philosophy.
```

produces:

Ware, James R. The Best of Confucius, Halcyon House, 1950. An excellent book containing translations of most of Confucius' most delightful sayings. A definite must for anyone interested in the early foundations of Chinese philosophy.

Text lines can be centered by using the **.ce** request. The line after the **.ce** is centered (horizontally) on the page. To center more than one line, use **.ce** *N* (where *N* is the number of lines to center), followed by the *N* lines. If you want to center many lines but don't want to count them, type:

```
.ce 1000
lines to center
.ce 0
```

The **.ce 0** request tells NROFF to center zero more lines, in other words, stop centering.

All of these requests cause a break; that is, they always start a new line. If you want to start a new line without performing any other action, use **.br**.

2.5. Underlining

Text can be underlined using the **.ul** request. The **.ul** request causes the next input line to be underlined when output. You can underline multiple lines by stating a count of *input* lines to underline, followed by those lines (as with the **.ce** request). For example, the input:

```
.ul 2
Notice that these two input lines
are underlined.
```

will underline those eight words in NROFF. (In TROFF they will be set in italics.)

3. Displays

Displays are sections of text to be set off from the body of the paper. Major quotes, tables, and figures are types of displays, as are all the examples used in this document. All displays except centered blocks are output single spaced.

3.1. Major Quotes

Major quotes are quotes which are several lines long, and hence are set in from the rest of the text without quote marks around them. These can be generated using the commands .(q and .)q to surround the quote. For example, the input:

```
As Weizenbaum points out:
.(q
It is said that to explain is to explain away.
This maxim is nowhere so well fulfilled
as in the areas of computer programming,...
.)q
```

generates as output:

As Weizenbaum points out:

> It is said that to explain is to explain away. This maxim is nowhere so well fulfilled as in the areas of computer programming,...

3.2. Lists

A *list* is an indented, single spaced, unfilled display. Lists should be used when the material to be printed should not be filled and justified like normal text, such as columns of figures or the examples used in this paper. Lists are surrounded by the requests .(l and .)l. For example, type:

```
Alternatives to avoid deadlock are:
.(l
Lock in a specified order
Detect deadlock and back out one process
Lock all resources needed before proceeding
.)l
```

will produce:
Alternatives to avoid deadlock are:

```
Lock in a specified order
Detect deadlock and back out one process
Lock all resources needed before proceeding
```


3.3. Keeps

A *keep* is a display of lines which are kept on a single page if possible. An example of where you would use a keep might be a diagram. Keeps differ from lists in that lists may be broken over a page boundary whereas keeps will not.

Blocks are the basic kind of keep. They begin with the request .(b and end with the request .)b. If there is not room on the current page for everything in the block, a new page is

begun. This has the unpleasant effect of leaving blank space at the bottom of the page. When this is not appropriate, you can use the alternative, called *floating keeps*.

Floating keeps move relative to the text. Hence, they are good for things which will be referred to by name, such as "See figure 3". A floating keep will appear at the bottom of the current page if it will fit; otherwise, it will appear at the top of the next page. Floating keeps begin with the line .(z and end with the line .)z. For an example of a floating keep, see figure 1. The .hl request is used to draw a horizontal line so that the figure stands out from the text.

3.4. Fancier Displays

Keeps and lists are normally collected in *nofill* mode, so that they are good for tables and such. If you want a display in fill mode (for text), type .(l F (Throughout this section, comments applied to .(l also apply to .(b and .(z). This kind of display will be indented from both margins. For example, the input:

```
.(l F
And now boys and girls,
a newer, bigger, better toy than ever before!
Be the first on your block to have your own computer!
Yes kids, you too can have one of these modern
data processing devices.
You too can produce beautifully formatted papers
without even batting an eye!
.)l
```

will be output as:

> And now boys and girls, a newer, bigger, better toy than ever before! Be the first on your block to have your own computer! Yes kids, you too can have one of these modern data processing devices. You too can produce beautifully formatted papers without even batting an eye!

Lists and blocks are also normally indented (floating keeps are normally left justified). To get a left-justified list, type .(l L. To get a list centered line-for-line, type .(l C. For example, to get a filled, left justified list, enter:

```
.(z
.hl
Text of keep to be floated.
.sp
.ce
Figure 1. Example of a Floating Keep.
.hl
.)z
```

Figure 1. Example of a Floating Keep.

```
.(l L F
text of block
.)l
```

The input:

```
.(l
first line of unfilled display
more lines
.)l
```

produces the indented text:

first line of unfilled display
more lines

Typing the character L after the .(l request produces the left justified result:

first line of unfilled display
more lines

Using C instead of L produces the line-at-a-time centered output:

first line of unfilled display
more lines

Sometimes it may be that you want to center several lines as a group, rather than centering them one line at a time. To do this use centered blocks, which are surrounded by the requests .(c and .)c. All the lines are centered as a unit, such that the longest line is centered and the rest are lined up around that line. Notice that lines do not move relative to each other using centered blocks, whereas they do using the C argument to keeps.

Centered blocks are *not* keeps, and may be used in conjunction with keeps. For example, to center a group of lines as a unit and keep them on one page, use:

```
.(b L
.(c
first line of unfilled display
more lines
.)c
.)b
```

to produce:

first line of unfilled display
more lines

If the block requests (.(b and .)b) had been omitted the result would have been the same, but with no guarantee that the lines of the centered block would have all been on one page. Note the use of the L argument to .(b; this causes the centered block to center within the entire line rather than within the line minus the indent. Also, the center requests must be nested *inside* the keep requests.

4. Annotations

There are a number of requests to save text for later printing. *Footnotes* are printed at the bottom of the current page. *Delayed text* is intended to be a variant form of footnote; the text is printed only when explicitly called for, such as at the end of each chapter. *Indexes* are a type of delayed text having a tag (usually the page number) attached to each entry after a row of dots. Indexes are also saved until called for explicitly.

4.1. Footnotes

Footnotes begin with the request .(f and end with the request .)f. The current footnote number is maintained automatically, and can be used by typing **, to produce a footnote number[1]. The number is automatically incremented after every footnote. For example, the input:

```
.(q
A man who is not upright
and at the same time is presumptuous;
one who is not diligent and at the same time is ignorant;
one who is untruthful and at the same time is incompetent;
such men I do not count among acquaintances.\**
.(f
\**James R. Ware,
.ul
The Best of Confucius,
Halcyon House, 1950.
Page 77.
.)f
.)q
```

generates the result:

> A man who is not upright and at the same time is presumptuous; one who is not diligent and at the same time is ignorant; one who is untruthful and at the same time is incompetent; such men I do not count among acquaintances.[2]

It is important that the footnote appears *inside* the quote, so that you can be sure that the footnote will appear on the same page as the quote.

4.2. Delayed Text

Delayed text is very similar to a footnote except that it is printed when called for explicitly. This allows a list of references to appear (for example) at the end of each chapter, as is the convention in some disciplines. Use *# on delayed text instead of ** as on footnotes.

If you are using delayed text as your standard reference mechanism, you can still use footnotes, except that you may want to reference them with special characters* rather than numbers.

4.3. Indexes

An "index" (actually more like a table of contents, since the entries are not sorted alphabetically) resembles delayed text, in that it is saved until called for. However, each entry has the page number (or some other tag) appended to the last line of the index entry after a row of dots.

Index entries begin with the request .(x and end with .)x. The .)x request may have a argument, which is the value to print as the "page number". It defaults to the current page number. If the page number given is an underscore ("_") no page number or line of dots is printed at all. To get the line of dots without a page number, type .)x "", which specifies an explicitly null page number.

---

[1]Like this.

[2]James R. Ware, *The Best of Confucius*, Halcyon House, 1950. Page 77.

*Such as an asterisk.

The **.xp** request prints the index.

For example, the input:

```
.(x
Sealing wax
.)x
.(x
Cabbages and kings
.)x _
.(x
Why the sea is boiling hot
.)x 2.5a
.(x
Whether pigs have wings
.)x ""
.(x
This is a terribly long index entry, such as might be used
for a list of illustrations, tables, or figures; I expect it to
take at least two lines.
.)x
.xp
```

generates:

Sealing wax 9
Cabbages and kings
Why the sea is boiling hot 2.5a
Whether pigs have wings .....
This is a terribly long index entry, such as might be used for a list of illustrations, tables, or figures; I expect it to take at least two lines. 9

The **.(x** request may have a single character argument, specifying the "name" of the index; the normal index is **x**. Thus, several "indices" may be maintained simultaneously (such as a list of tables, table of contents, etc.).

Notice that the index must be printed at the *end* of the paper, rather than at the beginning where it will probably appear (as a table of contents); the pages may have to be physically rearranged after printing.

5. Fancier Features

A large number of fancier requests exist, notably requests to provide other sorts of paragraphs, numbered sections of the form **1.2.3** (such as used in this document), and multicolumn output.

5.1. More Paragraphs

Paragraphs generally start with a blank line and with the first line indented. It is possible to get left-justified block-style paragraphs by using **.lp** instead of **.pp**, as demonstrated by the next paragraph.

Sometimes you want to use paragraphs that have the *body* indented, and the first line exdented (opposite of indented) with a label. This can be done with the **.ip** request. A word specified on the same line as **.ip** is printed in the margin, and the body is lined up at a prespecified position (normally five spaces). For example, the input:

```
.ip one
This is the first paragraph.
Notice how the first line
of the resulting paragraph lines up
with the other lines in the paragraph.
.ip two
And here we are at the second paragraph already.
You may notice that the argument to .ip
appears
in the margin.
.lp
We can continue text...
```

produces as output:

one This is the first paragraph. Notice how the first line of the resulting paragraph lines up with the other lines in the paragraph.

two And here we are at the second paragraph already. You may notice that the argument to **.ip** appears in the margin.

We can continue text without starting a new indented paragraph by using the **.lp** request.

If you have spaces in the label of a **.ip** request, you must use an "unpaddable space" instead of a regular space. This is typed as a backslash character ("\") followed by a space. For example, to print the label "Part 1", enter:

```
.ip "Part\ 1"
```

If a label of an indented paragraph (that is, the argument to **.ip**) is longer than the space allocated for the label, **.ip** will begin a new line after the label. For example, the input:

```
.ip longlabel
This paragraph had a long label.
The first character of text on the first line
will not line up with the text on second and subsequent lines,
although they will line up with each other.
```

will produce:

longlabel
This paragraph had a long label. The first character of text on the first line will not line up with the text on second and subsequent lines, although they will line up with each other.

It is possible to change the size of the label by using a second argument which is the size of the label. For example, the above example could be done correctly by saying:

```
.ip longlabel 10
```

which will make the paragraph indent 10 spaces for this paragraph only. If you have many paragraphs to indent all the same amount, use the *number register* **ii**. For example, to leave one inch of space for the label, type:

```
.nr ii 1i
```

somewhere before the first call to **.ip**. Refer to the reference manual for more information.

If **.ip** is used with no argument at all no hanging tag will be printed. For example, the input:

```
.ip [a]
This is the first paragraph of the example.
We have seen this sort of example before.
.ip
This paragraph is lined up with the previous paragraph,
but it has no tag in the margin.
```

produces as output:

[a] This is the first paragraph of the example. We have seen this sort of example before.

This paragraph is lined up with the previous paragraph, but it has no tag in the margin.

A special case of **.ip** is **.np**, which automatically numbers paragraphs sequentially from 1. The numbering is reset at the next **.pp**, **.lp**, or **.sh** (to be described in the next section) request. For example, the input:

```
.np
This is the first point.
.np
This is the second point.
Points are just regular paragraphs
which are given sequence numbers automatically
by the .np request.
.pp
This paragraph will reset numbering by .np.
.np
For example,
we have reverted to numbering from one now.
```

generates:

(1) This is the first point.

(2) This is the second point. Points are just regular paragraphs which are given sequence numbers automatically by the .np request.

This paragraph will reset numbering by .np.

(1) For example, we have reverted to numbering from one now.

The **.bu** request gives lists of this sort that are identified with bullets rather than numbers. The paragraphs are also crunched together. For example, the input:

```
.bu
One egg yolk
.bu
One tablespoon cream or top milk
.bu
Salt, cayenne, and lemon juice to taste
.bu
A generous two tablespoonfuls of butter
```

produces[3]:

- One egg yolk

[3]By the way, if you put the first three ingredients in a a heavy, deep pan and whisk the ingredients madly over a medium flame (never taking your hand off the handle of the pot) until the mixture reaches the consistency of custard (just a minute or two), then mix in the butter off-heat, you will have a wonderful Hollandaise sauce.

- One tablespoon cream or top milk
- Salt, cayenne, and lemon juice to taste
- A generous two tablespoonfuls of butter

5.2. Section Headings

Section numbers (such as the ones used in this document) can be automatically generated using the **.sh** request. You must tell **.sh** the *depth* of the section number and a section title. The depth specifies how many numbers are to appear (separated by decimal points) in the section number. For example, the section number **4.2.5** has a depth of three.

Section numbers are incremented in a fairly intuitive fashion. If you add a number (increase the depth), the new number starts out at one. If you subtract section numbers (or keep the same number) the final number is incremented. For example, the input:

```
.sh 1 "The Preprocessor"
.sh 2 "Basic Concepts"
.sh 2 "Control Inputs"
.sh 3
.sh 3
.sh 1 "Code Generation"
.sh 3
```

produces as output the result:

1. The Preprocessor
1.1. Basic Concepts
1.2. Control Inputs
1.2.1.
1.2.2.
2. Code Generation
2.1.1.

You can specify the section number to begin by placing the section number after the section title, using spaces instead of dots. For example, the request:

```
.sh 3 "Another section" 7 3 4
```

will begin the section numbered **7.3.4**; all subsequent **.sh** requests will number relative to this number.

There are more complex features which will cause each section to be indented proportionally to the depth of the section. For example, if you enter:

```
.nr si N
```

each section will be indented by an amount *N*. *N* must have a scaling factor attached, that is, it must be of the form *Nx*, where *x* is a character telling what units *N* is in. Common values for *x* are **i** for inches, **c** for centimeters, and **n** for *ens* (the width of a single character). For example, to indent each section one-half inch, type:

```
.nr si 0.5i
```

After this, sections will be indented by one-half inch per level of depth in the section number. For example, this document was produced using the request

```
.nr si 3n
```

at the beginning of the input file, giving three spaces of indent per section depth.

Section headers without automatically generated numbers can be done using:

```
.uh "Title"
```

which will do a section heading, but will put no number on the section.

5.3. Parts of the Basic Paper

There are some requests which assist in setting up papers. The **.tp** request initializes for a title page. There are no headers or footers on a title page, and unlike other pages you can space down and leave blank space at the top. For example, a typical title page might appear as:

```
.tp
.sp 2i
.(l C
THE GROWTH OF TOENAILS
IN UPPER PRIMATES
.sp
by
.sp
Frank N. Furter
.)l
.bp
```

The request **.th** sets up the environment of the NROFF processor to do a thesis, using the rules established at Berkeley. It defines the correct headers and footers (a page number in the upper right hand corner only), sets the margins correctly, and double spaces.

The **.+c** *T* request can be used to start chapters. Each chapter is automatically numbered from one, and a heading is printed at the top of each chapter with the chapter number and the chapter name *T*. For example, to begin a chapter called "Conclusions", use the request:

```
.+c "CONCLUSIONS"
```

which will produce, on a new page, the lines

CHAPTER 5
CONCLUSIONS

with appropriate spacing for a thesis. Also, the header is moved to the foot of the page on the first page of a chapter. Although the **.+c** request was not designed to work only with the **.th** request, it is tuned for the format acceptable for a PhD thesis at Berkeley.

If the title parameter *T* is omitted from the **.+c** request, the result is a chapter with no heading. This can also be used at the beginning of a paper; for example, **.+c** was used to generate page one of this document.

Although papers traditionally have the abstract, table of contents, and so forth at the front of the paper, it is more convenient to format and print them last when using NROFF. This is so that index entries can be collected and then printed for the table of contents (or whatever). At the end of the paper, issue the **.++ P** request, which begins the preliminary part of the paper. After issuing this request, the **.+c** request will begin a preliminary section of the paper. Most notably, this prints the page number restarted from one in lower case Roman numbers. **.+c** may be used repeatedly to begin different parts of the front material for example, the abstract, the table of contents, acknowledgments, list of illustrations, etc. The request **.++ B** may also be used to begin the bibliographic section at the end of the paper. For example, the paper might appear as outlined in figure 2. (In this figure, comments begin with the sequence \".)

5.4. Equations and Tables

Two special UNIX programs exist to format special types of material. **Eqn** and **neqn** set equations for the phototypesetter and NROFF respectively. **Tbl** arranges to print extremely

```
.th                          \" set for thesis mode
.fo "DRAFT"                  \" define footer for each page
.tp                          \" begin title page
.(l C                        \" center a large block
THE GROWTH OF TOENAILS
IN UPPER PRIMATES
.sp
by
.sp
Frank Furter
.)l                          \" end centered part
.+c INTRODUCTION             \" begin chapter named "INTRODUCTION"
.(x t                        \" make an entry into index 't'
Introduction
.)x                          \" end of index entry
text of chapter one
.+c "NEXT CHAPTER"           \" begin another chapter
.(x t                        \" enter into index 't' again
Next Chapter
.)x
text of chapter two
.+c CONCLUSIONS
.(x t
Conclusions
.)x
text of chapter three
.++ B                        \" begin bibliographic information
.+c BIBLIOGRAPHY             \" begin another 'chapter'
.(x t
Bibliography
.)x
text of bibliography
.++ P                        \" begin preliminary material
.+c "TABLE OF CONTENTS"
.xp t                        \" print index 't' collected above
.+c PREFACE                  \" begin another preliminary section
text of preface
```

Figure 2. Outline of a Sample Paper

pretty tables in a variety of formats. This document will only describe the embellishments to the standard features; consult the reference manuals for those processors for a description of their use.

The **eqn** and **neqn** programs are described fully in the document *Typesetting Mathematics – User's Guide* by Brian W. Kernighan and Lorinda L. Cherry. Equations are centered, and are kept on one page. They are introduced by the .EQ request and terminated by the .EN request.

The .EQ request may take an equation number as an optional argument, which is printed vertically centered on the right hand side of the equation. If the equation becomes too long it should be split between two lines. To do this, type:

```
.EQ (eq 34)
text of equation 34
.EN C
.EQ
continuation of equation 34
.EN
```

The C on the .EN request specifies that the equation will be continued.

The **tbl** program produces tables. It is fully described (including numerous examples) in the document *Tbl - A Program to Format Tables* by M. E. Lesk. Tables begin with the **.TS** request and end with the **.TE** request. Tables are normally kept on a single page. If you have a table which is too big to fit on a single page, so that you know it will extend to several pages, begin the table with the request **.TS H** and put the request **.TH** after the part of the table which you want duplicated at the top of every page that the table is printed on. For example, a table definition for a long table might look like:

```
.TS H
c s s
n n n.
THE TABLE TITLE
.TH
text of the table
.TE
```

5.5. Two Column Output

You can get two column output automatically by using the request **.2c**. This causes everything after it to be output in two-column form. The request **.bc** will start a new column; it differs from **.bp** in that **.bp** may leave a totally blank column when it starts a new page. To revert to single column output, use **.1c**.

5.6. Defining Macros

A *macro* is a collection of requests and text which may be used by stating a simple request. Macros begin with the line **.de** *xx* (where *xx* is the name of the macro to be defined) and end with the line consisting of two dots. After defining the macro, stating the line *.xx* is the same as stating all the other lines. For example, to define a macro that spaces 3 lines and then centers the next input line, enter:

```
.de SS
.sp 3
.ce
..
```

and use it by typing:

```
.SS
Title Line
(beginning of text)
```

Macro names may be one or two characters. In order to avoid conflicts with names in -me, always use upper case letters as names. The only names to avoid are **TS, TH, TE, EQ,** and **EN.**

5.7. Annotations Inside Keeps

Sometimes you may want to put a footnote or index entry inside a keep. For example, if you want to maintain a "list of figures" you will want to do something like:

```
.(z
.(c
text of figure
.)c
.ce
Figure 5.
.(x f
Figure 5
.)x
.)z
```

which you may hope will give you a figure with a label and an entry in the index f (presumably a list of figures index). Unfortunately, the index entry is read and interpreted when the keep is read, not when it is printed, so the page number in the index is likely to be wrong. The solution is to use the magic string \! at the beginning of all the lines dealing with the index. In other words, you should use:

```
.(z
.(c
Text of figure
.)c
.ce
Figure 5.
\!.(x f
\!Figure 5
\!.)x
.)z
```

which will defer the processing of the index until the figure is output. This will guarantee that the page number in the index is correct. The same comments apply to blocks (with .(b and .)b) as well.

6. TROFF and the Photosetter

With a little care, you can prepare documents that will print nicely on either a regular terminal or when phototypeset using the TROFF formatting program.

6.1. Fonts

A *font* is a style of type. There are three fonts that are available simultaneously, Times Roman, Times Italic, and Times Bold, plus the special math font. The normal font is Roman. Text which would be underlined in NROFF with the .ul request is set in italics in TROFF.

There are ways of switching between fonts. The requests .r, .i, and .b switch to Roman, italic, and bold fonts respectively. You can set a single word in some font by typing (for example):

```
.i word
```

which will set *word* in italics but does not affect the surrounding text. In NROFF, italic and bold text is underlined.

Notice that if you are setting more than one word in whatever font, you must surround that word with double quote marks (‘ ”) so that it will appear to the NROFF processor as a single word. The quote marks will not appear in the formatted text. If you do want a quote mark

to appear, you should quote the entire string (even if a single word), and use *two* quote marks where you want one to appear. For example, if you want to produce the text:

"*Master Control*"

in italics, you must type:

```
.i """Master Control\|"""
```

The \| produces a very narrow space so that the "l" does not overlap the quote sign in TROFF, like this:

"*Master Control*"

There are also several "pseudo-fonts" available. The input:

```
.(b
.u underlined
.bi "bold italics"
.bx "words in a box"
.)b
```

generates

underlined
bold italics
words in a box

In NROFF these all just underline the text. Notice that pseudo font requests set only the single parameter in the pseudo font; ordinary font requests will begin setting all text in the special font if you do not provide a parameter. No more than one word should appear with these three font requests in the middle of lines. This is because of the way TROFF justifies text. For example, if you were to issue the requests:

```
.bi "some bold italics"
and
.bx "words in a box"
```

in the middle of a line TROFF would produce *some bold italics* and |words in a box|, which I think you will agree does not look good.

The second parameter of all font requests is set in the original font. For example, the font request:

```
.b bold face
```

generates "bold" in bold font, but sets "face" in the font of the surrounding text, resulting in:

boldface.

To set the two words **bold** and **face** both in **bold face**, type:

```
.b "bold face"
```

You can mix fonts in a word by using the special sequence \c at the end of a line to indicate "continue text processing"; this allows input lines to be joined together without a space between them. For example, the input:

```
.u under \c
.i italics
```

generates under*italics*, but if we had typed:

```
.u under
.i italics
```

the result would have been under *italics* as two words.

6.2. Point Sizes

The phototypesetter supports different sizes of type, measured in points. The default point size is 10 points for most text, 8 points for footnotes. To change the pointsize, type:

.sz +*N*

where *N* is the size wanted in points. The *vertical spacing* (distance between the bottom of most letters (the *baseline*) between adjacent lines) is set to be proportional to the type size.

These pointsize changes are *temporary*!!! For example, to reset the pointsize of basic text to twelve point, use:

```
.nr pp 12
.nr sp 12
.nr tp 12
```

to reset the default pointsize of paragraphs, section headers, and titles respectively. If you only want to set the names of sections in a larger pointsize, use:

.nr sp 11

alone — this sets section titles (e.g., **Point Sizes** above) in a larger font than the default.

A single word or phrase can be set in a smaller pointsize than the surrounding text using the **.sm** request. This is especially convenient for words that are all capitals, due to the optical illusion that makes them look even larger than they actually are. For example:

.sm UNIX

prints as UNIX rather than UNIX.

Warning: changing point sizes on the phototypesetter is a slow mechanical operation. On laser printers it may require loading new fonts. Size changes should be considered carefully.

6.3. Quotes

It is conventional when using the typesetter to use pairs of grave and acute accents to generate double quotes, rather than the double quote character (‘"’). This is because it looks better to use grave and acute accents; for example, compare "quote" to “quote”.

In order to make quotes compatible between the typesetter and terminals, you may use the sequences ***(lq** and ***(rq** to stand for the left and right quote respectively. These both appear as " on most terminals, but are typeset as “ and ” respectively. For example, use:

```
\*(lqSome things aren't true
even if they did happen.\*(rq
```

to generate the result:

“Some things aren't true even if they did happen.”

As a shorthand, the special font request:

.q "quoted text"

will generate “quoted text”. Notice that you must surround the material to be quoted with double quote marks if it is more than one word.

Acknowledgments

I would like to thank Bob Epstein, Bill Joy, and Larry Rowe for having the courage to use the -me macros to produce non-trivial papers during the development stages; Ricki Blau, Pamela Humphrey, and Jim Joyce for their help with the documentation phase; peter kessler for numerous complaints years after I was "done" with this project, most accompanied by fixes (hence forcing me to fix several small bugs); and the plethora of people who have contributed ideas and have given support for the project.

This document was TROFF'ed on April 20, 1986 and applies to version 2.27 of the -me macros.

USD 22

-ME REFERENCE MANUAL

Release 2.27

*Eric P. Allman**

Project INGRES
Electronics Research Laboratory
University of California, Berkeley
Berkeley, California 94720

This document describes in extremely terse form the features of the -me macro package for version seven NROFF/TROFF. Some familiarity is assumed with those programs. Specifically, the reader should understand breaks, fonts, pointsizes, the use and definition of number registers and strings, how to define macros, and scaling factors for ens, points, v's (vertical line spaces), etc.

For a more casual introduction to text processing using NROFF, refer to the document *Writing Papers with NROFF using -me.*

There are a number of macro parameters that may be adjusted. Fonts may be set to a font number only. Font 8 means bold font in TROFF; in NROFF font 8 is underlined unless the **-rb3** flag is specified to use "true bold" font (most versions of NROFF do not interpret bold font nicely). Font 0 is no font change; the font of the surrounding text is used instead. Notice that fonts 0 and 8 are "pseudo-fonts"; that is, they are simulated by the macros. This means that although it is legal to set a font register to zero or eight, it is not legal to use the escape character form, such as:

```
\f8
```

All distances are in basic units, so it is nearly always necessary to use a scaling factor. For example, the request to set the paragraph indent to eight one-en spaces is:

```
.nr pi 8n
```

and not

```
.nr pi 8
```

which would set the paragraph indent to eight basic units, or about 0.02 inch. Default parameter values are given in brackets in the remainder of this document.

Registers and strings of the form $x may be used in expressions but should not be changed. Macros of the form $x perform some function (as described) and may be redefined to change this function. This may be a sensitive operation; look at the body of the original macro before changing it.

All names in -me follow a rigid naming convention. The user may define number registers, strings, and macros, provided that s/he uses single character upper case names or double character

*Author's current address: Britton Lee, Inc., 1919 Addison Suite 105, Berkeley, California 94704.

†NROFF and TROFF may be trademarks of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

names consisting of letters and digits, with at least one upper case letter. In no case should special characters be used in user-defined names.

On daisy wheel type printers in twelve pitch, the **-rx1** flag can be stated to make lines default to one eighth inch (the normal spacing for a newline in twelve-pitch). This is normally too small for easy readability, so the default is to space one sixth inch.

The **-rv2** flag will indicates that this *is* being output on a C/A/T phototypesetter; this changes the page offset and inserts cut marks.

This documentation was TROFF'ed on April 20, 1986 and applies to version 2.27 of the -me macros.

1. Paragraphing

These macros are used to begin paragraphs. The standard paragraph macro is **.pp**; the others are all variants to be used for special purposes.

The first call to one of the paragraphing macros defined in this section or the **.sh** macro (defined in the next session) *initializes* the macro processor. After initialization it is not possible to use any of the following requests: **.sc**, **.lo**, **.th**, or **.ac**. Also, the effects of changing parameters which will have a global effect on the format of the page (notably page length and header and footer margins) are not well defined and should be avoided.

.lp — Begin left-justified paragraph. Centering and underlining are turned off if they were on, the font is set to **\n(pf** [1] the type size is set to **\n(pp** [10p], and a **\n(ps** space is inserted before the paragraph [0.35v in TROFF, 1v or 0.5v in NROFF depending on device resolution]. The indent is reset to **\n($i** [0] plus **\n(po** [0] unless the paragraph is inside a display. (see **.ba**). At least the first two lines of the paragraph are kept together on a page.

.pp — Like **.lp**, except that it puts **\n(pi** [5n] units of indent. This is the standard paragraph macro.

.ip *T I* — Indented paragraph with hanging tag. The body of the following paragraph is indented *I* spaces (or **\n(ii** [5n] spaces if *I* is not specified) more than a non-indented paragraph (such as with **.pp**) is. The title *T* is exdented (opposite of indented). The result is a paragraph with an even left edge and *T* printed in the margin. Any spaces in *T* must be unpaddable. If *T* will not fit in the space provided, **.ip** will start a new line.

.np — A variant of .ip which numbers paragraphs. Numbering is reset after a **.lp**, **.pp**, or **.sh**. The current paragraph number is in **\n($p**.

.bu — Like **.np** except that paragraphs are marked with bullets (•). Leading space is eliminated to create compact lists.

2. Section Headings

Numbered sections are similar to paragraphs except that a section number is automatically generated for each one. The section numbers are of the form **1.2.3**. The *depth* of the section is the count of numbers (separated by decimal points) in the section number.

Unnumbered section headings are similar, except that no number is attached to the heading.

.sh *+N T a b c d e f* — Begin numbered section of depth *N*. If *N* is missing the current depth (maintained in the number register **\n($0)** is used. The values of the individual parts of the section number are maintained in **\n($1** through **\n($6**. There is a **\n(ss** [1v] space before the section. *T* is printed as a section title in font **\n(sf** [8] and size **\n(sp** [10p]. The "name" of the section may be accessed via ***($n**. If **\n(si** is non-zero, the base indent is set to **\n(si** times the section

depth, and the section title is exdented. (See **.ba**.) Also, an additional indent of **\n(so** [0] is added to the section title (but not to the body of the section). The font is then set to the paragraph font, so that more information may occur on the line with the section number and title. **.sh** insures that there is enough room to print the section head plus the beginning of a paragraph (about 3 lines total). If *a* through *f* are specified, the section number is set to that number rather than incremented automatically. If any of *a* through *f* are a hyphen that number is not reset. If *T* is a single underscore ("_") then the section depth and numbering is reset, but the base indent is not reset and nothing is printed out. This is useful to automatically coordinate section numbers with chapter numbers.

.sx +*N* — Go to section depth *N* [-1], but do not print the number and title, and do not increment the section number at level *N*. This has the effect of starting a new paragraph at level *N*.

.uh *T* — Unnumbered section heading. The title *T* is printed with the same rules for spacing, font, etc., as for **.sh**.

.$p *T B N* — Print section heading. May be redefined to get fancier headings. *T* is the title passed on the **.sh** or **.uh** line; *B* is the section number for this section, and *N* is the depth of this section. These parameters are not always present; in particular, **.sh** passes all three, **.uh** passes only the first, and **.sx** passes three, but the first two are null strings. Care should be taken if this macro is redefined; it is quite complex and subtle.

.$0 *T B N* — This macro is called automatically after every call to **.$p**. It is normally undefined, but may be used to automatically put every section title into the table of contents or for some similar function. *T* is the section title for the section title which was just printed, *B* is the section number, and *N* is the section depth.

.$1 - .$6 — Traps called just before printing that depth section. May be defined to (for example) give variable spacing before sections. These macros are called from **.$p**, so if you redefine that macro you may lose this feature.

3. Headers and Footers

Headers and footers are put at the top and bottom of every page automatically. They are set in font **\n(tf** [3] and size **\n(tp** [10p]. Each of the definitions apply as of the *next* page. Three-part titles must be quoted if there are two blanks adjacent anywhere in the title or more than eight blanks total.

The spacing of headers and footers are controlled by three number registers. **\n(hm** [4v] is the distance from the top of the page to the top of the header, **\n(fm** [3v] is the distance from the bottom of the page to the bottom of the footer, **\n(tm** [7v] is the distance from the top of the page to the top of the text, and **\n(bm** [6v] is the distance from the bottom of the page to the bottom of the text (nominal). The macros **.m1**, **.m2**, **.m3**, and **.m4** are also supplied for compatibility with ROFF documents.

.he *'l'm'r'* — Define three-part header, to be printed on the top of every page.

.fo *'l'm'r'* — Define footer, to be printed at the bottom of every page.

.eh *'l'm'r'* — Define header, to be printed at the top of every even-numbered page.

.oh *'l'm'r'* — Define header, to be printed at the top of every odd-numbered page.

.ef *'l'm'r'* — Define footer, to be printed at the bottom of every even-numbered page.

.of *'l'm'r'* — Define footer, to be printed at the bottom of every odd-numbered page.

.hx	Suppress headers and footers on the next page.
.m1 *+N*	Set the space between the top of the page and the header [4v].
.m2 *+N*	Set the space between the header and the first line of text [2v].
.m3 *+N*	Set the space between the bottom of the text and the footer [2v].
.m4 *+N*	Set the space between the footer and the bottom of the page [4v].
.ep	End this page, but do not begin the next page. Useful for forcing out footnotes, but other than that hardly every used. Must be followed by a **.bp** or the end of input.
.$h	Called at every page to print the header. May be redefined to provide fancy (e.g., multi-line) headers, but doing so loses the function of the **.he**, **.fo**, **.eh**, **.oh**, **.ef**, and **.of** requests, as well as the chapter-style title feature of **.+c**.
.$f	Print footer; same comments apply as in **.$h**.
.$H	A normally undefined macro which is called at the top of each page (after putting out the header, initial saved floating keeps, etc.); in other words, this macro is called immediately before printing text on a page. It can be used for column headings and the like.

4. Displays

All displays except centered blocks and block quotes are preceded and followed by an extra **\n(bs** [same as **\n(ps**] space. Quote spacing is stored in a separate register; centered blocks have no default initial or trailing space. The vertical spacing of all displays except quotes and centered blocks is stored in register **\n($R** instead of **\n($r**.

.(l *m f*	Begin list. Lists are single spaced, unfilled text. If *f* is **F**, the list will be filled. If *m* [**I**] is **I** the list is indented by **\n(bi** [4m]; if **M** the list is indented to the left margin; if **L** the list is left justified with respect to the text (different from **M** only if the base indent (stored in **\n($i** and set with **.ba**) is not zero); and if **C** the list is centered on a line-by-line basis. The list is set in font **\n(df** [0]. Must be matched by a **.)l**. This macro is almost like **.(b** except that no attempt is made to keep the display on one page.
.)l	End list.
.(q	Begin major quote. These are single spaced, filled, moved in from the text on both sides by **\n(qi** [4n], preceded and followed by **\n(qs** [same as **\n(bs**] space, and are set in point size **\n(qp** [one point smaller than surrounding text].
.)q	End major quote.
.(b *m f*	Begin block. Blocks are a form of *keep*, where the text of a keep is kept together on one page if possible (keeps are useful for tables and figures which should not be broken over a page). If the block will not fit on the current page a new page is begun, *unless* that would leave more than **\n(bt** [0] white space at the bottom of the text. If **\n(bt** is zero, the threshold feature is turned off. Blocks are not filled unless *f* is **F**, when they are filled. The block will be left-justified if *m* is **L**, indented by **\n(bi** [4m] if *m* is **I** or absent, centered (line-for-line) if *m* is **C**, and left justified to the margin (not to the base indent) if *m* is **M**. The block is set in font **\n(df** [0].
.)b	End block.
.(z *m f*	Begin floating keep. Like **.(b** except that the keep is *floated* to the bottom of the page or the top of the next page. Therefore, its position relative to the

text changes. The floating keep is preceded and followed by \n(zs [1v] space. Also, it defaults to mode M.

.)z — End floating keep.

.(c — Begin centered block. The next keep is centered as a block, rather than on a line-by-line basis as with .(b C. This call may be nested inside keeps.

.)c — End centered block.

5. Annotations

.(d — Begin delayed text. Everything in the next keep is saved for output later with .pd, in a manner similar to footnotes.

.)d *n* — End delayed text. The delayed text number register \n($d and the associated string *# are incremented if *# has been referenced.

.pd — Print delayed text. Everything diverted via .(d is printed and truncated. This might be used at the end of each chapter.

.(f — Begin footnote. The text of the footnote is floated to the bottom of the page and set in font \n(ff [1] and size \n(fp [8p]. Each entry is preceded by \n(fs [0.2v] space, is indented \n(fi [3n] on the first line, and is indented \n(fu [0] from the right margin. Footnotes line up underneath two column output. If the text of the footnote will not all fit on one page it will be carried over to the next page.

.)f *n* — End footnote. The number register \n($f and the associated string ** are incremented if they have been referenced.

.$s — The macro to output the footnote separator. This macro may be redefined to give other size lines or other types of separators. Currently it draws a 1.5i line.

.(x *x* — Begin index entry. Index entries are saved in the index *x* [x] until called up with .xp. Each entry is preceded by a \n(xs [0.2v] space. Each entry is "undented" by \n(xu [0.5i]; this register tells how far the page number extends into the right margin.

.)x *P A* — End index entry. The index entry is finished with a row of dots with *A* [null] right justified on the last line (such as for an author's name), followed by P [\n%]. If *A* is specified, *P* must be specified; \n% can be used to print the current page number. If *P* is an underscore, no page number and no row of dots are printed.

.xp *x* — Print index *x* [x]. The index is formatted in the font, size, and so forth in effect at the time it is printed, rather than at the time it is collected.

6. Columned Output

.2c +*S N* — Enter two-column mode. The column separation is set to +*S* [4n, 0.5i in ACM mode] (saved in \n($s). The column width, calculated to fill the single column line length with both columns, is stored in \n($l. The current column is in \n($c. You can test register \n($m [1] to see if you are in single column or double column mode. Actually, the request enters *N* [2] column output.

.1c — Revert to single-column mode.

.bc — Begin column. This is like .bp except that it begins a new column on a new page only if necessary, rather than forcing a whole new page if there is another column left on the current page.

7. Fonts and Sizes

.sz +*P* — The pointsize is set to *P* [10p], and the line spacing is set proportionally. The ratio of line spacing to pointsize is stored in **\n($r**. The ratio used internally by displays and annotations is stored in **\n($R** (although this is not used by **.sz**). This size is *not* sticky beyond many macros: in particular, **\n(pp** (paragraph pointsize) modifies the pointsize every time a new paragraph is begun using the **.pp**, **.lp**, **.ip**, **.np**, or **.bu** macros. Also, **\n(fp** (footnote pointsize), **\n(qp** (quote pointsize), **\n(sp** (section header pointsize), and **\n(tp** (title pointsize) may modify the pointsize.

.r *W X* — Set *W* in roman font, appending *X* in the previous font. To append different font requests, use *X* = **\c**. If no parameters, change to roman font.

.i *W X* — Set *W* in italics, appending *X* in the previous font. If no parameters, change to italic font. Underlines in NROFF.

.b *W X* — Set *W* in bold font and append *X* in the previous font. If no parameters, switch to bold font. In NROFF, underlines.

.rb *W X* — Set *W* in bold font and append *X* in the previous font. If no parameters, switch to bold font. **.rb** differs from **.b** in that **.rb** does not underline in NROFF.

.u *W X* — Underline *W* and append *X*. This is a true underlining, as opposed to the **.ul** request, which changes to "underline font" (usually italics in TROFF). It won't work right if *W* is spread or broken (including hyphenated). In other words, it is safe in nofill mode only.

.q *W X* — Quote *W* and append *X*. In NROFF this just surrounds *W* with double quote marks (`""`), but in TROFF uses directed quotes.

.bi *W X* — Set *W* in bold italics and append *X*. Actually, sets *W* in italic and overstrikes once. Underlines in NROFF. It won't work right if *W* is spread or broken (including hyphenated). In other words, it is safe in nofill mode only.

.bx *W X* — Sets *W* in a box, with *X* appended. Underlines in NROFF. It won't work right if *W* is spread or broken (including hyphenated). In other words, it is safe in nofill mode only.

sm *W X* — Sets *W* in a smaller pointsize, with *X* appended.

8. Roff Support

.ix +*N* — Indent, no break. Equivalent to **.in** *N*.

.bl *N* — Leave *N* contiguous white space, on the next page if not enough room on this page. Equivalent to a **.sp** *N* inside a block.

.pa +*N* — Equivalent to **.bp**.

.ro — Set page number in roman numerals. Equivalent to **.af % i**.

.ar — Set page number in Arabic. Equivalent to **.af % 1**.

.nl — Number lines in margin from one on each page.

.n2 *N* — Number lines from *N*, stop if *N* = 0.

.sk — Leave the next output page blank, except for headers and footers. This is used to leave space for a full-page diagram which is produced externally and pasted in later. To get a partial-page paste-in display, say **.sv** *N*, where *N* is the amount of space to leave; this space will be output immediately if there is room, and will otherwise be output at the top of the next page. However, be warned: if *N* is greater than the amount of available space on an empty page,

no space will ever be output.

9. Preprocessor Support

.EQ *m T* — Begin equation. The equation is centered if *m* is **C** or omitted, indented **\n(bi** [4m] if *m* is **I**, and left justified if *m* is **L**. *T* is a title printed on the right margin next to the equation. See *Typesetting Mathematics – User's Guide* by Brian W. Kernighan and Lorinda L. Cherry.

.EN *c* — End equation. If *c* is **C** the equation must be continued by immediately following with another **.EQ**, the text of which can be centered along with this one. Otherwise, the equation is printed, always on one page, with **\n(es** [0.5v in TROFF, 1v in NROFF] space above and below it.

.TS *h* — Table start. Tables are single spaced and kept on one page if possible. If you have a large table which will not fit on one page, use *h* = **H** and follow the header part (to be printed on every page of the table) with a **.TH**. See *Tbl – A Program to Format Tables* by M. E. Lesk.

.TH — With **.TS H**, ends the header portion of the table.

.TE — Table end. Note that this table does not float, in fact, it is not even guaranteed to stay on one page if you use requests such as **.sp** intermixed with the text of the table. If you want it to float (or if you use requests inside the table), surround the entire table (including the **.TS** and **.TE** requests) with the requests **.(z** and **.)z**.

.PS *h w* — Begin *pic* picture. *H* is the height and *w* is the width, both in basic units. *Ditroff* only.

.PE — End picture.

.IS — Begin *ideal* picture.

.IE — End *ideal* picture.

.IF — End *ideal* picture (alternate form).

GS — Begin *gremlin* picture.

GE — End *gremlin* picture.

GF — End *gremlin* picture (alternate form).

10. Miscellaneous

.re — Reset tabs. Set to every 0.5i in TROFF and every 0.8i in NROFF.

.ba *+N* — Set the base indent to *+N* [0] (saved in **\n($i**). All paragraphs, sections, and displays come out indented by this amount. Titles and footnotes are unaffected. The **.sh** request performs a **.ba** request if **\n(si** [0] is not zero, and sets the base indent to **\n(si*\n($0**.

.xl *+N* — Set the line length to *N* [6.0i]. This differs from **.ll** because it only affects the current environment.

.ll *+N* — Set line length in all environments to *N* [6.0i]. This should not be used after output has begun, and particularly not in two-column output. The current line length is stored in **\n($l**.

.hl — Draws a horizontal line the length of the page. This is useful inside floating keeps to differentiate between the text and the figure.

.lh — Print a letterhead at the current position on the page. The format of the letterhead must be defined in the file **/usr/lib/me/letterhead.me** by your local

systems staff. Some environments may require *ditroff* for this macro to function properly.

.lo This macro loads another set of macros (in **/usr/lib/me/local.me**) which is intended to be a set of locally defined macros. These macros should all be of the form **.*X**, where *X* is any letter (upper or lower case) or digit.

11. Standard Papers

.tp Begin title page. Spacing at the top of the page can occur, and headers and footers are suppressed. Also, the page number is not incremented for this page.

.th Set thesis mode. This defines the modes acceptable for a doctoral dissertation at Berkeley. It double spaces, defines the header to be a single page number, and changes the margins to be 1.5 inch on the left and one inch on the top. **.++** and **.+c** should be used with it. This macro must be stated before initialization, that is, before the first call of a paragraphing macro or **.sh**.

.++ *m H* This request defines the section of the paper which we are entering. The section type is defined by *m*. **C** means that we are entering the chapter portion of the paper, **A** means that we are entering the appendix portion of the paper, **P** means that the material following should be the preliminary portion (abstract, table of contents, etc.) portion of the paper, **AB** means that we are entering the abstract (numbered independently from 1 in Arabic numerals), and **B** means that we are entering the bibliographic portion at the end of the paper. Also, the variants **RC** and **RA** are allowed, which specify renumbering of pages from one at the beginning of each chapter or appendix, respectively. The *H* parameter defines the new header. If there are any spaces in it, the entire header must be quoted. If you want the header to have the chapter number in it, Use the string **\\\\n(ch**. For example, to number appendixes **A.1** etc., type **.++ RA "\\\\n(ch.%"**. Each section (chapter, appendix, etc.) should be preceded by the **.+c** request. It should be mentioned that it is easier when using TROFF to put the front material at the end of the paper, so that the table of contents can be collected and put out; this material can then be physically moved to the beginning of the paper.

.+c *T* Begin chapter with title *T*. The chapter number is maintained in **\n(ch**. This register is incremented every time **.+c** is called with a parameter. The title and chapter number are printed by **.$c**. The header is moved to the footer on the first page of each chapter. If *T* is omitted, **.$c** is not called; this is useful for doing your own "title page" at the beginning of papers without a title page proper. **.$c** calls **.$C** as a hook so that chapter titles can be inserted into a table of contents automatically. The footnote numbering is reset to one.

.$c *T* Print chapter number (from **\n(ch**) and *T*. This macro can be redefined to your liking. It is defined by default to be acceptable for a PhD thesis at Berkeley. This macro calls $C, which can be defined to make index entries, or whatever.

.$C *K N T* This macro is called by **.$c**. It is normally undefined, but can be used to automatically insert index entries, or whatever. *K* is a keyword, either "Chapter" or "Appendix" (depending on the **.++** mode); *N* is the chapter or appendix number, and *T* is the chapter or appendix title.

.ac *A N* This macro (short for **.acm**) sets up the NROFF environment for camera-ready papers as used by the ACM. This format is 25% larger, and has no headers or footers. The author's name *A* is printed at the bottom of the page (but off the

part which will be printed in the conference proceedings), together with the current page number and the total number of pages *N*. Additionally, this macro loads the file **/usr/lib/me/acm.me**, which may later be augmented with other macros useful for printing papers for ACM conferences. It should be noted that this macro will not work correctly in version 7 TROFF, since it sets the page length wider than the physical width of the C/A/T phototypesetter roll.

12. Predefined Strings

**	Footnote number, actually *[\n($f*]. This macro is incremented after each call to .)f.
*#	Delayed text number. Actually [\n($d].
*[	Superscript. This string gives upward movement and a change to a smaller point size if possible, otherwise it gives the left bracket character ('['). Extra space is left above the line to allow room for the superscript.
*]	Unsuperscript. Inverse to *[. For example, to produce a superscript you might type x*[2*], which will produce x^2.
*<	Subscript. Defaults to '<' if half-carriage motion not possible. Extra space is left below the line to allow for the subscript.
*>	Inverse to *<.
*(dw	The day of the week, as a word.
*(mo	The month, as a word.
*(td	Today's date, directly printable. The date is of the form April 20, 1986. Other forms of the date can be used by using \n(dy (the day of the month; for example, 20), *(mo (as noted above) or \n(mo (the same, but as an ordinal number; for example, April is 4), and \n(yr (the last two digits of the current year).
*(lq	Left quote marks. Double quote in NROFF.
*(rq	Right quote.
*-	¾ em dash in TROFF; two hyphens in NROFF.

13. Special Characters and Marks

There are a number of special characters and diacritical marks (such as accents) available through -me. To reference these characters, you must call the macro .sc to define the characters before using them.

.sc — Define special characters and diacritical marks, as described in the remainder of this section. This macro must be stated before initialization. The special characters available are listed below.

Name	Usage	Example	
Acute accent	*'	a*'	á
Grave accent	*`	e*`	è
Umlat	*:	u*:	ü
Tilde	*~	n*~	ñ
Caret	*^	e*^	ê
Cedilla	*,	c*,	ç
Czech	*v	e*v	ě
Circle	*o	A*o	Å
There exists	*(qe		∃

For all	*(qa	∀

Acknowledgments

I would like to thank Bob Epstein, Bill Joy, and Larry Rowe for having the courage to use the -me macros to produce non-trivial papers during the development stages; Ricki Blau, Pamela Humphrey, and Jim Joyce for their help with the documentation phase; peter kessler for numerous complaints, most accompanied by fixes; and the plethora of people who have contributed ideas and have given support for the project.

Summary

This alphabetical list summarizes all macros, strings, and number registers available in the –me macros. Selected *troff* commands, registers, and functions are included as well; those listed can generally be used with impunity.

The columns are the name of the command, macro, register, or string; the type of the object, and the description. Types are **M** for macro or builtin command (invoked with . or ´ in the first input column), **S** for a string (invoked with * or *(), **R** for a number register (invoked with \n or \n(), and **F** for a *troff* builtin function (invoked by preceding it with a single backslash).

Lines marked with § are *troff* internal codes. Lines marked with † or ‡ may be defined by the user to get special functions; ‡ indicates that these are defined by default and changing them may have unexpected side effects. Lines marked with ° are specific to *ditroff* (device-independent *troff*).

NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
\(space)	F§	unpaddable space
\"	F§	comment (to end of line)
*#	S	optional delayed text tag string
\$*N*	F§	interpolate argument *N*
\n($0	R	section depth
.$0	M†	invoked after section title printed
\n($1	R	first section number
.$1	M†	invoked before printing depth 1 section
\n($2	R	second section number
.$2	M†	invoked before printing depth 2 section
\n($3	R	third section number
.$3	M†	invoked before printing depth 3 section
\n($4	R	fourth section number
.$4	M†	invoked before printing depth 4 section
\n($5	R	fifth section number
.$5	M†	invoked before printing depth 5 section
\n($6	R	sixth section number
.$6	M†	invoked before printing depth 6 section
.$C	M†	called at beginning of chapter
.$H	M†	text header
\n($R	R‡	relative vertical spacing in displays
\n($c	R	current column number
.$c	M‡	print chapter title
\n($d	R	delayed text number
\n($f	R	footnote number
.$f	M‡	print footer
.$h	M‡	print header
\n($i	R	paragraph base indent
\n($l	R	column width
\n($m	R	number of columns in effect
*($n	S	section name
\n($p	R	numbered paragraph number
.$p	M‡	print section heading (internal macro)
\n($r	R‡	relative vertical spacing in text
\n($s	R	column indent
.$s	M‡	footnote separator (from text)
\n%	R§	current page number
\&	F§	zero width character, useful for hiding controls
\(*xx*	F§	interpolate special character *xx*
.(b	M	begin block

NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
.(c	M	begin centered block
.(d	M	begin delayed text
.(f	M	begin footnote
.(l	M	begin list
.(q	M	begin quote
.(x	M	begin index entry
.(z	M	begin floating keep
.)b	M	end block
.)c	M	end centered block
.)d	M	end delayed text
.)f	M	end footnote
.)l	M	end list
.)q	M	end quote
.)x	M	end index entry
.)z	M	end floating keep
*x	F§	interpolate string *x*
*(xx	F§	interpolate string *xx*
**	S	optional footnote tag string
.++	M	set paper section type
.+c	M	begin chapter
*,	S	cedilla
\–	F§	minus sign
*–	S	3/4 em dash
\0	F§	unpaddable digit-width space
.1c	M	revert to single column output
.2c	M	begin two column output
*:	S	umlat
*<	S	begin subscript
*>	S	end subscript
.EN	M	end equation
.EQ	M	begin equation
\L'd'	F§	vertical line drawing function for distance *d*
.GE	M°	end *gremlin* picture
.GF	M°	end *gremlin* picture (with flyback)
.GS	M°	start *gremlin* picture
.IE	M°	end *ideal* picture
.IF	M°	end *ideal* picture (with flyback)
.IS	M°	start *ideal* picture
.PE	M°	end *pic* picture
.PF	M°	end *pic* picture (with flyback)
.PS	M°	start *pic* picture
.TE	M	end table
.TH	M	end header of table
.TS	M	begin table
*[	S	begin superscript
\n(.$	R§	number of arguments to macro
\n(.i	R§	current indent
\n(.l	R§	current line length
\n(.s	R§	current point size
*(´	S	acute accent
*(`	S	grave accent
\(´	F§	acute accent

NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
\(	F§	grave accent
*]	S	end superscript
\^	F§	1/12 em narrow space
*^	S	caret
.ac	M	ACM mode
.ad	M§	set text adjustment
.af	M§	assign format to register
.am	M§	append to macro
.ar	M	set page numbers in Arabic
.as	M§	append to string
.b	M	bold font
.ba	M	set base indent
.bc	M	begin new column
.bi	M	bold italic
\n(bi	R	display (block) indent
.bl	M	blank lines (even at top of page)
\n(bm	R	bottom title margin
.bp	M§	begin page
.br	M§	break (start new line)
\n(bs	R	display (block) pre/post spacing
\n(bt	R	block keep threshold
.bx	M	boxed
\c	F§	continue input
.ce	M§	center lines
\n(ch	R	current chapter number
.de	M§	define macro
\n(df	R	display font
.ds	M§	define string
\n(dw	R§	current day of week
*(dw	S	current day of week
\n(dy	R§	day of month
\e	F§	printable version of \
.ef	M	set footer (even numbered pages only)
.eh	M	set header (even numbered pages only)
.el	M§	else part of conditional
.ep	M	end page
\n(es	R	equation pre/post space
\f*f*	F§	inline font change to font *f*
\f(*ff*	F§	inline font change to font *ff*
.fc	M§	set field characters
\n(ff	R	footnote font
.fi	M§	fill output lines
\n(fi	R	footnote indent (first line only)
\n(fm	R	footer margin
.fo	M	set footer
\n(fp	R	footnote pointsize
\n(fs	R	footnote prespace
\n(fu	R	footnote undent (from right margin)
\h'*d*'	F§	local horizontal motion for distance *d*
.hc	M§	set hyphenation character
.he	M	set header
.hl	M	draw horizontal line

NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
\n(hm	R	header margin
.hx	M	suppress headers and footers on next page
.hy	M§	set hyphenation mode
.i	M	italic font
.ie	M§	conditional with else
.if	M§	conditional
\n(ii	R	indented paragraph indent
.in	M§	indent (transient, use .ba for pervasive)
.ip	M	begin indented paragraph
.ix	M	indent, no break
\l'*d*'	F§	horizontal line drawing function for distance *d*
.lc	M§	set leader repetition character
.lh	M°	interpolate local letterhead
.ll	M	set line length
.lo	M	load local macros
.lp	M	begin left justified paragraph
*(lq	S	left quote marks
.ls	M§	set multi-line spacing
.m1	M	set space from top of page to header
.m2	M	set space from header to text
.m3	M	set space from text to footer
.m4	M	set space from footer to bottom of page
.mc	M§	insert margin character
.mk	M§	mark vertical position
\n(mo	R§	month of year
*(mo	S	current month
\n*x*	F§	interpolate number register *x*
\n(*xx*	F§	interpolate number register *xx*
.n1	M	number lines in margin
.n2	M	number lines in margin
.na	M§	turn off text adjustment
.ne	M§	need vertical space
.nf	M§	don't fill output lines
.nh	M§	turn off hyphenation
.np	M	begin numbered paragraph
.nr	M§	set number register
.ns	M§	no space mode
*o	S	circle (e.g., for Norse Å)
.of	M	set footer (odd numbered pages only)
.oh	M	set header (odd numbered pages only)
.pa	M	begin page
.pd	M	print delayed text
\n(pf	R	paragraph font
\n(pi	R	paragraph indent
.pl	M§	set page length
.pn	M§	set next page number
.po	M§	page offset
\n(po	R	simulated page offset
.pp	M	begin paragraph
\n(pp	R	paragraph pointsize
\n(ps	R	paragraph prespace
.q	M	quoted

NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
*(qa	S	for all
*(qe	S	there exists
\n(qi	R	quote indent (also shortens line)
\n(qp	R	quote pointsize
\n(qs	R	quote pre/post space
.r	M	roman font
.rb	M	real bold font
.re	M	reset tabs
.rm	M§	remove macro or string
.rn	M§	rename macro or string
.ro	M	set page numbers in roman
*(rq	S	right quote marks
.rr	M§	remove register
.rs	M§	restore spacing
.rt	M§	return to vertical position
\s*S*	F§	inline size change to size *S*
.sc	M	load special characters
\n(sf	R	section title font
.sh	M	begin numbered section
\n(si	R	relative base indent per section depth
.sk	M	skip next page
.sm	M	set argument in a smaller pointsize
.so	M§	source input file
\n(so	R	additional section title offset
.sp	M§	vertical space
\n(sp	R	section title pointsize
\n(ss	R	section prespace
.sx	M	change section depth
.sz	M	set pointsize and vertical spacing
.ta	M§	set tab stops
.tc	M§	set tab repetition character
*(td	S	today's date
\n(tf	R	title font
.th	M	set thesis mode
.ti	M§	temporary indent (next line only)
.tl	M§	three part title
\n(tm	R	top title margin
.tp	M	begin title page
\n(tp	R	title pointsize
.tr	M§	translate
.u	M	underlined
.uh	M	unnumbered section
.ul	M§	underline next line
\v*'d'*	F§	local vertical motion for distance *d*
*v	S	inverted 'v' for czeck "ě"
\w*'S'*	F§	return width of string *S*
.xl	M	set line length (local)
.xp	M	print index
\n(xs	R	index entry prespace
\n(xu	R	index undent (from right margin)
\n(yr	R§	year (last two digits only)
\n(zs	R	floating keep pre/post space

NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
\(	F§	begin conditional group
\\|	F§	1/6 em narrow space
\)	F§	end conditional group
*~	S	tilde

NROFF/TROFF User's Manual

Joseph F. Ossanna
(updated for 4.3BSD by Mark Seiden)

Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

Introduction

NROFF and TROFF are text processors under the UNIX Time-Sharing System that format text for typewriter-like terminals and for a Graphic Systems phototypesetter, respectively. (Device-independent TROFF, part of the Documenter's Workbench, supports additional output devices.) They accept lines of text interspersed with lines of format control information and format the text into a printable, paginated document having a user-designed style. NROFF and TROFF offer unusual freedom in document styling, including: arbitrary style headers and footers; arbitrary style footnotes; multiple automatic sequence numbering for paragraphs, sections, etc; multiple column output; dynamic font and point-size control; arbitrary horizontal and vertical local motions at any point; and a family of automatic overstriking, bracket construction, and line drawing functions.

NROFF and TROFF are highly compatible with each other and it is almost always possible to prepare input acceptable to both. Conditional input is provided that enables the user to embed input expressly destined for either program. NROFF can prepare output directly for a variety of terminal types and is capable of utilizing the full resolution of each terminal.

Usage

The general form of invoking NROFF (or TROFF) at UNIX command level is

nroff *options files* (or **troff** *options files*)

where *options* represents any of a number of option arguments and *files* represents the list of files containing the document to be formatted. An argument consisting of a single minus (–) is taken to be a file name corresponding to the standard input. If no file names are given input is taken from the standard input. The options, which may appear in any order so long as they appear before the files, are:

Option	*Effect*
–i	Read standard input after the input files are exhausted.
–m*name*	Prepends the macro file **/usr/lib/tmac.***name* to the input *files*.
–n*N*	Number first generated page *N*.
–o*list*	Print only pages whose page numbers appear in *list*, which consists of comma-separated numbers and number ranges. A number range has the form *N–M* and means pages *N* through *M*; a initial *–N* means from the beginning to page *N*; and a final *N–* means from *N* to the end.
–q	Invoke the simultaneous input-output mode of the **rd** request.
–r*aN*	Number register *a* (one-character) is set to *N*.
–s*N*	Stop every *N* pages. NROFF will halt prior to every *N* pages (default *N*=1) to allow paper loading or changing, and will resume upon receipt of a newline. TROFF will stop the phototypesetter every *N* pages, produce a trailer to allow changing cassettes, and will resume after the phototypesetter START button is pressed.
–z	Efficiently suppress formatted output. Only produce output to standard error (from **tm** requests or diagnostics).

NROFF Only

-T*name* Specifies the name of the output terminal type. Currently defined names are **37** for the (default) Model 37 Teletype®, **tn300** for the GE TermiNet 300 (or any terminal without half-line capabilities), **300S** for the DASI-300S, **300** for the DASI-300, and **450** for the DASI-450 (Diablo Hyterm).

-e Produce equally-spaced words in adjusted lines, using full terminal resolution.

-h On output, use tabs during horizontal spacing to increase speed. Device tabs setting are assumed to be (and input tabs are initially set to) every 8 character widths.

TROFF Only

-a Send a printable (ASCII) approximation of the results to the standard output.

-b TROFF will report whether the phototypesetter is busy or available. No text processing is done.

-f Refrain from feeding out paper and stopping phototypesetter at the end of the run.

-t Direct output to the standard output instead of the phototypesetter.

-w Wait until phototypesetter is available, if currently busy.

Each option is invoked as a separate argument; for example,

nroff *-o4,8-10* **-T***300S* **-m***abc file1 file2*

requests formatting of pages 4, 8, 9, and 10 of a document contained in the files named *file1* and *file2*, specifies the output terminal as a DASI-300S, and invokes the macro package *abc*.

Various pre- and post-processors are available for use with NROFF and TROFF. These include the equation preprocessors NEQN and EQN[1] (for NROFF and TROFF respectively), and the table-construction preprocessor TBL[2]. A reverse-line postprocessor COL[3] is available for multiple-column NROFF output on terminals without reverse-line ability; COL expects the Model 37 Teletype escape sequences that NROFF produces by default. TK[3] is a 37 Teletype simulator postprocessor for printing NROFF output on a Tektronix 4014. TC[5] is a phototypesetter-simulator postprocessor for TROFF that produces an approximation of phototypesetter output on a Tektronix 4014. For example, in

tbl *files* | **eqn** | **troff** **-t** *options* | **tc**

the first | indicates the piping of TBL's output to EQN's input; the second the piping of EQN's output to TROFF's input; and the third indicates the piping of TROFF's output to TC.

The remainder of this manual consists of: a Summary and outline; a Reference Manual keyed to the outline; and a set of Tutorial Examples. Another tutorial is [5].

References

[1] B. W. Kernighan, L. L. Cherry, *Typesetting Mathematics — User's Guide (Second Edition),* Bell Laboratories.

[2] M. E. Lesk, *Tbl — A Program to Format Tables,* Bell Laboratories internal memorandum.

[3] Internal on-line documentation (*man* pages) on UNIX.

[4] B. W. Kernighan, *A TROFF Tutorial,* Bell Laboratories.

[5] Your site may have similar programs for more modern displays.

SUMMARY OF REQUESTS AND OUTLINE OF THIS MANUAL

Request Form	*Initial Value**	*If No Argument*	*Notes#*	*Explanation*
1. General Explanation				
2. Font and Character Size Control				
.ps ±*N*	10 point	previous	E	Point size; also \s±*N*.†
.fz *F* ±*N*	off	-	E	font *F* to point size ±*N*.
.fz S *F* ±*N*	off	-	E	Special Font characters to point size ±*N*.
.ss *N*	12/36 em	ignored	E	Space-character size set to *N*/36 em.†
.cs *FNM*	off	-	P	Constant character space (width) mode (font *F*).†
.bd *F N*	off	-	P	Embolden font *F* by *N*−1 units.†
.bd S *F N*	off	-	P	Embolden Special Font when current font is *F*.†
.ft *F*	Roman	previous	E	Change to font *F* = *x*, *xx*, or 1-4. Also \f*x*, \f(*xx*, \f*N*.
.fp *N F*	R,I,B,S	ignored	-	Font named *F* mounted on physical position 1≤*N*≤4.
3. Page Control				
.pl ±*N*	11 in	11 in	v	Page length.
.bp ±*N*	*N*=1	-	B‡,v	Eject current page; next page number *N*.
.pn ±*N*	*N*=1	ignored	-	Next page number *N*.
.po ±*N*	0; 26/27 in	previous	v	Page offset.
.ne *N*	-	*N*=1*V*	D,v	Need *N* vertical space (*V* = vertical spacing).
.mk *R*	none	internal	D	Mark current vertical place in register *R*.
.rt ±*N*	none	internal	D,v	Return *(upward only)* to marked vertical place.
4. Text Filling, Adjusting, and Centering				
.br	-	-	B	Break.
.fi	fill	-	B,E	Fill output lines.
.nf	fill	-	B,E	No filling or adjusting of output lines.
.ad *c*	adj,both	adjust	E	Adjust output lines with mode *c*.
.na	adjust	-	E	No output line adjusting.
.ce *N*	off	*N*=1	B,E	Center following *N* input text lines.
5. Vertical Spacing				
.vs *N*	1/6in;12pts	previous	E,p	Vertical base line spacing (*V*).
.ls *N*	*N*=1	previous	E	Output *N*−1 *V*s after each text output line.
.sp *N*	-	*N*=1*V*	B,v	Space vertical distance *N in either direction*.
.sv *N*	-	*N*=1*V*	v	Save vertical distance *N*.
.os	-	-	-	Output saved vertical distance.
.ns	space	-	D	Turn no-space mode on.
.rs	-	-	D	Restore spacing; turn no-space mode off.
6. Line Length and Indenting				
.ll ±*N*	6.5 in	previous	E,m	Line length.
.in ±*N*	*N*=0	previous	B,E,m	Indent.
.ti ±*N*	-	ignored	B,E,m	Temporary indent.
7. Macros, Strings, Diversion, and Position Traps				
.de *xx yy*	-	*.yy*=..	-	Define or redefine macro *xx;* end at call of *yy*.
.am *xx yy*	-	*.yy*=..	-	Append to a macro.

*Values separated by ";" are for NROFF and TROFF respectively.

#Notes are explained at the end of this Summary and Index

†No effect in NROFF.

‡The use of " ' " as control character (instead of ".") suppresses the break function.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.ds *xx string*	-	ignored	-	Define a string *xx* containing *string*.
.as *xx string*	-	ignored	-	Append *string* to string *xx*.
.rm *xx*	-	ignored	-	Remove request, macro, or string.
.rn *xx yy*	-	ignored	-	Rename request, macro, or string *xx* to *yy*.
.di *xx*	-	end	D	Divert output to macro *xx*.
.da *xx*	-	end	D	Divert and append to *xx*.
.wh *N xx*	-	-	v	Set location trap; negative is w.r.t. page bottom.
.ch *xx N*	-	-	v	Change trap location.
.dt *N xx*	-	off	D,v	Set a diversion trap.
.it *N xx*	-	off	E	Set an input-line count trap.
.em *xx*	none	none	-	End macro is *xx*.
8. Number Registers				
.nr *R ±N M*	-	-	u	Define and set number register *R*; auto-increment by *M*.
.af *R c*	arabic	-	-	Assign format to register *R* (*c*=**1, i, I, a, A**).
.rr *R*	-	-	-	Remove register *R*.
9. Tabs, Leaders, and Fields				
.ta *Nt* ...	0.8; 0.5in	none	E,m	Tab settings; *left* type, unless *t*=**R**(right), **C**(centered).
.tc *c*	none	none	E	Tab repetition character.
.lc *c*	.	none	E	Leader repetition character.
.fc *a b*	off	off	-	Set field delimiter *a* and pad character *b*.
10. Input and Output Conventions and Character Translations				
.ec *c*	\	\	-	Set escape character.
.eo	on	-	-	Turn off escape character mechanism.
.lg *N*	-; on	on	-	Ligature mode on if *N*>0.
.ul *N*	off	*N*=1	E	Underline (italicize in TROFF) *N* input lines.
.cu *N*	off	*N*=1	E	Continuous underline in NROFF; like **ul** in TROFF.
.uf *F*	Italic	Italic	-	Underline font set to *F* (to be switched to by **ul**).
.cc *c*	.	.	E	Set control character to *c*.
.c2 *c*	'	'	E	Set nobreak control character to *c*.
.tr *abcd*....	none	-	O	Translate *a* to *b*, etc. on output.
11. Local Horizontal and Vertical Motions, and the Width Function				
12. Overstrike, Bracket, Line-drawing, and Zero-width Functions				
13. Hyphenation.				
.nh	hyphenate	-	E	No hyphenation.
.hy *N*	hyphenate	hyphenate	E	Hyphenate; *N* = mode.
.hc *c*	\%	\%	E	Hyphenation indicator character *c*.
.hw *word1* ...		ignored	-	Exception words.
14. Three Part Titles.				
.tl *'left'center'right'*		-	-	Three part title.
.pc *c*	%	off	-	Page number character.
.lt *±N*	6.5 in	previous	E,m	Length of title.
15. Output Line Numbering.				
.nm *±N M S I*		off	E	Number mode on or off, set parameters.
.nn *N*	-	*N*=1	E	Do not number next *N* lines.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
16. Conditional Acceptance of Input				
.if *c anything*		-	-	If condition *c* true, accept *anything* as input, for multi-line use \{*anything*\}.
.if !*c anything*		-	-	If condition *c* false, accept *anything*.
.if *N anything*		-	u	If expression $N > 0$, accept *anything*.
.if !*N anything*		-	u	If expression $N \leq 0$, accept *anything*.
.if *'string1 'string2' anything*			-	If *string1* identical to *string2*, accept *anything*.
.if ! *'string1 'string2' anything*			-	If *string1* not identical to *string2*, accept *anything*.
.ie *c anything*		-	u	If portion of if-else; all above forms (like **if**).
.el *anything*		-	-	Else portion of if-else.
17. Environment Switching.				
.ev *N*	*N*=0	previous	-	Environment switched (*push down*).
18. Insertions from the Standard Input				
.rd *prompt*	-	*prompt*=BEL		Read insertion.
.ex	-	-	-	Exit from NROFF/TROFF.
19. Input/Output File Switching				
.so *filename*		-	-	Switch source file *(push down).*
.nx *filename*		end-of-file	-	Next file.
.pi *program*		-	-	Pipe output to *program* (NROFF only).
20. Miscellaneous				
.mc *c N*	-	off	E,m	Set margin character *c* and separation *N*.
.tm *string*	-	newline	-	Print *string* on terminal (UNIX standard error output).
.ig *yy*	-	*.yy=..*	-	Ignore till call of *yy*.
.pm *t*	-	all	-	Print macro names and sizes; if *t* present, print only total of sizes.
.ab *string*	-	-	-	Print a message and abort.
.fl	-	-	B	Flush output buffer.
21. Output and Error Messages				

Notes-

- B Request normally causes a break.
- D Mode or relevant parameters associated with current diversion level.
- E Relevant parameters are a part of the current environment.
- O Must stay in effect until logical output.
- P Mode must be still or again in effect at the time of physical output.

v,p,m,u Default scale indicator; if not specified, scale indicators are *ignored.*

Alphabetical Request and Section Number Cross Reference

ab 20	c2 10	di 7	ex 18	hw 13	lg 10	ne 3	os 5	rd 18	ss 2	uf 10
ad 4	cc 10	ds 7	fc 9	hy 13	li 10	nf 4	pc 14	rm 7	sv 5	ul 10
af 8	ce 4	dt 7	fi 4	ie 16	ll 6	nh 13	pi 19	rn 7	ta 9	vs 5
am 7	ch 7	ec 10	fl 20	if 16	ls 5	nm 15	pl 3	rr 8	tc 9	wh 7
as 7	cs 2	el 16	fp 2	ig 20	lt 14	nn 15	pm 20	rs 5	ti 6	
bd 2	cu 10	em 7	ft 2	in 6	mc 20	nr 8	pn 3	rt 3	tl 14	
bp 3	da 7	eo 10	fz 2	it 7	mk 3	ns 5	po 3	so 19	tm 20	
br 4	de 7	ev 17	hc 13	lc 9	na 4	nx 19	ps 2	sp 5	tr 10	

Escape Sequences for Characters, Indicators, and Functions

Section Reference	*Escape Sequence*	*Meaning*
10.1	\\	\ (to prevent or delay the interpretation of \)
10.1	\e	Printable version of the *current* escape character.
2.1	\'	´ (acute accent); equivalent to \(aa
2.1	\`	` (grave accent); equivalent to \(ga
2.1	\-	- Minus sign in the *current* font
7	\.	Period (dot) (see de)
11.1	\(space)	Unpaddable space-size space character
11.1	\0	Digit width space
11.1	\\|	1/6 em narrow space character (zero width in NROFF)
11.1	\^	1/12 em half-narrow space character (zero width in NROFF)
4.1	\&	Non-printing, zero width character
10.6	\!	Transparent line indicator
10.7	\"	Beginning of comment
7.3	\$*N*	Interpolate argument $1 \leq N \leq 9$
13	\%	Default optional hyphenation character
2.1	\(*xx*	Character named *xx*
7.1	**x*, *(*xx*	Interpolate string *x* or *xx*
9.1	\a	Non-interpreted leader character
12.3	\b´*abc*...	Bracket building function
4.2	\c	Interrupt text processing
11.1	\d	Forward (down) 1/2 em vertical motion (1/2 line in NROFF)
2.2	\f*x*,\f(*xx*,\f*N*	Change to font named *x* or *xx*, or position *N*
11.1	\h´*N*´	Local horizontal motion; move right *N (negative left)*
11.3	\k*x*	Mark horizontal *input* place in register *x*
12.4	\l´*Nc*´	Horizontal line drawing function (optionally with *c*)
12.4	\L´*Nc*´	Vertical line drawing function (optionally with *c*)
8	\n*x*,\n(*xx*	Interpolate number register *x* or *xx*
12.1	\o´*abc...*´	Overstrike characters *a, b, c, ...*
4.1	\p	Break and spread output line
11.1	\r	Reverse 1 em vertical motion (reverse line in NROFF)
2.3	\s*N*, \s±*N*	Point-size change function
9.1	\t	Non-interpreted horizontal tab
11.1	\u	Reverse (up) 1/2 em vertical motion (1/2 line in NROFF)
11.1	\v´*N*´	Local vertical motion; move down *N (negative up)*
11.2	\w´*string*´	Interpolate width of *string*
5.2	\x´*N*´	Extra line-space function *(negative before, positive after)*
12.2	\z*c*	Print *c* with zero width (without spacing)
16	\{	Begin conditional input
16	\}	End conditional input
10.7	\(newline)	Concealed (ignored) newline
-	*X*	*X*, any character *not* listed above

The escape sequences \\, \., \", \$, *, \a, \n, \t, and \(newline) are interpreted in *copy mode* (§7.2).

Predefined General Number Registers

Section Reference	*Register Name*	*Description*
3	%	Current page number.
19	c.	Number of *lines* read from current input file.
11.2	ct	Character type (set by *width* function).
7.4	dl	Width (maximum) of last completed diversion.
7.4	dn	Height (vertical size) of last completed diversion.
-	dw	Current day of the week (1-7).
-	dy	Current day of the month (1-31).
11.3	hp	Current horizontal place on *input* line (not in ditroff)
15	ln	Output line number.
-	mo	Current month (1-12).
4.1	nl	Vertical position of last printed text base-line.
11.2	sb	Depth of string below base line (generated by *width* function).
11.2	st	Height of string above base line (generated by *width* function).
-	yr	Last two digits of current year.

Predefined Read-Only Number Registers

Section Reference	*Register Name*	*Description*
7.3	.$	Number of arguments available at the current macro level.
-	.A	Set to 1 in TROFF, if -a option used; always 1 in NROFF.
11.1	.H	Available horizontal resolution in basic units.
5.3	.L	Set to current *line-spacing* (ls) parameter
-	.P	Set to 1 if the current page is being printed; otherwise 0.
-	.T	Set to 1 in NROFF, if -T option used; always 0 in TROFF.
11.1	.V	Available vertical resolution in basic units.
5.2	.a	Post-line extra line-space most recently utilized using \x'*N*'.
19	.c	Number of *lines* read from current input file.
7.4	.d	Current vertical place in current diversion; equal to nl, if no diversion.
2.2	.f	Current font as physical quadrant (1-4).
4	.h	Text base-line high-water mark on current page or diversion.
6	.i	Current indent.
4.2	.j	Current adjustment mode and type.
4.1	.k	Length of text portion on current partial output line.
6	.l	Current line length.
4	.n	Length of text portion on previous output line.
3	.o	Current page offset.
3	.p	Current page length.
2.3	.s	Current point size.
7.5	.t	Distance to the next trap.
4.1	.u	Equal to 1 in fill mode and 0 in nofill mode.
5.1	.v	Current vertical line spacing.
11.2	.w	Width of previous character.
-	.x	Reserved version-dependent register.
-	.y	Reserved version-dependent register.
7.4	.z	Name of current diversion.

REFERENCE MANUAL

1. General Explanation

1.1. Form of input. Input consists of *text lines*, which are destined to be printed, interspersed with *control lines*, which set parameters or otherwise control subsequent processing. Control lines begin with a *control character*—normally . (period) or ' (acute accent)—followed by a one or two character name that specifies a basic *request* or the substitution of a user-defined *macro* in place of the control line. The control character ' suppresses the *break* function—the forced output of a partially filled line—caused by certain requests. The control character may be separated from the request/macro name by white space (spaces and/or tabs) for æsthetic reasons. Names must be followed by either space or newline. Control lines with unrecognized names are ignored.

Various special functions may be introduced anywhere in the input by means of an *escape* character, normally \. For example, the function \n*R* causes the interpolation (insertion in place) of the contents of the *number register R* in place of the function; here *R* is either a single character name as in \n*x*, or left-parenthesis-introduced, two-character name as in \n(*xx*.

1.2. Formatter and device resolution. TROFF internally uses 432 units/inch, (for historical reasons, corresponding to the Graphic Systems phototypesetter which had a horizontal resolution of 1/432 inch and a vertical resolution of 1/144 inch.) NROFF internally uses 240 units/inch, corresponding to the least common multiple of the horizontal and vertical resolutions of various typewriter-like output devices. TROFF rounds horizontal/vertical numerical parameter input to its own internal horizontal/vertical resolution. NROFF similarly rounds numerical input to the actual resolution of the output device indicated by the -T option (default Model 37 Teletype).

1.3. Numerical parameter input. Both NROFF and TROFF accept numerical input with the scale indicator suffixes shown in the following table, where *S* is the current type size in points, *V* is the current vertical line spacing in basic units, and *C* is a *nominal character width* in basic units.

Scale Indicator	Meaning	Number of basic units TROFF	NROFF
i	Inch	432	240
c	Centimeter	432×50/127	240×50/127
P	Pica = 1/6 inch	72	240/6
m	Em = *S* points	6×*S*	*C*
n	En = Em/2	3×*S*	*C, same as Em*
p	Point = 1/72 inch	6	240/72
u	Basic unit	1	1
v	Vertical line space	*V*	*V*
none	Default, see below		

In NROFF, *both* the em and the en are taken to be equal to the *C*, which is output-device dependent; common values are 1/10 and 1/12 inch. Actual character widths in NROFF need not be all the same and constructed characters such as -> (→) are often extra wide. The default scaling is ems for the horizontally-oriented requests and functions **ll, in, ti, ta, lt, po, mc, \h,** and **\l**; *V*s for the vertically-oriented requests and functions **pl, wh, ch, dt, sp, sv, ne, rt, \v, \x,** and **\L**; **p** for the **vs** request; and **u** for the requests **nr, if,** and **ie**. *All* other requests ignore any scale indicators. When a number register containing an already appropriately scaled number is interpolated to provide numerical input, the unit scale indicator **u** may need to be appended to prevent an additional inappropriate default scaling. The number, *N*, may be specified in decimal-fraction form but the parameter finally stored is rounded to an integer number of basic units.

The *absolute position* indicator | may be prefixed to a number *N* to generate the distance to the vertical or horizontal place *N*. For vertically-oriented requests and functions, | *N* becomes the distance in basic units from the current vertical place on the page or in a *diversion* (§7.4) to the vertical place *N*. For *all* other requests and functions, | *N* becomes the distance from the current horizontal place on

the *input* line to the horizontal place *N*. For example,

```
.sp |3.2c
```

will space *in the required direction* to 3.2 centimeters from the top of the page.

1.4. Numerical expressions. Wherever numerical input is expected, an expression involving parentheses, the arithmetic operators +, −, /, *, % (mod), and the logical operators <, >, <=, >=, = (or ==), & (and), : (or) may be used. Except where controlled by parentheses, evaluation of expressions is left-to-right; there is no operator precedence. In the case of certain requests, an initial + or − is stripped and interpreted as an increment or decrement indicator respectively. In the presence of default scaling, the desired scale indicator must be attached to *every* number in an expression for which the desired and default scaling differ. For example, if the number register x contains 2 and the current point size is 10, then

```
.ll (4.25i+\nxP+3)/2u
```

will set the line length to 1/2 the sum of 4.25 inches + 2 picas + 30 points.

1.5. Notation. Numerical parameters are indicated in this manual in two ways. ±*N* means that the argument may take the forms *N*, +*N*, or −*N* and that the corresponding effect is to set the affected parameter to *N*, to increment it by *N*, or to decrement it by *N* respectively. Plain *N* means that an initial algebraic sign is *not* an increment indicator, but merely the sign of *N*. Generally, unreasonable numerical input is either ignored or truncated to a reasonable value. For example, most requests expect to set parameters to non-negative values; exceptions are **sp, wh, ch, nr,** and **if**. The requests **ps, ft, po, vs, ls, ll, in,** and **lt** restore the *previous* parameter value in the *absence* of an argument.

Single character arguments are indicated by single lower case letters and one/two character arguments are indicated by a pair of lower case letters. Character string arguments are indicated by multi-character mnemonics.

2. Font and Character Size Control

2.1. Character set. The TROFF character set consists of a typesetter-dependent basic character set plus a Special Mathematical Font character set—each having 102 characters. An example of these character sets is shown in the Appendix Table I. All printable ASCII characters are included, with some on the Special Font. With three exceptions, these ASCII characters are input as themselves, and non-ASCII characters are input in the form \(*xx* where *xx* is a two-character name given in the Appendix Table II. The three ASCII exceptions are mapped as follows:

ASCII Input		Printed by TROFF	
Character	Name	Character	Name
´	acute accent	’	close quote
`	grave accent	‘	open quote
–	minus	-	hyphen

The characters ´, `, and – may be input by \´, \`, and \– respectively or by their names (Table II). The ASCII characters @, #, ", ~, ^, <, >, \, {, }, ~, ^, and _ exist only on the Special Font and are printed as a 1-em space if that font is not mounted.

NROFF understands the entire TROFF character set, but can in general print only ASCII characters, additional characters as may be available on the output device, such characters as may be able to be constructed by overstriking or other combination, and those that can reasonably be mapped into other printable characters. The exact behavior is determined by a driving table prepared for each device. The characters ´, `, and _ print as themselves.

2.2. Fonts. The default mounted fonts are Times Roman (**R**), Times Italic (**I**), Times Bold (**B**), and the Special Mathematical Font (**S**) on physical typesetter positions 1, 2, 3, and 4 respectively. These fonts are used in this document. The *current* font, initially Roman, may be changed (among the mounted fonts) by use of the ft request, or by imbedding at any desired point either \f*x*, \f(*xx*, or \f*N* where *x* and *xx* are the name of a mounted font and *N* is a numerical font position. It is *not*

necessary to change to the Special Font; characters on that font are automatically handled. A request for a named but not-mounted font is *ignored.* TROFF can be informed that any particular font is mounted by use of the **fp** request. The list of known fonts is installation dependent. In the subsequent discussion of font-related requests, *F* represents either a one/two-character font name or the numerical font position, 1-4. The current font is available (as numerical position) in the read-only number register **.f**.

NROFF understands font control and normally underlines Italic characters (see §10.5).

2.3. Character size. Character point sizes available are typesetter dependent, but often include 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 28, and 36. This is a range of 1/12 inch to 1/2 inch. The **ps** request is used to change or restore the point size. Alternatively the point size may be changed between any two characters by imbedding a \s*N* at the desired point to set the size to *N*, or a \s±*N* ($1 \le N \le 9$) to increment/decrement the size by *N*; \s0 restores the *previous* size. Requested point size values that are between two valid sizes yield the larger of the two. The current size is available in the **.s** register. NROFF ignores type size control.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes**	*Explanation*
.ps ±*N*	10 point	previous	E	Point size set to ±*N*. Alternatively imbed \s*N* or \s±*N*. Any positive size value may be requested; if invalid, the next larger valid size will result, with a maximum of 36. A paired sequence +*N*, −*N* will work because the previous requested value is also remembered. Ignored in NROFF.
.fz *F* ±*N*	off	-	E	The characters in font *F* will be adjusted to be in size ±*N*. Characters in the Special Font encountered during the use of font *F* will have the same size modification. (Use the **.fz** S request if different treatment of Special Font characters is required). **.fz** must follow any **.fp** request for the position.
.fz S *F* ±*N*	off	-	E	The characters in the Special Font will be in size ±*N* independent of previous **.fz** requests.
.ss *N*	12/36 em	ignored	E	Space-character size is set to *N*/36 ems. This size is the minimum word spacing in adjusted text. Ignored in NROFF.
.cs *FNM*	off	-	P	Constant character space (width) mode is set on for font *F* (if mounted); the width of every character will be taken to be *N*/36 ems. If *M* is absent, the em is that of the character's point size; if *M* is given, the em is *M*-points. All affected characters are centered in this space, including those with an actual width larger than this space. Special Font characters occurring while the current font is *F* are also so treated. If *N* is absent, the mode is turned off. The mode must be still or again in effect when the characters are physically printed. Ignored in NROFF.
.bd *F N*	off	-	P	The characters in font *F* will be artificially emboldened by printing each one twice, separated by *N*−1 basic units. A reasonable value for *N* is 3 when the character size is in the vicinity of 10 points. If *N* is missing the embolden mode is turned off. The column heads above

*Notes are explained at the end of the Summary and Index above.

				were printed with **.bd I 3**. The mode must be still or again in effect when the characters are physically printed. Ignored in NROFF.
.bd S *F N*	off	-	P	The characters in the Special Font will be emboldened whenever the current font is *F*. This manual was printed with **.bd S B 3**. The mode must be still or again in effect when the characters are physically printed.
.ft *F*	Roman	previous	E	Font changed to *F*. Alternatively, imbed **\f***F*. The font name **P** is reserved to mean the previous font.
.fp *N F*	R,I,B,S	ignored	-	Font position. This is a statement that a font named *F* is mounted on position *N* (1-4). It is a fatal error if *F* is not known. The phototypesetter has four fonts physically mounted. Each font consists of a film strip which can be mounted on a numbered quadrant of a wheel. The default mounting sequence assumed by TROFF is R, I, B, and S on positions 1, 2, 3 and 4.

3. Page control

Top and bottom margins are *not* automatically provided; it is conventional to define two *macros* and to set *traps* for them at vertical positions 0 (top) and $-N$ (*N* from the bottom). See §7 and Tutorial Examples §T2. A pseudo-page transition onto the *first* page occurs either when the first *break* occurs or when the first *non-diverted* text processing occurs. Arrangements for a trap to occur at the top of the first page must be completed before this transition. In the following, references to the *current diversion* (§7.4) mean that the mechanism being described works during both ordinary and diverted output (the former considered as the top diversion level).

The usable page width on the Graphic Systems phototypesetter was about 7.54 inches, beginning about 1/27 inch from the left edge of the 8 inch wide, continuous roll paper, but these characteristics are typesetter- dependent. The physical limitations on NROFF output are output-device dependent.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.pl ±*N*	11 in	11 in	v	Page length set to ±*N*. The internal limitation is about 75 inches in TROFF and about 136 inches in NROFF. The current page length is available in the **.p** register.
.bp ±*N*	*N*=1	-	B*,v	Begin page. The current page is ejected and a new page is begun. If ±*N* is given, the new page number will be ±*N*. Also see request **ns**.
.pn ±*N*	*N*=1	ignored	-	Page number. The next page (when it occurs) will have the page number ±*N*. A **pn** must occur before the initial pseudo-page transition to affect the page number of the first page. The current page number is in the **%** register.
.po ±*N*	0; 26/27 in†	previous	v	Page offset. The current *left margin* is set to ±*N*. The TROFF initial value provides about 1 inch of paper margin including the physical typesetter margin of 1/27 inch. In TROFF the maximum (line-length)+(page-offset) is about 7.54 inches. See §6. The current page offset is available in the **.o** register.
.ne *N*	-	*N*=1 *V*	D,v	Need *N* vertical space. If the distance, *D*, to the next trap position (see §7.5) is less than *N*, a forward vertical

*The use of " ' " as control character (instead of ".") suppresses the break function.

†Values separated by ";" are for NROFF and TROFF respectively.

				space of size *D* occurs, which will spring the trap. If there are no remaining traps on the page, *D* is the distance to the bottom of the page. If $D < V$, another line could still be output and spring the trap. In a diversion, *D* is the distance to the *diversion trap*, if any, or is very large.
.mk *R*	none	internal	D	Mark the *current* vertical place in an internal register (both associated with the current diversion level), or in register *R*, if given. See **rt** request.
.rt ±*N*	none	internal	D,v	Return *upward only* to a marked vertical place in the current diversion. If ±*N* (w.r.t. current place) is given, the place is ±*N* from the top of the page or diversion or, if *N* is absent, to a place marked by a previous **mk**. Note that the **sp** request (§5.3) may be used in all cases instead of **rt** by spacing to the absolute place stored in a explicit register; e. g. using the sequence **.mk** *R* ... **.sp |** \n*R*u.

4. Text Filling, Adjusting, and Centering

4.1. Filling and adjusting. Normally, words are collected from input text lines and assembled into a output text line until some word doesn't fit. An attempt is then made to hyphenate the word to assemble a part of it into the output line. The spaces between the words on the output line are then increased to spread out the line to the current *line length* minus any current *indent*. A *word* is any string of characters delimited by the *space* character or the beginning/end of the input line. Any adjacent pair of words that must be kept together (neither split across output lines nor spread apart in the adjustment process) can be tied together by separating them with the *unpaddable space* character "\ " (backslash-space). The adjusted word spacings are uniform in TROFF and the minimum interword spacing can be controlled with the **ss** request (§2). In NROFF, they are normally nonuniform because of quantization to character-size spaces; however, the command line option **–e** causes uniform spacing with full output device resolution. Filling, adjustment, and hyphenation (§13) can all be prevented or controlled. The *text length* on the last line output is available in the **.n** register, and text base-line position on the page for this line is in the **nl** register. The text base-line high-water mark (lowest place) on the current page is in the **.h** register. The **.k** register (read-only) contains the horizontal size of the text portion (without indent) of the current partially-collected output line (if any) in the current environment.

An input text line ending with ., ?, or ! is taken to be the end of a *sentence*, and an additional space character is automatically provided during filling. Multiple inter-word space characters found in the input are retained, except for trailing spaces; initial spaces also cause a *break*.

When filling is in effect, a **\p** may be imbedded or attached to a word to cause a *break* at the *end* of the word and have the resulting output line *spread out* to fill the current line length.

A text input line that happens to begin with a control character (§10.4) can be made to not look like a control line by preceding it by the non-printing, zero-width filler character **\&**. Still another way is to specify output translation of some convenient character into the control character using **tr** (§10.5).

4.2. Interrupted text. The copying of a input line in *nofill* (non-fill) mode can be *interrupted* by terminating the partial line with a **\c**. The *next* encountered input text line will be considered to be a continuation of the same line of input text. Similarly, a word within *filled* text may be interrupted by terminating the word (and line) with **\c**; the next encountered text will be taken as a continuation of the interrupted word. If the intervening control lines cause a break, any partial line will be forced out along with any partial word.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.br	-	-	B	Break. The filling of the line currently being collected is stopped and the line is output without adjustment. Text lines beginning with space characters and empty text lines (blank lines) also cause a break.
.fi	fill on	-	B,E	Fill subsequent output lines. The register **.u** is 1 in fill mode and 0 in nofill mode.
.nf	fill on	-	B,E	Nofill. Subsequent output lines are *neither* filled *nor* adjusted. Input text lines are copied directly to output lines *without regard* for the current line length.
.ad *c*	adj,both	adjust	E	Line adjustment is begun. If fill mode is not on, adjustment will be deferred until fill mode is back on. If the type indicator *c* is present, the adjustment type is changed as shown in the following table. The type indicator can also be a value saved from the read-only **.j** number register, which is set to contain the current adjustment mode and type.
.na	adjust	-	E	Noadjust. Adjustment is turned off; the right margin will be ragged. The adjustment type for **ad** is not changed. Output line filling still occurs if fill mode is on.
.ce *N*	off	*N*=1	B,E	Center the next *N* input text lines within the current (line-length minus indent). If *N*=0, any residual count is cleared. A break occurs after each of the *N* input lines. If the input line is too long, it will be left adjusted.

Indicator	Adjust Type
l	adjust left margin only
r	adjust right margin only
c	center
b or **n**	adjust both margins
absent	unchanged

5. Vertical Spacing

5.1. Base-line spacing. The vertical spacing *(V)* between the base-lines of successive output lines can be set using the **vs** request with a resolution of 1/144 inch = 1/2 point in TROFF, and to the output device resolution in NROFF. *V* must be large enough to accommodate the character sizes on the affected output lines. For the common type sizes (9-12 points), usual typesetting practice is to set *V* to 2 points greater than the point size; TROFF default is 10-point type on a 12-point spacing (as in this document). The current *V* is available in the **.v** register. Multiple-*V* line separation (e.g. double spacing) may be requested with **ls**.

5.2. Extra line-space. If a word contains a vertically tall construct requiring the output line containing it to have extra vertical space before and/or after it, the *extra-line-space* function **\x'***N* **'** can be imbedded in or attached to that word. In this and other functions having a pair of delimiters around their parameter (here **'**), the delimiter choice is arbitrary, except that it can't look like the continuation of a number expression for *N*. If *N* is negative, the output line containing the word will be preceded by *N* extra vertical space; if *N* is positive, the output line containing the word will be followed by *N* extra vertical space. If successive requests for extra space apply to the same line, the maximum values are used. The most recently utilized post-line extra line-space is available in the **.a** register.

5.3. Blocks of vertical space. A block of vertical space is ordinarily requested using **sp**, which honors the *no-space* mode and which does not space *past* a trap. A contiguous block of vertical space may be reserved using **sv**.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.vs *N*	1/6in;12pts	previous	E,**p**	Set vertical base-line spacing size *V*. Transient *extra* vertical space available with \x'*N*' (see above).
.ls *N*	*N*=1	previous	E	*Line* spacing set to ±*N*. *N*−1 *V*s *(blank lines)* are appended to each output text line. The (read-only) number register **.L** is set to contain the current line-spacing value. Appended blank lines are omitted, if the text or previous appended blank line reached a trap position.
.sp *N*	-	*N*=1 *V*	B,**v**	Space vertically in *either* direction. If *N* is negative, the motion is *backward* (upward) and is limited to the distance to the top of the page. Forward (downward) motion is truncated to the distance to the nearest trap. If the no-space mode is on, no spacing occurs (see **ns**, and **rs** below).
.sv *N*	-	*N*=1 *V*	**v**	Save a contiguous vertical block of size *N*. If the distance to the next trap is greater than *N*, *N* vertical space is output. No-space mode has *no* effect. If this distance is less than *N*, no vertical space is immediately output, but *N* is remembered for later output (see **os**). Subsequent **sv** requests will overwrite any still remembered *N*.
.os	-	-	-	Output saved vertical space. No-space mode has *no* effect. Used to finally output a block of vertical space requested by an earlier **sv** request.
.ns	space	-	D	No-space mode turned on. When on, the no-space mode inhibits **sp** requests and **bp** requests *without* a next page number. The no-space mode is turned off when a line of output occurs, or with **rs**.
.rs	space	-	D	Restore spacing. The no-space mode is turned off.
Blank text line.		-	B	Causes a break and outputs a blank line just like **sp 1**

6. Line Length and Indenting

The maximum line length for fill mode may be set with **ll**. The indent may be set with **in**; an indent applicable to *only* the *next* output line may be set with **ti**. The line length includes indent space but *not* page offset space. The line-length minus the indent is the basis for centering with **ce**. The effect of **ll**, **in**, or **ti** is delayed, if a partially collected line exists, until after that line is output. In fill mode the length of text on an output line is less than or equal to the line length minus the indent. The current line length and indent are available in registers **.l** and **.i** respectively. The length of *three-part titles* produced by **tl** (see §14) is *independently* set by **lt**.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.ll ±*N*	6.5 in	previous	E,**m**	Line length is set to ±*N*. In TROFF the maximum (line-length)+(page-offset) is about 7.54 inches.
.in ±*N*	*N*=0	previous	B,E,**m**	Indent is set to ±*N*. The indent is prepended to each output line.

.ti ±*N*	-	ignored	B,E,m	Temporary indent. The *next* output text line will be indented a distance ±*N* with respect to the current indent. The resulting total indent may not be negative. The current indent is not changed.

7. Macros, Strings, Diversion, and Position Traps

7.1. Macros and strings. A *macro* is a named set of arbitrary *lines* that may be invoked by name or with a *trap*. A *string* is a named string of *characters, not* including a newline character, that may be interpolated by name at any point. Request, macro, and string names share the *same* name list. Macro and string names may be one or two characters long and may usurp previously defined request, macro, or string names. Any of these entities may be renamed with **rn** or removed with **rm**. Macros are created by **de** and **di**, and appended to by **am** and **da**; **di** and **da** cause normal output to be stored in a macro. Strings are created by **ds** and appended to by **as**. A macro is invoked in the same way as a request; a control line beginning *.xx* will interpolate the contents of macro *xx*. The remainder of the line may contain up to nine *arguments*. The strings *x* and *xx* are interpolated at any desired point with *x and *(*xx* respectively. String references and macro invocations may be nested.

7.2. Copy mode input interpretation. During the definition and extension of strings and macros (not by diversion) the input is read in *copy mode*. The input is copied without interpretation *except* that:

- The contents of number registers indicated by **\n** are interpolated.
- Strings indicated by * are interpolated.
- Arguments indicated by \$ are interpolated.
- Concealed newlines indicated by \(newline) are eliminated.
- Comments indicated by \" are eliminated.
- \t and \a are interpreted as ASCII horizontal tab and SOH respectively (§9).
- \\ is interpreted as \.
- \. is interpreted as ".".

These interpretations can be suppressed by prepending a \. For example, since \\ maps into a \, **\\n** will copy as **\n** which will be interpreted as a number register indicator when the macro or string is reread.

7.3. Arguments. When a macro is invoked by name, the remainder of the line is taken to contain up to nine arguments. The argument separator is the space character, and arguments may be surrounded by double-quotes to permit imbedded space characters. Pairs of double-quotes may be imbedded in double-quoted arguments to represent a single double-quote. If the desired arguments won't fit on a line, a concealed newline may be used to continue on the next line.

When a macro is invoked the *input level* is *pushed down* and any arguments available at the previous level become unavailable until the macro is completely read and the previous level is restored. A macro's own arguments can be interpolated at *any* point within the macro with \$*N*, which interpolates the *N*th argument (1≤*N*≤9). If an invoked argument doesn't exist, a null string results. For example, the macro *xx* may be defined by

```
.de xx      \"begin definition
Today is \\$1 the \\$2.
..          \"end definition
```

and called by

```
.xx Monday 14th
```

to produce the text

Today is Monday the 14th.

Note that the \$ was concealed in the definition with a prepended \. The number of currently available arguments is in the .$ register.

No arguments are available at the top (non-macro) level in this implementation. Because string referencing is implemented as a input-level push down, no arguments are available from *within* a string. No arguments are available within a trap-invoked macro.

Arguments are copied in *copy mode* onto a stack where they are available for reference. The mechanism does not allow an argument to contain a direct reference to a *long* string (interpolated at copy time) and it is advisable to conceal string references (with an extra \) to delay interpolation until argument reference time.

7.4. Diversions. Processed output may be diverted into a macro for purposes such as footnote processing (see Tutorial §T5) or determining the horizontal and vertical size of some text for conditional changing of pages or columns. A single diversion trap may be set at a specified vertical position. The number registers **dn** and **dl** respectively contain the vertical and horizontal size of the most recently ended diversion. Processed text that is diverted into a macro retains the vertical size of each of its lines when reread in *nofill* mode regardless of the current *V*. Constant-spaced (**cs**) or emboldened (**bd**) text that is diverted can be reread correctly only if these modes are again or still in effect at reread time. One way to do this is to imbed in the diversion the appropriate **cs** or **bd** requests with the *transparent* mechanism described in §10.6.

Diversions may be nested and certain parameters and registers are associated with the current diversion level (the top non-diversion level may be thought of as the 0th diversion level). These are the diversion trap and associated macro, no-space mode, the internally-saved marked place (see **mk** and **rt**), the current vertical place (**.d** register), the current high-water text base-line (**.h** register), and the current diversion name (**.z** register).

7.5. Traps. Three types of trap mechanisms are available—page traps, a diversion trap, and an input-line-count trap. Macro-invocation traps may be planted using **wh** at any page position including the top. This trap position may be changed using **ch**. Trap positions at or below the bottom of the page have no effect unless or until moved to within the page or rendered effective by an increase in page length. Two traps may be planted at the *same* position only by first planting them at different positions and then moving one of the traps; the first planted trap will conceal the second unless and until the first one is moved (see Tutorial Examples §T5). If the first one is moved back, it again conceals the second trap. The macro associated with a page trap is automatically invoked when a line of text is output whose vertical size *reaches* or *sweeps past* the trap position. Reaching the bottom of a page springs the top-of-page trap, if any, provided there is a next page. The distance to the next trap position is available in the **.t** register; if there are no traps between the current position and the bottom of the page, the distance returned is the distance to the page bottom.

A macro-invocation trap effective in the current diversion may be planted using **dt**. The **.t** register works in a diversion; if there is no subsequent trap a *large* distance is returned. For a description of input-line-count traps, see the **it** request below.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.de *xx yy*	-	*.yy*=..	-	Define or redefine the macro *xx*. The contents of the macro begin on the next input line. Input lines are copied in *copy mode* until the definition is terminated by a line beginning with *.yy*, whereupon the macro *yy* is called. In the absence of *yy*, the definition is terminated by a line beginning with "..". A macro may contain **de** requests provided the terminating macros differ or the contained definition terminator is concealed. ".." can be concealed as \\.. which will copy as \.. and be reread as "..".
.am *xx yy*	-	*.yy*=..	-	Append to macro (append version of **de**).
.ds *xx string*	-	ignored	-	Define a string *xx* containing *string*. Any initial double-quote in *string* is stripped off to permit initial

				blanks.
.as *xx string*	-	ignored	-	Append *string* to string *xx* (append version of **ds**).
.rm *xx*	-	ignored	-	Remove request, macro, or string. The name *xx* is removed from the name list and any related storage space is freed. Subsequent references will have no effect.
.rn *xx yy*	-	ignored	-	Rename request, macro, or string *xx* to *yy*. If *yy* exists, it is first removed.
.di *xx*	-	end	D	Divert output to macro *xx*. Normal text processing occurs during diversion except that page offsetting is not done. The diversion ends when the request **di** or **da** is encountered without an argument; extraneous requests of this type should not appear when nested diversions are being used.
.da *xx*	-	end	D	Divert, appending to *xx* (append version of **di**).
.wh *N xx*	-	-	v	Install a trap to invoke *xx* at page position *N;* a *negative N* will be interpreted with respect to the page *bottom.* Any macro previously planted at *N* is replaced by *xx*. A zero *N* refers to the *top* of a page. In the absence of *xx*, the first found trap at *N*, if any, is removed.
.ch *xx N*	-	-	v	Change the trap position for macro *xx* to be *N*. In the absence of *N*, the trap, if any, is removed.
.dt *N xx*	-	off	D,v	Install a diversion trap at position *N* in the *current* diversion to invoke macro *xx*. Another **dt** will redefine the diversion trap. If no arguments are given, the diversion trap is removed.
.it *N xx*	-	off	E	Set an input-line-count trap to invoke the macro *xx* after *N* lines of *text* input have been read (control or request lines don't count). The text may be in-line text or text interpolated by inline or trap-invoked macros.
.em *xx*	none	none	-	The macro *xx* will be invoked when all input has ended. The effect is the same as if the contents of *xx* had been at the end of the last file processed.

8. Number Registers

A variety of parameters are available to the user as predefined, named *number registers* (see Summary and Index, page 7). In addition, the user may define his own named registers. Register names are one or two characters long and *do not* conflict with request, macro, or string names. Except for certain predefined read-only registers, a number register can be read, written, automatically incremented or decremented, and interpolated into the input in a variety of formats. One common use of user-defined registers is to automatically number sections, paragraphs, lines, etc. A number register may be used any time numerical input is expected or desired and may be used in numerical *expressions* (§1.4).

Number registers are created and modified using **nr**, which specifies the name, numerical value, and the auto-increment size. Registers are also modified, if accessed with an auto-incrementing sequence. If the registers *x* and *xx* both contain *N* and have the auto-increment size *M*, the following access sequences have the effect shown:

Sequence	Effect on Register	Value Interpolated
\n*x*	none	*N*
\n(*xx*	none	*N*
\n+*x*	*x* incremented by *M*	*N+M*
\n-*x*	*x* decremented by *M*	*N-M*
\n+(*xx*	*xx* incremented by *M*	*N+M*
\n-(*xx*	*xx* decremented by *M*	*N-M*

When interpolated, a number register is converted to decimal (default), decimal with leading zeros, lower-case Roman, upper-case Roman, lower-case sequential alphabetic, or upper-case sequential alphabetic according to the format specified by **af**.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.nr *R* ±*N M*	-	-	**u**	The number register *R* is assigned the value ±*N* with respect to the previous value, if any. The increment for auto-incrementing is set to *M*.
.af *R c*	arabic	-	-	Assign format *c* to register *R*. The available formats are:

Format	Numbering Sequence
1	0,1,2,3,4,5,...
001	000,001,002,003,004,005,...
i	0,i,ii,iii,iv,v,...
I	0,I,II,III,IV,V,...
a	0,a,b,c,...,z,aa,ab,...,zz,aaa,...
A	0,A,B,C,...,Z,AA,AB,...,ZZ,AAA,...

An arabic format having *N* digits specifies a field width of *N* digits (example 2 above). The read-only registers and the *width* function (§11.2) are always arabic.

.rr *R*	-	ignored	-	Remove register *R*. If many registers are being created dynamically, it may become necessary to remove no longer used registers to recapture internal storage space for newer registers.

9. Tabs, Leaders, and Fields

9.1. Tabs and leaders. The ASCII horizontal tab character and the ASCII SOH (hereafter known as the *leader* character) can both be used to generate either horizontal motion or a string of repeated characters. The length of the generated entity is governed by internal *tab stops* specifiable with **ta**. The default difference is that tabs generate motion and leaders generate a string of periods; **tc** and **lc** offer the choice of repeated character or motion. There are three types of internal tab stops—*left* adjusting, *right* adjusting, and *centering*. In the following table: *D* is the distance from the current position on the *input* line (where a tab or leader was found) to the next tab stop; *next-string* consists of the input characters following the tab (or leader) up to the next tab (or leader) or end of line; and *W* is the width of *next-string*.

Tab type	Length of motion or repeated characters	Location of *next-string*
Left	*D*	Following *D*
Right	*D–W*	Right adjusted within *D*
Centered	*D–W/2*	Centered on right end of *D*

The length of generated motion is allowed to be negative, but that of a repeated character string cannot be. Repeated character strings contain an integer number of characters, and any residual distance is prepended as motion. Tabs or leaders found after the last tab stop are ignored, but may be used as *next-string* terminators.

Tabs and leaders are not interpreted in *copy mode*. \t and \a always generate a non-interpreted tab and leader respectively, and are equivalent to actual tabs and leaders in *copy mode*.

9.2. Fields. A *field* is contained between a *pair* of *field delimiter* characters, and consists of sub-strings separated by *padding* indicator characters. The field length is the distance on the *input* line from the position where the field begins to the next tab stop. The difference between the total length of all the sub-strings and the field length is incorporated as horizontal padding space that is divided among the indicated padding places. The incorporated padding is allowed to be negative. For example, if the field delimiter is # and the padding indicator is ^, #^*xxx*^*right*# specifies a right-adjusted string with the string *xxx* centered in the remaining space.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.ta *Nt* ...	8n; 0.5in	none	E,m	Set tab stops and types. *t*=R, right adjusting; *t*=C, centering; *t* absent, left adjusting. TROFF tab stops are preset every 0.5in.; NROFF every 8 character widths. The stop values are separated by spaces, and a value preceded by + is treated as an increment to the previous stop value.
.tc *c*	none	none	E	The tab repetition character becomes *c*, or is removed specifying motion.
.lc *c*	.	none	E	The leader repetition character becomes *c*, or is removed specifying motion.
.fc *a b*	off	off	-	The field delimiter is set to *a*; the padding indicator is set to the *space* character or to *b*, if given. In the absence of arguments the field mechanism is turned off.

10. Input and Output Conventions and Character Translations

10.1. Input character translations. Ways of inputting the graphic character set were discussed in §2.1. The ASCII control characters horizontal tab (§9.1), SOH (§9.1), and backspace (§10.3) are discussed elsewhere. The newline delimits input lines. In addition, STX, ETX, ENQ, ACK, and BEL are accepted, and may be used as delimiters or translated into a graphic with tr (§10.5). *All* others are ignored.

The *escape* character \ introduces *escape sequences*—causes the following character to mean another character, or to indicate some function. A complete list of such sequences is given in the Summary and Index on page 6. \ should not be confused with the ASCII control character ESC of the same name. The escape character \ can be input with the sequence \\. The escape character can be changed with ec, and all that has been said about the default \ becomes true for the new escape character. \e can be used to print whatever the current escape character is. If necessary or convenient, the escape mechanism may be turned off with eo, and restored with ec.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.ec *c*	\	\	-	Set escape character to \, or to *c*, if given.
.eo	on	-	-	Turn escape mechanism off.

10.2. Ligatures. Five ligatures are available in the current TROFF character set — **fi**, **fl**, **ff**, **ffi**, and **ffl**. They may be input (even in NROFF) by \(fi, \(fl, \(ff, \(Fi, and \(Fl respectively. The ligature mode is normally on in TROFF, and *automatically* invokes ligatures during input.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.lg *N*	off; on	on	-	Ligature mode is turned on if *N* is absent or non-zero, and turned off if *N*=0. If *N*=2, only the two-character ligatures are automatically invoked. Ligature mode is inhibited for request, macro, string, register, or file names, and in *copy mode*. No effect in NROFF.

10.3. Backspacing, underlining, overstriking, etc. Unless in *copy mode*, the ASCII backspace character is replaced by a backward horizontal motion having the width of the space character. Underlining as a form of line-drawing is discussed in §12.4. A generalized overstriking function is described in §12.1.

NROFF automatically underlines characters in the *underline* font, specifiable with **uf**, normally Times Italic on font position 2 (see §2.2). In addition to **ft** and \f*F*, the underline font may be selected by **ul** and **cu**. Underlining is restricted to an output-device-dependent subset of *reasonable* characters.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.ul *N*	off	*N*=1	E	Underline in NROFF (italicize in TROFF) the next *N* input text lines. Actually, switch to *underline* font, saving the current font for later restoration; *other* font changes within the span of a **ul** will take effect, but the restoration will undo the last change. Output generated by **tl** (§14) *is* affected by the font change, but does *not* decrement *N*. If *N*>1, there is the risk that a trap interpolated macro may provide text lines within the span; environment switching can prevent this.
.cu *N*	off	*N*=1	E	A variant of **ul** that causes *every* character to be underlined in NROFF. Identical to **ul** in TROFF.
.uf *F*	Italic	Italic	-	Underline font set to *F*. In NROFF, *F* may *not* be on position 1 (initially Times Roman).

10.4. Control characters. Both the control character . and the *no-break* control character ´ may be changed, if desired. Such a change must be compatible with the design of any macros used in the span of the change, and particularly of any trap-invoked macros.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.cc *c*	.	.	E	The basic control character is set to *c*, or reset to ".".
.c2 *c*	´	´	E	The *nobreak* control character is set to *c*, or reset to "´".

10.5. Output translation. One character can be made a stand-in for another character using **tr**. All text processing (e. g. character comparisons) takes place with the input (stand-in) character which appears to have the width of the final character. The graphic translation occurs at the moment of output (including diversion).

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.tr *abcd....*	none	-	O	Translate *a* into *b*, *c* into *d*, etc. If an odd number of characters is given, the last one will be mapped into the space character. To be consistent, a particular translation must stay in effect from *input* to *output* time.

10.6. Transparent throughput. An input line beginning with a **\!** is read in *copy mode* and *transparently* output (without the initial **\!**); the text processor is otherwise unaware of the line's presence. This mechanism may be used to pass control information to a post-processor or to imbed control lines in a macro created by a diversion.

10.7. Comments and concealed newlines. An uncomfortably long input line that must stay one line (e. g. a string definition, or nofilled text) can be split into many physical lines by ending all but the last one with the escape ****. The sequence \(newline) is *always* ignored—except in a comment. Comments may be imbedded at the *end* of any line by prefacing them with **\"**. The newline at the end of a comment cannot be concealed. A line beginning with **\"** will appear as a blank line and behave like **.sp 1**; a comment can be on a line by itself by beginning the line with **.\"**.

11. Local Horizontal and Vertical Motions, and the Width Function

11.1. Local Motions. The functions **\v'***N***'** and **\h'***N***'** can be used for *local* vertical and horizontal motion respectively. The distance *N* may be negative; the *positive* directions are *rightward* and *downward*. A *local* motion is one contained *within* a line. To avoid unexpected vertical dislocations, it is necessary that the *net* vertical local motion within a word in filled text and otherwise within a line balance to zero. The above and certain other escape sequences providing local motion are summarized in the following table.

<table>
<tr><th>Vertical
Local Motion</th><th colspan="2">Effect in
TROFF NROFF</th><th>Horizontal
Local Motion</th><th colspan="2">Effect in
TROFF NROFF</th></tr>
<tr><td>\v'N'</td><td colspan="2">Move distance N</td><td>\h'N'</td><td colspan="2">Move distance N</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">\u
\d
\r</td><td rowspan="2">½ em up
½ em down
1 em up</td><td rowspan="2">½ line up
½ line down
1 line up</td><td>\(space)
\0</td><td colspan="2">Unpaddable space-size space
Digit-size space</td></tr>
<tr><td>\|
\^</td><td>1/6 em space
1/12 em space</td><td>ignored
ignored</td></tr>
</table>

As an example, E^2 could be generated by the sequence **E\s-2\v'-0.4m'2\v'0.4m'\s+2**; it should be noted in this example that the 0.4 em vertical motions are at the smaller size.

11.2. Width Function. The *width* function **\w'***string***'** generates the numerical width of *string* (in basic units). Size and font changes may be safely imbedded in *string*, and will not affect the current environment. For example, **.ti -\w'1.'u** could be used to temporarily indent leftward a distance equal to the size of the string "**1.** ".

The width function also sets three number registers. The registers **st** and **sb** are set respectively to the highest and lowest extent of *string* relative to the baseline; then, for example, the total *height* of the string is **\n(stu-\n(sbu**. In TROFF the number register **ct** is set to a value between 0 and 3: 0 means that all of the characters in *string* were short lower case characters without descenders (like **e**); 1 means that at least one character has a descender (like **y**); 2 means that at least one character is tall (like **H**); and 3 means that both tall characters and characters with descenders are present.

11.3. Mark horizontal place. The escape sequence **\k***x* will cause the *current* horizontal position in the *input line* to be stored in register *x*. As an example, the construction **\kx***word***\h'|\nxu+2u'***word* will embolden *word* by backing up to almost its beginning and overprinting it, resulting in *word*.

12. Overstrike, Bracket, Line-drawing, and Zero-width Functions

12.1. Overstriking. Automatically centered overstriking of up to nine characters is provided by the *overstrike* function **\o'***string***'**. The characters in *string* are overprinted with centers aligned; the total width is that of the widest character. *string* should *not* contain local vertical motion. As examples, **\o'e\''** produces é, and **\o'\(mo\(sl'** produces ∉.

12.2. Zero-width characters. The function **\z***c* will output *c* without spacing over it, and can be used to produce left-aligned overstruck combinations. As examples, **\z\(ci\(pl** will produce ⊕, and **\(br\z\(rn\(ul\(br** will produce the smallest possible constructed box □.

12.3. Large Brackets. The Special Mathematical Font contains a number of bracket construction pieces (⌈ ⌊ ⌉ ⌋ ⎧ ⎩ ⎪ ⎣ ⎦) that can be combined into various bracket styles. The function **\b'***string***'** may be used to pile up vertically the characters in *string* (the first character on top and the last at the bottom); the characters are vertically separated by 1 em and the total pile is centered 1/2 em above the current baseline (½ line in NROFF). For example, **\b'\(lc\(lf'E\'\b'\(rc\(rf'\x'-0.5m'\x'0.5m'** produces ⎡E⎤.

12.4. Line drawing. The function **\l'***Nc***'** will draw a string of repeated *c*'s towards the right for a distance *N*. (**\l** is \(lower case L). If *c* looks like a continuation of an expression for *N*, it may insulated from *N* with a **\&**. If *c* is not specified, the _ (baseline rule) is used (underline character in NROFF). If *N* is negative, a backward horizontal motion of size *N* is made *before* drawing the string. Any space resulting from *N*/(size of *c*) having a remainder is put at the beginning (left end) of the string. In the case of characters that are designed to be connected such as baseline-rule _, underrule ‗, and root-en ‾, the remainder space is covered by over-lapping. If *N* is *less* than the width of *c*, a single *c* is centered on a distance *N*. As an example, a macro to underscore a string can be written

```
.de us
\\$1\l'|0\(ul'
..
```

or one to draw a box around a string

```
.de bx
\(br\|\\$1\|\(br\l'|0\(rn'\l'|0\(ul'
..
```

such that

```
.us "underlined words"
```

and

```
.bx "words in a box"
```

yield underlined words and words in a box.

The function **\L'***Nc***'** will draw a vertical line consisting of the (optional) character *c* stacked vertically apart 1 em (1 line in NROFF), with the first two characters overlapped, if necessary, to form a continuous line. The default character is the *box rule* | (**\(br**); the other suitable character is the *bold vertical* | (**\(bv**). The line is begun without any initial motion relative to the current base line. A positive *N* specifies a line drawn downward and a negative *N* specifies a line drawn upward. After the line is drawn *no* compensating motions are made; the instantaneous baseline is at the *end* of the line.

The horizontal and vertical line drawing functions may be used in combination to produce large boxes. The zero-width *box-rule* and the ½-em wide *underrule* were *designed* to form corners when using 1-em vertical spacings. For example the macro

```
.de eb
.sp -1          \"compensate for next automatic base-line spacing
.nf             \"avoid possibly overflowing word buffer
\h'-.5n'\L' | \\nau-1'\l'\\n(.lu+1n\(ul'\L'- | \\nau+1'\l' | 0u-.5n\(ul'    \"draw box
.fi
..
```

will draw a box around some text whose beginning vertical place was saved in number register *a* (e. g. using **.mk a**) as done for this paragraph.

13. Hyphenation.

The automatic hyphenation may be switched off and on. When switched on with **hy**, several variants may be set. A *hyphenation indicator* character may be imbedded in a word to specify desired hyphenation points, or may be prepended to suppress hyphenation. In addition, the user may specify a small exception word list.

Only words that consist of a central alphabetic string surrounded by (usually null) non-alphabetic strings are considered candidates for automatic hyphenation. Words that were input containing hyphens (minus), em-dashes (\(em), or hyphenation indicator characters—such as mother-in-law—are *always* subject to splitting after those characters, whether or not automatic hyphenation is on or off.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.nh	hyphenate	-	E	Automatic hyphenation is turned off.
.hy*N*	on,*N*=1	on,*N*=1	E	Automatic hyphenation is turned on for $N \geq 1$, or off for $N = 0$. If $N = 2$, *last* lines (ones that will cause a trap) are not hyphenated. For $N = 4$ and 8, the last and first two characters respectively of a word are not split off. These values are additive; i. e. $N = 14$ will invoke all three restrictions.
.hc *c*	\%	\%	E	Hyphenation indicator character is set to *c* or to the default \%. The indicator does not appear in the output.
.hw *word1 ...*		ignored	-	Specify hyphenation points in words with imbedded minus signs. Versions of a word with terminal *s* are implied; i. e. *dig-it* implies *dig-its*. This list is examined initially *and* after each suffix stripping. The space available is small—about 128 characters.

14. Three Part Titles.

The titling function **tl** provides for automatic placement of three fields at the left, center, and right of a line with a title-length specifiable with **lt**. **tl** may be used anywhere, and is independent of the normal text collecting process. A common use is in header and footer macros.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.tl *'left'center'right'*		-	-	The strings *left*, *center*, and *right* are respectively left-adjusted, centered, and right-adjusted in the current title-length. Any of the strings may be empty, and overlapping is permitted. If the page-number character (initially %) is found within any of the fields it is replaced by the current page number having the format assigned

				to register %. Any character may be used as the string delimiter.
.pc *c*	%	off	-	The page number character is set to *c*, or removed. The page-number register remains %.
.lt ±*N*	6.5 in	previous	E,m	Length of title set to ±*N*. The line-length and the title-length are *independent*. Indents do not apply to titles; page-offsets do.

15. Output Line Numbering.

Automatic sequence numbering of output lines may be requested with **nm**. When in effect, a three-digit, arabic number plus a digit-space is prepended to output text lines. The text lines are thus offset by four digit-spaces, and otherwise retain their line length; a reduction in line length may be desired to keep the right margin aligned with an earlier margin. Blank lines, other vertical spaces, and lines generated by **tl** are *not* numbered. Numbering can be temporarily suspended with **nn**, or with an **.nm** followed by a later **.nm +0**. In addition, a line number indent *I*, and the number-text separation *S* may be specified in digit-spaces. Further, it can be specified that only those line numbers that are multiples of some number *M* are to be printed (the others will appear as blank number fields).

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.nm ±*N M S I*		off	E	Line number mode. If ±*N* is given, line numbering is turned on, and the next output line numbered is numbered ±*N*. Default values are *M*= 1, *S*= 1, and *I*= 0. Parameters corresponding to missing arguments are unaffected; a non-numeric argument is considered missing. In the absence of all arguments, numbering is turned off; the next line number is preserved for possible further use in number register **ln**.
.nn *N*	-	*N*=1	E	The next *N* text output lines are not numbered.

As an example, the paragraph portions of this section are numbered with *M*= 3: **.nm 1 3** was placed at the beginning; **.nm** was placed at the end of the first paragraph; and **.nm +0** was placed in front of this paragraph; and **.nm** finally placed at the end. Line lengths were also changed (by **\w'0000'u**) to keep the right side aligned. Another example is **.nm +5 5 x 3** which turns on numbering with the line number of the next line to be 5 greater than the last numbered line, with *M*= 5, with spacing *S* untouched, and with the indent *I* set to 3.

16. Conditional Acceptance of Input

In the following, *c* is a one-character, built-in *condition* name, **!** signifies *not*, *N* is a numerical expression, *string1* and *string2* are strings delimited by any non-blank, non-numeric character *not* in the strings, and *anything* represents what is conditionally accepted.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.if *c anything*		-	-	If condition *c* true, accept *anything* as input; in multi-line case use \{*anything*\}.
.if !*c anything*		-	-	If condition *c* false, accept *anything*.
.if *N anything*		-	u	If expression *N* > 0, accept *anything*.
.if !*N anything*		-	u	If expression *N* ≤ 0, accept *anything*.
.if *'string1 'string2' anything*			-	If *string1* identical to *string2*, accept *anything*.
.if ! *'string1 'string2' anything*			-	If *string1* not identical to *string2*, accept *anything*.

.ie *c anything*	-	u	If portion of if-else; all above forms (like if).
.el *anything*	-	-	Else portion of if-else.

The built-in condition names are:

Condition Name	True If
o	Current page number is odd
e	Current page number is even
t	Formatter is TROFF
n	Formatter is NROFF

If the condition *c* is *true*, or if the number *N* is greater than zero, or if the strings compare identically (including motions and character size and font), *anything* is accepted as input. If a ! precedes the condition, number, or string comparison, the sense of the acceptance is reversed.

Any spaces between the condition and the beginning of *anything* are skipped over. The *anything* can be either a single input line (text, macro, or whatever) or a number of input lines. In the multi-line case, the first line must begin with a left delimiter \{ and the last line must end with a right delimiter \}.

The request ie (if-else) is identical to if except that the acceptance state is remembered. A subsequent and matching el (else) request then uses the reverse sense of that state. ie - el pairs may be nested.

Some examples are:

```
.if e .tl ´Even Page %´´´
```

which outputs a title if the page number is even; and

```
.ie \n%>1 \{\
´sp 0.5i
.tl ´Page %´´´
´sp | 1.2i \}
.el .sp | 2.5i
```

which treats page 1 differently from other pages.

17. Environment Switching.

A number of the parameters that control the text processing are gathered together into an *environment*, which can be switched by the user. The environment parameters are those associated with requests noting E in their *Notes* column; in addition, partially collected lines and words are in the environment. Everything else is global; examples are page-oriented parameters, diversion-oriented parameters, number registers, and macro and string definitions. All environments are initialized with default parameter values.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.ev *N*	*N*=0	previous	-	Environment switched to environment 0≤*N*≤2. Switching is done in push-down fashion so that restoring a previous environment *must* be done with .ev rather than specific reference.

18. Insertions from the Standard Input

The input can be temporarily switched to the system *standard input* with rd, which will switch back when *two* newlines in a row are found (the *extra* blank line is not used). This mechanism is intended for insertions in form-letter-like documentation. On UNIX, the *standard input* can be the user's keyboard, a *pipe*, or a *file*.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.rd *prompt*	-	*prompt*=BEL		Read insertion from the standard input until two newlines in a row are found. If the standard input is the user's keyboard, *prompt* (or a BEL) is written onto the user's terminal. **rd** behaves like a macro, and arguments may be placed after *prompt*.
.ex	-	-	-	Exit from NROFF/TROFF. Text processing is terminated exactly as if all input had ended.

If insertions are to be taken from the terminal keyboard *while* output is being printed on the terminal, the command line option **–q** will turn off the echoing of keyboard input and prompt only with BEL. The regular input and insertion input *cannot* simultaneously come from the standard input.

As an example, multiple copies of a form letter may be prepared by entering the insertions for all the copies in one file to be used as the standard input, and causing the file containing the letter to reinvoke itself using **nx** (§19); the process would ultimately be ended by an **ex** in the insertion file.

19. Input/Output File Switching

The (read-only) number register **.c** contains the input line number in the current input file. The number register **c.** is a general register serving the same purpose.

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.so *filename*		-	-	Switch source file. The top input (file reading) level is switched to *filename*. The effect of an **so** encountered in a macro occurs immediately. When the new file ends, input is again taken from the original file. **so**'s may be nested.
.nx *filename*		end-of-file	-	Next file is *filename*. The current file is considered ended, and the input is immediately switched to *filename*.
.pi *program*		-	-	Pipe output to *program* (NROFF only). This request must occur *before* any printing occurs. No arguments are transmitted to *program*.

20. Miscellaneous

Request Form	*Initial Value*	*If No Argument*	*Notes*	*Explanation*
.mc *c N*	-	off	E,m	Specifies that a *margin* character *c* appear a distance *N* to the right of the right margin after each non-empty text line (except those produced by **tl**). If the output line is too-long (as can happen in nofill mode) the character will be appended to the line. If *N* is not given, the previous *N* is used; the initial *N* is 0.2 inches in NROFF and 1 em in TROFF. The margin character used with this paragraph was a 12-point box-rule.
.tm *string*	-	newline	-	After skipping initial blanks, *string* (rest of the line) is read in *copy mode* and written on the user's terminal. (see §21).
.ig *yy*	-	*.yy*=..	-	Ignore input lines. **ig** behaves exactly like **de** (§7) except that the input is discarded. The input is read in *copy mode*, and any auto-incremented registers will be affected.

.pm *t*	-	all	-	Print macros. The names and sizes of all of the defined macros and strings are printed on the user's terminal; if *t* is given, only the total of the sizes is printed. The sizes is given in *blocks* of 128 characters.
.ab *string*	-	-	-	Print *string* on standard error and terminate immediately. The default *string* is "User Abort". Does not cause a break. Only output preceding the last break is written.
.fl	-	-	B	Flush output buffer. Used in interactive debugging to force output.

21. Output and Error Messages.

The output from **tm**, **pm**, **ab** and the prompt from **rd**, as well as various *error* messages are written onto UNIX's *standard error* output. The latter is different from the *standard output*, where NROFF formatted output goes. By default, both are written onto the user's terminal, but they can be independently redirected.

Various *error* conditions may occur during the operation of NROFF and TROFF. Certain less serious errors having only local impact do not cause processing to terminate. Two examples are *word overflow*, caused by a word that is too large to fit into the word buffer (in fill mode), and *line overflow*, caused by an output line that grew too large to fit in the line buffer; in both cases, a message is printed, the offending excess is discarded, and the affected word or line is marked at the point of truncation with a * in NROFF and a ☚ in TROFF. The philosophy is to continue processing, if possible, on the grounds that output useful for debugging may be produced. If a serious error occurs, processing terminates, and an appropriate message is printed. Examples are the inability to create, read, or write files, and the exceeding of certain internal limits that make future output unlikely to be useful.

TUTORIAL EXAMPLES

T1. Introduction

Although NROFF and TROFF have by design a syntax reminiscent of earlier text processors* with the intent of easing their use, it is almost always necessary to prepare at least a small set of macro definitions to describe most documents. Such common formatting needs as page margins and footnotes are deliberately not built into NROFF and TROFF. Instead, the macro and string definition, number register, diversion, environment switching, page-position trap, and conditional input mechanisms provide the basis for user-defined implementations.

The examples to be discussed are intended to be useful and somewhat realistic, but won't necessarily cover all relevant contingencies. Explicit numerical parameters are used in the examples to make them easier to read and to illustrate typical values. In many cases, number registers would really be used to reduce the number of places where numerical information is kept, and to concentrate conditional parameter initialization like that which depends on whether TROFF or NROFF is being used.

T2. Page Margins

As discussed in §3, *header* and *footer* macros are usually defined to describe the top and bottom page margin areas respectively. A trap is planted at page position 0 for the header, and at $-N$ (N from the page bottom) for the footer. The simplest such definitions might be

```
.de hd          \"define header
'sp 1i
..              \"end definition
.de fo          \"define footer
'bp
..              \"end definition
.wh 0 hd
.wh -1i fo
```

which provide blank 1 inch top and bottom margins. The header will occur on the *first* page, only if the definition and trap exist prior to the initial pseudo-page transition (§3). In fill mode, the output line that springs the footer trap was typically forced out because some part or whole word didn't fit on it. If anything in the footer and header that follows causes a *break*, that word or part word will be forced out. In this and other examples, requests like **bp** and **sp** that normally cause breaks are invoked using the *no-break* control character ' to avoid this. When the header/footer design contains material requiring independent text processing, the environment may be switched, avoiding most interaction with the running text.

A more realistic example would be

```
.de hd          \"header
.if t .tl ''\(rn''\(rn'  \"troff cut mark
.if \\n%>1 \{\
'sp | 0.5i-1    \"tl base at 0.5i
.tl ''- % -''   \"centered page number
.ps             \"restore size
.ft             \"restore font
.vs \}          \"restore vs
'sp | 1.0i      \"space to 1.0i
.ns             \"turn on no-space mode
..
.de fo          \"footer
.ps 10          \"set footer/header size
.ft R           \"set font
.vs 12p         \"set base-line spacing
.if \\n%=1 \{\
'sp | \\n(.pu-0.5i-1  \"tl base 0.5i up
.tl ''- % -'' \}  \"first page number
'bp
..
.wh 0 hd
.wh -1i fo
```

which sets the size, font, and base-line spacing for the header/footer material, and ultimately restores them. The material in this case is a page number at the bottom of the first page and at the top of the remaining pages. If TROFF is used, a *cut mark* is drawn in the form of *rooten*'s at each margin. The **sp**'s refer to absolute positions to avoid dependence on the base-line spacing. Another reason for this in the footer is that the footer is invoked by printing a line whose vertical spacing swept past the trap position by possibly as much as the base-line spacing. The *no-space* mode is turned on at the end

*For example: P. A. Crisman, Ed., *The Compatible Time-Sharing System,* MIT Press, 1965, Section AH9.01 (Description of RUNOFF program on MIT's CTSS system).

of **hd** to render ineffective accidental occurrences of **sp** at the top of the running text.

The above method of restoring size, font, etc. presupposes that such requests (that set *previous* value) are *not* used in the running text. A better scheme is save and restore both the current *and* previous values as shown for size in the following:

```
.de fo
.nr s1 \\n(.s     \"current size
.ps
.nr s2 \\n(.s     \"previous size
. ---             \"rest of footer
..
.de hd
. ---             \"header stuff
.ps \\n(s2        \"restore previous size
.ps \\n(s1        \"restore current size
..
```

Page numbers may be printed in the bottom margin by a separate macro triggered during the footer's page ejection:

```
.de bn            \"bottom number
.tl ''- % -''     \"centered page number
..
.wh -0.5i-1v bn   \"tl base 0.5i up
```

T3. Paragraphs and Headings

The housekeeping associated with starting a new paragraph should be collected in a paragraph macro that, for example, does the desired preparagraph spacing, forces the correct font, size, base-line spacing, and indent, checks that enough space remains for *more than one* line, and requests a temporary indent.

```
.de pg            \"paragraph
.br               \"break
.ft R             \"force font,
.ps 10            \"size,
.vs 12p           \"spacing,
.in 0             \"and indent
.sp 0.4           \"prespace
.ne 1+\\n(.Vu     \"want more than 1 line
.ti 0.2i          \"temp indent
..
```

The first break in **pg** will force out any previous partial lines, and must occur before the **vs**. The forcing of font, etc. is partly a defense against prior error and partly to permit things like section heading macros to set parameters only once. The prespacing parameter is suitable for TROFF; a larger space, at least as big as the output device vertical resolution, would be more suitable in NROFF. The choice of remaining space to test for in the **ne** is the smallest amount greater than one line (the .V is the available vertical resolution).

A macro to automatically number section headings might look like:

```
.de sc            \"section
. ---             \"force font, etc.
.sp 0.4           . \"prespace
.ne 2.4+\\n(.Vu \"want 2.4+ lines
.fi
\\n+S.
..
.nr S 0 1         \"init S
```

The usage is .sc, followed by the section heading text, followed by **.pg**. The **ne** test value includes one line of heading, 0.4 line in the following **pg**, and one line of the paragraph text. A word consisting of the next section number and a period is produced to begin the heading line. The format of the number may be set by **af** (§8).

Another common form is the labeled, indented paragraph, where the label protrudes left into the indent space.

```
.de lp            \"labeled paragraph
.pg
.in 0.5i          \"paragraph indent
.ta 0.2i 0.5i     \"label, paragraph
.ti 0
\t\\$1\t\c        \"flow into paragraph
..
```

The intended usage is "**.lp** *label*"; *label* will begin at 0.2 inch, and cannot exceed a length of 0.3 inch without intruding into the paragraph. The label could be right adjusted against 0.4 inch by setting the tabs instead with **.ta 0.4iR 0.5i**. The last line of **lp** ends with **\c** so that it will become a part of the first line of the text that follows.

T4. Multiple Column Output

The production of multiple column pages requires the footer macro to decide whether it was invoked by other than the last column, so that it will begin a new column rather than produce the bottom margin. The header can initialize a column register that the footer will increment and test. The following is arranged for two columns, but is easily modified for more.

```
.de hd          \"header
. ---
.nr cl 0 1      \"init column count
.mk             \"mark top of text
..
.de fo          \"footer
.ie \\n+(cl<2 \{\
.po +3.4i       \"next column; 3.1+0.3
.rt             \"back to mark
.ns \}          \"no-space mode
.el \{\
.po \\nMu       \"restore left margin
. ---
'bp \}
..
.ll 3.1i        \"column width
.nr M \\n(.o    \"save left margin
```

Typically a portion of the top of the first page contains full width text; the request for the narrower line length, as well as another .mk would be made where the two column output was to begin.

T5. Footnote Processing

The footnote mechanism to be described is used by imbedding the footnotes in the input text at the point of reference, demarcated by an initial .fn and a terminal .ef:

```
.fn
Footnote text and control lines...
.ef
```

In the following, footnotes are processed in a separate environment and diverted for later printing in the space immediately prior to the bottom margin. There is provision for the case where the last collected footnote doesn't completely fit in the available space.

```
.de hd          \"header
. ---
.nr x 0 1       \"init footnote count
.nr y 0-\\nb    \"current footer place
.ch fo -\\nbu   \"reset footer trap
.if \\n(dn .fz  \"leftover footnote
..
.de fo          \"footer
.nr dn 0        \"zero last diversion size
.if \\nx \{\
.ev 1           \"expand footnotes in ev1
.nf             \"retain vertical size
.FN             \"footnotes
.rm FN          \"delete it
.if "\\n(.z"fy" .di \"end overflow diversion
.nr x 0         \"disable fx
.ev \}          \"pop environment
. ---
'bp
..
.de fx          \"process footnote overflow
.if \\nx .di fy \"divert overflow
..
.de fn          \"start footnote
.da FN          \"divert (append) footnote
.ev 1           \"in environment 1
.if \\n+x=1 .fs \"if first, include separator
.fi             \"fill mode
..
.de ef          \"end footnote
.br             \"finish output
.nr z \\n(.v    \"save spacing
.ev             \"pop ev
.di             \"end diversion
.nr y -\\n(dn   \"new footer position,
.if \\nx=1 .nr y -(\\n(.v-\\nz) \
                \"uncertainty correction
.ch fo \\nyu    \"y is negative
.if (\\n(nl+1v)>(\\n(.p+\\ny) \
.ch fo \\n(nlu+1v \"it didn't fit
..
.de fs          \"separator
\l'1i'          \"1 inch rule
.br
..
.de fz          \"get leftover footnote
.fn
.nf             \"retain vertical size
.fy             \"where fx put it
.ef
..
.nr b 1.0i      \"bottom margin size
.wh 0 hd        \"header trap
.wh 12i fo      \"footer trap, temp position
.wh -\\nbu fx   \"fx at footer position
.ch fo -\\nbu   \"conceal fx with fo
```

The header **hd** initializes a footnote count register **x**, and sets both the current footer trap position register **y** and the footer trap itself to a nominal position specified in register **b**. In addition, if the register **dn** indicates a leftover footnote, **fz** is invoked to reprocess it. The footnote start macro **fn** begins a diversion (append) in environment 1, and increments the count **x**; if the count is one, the footnote separator **fs** is interpolated. The separator is kept in a separate macro to permit user redefinition. The footnote end macro **ef** restores the previous environment and ends the diversion after saving the spacing size in register **z**. **y** is then decremented by the size of the footnote, available in **dn**; then on the first footnote, **y** is further decremented by the

difference in vertical base-line spacings of the two environments, to prevent the late triggering the footer trap from causing the last line of the combined footnotes to overflow. The footer trap is then set to the lower (on the page) of **y** or the current page position (**nl**) plus one line, to allow for printing the reference line. If indicated by **x**, the footer **fo** rereads the footnotes from **FN** in nofill mode in environment 1, and deletes **FN**. If the footnotes were too large to fit, the macro **fx** will be trap-invoked to redivert the overflow into **fy**, and the register **dn** will later indicate to the header whether **fy** is empty. Both **fo** and **fx** are planted in the nominal footer trap position in an order that causes **fx** to be concealed unless the **fo** trap is moved. The footer then terminates the overflow diversion, if necessary, and zeros **x** to disable **fx**, because the uncertainty correction together with a not-too-late triggering of the footer can result in the footnote rereading finishing before reaching the **fx** trap.

A good exercise for the student is to combine the multiple-column and footnote mechanisms.

T6. The Last Page

After the last input file has ended, NROFF and TROFF invoke the *end macro* (§7), if any, and when it finishes, eject the remainder of the page. During the eject, any traps encountered are processed normally. At the *end* of this last page, processing terminates *unless* a partial line, word, or partial word remains. If it is desired that another page be started, the end-macro

```
.de en          \"end-macro
\c
'bp
..
.em en
```

will deposit a null partial word, and effect another last page.

Table I

Font Style Examples

The following fonts are printed in 12-point, with a vertical spacing of 14-point, and with non-alphanumeric characters separated by ¼ em space (all measurements on 8.5 x 11 inch paper prior to photoreduction). This font sample is printed on an APS-5 phototypesetter at University of California, Berkeley.

Times Roman

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
! $ % & ( ) ‘ ’ * + – . , / : ; = ? [ ] |
● □ — - _ ¼ ½ ¾ fi fl ff ffi ffl ° † ′ ¢ ® ©

Times Italic

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
*! $ % & ( ) ‘ ’ * + – . , / : ; = ? [ ] |*
● □ — - _ ¼ ½ ¾ *fi fl ff ffi ffl* ° † ′ ¢ ® ©

Times Bold

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
! $ % & ( ) ‘ ’ * + – . , / : ; = ? [ ] |
● □ — - _ ¼ ½ ¾ **fi fl ff ffi ffl** ° † ′ ¢ ® ©

Special Mathematical Font

" ′ \ ^ _ ` ~ / < > { } # @ + – = ∗
α β γ δ ϵ ζ η θ ι κ λ μ ν ξ ο π ρ σ ς τ υ ϕ χ ψ ω
Γ Δ Θ Λ Ξ Π Σ Υ Φ Ψ Ω
√ ≥ ≤ ≡ ∼ ≃ ≠ → ← ↑ ↓ × ÷ ± ∪ ∩ ⊂ ⊃ ⊆ ⊇ ∞ ∂
§ ∇ ¬ ∫ ∝ ∅ ∈ ‡ ☛ ☚ @ | ○ ⌈ ⌊ ⌉ ⌋ { } | | ⌊⌋ ⌈⌉|

Table II

Input Naming Conventions for ´, `, and – and for Non-ASCII Special Characters

Non-ASCII characters and *minus* on the standard fonts.

Char	*Input Name*	*Character Name*
’	´	close quote
‘	`	open quote
—	\(em	3/4 Em dash
-	–	hyphen or
-	\(hy	hyphen
–	\–	current font minus
•	\(bu	bullet
□	\(sq	square
_	\(ru	rule
¼	\(14	1/4
½	\(12	1/2
¾	\(34	3/4

Char	*Input Name*	*Character Name*
fi	\(fi	fi
fl	\(fl	fl
ff	\(ff	ff
ffi	\(Fi	ffi
ffl	\(Fl	ffl
°	\(de	degree
†	\(dg	dagger
’	\(fm	foot mark
¢	\(ct	cent sign
®	\(rg	registered
©	\(co	copyright

Non-ASCII characters and ´, `, _, +, –, =, and * on the special font.

The ASCII characters @, #, ", ´, `, <, >, \, {, }, ~, ^, and _ exist *only* on the special font and are printed as a 1-em space if that font is not mounted. The following characters exist only on the special font except for the upper case Greek letter names followed by † which are mapped into upper case English letters in whatever font is mounted on font position one (default Times Roman). The special math plus, minus, and equals are provided to insulate the appearance of equations from the choice of standard fonts.

Char	*Input Name*	*Character Name*
+	\(pl	math plus
–	\(mi	math minus
=	\(eq	math equals
*	\(**	math star
§	\(sc	section
´	\(aa	acute accent
`	\(ga	grave accent
_	\(ul	underrule
\	\(sl	slash (matching backslash)
α	\(*a	alpha
β	\(*b	beta
γ	\(*g	gamma
δ	\(*d	delta
ε	\(*e	epsilon
ζ	\(*z	zeta
η	\(*y	eta
θ	\(*h	theta
ι	\(*i	iota

Char	*Input Name*	*Character Name*
κ	\(*k	kappa
λ	\(*l	lambda
μ	\(*m	mu
ν	\(*n	nu
ξ	\(*c	xi
ο	\(*o	omicron
π	\(*p	pi
ρ	\(*r	rho
σ	\(*s	sigma
ς	\(ts	terminal sigma
τ	\(*t	tau
υ	\(*u	upsilon
φ	\(*f	phi
χ	\(*x	chi
ψ	\(*q	psi
ω	\(*w	omega
A	\(*A	Alpha†
B	\(*B	Beta†

Char	Input Name	Character Name
Γ	\(*G	Gamma
Δ	\(*D	Delta
Ε	\(*E	Epsilon†
Ζ	\(*Z	Zeta†
Η	\(*Y	Eta†
Θ	\(*H	Theta
Ι	\(*I	Iota†
Κ	\(*K	Kappa†
Λ	\(*L	Lambda
Μ	\(*M	Mu†
Ν	\(*N	Nu†
Ξ	\(*C	Xi
Ο	\(*O	Omicron†
Π	\(*P	Pi
Ρ	\(*R	Rho†
Σ	\(*S	Sigma
Τ	\(*T	Tau†
Υ	\(*U	Upsilon
Φ	\(*F	Phi
Χ	\(*X	Chi†
Ψ	\(*Q	Psi
Ω	\(*W	Omega
√	\(sr	square root
	\(rn	root en extender
≥	\(>=	>=
≤	\(<=	<=
≡	\(==	identically equal
≃	\(~=	approx =
~	\(ap	approximates
≠	\(!=	not equal
→	\(->	right arrow
←	\(<-	left arrow
↑	\(ua	up arrow
↓	\(da	down arrow
×	\(mu	multiply
÷	\(di	divide
±	\(+-	plus-minus
∪	\(cu	cup (union)
∩	\(ca	cap (intersection)
⊂	\(sb	subset of
⊃	\(sp	superset of
⊆	\(ib	improper subset
⊇	\(ip	improper superset
∞	\(if	infinity
∂	\(pd	partial derivative
∇	\(gr	gradient
¬	\(no	not
∫	\(is	integral sign
∝	\(pt	proportional to
∅	\(es	empty set
∈	\(mo	member of
|	\(br	box vertical rule

Char	Input Name	Character Name
‡	\(dd	double dagger
☞	\(rh	right hand
☜	\(lh	left hand
Ⓑ	\(bs	Bell System logo (typesetter-dependent)
|	\(or	or
○	\(ci	circle
⎧	\(lt	left top of big curly bracket
⎩	\(lb	left bottom
⎫	\(rt	right top
⎭	\(rb	right bot
⎨	\(lk	left center of big curly bracket
⎬	\(rk	right center of big curly bracket
⎪	\(bv	bold vertical
⌊	\(lf	left floor (left bottom of big square bracket)
⌋	\(rf	right floor (right bottom)
⌈	\(lc	left ceiling (left top)
⌉	\(rc	right ceiling (right top)

A TROFF Tutorial

Brian W. Kernighan
(updated for 4.3BSD by Mark Seiden)

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

troff is a text-formatting program for typesetting on the UNIX† operating system. This device is capable of producing high quality text; this paper is an example of **troff** output.

The phototypesetter itself normally runs with four fonts, containing roman, italic and bold letters (as on this page), a full greek alphabet, and a substantial number of special characters and mathematical symbols. Characters can be printed in a range of sizes, and placed anywhere on the page.

troff allows the user full control over fonts, sizes, and character positions, as well as the usual features of a formatter — right-margin justification, automatic hyphenation, page titling and numbering, and so on. It also provides macros, arithmetic variables and operations, and conditional testing, for complicated formatting tasks.

This document is an introduction to the most basic use of **troff**. It presents just enough information to enable the user to do simple formatting tasks like making viewgraphs, and to make incremental changes to existing packages of **troff** commands. In most respects, the UNIX formatter **nroff** and a more recent version *(device-independent* **troff**) are identical to the version described here, so this document also serves as a tutorial for them as well.

1. Introduction

troff [1] is a text-formatting program, written originally by J. F. Ossanna, for producing high-quality printed output from the phototypesetter on the UNIX operating system. This document is an example of **troff** output.

The single most important rule of using **troff** is not to use it directly, but through some intermediary. In many ways, **troff** resembles an assembly language — a remarkably powerful and flexible one — but nonetheless such that many operations must be specified at a level of detail and in a form that is too hard for most people to use effectively.

For two special applications, there are programs that provide an interface to **troff** for the majority of users. **eqn** [2] provides an easy to learn language for typesetting mathematics; the **eqn** user need know no **troff** whatsoever to typeset mathematics. **tbl** [3] provides the same convenience for producing tables of arbitrary complexity.

For producing straight text (which may well contain mathematics or tables), there are a number of 'macro packages' that define formatting rules and operations for specific styles of documents, and reduce the amount of direct contact with **troff**. In particular, the '–ms' [4], PWB/MM [5], and '–me' [6] packages for internal memoranda and external

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

papers provide most of the facilities needed for a wide range of document preparation.† (This memo was prepared with '–ms'.) There are also packages for viewgraphs, for simulating the older **roff** formatters, and for other special applications. Typically you will find these packages easier to use than **troff** once you get beyond the most trivial operations; you should always consider them first.

In the few cases where existing packages don't do the whole job, the solution is *not* to write an entirely new set of **troff** instructions from scratch, but to make small changes to adapt packages that already exist.

In accordance with this philosophy of letting someone else do the work, the part of **troff** described here is only a small part of the whole, although it tries to concentrate on the more useful parts. In any case, there is no attempt to be complete. Rather, the emphasis is on showing how to do simple things, and how to make incremental changes to what already exists. The contents of the remaining sections are:

2. Point sizes and line spacing
3. Fonts and special characters
4. Indents and line length
5. Tabs
6. Local motions: Drawing lines and characters
7. Strings
8. Introduction to macros
9. Titles, pages and numbering
10. Number registers and arithmetic
11. Macros with arguments
12. Conditionals
13. Environments
14. Diversions
Appendix: Typesetter character set

The **troff** described here is the C-language version supplied with UNIX Version 7 and 32V as documented in [1].

To use **troff** you have to prepare not only the actual text you want printed, but some information that tells *how* you want it printed. (Readers who use **roff** will find the approach familiar.) For **troff** the text and the formatting information are often intertwined quite intimately. Most commands to **troff** are placed on a line separate from the text itself, beginning with a period (one command per line). For example,

```
Some text.
.ps 14
Some more text.
```

will change the 'point size', that is, the size of the letters being printed, to '14 point' (one point is 1/72 inch) like this:

Some text. Some more text.

Occasionally, though, something special occurs in the middle of a line — to produce

Area = πr^2

you have to type

```
Area = \(*p\fIr\fR\|\s8\u2\d\s0
```

(which we will explain shortly). The backslash character \ is used to introduce **troff** commands and special characters within a line of text.

2. Point Sizes; Line Spacing

As mentioned above, the command .ps sets the point size. One point is 1/72 inch, so 6-point characters are at most 1/12 inch high, and 36-point characters are ½ inch. There are 15 point sizes, listed below.

6 point: Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
7 point: Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
8 point: Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
9 point: Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
10 point: Pack my box with five dozen liquor
11 point: Pack my box with five dozen
12 point: Pack my box with five dozen
14 point: Pack my box with five
16 point 18 point 20 point
22 24 28 36

If the number after .ps is not one of these legal sizes, it is rounded up to the next valid value, with a maximum of 36. If no number follows .ps, **troff** reverts to the previous size, whatever it was. **troff** begins with point size 10, which is usually fine. The original of this document (on 8.5 by 11 inch paper) is in 9 point.

The point size can also be changed in the middle of a line or even a word with the in-line command \s. To produce

UNIX runs on a PDP-11/45

type

```
\s8UNIX\s10 runs on a \s8PDP-\s1011/45
```

As above, \s should be followed by a legal point

† Most Berkeley Unix sites only have –ms and –me.

size, except that \s0 causes the size to revert to its previous value. Notice that \s1011 can be understood correctly as 'size 10, followed by an 11', if the size is legal, but not otherwise. Be cautious with similar constructions.

Relative size changes are also legal and useful:

```
\s-2UNIX\s+2
```

temporarily decreases the size, whatever it is, by two points, then restores it. Relative size changes have the advantage that the size difference is independent of the starting size of the document. The amount of the relative change is restricted to a single digit.

The other parameter that determines what the type looks like is the spacing between lines, which is set independently of the point size. Vertical spacing is measured from the bottom of one line to the bottom of the next. The command to control vertical spacing is .vs. For running text, it is usually best to set the vertical spacing about 20% bigger than the character size. For example, so far in this document, we have used "9 on 11", that is,

```
.ps 9
.vs 11p
```

If we changed to

```
.ps 9
.vs 9p
```

the running text would look like this. After a few lines, you will agree it looks a little cramped. The right vertical spacing is partly a matter of taste, depending on how much text you want to squeeze into a given space, and partly a matter of traditional printing style. By default, **troff** uses 10 on 12.

Point size and vertical spacing make a substantial difference in the amount of text per square inch. This is 12 on 14.

Point size and vertical spacing make a substantial difference in the amount of text per square inch. For example, 10 on 12 uses about twice as much space as 7 on 8. This is 6 on 7, which is even smaller. It packs a lot more words per line, but you can go blind trying to read it.

When used without arguments, .ps and .vs revert to the previous size and vertical spacing respectively.

The command .sp is used to get extra vertical space. Unadorned, it gives you one extra blank line (one .vs, whatever that has been set to). Typically, that's more or less than you want, so .sp can be followed by information about how much space you want —

```
.sp 2i
```

means 'two inches of vertical space'.

```
.sp 2p
```

means 'two points of vertical space'; and

```
.sp 2
```

means 'two vertical spaces' — two of whatever .vs is set to (this can also be made explicit with .sp 2v); **troff** also understands decimal fractions in most places, so

```
.sp 1.5i
```

is a space of 1.5 inches. These same scale factors can be used after .vs to define line spacing, and in fact after most commands that deal with physical dimensions.

It should be noted that all size numbers are converted internally to 'machine units', which are 1/432 inch (1/6 point). For most purposes, this is enough resolution that you don't have to worry about the accuracy of the representation. The situation is not quite so good vertically, where resolution is 1/144 inch (1/2 point).

3. Fonts and Special Characters

troff and the typesetter allow four different fonts at any one time. Normally three fonts (Times roman, italic and bold) and one collection of special characters are permanently mounted.

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

The greek, mathematical symbols and miscellany of the special font are listed in Appendix A.

troff prints in roman unless told otherwise. To switch into bold, use the .ft command

```
.ft B
```

and for italics,

```
.ft I
```

To return to roman, use .ft R; to return to the previous font, whatever it was, use either .ft P or just .ft. The 'underline' command

```
.ul
```

causes the next input line to print in italics. .ul can be followed by a count to indicate that more than one line is to be italicized.

Fonts can also be changed within a line or word with the in-line command \f:

bold*face* text

is produced by

```
\fBbold\fIface\fR text
```

If you want to do this so the previous font, whatever it was, is left undisturbed, insert extra \fP commands, like this:

```
\fBbold\fP\fIface\fP\fR text\fP
```

Because only the immediately previous font is remembered, you have to restore the previous font after each change or you can lose it. The same is true of .ps and .vs when used without an argument.

There are other fonts available besides the standard set, although you can still use only four at any given time. The command .fp tells **troff** what fonts are physically mounted on the typesetter:

```
.fp 3 H
```

says that the Helvetica font is mounted on position 3. (The complete list of font sizes and styles depends on your typesetter or laser printer.) Appropriate .fp commands should appear at the beginning of your document if you do not use the standard fonts.

It is possible to make a document relatively independent of the actual fonts used to print it by using font numbers instead of names; for example, \f3 and .ft 3 mean 'whatever font is mounted at position 3', and thus work for any setting. Normal settings are roman font on 1, italic on 2, bold on 3, and special on 4.

There is also a way to get 'synthetic' bold fonts by overstriking letters with a slight offset. Look at the .bd command in [1].

Special characters have four-character names beginning with \(, and they may be inserted anywhere. For example,

```
¼ + ½ = ¾
```

is produced by

```
\(14 + \(12 = \(34
```

In particular, greek letters are all of the form \(*–, where – is an upper or lower case roman letter reminiscent of the greek. Thus to get

```
Σ(α×β) → ∞
```

in bare **troff** we have to type

```
\(*S(\(*a\(mu\(*b) \(-> \(if
```

That line is unscrambled as follows:

\(*S	Σ
(	(
\(*a	α
\(mu	×
\(*b	β
)	)
\(->	→
\(if	∞

A complete list of these special names occurs in Appendix A.

In **eqn** [2] the same effect can be achieved with the input

```
SIGMA ( alpha times beta ) -> inf
```

which is less concise, but clearer to the uninitiated.

Notice that each four-character name is a single character as far as **troff** is concerned — the 'translate' command

```
.tr \(mi\(em
```

is perfectly clear, meaning

```
.tr --
```

that is, to translate - into —.

Some characters are automatically translated into others: grave ` and acute ´ accents (apostrophes) become open and close single quotes ‘’; the combination of “...” is generally preferable to the double quotes "...". Similarly a typed minus sign becomes a hyphen -. To print an explicit - sign, use \-. To get a backslash printed, use \e.

4. Indents and Line Lengths

troff starts with a line length of 6.5 inches, which some people think is too wide for 8½×11 paper. To reset the line length, use the .ll command, as in

```
.ll 6i
```

As with .sp, the actual length can be specified in several ways; inches are probably the most intuitive.

The maximum line length provided by the typesetter is 7.5 inches, by the way. To use the full width, you will have to reset the default physical left margin (“page offset”), which is normally slightly less than one inch from the left edge of the paper. This is done by the .po command.

```
.po 0
```

sets the offset as far to the left as it will go.

The indent command .in causes the left margin to be indented by some specified amount from the page offset. If we use .in to move the left margin in, and .ll to move the right margin to the left, we can make offset blocks of text:

```
.in 0.3i
.ll -0.3i
text to be set into a block
.ll +0.3i
.in -0.3i
```

will create a block that looks like this:

> Pater noster qui est in caelis sanctificetur nomen tuum; adveniat regnum tuum; fiat voluntas tua, sicut in caelo, et in terra. ... Amen.

Notice the use of '+' and '−' to specify the amount of change. These change the previous setting by the specified amount, rather than just overriding it. The distinction is quite important: .ll +1i makes lines one inch longer; .ll 1i makes them one inch *long*.

With .in, .ll and .po, the previous value is used if no argument is specified.

To indent a single line, use the 'temporary indent' command .ti. For example, all paragraphs in this memo effectively begin with the command

```
.ti 3
```

Three of what? The default unit for .ti, as for most horizontally oriented commands (.ll, .in, .po), is ems; an em is roughly the width of the letter 'm' in the current point size. (Precisely, a em in size *p* is *p* points.) Although inches are usually clearer than ems to people who don't set type for a living, ems have a place: they are a measure of size that is proportional to the current point size. If you want to make text that keeps its proportions regardless of point size, you should use ems for all dimensions. Ems can be specified as scale factors directly, as in .ti 2.5m.

Lines can also be indented negatively if the indent is already positive:

```
.ti -0.3i
```

causes the next line to be moved back three tenths of an inch. Thus to make a decorative initial capital, we indent the whole paragraph, then move the letter 'P' back with a .ti command:

> Pater noster qui est in caelis sanctificetur nomen tuum; adveniat regnum tuum; fiat voluntas tua, sicut in caelo, et in terra. ... Amen.

Of course, there is also some trickery to make the 'P' bigger (just a '\s36P\s0'), and to move it down from its normal position (see the section on local motions).

5. Tabs

Tabs (the ASCII 'horizontal tab' character) can be used to produce output in columns, or to set the horizontal position of output. Typically tabs are used only in unfilled text. Tab stops are set by default every half inch from the current indent, but can be changed by the .ta command. To set stops every inch, for example,

```
.ta 1i 2i 3i 4i 5i 6i
```

Unfortunately the stops are left-justified only (as on a typewriter), so lining up columns of right-justified numbers can be painful. If you have many numbers, or if you need more complicated table layout, *don't* use **troff** directly; use the **tbl** program described in [3].

For a handful of numeric columns, you can do it this way: Precede every number by enough blanks to make it line up when typed.

```
.nf
.ta 1i 2i 3i
  1 tab   2 tab   3
 40 tab  50 tab  60
700 tab 800 tab 900
.fi
```

Then change each leading blank into the string \0. This is a character that does not print, but that has the same width as a digit. When printed, this will produce

```
  1        2        3
 40       50       60
700      800      900
```

It is also possible to fill up tabbed-over space with some character other than blanks by setting the 'tab replacement character' with the .tc command:

```
.ta 1.5i 2.5i
.tc \(ru      (\(ru is "_")
Name tab Age tab
```

produces

Name _____ Age _____

To reset the tab replacement character to a blank, use .tc with no argument. (Lines can also be drawn with the \l command, described in Section 6.)

troff also provides a very general mechanism called 'fields' for setting up complicated columns. (This is used by **tbl**). We will not go into it in this paper.

6. Local Motions: Drawing lines and characters

Remember 'Area = πr^2' and the big 'P' in the Paternoster. How are they done? **troff** provides a host of commands for placing characters of any size at any place. You can use them to draw special characters or to tune your output for a particular appearance. Most of these commands are straightforward, but messy to read and tough to type correctly.

If you won't use **eqn**, subscripts and superscripts are most easily done with the half-line local motions \u and \d. To go back up the page half a point-size, insert a \u at the desired place; to go down, insert a \d. (\u and \d should always be used in pairs, as explained below.) Thus

```
Area = \(*pr\u2\d
```

produces

Area = πr^2

To make the '2' smaller, bracket it with \s-2...\s0. Since \u and \d refer to the current point size, be sure to put them either both inside or both outside the size changes, or you will get an unbalanced vertical motion.

Sometimes the space given by \u and \d isn't the right amount. The \v command can be used to request an arbitrary amount of vertical motion. The in-line command

```
\v'(amount)'
```

causes motion up or down the page by the amount specified in '(amount)'. For example, to move the 'P' down, we used

```
.in +0.6i          (move paragraph in)
.ll -0.3i          (shorten lines)
.ti -0.3i          (move P back)
\v'2'\s36P\s0\v'-2'ater noster qui est
in caelis ...
```

A minus sign causes upward motion, while no sign or a plus sign means down the page. Thus \v'-2' causes an upward vertical motion of two line spaces.

There are many other ways to specify the amount of motion —

```
\v'0.1i'
\v'3p'
\v'-0.5m'
```

and so on are all legal. Notice that the scale specifier i or p or m goes inside the quotes. Any character can be used in place of the quotes; this is also true of all other **troff** commands described in this section.

Since **troff** does not take within-the-line vertical motions into account when figuring out where it is on the page, output lines can have unexpected positions if the left and right ends aren't at the same vertical position. Thus \v, like \u and \d, should always balance upward vertical motion in a line with the same amount in the downward direction.

Arbitrary horizontal motions are also available — \h is quite analogous to \v, except that the default scale factor is ems instead of line spaces. As an example,

```
\h'-0.1i'
```

causes a backwards motion of a tenth of an inch. As a practical matter, consider printing the mathematical symbol '>>'. The default spacing is too wide, so **eqn** replaces this by

```
>\h'-0.3m'>
```

to produce ≫.

Frequently \h is used with the 'width function' \w to generate motions equal to the width of some character string. The construction

```
\w'thing'
```

is a number equal to the width of 'thing' in machine units (1/432 inch). All **troff** computations are ultimately done in these units. To move horizontally the width of an 'x', we can say

```
\h'\w'x'u'
```

As we mentioned above, the default scale factor for all horizontal dimensions is m, ems, so here we must have the u for machine units, or the motion produced will be far too large. **troff** is quite happy with the nested quotes, by the way, so long as you don't leave any out.

As a live example of this kind of construction, all of the command names in the text, like .sp, were done by overstriking with a slight offset. The commands for .sp are

```
.sp\h'-\w'.sp'u'\h'1u'.sp
```

That is, put out '.sp', move left by the width of '.sp', move right 1 unit, and print '.sp' again. (Of course there is a way to avoid typing that much input for each command name, which we will discuss in Section 11.)

There are also several special-purpose **troff** commands for local motion. We have already seen \0, which is an unpaddable white space of the same width as a digit. 'Unpaddable' means that it will never be widened or split across a line by line justification and filling. There is also \(blank), which is an unpaddable character the width of a space, \|, which is half that width, \^, which is one quarter of the width of a space, and \&, which has zero width. (This last one is useful, for example, in entering a text line which would otherwise begin with a '.'.)

The command \o, used like

```
\o'set of characters'
```

causes (up to 9) characters to be overstruck, centered on the widest. This is nice for accents, as in

```
syst\o"e\(ga"me t\o"e\(aa"l\o"e\(aa"phonique
```

which makes

système téléphonique

The accents are \(ga and \(aa, or \` and \'; remember that each is just one character to **troff**.

You can make your own overstrikes with another special convention, \z, the zero-motion command. \zx suppresses the normal horizontal motion after printing the single character x, so another character can be laid on top of it. Although sizes can be changed within \o, it centers the characters on the widest, and there can be no horizontal or vertical motions, so \z may be the only way to get what you want:

is produced by

```
.sp 2
\s8\z\(sq\s14\z\(sq\s22\z\(sq\s36\(sq
```

The .sp is needed to leave room for the result.

As another example, an extra-heavy semicolon that looks like

; instead of ; or ;

can be constructed with a big comma and a big period above it:

```
\s+6\z,\v'-0.25m'.\v'0.25m'\s0
```

'0.25m' is an experimentally-derived constant.

A more ornate overstrike is given by the bracketing function \b, which piles up characters vertically, centered on the current baseline. Thus we can get big brackets, constructing them with piled-up smaller pieces:

by typing in only this:

```
.sp
\b'\(lt\(lk\(lb' \b'\(lc\(lf' x \b'\(rc\(rf' \b'\(rt\(rk\(rb'
```

troff also provides a convenient facility for drawing horizontal and vertical lines of arbitrary length with arbitrary characters. \l'1i' draws a line one inch long, like this: _____. The length can be followed by the character to use if the _ isn't appropriate; \l'0.5i.' draws a half-inch line of dots: ..... The construction \L is entirely analogous, except that it draws a vertical line instead of horizontal.

7. Strings

Obviously if a paper contains a large number of occurrences of an acute accent over a letter 'e', typing \o"e\'" for each é would be a great nuisance.

Fortunately, **troff** provides a way in which you can store an arbitrary collection of text in a 'string', and thereafter use the string name as a shorthand for its contents. Strings are one of several **troff** mechanisms whose judicious use lets you type a document with less effort and organize it so that extensive format changes can be made with few editing changes.

A reference to a string is replaced by whatever text the string was defined as. Strings are defined with the command .ds. The line

```
.ds e \o"e\'"
```

defines the string e to have the value \o"e\'"

String names may be either one or two characters long, and are referred to by *x for one character names or *(xy for two character names. Thus to get téléphone, given the definition of the string e as above, we can say t*el*ephone.

If a string must begin with blanks, define it as

```
.ds xx "     text
```

The double quote signals the beginning of the definition. There is no trailing quote; the end of the line terminates the string.

A string may actually be several lines long; if **troff** encounters a \ at the end of *any* line, it is thrown away and the next line added to the current one. So you can make a long string simply by ending each line but the last with a backslash:

```
.ds xx this \
is a very \
long string
```

Strings may be defined in terms of other strings, or even in terms of themselves; we will discuss some of these possibilities later.

8. Introduction to Macros

Before we can go much further in **troff**, we need to learn a bit about the macro facility. In its simplest form, a macro is just a shorthand notation quite similar to a string. Suppose we want every paragraph to start in exactly the same way — with a space and a temporary indent of two ems:

```
.sp
.ti +2m
```

Then to save typing, we would like to collapse these into one shorthand line, a **troff** 'command' like

```
.PP
```

that would be treated by **troff** exactly as

```
.sp
.ti +2m
```

.PP is called a *macro*. The way we tell **troff** what .PP means is to *define* it with the .de command:

```
.de PP
.sp
.ti +2m
..
```

The first line names the macro (we used '.PP' for 'paragraph', and upper case so it wouldn't conflict with any name that **troff** might already know about). The last line .. marks the end of the definition. In between is the text, which is simply inserted whenever **troff** sees the 'command' or macro call

```
.PP
```

A macro can contain any mixture of text and formatting commands.

The definition of .PP has to precede its first use; undefined macros are simply ignored. Names are restricted to one or two characters.

Using macros for commonly occurring sequences of commands is critically important. Not only does it save typing, but it makes later changes much easier. Suppose we decide that the paragraph indent is too small, the vertical space is much too big, and roman font should be forced. Instead of changing the whole document, we need only change the definition of .PP to something like

```
.de PP          \" paragraph macro
.sp 2p
.ti +3m
.ft R
..
```

and the change takes effect everywhere we used .PP.

\" is a **troff** command that causes the rest of the line to be ignored. We use it here to add comments to the macro definition (a wise idea once definitions get complicated).

As another example of macros, consider these two which start and end a block of offset, unfilled text, like most of the examples in this paper:

```
.de BS          \" start indented block
.sp
.nf
.in +0.3i
..
.de BE          \" end indented block
.sp
.fi
.in -0.3i
..
```

Now we can surround text like

```
Copy to
John Doe
Richard Roberts
Stanley Smith
```

by the commands .BS and .BE, and it will come out as it did above. Notice that we indented by .in +0.3i instead of .in 0.3i. This way we can nest our uses of .BS and BE to get blocks within blocks.

If later on we decide that the indent should be 0.5i, then it is only necessary to change the definitions of .BS and .BE, not the whole paper.

9. Titles, Pages and Numbering

This is an area where things get tougher, because nothing is done for you automatically. Of necessity, some of this section is a cookbook, to be copied literally until you get some experience.

Suppose you want a title at the top of each page, saying just

left top center top right top

In **roff**, one can say

```
.he 'left top'center top'right top'
.fo 'left bottom'center bottom'right bottom'
```

to get headers and footers automatically on every page. Alas, this doesn't work so easily in **troff**, a serious hardship for the novice. Instead you have to do a lot of specification (or use a macro package, which makes it effortless).

You have to say what the actual title is (easy); when to print it (easy enough); and what to do at and around the title line (harder). Taking these in reverse order, first we define a macro .NP (for 'new page') to process titles and the like at the end of one page and the beginning of the next:

```
.de NP
'bp
'sp 0.5i
.tl 'left top'center top'right top'
'sp 0.3i
..
```

To make sure we're at the top of a page, we issue a 'begin page' command 'bp, which causes a skip to top-of-page (we'll explain the ' shortly). Then we space down half an inch, print the title (the use of .tl should be self explanatory; later we will discuss parameterizing the titles), space another 0.3 inches, and we're done.

To ask for .NP at the bottom of each page, we have to say something like 'when the text is within an inch of the bottom of the page, start the processing for a new page.' This is done with a 'when' command .wh:

```
.wh -1i NP
```

(No '.' is used before NP; this is simply the name of a macro, not a macro call.) The minus sign means 'measure up from the bottom of the page', so '-1i' means 'one inch from the bottom'.

The .wh command appears in the input outside the definition of .NP; typically the input would be

```
.de NP
...
..
.wh -1i NP
```

Now what happens? As text is actually being output, **troff** keeps track of its vertical position on the page, and after a line is printed within one inch from the bottom, the .NP macro is activated. (In the jargon, the .wh command sets a *trap* at the specified place, which is 'sprung' when that point is passed.) .NP causes a skip to the top of the next page (that's what the 'bp was for), then prints the title with the appropriate margins.

Why 'bp and 'sp instead of .bp and .sp? The answer is that .sp and .bp, like several other commands, cause a *break* to take place. That is, all the input text collected but not yet printed is flushed out as soon as possible, and the next input line is guaranteed to start a new line of output. If we had used .sp or .bp in the .NP macro, this would cause a break in the middle of the current output line when a new page is started. The effect would be to print the left-over part of that line at the top of the page, followed by the next input line on a new output line. This is *not* what we want. Using ' instead of . for a command tells **troff** that no break is to take place — the output line currently being filled should *not* be forced out before the space or new page.

The list of commands that cause a break is short and natural:

```
.bp  .br  .ce  .fi  .nf  .sp  .in  .ti
```

All others cause *no* break, regardless of whether you use a . or a '. If you really need a break, add a .br command at the appropriate place.

One other thing to beware of — if you're changing fonts or point sizes a lot, you may find that if you cross a page boundary in an unexpected font or size, your titles come out in that size and font instead of what you intended. Furthermore, the length of a title is independent of the current line length, so titles will come out at the default length of 6.5 inches unless you change it, which is done with the .lt command.

There are several ways to fix the problems of point sizes and fonts in titles. For the simplest applications, we can change .NP to set the proper size and font for the title, then restore the previous values, like this:

```
.de NP
'bp
'sp 0.5i
.ft R          \" set title font to roman
.ps 10         \" and size to 10 point
.lt 6i         \" and length to 6 inches
.tl 'left'center'right'
.ps            \" revert to previous size
.ft P          \" and to previous font
'sp 0.3i
..
```

This version of .NP does *not* work if the fields in the .tl command contain size or font changes. To cope with that requires **troff**'s 'environment' mechanism, which we will discuss in Section 13.

To get a footer at the bottom of a page, you can modify .NP so it does some processing before the 'bp command, or split the job into a footer macro invoked at the bottom margin and a header macro invoked at the top of the page. These variations are left as exercises.

Output page numbers are computed automatically as each page is produced (starting at 1), but no numbers are printed unless you ask for them explicitly. To get page numbers printed, include the character % in the .tl line at the position where you want the number to appear. For example

```
.tl "- % -"
```

centers the page number inside hyphens, as on this page. You can set the page number at any time with either .bp n, which immediately starts a new page numbered n, or with .pn n, which sets the page number for the next page but doesn't cause a skip to the new page. Again, .bp +n sets the page number to n more than its current value; .bp means .bp +1.

10. Number Registers and Arithmetic

troff has a facility for doing arithmetic, and for defining and using variables with numeric values, called *number registers*. Number registers, like strings and macros, can be useful in setting up a document so it is easy to change later. And of course they serve for any sort of arithmetic computation.

Like strings, number registers have one or two character names. They are set by the .nr command, and are referenced anywhere by \nx (one character name) or \n(xy (two character name).

There are quite a few pre-defined number registers maintained by **troff**, among them % for the current page number; nl for the current vertical position on the page; dy, mo and yr for the current day,

month and year; and .s and .f for the current size and font. (The font is a number from 1 to 4.) Any of these can be used in computations like any other register, but some, like .s and .f, cannot be changed with .nr.

As an example of the use of number registers, in the -ms macro package [4], most significant parameters are defined in terms of the values of a handful of number registers. These include the point size for text, the vertical spacing, and the line and title lengths. To set the point size and vertical spacing for the following paragraphs, for example, a user may say

```
.nr PS 9
.nr VS 11
```

The paragraph macro .PP is defined (roughly) as follows:

```
.de PP
.ps \\n(PS      \" reset size
.vs \\n(VSp     \" spacing
.ft R           \" font
.sp 0.5v        \" half a line
.ti +3m
..
```

This sets the font to Roman and the point size and line spacing to whatever values are stored in the number registers PS and VS.

Why are there two backslashes? This is the eternal problem of how to quote a quote. When **troff** originally reads the macro definition, it peels off one backslash to see what's coming next. To ensure that another is left in the definition when the macro is *used,* we have to put in two backslashes in the definition. If only one backslash is used, point size and vertical spacing will be frozen at the time the macro is defined, not when it is used.

Protecting by an extra layer of backslashes is only needed for \n, *, \$ (which we haven't come to yet), and \ itself. Things like \s, \f, \h, \v, and so on do not need an extra backslash, since they are converted by **troff** to an internal code immediately upon being seen.

Arithmetic expressions can appear anywhere that a number is expected. As a trivial example,

```
.nr PS \\n(PS-2
```

decrements PS by 2. Expressions can use the arithmetic operators +, -, *, /, % (mod), the relational operators >, >=, <, <=, =, and != (not equal), and parentheses.

Although the arithmetic we have done so far has been straightforward, more complicated things are somewhat tricky. First, number registers hold only integers. **troff** arithmetic uses truncating integer division, just like Fortran. Second, in the absence of parentheses, evaluation is done left-to-right without any operator precedence (including relational operators). Thus

```
7*-4+3/13
```

becomes '-1'. Number registers can occur anywhere in an expression, and so can scale indicators like p, i, m, and so on (but no spaces). Although integer division causes truncation, each number and its scale indicator is converted to machine units (1/432 inch) before any arithmetic is done, so 1i/2u evaluates to 0.5i correctly.

The scale indicator u often has to appear when you wouldn't expect it — in particular, when arithmetic is being done in a context that implies horizontal or vertical dimensions. For example,

```
.ll 7/2i
```

would seem obvious enough — 3½ inches. Sorry. Remember that the default units for horizontal parameters like .ll are ems. That's really '7 ems / 2 inches', and when translated into machine units, it becomes zero. How about

```
.ll 7i/2
```

Sorry, still no good — the '2' is '2 ems', so '7i/2' is small, although not zero. You *must* use

```
.ll 7i/2u
```

So again, a safe rule is to attach a scale indicator to every number, even constants.

For arithmetic done within a .nr command, there is no implication of horizontal or vertical dimension, so the default units are 'units', and 7i/2 and 7i/2u mean the same thing. Thus

```
.nr ll 7i/2
.ll \\n(llu
```

does just what you want, so long as you don't forget the u on the .ll command.

11. Macros with arguments

The next step is to define macros that can change from one use to the next according to parameters supplied as arguments. To make this work, we need two things: first, when we define the macro, we have to indicate that some parts of it will be pro vided as arguments when the macro is called. Then when the macro is called we have to provide actual arguments to be plugged into the definition.

Let us illustrate by defining a macro .SM that will print its argument two points smaller than the surrounding text. That is, the macro call

```
.SM TROFF
```

will produce TROFF.

The definition of .SM is

```
.de SM
\s-2\\$1\s+2
..
```

Within a macro definition, the symbol \\$n refers to the nth argument that the macro was called with. Thus \\$1 is the string to be placed in a smaller point size when .SM is called.

As a slightly more complicated version, the following definition of .SM permits optional second and third arguments that will be printed in the normal size:

```
.de SM
\\$3\s-2\\$1\s+2\\$2
..
```

Arguments not provided when the macro is called are treated as empty, so

```
.SM TROFF ),
```

produces TROFF), while

```
.SM TROFF ). (
```

produces (TROFF). It is convenient to reverse the order of arguments because trailing punctuation is much more common than leading.

By the way, the number of arguments that a macro was called with is available in number register .$.

The following macro .BD is the one used to make the 'bold roman' we have been using for troff command names in text. It combines horizontal motions, width computations, and argument rearrangement.

```
.de BD
\&\\$3\f1\\$1\h'-\w'\\$1'u+1u'\\$1\fP\\$2
..
```

The \h and \w commands need no extra backslash, as we discussed above. The \& is there in case the argument begins with a period.

Two backslashes are needed with the \\$n commands, though, to protect one of them when the macro is being defined. Perhaps a second example will make this clearer. Consider a macro called .SH which produces section headings rather like those in this paper, with the sections numbered automatically, and the title in bold in a smaller size. The use is

```
.SH "Section title ..."
```

(If the argument to a macro is to contain blanks, then it must be *surrounded* by double quotes, unlike a string, where only one leading quote is permitted.)

Here is the definition of the .SH macro:

```
.nr SH 0        \" initialize section number
.de SH
.sp 0.3i
.ft B
.nr SH \\n(SH+1    \" increment number
.ps \\n(PS-1\" decrease PS
\\n(SH. \\$1        \" number. title
.ps \\n(PS          \" restore PS
.sp 0.3i
.ft R
..
```

The section number is kept in number register SH, which is incremented each time just before it is used. (A number register may have the same name as a macro without conflict but a string may not.)

We used \\n(SH instead of \n(SH and \\n(PS instead of \n(PS. If we had used \n(SH, we would get the value of the register at the time the macro was *defined,* not at the time it was *used.* If that's what you want, fine, but not here. Similarly, by using \\n(PS, we get the point size at the time the macro is called.

As an example that does not involve numbers, recall our .NP macro which had a

```
.tl 'left'center'right'
```

We could make these into parameters by using instead

```
.tl '\\*(LT'\\*(CT'\\*(RT'
```

so the title comes from three strings called LT, CT and RT. If these are empty, then the title will be a blank line. Normally CT would be set with something like

```
.ds CT - % -
```

to give just the page number between hyphens (as on the top of this page), but a user could supply private definitions for any of the strings.

12. Conditionals

Suppose we want the .SH macro to leave two extra inches of space just before section 1, but nowhere else. The cleanest way to do that is to test inside the .SH macro whether the section number is 1, and add some space if it is. The .if command provides the conditional test that we can add just before the heading line is output:

```
.if \\n(SH=1 .sp 2i        \" first section only
```

The condition after the .if can be any arithmetic or logical expression. If the condition is logically true, or arithmetically greater than zero, the rest of the line is treated as if it were text — here a command. If the condition is false, or zero or nega-

tive, the rest of the line is skipped.

It is possible to do more than one command if a condition is true. Suppose several operations are to be done before section 1. One possibility is to define a macro .S1 and invoke it if we are about to do section 1 (as determined by an .if).

```
.de S1
--- processing for section 1 ---
..
.de SH
...
.if \\n(SH=1 .S1
...
..
```

An alternate way is to use the extended form of the **.if**, like this:

```
.if \\n(SH=1 \{--- processing
for section 1 ----\}
```

The braces \{ and \} must occur in the positions shown or you will get unexpected extra lines in your output. **troff** also provides an 'if-else' construction, which we will not go into here.

A condition can be negated by preceding it with !; we get the same effect as above (but less clearly) by using

```
.if !\\n(SH>1 .S1
```

There are a handful of other conditions that can be tested with **.if**. For example, is the current page even or odd?

```
.if o .tl 'odd page title'- % -'
.if e .tl '- % -'even page title'
```

gives facing pages different titles and page numbers on the outside edge when used inside an appropriate new page macro.

Two other conditions are **t** and **n**, which tell you whether the formatter is **troff** or **nroff**.

```
.if t troff stuff ...
.if n nroff stuff ...
```

Finally, string comparisons may be made in an **.if**:

```
.if 'string1'string2' stuff
```

does 'stuff' if *string1* is the same as *string2*. The character separating the strings can be anything reasonable that is not contained in either string. The strings themselves can reference strings with *, arguments with \$, and so on.

13. Environments

As we mentioned, there is a potential problem when going across a page boundary: parameters like size and font for a page title may well be different from those in effect in the text when the page boundary occurs. **troff** provides a very general way to deal with this and similar situations. There are three 'environments', each of which has independently settable versions of many of the parameters associated with processing, including size, font, line and title lengths, fill/nofill mode, tab stops, and even partially collected lines. Thus the titling problem may be readily solved by processing the main text in one environment and titles in a separate one with its own suitable parameters.

The command .ev n shifts to environment n; n must be 0, 1 or 2. The command .ev with no argument returns to the previous environment. Environment names are maintained in a stack, so calls for different environments may be nested and unwound consistently.

Suppose we say that the main text is processed in environment 0, which is where **troff** begins by default. Then we can modify the new page macro .NP to process titles in environment 1 like this:

```
.de NP
.ev 1          \" shift to new environment
.lt 6i         \" set parameters here
.ft R
.ps 10
... any other processing ...
.ev            \" return to previous environment
..
```

It is also possible to initialize the parameters for an environment outside the .NP macro, but the version shown keeps all the processing in one place and is thus easier to understand and change.

14. Diversions

There are numerous occasions in page layout when it is necessary to store some text for a period of time without actually printing it. Footnotes are the most obvious example: the text of the footnote usually appears in the input well before the place on the page where it is to be printed is reached. In fact, the place where it is output normally depends on how big it is, which implies that there must be a way to process the footnote at least enough to decide its size without printing it.

troff provides a mechanism called a diversion for doing this processing. Any part of the output may be diverted into a macro instead of being printed, and then at some convenient time the macro may be put back into the input.

The command .di xy begins a diversion — all subsequent output is collected into the macro xy until the command .di with no arguments is encountered. This terminates the diversion. The processed text is available at any time thereafter, simply by giving the command

```
.xy
```

The vertical size of the last finished diversion is contained in the built-in number register dn.

As a simple example, suppose we want to implement a 'keep-release' operation, so that text between the commands .KS and .KE will not be split across a page boundary (as for a figure or table). Clearly, when a .KS is encountered, we have to begin diverting the output so we can find out how big it is. Then when a .KE is seen, we decide whether the diverted text will fit on the current page, and print it either there if it fits, or at the top of the next page if it doesn't. So:

```
.de KS      \" start keep
.br         \" start fresh line
.ev 1       \" collect in new environment
.fi         \" make it filled text
.di XX      \" collect in XX
..

.de KE      \" end keep
.br         \" get last partial line
.di         \" end diversion
.if \\n(dn>=\\n(.t .bp   \" bp if doesn't fit
.nf         \" bring it back in no-fill
.XX         \" text
.ev         \" return to normal environment
..
```

Recall that number register nl is the current position on the output page. Since output was being diverted, this remains at its value when the diversion started. dn is the amount of text in the diversion; .t (another built-in register) is the distance to the next trap, which we assume is at the bottom margin of the page. If the diversion is large enough to go past the trap, the .if is satisfied, and a .bp is issued. In either case, the diverted output is then brought back with .XX. It is essential to bring it back in no-fill mode so **troff** will do no further processing on it.

This is not the most general keep-release, nor is it robust in the face of all conceivable inputs, but it would require more space than we have here to write it in full generality. This section is not intended to teach everything about diversions, but to sketch out enough that you can read existing macro packages with some comprehension.

Acknowledgements

I am deeply indebted to J. F. Ossanna, the author of **troff**, for his repeated patient explanations of fine points, and for his continuing willingness to adapt **troff** to make other uses easier. I am also grateful to Jim Blinn, Ted Dolotta, Doug McIlroy, Mike Lesk and Joel Sturman for helpful comments on this paper.

References

[1] J. F. Ossanna, *NROFF/TROFF* User's Manual, Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report 54, 1976.

[2] B. W. Kernighan, *A System for Typesetting Mathematics — User's Guide (Second Edition),* Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report 17, 1977.

[3] M. E. Lesk, *TBL — A Program to Format Tables,* Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report 49, 1976.

[4] M. E. Lesk, *Typing Documents on UNIX,* Bell Laboratories, 1978.

[5] J. R. Mashey and D. W. Smith, *PWB/MM — Programmer's Workbench Memorandum Macros,* Bell Laboratories internal memorandum.

[6] Eric P. Allman, *Writing Papers with NROFF using -me,* University of California, Berkeley.

A System for Typesetting Mathematics

Brian W. Kernighan and Lorinda L. Cherry

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

This paper describes the design and implementation of a system for typesetting mathematics. The language has been designed to be easy to learn and to use by people (for example, secretaries and mathematical typists) who know neither mathematics nor typesetting. Experience indicates that the language can be learned in an hour or so, for it has few rules and fewer exceptions. For typical expressions, the size and font changes, positioning, line drawing, and the like necessary to print according to mathematical conventions are all done automatically. For example, the input

sum from i=0 to infinity x sub i = pi over 2

produces

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} x_i = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

The syntax of the language is specified by a small context-free grammar; a compiler-compiler is used to make a compiler that translates this language into typesetting commands. Output may be produced on either a phototypesetter or on a terminal with forward and reverse half-line motions. The system interfaces directly with text formatting programs, so mixtures of text and mathematics may be handled simply.

This paper is a revision of a paper originally published in CACM, March, 1975.

1. Introduction

"Mathematics is known in the trade as *difficult,* or *penalty, copy* because it is slower, more difficult, and more expensive to set in type than any other kind of copy normally occurring in books and journals." [1]

One difficulty with mathematical text is the multiplicity of characters, sizes, and fonts. An expression such as

$$\lim_{x \to \pi/2} (\tan x)^{\sin 2x} = 1$$

requires an intimate mixture of roman, italic and greek letters, in three sizes, and a special character or two. ("Requires" is perhaps the wrong word, but mathematics has its own typographical conventions which are quite different from those of ordinary text.) Typesetting such an expression by traditional methods is still an essentially manual operation.

A second difficulty is the two dimensional character of mathematics, which the superscript and limits in the preceding example showed in its simplest form. This is carried further by

$$a_0 + \cfrac{b_1}{a_1 + \cfrac{b_2}{a_2 + \cfrac{b_3}{a_3 + \cdots}}}$$

and still further by

$$\int \frac{dx}{ae^{mx} - be^{-mx}} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{2m\sqrt{ab}} \log \dfrac{\sqrt{a}e^{mx} - \sqrt{b}}{\sqrt{a}e^{mx} + \sqrt{b}} \\ \dfrac{1}{m\sqrt{ab}} \tanh^{-1}\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{b}} e^{mx}\right) \\ \dfrac{-1}{m\sqrt{ab}} \coth^{-1}\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{b}} e^{mx}\right) \end{cases}$$

These examples also show line-drawing, built-up characters like braces and radicals, and a spectrum of positioning problems. (Section 6 shows what a user has to type to produce these on our system.)

2. Photocomposition

Photocomposition techniques can be used to solve some of the problems of typesetting mathematics. A phototypesetter is a device which exposes a piece of photographic paper or film, placing characters wherever they are wanted. The Graphic Systems phototypesetter[2] on the UNIX operating system[3] works by shining light through a character stencil. The character is made the right size by lenses, and the light beam directed by fiber optics to the desired place on a piece of photographic paper. The exposed paper is developed and typically used in some form of photo-offset reproduction.

On UNIX, the phototypesetter is driven by a formatting program called TROFF [4]. TROFF was designed for setting running text. It also provides all of the facilities that one needs for doing mathematics, such as arbitrary horizontal and vertical motions, line-drawing, size changing, but the syntax for describing these special operations is difficult to learn, and difficult even for experienced users to type correctly.

For this reason we decided to use TROFF as an "assembly language," by designing a language for describing mathematical expressions, and compiling it into TROFF.

3. Language Design

The fundamental principle upon which we based our language design is that the language should be easy to use by people (for example, secretaries) who know neither mathematics nor typesetting.

This principle implies several things. First, "normal" mathematical conventions about operator precedence, parentheses, and the like cannot be used, for to give special meaning to such characters means that the user has to understand what he or she is typing. Thus the language should not assume, for instance, that parentheses are always balanced, for they are not in the half-open interval $(a,b]$. Nor should it assume that that $\sqrt{a+b}$ can be replaced by $(a+b)^{1/2}$, or that $1/(1-x)$ is better written as $\frac{1}{1-x}$ (or vice versa).

Second, there should be relatively few rules, keywords, special symbols and operators, and the like. This keeps the language easy to learn and remember. Furthermore, there should be few exceptions to the rules that do exist: if something works in one situation, it should work everywhere. If a variable can have a subscript, then a subscript can have a subscript, and so on without limit.

Third, "standard" things should happen automatically. Someone who types "x=y+z+1" should get "$x=y+z+1$". Subscripts and superscripts should automatically be printed in an appropriately smaller size, with no special intervention. Fraction bars have to be made the right length and positioned at the right height. And so on. Indeed a mechanism for overriding default actions has to exist, but its application is the exception, not the rule.

We assume that the typist has a reasonable picture (a two-dimensional representation) of the desired final form, as might be handwritten by the author of a paper. We also assume that the input is typed on a computer terminal much like an ordinary typewriter. This implies an input alphabet of perhaps 100 characters, none of them special.

A secondary, but still important, goal in our design was that the system should be easy to implement, since neither of the authors had any desire to make a long-term project of it. Since our design was not firm, it was also necessary that the program be easy to change at any time.

To make the program easy to build and to change, and to guarantee regularity ("it should work everywhere"), the language is defined by a context-free grammar, described in Section 5. The compiler for the language was built using a compiler-compiler.

A priori, the grammar/compiler-compiler approach seemed the right thing to do. Our subsequent experience leads us to believe that any other course would have been folly. The original language was designed in a few days. Construction of a working system sufficient to try significant examples required perhaps a person-month. Since then, we have spent a modest amount of additional time over several years tuning, adding facilities, and occasionally changing the language as users make criticisms and suggestions.

We also decided quite early that we would let TROFF do our work for us whenever possible. TROFF is quite a powerful program, with a macro facility, text and arithmetic variables, numerical computation and testing, and conditional branching. Thus we have been able to avoid writing a lot of mundane but tricky software. For example, we store no text strings, but simply pass them on to TROFF. Thus we avoid having to write a storage management package. Furthermore, we have been able to isolate ourselves from most details of the particular device and character set currently in use. For example, we let TROFF compute the widths of all strings of characters; we need know nothing about them.

A third design goal is special to our environment. Since our program is only useful for typesetting mathematics, it is necessary that it interface cleanly with the underlying typesetting language for the benefit of users who want to set intermingled mathematics and text (the usual case). The standard mode of operation is that when a document is typed, mathematical expressions are input as part of the

text, but marked by user settable delimiters. The program reads this input and treats as comments those things which are not mathematics, simply passing them through untouched. At the same time it converts the mathematical input into the necessary TROFF commands. The resulting ioutput is passed directly to TROFF where the comments and the mathematical parts both become text and/or TROFF commands.

4. The Language

We will not try to describe the language precisely here; interested readers may refer to the appendix for more details. Throughout this section, we will write expressions exactly as they are handed to the typesetting program (hereinafter called "EQN"), except that we won't show the delimiters that the user types to mark the beginning and end of the expression. The interface between EQN and TROFF is described at the end of this section.

As we said, typing x=y+z+1 should produce $x=y+z+1$, and indeed it does. Variables are made italic, operators and digits become roman, and normal spacings between letters and operators are altered slightly to give a more pleasing appearance.

Input is free-form. Spaces and new lines in the input are used by EQN to separate pieces of the input; they are not used to create space in the output. Thus

```
x   =   y
  + z + 1
```

also gives $x=y+z+1$. Free-form input is easier to type initially; subsequent editing is also easier, for an expression may be typed as many short lines.

Extra white space can be forced into the output by several characters of various sizes. A tilde "~" gives a space equal to the normal word spacing in text; a circumflex gives half this much, and a tab charcter spaces to the next tab stop.

Spaces (or tildes, etc.) also serve to delimit pieces of the input. For example, to get

$$f(t)=2\pi\int\sin(\omega t)dt$$

we write

```
f(t) = 2 pi int sin ( omega t )dt
```

Here spaces are *necessary* in the input to indicate that *sin, pi, int,* and *omega* are special, and potentially worth special treatment. EQN looks up each such string of characters in a table, and if appropriate gives it a translation. In this case, *pi* and *omega* become their greek equivalents, *int* becomes the integral sign (which must be moved down and enlarged so it looks "right"), and *sin* is made roman, following conventional mathematical practice. Parentheses, digits and operators are automatically made roman wherever found.

Fractions are specified with the keyword *over:*

```
a+b over c+d+e = 1
```

produces

$$\frac{a+b}{c+d+e}=1$$

Similarly, subscripts and superscripts are introduced by the keywords *sub* and *sup:*

$$x^2+y^2=z^2$$

is produced by

```
x sup 2 + y sup 2 = z sup 2
```

The spaces after the 2's are necessary to mark the end of the superscripts; similarly the keyword *sup* has to be marked off by spaces or some equivalent delimiter. The return to the proper baseline is automatic. Multiple levels of subscripts or superscripts are of course allowed: "x sup y sup z" is x^{y^z}. The construct "something *sub* something *sup* something" is recognized as a special case, so "x sub i sup 2" is x_i^2 instead of $x_i{}^2$.

More complicated expressions can now be formed with these primitives:

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}=\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}$$

is produced by

```
{partial sup 2 f} over {partial x sup 2} =
x sup 2 over a sup 2 + y sup 2 over b sup 2
```

Braces {} are used to group objects together; in this case they indicate unambiguously what goes over what on the left-hand side of the expression. The language defines the precedence of *sup* to be higher than that of *over,* so no braces are needed to get the correct association on the right side. Braces can always be used when in doubt about precedence.

The braces convention is an example of the power of using a recursive grammar to define the language. It is part of the language that if a construct can appear in some context, then *any expression* in braces can also occur in that context.

There is a *sqrt* operator for making square roots of the appropriate size: "sqrt a+b" produces $\sqrt{a+b}$, and

```
x = {-b +- sqrt{b sup 2 -4ac}} over 2a
```

is

$$x=\frac{-b\pm\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a}$$

Since large radicals look poor on our typesetter, *sqrt* is not useful for tall expressions.

Limits on summations, integrals and similar constructions are specified with the keywords *from* and *to*. To get

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} x_i \rightarrow 0$$

we need only type

```
sum from i=0 to inf x sub i -> 0
```

Centering and making the Σ big enough and the limits smaller are all automatic. The *from* and *to* parts are both optional, and the central part (e.g., the Σ) can in fact be anything:

```
lim from {x -> pi /2} ( tan~x) = inf
```

is

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \pi/2} (\tan x) = \infty$$

Again, the braces indicate just what goes into the *from* part.

There is a facility for making braces, brackets, parentheses, and vertical bars of the right height, using the keywords *left* and *right:*

```
left [ x+y over 2a right ]~=~1
```

makes

$$\left[\frac{x+y}{2a} \right] = 1$$

A *left* need not have a corresponding *right*, as we shall see in the next example. Any characters may follow *left* and *right*, but generally only various parentheses and bars are meaningful.

Big brackets, etc., are often used with another facility, called *piles*, which make vertical piles of objects. For example, to get

$$sign(x) \equiv \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x>0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x=0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x<0 \end{cases}$$

we can type

```
sign (x) ~=~ left {
  rpile {1 above 0 above -1}
  ~lpile {if above if above if}
  ~lpile {x>0 above x=0 above x<0}
```

The construction "left {" makes a left brace big enough to enclose the "rpile {...}", which is a right-justified pile of "above ... above ...". "lpile" makes a left-justified pile. There are also centered piles. Because of the recursive language definition, a pile can contain any number of elements; any element of a pile can of course contain piles.

Although EQN makes a valiant attempt to use the right sizes and fonts, there are times when the default assumptions are simply not what is wanted. For instance the italic *sign* in the previous example would conventionally be in roman. Slides and transparencies often require larger characters than normal text. Thus we also provide size and font changing commands: "size 12 bold {A~x~=~y}" will produce **A x = y**. *Size* is followed by a number representing a character size in points. (One point is 1/72 inch; this paper is set in 9 point type.)

If necessary, an input string can be quoted in "...", which turns off grammatical significance, and any font or spacing changes that might otherwise be done on it. Thus we can say

```
lim~ roman "sup" ~x sub n = 0
```

to ensure that the supremum doesn't become a superscript:

$$\lim \sup x_n = 0$$

Diacritical marks, long a problem in traditional typesetting, are straightforward:

$$\underline{\dot{x}} + \hat{x} + \tilde{y} + \hat{X} + \ddot{Y} = \overline{z+Z}$$

is made by typing

```
x dot under + x hat + y tilde
+ X hat + Y dotdot = z+Z bar
```

There are also facilities for globally changing default sizes and fonts, for example for making viewgraphs or for setting chemical equations. The language allows for matrices, and for lining up equations at the same horizontal position.

Finally, there is a definition facility, so a user can say

```
define name "..."
```

at any time in the document; henceforth, any occurrence of the token "name" in an expression will be expanded into whatever was inside the double quotes in its definition. This lets users tailor the language to their own specifications, for it is quite possible to redefine keywords like *sup* or *over*. Section 6 shows an example of definitions.

The EQN preprocessor reads intermixed text and equations, and passes its output to TROFF. Since TROFF uses lines beginning with a period as control words (e.g., ".ce" means "center the next output line"), EQN uses the sequence ".EQ" to mark the beginning of an equation and ".EN" to mark the end. The ".EQ" and ".EN" are passed through to TROFF untouched, so they can also be used by a knowledgeable user to center equations, number them automatically, etc. By default, however, ".EQ" and ".EN" are simply ignored by TROFF, so by default equations are printed in-line.

".EQ" and ".EN" can be supplemented by TROFF commands as desired; for example, a centered display equation can be produced with the

input:

```
.ce
.EQ
x sub i = y sub i ...
.EN
```

Since it is tedious to type ".EQ" and ".EN" around very short expressions (single letters, for instance), the user can also define two characters to serve as the left and right delimiters of expressions. These characters are recognized anywhere in subsequent text. For example if the left and right delimiters have both been set to "#", the input:

```
Let #x sub i#, #y# and #alpha# be positive
```

produces:

Let x_i, y and α be positive

Running a preprocessor is strikingly easy on UNIX. To typeset text stored in file "f", one issues the command:

```
eqn f | troff
```

The vertical bar connects the output of one process (EQN) to the input of another (TROFF).

5. Language Theory

The basic structure of the language is not a particularly original one. Equations are pictured as a set of "boxes," pieced together in various ways. For example, something with a subscript is just a box followed by another box moved downward and shrunk by an appropriate amount. A fraction is just a box centered above another box, at the right altitude, with a line of correct length drawn between them.

The grammar for the language is shown below. For purposes of exposition, we have collapsed some productions. In the original grammar, there are about 70 productions, but many of these are simple ones used only to guarantee that some keyword is recognized early enough in the parsing process. Symbols in capital letters are terminal symbols; lower case symbols are non-terminals, i.e., syntactic categories. The vertical bar | indicates an alternative; the brackets [ ] indicate optional material. A TEXT is a string of non-blank characters or any string inside double quotes; the other terminal symbols represent literal occurrences of the corresponding keyword.

```
eqn  : box | eqn box
box  : text
     | { eqn }
     | box OVER box
     | SQRT box
     | box SUB box | box SUP box
     | [ L | C | R ]PILE { list }
     | LEFT text eqn [ RIGHT text ]
     | box [ FROM box ] [ TO box ]
     | SIZE text box
     | [ROMAN | BOLD | ITALIC] box
     | box [HAT | BAR | DOT | DOTDOT | TILDE]
     | DEFINE text text
list : eqn | list ABOVE eqn
text : TEXT
```

The grammar makes it obvious why there are few exceptions. For example, the observation that something can be replaced by a more complicated something in braces is implicit in the productions:

```
eqn : box | eqn box
box : text | { eqn }
```

Anywhere a single character could be used, *any* legal construction can be used.

Clearly, our grammar is highly ambiguous. What, for instance, do we do with the input

```
a over b over c ?
```

Is it

```
{a over b} over c
```

or is it

```
a over {b over c} ?
```

To answer questions like this, the grammar is supplemented with a small set of rules that describe the precedence and associativity of operators. In particular, we specify (more or less arbitrarily) that *over* associates to the left, so the first alternative above is the one chosen. On the other hand, *sub* and *sup* bind to the right, because this is closer to standard mathematical practice. That is, we assume x^{a^b} is $x^{(a^b)}$, not $(x^a)^b$.

The precedence rules resolve the ambiguity in a construction like

```
a sup 2 over b
```

We define *sup* to have a higher precedence than *over*, so this construction is parsed as $\frac{a^2}{b}$ instead of $a^{\frac{2}{b}}$.

Naturally, a user can always force a particular parsing by placing braces around expressions.

The ambiguous grammar approach seems to be quite useful. The grammar we use is small enough to be easily understood, for it contains none

of the productions that would be normally used for resolving ambiguity. Instead the supplemental information about precedence and associativity (also small enough to be understood) provides the compiler-compiler with the information it needs to make a fast, deterministic parser for the specific language we want. When the language is supplemented by the disambiguating rules, it is in fact LR(1) and thus easy to parse[5].

The output code is generated as the input is scanned. Any time a production of the grammar is recognized, (potentially) some TROFF commands are output. For example, when the lexical analyzer reports that it has found a TEXT (i.e., a string of contiguous characters), we have recognized the production:

```
text    : TEXT
```

The translation of this is simple. We generate a local name for the string, then hand the name and the string to TROFF, and let TROFF perform the storage management. All we save is the name of the string, its height, and its baseline.

As another example, the translation associated with the production

```
box    : box OVER box
```

is:

```
Width of output box =
  slightly more than largest input width
Height of output box =
  slightly more than sum of input heights
Base of output box =
  slightly more than height of bottom input box
String describing output box =
  move down;
  move right enough to center bottom box;
  draw bottom box (i.e., copy string for bottom box);
  move up; move left enough to center top box;
  draw top box (i.e., copy string for top box);
  move down and left; draw line full width;
  return to proper base line.
```

Most of the other productions have equally simple semantic actions. Picturing the output as a set of properly placed boxes makes the right sequence of positioning commands quite obvious. The main difficulty is in finding the right numbers to use for esthetically pleasing positioning.

With a grammar, it is usually clear how to extend the language. For instance, one of our users suggested a TENSOR operator, to make constructions like

$$\begin{matrix} l & \\ m & \mathbf{T}_{ni}^{kj} \end{matrix}$$

Grammatically, this is easy: it is sufficient to add a production like

```
box    : TENSOR { list }
```

Semantically, we need only juggle the boxes to the right places.

6. Experience

There are really three aspects of interest—how well EQN sets mathematics, how well it satisfies its goal of being "easy to use," and how easy it was to build.

The first question is easily addressed. This entire paper has been set by the program. Readers can judge for themselves whether it is good enough for their purposes. One of our users commented that although the output is not as good as the best hand-set material, it is still better than average, and much better than the worst. In any case, who cares? Printed books cannot compete with the birds and flowers of illuminated manuscripts on esthetic grounds, either, but they have some clear economic advantages.

Some of the deficiencies in the output could be cleaned up with more work on our part. For example, we sometimes leave too much space between a roman letter and an italic one. If we were willing to keep track of the fonts involved, we could do this better more of the time.

Some other weaknesses are inherent in our output device. It is hard, for instance, to draw a line of an arbitrary length without getting a perceptible overstrike at one end.

As to ease of use, at the time of writing, the system has been used by two distinct groups. One user population consists of mathematicians, chemists, physicists, and computer scientists. Their typical reaction has been something like:

(1) It's easy to write, although I make the following mistakes...

(2) How do I do...?

(3) It botches the following things.... Why don't you fix them?

(4) You really need the following features...

The learning time is short. A few minutes gives the general flavor, and typing a page or two of a paper generally uncovers most of the misconceptions about how it works.

The second user group is much larger, the secretaries and mathematical typists who were the original target of the system. They tend to be enthusiastic converts. They find the language easy to learn (most are largely self-taught), and have little trouble producing the output they want. They are of course less critical of the esthetics of their output than users trained in mathematics. After a transition period, most find using a computer more

interesting than a regular typewriter.

The main difficulty that users have seems to be remembering that a blank is a delimiter; even experienced users use blanks where they shouldn't and omit them when they are needed. A common instance is typing

```
f(x sub i)
```

which produces

$$f(x_{i)}$$

instead of

$$f(x_i)$$

Since the EQN language knows no mathematics, it cannot deduce that the right parenthesis is not part of the subscript.

The language is somewhat prolix, but this doesn't seem excessive considering how much is being done, and it is certainly more compact than the corresponding TROFF commands. For example, here is the source for the continued fraction expression in Section 1 of this paper:

```
a sub 0 + b sub 1 over
  {a sub 1 + b sub 2 over
    {a sub 2 + b sub 3 over
      {a sub 3 + ... }}}
```

This is the input for the large integral of Section 1; notice the use of definitions:

```
define emx "{e sup mx}"
define mab "{m sqrt ab}"
define sa "{sqrt a}"
define sb "{sqrt b}"
int dx over {a emx - be sup -mx} ~=~
left { lpile {
    1 over {2 mab} ~log~
        {sa emx - sb} over {sa emx + sb}
  above
    1 over mab ~ tanh sup -1 ( sa over sb emx )
  above
    -1 over mab ~ coth sup -1 ( sa over sb emx )
}
```

As to ease of construction, we have already mentioned that there are really only a few person-months invested. Much of this time has gone into two things—fine-tuning (what is the most esthetically pleasing space to use between the numerator and denominator of a fraction?), and changing things found deficient by our users (shouldn't a tilde be a delimiter?).

The program consists of a number of small, essentially unconnected modules for code generation, a simple lexical analyzer, a canned parser which we did not have to write, and some miscellany associated with input files and the macro facility. The program is now about 1600 lines of C [6], a high-level language reminiscent of BCPL. About 20 percent of these lines are "print" statements, generating the output code.

The semantic routines that generate the actual TROFF commands can be changed to accommodate other formatting languages and devices. For example, in less than 24 hours, one of us changed the entire semantic package to drive NROFF, a variant of TROFF, for typesetting mathematics on teletype-writer devices capable of reverse line motions. Since many potential users do not have access to a typesetter, but still have to type mathematics, this provides a way to get a typed version of the final output which is close enough for debugging purposes, and sometimes even for ultimate use.

7. Conclusions

We think we have shown that it is possible to do acceptably good typesetting of mathematics on a phototypesetter, with an input language that is easy to learn and use and that satisfies many users' demands. Such a package can be implemented in short order, given a compiler-compiler and a decent typesetting program underneath.

Defining a language, and building a compiler for it with a compiler-compiler seems like the only sensible way to do business. Our experience with the use of a grammar and a compiler-compiler has been uniformly favorable. If we had written everything into code directly, we would have been locked into our original design. Furthermore, we would have never been sure where the exceptions and special cases were. But because we have a grammar, we can change our minds readily and still be reasonably sure that if a construction works in one place it will work everywhere.

Acknowledgements

We are deeply indebted to J. F. Ossanna, the author of TROFF, for his willingness to modify TROFF to make our task easier and for his continuous assistance during the development of our program. We are also grateful to A. V. Aho for help with language theory, to S. C. Johnson for aid with the compiler-compiler, and to our early users A. V. Aho, S. I. Feldman, S. C. Johnson, R. W. Hamming, and M. D. McIlroy for their constructive criticisms.

References

[1] *A Manual of Style,* 12th Edition. University of Chicago Press, 1969. p 295.

[2] *Model C/A/T Phototypesetter.* Graphic Systems, Inc., Hudson, N. H.

[3] Ritchie, D. M., and Thompson, K. L., "The UNIX time-sharing system." *Comm. ACM 17,* 7 (July 1974), 365-375 (reprinted here as PS2:1).

[4] Ossanna, J. F., TROFF User's Manual. Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report 54, 1977.

[5] Aho, A. V., and Johnson, S. C., "LR Parsing." *Comp. Surv. 6,* 2 (June 1974), 99-124.

[6] B. W. Kernighan and D. M. Ritchie, *The C Programming Language.* Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1978.

Typesetting Mathematics — User's Guide (Second Edition)

Brian W. Kernighan and Lorinda L. Cherry

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

This is the user's guide for a system for typesetting mathematics, using the phototypesetters on the UNIX† operating system.

Mathematical expressions are described in a language designed to be easy to use by people who know neither mathematics nor typesetting. Enough of the language to set in-line expressions like $\lim_{x \to \pi/2} (tan~x)^{sin~2x} ~=~ 1$ or display equations like

$$G(z) = e^{\ln G(z)} = \exp\left[\sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{S_k z^k}{k}\right] = \prod_{k \geq 1} e^{S_k z^k / k}$$
$$= \left[1 + S_1 z + \frac{S_1^2 z^2}{2!} + \cdots\right]\left[1 + \frac{S_2 z^2}{2} + \frac{S_2^2 z^4}{2^2 \cdot 2!} + \cdots\right] \cdots$$
$$= \sum_{m \geq 0} \left[\sum_{\substack{k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_m \geq 0 \\ k_1 + 2k_2 + \cdots + mk_m = m}} \frac{S_1^{k_1}}{1^{k_1} k_1!} \frac{S_2^{k_2}}{2^{k_2} k_2!} \cdots \frac{S_m^{k_m}}{m^{k_m} k_m!}\right] z^m$$

can be learned in an hour or so.

The language interfaces directly with the phototypesetting language TROFF, so mathematical expressions can be embedded in the running text of a manuscript, and the entire document produced in one process. This user's guide is an example of its output.

The same language may be used with the UNIX formatter NROFF to set mathematical expressions on DASI and GSI terminals and Model 37 teletypes.

1. Introduction

EQN is a program for typesetting mathematics on the Graphics Systems phototypesetters on the UNIX operating system. The EQN language was designed to be easy to use by people who know neither mathematics nor typesetting. Thus EQN knows relatively little about mathematics. In particular, mathematical symbols like +, −, ×, parentheses, and so on have no special meanings. EQN is quite happy to set garbage (but it will look good).

EQN works as a preprocessor for the typesetter formatter, TROFF[1], so the normal mode of operation is to prepare a document with both mathematics and ordinary text interspersed, and let EQN set the mathematics while TROFF does the body of the text.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

On UNIX, EQN will also produce mathematics on DASI and GSI terminals and on Model 37 teletypes. The input is identical, but you have to use the programs NEQN and NROFF instead of EQN and TROFF. Of course, some things won't look as good because terminals don't provide the variety of characters, sizes and fonts that a typesetter does, but the output is usually adequate for proofreading.

To use EQN on UNIX,

```
eqn files | troff
```


2. Displayed Equations

To tell EQN where a mathematical expression begins and ends, we mark it with lines beginning .EQ and .EN. Thus if you type the lines

```
.EQ
x=y+z
.EN
```

your output will look like

$$x=y+z$$

The .EQ and .EN are copied through untouched; they are not otherwise processed by EQN. This means that you have to take care of things like centering, numbering, and so on yourself. The most common way is to use the TROFF and NROFF macro package package '-ms' developed by M. E. Lesk[3], which allows you to center, indent, left-justify and number equations.

With the '-ms' package, equations are centered by default. To left-justify an equation, use .EQ L instead of .EQ. To indent it, use .EQ I. Any of these can be followed by an arbitrary 'equation number' which will be placed at the right margin. For example, the input

```
.EQ I (3.1a)
x = f(y/2) + y/2
.EN
```

produces the output

$$x=f(y/2)+y/2 \qquad (3.1a)$$

There is also a shorthand notation so inline expressions like π_i^2 can be entered without .EQ and .EN. We will talk about it in section 19.

3. Input spaces

Spaces and newlines within an expression are thrown away by EQN. (Normal text is left absolutely alone.) Thus between .EQ and .EN,

```
x=y+z
```

and

```
x = y + z
```

and

```
x  =  y
  + z
```

and so on all produce the same output

$$x=y+z$$

You should use spaces and newlines freely to make your input equations readable and easy to edit. In particular, very long lines are a bad idea, since they are often hard to fix if you make a mistake.

4. Output spaces

To force extra spaces into the *output,* use a tilde "~" for each space you want:

```
x~=~y~+~z
```

gives

$$x\ =\ y\ +\ z$$

You can also use a circumflex "^", which gives a space half the width of a tilde. It is mainly useful for fine-tuning. Tabs may also be used to position pieces of an expression, but the tab stops must be set by TROFF commands.

5. Symbols, Special Names, Greek

EQN knows some mathematical symbols, some mathematical names, and the Greek alphabet. For example,

```
x=2 pi int sin ( omega t)dt
```

produces

$$x=2\pi\int\sin(\omega t)dt$$

Here the spaces in the input are necessary to tell EQN that *int, pi, sin* and *omega* are separate entities that should get special treatment. The *sin,* digit 2, and parentheses are set in roman type instead of italic; *pi* and *omega* are made Greek; and *int* becomes the integral sign.

When in doubt, leave spaces around separate parts of the input. A *very* common

error is to type *f(pi)* without leaving spaces on both sides of the *pi*. As a result, EQN does not recognize *pi* as a special word, and it appears as $f(pi)$ instead of $f(\pi)$.

A complete list of EQN names appears in section 23. Knowledgeable users can also use TROFF four-character names for anything EQN doesn't know about, like *\(bs* for the Bell System sign ⏣.

6. Spaces, Again

The only way EQN can deduce that some sequence of letters might be special is if that sequence is separated from the letters on either side of it. This can be done by surrounding a special word by ordinary spaces (or tabs or newlines), as we did in the previous section.

You can also make special words stand out by surrounding them with tildes or circumflexes:

```
x~=~2~pi~int~sin~(~omega~t~)~dt
```

is much the same as the last example, except that the tildes not only separate the magic words like *sin, omega,* and so on, but also add extra spaces, one space per tilde:

$$x = 2 \pi \int \sin (\omega t) dt$$

Special words can also be separated by braces { } and double quotes "...", which have special meanings that we will see soon.

7. Subscripts and Superscripts

Subscripts and superscripts are obtained with the words *sub* and *sup*.

```
x sup 2 + y sub k
```

gives

$$x^2+y_k$$

EQN takes care of all the size changes and vertical motions needed to make the output look right. The words *sub* and *sup* must be surrounded by spaces; *x sub2* will give you *xsub2* instead of x_2. Furthermore, don't forget to leave a space (or a tilde, etc.) to mark the end of a subscript or superscript. A common error is to say something like

```
y = (x sup 2)+1
```

which causes

$$y=(x^{2)+1}$$

instead of the intended

$$y=(x^2)+1$$

Subscripted subscripts and superscripted superscripts also work:

```
x sub i sub 1
```

is

$$x_{i_1}$$

A subscript and superscript on the same thing are printed one above the other if the subscript comes *first:*

```
x sub i sup 2
```

is

$$x_i^2$$

Other than this special case, *sub* and *sup* group to the right, so *x sup y sub z* means x^{y_z}, not $x^y{}_z$.

8. Braces for Grouping

Normally, the end of a subscript or superscript is marked simply by a blank (or tab or tilde, etc.) What if the subscript or superscript is something that has to be typed with blanks in it? In that case, you can use the braces { and } to mark the beginning and end of the subscript or superscript:

```
e sup {i omega t}
```

is

$$e^{i\omega t}$$

Rule: Braces can *always* be used to force EQN to treat something as a unit, or just to make your intent perfectly clear. Thus:

```
x sub {i sub 1} sup 2
```

is

$$x_{i_1}^2$$

with braces, but

```
x sub i sub 1 sup 2
```

is

$$x_{i_1^2}$$

which is rather different.

Braces can occur within braces if necessary:

```
e sup {i pi sup {rho +1}}
```

is

$$e^{i\pi^{\rho+1}}$$

The general rule is that anywhere you could use some single thing like *x*, you can use an arbitrarily complicated thing if you enclose it in braces. EQN will look after all the details of positioning it and making it the right size.

In all cases, make sure you have the right number of braces. Leaving one out or adding an extra will cause EQN to complain bitterly.

Occasionally you will have to print braces. To do this, enclose them in double quotes, like "{". Quoting is discussed in more detail in section 14.

9. Fractions

To make a fraction, use the word *over:*

```
a+b over 2c =1
```

gives

$$\frac{a+b}{2c}=1$$

The line is made the right length and positioned automatically. Braces can be used to make clear what goes over what:

```
{alpha + beta} over {sin (x)}
```

is

$$\frac{\alpha+\beta}{\sin(x)}$$

What happens when there is both an *over* and a *sup* in the same expression? In such an apparently ambiguous case, EQN does the *sup* before the *over,* so

```
-b sup 2 over pi
```

is $\frac{-b^2}{\pi}$ instead of $-b^{\frac{2}{\pi}}$ The rules which decide which operation is done first in cases like this are summarized in section 23. When in doubt, however, *use braces* to make clear what goes with what.

10. Square Roots

To draw a square root, use *sqrt:*

```
sqrt a+b + 1 over sqrt {ax sup 2 +bx+c}
```

is

$$\sqrt{a+b}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}}$$

Warning — square roots of tall quantities look lousy, because a root-sign big enough to cover the quantity is too dark and heavy:

```
sqrt {a sup 2 over b sub 2}
```

is

$$\sqrt{\frac{a^2}{b_2}}$$

Big square roots are generally better written as something to the power ½:

$$(a^2/b_2)^{1/2}$$

which is

```
(a sup 2 /b sub 2 ) sup half
```

11. Summation, Integral, Etc.

Summations, integrals, and similar constructions are easy:

```
sum from i=0 to {i= inf} x sup i
```

produces

$$\sum_{i=0}^{i=\infty} x^i$$

Notice that we used braces to indicate where the upper part $i=\infty$ begins and ends. No braces were necessary for the lower part $i=0$, because it contained no blanks. The braces will never hurt, and if the *from* and *to* parts contain any blanks, you must use braces around them.

The *from* and *to* parts are both optional, but if both are used, they have to occur in that order.

Other useful characters can replace the *sum* in our example:

```
int prod union inter
```

become, respectively,

$$\int \quad \prod \quad \cup \quad \cap$$

Since the thing before the *from* can be anything, even something in braces, *from-to* can often be used in unexpected ways:

```
lim from {n -> inf} x sub n =0
```

is

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} x_n = 0$$

n.

12. Size and Font Changes

By default, equations are set in 10-point type (the same size as this guide), with standard mathematical conventions to determine what characters are in roman and what in italic. Although EQN makes a valiant attempt to use esthetically pleasing sizes and fonts, it is not perfect. To change sizes and fonts, use *size n* and *roman, italic, bold* and *fat.* Like *sub* and *sup,* size and font changes affect only the thing that follows them, and revert to the normal situation at the end of it. Thus

```
bold x y
```

is

$$\mathbf{x}y$$

and

```
size 14 bold x = y +
  size 14 {alpha + beta}
```

gives

$$\mathbf{X}=y+\alpha+\beta$$

As always, you can use braces if you want to affect something more complicated than a single letter. For example, you can change the size of an entire equation by

```
size 12 { ... }
```

Legal sizes which may follow *size* are 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 28, 36. You can also change the size *by* a given amount; for example, you can say *size +2* to make the size two points bigger, or *size −3* to make it three points smaller. This has the advantage that you don't have to know what the current size is.

If you are using fonts other than roman, italic and bold, you can say *font X* where *X* is a one character TROFF name or number for the font. Since EQN is tuned for roman, italic and bold, other fonts may not give quite as good an appearance.

The *fat* operation takes the current font and widens it by overstriking: *fat grad* is ∇ and *fat {x sub i}* is x_i.

If an entire document is to be in a non-standard size or font, it is a severe nuisance to have to write out a size and font change for each equation. Accordingly, you can set a "global" size or font which thereafter affects all equations. At the beginning of any equation, you might say, for instance,

```
.EQ
gsize 16
gfont R
...
.EN
```

to set the size to 16 and the font to roman thereafter. In place of R, you can use any of the TROFF font names. The size after *gsize* can be a relative change with + or −.

Generally, *gsize* and *gfont* will appear at the beginning of a document but they can also appear thoughout a document: the global font and size can be changed as often as needed. For example, in a footnote‡ you will typically want the size of equations to match the size of the footnote text, which is two points smaller than the main text. Don't forget to reset the global size at the end of the footnote.

13. Diacritical Marks

To get funny marks on top of letters, there are several words:

x dot	$\dot{x}$
x dotdot	$\ddot{x}$
x hat	$\hat{x}$
x tilde	$\tilde{x}$
x vec	$\vec{x}$
x dyad	$\overleftrightarrow{x}$
x bar	$\bar{x}$
x under	$\underline{x}$

The diacritical mark is placed at the right height. The *bar* and *under* are made the right length for the entire construct, as in $\overline{x+y+z}$; other marks are centered.

14. Quoted Text

Any input entirely within quotes ("...") is not subject to any of the font changes and spacing adjustments normally done by the equation setter. This provides a way to do your own spacing and adjusting if needed:

```
italic "sin(x)" + sin (x)
```

is

‡Like this one, in which we have a few random expressions like x_i and π^2. The sizes for these were set by the command *gsize −2.*

$$sin(x) + \sin(x)$$

Quotes are also used to get braces and other EQN keywords printed:

```
"{ size alpha }"
```

is

$$\{\ size\ alpha\ \}$$

and

```
roman "{ size alpha }"
```

is

$$\{\ \text{size alpha}\ \}$$

The construction "" is often used as a place-holder when grammatically EQN needs something, but you don't actually want anything in your output. For example, to make ^{2}He, you can't just type *sup 2 roman He* because a *sup* has to be a superscript *on* something. Thus you must say

```
"" sup 2 roman He
```

To get a literal quote use "\"". TROFF characters like *\(bs* can appear unquoted, but more complicated things like horizontal and vertical motions with *\h* and *\v* should always be quoted. (If you've never heard of *\h* and *\v*, ignore this section.)

15. Lining Up Equations

Sometimes it's necessary to line up a series of equations at some horizontal position, often at an equals sign. This is done with two operations called *mark* and *lineup*.

The word *mark* may appear once at any place in an equation. It remembers the horizontal position where it appeared. Successive equations can contain one occurrence of the word *lineup*. The place where *lineup* appears is made to line up with the place marked by the previous *mark* if at all possible. Thus, for example, you can say

```
.EQ I
x+y mark = z
.EN
.EQ I
x lineup = 1
.EN
```

to produce

$$x+y=z$$

$$x=1$$

For reasons too complicated to talk about, when you use EQN and '-ms', use either .EQ I or .EQ L. mark and *lineup* don't work with centered equations. Also bear in mind that *mark* doesn't look ahead;

```
x mark =1
...
x+y lineup =z
```

isn't going to work, because there isn't room for the $x+y$ part after the *mark* remembers where the x is.

16. Big Brackets, Etc.

To get big brackets [ ], braces { }, parentheses ( ), and bars | | around things, use the *left* and *right* commands:

```
left { a over b + 1 right }
~=~ left ( c over d right )
+ left [ e right ]
```

is

$$\left\{\frac{a}{b}+1\right\} = \left(\frac{c}{d}\right) + \left[e\right]$$

The resulting brackets are made big enough to cover whatever they enclose. Other characters can be used besides these, but the are not likely to look very good. One exception is the *floor* and *ceiling* characters:

```
left floor x over y right floor
<= left ceiling a over b right ceiling
```

produces

$$\left\lfloor\frac{x}{y}\right\rfloor \le \left\lceil\frac{a}{b}\right\rceil$$

Several warnings about brackets are in order. First, braces are typically bigger than brackets and parentheses, because they are made up of three, five, seven, etc., pieces, while brackets can be made up of two, three, etc. Second, big left and right parentheses often look poor, because the character set is poorly designed.

The *right* part may be omitted: a "left something" need not have a corresponding "right something". If the *right* part is omitted, put braces around the thing you want the left bracket to encompass. Otherwise, the resulting brackets may be too large.

If you want to omit the *left* part, things are more complicated, because technically you can't have a *right* without a corresponding *left*. Instead you have to say

```
left "" ..... right )
```

for example. The *left* "" means a "left nothing". This satisfies the rules without hurting your output.

17. Piles

There is a general facility for making vertical piles of things; it comes in several flavors. For example:

```
A ~=~ left [
  pile { a above b above c }
  ~ pile { x above y above z }
  right ]
```

will make

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & x \\ b & y \\ c & z \end{bmatrix}$$

The elements of the pile (there can be as many as you want) are centered one above another, at the right height for most purposes. The keyword *above* is used to separate the pieces; braces are used around the entire list. The elements of a pile can be as complicated as needed, even containing more piles.

Three other forms of pile exist: *lpile* makes a pile with the elements left-justified; *rpile* makes a right-justified pile; and *cpile* makes a centered pile, just like *pile*. The vertical spacing between the pieces is somewhat larger for *l-*, *r-* and *cpiles* than it is for ordinary piles.

```
roman sign (x)~=~
left {
  lpile {1 above 0 above -1}
  ~ lpile
  {if~x>0 above if~x=0 above if~x<0}
```

makes

$$\text{sign}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x>0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x=0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x<0 \end{cases}$$

Notice the left brace without a matching right one.

18. Matrices

It is also possible to make matrices. For example, to make a neat array like

$$\begin{matrix} x_i & x^2 \\ y_i & y^2 \end{matrix}$$

you have to type

```
matrix {
  ccol { x sub i above y sub i }
  ccol { x sup 2 above y sup 2 }
}
```

This produces a matrix with two centered columns. The elements of the columns are then listed just as for a pile, each element separated by the word *above*. You can also use *lcol* or *rcol* to left or right adjust columns. Each column can be separately adjusted, and there can be as many columns as you like.

The reason for using a matrix instead of two adjacent piles, by the way, is that if the elements of the piles don't all have the same height, they won't line up properly. A matrix forces them to line up, because it looks at the entire structure before deciding what spacing to use.

A word of warning about matrices — *each column must have the same number of elements in it.* The world will end if you get this wrong. n.

19. Shorthand for In-line Equations

In a mathematical document, it is necessary to follow mathematical conventions not just in display equations, but also in the body of the text, for example by making variable names like x italic. Although this could be done by surrounding the appropriate parts with .EQ and .EN, the continual repetition of .EQ and .EN is a nuisance. Furthermore, with '-ms', .EQ and .EN imply a displayed equation.

EQN provides a shorthand for short in-line expressions. You can define two characters to mark the left and right ends of an in-line equation, and then type expressions right in the middle of text lines. To set both the left and right characters to dollar signs, for example, add to the beginning of your document the three lines

```
.EQ
delim $$
.EN
```

Having done this, you can then say things like

```
Let $alpha sub i$ be the primary variable, and let $beta$ be zero. Then we can show that $x sub 1$ is $>=0$.
```

This works as you might expect — spaces, newlines, and so on are significant in the text, but not in the equation part itself. Multiple equations can occur in a single input line.

Enough room is left before and after a line that contains in-line expressions that something like $\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i$ does not interfere with the lines surrounding it.

To turn off the delimiters,

```
.EQ
delim off
.EN
```

Warning: don't use braces, tildes, circumflexes, or double quotes as delimiters — chaos will result.

20. Definitions

EQN provides a facility so you can give a frequently-used string of characters a name, and thereafter just type the name instead of the whole string. For example, if the sequence

```
x sub i sub 1 + y sub i sub 1
```

appears repeatedly throughout a paper, you can save re-typing it each time by defining it like this:

```
define xy 'x sub i sub 1 + y sub i sub 1'
```

This makes *xy* a shorthand for whatever characters occur between the single quotes in the definition. You can use any character instead of quote to mark the ends of the definition, so long as it doesn't appear inside the definition.

Now you can use *xy* like this:

```
.EQ
f(x) = xy ...
.EN
```

and so on. Each occurrence of *xy* will expand into what it was defined as. Be careful to leave spaces or their equivalent around the name when you actually use it, so EQN will be able to identify it as special.

There are several things to watch out for. First, although definitions can use previous definitions, as in

```
.EQ
define xi 'x sub i'
define xi1 'xi sub 1'
.EN
```

don't define something in terms of itself A favorite error is to say

```
define X 'roman X'
```

This is a guaranteed disaster, since X *is* now defined in terms of itself. If you say

```
define X 'roman "X"'
```

however, the quotes protect the second X, and everything works fine.

EQN keywords can be redefined. You can make / mean *over* by saying

```
define / 'over'
```

or redefine *over* as / with

```
define over '/'
```

If you need different things to print on a terminal and on the typesetter, it is sometimes worth defining a symbol differently in NEQN and EQN. This can be done with *ndefine* and *tdefine.* A definition made with *ndefine* only takes effect if you are running NEQN; if you use *tdefine,* the definition only applies for EQN. Names defined with plain *define* apply to both EQN and NEQN.

21. Local Motions

Although EQN tries to get most things at the right place on the paper, it isn't perfect, and occasionally you will need to tune the output to make it just right. Small extra horizontal spaces can be obtained with tilde and circumflex. You can also say *back n* and *fwd n* to move small amounts horizontally. *n* is how far to move in 1/100's of an em (an em is about the width of the letter 'm'.) Thus *back 50* moves back about half the width of an m. Similarly you can move things up or down with *up n* and *down n.* As with *sub* or *sup,* the local motions affect the next thing in the input, and this can be something arbitrarily complicated if it is enclosed in braces. n.

22. A Large Example

Here is the complete source for the three display equations in the abstract of this guide.

```
.EQ I
G(z)~mark =~ e sup { ln ~ G(z) }
~=~ exp left (
sum from k>=1 {S sub k z sup k} over k right )
~=~ prod from k>=1 e sup {S sub k z sup k /k}
.EN
.EQ I
lineup = left ( 1 + S sub 1 z +
{ S sub 1 sup 2 z sup 2 } over 2! + ... right )
left ( 1+ { S sub 2 z sup 2 } over 2
+ { S sub 2 sup 2 z sup 4 } over { 2 sup 2 cdot 2! }
+ ... right ) ...
.EN
.EQ I
lineup = sum from m>=0 left (
sum from
pile { k sub 1 ,k sub 2 ,..., k sub m >=0
above
k sub 1 +2k sub 2 + ... +mk sub m =m}
{ S sub 1 sup {k sub 1} } over {1 sup k sub 1 k sub 1 ! } ~
{ S sub 2 sup {k sub 2} } over {2 sup k sub 2 k sub 2 ! } ~
...
{ S sub m sup {k sub m} } over {m sup k sub m k sub m ! }
right ) z sup m
.EN
```

23. Keywords, Precedences, Etc.

If you don't use braces, EQN will do operations in the order shown in this list.

dyad vec under bar tilde hat dot dotdot
fwd back down up
fat roman italic bold size
sub sup sqrt over
from to

These operations group to the left:

over sqrt left right

All others group to the right.

Digits, parentheses, brackets, punctuation marks, and these mathematical words are converted to Roman font when encountered:

sin cos tan sinh cosh tanh arc
max min lim log ln exp
Re Im and if for det

These character sequences are recognized and translated as shown.

>=	≥
<=	≤
==	≡
!=	≠
+-	±
->	→
<-	←
<<	≪
>>	≫
inf	∞
partial	∂
half	½
prime	′
approx	≈
nothing	
cdot	·
times	×
del	∇
grad	∇
...	. . .
,....,	, . . . ,
sum	Σ
int	∫
prod	Π
union	∪
inter	∩

To obtain Greek letters, simply spell them out in whatever case you want:

DELTA	Δ	iota	ι
GAMMA	Γ	kappa	κ
LAMBDA	Λ	lambda	λ
OMEGA	Ω	mu	μ
PHI	Φ	nu	ν
PI	Π	omega	ω
PSI	Ψ	omicron	ο
SIGMA	Σ	phi	φ
THETA	Θ	pi	π
UPSILON	Υ	psi	ψ
XI	Ξ	rho	ρ
alpha	α	sigma	σ
beta	β	tau	τ
chi	χ	theta	θ
delta	δ	upsilon	υ
epsilon	ε	xi	ξ
eta	η	zeta	ζ
gamma	γ		

These are all the words known to EQN (except for characters with names), together with the section where they are discussed.

above	17, 18	lpile	17
back	21	mark	15
bar	13	matrix	18
bold	12	ndefine	20

ccol	18	over	9
col	18	pile	17
cpile	17	rcol	18
define	20	right	16
delim	19	roman	12
dot	13	rpile	17
dotdot	13	size	12
down	21	sqrt	10
dyad	13	sub	7
fat	12	sup	7
font	12	tdefine	20
from	11	tilde	13
fwd	21	to	11
gfont	12	under	13
gsize	12	up	21
hat	13	vec	13
italic	12	~, ^	4, 6
lcol	18	{ }	8
left	16	"..."	8, 14
lineup	15		

24. Troubleshooting

If you make a mistake in an equation, like leaving out a brace (very common) or having one too many (very common) or having a *sup* with nothing before it (common), EQN will tell you with the message

syntax error between lines x and y, file z

where x and y are approximately the lines between which the trouble occurred, and z is the name of the file in question. The line numbers are approximate — look nearby as well. There are also self-explanatory messages that arise if you leave out a quote or try to run EQN on a non-existent file.

If you want to check a document before actually printing it (on UNIX only),

```
eqn files >/dev/null
```

will throw away the output but print the messages.

If you use something like dollar signs as delimiters, it is easy to leave one out. This causes very strange troubles. The program *checkeq* checks for misplaced or missing dollar signs and similar troubles.

In-line equations can only be so big because of an internal buffer in TROFF. If you get a message "word overflow", you have exceeded this limit. If you print the equation as a displayed equation this message will usually go away. The message "line overflow" indicates you have exceeded an even bigger buffer. The only cure for this is to break the equation into two separate ones.

On a related topic, EQN does not break equations by itself — you must split long equations up across multiple lines by yourself, marking each by a separate .EQ ... .EN sequence. EQN does warn about equations that are too long to fit on one line. n.

25. Use on UNIX

To print a document that contains mathematics on the UNIX typesetter,

```
eqn files | troff
```

If there are any TROFF options, they go after the TROFF part of the command. For example,

```
eqn files | troff -ms
```

A compatible version of EQN can be used on devices like teletypes and DASI and GSI terminals which have half-line forward and reverse capabilities. To print equations on a Model 37 teletype, for example, use

```
neqn files | nroff
```

The language for equations recognized by NEQN is identical to that of EQN, although of course the output is more restricted.

To use a GSI or DASI terminal as the output device,

```
neqn files | nroff -Tx
```

where x is the terminal type you are using, such as *300* or *300S*.

EQN and NEQN can be used with the TBL program[2] for setting tables that contain mathematics. Use TBL before [N]EQN, like this:

```
tbl files | eqn | troff
tbl files | neqn | nroff
```

26. Acknowledgments

We are deeply indebted to J. F. Ossanna, the author of TROFF, for his willingness to extend TROFF to make our task easier, and for his continuous assistance during the development and evolution of EQN. We are also grateful to A. V. Aho for advice on language design, to S. C. Johnson for assistance with the YACC compiler-compiler, and to all the EQN users who have made helpful suggestions and criti-

cisms.

References

[1] J. F. Ossanna, "NROFF/TROFF User's Manual", Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report #54, 1976.

[2] M. E. Lesk, "Typing Documents on UNIX", Bell Laboratories, 1976.

[3] M. E. Lesk, "TBL — A Program for Setting Tables", Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report #49, 1976.

USD 27

Tbl — A Program to Format Tables

M. E. Lesk

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

ABSTRACT

Tbl is a document formatting preprocessor for *troff* or *nroff* which makes even fairly complex tables easy to specify and enter. It is available on the UNIX† system and on Honeywell 6000 GCOS. Tables are made up of columns which may be independently centered, right-adjusted, left-adjusted, or aligned by decimal points. Headings may be placed over single columns or groups of columns. A table entry may contain equations, or may consist of several rows of text. Horizontal or vertical lines may be drawn as desired in the table, and any table or element may be enclosed in a box. For example:

1970 Federal Budget Transfers (in billions of dollars)			
State	Taxes collected	Money spent	Net
New York	22.91	21.35	−1.56
New Jersey	8.33	6.96	−1.37
Connecticut	4.12	3.10	−1.02
Maine	0.74	0.67	−0.07
California	22.29	22.42	+0.13
New Mexico	0.70	1.49	+0.79
Georgia	3.30	4.28	+0.98
Mississippi	1.15	2.32	+1.17
Texas	9.33	11.13	+1.80

Introduction.

Tbl turns a simple description of a table into a *troff* or *nroff* [1] program (list of commands) that prints the table. *Tbl* may be used on the UNIX [2] system and on the Honeywell 6000 GCOS system. It attempts to isolate a portion of a job that it can successfully handle and leave the remainder for other programs. Thus *tbl* may be used with the equation formatting program *eqn* [3] or various layout macro packages [4,5,6], but does not duplicate their functions.

This memorandum is divided into two parts. First we give the rules for preparing *tbl* input; then some examples are shown. The description of rules is precise but technical, and the beginning user may prefer to read the examples first, as they show some common table arrangements. A section explaining how to invoke *tbl* precedes the examples. To avoid repetition, henceforth read *troff* as *"troff* or *nroff."*

The input to *tbl* is text for a document, with tables preceded by a ".TS" (table start) command and followed by a ".TE" (table end) command. *Tbl* processes the tables, generating *troff* formatting

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

commands, and leaves the remainder of the text unchanged. The ".TS" and ".TE" lines are copied, too, so that *troff* page layout macros (such as the memo formatting macros [4]) can use these lines to delimit and place tables as they see fit. In particular, any arguments on the ".TS" or ".TE" lines are copied but otherwise ignored, and may be used by document layout macro commands.

The format of the input is as follows:

```
text
.TS
table
.TE
text
.TS
table
.TE
text
. . .
```

where the format of each table is as follows:

```
.TS
options ;
format .
data
.TE
```


Each table is independent, and must contain formatting information followed by the data to be entered in the table. The formatting information, which describes the individual columns and rows of the table, may be preceded by a few options that affect the entire table. A detailed description of tables is given in the next section.

Input commands.

As indicated above, a table contains, first, global options, then a format section describing the layout of the table entries, and then the data to be printed. The format and data are always required, but not the options. The various parts of the table are entered as follows:

1) OPTIONS. There may be a single line of options affecting the whole table. If present, this line must follow the .TS line immediately and must contain a list of option names separated by spaces, tabs, or commas, and must be terminated by a semicolon. The allowable options are:

center	– center the table (default is left-adjust);
expand	– make the table as wide as the current line length;
box	– enclose the table in a box;
allbox	– enclose each item in the table in a box;
doublebox	– enclose the table in two boxes;
tab (*x*)	– use *x* instead of tab to separate data items.
linesize (*n*)	– set lines or rules (e.g. from **box**) in *n* point type;
delim (*xy*)	– recognize *x* and *y* as the *eqn* delimiters.

The *tbl* program tries to keep boxed tables on one page by issuing appropriate "need" (*.ne*) commands. These requests are calculated from the number of lines in the tables, and if there are spacing commands embedded in the input, these requests may be inaccurate; use normal *troff* procedures, such as keep-release macros, in that case. The user who must have a multi-page boxed table should use macros designed for this purpose, as explained below under 'Usage.'

2) FORMAT. The format section of the table specifies the layout of the columns. Each line in this section corresponds to one line of the table (except that the last line corresponds to all following lines up to the next .T&, if any – see below), and each line contains a key-letter for each column of the table. It is good practice to separate the key letters for each column by spaces or tabs. Each key-letter is one of the following:

L or **l** to indicate a left-adjusted column entry;

R or **r** to indicate a right-adjusted column entry;

C or **c** to indicate a centered column entry;

N or **n** to indicate a numerical column entry, to be aligned with other numerical entries so that the units digits of numbers line up;

A or **a** to indicate an alphabetic subcolumn; all corresponding entries are aligned on the left, and positioned so that the widest is centered within the column (see example on page 12);

S ori **s** to indicate a spanned heading, i.e. to indicate that the entry from the previous column continues across this column (not allowed for the first column, obviously); or

^ to indicate a vertically spanned heading, i.e. to indicate that the entry from the previous row continues down through this row. (Not allowed for the first row of the table, obviously).

When numerical alignment is specified, a location for the decimal point is sought. The rightmost dot (.) adjacent to a digit is used as a decimal point; if there is no dot adjoining a digit, the rightmost digit is used as a units digit; if no alignment is indicated, the item is centered in the column. However, the special non-printing character string \& may be used to override unconditionally dots and digits, or to align alphabetic data; this string lines up where a dot normally would, and then disappears from the final output. In the example below, the items shown at the left will be aligned (in a numerical column) as shown on the right:

```
13              13
4.2              4.2
26.4.12       26.4.12
abc               abc
abc\&             abc
43\&3.22       433.22
749.12         749.12
```

Note: If numerical data are used in the same column with wider **L** or **r** type table entries, the widest *number* is centered relative to the wider **L** or **r** items (**L** is used instead of **l** for readability; they have the same meaning as key-letters). Alignment within the numerical items is preserved. This is similar to the behavior of **a** type data, as explained above. However, alphabetic subcolumns (requested by the **a** key-letter) are always slightly indented relative to **L** items; if necessary, the column width is increased to force this. This is not true for **n** type entries.

Warning: the **n** and **a** items should not be used in the same column.

For readability, the key-letters describing each column should be separated by spaces. The end of the format section is indicated by a period. The layout of the key-letters in the format section resembles the layout of the actual data in the table. Thus a simple format might appear as:

```
c s s
l n n .
```

which specifies a table of three columns. The first line of the table contains a heading centered across all three columns; each remaining line contains a left-adjusted item in the first column followed by two columns of numerical data. A sample table in this format might be:

	Overall title	
Item-a	34.22	9.1
Item-b	12.65	.02
Items: c,d,e	23	5.8
Total	69.87	14.92

There are some additional features of the key-letter system:

Horizontal lines

— A key-letter may be replaced by '_' (underscore) to indicate a horizontal line in place of the corresponding column entry, or by '=' to indicate a double horizontal line. If an adjacent column contains a horizontal line, or if there are vertical lines adjoining this column, this horizontal line is extended to meet the nearby lines. If any data entry is provided for this column, it is ignored and a warning message is printed.

Vertical lines

— A vertical bar may be placed between column key-letters. This will cause a vertical line between the corresponding columns of the table. A vertical bar to the left of the first key-letter or to the right of the last one produces a line at the edge of the table. If two vertical bars appear between key-letters, a double vertical line is drawn.

Space between columns

— A number may follow the key-letter. This indicates the amount of separation between this column and the next column. The number normally specifies the separation in *ens* (one en is about the width of the letter 'n').* If the "expand" option is used, then these numbers are multiplied by a constant such that the table is as wide as the current line length. The default column separation number is 3. If the separation is changed the worst case (largest space requested) governs.

Vertical spanning

— Normally, vertically spanned items extending over several rows of the table are centered in their vertical range. If a key-letter is followed by **t** or **T**, any corresponding vertically spanned item will begin at the top line of its range.

Font changes

— A key-letter may be followed by a string containing a font name or number preceded by the letter **f** or **F**. This indicates that the corresponding column should be in a different font from the default font (usually Roman). All font names are one or two letters; a one-letter font name should be separated from whatever follows by a space or tab. The single letters **B**, **b**, **I**, and **i** are shorter synonyms for **fB** and **fI**. Font change commands given with the table entries override these specifications.

Point size changes

— A key-letter may be followed by the letter **p** or **P** and a number to indicate the point size of the corresponding table entries. The number may be a signed digit, in which case it is taken as an increment or decrement from the current point size. If both a point size and a column separation value are given, one or more blanks must separate them.

Vertical spacing changes

— A key-letter may be followed by the letter **v** or **V** and a number to indicate the vertical line spacing to be used within a multi-line corresponding table entry. The number may be a signed digit, in which case it is taken as an increment or decrement from the current vertical spacing. A column separation value must be separated by blanks or some other specification from a vertical spacing request. This request has no effect unless the corresponding table entry is a text block (see below).

Column width indication

— A key-letter may be followed by the letter **w** or **W** and a width value in parentheses.

* More precisely, an en is a number of points (1 point = 1/72 inch) equal to half the current type size.

This width is used as a minimum column width. If the largest element in the column is not as wide as the width value given after the w, the largest element is assumed to be that wide. If the largest element in the column is wider than the specified value, its width is used. The width is also used as a default line length for included text blocks. Normal *troff* units can be used to scale the width value; if none are used, the default is ens. If the width specification is a unitless integer the parentheses may be omitted. If the width value is changed in a column, the *last* one given controls.

Equal width columns
— A key-letter may be followed by the letter e or E to indicate equal width columns. All columns whose key-letters are followed by e or E are made the same width. This permits the user to get a group of regularly spaced columns.

Note:
The order of the above features is immaterial; they need not be separated by spaces, except as indicated above to avoid ambiguities involving point size and font changes. Thus a numerical column entry in italic font and 12 point type with a minimum width of 2.5 inches and separated by 6 ens from the next column could be specified as

```
np12w(2.5i)fI 6
```

Alternative notation
— Instead of listing the format of successive lines of a table on consecutive lines of the format section, successive line formats may be given on the same line, separated by commas, so that the format for the example above might have been written:

```
c s s, l n n .
```

Default
— Column descriptors missing from the end of a format line are assumed to be L. The longest line in the format section, however, defines the number of columns in the table; extra columns in the data are ignored silently.

3) DATA. The data for the table are typed after the format. Normally, each table line is typed as one line of data. Very long input lines can be broken: any line whose last character is \ is combined with the following line (and the \ vanishes). The data for different columns (the table entries) are separated by tabs, or by whatever character has been specified in the option *tabs* option. There are a few special cases:

Troff commands within tables
— An input line beginning with a '.' followed by anything but a number is assumed to be a command to *troff* and is passed through unchanged, retaining its position in the table. So, for example, space within a table may be produced by ".sp" commands in the data.

Full width horizontal lines
— An input *line* containing only the character _ (underscore) or = (equal sign) is taken to be a single or double line, respectively, extending the full width of the *table.*

Single column horizontal lines
— An input table *entry* containing only the character _ or = is taken to be a single or double line extending the full width of the *column.* Such lines are extended to meet horizontal or vertical lines adjoining this column. To obtain these characters explicitly in a column, either precede them by \& or follow them by a space before the usual tab or newline.

Short horizontal lines
— An input table *entry* containing only the string _ is taken to be a single line as wide as the contents of the column. It is not extended to meet adjoining lines.

Vertically spanned items
— An input table entry containing only the character string \^ indicates that the table entry immediately above spans downward over this row. It is equivalent to a table format key-letter of '^'.

Text blocks

— In order to include a block of text as a table entry, precede it by **T{** and follow it by **T}**. Thus the sequence

. . . **T{**
block of
text
T} . . .

is the way to enter, as a single entry in the table, something that cannot conveniently be typed as a simple string between tabs. Note that the **T}** end delimiter must begin a line; additional columns of data may follow after a tab on the same line. See the example on page 11 for an illustration of included text blocks in a table. If more than twenty or thirty text blocks are used in a table, various limits in the *troff* program are likely to be exceeded, producing diagnostics such as 'too many string/macro names' or 'too many number registers.'

Text blocks are pulled out from the table, processed separately by *troff*, and replaced in the table as a solid block. If no line length is specified in the *block of text* itself, or in the table format, the default is to use $L \times C/(N+1)$ where L is the current line length, C is the number of table columns spanned by the text, and N is the total number of columns in the table. The other parameters (point size, font, etc.) used in setting the *block of text* are those in effect at the beginning of the table (including the effect of the ".TS" macro) and any table format specifications of size, spacing and font, using the **p**, **v** and **f** modifiers to the column key-letters. Commands within the text block itself are also recognized, of course. However, *troff* commands within the table data but not within the text block do not affect that block.

Warnings:

— Although any number of lines may be present in a table, only the first 200 lines are used in calculating the widths of the various columns. A multi-page table, of course, may be arranged as several single-page tables if this proves to be a problem. Other difficulties with formatting may arise because, in the calculation of column widths all table entries are assumed to be in the font and size being used when the ".TS" command was encountered, except for font and size changes indicated (a) in the table format section and (b) within the table data (as in the entry \s+3\fIdata\fP\s0). Therefore, although arbitrary *troff* requests may be sprinkled in a table, care must be taken to avoid confusing the width calculations; use requests such as '.ps' with care.

4) ADDITIONAL COMMAND LINES. If the format of a table must be changed after many similar lines, as with sub-headings or summarizations, the ".T&" (table continue) command can be used to change column parameters. The outline of such a table input is:

```
.TS
options ;
format .
data
. . .
.T&
format .
data
.T&
format .
data
.TE
```

as in the examples on pages 10 and 13. Using this procedure, each table line can be close to its corresponding format line.

Warning: it is not possible to change the number of columns, the space between columns,

the global options such as *box*, or the selection of columns to be made equal width.

Usage.

On UNIX, *tbl* can be run on a simple table with the command

```
tbl input-file | troff
```

but for more complicated use, where there are several input files, and they contain equations and *ms* memorandum layout commands as well as tables, the normal command would be

```
tbl file-1 file-2 . . . | eqn | troff -ms
```

and, of course, the usual options may be used on the *troff* and *eqn* commands. The usage for *nroff* is similar to that for *troff*, but only TELETYPE® Model 37 and Diablo-mechanism (DASI or GSI) terminals can print boxed tables directly.

For the convenience of users employing line printers without adequate driving tables or post-filters, there is a special *-TX* command line option to *tbl* which produces output that does not have fractional line motions in it. The only other command line options recognized by *tbl* are *-ms* and *-mm* which are turned into commands to fetch the corresponding macro files; usually it is more convenient to place these arguments on the *troff* part of the command line, but they are accepted by *tbl* as well.

Note that when *eqn* and *tbl* are used together on the same file *tbl* should be used first. If there are no equations within tables, either order works, but it is usually faster to run *tbl* first, since *eqn* normally produces a larger expansion of the input than *tbl*. However, if there are equations within tables (using the *delim* mechanism in *eqn*), *tbl* must be first or the output will be scrambled. Users must also beware of using equations in n-style columns; this is nearly always wrong, since *tbl* attempts to split numerical format items into two parts and this is not possible with equations. The user can defend against this by giving the *delim(xx)* table option; this prevents splitting of numerical columns within the delimiters. For example, if the *eqn* delimiters are *$$*, giving *delim($$)* a numerical column such as "1245 $+- 16$" will be divided after 1245, not after 16.

Tbl limits tables to twenty columns; however, use of more than 16 numerical columns may fail because of limits in *troff*, producing the 'too many number registers' message. *Troff* number registers used by *tbl* must be avoided by the user within tables; these include two-digit names from 31 to 99, and names of the forms *#x*, *x+*, *x |*, *^x*, and *x-*, where *x* is any lower case letter. The names *##*, *#-*, and *#^* are also used in certain circumstances. To conserve number register names, the n and a formats share a register; hence the restriction above that they may not be used in the same column.

For aid in writing layout macros, *tbl* defines a number register TW which is the table width; it is defined by the time that the ".TE" macro is invoked and may be used in the expansion of that macro. More importantly, to assist in laying out multi-page boxed tables the macro T# is defined to produce the bottom lines and side lines of a boxed table, and then invoked at its end. By use of this macro in the page footer a multi-page table can be boxed. In particular, the *ms* macros can be used to print a multi-page boxed table with a repeated heading by giving the argument H to the ".TS" macro. If the table start macro is written

```
.TS H
```

a line of the form

```
.TH
```

must be given in the table after any table heading (or at the start if none). Material up to the ".TH" is placed at the top of each page of table; the remaining lines in the table are placed on several pages as required. Note that this is *not* a feature of *tbl*, but of the *ms* layout macros.

Examples.

Here are some examples illustrating features of *tbl*. The symbol ⓣ in the input represents a tab character.

Input:

```
.TS
box;
c c c
l l l.
Language ⓣ Authors ⓣ Runs on

Fortran ⓣ Many ⓣ Almost anything
PL/1 ⓣ IBM ⓣ 360/370
C ⓣ BTL ⓣ 11/45,H6000,370
BLISS ⓣ Carnegie-Mellon ⓣ PDP-10,11
IDS ⓣ Honeywell ⓣ H6000
Pascal ⓣ Stanford ⓣ 370
.TE
```

Output:

Language	Authors	Runs on
Fortran	Many	Almost anything
PL/1	IBM	360/370
C	BTL	11/45,H6000,370
BLISS	Carnegie-Mellon	PDP-10,11
IDS	Honeywell	H6000
Pascal	Stanford	370

Input:

```
.TS
allbox;
c s s
c c c
n n n.
AT&T Common Stock
Year ⓣ Price ⓣ Dividend
1971 ⓣ 41-54 ⓣ $2.60
2 ⓣ 41-54 ⓣ 2.70
3 ⓣ 46-55 ⓣ 2.87
4 ⓣ 40-53 ⓣ 3.24
5 ⓣ 45-52 ⓣ 3.40
6 ⓣ 51-59 ⓣ .95*
.TE
* (first quarter only)
```

Output:

AT&T Common Stock		
Year	Price	Dividend
1971	41-54	$2.60
2	41-54	2.70
3	46-55	2.87
4	40-53	3.24
5	45-52	3.40
6	51-59	.95*

* (first quarter only)

Input:

```
.TS
box;
c s s
c | c | c
l | l | n.
Major New York Bridges
=
Bridge T{ Designer T{ Length

_
Brooklyn T{ J. A. Roebling T{ 1595
Manhattan T{ G. Lindenthal T{ 1470
Williamsburg T{ L. L. Buck T{ 1600

_
Queensborough T{ Palmer & T{ 1182
T{ Hornbostel

_
T{ T{ 1380
Triborough T{ O. H. Ammann T{ _
T{ T{ 383

_
Bronx Whitestone T{ O. H. Ammann T{ 2300
Throgs Neck T{ O. H. Ammann T{ 1800

_
George Washington T{ O. H. Ammann T{ 3500
.TE
```

Output:

Major New York Bridges		
Bridge	Designer	Length
Brooklyn	J. A. Roebling	1595
Manhattan	G. Lindenthal	1470
Williamsburg	L. L. Buck	1600
Queensborough	Palmer & Hornbostel	1182
Triborough	O. H. Ammann	1380
		383
Bronx Whitestone	O. H. Ammann	2300
Throgs Neck	O. H. Ammann	1800
George Washington	O. H. Ammann	3500

Input:

```
.TS
c c
np-2 | n | .
T{ Stack
T{ _
1 T{ 46
T{ _
2 T{ 23
T{ _
3 T{ 15
T{ _
4 T{ 6.5
T{ _
5 T{ 2.1
T{ _
.TE
```

Output:

	Stack
1	46
2	23
3	15
4	6.5
5	2.1

Input:

```
.TS
box;
L L L
L L _
L L | LB
L L _
L L L.
january T{ february T{ march
april T{ may
june T{ july T{ Months
august T{ september
october T{ november T{ december
.TE
```

Output:

january	february	march
april	may	
june	july	Months
august	september	
october	november	december

Input:

```
.TS
box;
cfB s s s.
Composition of Foods
_
.T&
c | c s s
c | c s s
c | c | c | c.
Food T{ Percent by Weight
\^T{ _
\^T{ Protein T{ Fat T{ Carbo-
\^T{ \^T{ \^T{ hydrate
_
.T&
l | n | n | n.
Apples T{ .4 T{ .5 T{ 13.0
Halibut T{ 18.4 T{ 5.2 T{ . . .
Lima beans T{ 7.5 T{ .8 T{ 22.0
Milk T{ 3.3 T{ 4.0 T{ 5.0
Mushrooms T{ 3.5 T{ .4 T{ 6.0
Rye bread T{ 9.0 T{ .6 T{ 52.7
.TE
```

Output:

Composition of Foods			
Food	Percent by Weight		
	Protein	Fat	Carbo-hydrate
Apples	.4	.5	13.0
Halibut	18.4	5.2	...
Lima beans	7.5	.8	22.0
Milk	3.3	4.0	5.0
Mushrooms	3.5	.4	6.0
Rye bread	9.0	.6	52.7

Input:

```
.TS
allbox;
cfI s s
c  cw(1i)  cw(1i)
lp9 lp9 lp9.
New York Area Rocks
Era ⦶ Formation ⦶ Age (years)
Precambrian ⦶ Reading Prong ⦶ >1 billion
Paleozoic ⦶ Manhattan Prong ⦶ 400 million
Mesozoic ⦶ T{
.na
Newark Basin, incl.
Stockton, Lockatong, and Brunswick
formations; also Watchungs
and Palisades.
T} ⦶ 200 million
Cenozoic ⦶ Coastal Plain ⦶ T{
On Long Island 30,000 years;
Cretaceous sediments redeposited
by recent glaciation.
.ad
T}
.TE
```

Output:

New York Area Rocks

Era	Formation	Age (years)
Precambrian	Reading Prong	>1 billion
Paleozoic	Manhattan Prong	400 million
Mesozoic	Newark Basin, incl. Stockton, Lockatong, and Brunswick formations; also Watchungs and Palisades.	200 million
Cenozoic	Coastal Plain	On Long Island 30,000 years; Cretaceous sediments redeposited by recent glaciation.

Input:

```
.EQ
delim $$
.EN

. . .

.TS
doublebox;
c c
l l.
Name ⦶ Definition
.sp
.vs +2p
Gamma ⦶ $GAMMA (z) = int sub 0 sup inf  t sup {z-1} e sup -t dt$
Sine ⦶ $sin (x) = 1 over 2i ( e sup ix - e sup -ix )$
Error ⦶ $ roman erf (z) = 2 over sqrt pi int sub 0 sup z e sup {-t sup 2} dt$
Bessel ⦶ $ J sub 0 (z) = 1 over pi int sub 0 sup pi cos ( z sin theta ) d theta $
Zeta ⦶ $ zeta (s) = sum from k=1 to inf k sup -s ~( Re~s > 1)$
.vs -2p
.TE
```

Output:

Name	Definition
Gamma	$\Gamma(z)=\int_0^{\infty} t^{z-1}e^{-t}dt$
Sine	$\sin(x)=\frac{1}{2i}(e^{ix}-e^{-ix})$
Error	$\operatorname{erf}(z)=\frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}}\int_0^z e^{-t^2}dt$
Bessel	$J_0(z)=\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0 \cos(z\sin\theta)d\theta$
Zeta	$\zeta(s)=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k^{-s}$ (Re $s>1$)

Input:

```
.TS
box, tab(:);
cb s s s s
cp-2 s s s s
c | | c | c | c | c
c | | c | c | c | c
r2 | | n2 | n2 | n2 | n.
Readability of Text
Line Width and Leading for 10-Point Type
=
Line:Set:1-Point:2-Point:4-Point
Width:Solid:Leading:Leading:Leading
_
9 Pica:\-9.3:\-6.0:\-5.3:\-7.1
14 Pica:\-4.5:\-0.6:\-0.3:\-1.7
19 Pica:\-5.0:\-5.1: 0.0:\-2.0
31 Pica:\-3.7:\-3.8:\-2.4:\-3.6
43 Pica:\-9.1:\-9.0:\-5.9:\-8.8
.TE
```

Output:

Readability of Text
Line Width and Leading for 10-Point Type

Line Width	Set Solid	1-Point Leading	2-Point Leading	4-Point Leading
9 Pica	-9.3	-6.0	-5.3	-7.1
14 Pica	-4.5	-0.6	-0.3	-1.7
19 Pica	-5.0	-5.1	0.0	-2.0
31 Pica	-3.7	-3.8	-2.4	-3.6
43 Pica	-9.1	-9.0	-5.9	-8.8

Input:

```
.TS
c s
cip-2 s
l n
a n.
Some London Transport Statistics
(Year 1964)
Railway route miles⊕244
Tube⊕66
Sub-surface⊕22
Surface⊕156
.sp .5
.T&
l r
a r.
Passenger traffic \- railway
Journeys⊕674 million
Average length⊕4.55 miles
Passenger miles⊕3,066 million
.T&
l r
a r.
Passenger traffic \- road
Journeys⊕2,252 million
Average length⊕2.26 miles
Passenger miles⊕5,094 million
.T&
l n
a n.
.sp .5
Vehicles⊕12,521
Railway motor cars⊕2,905
Railway trailer cars⊕1,269
Total railway⊕4,174
Omnibuses⊕8,347
.T&
l n
a n.
.sp .5
Staff⊕73,739
Administrative, etc.⊕5,582
Civil engineering⊕5,134
Electrical eng.⊕1,714
Mech. eng. \- railway⊕4,310
Mech. eng. \- road⊕9,152
Railway operations⊕8,930
Road operations⊕35,946
Other⊕2,971
.TE
```

Output:

Some London Transport Statistics
(Year 1964)

Railway route miles	244
Tube	66
Sub-surface	22
Surface	156
Passenger traffic - railway	
Journeys	674 million
Average length	4.55 miles
Passenger miles	3,066 million
Passenger traffic - road	
Journeys	2,252 million
Average length	2.26 miles
Passenger miles	5,094 million
Vehicles	12,521
Railway motor cars	2,905
Railway trailer cars	1,269
Total railway	4,174
Omnibuses	8,347
Staff	73,739
Administrative, etc.	5,582
Civil engineering	5,134
Electrical eng.	1,714
Mech. eng. - railway	4,310
Mech. eng. - road	9,152
Railway operations	8,930
Road operations	35,946
Other	2,971

Input:

```
.ps 8
.vs 10p
.TS
center box;
c s s
ci s s
c c c
lB l n.
New Jersey Representatives
(Democrats)
.sp .5
Name⊕Office address⊕Phone
.sp .5
James J. Florio⊕23 S. White Horse Pike, Somerdale 08083⊕609-627-8222
William J. Hughes⊕2920 Atlantic Ave., Atlantic City 08401⊕609-345-4844
James J. Howard⊕801 Bangs Ave., Asbury Park 07712⊕201-774-1600
Frank Thompson, Jr.⊕10 Rutgers Pl., Trenton 08618⊕609-599-1619
Andrew Maguire⊕115 W. Passaic St., Rochelle Park 07662⊕201-843-0240
Robert A. Roe⊕U.S.P.O., 194 Ward St., Paterson 07510⊕201-523-5152
Henry Helstoski⊕666 Paterson Ave., East Rutherford 07073⊕201-939-9090
Peter W. Rodino, Jr.⊕Suite 1435A, 970 Broad St., Newark 07102⊕201-645-3213
Joseph G. Minish⊕308 Main St., Orange 07050⊕201-645-6363
Helen S. Meyner⊕32 Bridge St., Lambertville 08530⊕609-397-1830
Dominick V. Daniels⊕895 Bergen Ave., Jersey City 07306⊕201-659-7700
Edward J. Patten⊕Natl. Bank Bldg., Perth Amboy 08861⊕201-826-4610
.sp .5
.T&
ci s s
lB l n.
(Republicans)
.sp .5v
Millicent Fenwick⊕41 N. Bridge St., Somerville 08876⊕201-722-8200
Edwin B. Forsythe⊕301 Mill St., Moorestown 08057⊕609-235-6622
Matthew J. Rinaldo⊕1961 Morris Ave., Union 07083⊕201-687-4235
.TE
.ps 10
.vs 12p
```

Output:

New Jersey Representatives
(Democrats)

Name	Office address	Phone
James J. Florio	23 S. White Horse Pike, Somerdale 08083	609-627-8222
William J. Hughes	2920 Atlantic Ave., Atlantic City 08401	609-345-4844
James J. Howard	801 Bangs Ave., Asbury Park 07712	201-774-1600
Frank Thompson, Jr.	10 Rutgers Pl., Trenton 08618	609-599-1619
Andrew Maguire	115 W. Passaic St., Rochelle Park 07662	201-843-0240
Robert A. Roe	U.S.P.O., 194 Ward St., Paterson 07510	201-523-5152
Henry Helstoski	666 Paterson Ave., East Rutherford 07073	201-939-9090
Peter W. Rodino, Jr.	Suite 1435A, 970 Broad St., Newark 07102	201-645-3213
Joseph G. Minish	308 Main St., Orange 07050	201-645-6363
Helen S. Meyner	32 Bridge St., Lambertville 08530	609-397-1830
Dominick V. Daniels	895 Bergen Ave., Jersey City 07306	201-659-7700
Edward J. Patten	Natl. Bank Bldg., Perth Amboy 08861	201-826-4610
	(Republicans)	
Millicent Fenwick	41 N. Bridge St., Somerville 08876	201-722-8200
Edwin B. Forsythe	301 Mill St., Moorestown 08057	609-235-6622
Matthew J. Rinaldo	1961 Morris Ave., Union 07083	201-687-4235

This is a paragraph of normal text placed here only to indicate where the left and right margins are. In this way the reader can judge the appearance of centered tables or expanded tables, and observe how such tables are formatted.

Input:

```
.TS
expand;
c s s s
c c c c
l l n n.
Bell Labs Locations
Name⊕Address⊕Area Code⊕Phone
Holmdel⊕Holmdel, N. J. 07733⊕201⊕949-3000
Murray Hill⊕Murray Hill, N. J. 07974⊕201⊕582-6377
Whippany⊕Whippany, N. J. 07981⊕201⊕386-3000
Indian Hill⊕Naperville, Illinois 60540⊕312⊕690-2000
.TE
```

Output:

Bell Labs Locations

Name	Address	Area Code	Phone
Holmdel	Holmdel, N. J. 07733	201	949-3000
Murray Hill	Murray Hill, N. J. 07974	201	582-6377
Whippany	Whippany, N. J. 07981	201	386-3000
Indian Hill	Naperville, Illinois 60540	312	690-2000

Input:

```
.TS
box;
cb  s  s  s
c | c | c  s
ltiw(1i) | ltw(2i) | lp8 | lw(1.5i)p8.
Some Interesting Places
_
Name⓽ Description⓽ Practical Information
_
T{
American Museum of Natural History
T}⓽T{
The collections fill 11.5 acres (Michelin) or 25 acres (MTA)
of exhibition halls on four floors.  There is a full-sized replica
of a blue whale and the world's largest star sapphire (stolen in 1964).
T}⓽Hours⓽10-5, ex. Sun 11-5, Wed. to 9
\^⓽\^⓽Location⓽T{
Central Park West & 79th St.
T}
\^⓽\^⓽Admission⓽Donation: $1.00 asked
\^⓽\^⓽Subway⓽AA to 81st St.
\^⓽\^⓽Telephone⓽212-873-4225
_
Bronx Zoo⓽T{
About a mile long and .6 mile wide, this is the largest zoo in America.
A lion eats 18 pounds
of meat a day while a sea lion eats 15 pounds of fish.
T}⓽Hours⓽T{
10-4:30 winter, to 5:00 summer
T}
\^⓽\^⓽Location⓽T{
185th St. & Southern Blvd, the Bronx.
T}
\^⓽\^⓽Admission⓽$1.00, but Tu,We,Th free
\^⓽\^⓽Subway⓽2, 5 to East Tremont Ave.
\^⓽\^⓽Telephone⓽212-933-1759
_
Brooklyn Museum⓽T{
Five floors of galleries contain American and ancient art.
There are American period rooms and architectural ornaments saved
from wreckers, such as a classical figure from Pennsylvania Station.
T}⓽Hours⓽Wed-Sat, 10-5, Sun 12-5
\^⓽\^⓽Location⓽T{
Eastern Parkway & Washington Ave., Brooklyn.
T}
\^⓽\^⓽Admission⓽Free
\^⓽\^⓽Subway⓽2,3 to Eastern Parkway.
\^⓽\^⓽Telephone⓽718-638-5000
_
T{
New-York Historical Society
T}⓽T{
All the original paintings for Audubon's
.I
Birds of America
.R
are here, as are exhibits of American decorative arts, New York history,
Hudson River school paintings, carriages, and glass paperweights.
T}⓽Hours⓽T{
Tues-Fri & Sun, 1-5; Sat 10-5
T}
\^⓽\^⓽Location⓽T{
Central Park West & 77th St.
T}
\^⓽\^⓽Admission⓽Free
\^⓽\^⓽Subway⓽AA to 81st St.
\^⓽\^⓽Telephone⓽212-873-3400
.TE
```

Output:

Some Interesting Places			
Name	Description	Practical Information	
American Museum of Natural History	The collections fill 11.5 acres (Michelin) or 25 acres (MTA) of exhibition halls on four floors. There is a full-sized replica of a blue whale and the world's largest star sapphire (stolen in 1964).	Hours Location Admission Subway Telephone	10-5, ex. Sun 11-5, Wed. to 9 Central Park West & 79th St. Donation: $1.00 asked AA to 81st St. 212-873-4225
Bronx Zoo	About a mile long and .6 mile wide, this is the largest zoo in America. A lion eats 18 pounds of meat a day while a sea lion eats 15 pounds of fish.	Hours Location Admission Subway Telephone	10-4:30 winter, to 5:00 summer 185th St. & Southern Blvd, the Bronx. $1.00, but Tu,We,Th free 2, 5 to East Tremont Ave. 212-933-1759
Brooklyn Museum	Five floors of galleries contain American and ancient art. There are American period rooms and architectural ornaments saved from wreckers, such as a classical figure from Pennsylvania Station.	Hours Location Admission Subway Telephone	Wed-Sat, 10-5, Sun 12-5 Eastern Parkway & Washington Ave., Brooklyn. Free 2,3 to Eastern Parkway. 718-638-5000
New-York Historical Society	All the original paintings for Audubon's *Birds of America* are here, as are exhibits of American decorative arts, New York history, Hudson River school paintings, carriages, and glass paperweights.	Hours Location Admission Subway Telephone	Tues-Fri & Sun, 1-5; Sat 10-5 Central Park West & 77th St. Free AA to 81st St. 212-873-3400

Acknowledgments.

Many thanks are due to J. C. Blinn, who has done a large amount of testing and assisted with the design of the program. He has also written many of the more intelligible sentences in this document and helped edit all of it. All phototypesetting programs on UNIX are dependent on the work of J. F. Ossanna, whose assistance with this program in particular has been most helpful. This program is patterned on a table formatter originally written by J. F. Gimpel. The assistance of T. A. Dolotta, B. W. Kernighan, and J. N. Sturman is gratefully acknowledged.

References.

[1] J. F. Ossanna, *NROFF/TROFF User's Manual,* Computing Science Technical Report No. 54, Bell Laboratories, 1976.

[2] K. Thompson and D. M. Ritchie, "The UNIX Time-Sharing System," *Comm. ACM.* **17**, pp. 365–75 (1974).

[3] B. W. Kernighan and L. L. Cherry, "A System for Typesetting Mathematics," *Comm. ACM.* **18**, pp. 151–57 (1975).

[4] M. E. Lesk, *Typing Documents on UNIX,* Bell Laboratories internal memorandum.

[5] M. E. Lesk and B. W. Kernighan, *Computer Typesetting of Technical Journals on UNIX,* Computing Science Technical Report No. 44, Bell Laboratories, July 1976.

[6] J. R. Mashey and D. W. Smith, *PWB/MM — Programmer's Workbench Memorandum Macros,* Bell Laboratories memorandum.

List of Tbl Command Characters and Words

Command	*Meaning*	*Section*
a A	Alphabetic subcolumn	2
allbox	Draw box around all items	1
b B	Boldface item	2
box	Draw box around table	1
c C	Centered column	2
center	Center table in page	1
doublebox	Doubled box around table	1
e E	Equal width columns	2
expand	Make table full line width	1
f F	Font change	2
i I	Italic item	2
l L	Left adjusted column	2
n N	Numerical column	2
nnn	Column separation	2
p P	Point size change	2
r R	Right adjusted column	2
s S	Spanned item	2
t T	Vertical spanning at top	2
tab (*x*)	Change data separator character	1
T{ T}	Text block	3
v V	Vertical spacing change	2
w W	Minimum width value	2
.*xx*	Included *troff* command	3
|	Vertical line	2
||	Double vertical line	2
^	Vertical span	2
\^	Vertical span	3
=	Double horizontal line	2,3
_	Horizontal line	2,3
_	Short horizontal line	3

Refer — A Bibliography System

Bill Tuthill

Computing Services
University of California
Berkeley, CA 94720

ABSTRACT

Refer is a bibliography system that supports data entry, indexing, retrieval, sorting, runoff, convenient citations, and footnote or endnote numbering. This document assumes you know how to use some Unix editor, and that you are familiar with the **nroff/troff** text formatters.

The **refer** program is a preprocessor for **nroff/troff**, like **eqn** and **tbl**, except that it is used for literature citations, rather than for equations and tables. Given incomplete but sufficiently precise citations, **refer** finds references in a bibliographic database. The complete references are formatted as footnotes, numbered, and placed either at the bottom of the page, or at the end of a chapter.

A number of ancillary programs make **refer** easier to use. The **addbib** program is for creating and extending the bibliographic database; **sortbib** sorts the bibliography by author and date, or other selected criteria; and **roffbib** runs off the entire database, formatting it not as footnotes, but as a bibliography or annotated bibliography.

Once a full bibliography has been created, access time can be improved by making an index to the references with **indxbib**. Then, the **lookbib** program can be used to quickly retrieve individual citations or groups of citations. Creating this inverted index will speed up **refer**, and **lookbib** will allow you to verify that a citation is sufficiently precise to deliver just one reference.

Introduction

Taken together, the **refer** programs constitute a database system for use with variable-length information. To distinguish various types of bibliographic material, the system uses labels composed of upper case letters, preceded by a percent sign and followed by a space. For example, one document might be given this entry:

```
%A Joel Kies
%T Document Formatting on Unix Using the -ms Macros
%I Computing Services
%C Berkeley
%D 1980
```

Each line is called a field, and lines grouped together are called a record; records are separated from each other by a blank line. Bibliographic information follows the labels, containing data to be used by the **refer** system. The order of fields is not important, except that authors should be entered in the same order as they are listed on the document. Fields can be as long as necessary, and may even be continued on the following line(s).

The labels are meaningful to **nroff/troff** macros, and, with a few exceptions, the **refer** program itself does not pay attention to them. This implies that you can change the label codes, if you also change the macros used by **nroff/troff**. The macro package takes care of details like proper ordering, underlining the book title or journal name, and quoting the article's title. Here are the labels used by **refer**, with an indication of what they represent:

%H Header commentary, printed before reference
%A Author's name
%Q Corporate or foreign author (unreversed)
%T Title of article or book
%S Series title
%J Journal containing article
%B Book containing article
%R Report, paper, or thesis (for unpublished material)
%V Volume
%N Number within volume
%E Editor of book containing article
%P Page number(s)
%I Issuer (publisher)
%C City where published
%D Date of publication
%O Other commentary, printed at end of reference
%K Keywords used to locate reference
%L Label used by –k option of **refer**
%X Abstract (used by **roffbib**, not by **refer**)

Only relevant fields should be supplied. Except for %A, each field should be given only once; in the case of multiple authors, the senior author should come first. The %Q is for organizational authors, or authors with Japanese or Arabic names, in which cases the order of names should be preserved. Books should be labeled with the %T, not with the %B, which is reserved for books containing articles. The %J and %B fields should never appear together, although if they do, the %J will override the %B. If there is no author, just an editor, it is best to type the editor in the %A field, as in this example:

%A Bertrand Bronson, ed.

The %E field is used for the editor of a book (%B) containing an article, which has its own author. For unpublished material such as theses, use the %R field; the title in the %T field will be quoted, but the contents of the %R field will not be underlined. Unlike other fields, %H, %O, and %X should contain their own punctuation. Here is a modest example:

%A Mike E. Lesk
%T Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the Unix System
%B Unix Programmer's Manual
%I Bell Laboratories
%C Murray Hill, NJ
%D 1978
%V 2a
%K refer mkey inv hunt
%X Difficult to read paper that dwells on indexing strategies,
giving little practical advice about using \fBrefer\fP.

Note that the author's name is given in normal order, without inverting the surname; inversion is done automatically, except when %Q is used instead of %A. We use %X rather than %O for the commentary because we do not want the comment printed all the time. The %O and %H fields are printed by both **refer** and **roffbib**; the %X field is printed only by **roffbib**, as a detached annotation paragraph.

Data Entry with Addbib

The **addbib** program is for creating and extending bibliographic databases. You must give it the filename of your bibliography:

```
% addbib database
```

Every time you enter **addbib**, it asks if you want instructions. To get them, type **y**; to skip them, type RETURN. **Addbib** prompts for various fields, reads from the keyboard, and writes records containing the **refer** codes to the database. After finishing a field entry, you should end it by typing RETURN. If a field is too long to fit on a line, type a backslash (\) at the end of the line, and you will be able to continue on the following line. Note: the backslash works in this capacity only inside **addbib**.

A field will not be written to the database if nothing is entered into it. Typing a minus sign as the first character of any field will cause **addbib** to back up one field at a time. Backing up is the best way to add multiple authors, and it really helps if you forget to add something important. Fields not contained in the prompting skeleton may be entered by typing a backslash as the last character before RETURN. The following line will be sent verbatim to the database and **addbib** will resume with the next field. This is identical to the procedure for dealing with long fields, but with new fields, don't forget the % key-letter.

Finally, you will be asked for an abstract (or annotation), which will be preserved as the %X field. Type in as many lines as you need, and end with a control-D (hold down the CTRL button, then press the "d" key). This prompting for an abstract can be suppressed with the **–a** command line option.

After one bibliographic record has been completed, **addbib** will ask if you want to continue. If you do, type RETURN; to quit, type **q** or **n** (quit or no). It is also possible to use one of the system editors to correct mistakes made while entering data. After the "Continue?" prompt, type any of the following: **edit, ex, vi,** or **ed** — you will be placed inside the corresponding editor, and returned to **addbib** afterwards, from where you can either quit or add more data.

If the prompts normally supplied by **addbib** are not enough, are in the wrong order, or are too numerous, you can redefine the skeleton by constructing a promptfile. Create some file, to be named after the –p command line option. Place the prompts you want on the left side, followed by a single TAB (control-I), then the **refer** code that is to appear in the bibliographic database. **Addbib** will send the left side to the screen, and the right side, along with data entered, to the database.

Printing the Bibliography

Sortbib is for sorting the bibliography by author (%A) and date (%D), or by data in other fields. It is quite useful for producing bibliographies and annotated bibliographies, which are seldom entered in strict alphabetical order. It takes as arguments the names of up to 16 bibliography files, and sends the sorted records to standard output (the terminal screen), which may be redirected through a pipe or into a file.

The –s*KEYS* flag to **sortbib** will sort by fields whose key-letters are in the *KEYS* string, rather than merely by author and date. Key-letters in *KEYS* may be followed by a '+' to indicate that all such fields are to be used. The default is to sort by senior author and date (printing the senior author last name first), but –sA+D will sort by all authors and then date, and –sATD will sort on senior author, then title, and then date.

Roffbib is for running off the (probably sorted) bibliography. It can handle annotated bibliographies — annotations are entered in the %X (abstract) field. **Roffbib** is a shell script that calls **refer –B** and **nroff –mbib**. It uses the macro definitions that reside in /usr/lib/tmac/tmac.bib, which you can redefine if you know **nroff** and **troff**. Note that **refer** will print the %H and %O commentaries, but will ignore abstracts in the %X field; **roffbib** will print both fields, unless annotations are suppressed with the –x option.

The following command sequence will lineprint the entire bibliography, organized alphabetically by author and date:

```
% sortbib database | roffbib | lpr
```

This is a good way to proofread the bibliography, or to produce a stand-alone bibliography at the end of a paper. Incidentally, **roffbib** accepts all flags used with **nroff**. For example:

```
% sortbib database | roffbib -Tdtc -s1
```

will make accent marks work on a DTC daisy-wheel printer, and stop at the bottom of every page for changing paper. The -n and -o flags may also be quite useful, to start page numbering at a selected point, or to produce only specific pages.

Roffbib understands four command-line number registers, which are something like the two-letter number registers in -ms. The -rN1 argument will number references beginning at one (1); use another number to start somewhere besides one. The -rV2 flag will double-space the entire bibliography, while -rV1 will double-space the references, but single-space the annotation paragraphs. Finally, specifying -rL6i changes the line length from 6.5 inches to 6 inches, and saying -rO1i sets the page offset to one inch, instead of zero. (That's a capital O after -r, not a zero.)

Citing Papers with Refer

The **refer** program normally copies input to output, except when it encounters an item of the form:

```
.[
partial citation
.]
```

The partial citation may be just an author's name and a date, or perhaps a title and a keyword, or maybe just a document number. **Refer** looks up the citation in the bibliographic database, and transforms it into a full, properly formatted reference. If the partial citation does not correctly identify a single work (either finding nothing, or more than one reference), a diagnostic message is given. If nothing is found, it will say "No such paper." If more than one reference is found, it will say "Too many hits." Other diagnostic messages can be quite cryptic; if you are in doubt, use **checknr** to verify that all your .['s have matching .]'s.

When everything goes well, the reference will be brought in from the database, numbered, and placed at the bottom of the page. This citation,[1] for example, was produced by:

```
This citation,
.[
lesk inverted indexes
.]
for example, was produced by
```

The .[and .] markers, in essence, replace the .FS and .FE of the -ms macros, and also provide a numbering mechanism. Footnote numbers will be bracketed on the the lineprinter, but superscripted on daisy-wheel terminals and in **troff**. In the reference itself, articles will be quoted, and books and journals will be underlined in **nroff**, and italicized in **troff**.

Sometimes you need to cite a specific page number along with more general bibliographic material. You may have, for instance, a single document that you refer to several times, each time giving a different page citation. This is how you could get "p. 10" in the reference:

---

[1] Mike E. Lesk, "Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the Unix System," *Unix Programmer's Manual*, vol. 2a, Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, NJ, 1978.

```
.[
kies document formatting
%P 10
.]
```

The first line, a partial citation, will find the reference in your bibliography. The second line will insert the page number into the final citation. Ranges of pages may be specified as "%P 56-78".

When the time comes to run off a paper, you will need to have two files: the bibliographic database, and the paper to format. Use a command line something like one of these:

```
% refer -p database paper | nroff -ms
% refer -p database paper | tbl | nroff -ms
% refer -p database paper | tbl | neqn | nroff -ms
```

If other preprocessors are used, **refer** should precede **tbl**, which must in turn precede **eqn** or **neqn**. The -p option specifies a "private" database, which most bibliographies are.

Refer's Command-line Options

Many people like to place references at the end of a chapter, rather than at the bottom of the page. The -e option will accumulate references until a macro sequence of the form

```
.[
$LIST$
.]
```

is encountered (or until the end of file). **Refer** will then write out all references collected up to that point, collapsing identical references. Warning: there is a limit (currently 200) on the number of references that can be accumulated at one time.

It is also possible to sort references that appear at the end of text. The -s*KEYS* flag will sort references by fields whose key-letters are in the *KEYS* string, and permute reference numbers in the text accordingly. It is unnecessary to use -e with it, since -s implies -e. Key-letters in *KEYS* may be followed by a '+' to indicate that all such fields are to be used. The default is to sort by senior author and date, but -sA+D will sort on all authors and then date, and -sA+T will sort by authors and then title.

Refer can also make citations in what is known as the Social or Natural Sciences format. Instead of numbering references, the -l (letter ell) flag makes labels from the senior author's last name and the year of publication. For example, a reference to the paper on Inverted Indexes cited above might appear as [Lesk1978a]. It is possible to control the number of characters in the last name, and the number of digits in the date. For instance, the command line argument -l6,2 might produce a reference such as [Kernig78c].

Some bibliography standards shun both footnote numbers and labels composed of author and date, requiring some keyword to identify the reference. The -k flag indicates that, instead of numbering references, key labels specified on the %L line should be used to mark references.

The -n flag means to not search the default reference file, located in /usr/dict/papers/Rv7man. Using this flag may make **refer** marginally faster. The -a*n* flag will reverse the first *n* author names, printing Jones, J. A. instead of J. A. Jones. Often -a1 is enough; this will reverse the names of only the senior author. In some versions of **refer** there is also the -f flag to set the footnote number to some predetermined value; for example, -f23 would start numbering with footnote 23.

Making an Index

Once your database is large and relatively stable, it is a good idea to make an index to it, so that references can be found quickly and efficiently. The **indxbib** program makes an inverted index to the bibliographic database (this program is called **pubindex** in the Bell Labs manual). An inverted index

could be compared to the thumb cuts of a dictionary — instead of going all the way through your bibliography, programs can move to the exact location where a citation is found.

Indxbib itself takes a while to run, and you will need sufficient disk space to store the indexes. But once it has been run, access time will improve dramatically. Furthermore, large databases of several million characters can be indexed with no problem. The program is exceedingly simple to use:

```
% indxbib database
```

Be aware that changing your database will require that you run **indxbib** over again. If you don't, you may fail to find a reference that really is in the database.

Once you have built an inverted index, you can use **lookbib** to find references in the database. **Lookbib** cannot be used until you have run **indxbib**. When editing a paper, **lookbib** is very useful to make sure that a citation can be found as specified. It takes one argument, the name of the bibliography, and then reads partial citations from the terminal, returning references that match, or nothing if none match. Its prompt is the greater-than sign.

```
% lookbib database
> lesk inverted indexes
%A Mike E. Lesk
%T Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the Unix System
%J Unix Programmer's Manual
%I Bell Laboratories
%C Murray Hill, NJ
%D 1978
%V 2a
%X Difficult to read paper that dwells on indexing strategies,
giving little practical advice about using \fBrefer\fP.
>
```


If more than one reference comes back, you will have to give a more precise citation for **refer**. Experiment until you find something that works; remember that it is harmless to overspecify. To get out of the **lookbib** program, type a control-D alone on a line; **lookbib** then exits with an "EOT" message.

Lookbib can also be used to extract groups of related citations. For example, to find all the papers by Brian Kernighan found in the system database, and send the output to a file, type:

```
% lookbib /usr/dict/papers/Ind > kern.refs
> kernighan
> EOT
% cat kern.refs
```

Your file, "kern.refs", will be full of references. A similar procedure can be used to pull out all papers of some date, all papers from a given journal, all papers containing a certain group of keywords, etc.

Refer Bugs and Some Solutions

The **refer** program will mess up if there are blanks at the end of lines, especially the %A author line. **Addbib** carefully removes trailing blanks, but they may creep in again during editing. Use an editor command — g/ *$/s/// — to remove trailing blanks from your bibliography.

Having bibliographic fields passed through as string definitions implies that interpolated strings (such as accent marks) must have two backslashes, so they can pass through copy mode intact. For instance, the word "téléphone" would have to be represented:

```
te\\*'le\\*'phone
```

in order to come out correctly. In the %X field, by contrast, you will have to use single backslashes

instead. This is because the %X field is not passed through as a string, but as the body of a paragraph macro.

Another problem arises from authors with foreign names. When a name like "Valéry Giscard d'Estaing" is turned around by the –a option of **refer**, it will appear as "d'Estaing, Valéry Giscard," rather than as "Giscard d'Estaing, Valéry." To prevent this, enter names as follows:

```
%A  Vale\\*'ry  Giscard\0d'Estaing
%A  Alexander  Csoma\0de\0Ko\\*:ro\\*:s
```

(The second is the name of a famous Hungarian linguist.) The backslash-zero is an **nroff/troff** request meaning to insert a digit-width space. It will protect against faulty name reversal, and also against mis-sorting.

Footnote numbers are placed at the end of the line before the .[macro. This line should be a line of text, not a macro. As an example, if the line before the .[is a .R macro, then the .R will eat the footnote number. (The .R is an –ms request meaning change to Roman font.) In cases where the font needs changing, it is necessary to do the following:

```
\fIet al.\fR
.[
awk aho kernighan weinberger
.]
```

Now the reference will be to Aho *et al.*[2] The \fI changes to italics, and the \fR changes back to Roman font. Both these requests are **nroff/troff** requests, not part of –ms. If and when a footnote number is added after this sequence, it will indeed appear in the output.

Internal Details of Refer

You have already read everything you need to know in order to use the **refer** bibliography system. The remaining sections are provided only for extra information, and in case you need to change the way **refer** works.

The output of **refer** is a stream of string definitions, one for each field in a reference. To create string names, percent signs are simply changed to an open bracket, and an [F string is added, containing the footnote number. The %X, %Y and %Z fields are ignored; however, the **annobib** program changes the %X to an .AP (annotation paragraph) macro. The citation used above yields this intermediate output:

```
.ds [F 1
.]-
.ds [A Mike E. Lesk
.ds [T Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the Unix System
.ds [J Unix Programmer's Manual
.ds [I Bell Laboratories
.ds [C Murray Hill, NJ
.ds [D 1978
.ds [V 2a
.nr [T 0
.nr [A 0
.nr [O 0
.][ 1 journal-article
```

These string definitions are sent to **nroff**, which can use the –ms macros defined in /usr/lib/mx/tmac.xref to take care of formatting things properly. The initializing macro .]– precedes

[2] Alfred V. Aho, Brian W. Kernighan, and Peter J. Weinberger, "Awk — A Pattern Scanning and Processing Language," *Unix Programmer's Manual*, vol. 2a, Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, NJ, 1978.

the string definitions, and the labeled macro .][follows. These are changed from the input .[and .] so that running a file twice through **refer** is harmless.

The .][macro, used to print the reference, is given a type-number argument, which is a numeric label indicating the type of reference involved. Here is a list of the various kinds of references:

Field	Value	Kind of Reference
%J	1	Journal Article
%B	3	Article in Book
%R %G	4	Report, Government Report
%I	2	Book
%M	5	Bell Labs Memorandum (undefined)
none	0	Other

The order listed above is indicative of the precedence of the various fields. In other words, a reference that has both the %J and %B fields will be classified as a journal article. If none of the fields listed is present, then the reference will be classified as "other."

The footnote number is flagged in the text with the following sequence, where *number* is the footnote number:

*([.*number**(.]

The *([. and *(.] stand for bracketing or superscripting. In **nroff** with low-resolution devices such as the lpr and a crt, footnote numbers will be bracketed. In **troff**, or on daisy-wheel printers, footnote numbers will be superscripted. Punctuation normally comes before the reference number; this can be changed by using the –P (postpunctuation) option of **refer**.

In some cases, it is necessary to override certain fields in a reference. For instance, each time a work is cited, you may want to specify different page numbers, and you may want to change certain fields. This citation will find the Lesk reference, but will add specific page numbers to the output, even though no page numbers appeared in the original reference.


```
.[
lesk inverted indexes
%P 7-13
%I Computing Services
%O UNX 12.2.2.
.]
```

The %I line will also override any previous publisher information, and the %O line will append some commentary. The **refer** program simply adds the new %P, %I, and %O strings to the output, and later strings definitions cancel earlier ones.

It is also possible to insert an entire citation that does not appear in the bibliographic database. This reference, for example, could be added as follows:

```
.[
%A Brian Kernighan
%T A Troff Tutorial
%I Bell Laboratories
%D 1978
.]
```

This will cause **refer** to interpret the fields exactly as given, without searching the bibliographic database. This practice is not recommended, however, because it's better to add new references to the database, so they can be used again later.

If you want to change the way footnote numbers are printed, signals can be given on the .[and .] lines. For example, to say "See reference (2)," the citation should appear as:

```
See reference
.[(
partial citation
.]),
```

Note that blanks are significant on these signal lines. If a permanent change in the footnote format is desired, it's best to redefine the [. and .] strings.

Changing the Refer Macros

This section is provided for those who wish to rewrite or modify the **refer** macros. This is necessary in order to make output correspond to specific journal requirements, or departmental standards. First there is an explanation of how new macros can be substituted for the old ones. Then several alterations are given as examples. Finally, there is an annotated copy of the **refer** macros used by **roffbib**.

The **refer** macros for **nroff/troff** supplied by the –ms macro package reside in /usr/lib/mx/tmac.xref; they are reference macros, for producing footnotes or endnotes. The **refer** macros used by **roffbib**, on the other hand, reside in /usr/lib/tmac/tmac.bib; they are for producing a stand-alone bibliography.

To change the macros used by **roffbib**, you will need to get your own version of this shell script into the directory where you are working. These two commands will get you a copy of **roffbib** and the macros it uses: †

```
% cp /usr/lib/tmac/tmac.bib bibmac
```

You can proceed to change bibmac as much as you like. Then when you use **roffbib**, you should specify your own version of the macros, which will be substituted for the normal ones

```
% roffbib –m bibmac filename
```

where *filename* is the name of your bibliography file. Make sure there's a space between –m and **bibmac**.

If you want to modify the **refer** macros for use with **nroff** and the –ms macros, you will need to get a copy of "tmac.xref":

```
% cp /usr/lib/ms/s.ref refmac
```

These macros are much like "bibmac", except they have .FS and .FE requests, to be used in conjunction with the –ms macros, rather than independently defined .XP and .AP requests. Now you can put this line at the top of the paper to be formatted:

```
.so refmac
```

Your new **refer** macros will override the definitions previously read in by the –ms package. This method works only if "refmac" is in the working directory.

Suppose you didn't like the way dates are printed, and wanted them to be parenthesized, with no comma before. There are five identical lines you will have to change. The first line below is the old way, while the second is the new way:

```
.if !"\\*([D"" , \\*([D\c
.if !"\\*([D"" \& (\\*([D)\c
```

In the first line, there is a comma and a space, but no parentheses. The "\c" at the end of each line indicates to **nroff** that it should continue, leaving no extra space in the output. The "\&" in the second line is the do-nothing character; when followed by a space, a space is sent to the output.

If you need to format a reference in the style favored by the Modern Language Association or Chicago University Press, in the form (city: publisher, date), then you will have to change the middle

of the book macro [2 as follows:

```
\& (\c
.if !"\\*([C"" \\*([C:
\\*([I\c
.if !"\\*([D"" , \\*([D\c
)\c
```

This would print (Berkeley: Computing Services, 1982) if all three strings were present. The first line prints a space and a parenthesis; the second prints the city (and a colon) if present; the third always prints the publisher (books must have a publisher, or else they're classified as other); the fourth line prints a comma and the date if present; and the fifth line closes the parentheses. You would need to make similar changes to the other macros as well.

Acknowledgements

Mike Lesk of Bell Laboratories wrote the original **refer** software, including the indexing programs. Al Stangenberger of the Forestry Department wrote the first version of **addbib**, then called **bibin**. Greg Shenaut of the Linguistics Department wrote the original versions of **sortbib** and **roffbib**. All these contributions are greatly appreciated.

Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the UNIX System

M. E. Lesk

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

1. Introduction.

The UNIX† system has many utilities (e.g. *grep, awk, lex, egrep, fgrep, ...*) to search through files of text, but most of them are based on a linear scan through the entire file, using some deterministic automaton. This memorandum discusses a program which uses inverted indexes[1] and can thus be used on much larger data bases.

As with any indexing system, of course, there are some disadvantages; once an index is made, the files that have been indexed can not be changed without remaking the index. Thus applications are restricted to those making many searches of relatively stable data. Furthermore, these programs depend on hashing, and can only search for exact matches of whole keywords. It is not possible to look for arithmetic or logical expressions (e.g. "date greater than 1970") or for regular expression searching such as that in *lex*.[2]

Currently there are two uses of this software, the *refer* preprocessor to format references, and the *lookall* command to search through all text files on the UNIX system.‡

The remaining sections of this memorandum discuss the searching programs and their uses. Section 2 explains the operation of the searching algorithm and describes the data collected for use with the *lookall* command. The more important application, *refer* has a user's description in section 3. Section 4 goes into more detail on reference files for the benefit of those who wish to add references to data bases or write new *troff* macros for use with *refer*. The options to make *refer* collect identical citations, or otherwise relocate and adjust references, are described in section 5.

2. Searching.

The indexing and searching process is divided into two phases, each made of two parts. These are shown below.

A. Construct the index.
   (1) Find keys — turn the input files into a sequence of tags and keys, where each tag identifies a distinct item in the input and the keys for each such item are the strings under which it is to be indexed.
   (2) Hash and sort — prepare a set of inverted indexes from which, given a set of keys, the appropriate item tags can be found quickly.

B. Retrieve an item in response to a query.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

[1] D. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming: Vol. 3, Sorting and Searching*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1977. See section 6.5.

[2] M. E. Lesk, "Lex — A Lexical Analyzer Generator," Comp. Sci. Tech. Rep. No. 39, Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey, October 1975. Reprinted as PS1:16 in *UNIX Programmer's Manual*, Usenix Association, (1986).

‡ *lookall* is not part of the Berkeley UNIX distribution.

(3) Search — Given some keys, look through the files prepared by the hashing and sorting facility and derive the appropriate tags.

(4) Deliver — Given the tags, find the original items. This completes the searching process.

The first phase, making the index, is presumably done relatively infrequently. It should, of course, be done whenever the data being indexed change. In contrast, the second phase, retrieving items, is presumably done often, and must be rapid.

An effort is made to separate code which depends on the data being handled from code which depends on the searching procedure. The search algorithm is involved only in programs (2) and (3), while knowledge of the actual data files is needed only by programs (1) and (4). Thus it is easy to adapt to different data files or different search algorithms.

To start with, it is necessary to have some way of selecting or generating keys from input files. For dealing with files that are basically English, we have a key-making program which automatically selects words and passes them to the hashing and sorting program (step 2). The format used has one line for each input item, arranged as follows:

name:start,length (tab) key1 key2 key3 ...

where *name* is the file name, *start* is the starting byte number, and *length* is the number of bytes in the entry.

These lines are the only input used to make the index. The first field (the file name, byte position, and byte count) is the tag of the item and can be used to retrieve it quickly. Normally, an item is either a whole file or a section of a file delimited by blank lines. After the tab, the second field contains the keys. The keys, if selected by the automatic program, are any alphanumeric strings which are not among the 100 most frequent words in English and which are not entirely numeric (except for four-digit numbers beginning 19, which are accepted as dates). Keys are truncated to six characters and converted to lower case. Some selection is needed if the original items are very large. We normally just take the first *n* keys, with *n* less than 100 or so; this replaces any attempt at intelligent selection. One file in our system is a complete English dictionary; it would presumably be retrieved for all queries.

To generate an inverted index to the list of record tags and keys, the keys are hashed and sorted to produce an index. What is wanted, ideally, is a series of lists showing the tags associated with each key. To condense this, what is actually produced is a list showing the tags associated with each hash code, and thus with some set of keys. To speed up access and further save space, a set of three or possibly four files is produced. These files are:

File	Contents
entry	Pointers to posting file for each hash code
posting	Lists of tag pointers for each hash code
tag	Tags for each item
key	Keys for each item (optional)

The posting file comprises the real data: it contains a sequence of lists of items posted under each hash code. To speed up searching, the entry file is an array of pointers into the posting file, one per potential hash code. Furthermore, the items in the lists in the posting file are not referred to by their complete tag, but just by an address in the tag file, which gives the complete tags. The key file is optional and contains a copy of the keys used in the indexing.

The searching process starts with a query, containing several keys. The goal is to obtain all items which were indexed under these keys. The query keys are hashed, and the pointers in the entry file used to access the lists in the posting file. These lists are addresses in the tag file of documents posted under the hash codes derived from the query. The common items from all lists are determined; this must include the items indexed by every key, but may also contain some items which are

false drops, since items referenced by the correct hash codes need not actually have contained the correct keys. Normally, if there are several keys in the query, there are not likely to be many false drops in the final combined list even though each hash code is somewhat ambiguous. The actual tags are then obtained from the tag file, and to guard against the possibility that an item has false-dropped on some hash code in the query, the original items are normally obtained from the delivery program (4) and the query keys checked against them by string comparison.

Usually, therefore, the check for bad drops is made against the original file. However, if the key derivation procedure is complex, it may be preferable to check against the keys fed to program (2). In this case the optional key file which contains the keys associated with each item is generated, and the item tag is supplemented by a string

;start,length

which indicates the starting byte number in the key file and the length of the string of keys for each item. This file is not usually necessary with the present key-selection program, since the keys always appear in the original document.

There is also an option (-C*n*) for coordination level searching. This retrieves items which match all but *n* of the query keys. The items are retrieved in the order of the number of keys that they match. Of course, *n* must be less than the number of query keys (nothing is retrieved unless it matches at least one key).

As an example, consider one set of 4377 references, comprising 660,000 bytes. This included 51,000 keys, of which 5,900 were distinct keys. The hash table is kept full to save space (at the expense of time); 995 of 997 possible hash codes were used. The total set of index files (no key file) included 171,000 bytes, about 26% of the original file size. It took 8 minutes of processor time to hash, sort, and write the index. To search for a single query with the resulting index took 1.9 seconds of processor time, while to find the same paper with a sequential linear search using *grep* (reading all of the tags and keys) took 12.3 seconds of processor time.

We have also used this software to index all of the English stored on our UNIX system. This is the index searched by the *lookall* command. On a typical day there were 29,000 files in our user file system, containing about 152,000,000 bytes. Of these 5,300 files, containing 32,000,000 bytes (about 21%) were English text. The total number of 'words' (determined mechanically) was 5,100,000. Of these 227,000 were selected as keys; 19,000 were distinct, hashing to 4,900 (of 5,000 possible) different hash codes. The resulting inverted file indexes used 845,000 bytes, or about 2.6% of the size of the original files. The particularly small indexes are caused by the fact that keys are taken from only the first 50 non-common words of some very long input files.

Even this large *lookall* index can be searched quickly. For example, to find this document by looking for the keys "lesk inverted indexes" required 1.7 seconds of processor time and system time. By comparison, just to search the 800,000 byte dictionary (smaller than even the inverted indexes, let alone the 27,000,000 bytes of text files) with *grep* takes 29 seconds of processor time. The *lookall* program is thus useful when looking for a document which you believe is stored on-line, but do not know where. For example, many memos from our center are in the file system, but it is often difficult to guess where a particular memo might be (it might have several authors, each with many directories, and have been worked on by a secretary with yet more directories). Instructions for the use of the *lookall* command are given in the manual section, shown in the appendix to this memorandum.

The only indexes maintained routinely are those of publication lists and all English files. To make other indexes, the programs for making keys, sorting them, searching the indexes, and delivering answers must be used. Since they are usually invoked as parts of higher-level commands, they are not in the default command directory, but are available to any user in the directory */usr/lib/refer*. Three programs are of interest: *mkey*, which isolates keys from input files; *inv*, which makes an index from a set of keys; and *hunt*, which searches the index and delivers the items. Note that the two parts of the retrieval phase are combined into one program, to avoid the excessive system work and delay which would result from running these as separate processes.

These three commands have a large number of options to adapt to different kinds of input. The user not interested in the detailed description that now follows may skip to section 3, which describes the *refer* program, a packaged-up version of these tools specifically oriented towards formatting references.

Make Keys. The program *mkey* is the key-making program corresponding to step (1) in phase A. Normally, it reads its input from the file names given as arguments, and if there are no arguments it reads from the standard input. It assumes that blank lines in the input delimit separate items, for each of which a different line of keys should be generated. The lines of keys are written on the standard output. Keys are any alphanumeric string in the input not among the most frequent words in English and not entirely numeric (except that all-numeric strings are acceptable if they are between 1900 and 1999). In the output, keys are translated to lower case, and truncated to six characters in length; any associated punctuation is removed. The following flag arguments are recognized by *mkey:*

-c *name*	Name of file of common words; default is */usr/lib/eign.*
-f *name*	Read a list of files from *name* and take each as an input argument.
-i *chars*	Ignore all lines which begin with '%' followed by any character in *chars*.
-k*n*	Use at most *n* keys per input item.
-l*n*	Ignore items shorter than *n* letters long.
-n*m*	Ignore as a key any word in the first *m* words of the list of common English words. The default is 100.
-s	Remove the labels *(file:start,length)* from the output; just give the keys. Used when searching rather than indexing.
-w	Each whole file is a separate item; blank lines in files are irrelevant.

The normal arguments for indexing references are the defaults, which are *-c /usr/lib/eign*, *-n100*, and *-l3*. For searching, the *-s* option is also needed. When the big *lookall* index of all English files is run, the options are *-w*, *-k50*, and *-f (filelist)*. When running on textual input, the *mkey* program processes about 1000 English words per processor second. Unless the *-k* option is used (and the input files are long enough for it to take effect) the output of *mkey* is comparable in size to its input.

Hash and invert. The *inv* program computes the hash codes and writes the inverted files. It reads the output of *mkey* and writes the set of files described earlier in this section. It expects one argument, which is used as the base name for the three (or four) files to be written. Assuming an argument of *Index* (the default) the entry file is named *Index.ia*, the posting file *Index.ib*, the tag file *Index.ic*, and the key file (if present) *Index.id*. The *inv* program recognizes the following options:

-a	Append the new keys to a previous set of inverted files, making new files if there is no old set using the same base name.
-d	Write the optional key file. This is needed when you can not check for false drops by looking for the keys in the original inputs, i.e. when the key derivation procedure is complicated and the output keys are not words from the input files.
-h*n*	The hash table size is *n* (default 997); *n* should be prime. Making *n* bigger saves search time and spends disk space.
-i[u] *name*	Take input from file *name*, instead of the standard input; if **u** is present *name* is unlinked when the sort is started. Using this option permits the sort scratch space to overlap the disk space used for input keys.
-n	Make a completely new set of inverted files, ignoring previous files.

-p	Pipe into the sort program, rather than writing a temporary input file. This saves disk space and spends processor time.
-v	Verbose mode; print a summary of the number of keys which finished indexing.

About half the time used in *inv* is in the contained sort. Assuming the sort is roughly linear, however, a guess at the total timing for *inv* is 250 keys per second. The space used is usually of more importance: the entry file uses four bytes per possible hash (note the **-h** option), and the tag file around 15-20 bytes per item indexed. Roughly, the posting file contains one item for each key instance and one item for each possible hash code; the items are two bytes long if the tag file is less than 65336 bytes long, and the items are four bytes wide if the tag file is greater than 65536 bytes long. Note that to minimize storage, the hash tables should be over-full; for most of the files indexed in this way, there is no other real choice, since the *entry* file must fit in memory.

Searching and Retrieving. The *hunt* program retrieves items from an index. It combines, as mentioned above, the two parts of phase (B): search and delivery. The reason why it is efficient to combine delivery and search is partly to avoid starting unnecessary processes, and partly because the delivery operation must be a part of the search operation in any case. Because of the hashing, the search part takes place in two stages: first items are retrieved which have the right hash codes associated with them, and then the actual items are inspected to determine false drops, i.e. to determine if anything with the right hash codes doesn't really have the right keys. Since the original item is retrieved to check on false drops, it is efficient to present it immediately, rather than only giving the tag as output and later retrieving the item again. If there were a separate key file, this argument would not apply, but separate key files are not common.

Input to *hunt* is taken from the standard input, one query per line. Each query should be in *mkey -s* output format; all lower case, no punctuation. The *hunt* program takes one argument which specifies the base name of the index files to be searched. Only one set of index files can be searched at a time, although many text files may be indexed as a group, of course. If one of the text files has been changed since the index, that file is searched with *fgrep;* this may occasionally slow down the searching, and care should be taken to avoid having many out of date files. The following option arguments are recognized by *hunt:*

-a	Give all output; ignore checking for false drops.
-C*n*	Coordination level *n;* retrieve items with not more than *n* terms of the input missing; default *C0*, implying that each search term must be in the output items.
-F[yn*d***]**	"-Fy" gives the text of all the items found; "-Fn" suppresses them. "-F*d*" where *d* is an integer gives the text of the first *d* items. The default is *-Fy.*
-g	Do not use *fgrep* to search files changed since the index was made; print an error comment instead.
-i *string*	Take *string* as input, instead of reading the standard input.
-l *n*	The maximum length of internal lists of candidate items is *n;* default 1000.
-o *string*	Put text output ("-Fy") in *string;* of use *only* when invoked from another program.
-p	Print hash code frequencies; mostly for use in optimizing hash table sizes.
-T[yn*d***]**	"-Ty" gives the tags of the items found; "-Tn" suppresses them. "-T*d*" where *d* is an integer gives the first *d* tags. The default is *-Tn*.
-t *string*	Put tag output ("-Ty") in *string;* of use *only* when invoked from another program.

The timing of *hunt* is complex. Normally the hash table is overfull, so that there will be many false drops on any single term; but a multi-term query will have few false drops on all terms. Thus if

a query is underspecified (one search term) many potential items will be examined and discarded as false drops, wasting time. If the query is overspecified (a dozen search terms) many keys will be examined only to verify that the single item under consideration has that key posted. The variation of search time with number of keys is shown in the table below. Queries of varying length were constructed to retrieve a particular document from the file of references. In the sequence to the left, search terms were chosen so as to select the desired paper as quickly as possible. In the sequence on the right, terms were chosen inefficiently, so that the query did not uniquely select the desired document until four keys had been used. The same document was the target in each case, and the final set of eight keys are also identical; the differences at five, six and seven keys are produced by measurement error, not by the slightly different key lists.

Efficient Keys				Inefficient Keys			
No. keys	Total drops (incl. false)	Retrieved Documents	Search time (seconds)	No. keys	Total drops (incl. false)	Retrieved Documents	Search time (seconds)
1	15	3	1.27	1	68	55	5.96
2	1	1	0.11	2	29	29	2.72
3	1	1	0.14	3	8	8	0.95
4	1	1	0.17	4	1	1	0.18
5	1	1	0.19	5	1	1	0.21
6	1	1	0.23	6	1	1	0.22
7	1	1	0.27	7	1	1	0.26
8	1	1	0.29	8	1	1	0.29

As would be expected, the optimal search is achieved when the query just specifies the answer; however, overspecification is quite cheap. Roughly, the time required by *hunt* can be approximated as 30 milliseconds per search key plus 75 milliseconds per dropped document (whether it is a false drop or a real answer). In general, overspecification can be recommended; it protects the user against additions to the data base which turn previously uniquely-answered queries into ambiguous queries.

The careful reader will have noted an enormous discrepancy between these times and the earlier quoted time of around 1.9 seconds for a search. The times here are purely for the search and retrieval: they are measured by running many searches through a single invocation of the *hunt* program alone. The normal retrieval operation involves using the shell to set up a pipeline through *mkey* to *hunt* and starting both processes; this adds a fixed overhead of about 1.7 seconds of processor time to any single search. Furthermore, remember that all these times are processor times: on a typical morning on our PDP 11/70 system, with about one dozen people logged on, to obtain 1 second of processor time for the search program took between 2 and 12 seconds of real time, with a median of 3.9 seconds and a mean of 4.8 seconds. Thus, although the work involved in a single search may be only 200 milliseconds, after you add the 1.7 seconds of startup processor time and then assume a 4:1 elapsed/processor time ratio, it will be 8 seconds before any response is printed.

3. Selecting and Formatting References for TROFF

The major application of the retrieval software is *refer,* which is a *troff* preprocessor like *eqn*.[3] It scans its input looking for items of the form

```
.[
imprecise citation
.]
```

where an imprecise citation is merely a string of words found in the relevant bibliographic citation. This is translated into a properly formatted reference. If the imprecise citation does not correctly identify a single paper (either selecting no papers or too many) a message is given. The data base of

[3] B. W. Kernighan and L. L. Cherry, "A System for Typesetting Mathematics," *Comm. Assoc. Comp. Mach.*, vol. 18, pp. 151-157, Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey, March 1975. Reprinted as USD:26 in *UNIX User's Manual,* Usenix Association, (1986).

citations searched may be tailored to each system, and individual users may specify their own citation files. On our system, the default data base is accumulated from the publication lists of the members of our organization, plus about half a dozen personal bibliographies that were collected. The present total is about 4300 citations, but this increases steadily. Even now, the data base covers a large fraction of local citations.

For example, the reference for the *eqn* paper above was specified as

```
...
preprocessor like
.I eqn.
.[
kernighan cherry acm 1975
.]
It scans its input looking for items
...
```

This paper was itself printed using *refer*. The above input text was processed by *refer* as well as *tbl* and *troff* by the command

refer memo-file | tbl | troff -ms

and the reference was automatically translated into a correct citation to the ACM paper on mathematical typesetting.

The procedure to use to place a reference in a paper using *refer* is as follows. First, use the *lookbib* command to check that the paper is in the data base and to find out what keys are necessary to retrieve it. This is done by typing *lookbib* and then typing some potential queries until a suitable query is found. For example, had one started to find the *eqn* paper shown above by presenting the query

```
$ lookbib
kernighan cherry
(EOT)
```

lookbib would have found several items; experimentation would quickly have shown that the query given above is adequate. Overspecifying the query is of course harmless. A particularly careful reader may have noticed that "acm" does not appear in the printed citation; we have supplemented some of the data base items with common extra keywords, such as common abbreviations for journals or other sources, to aid in searching.

If the reference is in the data base, the query that retrieved it can be inserted in the text, between .[and .] brackets. If it is not in the data base, it can be typed into a private file of references, using the format discussed in the next section, and then the -p option used to search this private file. Such a command might read (if the private references are called *myfile*)

refer -p myfile document | tbl | eqn | troff -ms . . .

where *tbl* and/or *eqn* could be omitted if not needed. The use of the *-ms* macros[4] or some other macro package, however, is essential. *Refer* only generates the data for the references; exact formatting is done by some macro package, and if none is supplied the references will not be printed.

By default, the references are numbered sequentially, and the *-ms* macros format references as footnotes at the bottom of the page. This memorandum is an example of that style. Other possibilities are discussed in section 5 below.

[4] M. E. Lesk, *Typing Documents on UNIX and GCOS: The -ms Macros for Troff*, 1977. Revised version reprinted as USD:20 in *UNIX User's Manual*, Usenix Association, (1986).

4. Reference Files.

A reference file is a set of bibliographic references usable with *refer*. It can be indexed using the software described in section 2 for fast searching. What *refer* does is to read the input document stream, looking for imprecise citation references. It then searches through reference files to find the full citations, and inserts them into the document. The format of the full citation is arranged to make it convenient for a macro package, such as the *-ms* macros, to format the reference for printing. Since the format of the final reference is determined by the desired style of output, which is determined by the macros used, *refer* avoids forcing any kind of reference appearance. All it does is define a set of string registers which contain the basic information about the reference; and provide a macro call which is expanded by the macro package to format the reference. It is the responsibility of the final macro package to see that the reference is actually printed; if no macros are used, and the output of *refer* fed untranslated to *troff*, nothing at all will be printed.

The strings defined by *refer* are taken directly from the files of references, which are in the following format. The references should be separated by blank lines. Each reference is a sequence of lines beginning with % and followed by a key-letter. The remainder of that line, and successive lines until the next line beginning with %, contain the information specified by the key-letter. In general, *refer* does not interpret the information, but merely presents it to the macro package for final formatting. A user with a separate macro package, for example, can add new key-letters or use the existing ones for other purposes without bothering *refer*.

The meaning of the key-letters given below, in particular, is that assigned by the *-ms* macros. Not all information, obviously, is used with each citation. For example, if a document is both an internal memorandum and a journal article, the macros ignore the memorandum version and cite only the journal article. Some kinds of information are not used at all in printing the reference; if a user does not like finding references by specifying title or author keywords, and prefers to add specific keywords to the citation, a field is available which is searched but not printed (K).

The key letters currently recognized by *refer* and *-ms*, with the kind of information implied, are:

Key	Information specified	Key	Information specified
A	Author's name	N	Issue number
B	Title of book containing item	O	Other information
C	City of publication	P	Page(s) of article
D	Date	R	Technical report reference
E	Editor of book containing item	T	Title
G	Government (NTIS) ordering number	V	Volume number
I	Issuer (publisher)		
J	Journal name		
K	Keys (for searching)	X	or
L	Label	Y	or
M	Memorandum label	Z	Information not used by *refer*

For example, a sample reference could be typed as:

```
%T Bounds on the Complexity of the Maximal
Common Subsequence Problem
%Z ctr127
%A A. V. Aho
%A D. S. Hirschberg
%A J. D. Ullman
%J J. ACM
%V 23
%N 1
%P 1-12
%M abcd-78
%D Jan. 1976
```

Order is irrelevant, except that authors are shown in the order given. The output of *refer* is a stream of string definitions, one for each of the fields of each reference, as shown below.

```
.]-
.ds [A authors' names ...
.ds [T title ...
.ds [J journal ...
...
.][ type-number
```

The special macro .]- precedes the string definitions and the special macro .][follows. These are changed from the input .[and .] so that running the same file through *refer* again is harmless. The .]- macro can be used by the macro package to initialize. The .][macro, which should be used to print the reference, is given an argument *type-number* to indicate the kind of reference, as follows:

Value	Kind of reference
1	Journal article
2	Book
3	Article within book
4	Technical report
5	Bell Labs technical memorandum
0	Other

The reference is flagged in the text with the sequence

```
\*([.number\*(.]
```

where *number* is the footnote number. The strings [. and .] should be used by the macro package to format the reference flag in the text. These strings can be replaced for a particular footnote, as described in section 5. The footnote number (or other signal) is available to the reference macro .][as the string register [F.

In some cases users wish to suspend the searching, and merely use the reference macro formatting. That is, the user doesn't want to provide a search key between .[and .] brackets, but merely the reference lines for the appropriate document. Alternatively, the user can wish to add a few fields to those in the reference as in the standard file, or override some fields. Altering or replacing fields, or supplying whole references, is easily done by inserting lines beginning with %; any such line is taken as direct input to the reference processor rather than keys to be searched. Thus

```
.[
key1 key2 key3 ...
%Q New format item
%R Override report name
.]
```

makes the indicated changes to the result of searching for the keys. All of the search keys must be

given before the first % line.

If no search keys are provided, an entire citation can be provided in-line in the text. For example, if the *eqn* paper citation were to be inserted in this way, rather than by searching for it in the data base, the input would read

```
...
preprocessor like
.I eqn.
.[
%A B. W. Kernighan
%A L. L. Cherry
%T A System for Typesetting Mathematics
%J Comm. ACM
%V 18
%N 3
%P 151-157
%D March 1975
.]
It scans its input looking for items
...
```

This would produce a citation of the same appearance as that resulting from the file search.

As shown, fields are normally turned into *troff* strings. Sometimes users would rather have them defined as macros, so that other *troff* commands can be placed into the data. When this is necessary, simply double the control character % in the data. Thus the input

```
.[
%V 23
%%M
Bell Laboratories,
Murray Hill, N.J. 07974
.]
```

is processed by *refer* into

```
.ds [V 23
.de [M
Bell Laboratories,
Murray Hill, N.J. 07974
..
```

The information after %%M is defined as a macro to be invoked by .[M while the information after %V is turned into a string to be invoked by *([V. At present *-ms* expects all information as strings.

5. Collecting References and other Refer Options

Normally, the combination of *refer* and *-ms* formats output as *troff* footnotes which are consecutively numbered and placed at the bottom of the page. However, options exist to place the references at the end; to arrange references alphabetically by senior author; and to indicate references by strings in the text of the form [Name1975a] rather than by number. Whenever references are not placed at the bottom of a page identical references are coalesced.

For example, the -e option to *refer* specifies that references are to be collected; in this case they are output whenever the sequence

```
.[
$LIST$
.]
```

is encountered. Thus, to place references at the end of a paper, the user would run *refer* with the *-e* option and place the above $LIST$ commands after the last line of the text. *Refer* will then move all the references to that point. To aid in formatting the collected references, *refer* writes the references preceded by the line

```
.]<
```

and followed by the line

```
.]>
```

to invoke special macros before and after the references.

Another possible option to *refer* is the **-s** option to specify sorting of references. The default, of course, is to list references in the order presented. The **-s** option implies the **-e** option, and thus requires a

```
.[
$LIST$
.]
```

entry to call out the reference list. The **-s** option may be followed by a string of letters, numbers, and '+' signs indicating how the references are to be sorted. The sort is done using the fields whose key-letters are in the string as sorting keys; the numbers indicate how many of the fields are to be considered, with '+' taken as a large number. Thus the default is **-sAD** meaning "Sort on senior author, then date." To sort on all authors and then title, specify **-sA+T**. And to sort on two authors and then the journal, write **-sA2J**.

Other options to *refer* change the signal or label inserted in the text for each reference. Normally these are just sequential numbers, and their exact placement (within brackets, as superscripts, etc.) is determined by the macro package. The **-l** option replaces reference numbers by strings composed of the senior author's last name, the date, and a disambiguating letter. If a number follows the **l** as in **-l3** only that many letters of the last name are used in the label string. To abbreviate the date as well the form **-l***m,n* shortens the last name to the first *m* letters and the date to the last *n* digits. For example, the option **-l3,2** would refer to the *eqn* paper (reference 3) by the signal *Ker75a*, since it is the first cited reference by Kernighan in 1975.

A user wishing to specify particular labels for a private bibliography may use the **-k** option. Specifying **-k***x* causes the field *x* to be used as a label. The default is **L**. If this field ends in **-**, that character is replaced by a sequence letter; otherwise the field is used exactly as given.

If none of the *refer*-produced signals are desired, the **-b** option entirely suppresses automatic text signals.

If the user wishes to override the *-ms* treatment of the reference signal (which is normally to enclose the number in brackets in *nroff* and make it a superscript in *troff*) this can be done easily. If the lines **.[** or **.]** contain anything following these characters, the remainders of these lines are used to surround the reference signal, instead of the default. Thus, for example, to say "See reference (2)." and avoid "See reference.[2]" the input might appear

```
See reference
.[ (
imprecise citation ...
.]).
```

Note that blanks are significant in this construction. If a permanent change is desired in the style of reference signals, however, it is probably easier to redefine the strings **[.** and **.]** (which are used to bracket each signal) than to change each citation.

Although normally *refer* limits itself to retrieving the data for the reference, and leaves to a macro package the job of arranging that data as required by the local format, there are two special options for rearrangements that can not be done by macro packages. The **-c** option puts fields into all upper case (CAPS-SMALL CAPS in *troff* output). The key-letters indicated what information is to be

translated to upper case follow the **c**, so that **-cAJ** means that authors' names and journals are to be in caps. The **-a** option writes the names of authors last name first, that is *A. D. Hall, Jr.* is written as *Hall, A. D. Jr*. The citation form of the *Journal of the ACM*, for example, would require both **-cA** and **-a** options. This produces authors' names in the style *KERNIGHAN, B. W. AND CHERRY, L. L.* for the previous example. The **-a** option may be followed by a number to indicate how many author names should be reversed; **-a1** (without any **-c** option) would produce *Kernighan, B. W. and L. L. Cherry,* for example.

Finally, there is also the previously-mentioned **-p** option to let the user specify a private file of references to be searched before the public files. Note that *refer* does not insist on a previously made index for these files. If a file is named which contains reference data but is not indexed, it will be searched (more slowly) by *refer* using *fgrep*. In this way it is easy for users to keep small files of new references, which can later be added to the public data bases.

BIB – A Program for Formatting Bibliographies

Timothy A. Budd

The University of Arizona
Department of Computer Science
Tucson, Arizona 85721

Bib is a program for collecting and formatting reference lists in documents. It is a preprocessor to the nroff/troff typesetting systems, (much like the *tbl* [4] and *eqn* [2] programs) and an alternative to the *refer* [3] bibliography program. *Bib* takes two inputs: a document to be formatted and a library of references. Imprecise citations in the source document are replaced by more conventional citation strings, the appropriate references are selected from the reference file, and commands are generated to format both citation and the referenced item in the bibliography.

An imprecise citation is a list of words surrounded by the characters [. .]. Words (which are truncated to six letters) in the imprecise citation are matched against entries in the reference file, and if an entry is found that matches all words, that reference is used. For example:

```
In Brooks's interesting book [. brooks mythical.] various reasons ...
```

Multiple citations are indicated by simply placing a comma in the imprecise citation:

```
In [.kernig tools, kernig elements.], Kernighan and Plauger have ...
```

Embedded newlines, tabs and extra blanks within the imprecise citation are ignored.

Judicious use of the K (keyword) field in references in the database can simplify citations considerably. Also additional information can be placed into citations by surrounding text with curly braces. The additional information is inserted verbatim into the citation, e.g. [1, Chapter 6]. Note that it may be desirable to use non-breakable spaces, in order that the citation not be split across a line boundary by *troff*, for example:

```
For a description of LR parsing, see [.dragon {,\ Chapter 6}.] by Aho and Ullman.
```

An alternative citation style can be used by surrounding the imprecise citation with {. and .}. Most document styles just give the raw citation, without the braces, in this case. This is useful, for example, to refer to citations in running text.

```
For a discussion of this point, see reference {.dragon.}.
```

The algorithm used by *bib* scans the source input in two passes. In the first pass, references are collected and the location of citations marked. In the second pass, these marks are replaced by the appropriate citation, and the entire list of references is dumped following a call on the macro .[]. This macro is left untouched. However, this can be altered to achieve other typographic effects.

An exception to this process is made in those instances where references are indicated in footnotes. In this case the macro that generates the reference is placed immediately after each line in which the reference is cited.

Reference files are prepared for *bib* using *invert*. By default *invert* places an inverted index for the reference list in the file INDEX. Unless the user specifies an alternative (see the –p switch described below), this is the first file searched by *bib* in attempting to locate a reference. If the entry is not found in the user's file, a standard system-wide index is searched. If the entry is still not found in the system file, a warning message is produced and a blank citation is generated.

The format for entries in the reference file is described more fully in the section 'Reference File Formats'. This format is similar to that used by *refer* with the following exceptions:

1. An F field, if present, overrides whatever citation string would otherwise be constructed.
2. Certain defined names can be used, and will be expanded differently by different document styles. For example, the string CACM is expanded into 'Communications of the ACM' by some document styles, 'Comm. ACM' by others, and 'Comm. of the Assoc. of Comp. Mach.' by yet others. Appendix 1 lists the currently recognized names.
3. The program automatically abbreviates names, reverses names, and hyphenates strings of contiguous references, if requested.
4. A reference can have more than one editor field, and editor's names can be abbreviated, reversed, and/or printed in cap/small caps style, independent of any processing done to authors names.

Since the user's index is searched before the system index, if the user wants to alter a specific entry in the system index (say to change the name W. E. Howden to William E. Howden, for example) it is a simple matter to copy the system information into a private database and make the changes locally.

Citation formats are either determined by explicit switch settings or, more generally, by using a predefined formatting style. In the latter form, usage looks something like:

bib –t*style* [files]

where *style* is a citation style. Currently the following citation styles are available:

stdn	(standard numeric) numeric citation. Reference entries are listed in citation order.
stdsn	same as stdn, but references are sorted by senior author followed by date.
stda	(standard alphabetic) citations are three letters followed by the last two digits of the date. For papers with a single author, the letters are the first three letters of the authors last name (e.g. Knu). In papers with two authors the first two letters are from the first author followed by one letter from the second (e.g. HoU). If three or more authors are given the first letters from the first three authors are used (e.g. AHU).
openn	same as stdsn, only using an open reference format (each major entry is on a new line[1]).
opena	same as stda, but using an open format.
foot	footnoted references.
supn	same as stdn, but using superscripts.
spe	format used by the journal *Software–Practice and Experience*. Eventually there will be macro packages available for several journal styles.

It is possible to alter slightly the format of standard styles. For example, to generate references in standard numeric style, but abbreviate first names, the following can be used:

bib –tstdn –aa ...

If two reference items create the same citation string (this can happen if two papers authored by the same person in a single year are referred to in one paper) a disambiguating final letter is added to

1. The open reference format is adapted from *A Handbook for Scholars*, by Mary-Claire van Leunen, published by Knopf, 1978.

the citation (i.e., Knu79 becomes Knu79a and Knu79b). As noted previously, this can be altered by using the F field.

For the purposes of sorting by author, the last name is taken to be the last word of the name field. This means some care must be taken when names contain embedded blanks, such as in 'Hartley Rogers, Jr.' or 'Mary-Claire van Leunen'. In these cases a concealed space (\ ) should be used, as in 'Hartley Rogers,\ Jr.'.

bib knows very little about *troff* usage or syntax. This can sometimes be useful. For example, to cause an entry to appear in a reference list without having it explicitly cited in the text the citation can be placed in a *troff* comment.

```
.\" [.imprecise citation.]
```

It is also possible to embed *troff* commands within a reference definition. See 'abbreviations' in the section 'Reference Format Designer's Guide' for an example.

In some styles (superscripts) periods and commas should precede the citation while spaces follow. In other styles (brackets) these rules are reversed. If a period, comma or space immediately precedes a citation, it will be moved to the appropriate location for the particular reference style being used. This movement is not done for citations given in the alternative style.

The following is a complete list of options for *bib*:

–aa	reduce author's first names to abbreviations.
–ar*num*	reverse the first *num* author's names. If *num* is omitted all names are reversed.
–ax	print authors last names in Caps-Small Caps style. For example Budd becomes BUDD.
–c*str*	build citations according to the template *str*. See the reference format designer's guide for more information on templates.
–ea	abbreviate editors' names
–ex	places editors' names in Caps-Small Caps style. (see –x)
–er*num*	reverse the first *num* editors' names. If *num* is omitted all editors' names are reversed.
–f	instead of dumping references following the call on .[], dump each reference immediately following the line on which the citation is placed (used for footnoted references).
–h	hyphenate runs of three or more contiguous references in the citation string. (eg 2,3,4,5 becomes 2-5). This is most useful for numeric citation styles, but works generally. The –h option implies the –o option.
–i file	
–ifile	include and process the indicated file. This is useful for including a private file of string definitions.
–n*str*	turn off the indicated options. *str* must be composed of the characters *afhorx*.
–o	sort contiguous citations according to the order given by the reference list. (This option defaults on).
–p *file*	
–p*file*	instead of searching the file INDEX, search the indicated reference file(s) before searching the system file. Multiple files are separated by commas.
–s*str*	sort references according to the template *str*.
–t *type*	
–t*type*	use the standard macros and switch settings to generate citations and references in the indicated style.

Reference File Formats

A reference file is a file containing any number of reference items. Reference items are separated by one or more blank lines. There are no restrictions placed on the order of items in a file, although imposing some order (such as sorting items alphabetically) simplifies updates.

A reference item is a collection of field tags and values. A field tag is a percent sign followed by a single letter. Currently, the following field tags are recognized:

A	Author's name
B	Title of book containing item
C	City of publication
D	Date
E	Editor(s) of book containing item
F	Caption
G	Government (NTIS) ordering number
I	Issuer (publisher)
J	Journal name
K	Keys for searching
N	Issue number
O	Other information
P	Page(s) of article
R	Technical report number
S	Series title
T	Title
V	Volume number
W	Where the item can be found locally
X	Annotations (not in all macro styles)

Author and editor fields can be repeated, as necessary, but all other fields can occur at most once in any reference. The field information is as long as necessary, and can extend onto new lines. Lines that do not begin with a percent sign or a period are treated as continuations of the previous line. The order of fields is irrelevant, except that authors and editors are listed in the order of occurrence.

Generally a reference falls into one of several basic categories. An example of each and a brief comment is given below. With less standard references (Archival Sources, Correspondence, Government Documents, Newspapers) generally some experimentation is necessary.

Books

A book is something with a publisher that isn't a journal article or a technical report. Generally, books also have authors and titles and dates of publication (although some don't). For books not published by a major publishing house it is also helpful to give a city for the publisher. Some government documents also qualify as books, so a book may have a government ordering number.

It is conventional that the authors names appear in the reference in the same form as on the title page of the book. Note also that string definitions are provided for most of the major publishing houses (PRHALL for Prentice-Hall, for example). The string definition may include the city as part of the definition, depending on the database in use.


```
%A  R. E. Griswold
%A  J. F. Poage
%A  I. P. Polonsky
%T  The SNOBOL4 Programming Language
%I  PRHALL
%D  second edition 1971
```

Sometimes a book (particularly old books) will have no listed publisher. The reference entry must still have an I field.

```
%A  R. Colt Hoare
%T  A Tour through the Island of Elba
%I  (no listed publisher)
%C  London
%D  1814
```

If a reference database contains entries from many people (such as a departmental-wide database), the W field can be used to indicate where the referenced item can be found; using the initials of the owner, for example. Any entry style can take a W field, since this field is not used in formatting the reference.

The K field is used to define general subject categories for an entry. This is useful in locating all entries pertaining to a specific subject area. Note the use of the backslash, to indicate the last name is Van Tassel, and not simply Tassel.

```
%A  Dennie Van\ Tassel
%T  Program Style, Design, Efficiency,
Debugging and Testing
%I  PRHALL
%D  1978
%W  tab
%K  testing debugging
```

Journal article

The only requirement for a journal article is that it have a journal name and a volume number. Usually journal articles also have authors, titles, page numbers, and a date of publication. They may also have numbers, and, less frequently, a publisher. (Generally, publishers are only listed for obscure journals).

Note that string names (such as CACM for *Communications of the ACM*) are defined for most major journals. There are also string names for the months of the year, so that months can be abbreviated to the first three letters. Note also in this example the use of the K field to define a short name (hru) that can be used in searching for the reference.

```
%A  M. A. Harrison
%A  W. L. Ruzzo
%A  J. D. Ullman
%T  Protection in Operating Systems
%J  CACM
%V  19
%N  8
%P  461-471
%D  AUG 1976
%K  hru
```

Article in conference proceedings

An article from a conference is printed as though it were a journal article and the journal name was the name of the conference. Note that string names (SOSP) are also defined for the major conferences (Symposium on Operating System Principles).

```
%A  M. Bishop
%A  L. Snyder
%T  The Transfer of Information and Authority
```

```
in a Protection System
%J  Proceedings of the 7th SOSP
%P  45-54
%D  1979
```

Article in book

An article in a book has two titles, the title of the article and the title of the book. The first goes into the T field and the second into the B field. Similarly the author of the article goes into the A field and the editor of the book goes into the E field.

```
%A  John B. Goodenough
%T  A Survey of Program Testing Issues
%B  Research Directions in Software Technology
%E  Peter Wegner
%I  MIT Press
%P  316-340
%D  1979
```

If a work as more than one editor, they each get their own %E field.

```
%A  R. J. Lipton
%A  L. Snyder
%T  On Synchronization and Security
%E  Richard A. DeMillo
%E  David P. Dobkin
%E  Anita K. Jones
%E  Richard J. Lipton
%B  Foundations of Secure Computation
%P  367-388
%I  ACPRESS
%D  1978
```

Sometimes the book is part of a multi-volume series, and hence may contain a volume field and/or a series name.

```
%A  C.A.R. Hoare
%T  Procedures and parameters: An axiomatic approach
%B  Symposium on semantics of algorithmic languages
%E  E. Engeler
%P  102-116
%S  Lecture Notes in Mathematics
%V  188
%I  Springer-Verlag
%C  Berlin-Heidelberg-New York
%D  1971
```

In any reference format, the O field can be used to give additional information. This is frequently used, for example, for secondary references.

```
%A  A. Girard
%A  J-C Rault
%T  A Programming Technique for Software Reliability
%B  Symposium on Software Reliability
%I  IEEE
%C  Montvale, New Jersey
%D  1977
```

%O (Discussed in Glib [32])

Compilations

A compilation is the work of several authors gathered together by an editor into a book. The reference format is the same as for a book, with the editor(s) taking the place of the author.

%E R. A. DeMillo
%E D. P. Dobkin
%E A. K. Jones
%E R. J. Lipton
%T Foundations of Secure Computation
%I ACPRESS
%D 1978

Technical Reports

A technical report must have a report number. They usually have authors, titles, dates and an issuing institution (the I field is used for this). They may also have a city and a government issue number. Again string values (UATR for 'University of Arizona Technical Report') will frequently simplify typing references.

%A T. A. Budd
%T An APL Complier
%R UATR 81-17
%C Tucson, Arizona
%D 1981

If the institution name is not part of the technical report number, then the institution should be given separately.

%A Douglas Baldwin
%A Frederick Sayward
%T Heuristics for Determining Equivalence of Program Mutations
%R Technical Report Number 161
%I Yale University
%D 1979

PhD Thesis

A PhD thesis is listed as if it were a book, and the institution granting the degree the publisher.

%A Martin Brooks
%T Automatic Generation of Test Data for
Recursive Programs Having Simple Errors
%I PhD Thesis, Stanford University
%D 1980

Some authors prefer to treat Master's and Bachelor theses similarly, although most references on style instruct say to treat a Master's degree as an article or as a report.

%A A. Snyder
%T A Portable Compiler for the Language C
%R Master's Thesis
%I M.I.T.
%D 1974

Miscellaneous

A miscellaneous object is something that does not fit into any other form. It can have any of the the following fields; an author, a title, a date, page numbers, and, most generally, other information (the O field).

Any reference item can contain an F field, and the corresponding text will override whatever citation would otherwise be constructed.

```
%F  BHS--
%A  Timothy A. Budd
%A  Robert Hess
%A  Frederick G. Sayward
%T  User's Guide for the EXPER Mutation Analysis system
%O  (Yale university, memo)
```

Reference Format Designer's Guide

This section need only be read by those users who wish to write their own formatting macro packages.

The information necessary for generating citations and references of a particular style is contained in a *format file*. A format file consists of two parts; a sequence of format commands, which are read and interpreted by *bib*, and a sequence of text lines (usually *troff* macro definitions) which are merely copied to output. The format file name is always prefixed with the string bib. Thus the format file for a standard document type, such as stdn, is found in a file called bib.stdn in the standard library area.

When *bib* encounters a –t switch, the user's directory is first searched for a format file matching the given name, before the system area is examined. Thus the user can create individual style database files.

Each formatting command is distinguished by a single letter, which must be the first character on a line. The formatting commands in a database file are similar to the command line options for *bib*. The legal commands, and their arguments, are as follows:

text

A line beginning with a sharp sign is a comment, and all remaining text on the line is ignored.

A

The A command controls how authors' names are to be formatted. It can be followed by the following character sequences:

A	Authors' names are to be abbreviated. (see abbreviations, below).
R*num*	The first *num* authors' names are to be reversed. If *num* is omitted, all authors' names are reversed.
X	Authors' names are to be printed in Caps-Small Caps style.

E

The E command is equivalent to the A command, except that it controls the formatting of editors' names.

F

The F command indicates that references are to be dumped immediately after a line containing a citation, such as when the references are to be placed in footnotes.

S *template*

The S command indicates references are to be sorted before being dumped. The comparison used in sorting is based on the *template*. See the discussion on sorting (below) for an explanation of templates.

C *template*

The *template* is used as a model in constructing citations. See the discussion below.

D *word definition*

The word-definition pair is placed into a table. Before each reference is dumped it is examined for the occurrence of these words. Any occurrence of a word from this table is replaced by the definition, which is then rescanned for other words. Words are limited to alphanumeric characters, ampersand and underscore.

Definitions can extend over multiple lines by ending lines with a backslash (\). The backslash will be removed, and the definition, including the newline and the next line, will be entered into the table. This is useful for including several fields as part of a single definition (city names can be included as part of a definition for a publishing house, for example).

I *filename*

The indicated file is included at the current point. The included file may contain other formatting commands.

H

Three or more contiguous citations that refer to adjacent items in the reference list are replaced by a hyphenated string. For example, the citation 2,3,4,5 would be replaced by 2-5. This is most useful with numeric citations. The H option implies the O option.

O

Contiguous citations are sorted according to the order given by the reference list.

R *number*

The first *number* author's names are reversed on output (i.e. T. A. Budd becomes Budd, T. A.). If number is omitted all names are reversed.

T *str*

The *str* is a list of field names. Each time a definition string for a named field is produced, a second string containing just the last character will also be generated. See 'Trailing characters', below.

X

Authors' last names are to be printed in Caps/Small Caps format (i.e., Budd becomes BUDD).

The first line in the format file that does not match a format command causes that line, and all subsequent lines, to be immediately copied to the output.

File Naming Conventions

Standard database format files are kept in a standard library area. The string BMACLIB in bib.h points to this directory (/usr/new/lib/bmac in the distribution). In addition, this name is always defined when reading format files. There are three types of files:

bib.xxx	These files contain bib commands to format documents in the xxx style.
bibinc.xxx	These files contain information (such as definitions) used by more than one style database.
bmac.xxx	These files are the *troff* macros to actually implement a style. They are generally not examined by *bib* at all, but are processed by troff in response to a .so command.

The first command output by *bib* defines the string l] to be the standard macro database directory. This allows macro files to be independent of where they are actually stored.

Naming Conventions

There is a simple naming convention for strings, registers and macros used by *bib*. All strings, registers and macros are denoted by two character names containing either a left or right brace. The following are general rules:

[x If x is alphanumeric, the string contains the value of a reference field. If x is nonalphanumeric, this is a formatting string preceding a citation.

]x If x is alphanumeric, this is the final character from a reference field. If x is nonalphanumeric, the string is formatting information within a citation.

x[Strings in this format, where x is can be any character, are defined by the specific macro package in use and are not specified by *bib*.

x] If x is nonalphanumeric these strings represent formatting commands following citations (the inverse of [x commands). Other strings represent miscellaneous formatting commands, such as the space between leading letters in abbreviated names.

Sorting

The sort template is used in comparing two references to generate the sorted reference list. The sort template is a sequence of sort objects. Each sort object consists of an optional negative sign, followed by a field character, followed by an optional signed size. The leading negative sign, if present, specifies the sort is to be in decreasing order, rather than increasing. The field character indicates which field in the reference is to be compared. The entire field is used, except in the case of the 'A' field, in which case only the senior author's last name is used. A positive number following the field character indicates that only the first n characters are to be examined in the comparison. The negative value indicates only the last *n* characters. Thus, for example, the template AD–2 indicates that sorting is to be done by the senior author followed by the last two characters of the date.

The sort algorithm is stable, so that two documents which compare equally will be listed in citation order.

Note that in sorting, citation construction, and elsewhere, if an author field is not present the senior editor will be used. If neither author nor editor fields are present the institution name will be used.

Citations

A citation template is similar to a sort template, with the following exceptions: The field name '1' refers to the number which represents the position of the reference in the reference list (after sorting). The field name '2' generates a three character sequence; If the paper being referenced has only one author, this is the first three characters of the author's last name. For two author papers, this is the first two characters of the senior author, followed by the first character of the second author. For papers with three or more authors the first letter of the first three authors is used. The field name '3'

is used to specify a format consisting of the authors' last names, or the senior author followed by the text 'et al' if more than four authors are listed. The fields '4' through '9' are reserved to be used to specify formats that cannot be produced using templates. These will be implemented either as local modifications to *bib* or in future releases.

In order to postpone the inevitable clash of local changes versus new releases, it is suggested that local formatting styles use numbers starting at 9 and working downward.

Each object can be followed by either of the letters 'u' or 'l' and the field will be printed in all upper or all lower case, respectively.

If necessary for disambiguating, the character '@' can be used as a separator between objects in the citation template. Any text which should be inserted into the citation uninterpreted should be surrounded by either { } or <> pairs.

Citation Formatting

In the output, each citation is surrounded by the strings *([[and *(]] (*([{ and *(}] in the alternative style). Multiple citations are separated by the string *(],. The text portion of a format file should contain *troff* definitions for these strings to achieve the appropriate typographic effect.

Citations that are preceded by a period, comma, space or other puncuation are surrounded by string values for formatting the puncuation in the approprate location. Again, *troff* commands should be given to insure the appropriate values are produced.

The following table summarizes the string values that must be defined to handle citations.

[[	]]	Standard citation beginning and ending
{[	}]	Alternate citation beginning and ending
[.	.]	Period before and after citation
[,	,]	Comma before and after citation
[?	?]	Question mark before and after citation
[!	!]	Exclaimation Point before and after citation
[:	:]	Colon before and after citation
[;	;]	Semi-Colon before and after citation
["	"]	Double Quote before and after citation
['	']	Single Quote before and after citation
[<	>]	Space before and after citation
],		Multiple citation separator
]-		Separator for a range of citations

Name Formatting

Authors' (and editors') names can be abbreviated, reversed, and/or printed in Caps-small Caps format. In producing the string values for an author, formatting strings are inserted to give the macro writer greater flexibility in producing the final output. Currently the following strings are used:

a]	gap between sucessive initials
b]	comma between last name and initial in reversed text
c]	comma between authors
n]	*and* between two authors
m]	*and* between last two authors
p]	period following initial

For example, suppose the name 'William E. Howden' is abbreviated and reversed. It will come out looking like

Howden*(b]W*(p]*(a]E*(p]

Reference Formatting

The particular style used in printing references is decided by macros passed to *troff*. Basically, for each reference, *bib* generates a sequence of string definitions, one for each field in the reference, followed by a call on the formatting macro. For example an entry which in the reference file looks like:

```
%A  M. A. Harrison
%A  W. L. Ruzzo
%A  J. D. Ullman
%T  Protection in Operating Systems
%J  CACM
%V  19
%N  8
%P  461-471
%D  1976
%K  hru
```

is converted into the following sequence of commands

```
.[-
.ds [F 1
.ds [A M. A. Harrison
.as [A \*(c]W. L. Ruzzo
.as [A \*(m]J. D. Ullman
.ds [T Protection in Operating Systems
.ds [J Communications of the ACM
.ds [V 19
.ds [N 8
.nr [P 1
.ds [P 461-471
.ds [D 1976
.][
```

Note that the commands are preceded by a call on the macro '.[-'. This can be used by the macro routines for initialization, for example to delete old string values. The string [F is the citation value used in the document. Note that the string CACM has been expanded.

The strings c], n] and m] are used to separate authors. c] separates the initial authors in multi-author documents (it is usually a comma with some space before and after), n] separates authors in two author documents (usually ' and '), and m] separates the last two authors in multi-author documents (either ' and ' or ', and ').

If abbreviation is specified, the string a] is used to separate initials in the author's first name.

The *bib* system provides minimal assistance in deciding format types. For example note that the number register [P has been set of 1, to indicate that the article is on more than one page. Similarly, in documents with editors, the register [E is set to the number of editors.

Trailing Characters

There is a problem with fields that end with punctuation characters causing multiple occurrences of those characters to be printed. For example, suppose author fields are terminated with a period, as in T. A. Budd. If names are reversed, this could be printed as Budd, T. A.. Even if names are not reversed, abbreviations, such as in Jr. can cause problems.

To avoid this problem *bib*, if instructed, generates the last character from a particular field as a separate string. The string name is a right brace followed by the field character. Macro packages

should test this value before generating punctuation.

Abbreviations

The algorithm used to generate abbreviations from first names is fairly simple: Each word in the first name field that begins with a capital is reduced to that capital letter followed by a period. In some cases, this may not be sufficient. For example, suppose Ole-Johan Dahl should be abbreviated 'O–J. Dahl'. The only way to achieve this (short of editing the output) is to include *troff* commands in the reference file that alter the strings produced by *bib*, as in the following

```
...
%A Ole-Johan Dahl
.ds [A O–J. Dahl
...
```

In fact, any *troff* commands can be entered in the middle of a reference entry, and the commands are copied uninterpreted to the output. For example, the user may wish to have a switch indicating whether the name is to be abbreviated or not:

```
...
%A Ole-Johan Dahl
.if \n(i[ .ds [A O–J. Dahl
...
```

An Example

Figure 1 shows the format file for the standard alphabetic format. The sort command indicates that sorting is to be done by senior author, followed by the last two digits of the date. The citation template indicates that citations will be the three character sequence described in the section of citations followed by the last two characters of the date (i.e. AHU79, for example).

```
# standard alphabetic format
SAD–2
C2D–2
I BMACLIB/bibinc.fullnames
I BMACLIB/bibinc.std
```

Figure 1

The two I commands include two files. The first is a file of definitions for common strings, such as dates and journal names. A portion of this file is shown in figure 2. Note that a no-op has been inserted into the definition string for BIT in order to avoid further expansion when the definition is rescanned.

The second file is a sequence of *troff* macros for formatting the references. The beginning of this file is shown in figure 3.

On the basis of some simple rules (the presence or absence of certain fields) the document is identified as one of five different types, and a call made on a different macro for each type. This is shown in figure 4.

Finally figure 5 shows the macro for one of those different types, in this case the book formatting macro.

```
# full journal names, and other names
#
# journals
D ACTA Acta Informatica
D BIT B\&IT
D CACM Communications of the ACM
 ...
# months
D JAN January
 ...
D DEC December
```

Figure 2

```
#  standard end macros
#
.ds [ [
.ds ] ]
.ds , ,
.ds >. .
.ds >, ,
.ds c] , \&
.ds n] "" and
.ds m] , and
  ...
.de p[   \" produce reference beginning
.IP [\\$1]
..
.de []   \" start displaying collected references
.SH
References
.LP
..
```

Figure 3

```
.de ][   \" choose format
.ie !"\\*([J"" \{\
.    ie !"\\*([V"" .nr t[ 1    \" journal
.    el           .nr t[ 5    \" conference paper
.\}
.el .ie !"\\*([B"" .nr t[ 3    \" article in book
.el .ie !"\\*([R"" .nr t[ 4    \" technical report
.el .ie !"\\*([I"" .nr t[ 2    \" book
.el               .nr t[ 0    \" other
.\\n(t[[
..
```

Figure 4

```
...
.de 2[ \" book
.if !"\\*([F"" .p[ \\*([F
.if !"\\*([A"" \\*([A,
.if !"\\*([T"" \\f2\\*([T,\\f1
\\*([I\c
.if !"\\*([C"" , \\*([C\c
.if !"\\*([D"" \& (\\*([D)\c
\&.
.if !"\\*([G"" Gov't. ordering no. \\*([G.
.if !"\\*([O"" \\*([O
.]-
..
```

Figure 5

Acknowledgements

bib was inspired by *refer*, written by M. Lesk.

1. A. V. Aho and J. D. Ullman, *Principles of Compiler Design*, Addison-Wesley, 1977.
2. B. W. Kernighan and L. L. Cherry, A System for Typesetting Mathematics, *Comm. of the ACM 18*, 3 (Mar. 1978), 151-156.
3. M. E. Lesk, Some Applications of Inverted Indexes on the UNIX System, Bell Laboratories Computing Science Technical Report 69, June 1978.
4. M. E. Lesk, Tbl - A Program to Format Tables, *Unix Programmer's Manual, Vol 2A*, .

APPENDIX 1

Standard Names

The following list gives the standard names recognized in most citation styles. Various different forms for the output are used by the different styles. In the longer reference style, the conference proceedings will also refer to the date (%D), city(%C), and when the proceedings are published as a journal, the journal name (%J), volumn (%V) and number (%N).

Journal Names

ACTA	Acta Informatica
BIT	BIT
BSTJ	Bell System Technical Journal
CACM	Communications of the ACM
COMP	IEEE Computer
COMPJOUR	The Computer Journal
COMPLANG	Journal of Computer Languages
COMPSUR	ACM Computing Surveys
I&C	Information and Control
IBMJRD	IBM Journal of Research and Development
IBMSJ	IBM Systems Journal
IEEETC	IEEE Transactions on Computers
IEEETSE	IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering
IJCIS	International Journal of Computer and Information Sciences
IPL	Information Processing Letters
JACM	Journal of the ACM
JCSS	Journal of Computer and System Sciences
MATHST	Mathematics Systems Theory
NMATH	Numerical Mathematics
SIAMJC	Siam Journal on Computing
SIAMJNA	Siam Journal on Numerical Analysis
SIGACT	SIGACT News
SIGPLAN	SIGPLAN Notices
SIGSOFT	Software Engineering Notes
SP&E	Software—Practice & Experience
SPE	Software—Practice & Experience
TOCS	ACM Transactions on Computer Systems
TODS	ACM Transactions on Database Systems
TOMS	ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software
TOPLAS	ACM Transactions on Programming Languages and Systems

Conferences

ADA80	PROC of the ACM-SIGPLAN Symposium on the Ada Programming Language, SIGPLAN
ASPLOS82	PROC of the SYMP on Architectural Support for Programming Languages and Operating Systems, SIGPLAN
CCC79	PROC of the SIGPLAN 1979 SYMP on Compiler Construction, SIGPLAN
CCC82	PROC of the SIGPLAN 1982 SYMP on Compiler Construction, SIGPLAN
CCC84	PROC of the SIGPLAN 1984 SYMP on Compiler Construction, SIGPLAN
CONF	Conference
FJCC	Fall Joint Computer Conference
FOCS	Annual SYMP on Foundations of Computer Science
HICSS	Hawaii International CONF on System Science
ICSE	International CONF on Software Engineering
JER3	PROC Third Jerusalem CONF on Information Technology
JICAI	Joint International CONF on Artificial Intelligence
PLISS83	PROC SIGPLAN 1983 SYMP on Programming Language Issues in Software Systems, SIGPLAN
POPL	ACM SYMP on Principles of Programming Languages
POPL5	Conference Record of the Fifth POPL
POPL6	Conference Record of the Sixth POPL

POPL7	Conference Record of the Seventh POPL
POPL8	Conference Record of the Eighth POPL
POPL9	Conference Record of the Ninth POPL
POPL10	Conference Record of the Tenth POPL
POPL11	Conference Record of the Eleventh POPL
PROC	Proceedings
SOSP	SYMP on Operating System Principles
STOC	Annual ACM SYMP on Theory of Computing
SYMP	Symposium
WJCC	PROC Western Joint Computer CONF

Longer place names

BTLHO	Bell Laboratories
BTLMH	Bell Laboratories
CMU	Carnegie-Mellon University
CMUCS	Computer Science Department, Carnegie-Mellon University
DG	Data General
MITAI	MIT Artificial Intelligence Laboratory
MITLCS	MIT Laboratory for Computer Science
SUCS	Computer Science Department, Stanford University
SUCSL	Computer Systems Lab., Stanford Electronics Lab., Dept. of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
SUEE	Department of Electrical Engineering, Stanford University
TUM	Technische Universität München
UCB	University of California, Berkeley
UCBCS	Computer Science Division, EECS, UCB
UCBERL	ERL, EECS, UCB

Short place names

CORP	Corporation
CSD	Computer Science Department
DCS	Department of Computer Science
DEPT	Department
DISS	Dissertation
TR	Technical Report
UATR	University of Arizona Technical Report
UNIV	University
ERL	Electronics Research Laboratory

Months of the year

JAN	January
FEB	February
MAR	March
APR	April
MAY	May
JUN	June
JUL	July
AUG	August
SEP	September
OCT	October
NOV	November
DEC	December

Publishers

ACADEMIC	Academic Press
ACPRESS	Academic Press
ADDISON	Addison Wesley
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
CSPRESS	Computer Science Press
DIGITAL	Digital Press
ELSEVIER	American Elsevier
FREEMAN	W. H. Freeman and Company
GPO	U. S. Government Printing Office
HOLT	Holt, Rinehart, and Winston
IEEEP	IEEE Press
MCGRAW	McGraw-Hill
MGHILL	McGraw-Hill
MITP	MIT Press
NHOLL	North-Holland
NYC	New York, NY
PRENTICE	Prentice Hall
PRHALL	Prentice Hall
SPRINGER	Springer Verlag
SRA	Science Research Associates
WILEY	John Wiley & Sons
WINTH	Winthrop Publishers

Writing Tools - The STYLE and DICTION Programs

L. L. Cherry

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974

W. Vesterman

Livingston College
Rutgers University

ABSTRACT

Text processing systems are now in heavy use in many companies to format documents. With many documents stored on line, it has become possible to use computers to study writing style itself and to help writers produce better written and more readable prose. The system of programs described here is an initial step toward such help. It includes programs and a data base designed to produce a stylistic profile of writing at the word and sentence level. The system measures readability, sentence and word length, sentence type, word usage, and sentence openers. It also locates common examples of wordy phrasing and bad diction. The system is useful for evaluating a document's style, locating sentences that may be difficult to read or excessively wordy, and determining a particular writer's style over several documents.

1. Introduction

Computers have become important in the document preparation process, with programs to check for spelling errors and to format documents. As the amount of text stored on line increases, it becomes feasible and attractive to study writing style and to attempt to help the writer in producing readable documents. The system of writing tools described here is a first step toward such help. The system includes programs and a data base to analyze writing style at the word and sentence level. We use the term "style" in this paper to describe the results of a writer's particular choices among individual words and sentence forms. Although many judgements of style are subjective, particularly those of word choice, there are some objective measures that experts agree lead to good style. Three programs have been written to measure some of the objectively definable characteristics of writing style and to identify some commonly misused or unnecessary phrases. Although a document that conforms to the stylistic rules is not guaranteed to be coherent and readable, one that violates all of the rules is likely to be difficult or tedious to read. The program STYLE calculates readability, sentence length variability, sentence type, word usage and sentence openers at a rate of about 400 words per second on a PDP11/70 running the UNIX† Operating System. It assumes that the sentences are well-formed, i. e. that each sentence has a verb and that the subject and verb agree in number. DICTION identifies phrases that are either bad usage or unnecessarily wordy. EXPLAIN acts as a thesaurus for the phrases found by DICTION. Sections 2, 3, and 4 describe the programs; Section 5 gives the results on a cross-section of technical documents; Section 6 discusses accuracy and problems; Section 7 gives implementation details.

† UNIX is a trademark of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

2. STYLE

The program STYLE reads a document and prints a summary of readability indices, sentence length and type, word usage, and sentence openers. It may also be used to locate all sentences in a document longer than a given length, of readability index higher than a given number, those containing a passive verb, or those beginning with an expletive. STYLE is based on the system for finding English word classes or parts of speech, PARTS [1]. PARTS is a set of programs that uses a small dictionary (about 350 words) and suffix rules to partially assign word classes to English text. It then uses experimentally derived rules of word order to assign word classes to all words in the text with an accuracy of about 95%. Because PARTS uses only a small dictionary and general rules, it works on text about any subject, from physics to psychology. Style measures have been built into the output phase of the programs that make up PARTS. Some of the measures are simple counters of the word classes found by PARTS; many are more complicated. For example, the verb count is the total number of verb phrases. This includes phrases like:

has been going
was only going
to go

each of which each counts as one verb. Figure 1 shows the output of STYLE run on a paper by Kernighan and Mashey about the UNIX programming environment [2].

```
programming environment
readability grades:
                    (Kincaid) 12.3  (auto) 12.8  (Coleman-Liau) 11.8  (Flesch) 13.5 (46.3)
sentence info:
                    no. sent 335 no. wds 7419
                    av sent leng 22.1 av word leng 4.91
                    no. questions 0 no. imperatives 0
                    no. nonfunc wds 4362  58.8%   av leng 6.38
                    short sent (<17) 35% (118) long sent (>32)  16% (55)
                    longest sent 82 wds at sent 174; shortest sent 1 wds at sent 117
sentence types:
                    simple  34% (114) complex  32% (108)
                    compound  12% (41) compound-complex  21% (72)
word usage:
                    verb types as % of total verbs
                    tobe  45% (373) aux  16% (133) inf  14% (114)
                    passives as % of non-inf verbs  20% (144)
                    types as % of total
                    prep 10.8% (804) conj 3.5% (262) adv 4.8% (354)
                    noun 26.7% (1983) adj 18.7% (1388) pron 5.3% (393)
                    nominalizations  2 % (155)
sentence beginnings:
                    subject opener: noun (63) pron (43) pos (0) adj (58) art (62) tot  67%
                    prep  12% (39) adv  9% (31)
                    verb  0% (1)  sub_conj  6% (20) conj  1% (5)
                    expletives  4% (13)
```

Figure 1

As the example shows, STYLE output is in five parts. After a brief discussion of sentences, we will describe the parts in order.

2.1. What is a sentence?

Readers of documents have little trouble deciding where the sentences end. People don't even have to stop and think about uses of the character "." in constructions like 1.25, A. J. Jones, Ph.D., i. e., or etc. . When a computer reads a document, finding the end of sentences is not as easy. First we must throw away the printer's marks and formatting commands that litter the text in computer form. Then STYLE defines a sentence as a string of words ending in one of:

. ! ? /.

The end marker "/." may be used to indicate an imperative sentence. Imperative sentences that are not so marked are not identified as imperative. STYLE properly handles numbers with embedded decimal points and commas, strings of letters and numbers with embedded decimal points used for naming computer file names, and the common abbreviations listed in Appendix 1. Numbers that end sentences, like the preceding sentence, cause a sentence break if the next word begins with a capital letter. Initials only cause a sentence break if the next word begins with a capital and is found in the dictionary of function words used by PARTS. So the string

J. D. JONES

does not cause a break, but the string

... system H. The ...

does. With these rules most sentences are broken at the proper place, although occasionally either two sentences are called one or a fragment is called a sentence. More on this later.

2.2. Readability Grades

The first section of STYLE output consists of four readability indices. As Klare points out in [3] readability indices may be used to estimate the reading skills needed by the reader to understand a document. The readability indices reported by STYLE are based on measures of sentence and word lengths. Although the indices may not measure whether the document is coherent and well organized, experience has shown that high indices seem to be indicators of stylistic difficulty. Documents with short sentences and short words have low scores; those with long sentences and many polysyllabic words have high scores. The 4 formulae reported are Kincaid Formula [4], Automated Readability Index [5], Coleman-Liau Formula [6] and a normalized version of Flesch Reading Ease Score [7]. The formulae differ because they were experimentally derived using different texts and subject groups. We will discuss each of the formulae briefly; for a more detailed discussion the reader should see [3].

The Kincaid Formula, given by:

$$Reading_Grade = 11.8 * syl_per_wd + .39 * wds_per_sent - 15.59$$

was based on Navy training manuals that ranged in difficulty from 5.5 to 16.3 in reading grade level. The score reported by this formula tends to be in the mid-range of the 4 scores. Because it is based on adult training manuals rather than school book text, this formula is probably the best one to apply to technical documents.

The Automated Readability Index (ARI), based on text from grades 0 to 7, was derived to be easy to automate. The formula is:

$$Reading_Grade = 4.71 * let_per_wd + .5 * wds_per_sent - 21.43$$

ARI tends to produce scores that are higher than Kincaid and Coleman-Liau but are usually slightly lower than Flesch.

The Coleman-Liau Formula, based on text ranging in difficulty from .4 to 16.3, is:

$$Reading_Grade = 5.89 * let_per_wd - .3 * sent_per_100_wds - 15.8$$

Of the four formulae this one usually gives the lowest grade when applied to technical documents.

The last formula, the Flesch Reading Ease Score, is based on grade school text covering grades 3 to 12. The formula, given by:

$$Reading_Score = 206.835 - 84.6*syl_per_wd - 1.015*wds_per_sent$$

is usually reported in the range 0 (very difficult) to 100 (very easy). The score reported by STYLE is scaled to be comparable to the other formulas, except that the maximum grade level reported is set to 17. The Flesch score is usually the highest of the 4 scores on technical documents.

Coke [8] found that the Kincaid Formula is probably the best predictor for technical documents; both ARI and Flesch tend to overestimate the difficulty; Coleman-Liau tend to underestimate. On text in the range of grades 7 to 9 the four formulas tend to be about the same. On easy text the Coleman-Liau formula is probably preferred since it is reasonably accurate at the lower grades and it is safer to present text that is a little too easy than a little too hard.

If a document has particularly difficult technical content, especially if it includes a lot of mathematics, it is probably best to make the text very easy to read, i.e. a lower readability index by shortening the sentences and words. This will allow the reader to concentrate on the technical content and not the long sentences. The user should remember that these indices are estimators; they should not be taken as absolute numbers. STYLE called with "–r number" will print all sentences with an Automated Readability Index equal to or greater than "number".

2.3. Sentence length and structure

The next two sections of STYLE output deal with sentence length and structure. Almost all books on writing style or effective writing emphasize the importance of variety in sentence length and structure for good writing. Ewing's first rule in discussing style in the book *Writing for Results* [9] is:

> "Vary the sentence structure and length of your sentences."

Leggett, Mead and Charvat break this rule into 3 in *Prentice-Hall Handbook for Writers* [10] as follows:

> "34a. Avoid the overuse of short simple sentences."
> "34b. Avoid the overuse of long compound sentences."
> "34c. Use various sentence structures to avoid monotony and increase effectiveness."

Although experts agree that these rules are important, not all writers follow them. Sample technical documents have been found with almost no sentence length or type variability. One document had 90% of its sentences about the same length as the average; another was made up almost entirely of simple sentences (80%).

The output sections labeled "sentence info" and "sentence types" give both length and structure measures. STYLE reports on the number and average length of both sentences and words, and number of questions and imperative sentences (those ending in "/."). The measures of non-function words are an attempt to look at the content words in the document. In English non-function words are nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and non-auxiliary verbs; function words are prepositions, conjunctions, articles, and auxiliary verbs. Since most function words are short, they tend to lower the average word length. The average length of non-function words may be a more useful measure for comparing word choice of different writers than the total average word length. The percentages of short and long sentences measure sentence length variability. Short sentences are those at least 5 words less than the average; long sentences are those at least 10 words longer than the average. Last in the sentence information section is the length and location of the longest and shortest sentences. If the flag "–l number" is used, STYLE will print all sentences longer than "number".

Because of the difficulties in dealing with the many uses of commas and conjunctions in English, sentence type definitions vary slightly from those of standard textbooks, but still measure the same constructional activity.

1. A simple sentence has one verb and no dependent clause.

2. A complex sentence has one independent clause and one dependent clause, each with one verb. Complex sentences are found by identifying sentences that contain either a subordinate conjunction or a clause beginning with words like "that" or "who". The preceding sentence has such a clause.
3. A compound sentence has more than one verb and no dependent clause. Sentences joined by ";" are also counted as compound.
4. A compound-complex sentence has either several dependent clauses or one dependent clause and a compound verb in either the dependent or independent clause.

Even using these broader definitions, simple sentences dominate many of the technical documents that have been tested, but the example in Figure 1 shows variety in both sentence structure and sentence length.

2.4. Word Usage

The word usage measures are an attempt to identify some other constructional features of writing style. There are many different ways in English to say the same thing. The constructions differ from one another in the form of the words used. The following sentences all convey approximately the same meaning but differ in word usage:

> The cxio program is used to perform all communication between the systems.
> The cxio program performs all communications between the systems.
> The cxio program is used to communicate between the systems.
> The cxio program communicates between the systems.
> All communication between the systems is performed by the cxio program.

The distribution of the parts of speech and verb constructions helps identify overuse of particular constructions. Although the measures used by STYLE are crude, they do point out problem areas. For each category, STYLE reports a percentage and a raw count. In addition to looking at the percentage, the user may find it useful to compare the raw count with the number of sentences. If, for example, the number of infinitives is almost equal to the number of sentences, then many of the sentences in the document are constructed like the first and third in the preceding example. The user may want to transform some of these sentences into another form. Some of the implications of the word usage measures are discussed below.

Verbs are measured in several different ways to try to determine what types of verb constructions are most frequent in the document. Technical writing tends to contain many passive verb constructions and other usage of the verb "to be". The category of verbs labeled "tobe" measures both passives and sentences of the form:

> *subject tobe predicate*

In counting verbs, whole verb phrases are counted as one verb. Verb phrases containing auxiliary verbs are counted in the category "aux". The verb phrases counted here are those whose tense is not simple present or simple past. It might eventually be useful to do more detailed measures of verb tense or mood. Infinitives are listed as "inf". The percentages reported for these three categories are based on the total number of verb phrases found. These categories are not mutually exclusive; they cannot be added, since, for example, "to be going" counts as both "tobe" and "inf". Use of these three types of verb constructions varies significantly among authors.

STYLE reports passive verbs as a percentage of the finite verbs in the document. Most style books warn against the overuse of passive verbs. Coleman [11] has shown that sentences with active verbs are easier to learn than those with passive verbs. Although the inverted object-subject order of the passive voice seems to emphasize the object, Coleman's experiments showed that there is little difference in retention by word position. He also showed that the direct object of an active verb is retained better than the subject of a passive verb. These experiments

support the advice of the style books suggesting that writers should try to use active verbs wherever possible. The flag "-p" causes STYLE to print all sentences containing passive verbs.

Pronouns

add cohesiveness and connectivity to a document by providing back-reference. They are often a short-hand notation for something previously mentioned, and therefore connect the sentence containing the pronoun with the word to which the pronoun refers. Although there are other mechanisms for such connections, documents with no pronouns tend to be wordy and to have little connectivity.

Adverbs

can provide transition between sentences and order in time and space. In performing these functions, adverbs, like pronouns, provide connectivity and cohesiveness.

Conjunctions

provide parallelism in a document by connecting two or more equal units. These units may be whole sentences, verb phrases, nouns, adjectives, or prepositional phrases. The compound and compound-complex sentences reported under sentence type are parallel structures. Other uses of parallel structures are indicated by the degree that the number of conjunctions reported under word usage exceeds the compound sentence measures.

Nouns and Adjectives.

A ratio of nouns to adjectives near unity may indicate the over-use of modifiers. Some technical writers qualify every noun with one or more adjectives. Qualifiers in phrases like "simple linear single-link network model" often lend more obscurity than precision to a text.

Nominalizations

are verbs that are changed to nouns by adding one of the suffixes "ment", "ance", "ence", or "ion". Examples are accomplishment, admittance, adherence, and abbreviation. When a writer transforms a nominalized sentence to a non-nominalized sentence, she/he increases the effectiveness of the sentence in several ways. The noun becomes an active verb and frequently one complicated clause becomes two shorter clauses. For example,

> Their inclusion of this provision is admission of the importance of the system.
> When they included this provision, they admitted the importance of the system.

Coleman found that the transformed sentences were easier to learn, even when the transformation produced sentences that were slightly longer, provided the transformation broke one clause into two. Writers who find their document contains many nominalizations may want to transform some of the sentences to use active verbs.

2.5. Sentence openers

Another agreed upon principle of style is variety in sentence openers. Because STYLE determines the type of sentence opener by looking at the part of speech of the first word in the sentence, the sentences counted under the heading "subject opener" may not all really begin with the subject. However, a large percentage of sentences in this category still indicates lack of variety in sentence openers. Other sentence opener measures help the user determine if there are transitions between sentences and where the subordination occurs. Adverbs and conjunctions at the beginning of sentences are mechanisms for transition between sentences. A pronoun at the beginning shows a link to something previously mentioned and indicates connectivity.

The location of subordination can be determined by comparing the number of sentences that begin with a subordinator with the number of sentences with complex clauses. If few sentences start with subordinate conjunctions then the subordination is embedded or at the end of the complex sentences. For variety the writer may want to transform some sentences to have leading subordination.

The last category of openers, expletives, is commonly overworked in technical writing. Expletives are the words "it" and "there", usually with the verb "to be", in constructions where the subject follows the verb. For example,

There are three streets used by the traffic.
There are too many users on this system.

This construction tends to emphasize the object rather than the subject of the sentence. The flag "-e" will cause STYLE to print all sentences that begin with an expletive.

3. DICTION

The program DICTION prints all sentences in a document containing phrases that are either frequently misused or indicate wordiness. The program, an extension of Aho's FGREP [12] string matching program, takes as input a file of phrases or patterns to be matched and a file of text to be searched. A data base of about 450 phrases has been compiled as a default pattern file for DICTION. Before attempting to locate phrases, the program maps upper case letters to lower case and substitutes blanks for punctuation. Sentence boundaries were deemed less critical in DICTION than in STYLE, so abbreviations and other uses of the character "." are not treated specially. DICTION brackets all pattern matches in a sentence with the characters "[" "]" . Although many of the phrases in the default data base are correct in some contexts, in others they indicate wordiness. Some examples of the phrases and suggested alternatives are:

Phrase	Alternative
a large number of	many
arrive at a decision	decide
collect together	collect
for this reason	so
pertaining to	about
through the use of	by or with
utilize	use
with the exception of	except

Appendix 2 contains a complete list of the default file. Some of the entries are short forms of problem phrases. For example, the phrase "the fact" is found in all of the following and is sufficient to point out the wordiness to the user:

Phrase	Alternative
accounted for by the fact that	caused by
an example of this is the fact that	thus
based on the fact that	because
despite the fact that	although
due to the fact that	because
in light of the fact that	because
in view of the fact that	since
notwithstanding the fact that	although

Entries in Appendix 2 preceded by "~" are not matched. See Section 7 for details on the use of "~".

The user may supply her/his own pattern file with the flag "-f patfile". In this case the default file will be loaded first, followed by the user file. This mechanism allows users to suppress patterns contained in the default file or to include their own pet peeves that are not in the default file. The flag "-n" will exclude the default file altogether. In constructing a pattern file, blanks should be used before and after each phrase to avoid matching substrings in words. For example, to find all occurrences of the word "the", the pattern " the " should be used. The blanks cause only the word "the" to be matched and not the string "the" in words like there, other, and therefore. One side effect of surrounding the words with blanks is that when two phrases occur without intervening words, only the first will be matched.

4. EXPLAIN

The last program, EXPLAIN, is an interactive thesaurus for phrases found by DICTION. The user types one of the phrases bracketed by DICTION and EXPLAIN responds with suggested substitutions for the phrase that will improve the diction of the document.

Table 1
Text Statistics on 20 Technical Documents

	variable	minimum	maximum	mean	standard deviation
Readability	Kincaid	9.5	16.9	13.3	2.2
	automated	9.0	17.4	13.3	2.5
	Cole-Liau	10.0	16.0	12.7	1.8
	Flesch	8.9	17.0	14.4	2.2
sentence info.	av sent length	15.5	30.3	21.6	4.0
	av word length	4.61	5.63	5.08	.29
	av nonfunction length	5.72	7.30	6.52	.45
	short sent	23%	46%	33%	5.9
	long sent	7%	20%	14%	2.9
sentence types	simple	31%	71%	49%	11.4
	complex	19%	50%	33%	8.3
	compound	2%	14%	7%	3.3
	compound-complex	2%	19%	10%	4.8
verb types	tobe	26%	64%	44.7%	10.3
	auxiliary	10%	40%	21%	8.7
	infinitives	8%	24%	15.1%	4.8
	passives	12%	50%	29%	9.3
word usage	prepositions	10.1%	15.0%	12.3%	1.6
	conjunction	1.8%	4.8%	3.4%	.9
	adverbs	1.2%	5.0%	3.4%	1.0
	nouns	23.6%	31.6%	27.8%	1.7
	adjectives	15.4%	27.1%	21.1%	3.4
	pronouns	1.2%	8.4%	2.5%	1.1
	nominalizations	2%	5%	3.3%	.8
sentence openers	prepositions	6%	19%	12%	3.4
	adverbs	0%	20%	9%	4.6
	subject	56%	85%	70%	8.0
	verbs	0%	4%	1%	1.0
	subordinating conj	1%	12%	5%	2.7
	conjunctions	0%	4%	0%	1.5
	expletives	0%	6%	2%	1.7

5. Results

5.1. STYLE

To get baseline statistics and check the program's accuracy, we ran STYLE on 20 technical documents. There were a total of 3287 sentences in the sample. The shortest document was 67 sentences long; the longest 339 sentences. The documents covered a wide range of subject matter, including theoretical computing, physics, psychology, engineering, and affirmative action. Table 1 gives the range, median, and standard deviation of the various style measures. As you will note most of the measurements have a fairly wide range of values across the sample documents.

As a comparison, Table 2 gives the median results for two different technical authors, a sample of instructional material, and a sample of the Federalist Papers. The two authors show similar styles, although author 2 uses somewhat shorter sentences and longer words than author 1. Author 1 uses all

types of sentences, while author 2 prefers simple and complex sentences, using few compound or compound-complex sentences. The other major difference in the styles of these authors is the location of subordination. Author 1 seems to prefer embedded or trailing subordination, while author 2 begins many sentences with the subordinate clause. The documents tested for both authors 1 and 2 were technical documents, written for a technical audience. The instructional documents, which are written for craftspeople, vary surprisingly little from the two technical samples. The sentences and words are a little longer, and they contain many passive and auxiliary verbs, few adverbs, and almost no pronouns. The instructional documents contain many imperative sentences, so there are many sentence with verb openers. The sample of Federalist Papers contrasts with the other samples in almost every way.

Table 2
Text Statistics on Single Authors

	variable	author 1	author 2	inst.	FED
readability	Kincaid	11.0	10.3	10.8	16.3
	automated	11.0	10.3	11.9	17.8
	Coleman-Liau	9.3	10.1	10.2	12.3
	Flesch	10.3	10.7	10.1	15.0
sentence info	av sent length	22.64	19.61	22.78	31.85
	av word length	4.47	4.66	4.65	4.95
	av nonfunction length	5.64	5.92	6.04	6.87
	short sent	35%	43%	35%	40%
	long sent	18%	15%	16%	21%
sentence types	simple	36%	43%	40%	31%
	complex	34%	41%	37%	34%
	compound	13%	7%	4%	10%
	compound-complex	16%	8%	14%	25%
verb type	tobe	42%	43%	45%	37%
	auxiliary	17%	19%	32%	32%
	infinitives	17%	15%	12%	21%
	passives	20%	19%	36%	20%
word usage	prepositions	10.0%	10.8%	12.3%	15.9%
	conjunctions	3.2%	2.4%	3.9%	3.4%
	adverbs	5.05%	4.6%	3.5%	3.7%
	nouns	27.7%	26.5%	29.1%	24.9%
	adjectives	17.0%	19.0%	15.4%	12.4%
	pronouns	5.3%	4.3%	2.1%	6.5%
	nominalizations	1%	2%	2%	3%
sentence openers	prepositions	11%	14%	6%	5%
	adverbs	9%	9%	6%	4%
	subject	65%	59%	54%	66%
	verb	3%	2%	14%	2%
	subordinating conj	8%	14%	11%	3%
	conjunction	1%	0%	0%	3%
	expletives	3%	3%	0%	3%

5.2. DICTION

In the few weeks that DICTION has been available to users about 35,000 sentences have been run with about 5,000 string matches. The authors using the program seem to make the suggested changes about 50-75% of the time. To date, almost 200 of the 450 strings in the default file have been matched. Although most of these phrases are valid and correct in some contexts, the 50-75% change rate seems to show that the phrases are used much more often than concise diction warrants.

6. Accuracy

6.1. Sentence Identification

The correctness of the STYLE output on the 20 document sample was checked in detail. STYLE misidentified 129 sentence fragments as sentences and incorrectly joined two or more sentences 75 times in the 3287 sentence sample. The problems were usually because of nonstandard formatting commands, unknown abbreviations, or lists of non-sentences. An impossibly long sentence found as the longest sentence in the document usually is the result of a long list of non-sentences.

6.2. Sentence Types

Style correctly identified sentence type on 86.5% of the sentences in the sample. The type distribution of the sentences was 52.5% simple, 29.9% complex, 8.5% compound and 9% compound-complex. The program reported 49.5% simple, 31.9% complex, 8% compound and 10.4% compound-complex. Looking at the errors on the individual documents, the number of simple sentences was under-reported by about 4% and the complex and compound-complex were over-reported by 3% and 2%, respectively. The following matrix shows the programs output vs. the actual sentence type.

		Program Results			
		simple	complex	compound	comp-complex
Actual	simple	1566	132	49	17
Sentence	complex	47	892	6	65
Type	compound	40	6	207	23
	comp-complex	0	52	5	249

The system's inability to find imperative sentences seems to have little effect on most of the style statistics. A document with half of its sentences imperative was run, with and without the imperative end marker. The results were identical except for the expected errors of not finding verbs as sentence openers, not counting the imperative sentences, and a slight difference (1%) in the number of nouns and adjectives reported.

6.3. Word Usage

The accuracy of identifying word types reflects that of PARTS, which is about 95% correct. The largest source of confusion is between nouns and adjectives. The verb counts were checked on about 20 sentences from each document and found to be about 98% correct.

7. Technical Details

7.1. Finding Sentences

The formatting commands embedded in the text increase the difficulty of finding sentences. Not all text in a document is in sentence form; there are headings, tables, equations and lists, for example. Headings like "Finding Sentences" above should be discarded, not attached to the next sentence. However, since many of the documents are formatted to be phototypeset, and contain font changes, which usually operate on the most important words in the document, discarding all formatting commands is not correct. To improve the programs' ability to find sentence boundaries, the deformatting program, DEROFF [13], has been given some knowledge of the formatting packages used on the UNIX operating system. DEROFF will now do the following:

1. Suppress all formatting macros that are used for titles, headings, author's name, etc.
2. Suppress the arguments to the macros for titles, headings, author's name, etc.
3. Suppress displays, tables, footnotes and text that is centered or in no-fill mode.
4. Substitute a place holder for equations and check for hidden end markers. The place holder is necessary because many typists and authors use the equation setter to change fonts on important

words. For this reason, header files containing the definition of the EQN delimiters must also be included as input to STYLE. End markers are often hidden when an equation ends a sentence and the period is typed inside the EQN delimiters.

5. Add a "." after lists. If the flag –ml is also used, all lists are suppressed. This is a separate flag because of the variety of ways the list macros are used. Often, lists are sentences that should be included in the analysis. The user must determine how lists are used in the document to be analyzed.

Both STYLE and DICTION call DEROFF before they look at the text. The user should supply the –ml flag if the document contains many lists of non-sentences that should be skipped.

7.2. Details of DICTION

The program DICTION is based on the string matching program FGREP. FGREP takes as input a file of patterns to be matched and a file to be searched and outputs each line that contains any of the patterns with no indication of which pattern was matched. The following changes have been added to FGREP:

1. The basic unit that DICTION operates on is a sentence rather than a line. Each sentence that contains one of the patterns is output.
2. Upper case letters are mapped to lower case.
3. Punctuation is replaced by blanks.
4 All pattern matches in the sentence are found and surrounded with "[" "]" .
5. A method for suppressing a string match has been added. Any pattern that begins with "~" will not be matched. Because the matching algorithm finds the longest substring, the suppression of a match allows words in some correct contexts not to be matched while allowing the word in another context to be found. For example, the word "which" is often incorrectly used instead of "that" in restrictive clauses. However, "which" is usually correct when preceded by a preposition or ",". The default pattern file suppresses the match of the common prepositions or a double blank followed by "which" and therefore matches only the suspect uses. The double blank accounts for the replaced comma.

8. Conclusions

A system of writing tools that measure some of the objective characteristics of writing style has been developed. The tools are sufficiently general that they may be applied to documents on any subject with equal accuracy. Although the measurements are only of the surface structure of the text, they do point out problem areas. In addition to helping writers produce better documents, these programs may be useful for studying the writing process and finding other formulae for measuring readability.

References

1. L. L. Cherry, "PARTS - A System for Assigning Word Classes to English Text," submitted *Communications of the ACM.*
2. B. W. Kernighan and J. R. Mashey, "The UNIX Programming Environment," *Software – Practice & Experience* , **9**, 1-15 (1979).
3. G. R. Klare, "Assessing Readability," *Reading Research Quarterly,* 1974-1975, **10** , 62-102.
4. E. A. Smith and P. Kincaid, "Derivation and validation of the automated readability index for use with technical materials," *Human Factors,* 1970, 12, 457-464.
5. J. P. Kincaid, R. P. Fishburne, R. L. Rogers, and B. S. Chissom, "Derivation of new readability formulas (Automated Readability Index, Fog count, and Flesch Reading Ease Formula) for Navy enlisted personnel," Navy Training Command Research Branch Report 8-75, Feb., 1975.
6. M. Coleman and T. L. Liau, "A Computer Readability Formula Designed for Machine Scoring," *Journal of Applied Psychology,* 1975, 60, 283-284.
7. R. Flesch, "A New Readability Yardstick," *Journal of Applied Psychology,* 1948, 32, 221-233.
8. E. U. Coke, private communication.
9. D. W. Ewing, *Writing for Results,* John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, N. Y. (1974).
10. G. Leggett, C. D. Mead and W. Charvat, *Prentice-Hall Handbook for Writers,* Seventh Edition, Prentice-Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N. J. (1978).
11. E. B. Coleman, "Learning of Prose Written in Four Grammatical Transformations," *Journal of Applied Psychology,* 1965, vol. 49, no. 5, pp. 332-341.
12 A. V. Aho and M. J. Corasick, "Efficient String Matching: an aid to Bibliographic Search," *Communications of the ACM,* **18**, (6), 333-340, June 1975.
13. Bell Laboratories, *"UNIX TIME-SHARING SYSTEM: UNIX PROGRAMMER'S MANUAL,"* Seventh Edition, Vol. 1 (January 1979).

Appendix 1

STYLE Abbreviations

a. d.
A. M.
a. m.
b. c.
Ch.
ch.
ckts.
dB.
Dept.
dept.
Depts.
depts.
Dr.
Drs.
e. g.
Eq.
eq.
et al.
etc.
Fig.
fig.
Figs.
figs.
ft.
i. e.
in.
Inc.
Jr.
jr.
mi.
Mr.
Mrs.
Ms.
No.
no.
Nos.
nos.
P. M.
p. m.
Ph. D.
Ph. d.
Ref.
ref.
Refs.
refs.
St.
vs.
yr.

Appendix 2

Default DICTION Patterns

a great deal of
a large number of
a lot of
a majority of
a need for
a number of
a particular preference for
a preference for
a small number of
a tendency to
abovementioned
absolutely complete
absolutely essential
accomplished
accordingly
activate
actual
added increments
adequate enough
advent
afford an opportunity
aggregate
all of
all throughout
along the line
an indication of
analyzation
and etc
and or
another additional
any and all
arrive at a
as a matter of fact
as a method of
as good or better than
as of now
as per
as regards
as related to
as to
assistance
assistance to
assistance to
assuming that
at a later date
at about
at above
at all times
at an early date
at below
at the present
at the time when
at this point in time
at this time
at which time
at your earliest convenience
authorization
awful
basic fundamentals
basically
be cognizant of
being as
being that
brief in duration
bring to a conclusion
but that
but what
by means of
by the use of
carry out experiments
center about
center around
center portion
check into
check on
check up on
circle around
close proximity
collaborate together
collect together
combine together
come to an end
commence
common accord
compensation
completely eliminated
comprise
concerning
conduct an investigation of
conjecture
connect up
consensus of opinion
consequent result
consolidate together
construct
contemplate
continue on
continue to remain
could of
count up
couple together
debate about
decide on
deleterious effect
demean
demonstrate
depreciate in value
deserving of
desirable benefits
desirous of
different than
discontinue
disutility
divide up
doubt but
due to
duly noted
during the time that
each and every
early beginnings
effectuate
emotional feelings
empty out
enclosed herein
enclosed herewith
end result
end up
endeavor
enter in
enter into
enthused
entirely complete
equally good as
essentially
eventuate
every now and then
exactly identical
experiencing difficulty
fabricate
face up to
facilitate
facts and figures
fast in action
fearful of
fearful that
few in number
file away
final completion
final ending
final outcome
final result
finalize
find it interesting to know
first and foremost
first beginnings
first initiated
firstly
follow after
following after
for the purpose of
for the reason that
for the simple reason that
for this reason
for your information
from the point of view of
full and complete
generally agreed
good and
got to
gratuitous
greatly minimize
head up
help but
helps in the production of
hopeful
if and when
if at all possible
impact
implement
important essentials
importantly
in a large measure
in a position to
in accordance
in advance of
in agreement with
in all cases
in back of
in behalf of
in behind
in between
in case
in close proximity
in conflict with
in conjunction with
in connection with
in fact
in large measure
in many cases
in most cases
in my opinion I think
in order to
in rare cases
in reference to
in regard to
in regards to
in relation with
in short supply
in size
in terms of
in the amount of
in the case of
in the course of
in the event
in the field of
in the form of
in the instance of
in the interim
in the last analysis
in the matter of
in the near future
in the neighborhood of
in the not too distant future
in the proximity of
in the range of
in the same way as described
in the shape of
in the vicinity of
in this case
in view of the
in violation of
inasmuch as
indicate
indicative of
initialize
initiate
injurious to
inquire
inside of
institute a
intents and purposes
intermingle
irregardless
is defined as
is used to control
is when
is where
it is incumbent
it stands to reason
it was noted that if
joint cooperation
joint partnership
just exactly
kind of
know about
last but not least
later on
leaving out of consideration
liable
link up
literally
little doubt that
lose out on
lots of
main essentials
make a
make adjustments to
make an
make application to
make contact with
make mention of
make out a list of
make the acquaintance of
make the adjustment
manner
maximum possible
meaningful
meet up with
melt down
melt up
methodology
might of
minimize as far as possible
minor importance
miss out on
modification

more preferable
most unique
must of
mutual cooperation
necessary requisite
necessitate
need for
nice
not be un
not in a position to
not of a high order of accuracy
not un
notwithstanding
of considerable magnitude
of that
of the opinion that
off of
on a few occasions
on account of
on behalf of
on the grounds that
on the occasion
on the part of
one of the
open up
operates to correct
outside of
over with
overall
past history
perceptive of
perform a measurement
perform the measurement
permits the reduction of
personalize
pertaining to
physical size
plan ahead
plan for the future
plan in advance
plan on
present a conclusion
present a report
presently
prior to
prioritize
proceed to
procure
productive of
prolong the duration
protrude out from
provided that
pursuant to
put to use in
range all the way from
reason is because
reason why
recur again
reduce down
refer back
reference to this
reflective of
regarding
regretful
reinitiate
relative to
repeat again
representative of
resultant effect
resume again
retreat back
return again
return back
revert back
seal off
seems apparent
send a communication
short space of time
should of
single unit
situation
so as to
sort of
spell out
still continue
still remain
subsequent
substantially in agreement
succeed in
suggestive of
superior than
surrounding circumstances
take appropriate
take cognizance of
take into consideration
termed as
terminate
termination
the author
the authors
the case that
the fact
the foregoing
the foreseeable future
the fullest possible extent
the majority of
the nature
the necessity of
the only difference being that
the order of
the point that
the truth is
there are not many
through the medium of
through the use of
throughout the entire
time interval
to summarize the above
total effect of all this
totality
transpire
true facts
try and
ultimate end
under a separate cover
under date of
under separate cover
under the necessity to
underlying purpose
undertake a study
uniformly consistent
unique
until such time as
up to this time
upshot
utilize
very
very complete
very unique
vital
which
with a view to
with reference to
with regard to
with the exception of
with the object of
with the result that
with this in mind, it is clear that
within the realm of possibility
without further delay
worth while
would of
ing behavior
wise
~ which
~ about which
~ after which
~ at which
~ between which
~ by which
~ for which
~ from which
~ in which
~ into which
~ of which
~ on which
~ on which
~ over which
~ through which
~ to which
~ under which
~ upon which
~ with which
~ without which
~clockwise
~likewise
~otherwise

A Guide to the Dungeons of Doom

Michael C. Toy
Kenneth C. R. C. Arnold

Computer Systems Research Group
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California
Berkeley, California 94720

ABSTRACT

Rogue is a visual CRT based fantasy game which runs under the UNIX† timesharing system. This paper describes how to play rogue, and gives a few hints for those who might otherwise get lost in the Dungeons of Doom.

1. Introduction

You have just finished your years as a student at the local fighter's guild. After much practice and sweat you have finally completed your training and are ready to embark upon a perilous adventure. As a test of your skills, the local guildmasters have sent you into the Dungeons of Doom. Your task is to return with the Amulet of Yendor. Your reward for the completion of this task will be a full membership in the local guild. In addition, you are allowed to keep all the loot you bring back from the dungeons.

In preparation for your journey, you are given an enchanted mace, a bow, and a quiver of arrows taken from a dragon's hoard in the far off Dark Mountains. You are also outfitted with elf-crafted armor and given enough food to reach the dungeons. You say goodbye to family and friends for what may be the last time and head up the road.

You set out on your way to the dungeons and after several days of uneventful travel, you see the ancient ruins that mark the entrance to the Dungeons of Doom. It is late at night, so you make camp at the entrance and spend the night sleeping under the open skies. In the morning you gather your weapons, put on your armor, eat what is almost your last food, and enter the dungeons.

2. What is going on here?

You have just begun a game of rogue. Your goal is to grab as much treasure as you can, find the Amulet of Yendor, and get out of the Dungeons of Doom alive. On the screen, a map of where you have been and what you have seen on the current dungeon level is kept. As you explore more of the level, it appears on the screen in front of you.

Rogue differs from most computer fantasy games in that it is screen oriented. Com-

---

†UNIX is a trademark of Bell Laboratories

mands are all one or two keystrokes[1] and the results of your commands are displayed graphically on the screen rather than being explained in words.[2]

Another major difference between rogue and other computer fantasy games is that once you have solved all the puzzles in a standard fantasy game, it has lost most of its excitement and it ceases to be fun. Rogue, on the other hand, generates a new dungeon every time you play it and even the author finds it an entertaining and exciting game.

3. What do all those things on the screen mean?

In order to understand what is going on in rogue you have to first get some grasp of what rogue is doing with the screen. The rogue screen is intended to replace the "You can see ..." descriptions of standard fantasy games. Figure 1 is a sample of what a rogue screen might look like.

3.1. The bottom line

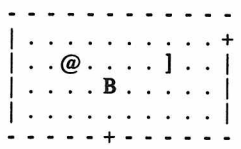
At the bottom line of the screen are a few pieces of cryptic information describing your current status. Here is an explanation of what these things mean:

Level This number indicates how deep you have gone in the dungeon. It starts at one and goes up as you go deeper into the dungeon.

Gold The number of gold pieces you have managed to find and keep with you so far.

Hp Your current and maximum health points. Health points indicate how much damage you can take before you die. The more you get hit in a fight, the lower they get. You can regain health points by resting. The number in parentheses is the maximum number your health points can reach.

Str Your current strength and maximum ever strength. This can be any integer less than or equal to 31, or greater than or equal to three. The higher the number, the stronger you are. The number in the parentheses is the maximum strength you have attained so far this game.



Level: 1 Gold: 0 Hp: 12(12) Str: 16(16) Arm: 4 Exp: 1/0

Figure 1

[1] As opposed to pseudo English sentences.

[2] A minimum screen size of 24 lines by 80 columns is required. If the screen is larger, only the 24x80 section will be used for the map.

Arm Your current armor protection. This number indicates how effective your armor is in stopping blows from unfriendly creatures. The higher this number is, the more effective the armor.

Exp These two numbers give your current experience level and experience points. As you do things, you gain experience points. At certain experience point totals, you gain an experience level. The more experienced you are, the better you are able to fight and to withstand magical attacks.

3.2. The top line

The top line of the screen is reserved for printing messages that describe things that are impossible to represent visually. If you see a "--More--" on the top line, this means that rogue wants to print another message on the screen, but it wants to make certain that you have read the one that is there first. To read the next message, just type a space.

3.3. The rest of the screen

The rest of the screen is the map of the level as you have explored it so far. Each symbol on the screen represents something. Here is a list of what the various symbols mean:

@ This symbol represents you, the adventurer.

-| These symbols represent the walls of rooms.

+ A door to/from a room.

. The floor of a room.

The floor of a passage between rooms.

* A pile or pot of gold.

) A weapon of some sort.

] A piece of armor.

! A flask containing a magic potion.

? A piece of paper, usually a magic scroll.

= A ring with magic properties

/ A magical staff or wand

^ A trap, watch out for these.

% A staircase to other levels

: A piece of food.

A-Z The uppercase letters represent the various inhabitants of the Dungeons of Doom. Watch out, they can be nasty and vicious.

4. Commands

Commands are given to rogue by typing one or two characters. Most commands can be preceded by a count to repeat them (e.g. typing "10s" will do ten searches). Commands for which counts make no sense have the count ignored. To cancel a count or a prefix, type <ESCAPE>. The list of commands is rather long, but it can be read at any time during the game with the "?" command. Here it is for reference, with a short explanation of each command.

? The help command. Asks for a character to give help on. If you type a "*", it will list all the commands, otherwise it will explain what the character you typed does.

/ This is the "What is that on the screen?" command. A "/" followed by any character that you see on the level, will tell you what that character is. For instance, typing "/@" will tell you that the "@" symbol represents you, the player.

h, H, ^H
Move left. You move one space to the left. If you use upper case "h", you will continue to move left until you run into something. This works for all movement commands (e.g. "L" means run in direction "l") If you use the "control" "h", you will continue moving in the specified direction until you pass something interesting or run into a wall. You should experiment with this, since it is a very useful command, but very difficult to describe. This also works for all movement commands.

j Move down.

k Move up.

l Move right.

y Move diagonally up and left.

u Move diagonally up and right.

b Move diagonally down and left.

n Move diagonally down and right.

t Throw an object. This is a prefix command. When followed with a direction it throws an object in the specified direction. (e.g. type "th" to throw something to the left.)

f Fight until someone dies. When followed with a direction this will force you to fight the creature in that direction until either you or it bites the big one.

m Move onto something without picking it up. This will move you one space in the direction you specify and, if there is an object there you can pick up, it won't do it.

z Zap prefix. Point a staff or wand in a given direction and fire it. Even non-directional staves must be pointed in some direction to be used.

^ Identify trap command. If a trap is on your map and you can't remember what type it is, you can get rogue to remind you by getting next to it and typing "^" followed by the direction that would move you on top of it.

s Search for traps and secret doors. Examine each space immediately adjacent to you for the existence of a trap or secret door. There is a large chance that even if there is something there, you won't find it, so you might have to search a while before you find something.

> Climb down a staircase to the next level. Not surprisingly, this can only be done if you are standing on staircase.

< Climb up a staircase to the level above. This can't be done without the Amulet of Yendor in your possession.

. Rest. This is the "do nothing" command. This is good for waiting and healing.

, Pick up something. This picks up whatever you are currently standing on, if you are standing on anything at all.

i Inventory. List what you are carrying in your pack.

I Selective inventory. Tells you what a single item in your pack is.

q Quaff one of the potions you are carrying.

r Read one of the scrolls in your pack.

e Eat food from your pack.

w Wield a weapon. Take a weapon out of your pack and carry it for use in combat, replacing the one you are currently using (if any).

W Wear armor. You can only wear one suit of armor at a time. This takes extra time.

T Take armor off. You can't remove armor that is cursed. This takes extra time.

P Put on a ring. You can wear only two rings at a time (one on each hand). If you aren't wearing any rings, this command will ask you which hand you want to wear it on, otherwise, it will place it on the unused hand. The program assumes that you wield your sword in your right hand.

R Remove a ring. If you are only wearing one ring, this command takes it off. If you are wearing two, it will ask you which one you wish to remove,

d Drop an object. Take something out of your pack and leave it lying on the floor. Only one object can occupy each space. You cannot drop a cursed object at all if you are wielding or wearing it.

c Call an object something. If you have a type of object in your pack which you wish to remember something about, you can use the call command to give a name to that type of object. This is usually used when you figure out what a potion, scroll, ring, or staff is after you pick it up, or when you want to remember which of those swords in your pack you were wielding.

D Print out which things you've discovered something about. This command will ask you what type of thing you are interested in. If you type the character for a given type of object (*e.g.* "!" for potion) it will tell you which kinds of that type of object you've discovered (*i.e.*, figured out what they are). This command works for potions, scrolls, rings, and staves and wands.

o Examine and set options. This command is further explained in the section on options.

^R Redraws the screen. Useful if spurious messages or transmission errors have messed up the display.

^P Print last message. Useful when a message disappears before you can read it. This only repeats the last message that was not a mistyped command so that you don't loose anything by accidentally typing the wrong character instead of ^P.

<ESCAPE>
Cancel a command, prefix, or count.

! Escape to a shell for some commands.

Q Quit. Leave the game.

S Save the current game in a file. It will ask you whether you wish to use the default save file. *Caveat*: Rogue won't let you start up a copy of a saved game, and it removes the save file as soon as you start up a restored game. This is to prevent people from saving a game just before a dangerous position and then restarting it if they die. To restore a saved game, give the file name as an argument to rogue. As in

% rogue *save_file*

To restart from the default save file (see below), run

% rogue -r

v Prints the program version number.

) Print the weapon you are currently wielding

] Print the armor you are currently wearing

= Print the rings you are currently wearing

@ Reprint the status line on the message line

5. Rooms

Rooms in the dungeons are either lit or dark. If you walk into a lit room, the entire room will be drawn on the screen as soon as you enter. If you walk into a dark room, it will only be displayed as you explore it. Upon leaving a room, all monsters inside the room are erased from the screen. In the darkness you can only see one space in all directions around you. A corridor is always dark.

6. Fighting

If you see a monster and you wish to fight it, just attempt to run into it. Many times a monster you find will mind its own business unless you attack it. It is often the case that discretion is the better part of valor.

7. Objects you can find

When you find something in the dungeon, it is common to want to pick the object up. This is accomplished in rogue by walking over the object (unless you use the "m" prefix, see above). If you are carrying too many things, the program will tell you and it won't pick up the object, otherwise it will add it to your pack and tell you what you just picked up.

Many of the commands that operate on objects must prompt you to find out which object you want to use. If you change your mind and don't want to do that command after all, just type an <ESCAPE> and the command will be aborted.

Some objects, like armor and weapons, are easily differentiated. Others, like scrolls and potions, are given labels which vary according to type. During a game, any two of the same kind of object with the same label are the same type. However, the labels will vary from game to game.

When you use one of these labeled objects, if its effect is obvious, rogue will remember what it is for you. If it's effect isn't extremely obvious you will be asked what you want to scribble on it so you will recognize it later, or you can use the "call" command (see above).

7.1. Weapons

Some weapons, like arrows, come in bunches, but most come one at a time. In order to use a weapon, you must wield it. To fire an arrow out of a bow, you must first wield the bow, then throw the arrow. You can only wield one weapon at a time, but you can't change weapons if the one you are currently wielding is cursed. The commands to use weapons are "w" (wield) and "t" (throw).

7.2. Armor

There are various sorts of armor lying around in the dungeon. Some of it is enchanted, some is cursed, and some is just normal. Different armor types have different armor protection. The higher the armor protection, the more protection the armor affords against the blows of monsters. Here is a list of the various armor types and their normal armor protection:

Type	*Protection*
None	0
Leather armor	2
Studded leather / Ring mail	3
Scale mail	4
Chain mail	5
Banded mail / Splint mail	6
Plate mail	7

If a piece of armor is enchanted, its armor protection will be higher than normal. If a suit of armor is cursed, its armor protection will be lower, and you will not be able to remove it. However, not all armor with a protection that is lower than normal is cursed.

The commands to use weapons are "W" (wear) and "T" (take off).

7.3. Scrolls

Scrolls come with titles in an unknown tongue[3]. After you read a scroll, it disappears from your pack. The command to use a scroll is "r" (read).

7.4. Potions

Potions are labeled by the color of the liquid inside the flask. They disappear after being quaffed. The command to use a scroll is "q" (quaff).

7.5. Staves and Wands

Staves and wands do the same kinds of things. Staves are identified by a type of wood; wands by a type of metal or bone. They are generally things you want to do to something over a long distance, so you must point them at what you wish to affect to use them. Some staves are not affected by the direction they are pointed, though. Staves come with multiple magic charges, the number being random, and when they are used up, the staff is just a piece of wood or metal.

The command to use a wand or staff is "z" (zap)

7.6. Rings

Rings are very useful items, since they are relatively permanent magic, unlike the usually fleeting effects of potions, scrolls, and staves. Of course, the bad rings are also more powerful. Most rings also cause you to use up food more rapidly, the rate varying with the type of ring. Rings are differentiated by their stone settings. The commands to use rings are "P" (put on) and "R" (remove).

7.7. Food

Food is necessary to keep you going. If you go too long without eating you will faint, and eventually die of starvation. The command to use food is "e" (eat).

8. Options

Due to variations in personal tastes and conceptions of the way rogue should do things, there are a set of options you can set that cause rogue to behave in various different ways.

---

[3] Actually, it's a dialect spoken only by the twenty-seven members of a tribe in Outer Mongolia, but you're not supposed to *know* that.

8.1. Setting the options

There are two ways to set the options. The first is with the "o" command of rogue; the second is with the "ROGUEOPTS" environment variable[4].

8.1.1. Using the 'o' command

When you type "o" in rogue, it clears the screen and displays the current settings for all the options. It then places the cursor by the value of the first option and waits for you to type. You can type a <RETURN> which means to go to the next option, a "–" which means to go to the previous option, an <ESCAPE> which means to return to the game, or you can give the option a value. For boolean options this merely involves typing "t" for true or "f" for false. For string options, type the new value followed by a <RETURN>.

8.1.2. Using the ROGUEOPTS variable

The ROGUEOPTS variable is a string containing a comma separated list of initial values for the various options. Boolean variables can be turned on by listing their name or turned off by putting a "no" in front of the name. Thus to set up an environment variable so that **jump** is on, **terse** is off, and the **name** is set to "Blue Meanie", use the command

% setenv ROGUEOPTS "jump,noterse,name=Blue Meanie"[5]

8.2. Option list

Here is a list of the options and an explanation of what each one is for. The default value for each is enclosed in square brackets. For character string options, input over fifty characters will be ignored.

terse [*noterse*]
Useful for those who are tired of the sometimes lengthy messages of rogue. This is a useful option for playing on slow terminals, so this option defaults to *terse* if you are on a slow (1200 baud or under) terminal.

jump [*nojump*]
If this option is set, running moves will not be displayed until you reach the end of the move. This saves considerable cpu and display time. This option defaults to *jump* if you are using a slow terminal.

flush [*noflush*]
All typeahead is thrown away after each round of battle. This is useful for those who type far ahead and then watch in dismay as a Bat kills them.

seefloor [*seefloor*]
Display the floor around you on the screen as you move through dark rooms. Due to the amount of characters generated, this option defaults to *noseefloor* if you are using a slow terminal.

passgo [*nopassgo*]
Follow turnings in passageways. If you run in a passage and you run into stone or a wall, rogue will see if it can turn to the right or left. If it can only turn one way, it will turn that way. If it can turn either or neither, it will stop. This algorithm can sometimes lead to slightly confusing occurrences which is why it defaults to *nopassgo*.

---

[4] On Version 6 systems, there is no equivalent of the ROGUEOPTS feature.

[5] For those of you who use the Bourne shell sh (1), the commands would be
$ ROGUEOPTS="jump,noterse,name=Blue Meanie"
$ export ROGUEOPTS

tombstone [*tombstone*]
Print out the tombstone at the end if you get killed. This is nice but slow, so you can turn it off if you like.

inven [*overwrite*]
Inventory type. This can have one of three values: *overwrite*, *slow*, or *clear*. With *overwrite* the top lines of the map are overwritten with the list when inventory is requested or when "Which item do you wish to . . .? " questions are answered with a "*". However, if the list is longer than a screenful, the screen is cleared. With *slow*, lists are displayed one item at a time on the top of the screen, and with *clear*, the screen is cleared, the list is displayed, and then the dungeon level is re-displayed. Due to speed considerations, *clear* is the default for terminals without clear-to-end-of-line capabilities.

name [account name]
This is the name of your character. It is used if you get on the top ten scorer's list.

fruit [*slime-mold*]
This should hold the name of a fruit that you enjoy eating. It is basically a whimsey that rogue uses in a couple of places.

file [*~/rogue.save*]
The default file name for saving the game. If your phone is hung up by accident, rogue will automatically save the game in this file. The file name may start with the special character "~" which expands to be your home directory.

9. Scoring

Rogue usually maintains a list of the top scoring people or scores on your machine. Depending on how it is set up, it can post either the top scores or the top players. In the latter case, each account on the machine can post only one non-winning score on this list. If you score higher than someone else on this list, or better your previous score on the list, you will be inserted in the proper place under your current name. How many scores are kept can also be set up by whoever installs it on your machine.

If you quit the game, you get out with all of your gold intact. If, however, you get killed in the Dungeons of Doom, your body is forwarded to your next-of-kin, along with 90% of your gold; ten percent of your gold is kept by the Dungeons' wizard as a fee[6]. This should make you consider whether you want to take one last hit at that monster and possibly live, or quit and thus stop with whatever you have. If you quit, you do get all your gold, but if you swing and live, you might find more.

If you just want to see what the current top players/games list is, you can type

```
% rogue -s
```

10. Acknowledgements

Rogue was originally conceived of by Glenn Wichman and Michael Toy. Ken Arnold and Michael Toy then smoothed out the user interface, and added jillions of new features. We would like to thank Bob Arnold, Michelle Busch, Andy Hatcher, Kipp Hickman, Mark Horton, Daniel Jensen, Bill Joy, Joe Kalash, Steve Maurer, Marty McNary, Jan Miller, and Scott Nelson for their ideas and assistance; and also the teeming multitudes who graciously ignored work, school, and social life to play rogue and send us bugs, complaints, suggestions, and just plain flames. And also Mom.

[6] The Dungeon's wizard is named Wally the Wonder Badger. Invocations should be accompanied by a sizable donation.

STAR

TREK

by

Eric Allman
University of California
Berkeley

INTRODUCTION

Well, the federation is once again at war with the Klingon empire. It is up to you, as captain of the U.S.S. Enterprise, to wipe out the invasion fleet and save the Federation.

For the purposes of the game the galaxy is divided into 64 quadrants on an eight by eight grid, with quadrant 0,0 in the upper left hand corner. Each quadrant is divided into 100 sectors on a ten by ten grid. Each sector contains one object (e.g., the Enterprise, a Klingon, or a star).

Navigation is handled in degrees, with zero being straight up and ninety being to the right. Distances are measured in quadrants. One tenth quadrant is one sector.

The galaxy contains starbases, at which you can dock to refuel, repair damages, etc. The galaxy also contains stars. Stars usually have a knack for getting in your way, but they can be triggered into going nova by shooting a photon torpedo at one, thereby (hopefully) destroying any adjacent Klingons. This is not a good practice however, because you are penalized for destroying stars. Also, a star will sometimes go supernova, which obliterates an entire quadrant. You must never stop in a supernova quadrant, although you may "jump over" one.

Some starsystems have inhabited planets. Klingons can attack inhabited planets and enslave the populace, which they then put to work building more Klingon battle cruisers.

STARTING UP THE GAME

To request the game, issue the command

/usr/games/trek

from the shell. If a filename is supplied, a log of the game is written onto that file. (Otherwise, no file is written.) If the "**-a**" flag is stated before the filename, the log of the game is

appended to the file.

The game will ask you what length game you would like. Valid responses are "short", "medium", and "long". You may also type "restart", which restarts a previously saved game. Ideally, the length of the game does not affect the difficulty, but currently the shorter games tend to be harder than the longer ones.

You will then be prompted for the skill, to which you must respond "novice", "fair", "good", "expert", "commodore", or "impossible". You should start out with a novice and work up, but if you really want to see how fast you can be slaughtered, start out with an impossible game.

In general, throughout the game, if you forget what is appropriate the game will tell you what it expects if you just type in a question mark.

ISSUING COMMANDS

If the game expects you to enter a command, it will say "Command: " and wait for your response. Most commands can be abbreviated.

At almost any time you can type more than one thing on a line. For example, to move straight up one quadrant, you can type

```
move 0 1
```

or you could just type

```
move
```

and the game would prompt you with

```
Course:
```

to which you could type

```
0 1
```

The "1" is the distance, which could be put on still another line. Also, the "move" command could have been abbreviated "mov", "mo", or just "m".

If you are partway through a command and you change your mind, you can usually type "-1" to cancel the command.

Klingons generally cannot hit you if you don't consume anything (e.g., time or energy), so some commands are considered "free". As soon as you consume anything though -- POW!

THE COMMANDS

Short Range Scan

Mnemonic: srscan
Shortest Abbreviation: s
Full Commands: srscan
srscan yes/no
Consumes: nothing

The short range scan gives you a picture of the quadrant you are in, and (if you say "yes") a status report which tells you a whole bunch of interesting stuff. You can get a status report alone by using the *status* command. An example follows:

Short range sensor scan

```
   0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
0  .  .  .  .  .  .  *  .  *  0
1  .  .  E  .  .  .  .  .  .  1
2  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  *  2
3  *  .  .  .  .  #  .  .  .  3
4  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  4
5  .  .  *  .  *  .  .  .  .  5
6  .  .  .  @  .  .  .  .  .  6
7  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  .  7
8  .  .  .  K  .  .  .  .  .  8
9  .  .  .  .  .  .  *  .  .  9
   0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
```

stardate	3702.16
condition	RED
position	0,3/1,2
warp factor	5.0
total energy	4376
torpedoes	9
shields	down, 78%
Klingons left	3
time left	6.43
life support	damaged, reserves = 2.4

Distressed Starsystem Marcus XII

The cast of characters is as follows:

E	the hero
K	the villain
#	the starbase
*	stars
@	inhabited starsystem
.	empty space
	a black hole

The name of the starsystem is listed underneath the short range scan. The word "distressed", if present, means that the starsystem is under attack.

Short range scans are absolutely free. They use no time, no energy, and they don't give the Klingons another chance to hit you.

Status Report

Mnemonic: status
Shortest Abbreviation: st

Consumes: nothing

This command gives you information about the current status of the game and your ship, as follows:

Stardate -- The current stardate.

Condition -- as follows:
RED -- in battle
YELLOW -- low on energy
GREEN -- normal state
DOCKED -- docked at starbase
CLOAKED -- the cloaking device is activated

Position -- Your current quadrant and sector.

Warp Factor -- The speed you will move at when you move under warp power (with the *move* command).

Total Energy -- Your energy reserves. If they drop to zero, you die. Energy regenerates, but the higher the skill of the game, the slower it regenerates.

Torpedoes -- How many photon torpedoes you have left.

Shields -- Whether your shields are up or down, and how effective they are if up (what percentage of a hit they will absorb).

Klingons Left -- Guess.

Time Left -- How long the Federation can hold out if you sit on your fat ass and do nothing. If you kill Klingons quickly, this number goes up, otherwise, it goes down. If it hits zero, the Federation is conquered.

Life Support -- If "active", everything is fine. If "damaged", your reserves tell you how long you have to repair your life support or get to a starbase before you starve, suffocate, or something equally unpleasant.

Current Crew -- The number of crew members left. This figures does not include officers.

Brig Space -- The space left in your brig for Klingon captives.

Klingon Power -- The number of units needed to kill a Klingon. Remember, as Klingons fire at you they use up their own energy, so you probably need somewhat less than this.

Skill, Length -- The skill and length of the game you are playing.

Status information is absolutely free.

Long Range Scan

Mnemonic: lrscan
Shortest Abbreviation: l
Consumes: nothing

Long range scan gives you information about the eight quadrants that surround the quadrant you're in. A sample long range scan follows:

Long range scan for quadrant 0,3

	2	3	4
	! * !	* !	* !
0	! 108 !	6 !	19 !
1	! 9 !	/// !	8 !

The three digit numbers tell the number of objects in the quadrants. The units digit tells the number of stars, the tens digit the number of starbases, and the hundreds digit is the number of Klingons. "*" indicates the negative energy barrier at the edge of the galaxy, which you cannot enter. "///" means that that is a supernova quadrant and must not be entered.

Damage Report

Mnemonic: damages
Shortest Abbreviation: da
Consumes: nothing

A damage report tells you what devices are damaged and how long it will take to repair them. Repairs proceed faster when you are docked at a starbase.

Set Warp Factor

Mnemonic: warp
Shortest Abbreviation: w
Full Command: warp factor
Consumes: nothing

The warp factor tells the speed of your starship when you move under warp power (with the *move* command). The higher the warp factor, the faster you go, and the more energy you use.

The minimum warp factor is 1.0 and the maximum is 10.0. At speeds above warp 6 there is danger of the warp engines being damaged. The probability of this increases at higher warp speeds. Above warp 9.0 there is a chance of entering a time warp.

Move Under Warp Power

Mnemonic: move
Shortest Abbreviation: m
Full Command: move course distance
Consumes: time and energy

This is the usual way of moving. The course is in degrees and the distance is in quadrants. To move one sector specify a distance of 0.1.

Time is consumed proportionately to the inverse of the warp factor squared, and directly to the distance. Energy is consumed as the warp factor cubed, and directly to the distance. If you move with your shields up it doubles the amount of energy consumed.

When you move in a quadrant containing Klingons, they get a chance to attack you.

The computer detects navigation errors. If the computer is out, you run the risk of running into things.

The course is determined by the Space Inertial Navigation System [SINS]. As described in Star Fleet Technical Order TO:02:06:12, the SINS is calibrated, after which it becomes the base for navigation. If damaged, navigation becomes inaccurate. When it is fixed, Spock recalibrates it, however, it cannot be calibrated extremely accurately until you dock at starbase.

Move Under Impulse Power

Mnemonic: impulse
Shortest Abbreviation: i
Full Command: impulse course distance
Consumes: time and energy

The impulse engines give you a chance to maneuver when your warp engines are damaged; however, they are incredibly slow (0.095 quadrants/stardate). They require 20 units of energy to engage, and ten units per sector to move.

The same comments about the computer and the SINS apply as above.

There is no penalty to move under impulse power with shields up.

Deflector Shields

Mnemonic: shields
Shortest Abbreviation: sh
Full Command: shields up/down
Consumes: energy

Shields protect you from Klingon attack and nearby novas. As they protect you, they weaken. A shield which is 78% effective will absorb 78% of a hit and let 22% in to hurt you.

The Klingons have a chance to attack you every time you raise or lower shields. Shields do not rise and lower instantaneously, so the hit you receive will be computed with the shields at an intermediate effectiveness.

It takes energy to raise shields, but not to drop them.

Cloaking Device

Mnemonic: cloak
Shortest Abbreviation: cl
Full Command: cloak up/down
Consumes: energy

When you are cloaked, Klingons cannot see you, and hence they do not fire at you. They are useful for entering a quadrant and selecting a good position, however, weapons cannot be fired through the cloak due to the huge energy drain that it requires.

The cloak up command only starts the cloaking process; Klingons will continue to fire at you until you do something which consumes time.

Fire Phasers

Mnemonic: phasers
Shortest Abbreviation: p
Full Commands: phasers automatic amount
phasers manual amt1 course1 spread1 ...
Consumes: energy

Phasers are energy weapons; the energy comes from your ship's reserves ("total energy" on a srscan). It takes about 250 units of hits to kill a Klingon. Hits are cumulative as long as you stay in the quadrant.

Phasers become less effective the further from a Klingon you are. Adjacent Klingons receive about 90% of what you fire, at five sectors about 60%, and at ten sectors about 35%. They have no effect outside of the quadrant.

Phasers cannot be fired while shields are up; to do so would fry you. They have no effect on starbases or stars.

In automatic mode the computer decides how to divide up the energy among the Klingons present; in manual mode you do that yourself.

In manual mode firing you specify a direction, amount (number of units to fire) and spread (0 -> 1.0) for each of the six phaser banks. A zero amount terminates the manual input.

Fire Photon Torpedoes

Mnemonic: torpedo
Shortest Abbreviation: t
Full Command: torpedo course [yes/no] [burst angle]
Consumes: torpedoes

Torpedoes are projectile weapons -- there are no partial hits. You either hit your target or you don't. A hit on a Klingon destroys him. A hit on a starbase destroys that starbase (woops!). Hitting a star usually causes it to go nova, and occasionally supernova.

Photon torpedoes cannot be aimed precisely. They can be fired with shields up, but they get even more random as they pass through the shields.

Torpedoes may be fired in bursts of three. If this is desired, the burst angle is the angle between the three shots, which may vary from one to fifteen. The word "no" says that a burst is not wanted; the word "yes" (which may be omitted if stated on the same line as the course) says that a burst is wanted.

Photon torpedoes have no effect outside the quadrant.

Onboard Computer Request

Mnemonic: computer
Shortest Abbreviation: c
Full Command: computer request; request;...
Consumes: nothing

The computer command gives you access to the facilities of the onboard computer, which allows you to do all sorts of fascinating stuff. Computer requests are:

score -- Shows your current score.

course quad/sect -- Computes the course and distance from wherever you are to the given location. If you type "course /x,y" you will be given the course to sector x,y in the current quadrant.

move quad/sect -- Identical to the course request, except that the move is executed.

chart -- prints a chart of the known galaxy, i.e., everything that you have seen with a long range scan. The format is the same as on a long range scan, except that "..." means that you don't yet know what is there, and ".1." means that you know that a starbase exists, but you don't know anything else. "$$$" mans the quadrant that you are currently in.

trajectory -- prints the course and distance to all the Klingons in the quadrant.

warpcost dist warp_factor -- computes the cost in time and energy to move 'dist' quadrants at warp 'warp_factor'.

impcost dist -- same as warpcost for impulse engines.

pheff range -- tells how effective your phasers are at a given range.

distresslist -- gives a list of currently distressed starbases and starsystems.

More than one request may be stated on a line by separating them with semicolons.

Dock at Starbase

Mnemonic: dock
Shortest Abbreviation: do
Consumes: nothing

You may dock at a starbase when you are in one of the eight adjacent sectors.

When you dock you are resupplied with energy, photon torpedoes, and life support reserves. Repairs are also done faster at starbase. Any prisoners you have taken are unloaded. You do not receive points for taking prisoners until this time.

Starbases have their own deflector shields, so you are safe from attack while docked.

Undock from Starbase

Mnemonic: undock
Shortest Abbreviation: u
Consumes: nothing

This just allows you to leave starbase so that you may proceed on your way.

Rest

Mnemonic: rest
Shortest Abbreviation: r
Full Command: rest time
Consumes: time

This command allows you to rest to repair damages. It is not advisable to rest while under attack.

Call Starbase For Help

Mnemonic: help
Shortest Abbreviation: help
Consumes: nothing

You may call starbase for help via your subspace radio. Starbase has long range transporter beams to get you. Problem is, they can't always rematerialize you.

You should avoid using this command unless absolutely necessary, for the above reason and because it counts heavily against you in the scoring.

Capture Klingon

Mnemonic: capture
Shortest Abbreviation: ca
Consumes: time

You may request that a Klingon surrender to you. If he accepts, you get to take captives (but only as many as your brig can hold). It is good if you do this, because you get points for captives. Also, if you ever get captured, you want to be sure that the Federation has prisoners to exchange for you.

You must go to a starbase to turn over your prisoners to Federation authorities.

Visual Scan

Mnemonic: visual
Shortest Abbreviation: v
Full Command: visual course
Consumes: time

When your short range scanners are out, you can still see what is out "there" by doing a visual scan. Unfortunately, you can only see three sectors at one time, and it takes 0.005 stardates to perform.

The three sectors in the general direction of the course specified are examined and displayed.

Abandon Ship

Mnemonic: abandon
Shortest Abbreviation: abandon
Consumes: nothing

The officers escape the Enterprise in the shuttlecraft. If the transporter is working

and there is an inhabitable starsystem in the area, the crew beams down, otherwise you leave them to die. You are given an old but still usable ship, the Faire Queene.

Ram

Mnemonic: ram
Shortest Abbreviation: ram
Full Command: ram course distance
Consumes: time and energy

This command is identical to "move", except that the computer doesn't stop you from making navigation errors.

You get very nearly slaughtered if you ram anything.

Self Destruct

Mnemonic: destruct
Shortest Abbreviation: destruct
Consumes: everything

Your starship is self-destructed. Chances are you will destroy any Klingons (and stars, and starbases) left in your quadrant.

Terminate the Game

Mnemonic: terminate
Shortest Abbreviation: terminate
Full Command: terminate yes/no

Cancels the current game. No score is computed. If you answer yes, a new game will be started, otherwise trek exits.

Call the Shell

Mnemonic: shell
Shortest Abbreviation: shell

Temporarily escapes to the shell. When you exit the shell you will return to the game.

SCORING

The scoring algorithm is rather complicated. Basically, you get points for each Klingon you kill, for your Klingon per stardate kill rate, and a bonus if you win the game. You lose points for the number of Klingons left in the galaxy at the end of the game, for getting killed, for each star, starbase, or inhabited starsystem you

destroy, for calling for help, and for each casualty you incur.

You will be promoted if you play very well. You will never get a promotion if you call for help, abandon the Enterprise, get killed, destroy a starbase or inhabited starsystem, or destroy too many stars.

COMMAND SUMMARY

Command	Requires	Consumes
abandon	shuttlecraft, transporter	-
capture	subspace radio	time
cloak up/down	cloaking device	energy
computer request; ...	computer	-
damages	-	-
destruct	computer	-
dock	-	-
help	subspace radio	-
impulse course distance	impulse engines, computer, SINS	time, energy
lrscan	L.R. sensors	-
move course distance	warp engines, computer, SINS	time, energy
phasers automatic amount	phasers, computer	energy phasers manual
amt1 course1 spread1 ...	phasers	energy
torpedo course [yes] angle/no	torpedo tubes	torpedoes
ram course distance	warp engines, computer, SINS	time, energy
rest time	-	time
shell	-	-
shields up/down	shields	energy
srscan [yes/no]	S.R. sensors	-
status	-	-
terminate yes/no	-	-
undock	-	-
visual course	-	time
warp warp_factor	-	-

NOTES

NOTES